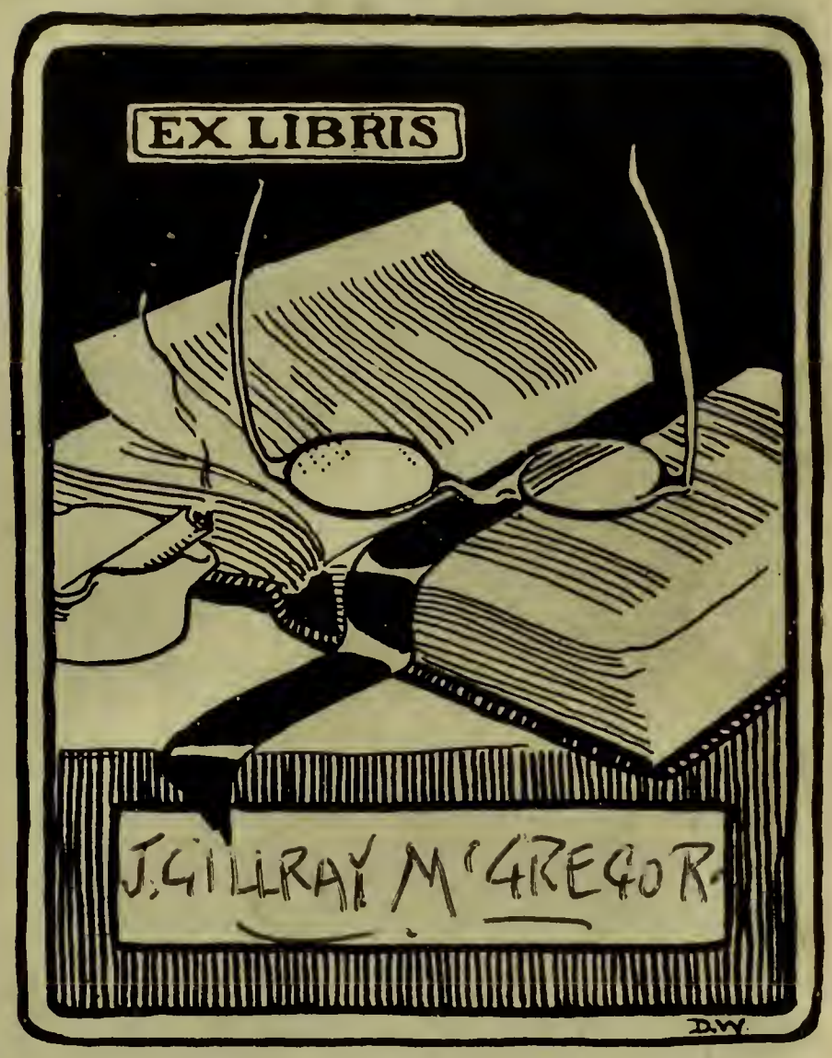
The Exterior of the Horse



22101897408

Med
K52133

J. S. Barber
Rugby

157

THE

EXTERIOR OF THE HORSE.

BY

ARMAND GOUBAUX, AND GUSTAVE BARRIER,

HONORARY DIRECTOR OF THE VETERINARY SCHOOL OF ALFORT, MEMBER OF THE ACADEMY OF MEDICINE AND OF THE NATIONAL SOCIETY OF AGRICULTURE OF FRANCE,

PROFESSOR OF ANATOMY AND THE EXTERIOR, AT THE VETERINARY SCHOOL AT ALFORT, MEMBER OF THE CENTRAL SOCIETY OF VETERINARY MEDICINE OF FRANCE.

SECOND EDITION,

With 346 Figures and 34 Plates, by G. Nicolet,

LIBRARIAN AT THE VETERINARY SCHOOL OF ALFORT.

TRANSLATED AND EDITED BY

SIMON J. J. HARGER, V. M. D.,

PROFESSOR OF ANATOMY AND ZOÖTECHNICS IN THE VETERINARY DEPARTMENT OF THE UNIVERSITY OF PENNSYLVANIA.

PHILADELPHIA:
J. B. LIPPINCOTT COMPANY.
LONDON: 10 HENRIETTA STREET, COVENT GARDEN.
1892.

Copyright, 1892, by J. B. Lippincott Company.

WELLCOME INSTITUTE
LIBRARY
Coll. welMOmec
Call
No.

Printed by J. B. Lippincott Company, Philadelphia, U.S.A.

TO THE

MEMBERS OF THE VETERINARY PROFESSION,

AND ALL

CONNOISSEURS OF THE HORSE,

THIS WORK IS

DEDICATED

BY THE TRANSLATOR.

PREFACE BY THE TRANSLATOR.

Progress in veterinary science implies advance in investigation and the publication of books setting forth the results of that advance. Numerous volumes of veterinary literature have of late years appeared from the pens of both French and German writers; but in English there has been very little produced upon the subject; and English-speaking teachers, practitioners, and students constantly find themselves compelled to look to foreign writers for instruction on points connected with their vocation.

In no branch of this literature has this deficiency been more seriously felt than in that which studies the horse exclusively from the *exterior*, considering his external form and characters with relation to his mechanical aptitude and his commercial value. Hence I was induced to fill this vacancy by the translation of Goubaux and Barrier's "Exterior of the Horse."

In selecting this book, the French veterinary text-book *par excellence*, I was influenced no less by the reputation and standing of its authors than by the originality, exactness, and fulness of its treatment of the subject.

The difficulty of such an undertaking can be fully appreciated only through actual experience. I have endeavored as far as possible to avoid the use of French terms. In some instances, however, it was impossible to find English terms that would convey the exact meaning of the terms of the original text. Wherever I have retained the foreign terms, it has been done solely for the sake of brevity and simplicity.

No pains have been spared to make this one of the most complete books of its kind. The numerous plates and figures thoroughly elucidate the more difficult points of the text; and references are made to all the best French, German, and Italian treatises on the veterinary science. One of my special aims has been to adapt this book to the English-speaking reader. It contains valuable information for the practitioner, the student, the horseman, and the breeder.

I take occasion here to acknowledge my obligation to M. Barrier and Messrs. Asselin and Houzeau for the loan of the plates and clichés, and also to express my gratitude to the friends who have assisted me in my work, and particularly to the publishers for their generous assistance, for the ability with which they have executed their portion of the undertaking, and for the interest they have manifested not only in this work, but also in all publications pertaining to veterinary science. Nor must I forget, finally, to express my obligations to Mr. E. R. Jones for his conscientious care in reading and correcting the proof.

SIMON J. J. HARGER.

205 NORTH TWENTIETH STREET, PHILADELPHIA,
December 3, 1891.

PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

In the preparation of the work herewith offered to the public, our aim has been to select from the science which treats of the rational improvement of domestic animals—the science of *zoötechnics*—that chapter which bears upon the *consideration of the external forms and the characteristics of the horse in their connection with his mechanical aptitudes and his commercial value.*

This study, for which we have retained the name given to it by the founder of veterinary schools, merits a treatment very different from the theoretical and empirical one accorded to it by the majority of our predecessors. We have endeavored, therefore, on all important points, to base our opinions upon numerous careful researches pursued by ourselves in person ; and from these data we have deduced, or by them confirmed, the principles of a judicious appreciation of the physical and moral qualities of the horse.

To our teaching colleagues, our associates, our pupils, and all others who have aided us in our task, we here acknowledge our deep gratitude. If we have not cited the names and treatises of all the authors who have written upon the exterior of the horse, it is because we had determined, in the matter of bibliography and out of consideration for our readers, to abstain from all idle discussions and uninteresting controversies. As for the rest, we think we have done them full justice in the numerous citations we have made from their works.

Our labors have been singularly facilitated by the friendly interest and generosity of our publishers, who will allow nothing to stand in the way of the successful completion of a book useful to science, and, in particular, of one useful to the veterinarian.

We are indebted also to M. G. Nicolet, librarian to the veterinary school of Alfort, whose artistic skill has reproduced, among other subjects, with an exactness hitherto unknown in works of this kind, the characteristics of the dental wear, the recognition of which is a matter of such great importance in determining the age.

Armand Goubaux, Gustave Barrier.

Alfort, March 15, 1884.

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

THIS second edition, in preparation for three years, has been the subject of a careful revision and of numerous alterations.

Some very notable improvements upon the first edition have been made.

A new plate upon the age, and fifty-three original figures, have been added.

The matter, while much condensed as a whole, has in many places been rewritten at great length.

Finally, by the employment of three varieties of type, we are enabled to indicate the degree of importance of each subject treated, and to facilitate the use of the volume to those who can consult only the essential parts.

ARMAND GOUBAUX, GUSTAVE BARRIER.

ALFORT, March 1, 1890.

CONTENTS.

SECTION FIRST.

PRELIMINARY IDEAS OF ANIMAL MECHANICS.

CHAPTER I.

PAGE

Object, End, and Utility of the Exterior 1

CHAPTER II.

Centre of Gravity 3

CHAPTER III.

The Lever and Muscular Mechanism 11

CHAPTER IV.

The Inclined Plane 19

SECTION SECOND.

STUDY OF THE REGIONS.

§ 1. Divisions of the Horse 21

§ 2. Some Definitions 31

A. Beauties 31

B. Defects 32

C. Blemishes 32

D. Vices and Faults 33

PART I.

THE HEAD.

CHAPTER I.

Anterior Face 36

A. The Forehead 36

B. The Face 38

C. Extremity of the Nose 40

CHAPTER II.

PAGE
Lateral Faces 41
A. The Ear 41
B. The Temple 46
C. The Supra-orbit and the Eyebrows 47
D. The Eye 48
E. The Cheek 58
F. The Nostrils 59

CHAPTER III.

Posterior Face 65
A. Intermaxillary Space 65
B. Inferior Maxillary Region 67
C. The Chin 68

CHAPTER IV.

Inferior Extremity 69
A. The Mouth and its Subdivision 69
1. The Lips 69
2. The Teeth and the Gums 73
3. The Bars 74
4. The Lingual Canal 75
5. The Tongue 76
6. The Palate 79
B. The Mouth in General 79

CHAPTER V.

Posterior Extremity 82
A. The Poll or Nape 83
B. The Parotid Region 83
C. The Throat 85

CHAPTER VI.

Head in General 85
A. Harmonious Relations 86
B. Length 87
C. Volume 87
D. Direction 88
E. Forms 92
F. Attachments 95
G. Movements 95
H. Expression 96

PART II.

THE BODY.

CHAPTER I.

Superior Face 98
A. The Neck 98
The Mane and the Forelock 109

PAGE
B. The Withers 111
C. The Back 116
D. The Loins 122
E. The Croup 123
The Haunch 142

CHAPTER II.

ANTERIOR EXTREMITY 141
A. The Breast, or Pectoral Region 144
B. The Inter-axilla 147
C. The Axilla 147

CHAPTER III.

INFERIOR FACE 148
A. The Xiphoid Region 148
B. The Abdomen 149

CHAPTER IV.

LATERAL FACES 152
A. The Costal Region; Ribs; Sides 152
The Chest in General 157
B. The Flank 162
C. The Groin 167

CHAPTER V.

POSTERIOR EXTREMITY 168
A. The Tail 168
B. The Anus 174
C. The Perineum and the Median Raphé 175

CHAPTER VI.

GENITAL ORGANS 176
§ 1. Genital Organs of the Male 176
A. The Testicles and their Envelopes 176
B. The Sheath and the Penis 181
§ 2. Genital Organs of the Female 184
A. The Vulva 184
B. The Mammæ 186

PART III.

THE MEMBERS.

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS 186
1. Action of the Anterior Member 196
2. Action of the Posterior Member 198

CHAPTER I.

ANTERIOR MEMBER 200
A. The Shoulder 201
B. The Arm 214

PAGE
C. The Elbow 219
D. The Forearm 221
E. The Chestnuts 227
F. The Knee 227

CHAPTER II.

Posterior Member 237
A. The Thigh and the Buttock 237
B. The Stifle 244
C. The Leg 246
D. The Hock 253
E. The Chestnut 279
F. The Canon and the Tendons 279
G. The Fetlock 290
H. The Footlock and the Ergot 297
I. The Pastern 298
J. The Coronet 309

CHAPTER III.

The Foot 312
A. Organization 312
1. Internal Parts 313
2. The Hoof 316
B. Properties and Mechanism 322
C. Beauties 327
D. Defects 328
1. Of Volume and of Proportion 328
2. Of Conformation 329
3. Of the Axis 332
4. Of Quality of the Horn 334
E. Accidents occasioned by Shoeing 335
F. Diseases 336

SECTION THIRD.

PROPORTIONS.

PART I.

INTRODUCTION.

CHAPTER I.

Preliminary Ideas 341

CHAPTER II.

Historical 344

PART II.

OBJECT AND UTILITY OF THE PROPORTIONS.

CHAPTER I.

PAGE
Points of View from which the Proportions are studied 357
A. Relation of Dimensions between the Parts 358
B. Angular Relations of the Osseous Segments 365
Theory of the Similitude of the Angles and the Parallelism of the Bony Segments 365
C. General Relations of the Ensemble, the Whole Organism 385
D. Relations of the Organism with the Nervous System 397

CHAPTER II.

Isolated Effects of Beautiful Proportions upon the Animal Machine 404
A. Conditions of the Motor en Mode de Masse, or of Force 405
B. Conditions of the Motor en Mode de Vitesse, or of Speed 407
C. Conditions of the Mixed Motor. (Combination of Force and Speed realized) 408
D. Excitability; Impressionability; Irritability 410

CHAPTER III.

Result of Beautiful Proportions upon the Animal Machine . . . 412
Resistance to Fatigue: Endurance 412

CHAPTER IV.

Definitive Synthesis 429

SECTION FOURTH.

THE HORSE IN RELATION TO LOCOMOTION.

PART I.

ATTITUDES AND MOVEMENTS UPON PLACE.

CHAPTER I.

Attitudes 438
A. Station 438
Axes, Equilibrium 442
a. Of the Anterior Members 443
b. Of the Posterior Members 456
B. Lying Down or Decubitus 466

CHAPTER II.

PAGE
Movements upon Place 468
A. Rearing 468
B. Kicking 470

PART II.

MODE OF PROGRESSION, OR THE GAITS OF THE HORSE.

CHAPTER I.

Generalities of the Gaits 472
Analysis of the Gaits 479
Systems of Notation of the Gaits 490
Synthetic Study of the Mode of Progression 496

CHAPTER II.

The Gaits in Particular 503
A. The Amble, Pacing 504
Broken Amble 509
B. The Trot 510
Broken Trot, Flying Trot 522
Racking 522
Skipping 527
The Canter 527
Running Walk 529
C. The Walk 530
Backing 542
D. The Gallop 544
E. Leaping 569
Bounding and Bucking 575

CHAPTER III.

Defects in the Gaits 576
A. Defects existing in the Anterior Members alone 577
1. Dragging the Toe 577
2. Excessive Knee-Action 578
3. Immobilized or Pegged Shoulders 578
B. Defects existing in the Posterior Members alone 579
1. String-halt 579
2. Rotating Hocks 581
C. Defects dependent upon the Mode of Association in raising the Anterior Feet and resting the Posterior 582
Forging 582
D. Defects existing separately or simultaneously in the Anterior or the Posterior Members 584
1. Rocking 584
2. Strain of the Loins 585
E. Defects existing indiscriminately in the Four Members 586
1. Billarder, Paddling 586
2. Interfering 586
3. Lameness 588

SECTION FIFTH.

AGE OF THE HORSE.

PART I.

THE TEETH.

CHAPTER I.

PAGE

THE INCISORS 597
A. Of the First Dentition 597
B. Of the Second Dentition 601
C. Structure 606
D. Details of the Dental Table according to the Age 615
E. Direction 616
The Tusks or Canine Teeth 619

CHAPTER II.

THE MOLARS 621
1. Supplementary Premolars 621
2. Molars Proper 622
A. Of the First Dentition 622
B. Of the Second Dentition 625
C. Development and Structure 631

CHAPTER III.

ERUPTION OF THE TEETH 637
A. Of the Incisors 637
B. Of the Canines 640
C. Of the Molars 640

PART II.

DETERMINATION OF THE AGE.

CHAPTER I.

DURATION OF LIFE IN THE HORSE 642

CHAPTER II.

THE PARTS TO BE EXAMINED FOR THE DETERMINATION OF THE AGE . . 645

CHAPTER III.

THE CHARACTERS FURNISHED BY THE TEETH 648

7

PART III.

PAGE
Irregularities of the Dental Apparatus 721
1. Number 721
2. Form 726
3. Union of Two Teeth 726
4. Form of the Central Enamel 727
5. Depth of the Infundibulum and its External Dental Cavity 729
6. Defect of Length or Excess of Width of one of the Jaws 736
7. Excessive or Insufficient Wear 738
8. Wear resulting from Cribbing 752
9. Employment of Fraudulent Means 762

SECTION SIXTH.

Considerations Relative to the Description and Identification of the Horse 771

CHAPTER I.

The Coats 771
1. Coats properly so called 771
§ 1. Primitive Coats 773
A. Simple Coats (Black, Sorrel) 773
B. Composite Coats (Isabella Bay, Mouse-Color) 775
C. Mixed Coats (Fox-Color) 777
§ 2. Derived Coats (Gray, White, Flea-bitten, Roan) 778
§ 3. Conjugate Coats (Piebald, Conjugate, Isabella) 782
Spotted or Marbled Coats 784
Synoptical Table of the Coats 784
2. Peculiarities of the Coats 785
A. General 786
B. Of the Head 794
C. Of the Body 796
D. Of the Members 797
Synoptical Table of the Peculiarities of the Coats 800
3. Causes of the Modifications of the Coats 799
4. Indices furnished by the Coats and their Peculiarities as to the Qualities of Horses 803

CHAPTER II.

The Height 806

CHAPTER III.

Certificate of Description 813

SECTION SEVENTH.

THE APTITUDES OR THE SERVICES.

CHAPTER I.

PAGE

Race-Horses 825
A. Running-Horse 825
B. Steeple-Chaser 827
C. Trotters (in Harness or under the Saddle) 829

CHAPTER II.

Horses of Luxury 833
A. Coach-Horses (Large and Small Coach-Horses) 833
B. Saddle-Horses (Hackney, Cob, Hunter, Double Pony, Pony) 837

CHAPTER III.

Cavalry Horses 844
A. Staff Horses 845
B. Troop Horses 846

CHAPTER IV.

Horses of Industry and Commerce 849
A. Slow Heavy-Draught Horses 851
B. Fast Heavy-Draught Horses 852

SECTION EIGHTH.

VICIOUS HORSES.

CHAPTER I.

Whims and Vicious Habits 858
1. Horses which loll the Tongue, double it up, or continually protrude it from the Mouth 859
2. Horses which strike the Lower Lip against the Upper 859
3. Horses which rub the Lower Extremity of the Head against the Manger, or the Tail against surrounding Objects 860
4. Horses which shake the Head or jerk the Reins 860
5. Horses which grasp the Branches of the Bit with the Lower Lip . . . 861
6. Horses which tear their Blankets with the Teeth 861
7. Horses which rest one Hind-Foot upon the other 861
8. Horses which lie down Cow-Fashion 862

PAGE
9. Horses which strip their Halters 862
10. Horses which roll as soon as they are harnessed or when they return to the Stable after working 863
11. Horses which trot in the Stable 863
12. Horses which paw in the Stable 864
13. Horses which weave in the Stable 864
14. Horses which eat Earth 864
15. Horses which have the Vice of "Wind-Sucking," or swallowing Air . 865

CHAPTER II.

Vices properly so called 869
§ 1. External Manifestations Proper to each Vice 869
1. Balky Horses 869
2. Horses difficult to Approach or to Groom 870
3. Horses difficult to Harness or to Mount 871
4. Horses difficult to Shoe 871
5. Biters 872
6. Horses which rear and strike with the Fore-Feet 873
7. Horses which back 874
8. Kickers 874
9. Timid Horses, Shyers 876
10. Aversion to Special Objects 877
11. Runaway Horses 879
§ 2. General Causes of Vices 882

CHAPTER III.

Choice of the Horse 886
1. The Seller 887
2. The Purchaser 892
3. Examination of the Horse 894
4. Horses mated or paired 901
5. Horses which may be mounted or driven at will 903

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

FIG.		PAGE
1.	Situation of the Centre of Gravity in the Horse	4
2.	Determination of the Centre of Gravity	5
3.	Stability of the Equilibrium	10
4, 5, 6.	The Lever and Muscular Mechanism	12, 13
7.	Lever of the First Class	16
8, 9.	Lever of the Second and Third Classes	17
10.	The Inclined Plane	19
11.	Regions of the Horse seen in Profile	24
12.	Regions of the Horse seen in Front	25
13.	Regions of the Horse seen Behind	25
14.	Regions of the Horse seen Laterally and in Front	26
15.	Regions of the Horse seen Laterally and Behind	27
16.	Superficial Structures viewed in Profile	28
17.	Superficial Structures viewed in Front	30
18.	Superficial Structures viewed from Behind	30
19.	Regions of the Head	35
20.	Vertical Section of the Eye of the Horse (semi-schematic)	49
21.	Examination of the Eye	52
22.	Examination of the Eye	53
23.	Normal Eye	54
24.	Examination of the Nostril	62
25.	Interior of the Mouth (after Bruneau)	70
26.	Examination of the Mouth	77
27.	Bit of the Bridle	80
28.	Directions of the Head and the Neck	89
29.	Directions of the Head and the Neck	90
30.	Directions of the Head and the Neck	92
31.	Over-check Rein	92
32.	Direction of the Neck	101
33.	Direction of the Neck	103
34.	Coxæ	124
35.	The Coxa as a Bent Lever	124
36.	Length of the Croup	126
37.	Openness of the Ilio-ischial Angle	126
38.	Variations in the Inclination of the Ilium	132
39.	Variations in the Inclination of the Ischium	133
40.	Simultaneous Variations of the Ischium and the Ilium	134
41.	Influence of the Misplacement of the Coxæ as a whole	135

FIG. PAGE
42, 43. Convexity of a Curve 153
44. Convexity of the Ribs 155
45. State of the Hairs of the Tail 170
46. Docked Tail, with the Hairs long 171
47, 48, 49. Docked Tail, with the Hairs shortened 171, 172
50, 51. Horse in the Act of Pulling 187, 189
52, 53. Limits of Extension and of Flexion 191, 193
54. Schemes of the Evolution of two Congeneric Members during the Phases of Contact and of Elevation 194
55. Action of the Anterior Member in the Trot 197
56. Action of the Posterior Member in the Trot 199
57. Length of the Shoulder 204
58. Length of the Shoulder in Relation with the Arm 206
59, 60, 61. Direction of the Shoulder 207, 208
62. The Scapulo-humeral Angle 209
63. Direction of the Arm 216
64. Scheme of the Muscular Incidences of the Straight and the Oblique Arm . 217
65. Compensation of the Straight Shoulder by an Oblique Arm 218
66. The Olecranon as a Lever-arm 220
67. Form of the Knee 229
68, 69, 150, 151. Direction of the Knee in an Antero-posterior Sense . 231, 232, 450
70, 71. Direction of the Knee in Relation to the Median Line 233
72. Scheme of the Direction of the Thigh 241
73, 74. Length of the Thigh 242
75. Scheme of the Width of the Leg 249
76. Tendons and Tendinous Bursæ of the Hock 254
77. Form of the Hock 256
78. Scheme of the Rigidity of the Posterior Member 259
79. Straight Tibia 264
80. Oblique Canon 266
81, 82. Deviations of the Vertical Axis of the Hock 269
83. Capped Hock 270
84, 85. Curb and Spavin 273
86. Spavin 274
87. Jarde 275
88. Jarde upon the Dissected Hock 276
89. Jarde upon the Macerated Hock 277
90, 91. Different Views of the Dissected Hock 278
92, 93, 96, 97. Bones and Ligaments of the Canon, Fetlock, Pastern, and Coronet 280, 291
94, 95. Width of the Canon 285
98. Mechanism of the Articulation of the Fetlock 292
99, 100. Scheme of the Length of the Pastern 301, 302
101, 102, 152, 153. Direction of the Pastern 304, 450
103. Disadvantages from Excess or Insufficiency of the Obliquity of the Pastern 305
104, 105. The Pastern as a Lever 306
106. Longitudinal and Median Section of the Foot 314
107. Normal Foot before and after Maceration 315
108. Foot viewed in Front 316
109. Profile of the Hoof 317
110. Wall of the Hoof 317

FIG. PAGE
111. Inferior Face of the Hoof 317
112, 113. Antero-posterior and Transverse Sections of the Hoof 318
114. Interior of the Hoof 319
115. Transverse Section of the Hoof (Posterior Part) 319
116. Frog and Periople 319
117. Hoof with Perioplic Band detached 320
118. Views of the Fore-foot 320
119. Hind-foot 321
120. Foot with High Heels 331
121. Foot with Low Heels 331
122. Foot, Pincard 333
123. Deformity of Hoof from Laminitis 338
124. Keraphyllocele 339
125. The Proportions, after Bourgelat 347
126. The Proportions of Eclipse, after Saint-Bel 351
127. The Proportions of the Horse seen in Profile 360
128. The Proportions of the Head viewed in Profile 362
129. The Proportions of the Head viewed in Front 363
130. Comparative Proportions of the Man and the Horse 364
131. Articular Angles, after Morris 366
132. Anterior Member with the Oblique Segments inclined Forty-five Degrees to the Horizon 368
133. The same in the Posterior Member 368
134. The Articular Angles upon a Drawing, from a Photograph of Fitz-Gladiator 372
135. Toise 373
136. Measurement of the Inclination of the Segments 375
137. Use of the Arthrogoniometer 376
138. Arthrogoniometer for measuring the Articular Angles 376
139. Value of the Articular Angles in the Fore Member 381
140. Value of the Articular Angles in the Hind Member 381
141. Length of the Body 388
142. Length of the Body not dependent upon that of the Vertebral Column . 390
143. Length of the Body as modified by the Obliquity of the Shoulder and the Croup 392
144. The Rassembler 440
145. The Camper 440
146. The Placer 441
147. Lines of Equilibrium of the Horse viewed in Profile 444
148. Scheme of the Lines of Equilibrium 445
149. Normal and Abnormal Axes of the Fore Member 446
154. Axes viewed in Front 451
155. Normal Axis viewed in Front 452
156. Horse too Open in Front 452
157. Bow-legged Horse 454
158. Outbow-footed Horse 454
159. Horse Closed in Front 455
160. Ox-Knee 455
161. Horse Cross-footed in Front 455
162. Scheme of the Axis of the Hind Member 456
163. Normal and Abnormal Axes of the Hind Member seen in Profile 457

FIG. PAGE
164. Axes viewed from Behind 460
165. Horse too Open Behind 461
166. Bow-legged Horse 462
167. Horse Closed Behind 463
168. Horse Cow-hocked 463
169. Rearing 468
170. Kicking 471
171. Scheme of the Movement of a Member during the Phases of Contact and Elevation 475
172. Exchange of Contact upon the Posterior Bipeds in the Walk 476
173. Instrument for Analyzing the Gaits (Marey) 480
174. Cylinder of Registration 480
175. Chaussure Exploratrice (Marey) 481
176. Bracelet Explorateur (Marey) 481
177. Registering Apparatus of Marey applied to the Horse 482
178. Chaussure Exploratrice for registering the Gaits by Electricity 484
179. Longitudinal Section of the same 484
180. Instantaneous Photographs of the Fast Gallop, after Muybridge 487
181. Chrono-photograph of the Walk of a Man 489
182. Chrono-photograph of the Leap of a Man 489
183. Movement of the Anterior Member of the Horse 490
184. Lecocq's Method of Notation of the Gaits 491
185. Hodochronometric Scale of Vincent and Goiffon 492
186. Notation of the Running of a Man (Marey) 493
187. Notation of the Walk of Two Pedestrians 494
188. Notation of M. Lenoble du Teil 495
189 Table for Artificial Notation of the Gaits 498
190. Model for Notation of the Gaits (Marey) 500
191. Model for Notation of the Gaits 501
192. Synopsis of the Notations of the Gaits of the Horse 502
193. The Amble 505
194. Notation of Two Men Walking 506
195. Notation of the Marched Amble 507
196. Trail of the Amble, after Lenoble du Teil 507
197, 198. Displacements of the Centre of Gravity 508
199. Trail of the Broken Amble 509
200. Notation of the Broken Amble 510
201, 202, 203. Trails of the Trot (Lenoble du Teil) 511
204, 205, 206. The Leaped Trot 512
207. Kinematic Analysis of the Play of the Anterior Member in the Ordinary Trot 513
208. Kinematic Analysis of the Play of the Posterior Member in the Ordinary Trot 514
209. Tracing, Notation, and Reactions of the Trot 515
210. Notation of the Ordinary Trot in which the Phase of Suspension is not Perceptible 516
211. Notation of the Marched Trot 517
212, 213. Displacements of the Centre of Gravity 517, 518
214, 215, 216. The Flying Trot of the Horse Abe Edington 524
217. Trail of the Flying Trot of the Horse Abe Edington 524
218. Notation of the same 525

FIG. PAGE
219. Notation of the Canter in Front 528
220. Running Walk: Notation and Bases 529
221. Trail of the Running Walk 530
222. Kinematic Analysis of the Play of the Anterior Member in the Walk . . 531
223. Kinematic Analysis of the Play of the Posterior Member in the Walk . . 531
224. Tracing and Notation of the Walk, with Equality of the Lateral and Diagonal Contacts 533
225, 226, 227, 228. Succession of the Contacts of the Walk 534, 535
229. Notation of the Ordinary Walk 535
230. Walk, with Predominance of the Lateral Contacts 536
231, 232, 233. Diverse Trails of the Walk 538
234. Backing 543
235. Backing, in the Horse attached to a Load 544
236. Diagonal or United Gallop 546
237. Lateral or Disunited Gallop 546
238. Kinematic Analysis of the Play of the Anterior Member in the Gallop . . 548
239. Kinematic Analysis of the Play of the Posterior Member in the Gallop . . 548
240. Tracings, Notation, and Reactions of the Gallop of the Trained Horse . . 549
241. Notation of the Gallop in Three Times 550
242. Notation of the Full Gallop 551
243, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250. The Full Gallop, its Beats, Bases, and Projection 554, 555
251. Passage from Station into the Gallop 555
252. Principal Trails of the Gallop (Barrier and Lenoble du Teil) 558
253. Displacements of the Centre of Gravity 560
254. Instantaneous Photographs of the Running Gallop of the American Horse Sallie Gardner (Muybridge) 564
255. Notation of the Running Gallop, from Instantaneous Photographs 565
256. Trail of the Gallop, furnished by Sallie Gardner 565
257. Transition from the Walk to the Trot 568
258. Transition from the Trot to the Walk 568
259. Transition from the Trot to the Gallop 569
260. Transition from the Gallop to the Trot 569
261. Scheme of the Three Principal Varieties of Leaps 570
262, 263, 264, 265, 266. Different Phases in the Execution of the Leap 571
267. Trail of the Leap over a Hedge 572
268. Notation of the Leap over a Hedge 573
269. Instantaneous Photograph of Draught-Horses moving a Heavy Load . . 577
270. Dentition of the Horse, as a whole 595
271. Deciduous Incisors viewed on their Anterior Face 598
272. Deciduous Incisors (Profile and Dental Tables) 599
273. Deciduous Pincer 600
274. Magnified Longitudinal Section of a Superior Virgin Pincer of the First Dentition, seen in its Alveolus 600
275. Longitudinal Section of the Jaws, showing the Relative Situation of the Milk and Permanent Incisors 601
276. Unworn Inferior Pincer of the Second Dentition 602
277. Superior Virgin Incisor of the Second Dentition (Pincer) 603
278. Longitudinal Section of a Permanent Incisor that has been used 604
279. Eccentric and Longitudinal Section of a Superior and Inferior Permanent Intermediate 604

FIG. PAGE
280. Longitudinal and Median Sections of the Pincer, Intermediate, and Corner in each of the Jaws 605
281. Series of Longitudinal Sections of the Right Inferior Incisors of a Five-year-old Horse 607
282. Schematic Section of the Dental Follicle of an Inferior Incisor of a Horse 608
283. Longitudinal and Median Sections of a Permanent Inferior Pincer (enlarged) 609
284. Radical Cementation of the Incisors of a Horse 610
285. Longitudinal Antero-posterior Section of an Inferior Pincer, etc. 611
286. Median and Longitudinal Sections of Incisors, showing, 1st, the Growth of the Teeth at their Roots; 2d, the Progressive Wear of their Tables; 3d, their Length and Obliquity according to the Age; 4th, Obliteration of their Pulp Cavities; 5th, finally, their Radical Cementation 613
287. Transverse Section of Inferior Right Pincer, showing the Different Layers constituting the Tooth, with their Relative Thickness (Magnified Five Diameters) 614
288. Incisive Arcades exposed to show the Progressive Inclination of the Teeth in Relation to the Plane of Meeting of the Jaws 617
289. Incisors exposed by their Anterior Face to show their Relative Inclination towards the Median Line 618
290. Double Inferior Right Canine Tooth in the Ass 620
291. Superior Right Canine Tooth 621
292. Longitudinal and Median Sections of the Canines 621
293. The Three Superior Deciduous Molars (Right Side) 623
294. The Three Inferior Deciduous Molars (Right Side) 624
295. Transverse Section of the Inferior Jaw, showing the Relation in the Alveolus of the Permanent and Deciduous Molars at the Moment of Eruption 625
296. Transverse Section of the Superior Jaw, showing the Relation in the Alveolus of the Permanent and Deciduous Molars at the Moment of Eruption 626
297. Superior Permanent Molar (Right Side, Virgin Tooth) 627
298. Superior Molar Arcade of the Right Side of a Horse Six Years Old Past . 628
299. Inferior Molar of the Second Dentition (Left Side, Virgin Tooth) 630
300. Inferior Molar Arcade of the Left Side of a Horse Six Years Old Past . . 631
301. Superior Right Molar removed from its Dental Follicle 632
302. Inferior Left Molar removed from its Dental Follicle 633
303. Table of Superior and Inferior Molars 634
304. Inferior Left Molar Arcade of a Very Old Horse, showing the Radical Cementation 634
305. Transverse Section of a Superior Left Molar (enlarged) 635
306. Superior Left Molar Arcade of the Hipparion 636
307. Transverse Section of an Inferior Right Molar (enlarged) 636
308, 309, 310, 311. Supernumerary Incisor Teeth 722, 723
312. Double Right Inferior Canine in the Ass 724
313. Absence of the Inferior Corners 725
314. Union of Two Superior Incisors 726
315. Fissure of the Infundibulum of the Incisors 727
316. Double Infundibulum of the Incisors 728
317, 318. Superior and Inferior Brachygnathism 737
319. Parrot Mouth 740
320. Reversed Parrot Mouth 742

FIG. PAGE
321. Incisors of the Inferior Jaw too Short 744
322. Inferior Molar Arcade of a Very Old Horse, showing the Radical Cementation, as well as the Insufficient Length of the Middle Teeth 745
323. Right Molar Arcades of a Very Old Horse 746
324. Bevelled Molars from Irregular Wear 748
325. Hypertrophy of the Fourth Right Superior Molar 750
326. Abnormal Wear produced by Cribbing 755
327. Abnormal Wear produced by Cribbing 756
328. Abnormal Wear produced by Cribbing 757
329. Abnormal Wear produced by Cribbing 759
330. Hippometer with Pedestal 808
331. Hippometer without Pedestal 809
332. Hippometric Cane 810
333. Running-Horse, Vermout, Winner of the Great Prize of Paris in 1864 . . 826
334. Steeple-chase Horse, Bois-Roussel, Winner of the French Derby in 1864 . 828
335. Trotter in Harness, Fazan, Russian Stallion of the Orloff Variety 831
336. Trotter under the Saddle, Bayadère, Anglo-Norman Mare 832
337. Large Coach-Horse, Lahore, Half-thoroughbred Anglo-Norman 835
338. Small Coach-Horse, Shang-Haï, Half-thoroughbred Anglo-Norman . . . 837
339. Hackney 838
340. Cob 840
341. Hunter 841
342. Double Pony 842
343. Pony 843
344. Slow Heavy-draught Horse 851
345. Fast Heavy-draught Horse 853
346. Velocité, Percheron Mare of the Compagnie Générale des Omnibus . . . 854

PLATES.

PLATE		PAGE
I.	Birth	663
II.	About One Week	664
III.	One Month	665
IV.	Three Months	666
V.	Four Months	667
VI.	Five Months	669
VII.	Ten Months	671
VIII.	One Year	673
IX.	Sixteen Months	675
X.	Twenty Months	677
XI.	Two Years	679
XII.	Rising Three Years	681
XIII.	Three Years Past	683
XIV.	Rising Four Years	685
XV.	Four Years	687
XVI.	Four Years Past	689
XVII.	Rising Five Years	691
XVIII.	Five Years	693
XIX.	Six Years	695
XX.	Seven Years	697
XXI.	Eight Years	699
XXII.	Nine Years	701
XXIII.	Ten Years	703
XXIV.	Eleven Years	705
XXV.	Twelve Years	707
XXVI.	Thirteen Years	709
XXVII.	Fifteen Years	711
XXVIII.	Seventeen Years	713
XXIX.	Nineteen Years	715
XXX.	Twenty-one Years	717
XXXI.	Thirty Years	719
XXXII.	Bégu.—Nine Years	731
XXXIII.	False Bégu.—Fourteen Years	735
XXXIV.	Bishoping	769

THE

EXTERIOR OF THE HORSE.

SECTION FIRST.

PRELIMINARY IDEAS OF ANIMAL MECHANICS.

CHAPTER I.

OBJECT, END, AND UTILITY OF THE EXTERIOR.

THE term **exterior** of the horse seems to have been employed by veterinarians only since the close of the last century, dating from the period when Bourgelat published his book upon the *external form of the horse* in 1768, six years after the foundation of veterinary schools.

Before his time veterinarians and horsemen had entered but superficially upon the study of the forms of the horse. They had limited themselves in their works to determining, sometimes by figures, the principles relating to the proportions. These efforts, however, had passed, so to speak, unperceived, were lost among the publications of the times and drowned in the midst of the different writings of which the numerous veterinary treatises were composed. Here, as in the other branches of veterinary science, Bourgelat was endeavoring to establish principles to guide the pupils who flocked into his schools. If it be remembered that this innovator was an eminent master as well as a skilful horseman, we will not be astonished to see that he has reached with the greatest ease, in his *treatise on the exterior*, if not absolute perfection, at least that degree of exactness which it was just to demand at that epoch from a man who turned everything into instruction. Bourgelat more than all others was conscious of the great utility of the horse, and the necessity of preparing in a special manner

the professional men whom he gave to the agricultural world. He desired that they should be well acquainted with and appreciate the qualities and the defects of this merchandise, which every day gained more importance and acquired a greater value. The inauguration of instruction upon the *exterior* dates from this period.

Its **object** is to enable the scholar *to determine by a rapid examination of the form of a horse his relative commercial value in the service in which he is to be employed.* In 1837,[1] H. Bouley had already stated its object as follows:

"Given the external conformation of an animal, we determine the service in which he may be employed and estimate the amount and duration of the effects which his machinery is capable of producing." This study, we see, is only a branch of zootechnics, but differs from the latter in that it does not seek the conditions for the amelioration of the equine races. It is intended, rather, to be a guide in the choice of an animal at the sale. Its importance to the horseman is such that the necessity of forming a distinct course for its study and devoting to it extended investigations is understood. This study is, then, especially an applied science, and it is therefore indispensable before entering upon it to have a certain knowledge of anatomy, physiology, mechanics, physics, hygiene, zootechnics, and pathology.

In order to be able to understand it well, its theory should first be learned. A knowledge of the horse is a problem full of difficulties when its application is to be made to any given animal. It is only through constant habit that we can succeed in forming by a rapid examination a good judgment of his value as a beast of service. No doubt this result may be obtained without having undertaken anatomical and physiological studies. It is sufficient to possess what tradesmen call judgment, a glance of the eye; but this is only acquired by long practice. We all know what perfection in this respect is acquired by certain persons quite ignorant of the sciences which are applied to the exterior. The officers of our remounts, of our studs, even simple horse-dealers, astonish us sometimes by the rapidity with which they see in a horse the weak point, the defect, and the blemish; they have, moreover, that veritable tact of knowing how to adapt themselves, in their purchases, to the exigencies, modes, and fancies of the times. However, the time which it has taken them to obtain this result must be considered. Theoretical ideas have precisely the effect of shortening this time; they are, for beginners, aids which experience

[1] Maison rustique du XIXe siècle, t. ii.

will allow them to dispense with, but without which they could not rise above this empirical knowledge, appanage of the ignorant or of the coxcomb, who accepts under the same title the true and the false, and who is incapable of distinguishing otherwise than by the routine with which he proceeds.

If the knowledge of the horse is an art, it is especially one which consists in observing, comparing, and judging according to positive information. Besides, it is necessary, in order to reach perfection, to have observed much, to have put into practice that faculty which makes the clinician, the connoisseur, and the artist. It is when such an education is carried to a considerable extent that we succeed in seizing at once what good or defective qualifications the horse possesses, and that it is possible to form a just conclusion by appreciating to what degree the good qualities exceed the bad.

CHAPTER II.

CENTRE OF GRAVITY.

THE simultaneous actions of the force of gravity upon all the molecules of a body may be considered as so many small parallel forces having the same purpose and the same direction, whose total sum is the **weight** of the body, and whose result is applied to one point which is the **centre of gravity**.

The vertical pressure of the centre of gravity to the ground is called the line of gravitation (line of gravity, Raabe & Bonnal). We have just seen that the result of these forces is equal to their sum, and that the position of its point of application depends upon the intensity of its components.

All the actions of the force of gravity being equal for each molecule of the same kind, if these molecules of a body are uniformly distributed,—in a word, if the latter be homogeneous,—it will in all its parts be equally attracted by this force. Therefore, nothing will be easier than to determine the centre of gravity, especially if the body has a geometrical form. Special procedures are employed to determine the location of this centre in a body, whatever may be its form. We will not speak of this at present.

Seldom, however, are bodies found in conditions sufficiently homogeneous for its determination to be simple. Certain parts are much more dense than others, and therefore the force of gravity attracts them more. The result of this is that the centre of gravity, instead of being situated in the middle of the body, is drawn nearer, as has been seen, to the parts which weigh the most. This is observed in organized bodies.

Its Determination in Animals.—In animals new difficulties arise. The vital phenomena being only the phenomena of movement, the material particles

at each instant are displaced in different directions, and thus are modified the weight and volume of the organs in which the molecular changes take place. Other displacements, much more considerable, indeed even more important from the point of view which concerns us, are due to the actions of the organs, the different attitudes of the body, or the movements which are caused by locomotion. We understand, then, how difficult becomes the exact determination of the centre of gravity, and the great importance of sufficiently appreciating its

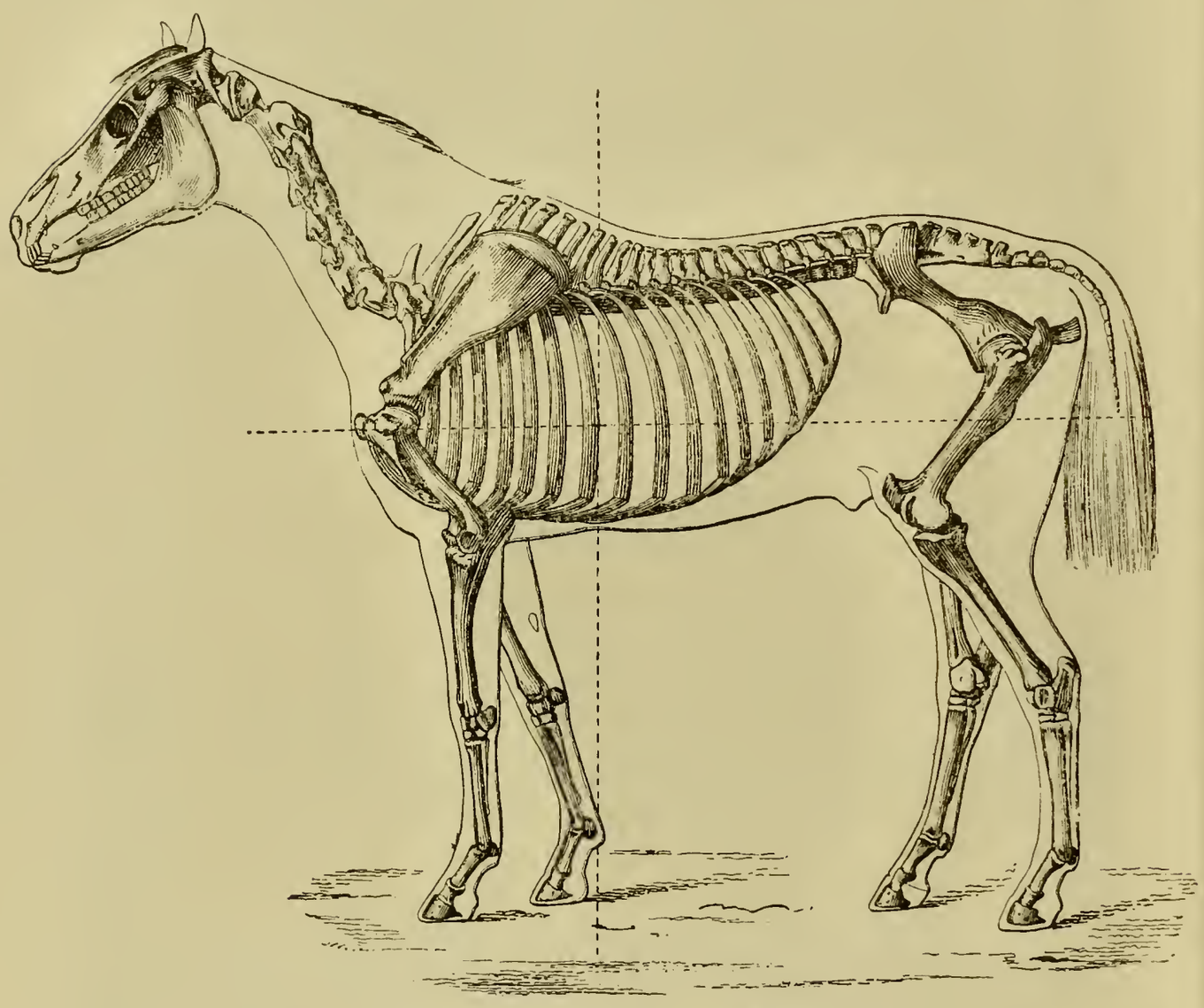


Fig. 1.—Situation of the centre of gravity in the horse.

displacements when it is a question of obtaining from it the conditions of equilibrium.

According to Borelli,[1] the centre of gravity in the horse is situated in the middle of the height of the trunk, and the line of gravitation falls through the centre of the quadrilateral formed by the four members.

According to Professor Colin,[2] it almost corresponds to the intersection of two lines, one of them (vertical) passing back of the xiphoid appendix of the sternum, the other (horizontal) separating the middle from the inferior third of

[1] Borelli, De motu animalium, Naples, 1734, p. 126.

[2] G. Colin, Traité de physiologie comparée des animaux, 3e édition, Paris, 1886, t. i. p. 460.

the body (Fig. 1). Further on, the same author adds: "It is clear that the position of the centre of gravity and the distribution of the weight of the body upon the members must vary very much according to the conformation of animals whose head, neck, abdomen, and croup present such diverse proportions."

The position of the centre of gravity of the horse, as indicated by M. Colin, seems to us very nearly correct, at least judging from the experiments which we have conducted.

At first, it seems extremely probable that this point is situated in the median plane of the body. In effecting a series of weighings bearing alternately upon both of the lateral bipeds of the same subject maintained as much as possible in an invariable attitude, we succeed in determining that the left lateral biped, for example, supports a weight very nearly equal to that of the right lateral biped. On the other hand, if, from the example of MM. Raabe and Bonnal,[1] we consider that the dorso-lumbar column *AB*, Fig 2, measuring the interval comprised be-

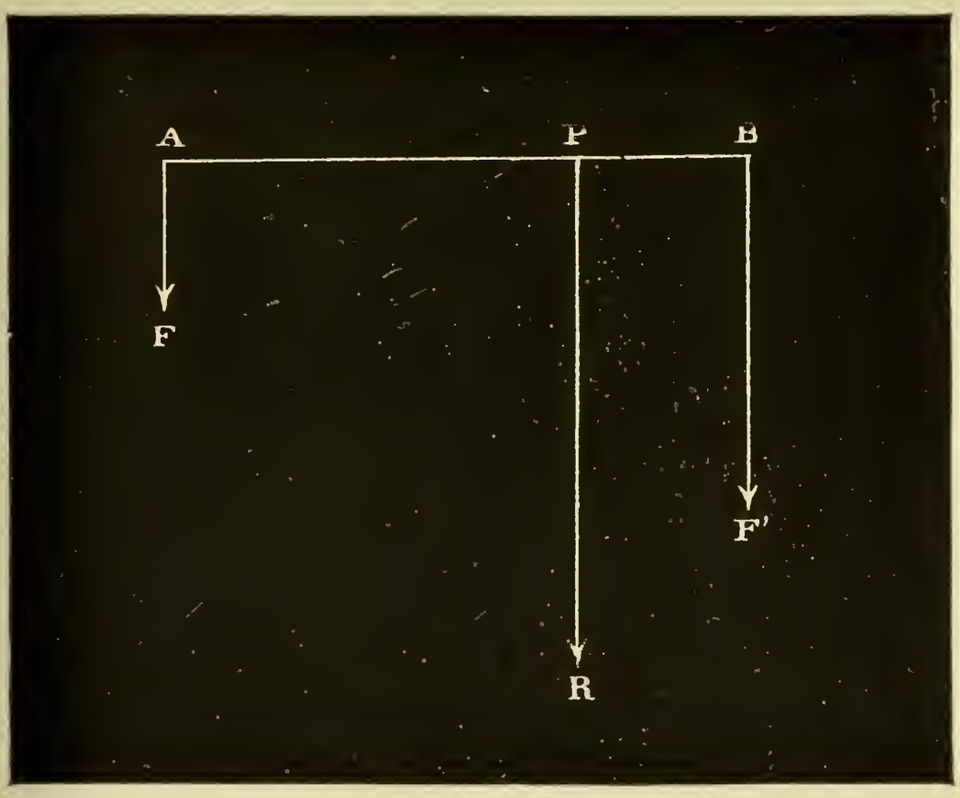


Fig. 2.

tween the centre of the movement of the shoulder and that of the haunch,—that is to say, the length of the base of support of a well-formed horse,—is attracted by two parallel forces F and F', distributing the weight of the body upon the posterior and anterior bipeds, it will be easy to determine with considerable approximation the position of the point P, through which passes the line of gravitation,—that is to say, the resultant of these two forces. It is known that this point divides the line AB into two parts inversely proportional to the forces F and F', in such a way that we have

$$\frac{F}{F'} = \frac{PB}{PA}.$$

[1] Raabe et Bonnal, Détermination des lignes de gravité du cheval, etc. In Archives vétérinaires, 1883, p. 538.

Here are, in fact, the results which we have obtained by the aid of this procedure upon a saddle-horse of a fine form provided with good equilibrium, that measured 1.55 m. at the withers and at the croup, and 1.53 m. from the point of the shoulder to the point of the buttock. The subject, saddled and bridled, was weighed, the neck at 45 degrees and the head elevated. Its base of support, AB, was equal to 1.20 m. As to the total weight, which was 445 kilogrammes, it was distributed thus:

Upon the anterior biped . . . . . 257 kil. (F').
Upon the posterior biped . . . . . 188 kil. (F).

In the particular case of which we are speaking, the point P divides the line AB, which unites the two forces, into two parts inversely proportional to their intensity. We have then

$$\frac{F}{F'} = \frac{PB}{PA} \text{ or } = \frac{AB - PA}{PA}.$$

By the addition of the denominators to each of the two terms of this equation we obtain

$$\frac{F + F'}{F'} = \frac{AB - PA + PA}{PA} = \frac{AB}{PA};$$

whence

$$PA = \frac{F' \times AB}{F + F'} = \frac{257 \times 1.20 \text{ m.}}{445} = 0.69 \text{ m.}$$

and

$$PB = 120 \text{ m.} - 0.69 \text{ m.} = 0.51 \text{ m.}$$

The line of gravitation then falls upon the horse submitted to the experiment at 0.51 m. posterior to the anterior biped.

This is about the position which MM. Raabe and Bonnal have assigned to it. The line of gravitation of the Arab mare upon which these horsemen experimented was situated 0.69 m. in front of the coxo-femoral centre and 0.47 m. from the centre of movement of the shoulder. The distance of its two centres of movement was 1.17 m. instead of 1.20 m. As to its bipeds, they weighed: the anterior, 270 kilogrammes—the posterior, 184. In this case, the distribution of the weight, although analogous to that of our horse, differs from it, since in the latter the surplus weight of the anterior bipeds is only 69 kilogrammes, whilst in the mare it reached 86 kilogrammes. The more anterior position of the line of gravity in the latter is thus explained.

MM. Raabe and Bonnal have deduced with reason the practical importance of obtaining as precise a determination as possible of the centre of gravity. The ideal to be realized, when we think of placing a dorsal burden upon a horse, should, in fact, consist in distributing this burden upon each biped proportionally to the weight which it bears in the natural state. In these conditions the centre of gravity preserves its normal position and one of the bipeds is never relieved at the expense of the other.

In 1835, Morris and Baucher[1] had already experimentally determined in the horse the displacements of the centre of gravity, by changing the position of the head and neck, as well as that of the rider.

"With this purpose," says Morris, "M. Baucher, a horseman, and myself were going to the general mart of the Custom-House at Gros-Caillou to weigh horses upon scales of proportion with movable planks invented a few years ago. . . .

"The two weighing-machines were placed in such a manner that the anterior extremities rested upon the middle of the first and the posterior extremities upon the middle of the second.

[1] Morris, Essai sur l'extérieur du cheval, Paris, 1857, p. 41.

The two planks being exactly upon the same level, and belonging to weighing-machines of the same proportion, could therefore be taken for two scales of an ordinary balance. We equipped a saddle-mare regularly formed, although the head and neck were stronger than the remainder of the body. She was bridled and saddled.

"The scales being abandoned to the weight of the mare held in a complete state of immobility, the head being in its ordinary position, rather low than high, gave us the following results:

Fore Extremity.	Hind Extremity.	Total Weight.	Difference.
210 k.	174 k.	384 k.	36 k.

"A fluctuation of from 3 to 5 kilogrammes was established, which settled alternately upon the fore and hind extremities, on account of the movements produced by the organs of respiration.

"We lowered the head so that the end of the nose reached the level of the chest. This movement effected and the immobility obtained in this position, the fore extremity increased 8 kilogrammes, of which the hind was relieved.

Fore Extremity.	Hind Extremity.	Total Weight.	Difference.
218 k.	166 k.	384 k.	52 k.

"The head being raised until the end of the nose was on a level with the height of the withers, the same precautions for immobility being observed, the fore extremity displaced 10 kilogrammes of its weight upon the hind and then balanced itself, with the following results:

Fore Extremity.	Hind Extremity.	Total Weight.	Difference.
200 k.	184 k.	384 k.	16 k.

"The head, being returned to its former position, was drawn back upon the neck and elevated somewhat by the action of the bridle. Ten kilogrammes were then displaced backward as follows:

Fore Extremity.	Hind Extremity.	Total Weight.	Difference.
202 k.	182 k.	384 k.	29 k.

These results evidently prove that the more the head is raised, if not naturally, at least by the action of the hand, the more its weight and that of the neck are equally distributed upon the extremities, if the position be not forced.

"After these experiments M. Baucher mounted the mare, and the two scales poised with the following weights:

Fore Extremity.	Hind Extremity.	Total Weight.	Difference.
251 k.	197 k.	448 k.	54 k.

"The rider placed in an academic position, his weight of 64 kilogrammes was distributed as follows: 41 kilogrammes upon the anterior members and 23 upon the posterior.

"Being seated in such a manner that the upper part of the body leaned backward, M. Baucher displaced 10 kilogrammes upon the hind extremity. Then drawing the horse's head backward according to his method, he again charged the same with a weight of 8 kilogrammes; total, 18 kilogrammes. In this position we obtain:

Fore Extremity.	Hind Extremity.	Total Weight.	Difference.
233 k.	215 k.	448 k.	18 k.

"By bearing entirely upon the stirrups, the weight on the anterior members increased 12 kilogrammes.

"Afterwards we placed a gray horse of a vicious disposition upon the scales, which, with differences already well indicated in construction, furnished us with analogous results."

In union with Bellanger, first veterinary flugelman,[1] Morris instituted a second series in 1857. The following are the results:

Observations upon Horses.	Weight: Head at Forty-five Degrees.			Weight: Head raised and drawn backward.			Weight: Head lowered and drawn towards the Chest.		
	Fore Extremity.	Hind Extremity.	Total.	Fore Extremity.	Hind Extremity.	Total.	Fore Extremity.	Hind Extremity.	Total.
	Kil.	Kil.	Kil.	Kil.	Kil.	Kil.	Kil.	Kil.	Kil.
Average of eleven horses. *Good conformation*, head and neck light	260	195	455	250	205	455	267	188	455
Average of eleven horses. Body well proportioned, neck short, head strong	246	200	446	240	206	446	250	196	446
Average of two horses. Body well formed, neck short, head ordinary	240	195	435	235	200	435	245	190	435
Average of two horses. Neck strong, head light	245	200	445	235	210	445	255	190	445
Average of two horses. Neck long, head ordinary	250	195	445	240	205	445	260	185	445
One horse. Neck strong, head strong, croup short and oblique	240	210	450	236	214	450	244	206	450
One horse. Neck and body well formed, head strong	260	200	460	250	210	460	270	190	460
One horse. Neck strong, head strong	270	200	470	265	205	470	265	205	470
One horse. Neck strong, head strong	235	215	450	230	220	450	240	210	450

"It may be remarked, in considering these different weights," General Morris adds, "that the weight of the fore extremity is about one-ninth greater than that of the hind; that the change of the position of the head causes the weight of the fore extremity to differ from that of the hind by 10 kilogrammes; that long necks give more weight to the fore extremity than short and strong ones; that the fore extremity is heavier than the hind." M. Colin has repeated the first of these experiments upon two horses, and arrived at results entirely concordant.

Our Experiments.—We will say that most of these have been made upon fifty horses of different sizes and races, chosen from the hospital of the school at Alfort.

[1] Morris, loc. cit., p. 44.

We have also sought to appreciate the *extent of the posterior and anterior displacements of the line of gravitation* in other different conditions,—for example, with the mounted horse, according as the rider sits erect, leans forward or backward, or as he carries his head high or low. The displacements of this line are then determined, whether in front of or behind its average position, which oscillate between two and six centimetres, sometimes more, according to the case. Differences of weight, quite considerable, are equally produced in weighing both of the lateral bipeds when the head, the neck, the trunk, or the rider is inclined to one side, facts which show the importance of the *lateral displacements* of the centre of gravity during locomotion, especially the work of dressing. But it is in horses high or low in front that the variations of the weight of the fore or hind extremity assume importance. These have no longer the momentary or accidental character of the preceding, and from this fact always involve, according to the case, a permanent surcharge of one of the two bipeds, anterior or posterior, and consequently their premature ruin. Their gravity augments in horses low over the withers when from the nature of their employment they are obliged to carry burdens, as in the service of the saddle, the shafts, or the pack-saddle.

In order to prove this, we weighed successively several subjects, by placing them first upon the plank of a weighing-machine perfectly horizontal; then we raised gradually sometimes the anterior quarters, sometimes the posterior, so as to obtain, at will, horses having the fore or hind quarters low. The height was carefully noticed at the beginning of each trial, and then it was known exactly how much the croup or the withers were raised or lowered. The results were then in all points comparable, since in all cases the observations were made upon the same subject. They were found to be in conformity with the theory, and may be considered as a corroboration of the preceding experiments. We have chronicled them in the following tables:

1.—ELEVATION OF THE HEIGHT AT THE WITHERS.

Order of Numbers.	Height at Withers.	Height at Croup.	Total Weight.	Distribution of Weight.		Excess of Anterior Quarters.	Increase in Centimetres of Height at the Withers.	Distribution of Weight.		Excess of Anterior Quarters.	Observations.
				Anterior Quarters.	Posterior Quarters.			Anterior Quarters.	Posterior Quarters.		
	M.C.	M.C.	Kil.	Kil.	Kil.	Kil.	M.C.	Kil.	Kil.	Kil.	
1	1.47	1.52	465	250	215	35	0.10	245	220	25	Common mare.
2	1.68	1.69	688	374	314	60	0.10	368	320	48	Percheron gelding.
3	1.46	1.48	428	245	183	62	0.11	238	190	48	Common mare.
4	1.44	1.45	314	184	130	54	0.11	175	139	36	Barb. mare.
5	1.58	1.63	488	272	216	56	0.04	268	220	48	Thorough. horse.
6	1.62	1.61	526	308	218	90	0.06	306	220	86	Norman gelding.
7	1.65	1.66	570	310	260	50	0.06	308	262	46	Percheron gelding.
8	1.65	1.62	550	310	240	70	0.06	307	243	64	Norman mare.
9	1.39	1.39	330	200	130	70	0.06	195	135	60	Corsican gelding.
10	1.47	1.50	445	260	185	75	0.06	255	190	65	Irish cob.
11	1.65	1.61	630	370	260	110	0.06	365	265	100	Boulon. gelding.
12	1.54	1.53	455	288	167	121	0.06	284	171	113	Percheron gelding.
13	1.51	1.52	410	245	165	80	0.06	230	180	50	Corsican gelding.
14	1.59	1.60	465	260	205	55	0.06	250	215	35	German gelding.
15	1.15	1.20	235	137	98	39	0.06	125	110	15	Female ass.

2.—ELEVATION OF THE HEIGHT AT THE CROUP.

Order of Numbers.	Height at Withers.	Height at Croup.	Total Weight.	Distribution of Weight.		Excess of Anterior Quarters.	Increase in Centimetres of Height at the Croup.	Distribution of Weight.		Excess of Anterior Quarters.	Observations.
				Anterior Quarters.	Posterior Quarters.			Anterior Quarters.	Posterior Quarters.		
	M.C.	M.C.	Kil.	Kil.	Kil.	Kil.	M.C.	Kil.	Kil.	Kil.	
1	1.47	1.52	465	250	215	35	0.10	258	207	51	Common mare.
2	1.68	1.69	688	374	314	60	0.10	380	308	72	Percheron gelding
3	1.46	1.48	428	245	183	62	0.11	252	176	76	Common mare.
4	1.44	1.45	314	184	130	54	0.11	186	128	58	Barb. mare.
5	1.58	1.63	488	272	216	56	0.04	279	209	70	Thorough. horse.
6	1.62	1.61	526	308	218	90	0.06	323	203	120	Norman gelding.
7	1.65	1.66	570	310	260	50	0.06	312	258	54	Percheron gelding.
8	1.65	1.62	550	310	240	70	0.06	315	235	80	Norman mare.
9	1.39	1.39	330	200	130	70	0.06	203	127	76	Corsican gelding.
10	1.47	1.50	445	260	185	75	0.06	230	215	15	Irish cob.
11	1.65	1.61	630	370	260	110	0.06	372	258	114	Boulon. gelding.
12	1.54	1.53	455	288	167	121	0.06	293	170	123	Percheron gelding.
13	1.51	1.52	410	245	165	80	0.06	260	150	110	Corsican gelding.
14	1.59	1.60	465	260	205	55	0.06	265	200	65	German gelding.
15	1.15	1.20	235	137	98	39	0.06	142	93	49	Female ass.

Let us see now what is understood by the terms *equilibrium* and *base of support.*

Equilibrium in mechanics is the state of a body induced by the forces which destroy one another or which are annulled by a resistance (Littré).

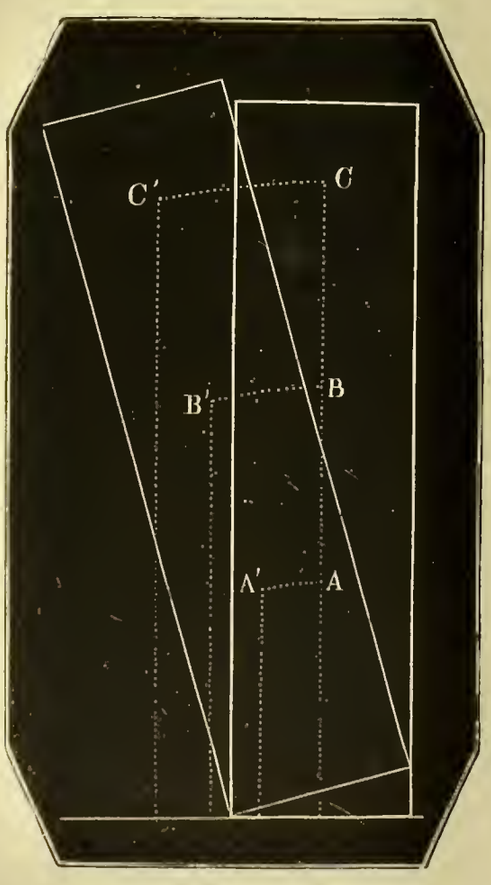


FIG. 3.

In animals the body seldom rests upon the ground by a continued surface (decubitus). It is supported by four broken columns articulated from distance to distance and designated by the name of *members.* The polygon formed by the lines joining the four points which touch the ground at rest represents what is called the **base of support.** This polygon is sometimes a triangle; at other times the base of support is reduced to a line; finally it may be only a point. Whatever may be the form and extent of the base of support, it is necessary, in order to obtain equilibrium, that the line of gravitation does not meet the ground outside of this base.

The equilibrium will be so much more *stable* as the base of support becomes larger, the centre of gravity placed lower, and the line of gravitation nearer the centre of the base. It will be *unstable* in the contrary conditions. In fact, in the solid here represented (Fig. 3) it will be seen that if the centre of gravity is displaced from *A* to *C*, having reached to the point *C*, the slightest oscillation of one side or the other, *CC'* for example, will cause the line of

gravitation to come outside of the base and provoke a fall. Therefore, a horse having a heavy body mounted upon long, slender members drawn close to the median plane will be endowed with an equilibrium relatively *unstable*. As the base of support has the form of an elongated rectangle, with the horse at rest, the displacement of the centre of gravity from in front backward will be much less dangerous for the integrity of its equilibrium than those which take place from side to side, because the line of gravitation will be moved much easier from the base of support in the latter case than in the former. This explains to us why falls during rapid paces scarcely ever take place upon a straight line, but are produced, on the contrary, in turning; why the ambling horse, which moves his members by lateral bipeds, goes faster and falls more frequently than the trotting horse, which moves his members by diagonal bipeds; why the leaping horse, which displaces the centre of gravity greatly, falls down so often; why sliding sideways is more dangerous than moving forward or backward, etc.

That *instability of equilibrium gives the measure of speed* has been justly said. It is easy to account for this. If, from the fact of its displacements, or from its situation being more or less raised, it is carried outside of the base of support, it will cause the members to be displaced with a greater rapidity to support the body, as the fall is more imminent.

The race-horse lengthens his body, extends his head and neck, and seems almost to lie down upon the ground in such a manner as to bring, as much as possible, the centre of gravity in advance of the movement. The dressed horse raises himself in a strong proportion in order to execute more easily the varied movements which at every instant his rider exacts from him. His paces are shortened, raised; his equilibrium is more stable, the displacements of his centre of gravity less extended but more numerous. On account of his acquired speed, and especially because of the instability of his equilibrium, the hippodrome-horse can scarcely make progress upon a straight line; the slightest lateral displacement of the centre of gravity, a little sudden, causes him to fall.

CHAPTER III.

THE LEVER AND MUSCULAR MECHANISM.

THE **lever** is defined as a "rigid and inextensible rod supported upon a fixed point." The form and nature of the substance of which this stalk is composed have no importance from the point of view which concerns us. It is seen, then, that the bones of the skeleton are properly considered as levers, since they enter into the definition which we have just given.

Every lever may be submitted to the action of several forces, but, whatever may be their number, we know that it is always easy to reduce them to two. When it is a question of ascertaining the conditions of the equilibrium of this machine, only two forces are usually recognized. The former will be in *equilibrium* when the resultant of the forces which move it is annulled by the reaction of the point of support. If equilibrium does not result, the effect of the forces is to determine a rotation of the stalk around the fixed point.

Of the two forces which act upon the lever, one, which is called the **power**, is destined to equalize the other, which is called the **resistance**, or to overcome its action. The object of the lever is to favor one of these forces at the expense of the other. We will see later on what its consequences are. In the animal economy, these forces are represented by the *muscles*, and the levers by the *bones*.

For convenience of demonstration, we will suppose that the two forces which incite the lever are situated in the plane of the latter. In most instances it is not thus: the forces and the lever are placed in different planes.

An example will explain this better. Suppose it to be a question of the adductor muscle of the arm. The lever upon which it is inserted is the humerus, the resistance which it must overcome is the weight of the member applied to the articulation of the elbow. It is then easy to determine that the humeral and vertical axis passing through the centre of this articulation, forms a plane in which the adductor muscle of the arm is not situated. If it were located there, it would determine flexion alone of that bone, which is not the case, since it promotes adduction.

Among the muscles of the members, it is only the direct extensors and flexors that are situated in the plane of their respective levers. It is the same for the muscles of the spinal column. All the others act in different planes. This does not mean that the conditions of the equilibrium of the lever are not applicable to the former, but the developments into which we must enter in order to resolve particular cases would lead us too far away.

In mechanics, the moment of a force in relation to an axis is the product of the projection of this force upon a plane perpendicular to the axis, through the distance of this force to the axis.

When the idea of moment is applied to the study of the lever, it may be defined thus: *The product of the force by the arm of the lever*, because the forces, being situated in the same plane, are themselves their projection; as to the axis, it is supposed to pass through the point of support.

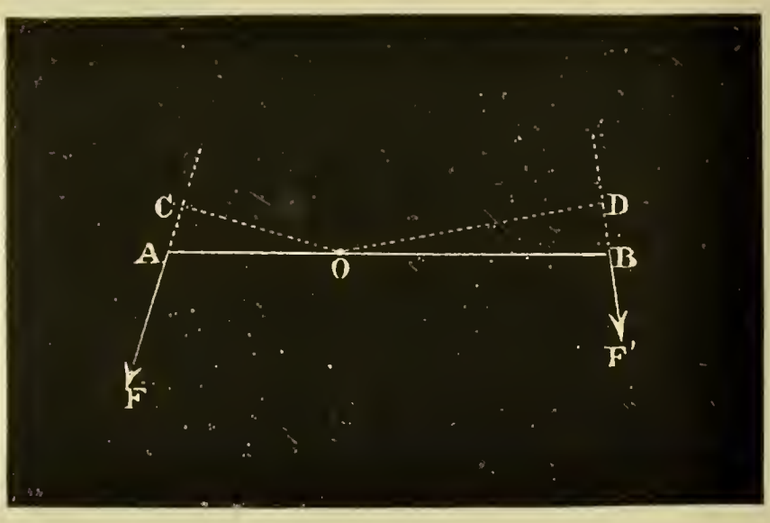


Fig. 4.

Suppose the two forces F and F' inciting the lever AB (Fig. 4). The whole system is situated in the plane of the action. The forces then project themselves following FA and $F'B$. Let us suppose now an axis perpendicular to this plane and piercing it at the point O. It is evident that the distances of these two forces to this axis are measured by the perpendiculars OC and OD. The moment of force F will be $F \times OC$; that of the force F : $F' \times OD$.

The perpendiculars OC and OD are called *lever-arms* extending from the point of support in the direction of the forces F and F'.

Whence it results that in the lever the moment of a force is the product of that force by its lever-arm. It is demonstrated in the same manner that the lever is in equilibrium when the moments of the two forces are equal. We will therefore obtain:

$$F \times OC = F' \times OD.$$

Whence is produced:

$$\frac{F}{F'} = \frac{OD}{C}.$$

That is to say, that *the forces are to each other inversely as the arms of their lever:* great force, small lever-arm, and, reciprocally, large lever-arm, small force.

Again, the intensity of the forces varies according to their *degree of inclination.* The three following cases may present themselves:

1st. *The force makes a right angle with the lever-arm.*

It acts then with its maximum of intensity. This is, in fact, the case where the lever-arm is the most considerable; it is measured by the distance of the point of application of the force to the point of relation.

2d. *The force makes an acute angle* (Fig. 5).

Let the force F act upon the lever AOB. If it acted perpendicularly, its lever-arm would be AO. Now, OA is $>$ than OC, as oblique upon AF with reference to the perpendicular OC, arm of the lever of F. Thus a certain part of the force employed in repelling the fixed point is lost for the movement of the point A. This is seen by decomposing F into two forces, AE and AD, acting upon the point A, following the directions indicated. AD is the quantity employed to repel the fixed point.

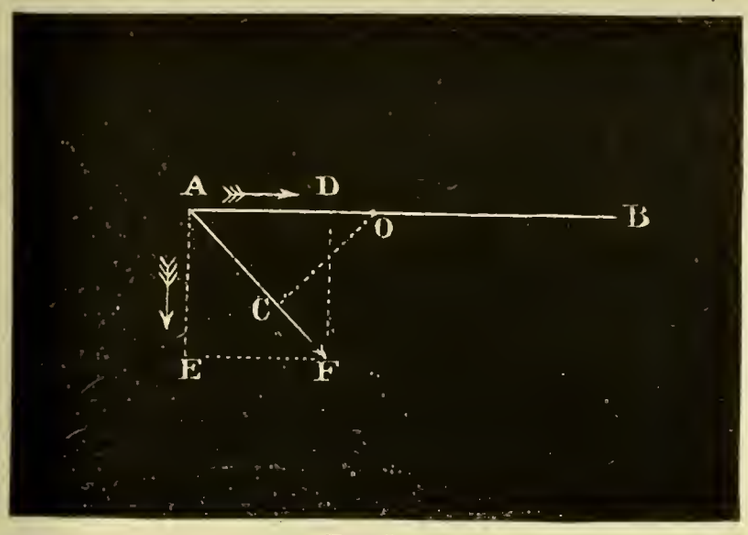


FIG. 5.

It may be conceived that the more the angle formed by the force with its lever-arm is acute, the greater will be the increase of AD at the expense of AE, and the force utilized for the movement will thus be less. The disposable force will be null if F becomes parallel to the arm of its lever.

3d. *The force makes an obtuse angle* (Fig. 6).

In this case the arm of the lever OC is smaller than if F were perpendicular to OA, since it would be OA itself. Thus a certain part of F is lost in drawing A towards AD at the expense of the movement. The more the inclination of F is obtuse, the more the component AD will increase relatively to the component AE, alone useful for the movement. The parallelism of F with its arm would cause, as in the preceding case, total annulment of AE, without there being any possible movement.

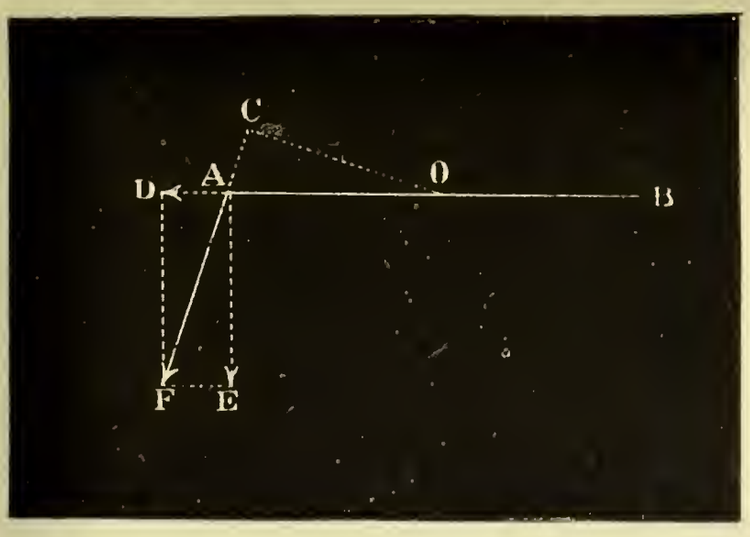


FIG. 6.

Thus it results from the preceding remarks that every time a force is not perpendicular to its lever-arm, a part of its intensity will be attracting or repelling the point of support according to the nature of the angle formed.

Muscular Mechanics.—These ideas can be at once applied to muscular mechanics. A muscle which contracts tends to draw its two extremities equally towards its centre. Each one is usually inserted upon a distinct bone. The bones, however, are not all movable to the same degree. Whence it follows that every muscle has a *fixed* and a *movable insertion*, the latter being situated upon the bone which is displaced during the contraction.

As the muscles of the apparatus of locomotion are voluntary, the animal can at will change a movable insertion into a fixed insertion, and *vice versa*. In other terms, a muscle, for example, which extends from the head to the arm (mastoido-humeralis) can as well become a motor of the head as an extensor of the arm. It suffices that the other muscles contract in order to fix and render immovable the head or the arm. The multiplicity of the muscular fibres is in proportion to the *intensity* of the contraction; their length, on the contrary, agrees with its extent. Or, if preferred, the volume of the muscles gives the measure of *force;* their length, that of *speed.*

It is, then, we believe, an error to think that the extent of the contraction of the muscles is not measured by the length of their fleshy portion, but by the length of the fibres which form them. This is only partly true, for in compound muscles, if the fibre be interrupted by aponeurotic or tendinous intersections, if it be shorter than in simple muscles, things occur, so to speak, as if the fibre represented the length of the fleshy body. The extent of the contraction is the result of several distinct actions which are added to one another to determine the total effect. The intersections, therefore, only give greater support to the contraction of the fibre; they furnish it with greater resistance to the tractions of weight, for the muscles in which they are encountered, besides their active *rôle* in locomotion, are still important passive agents in station.

In most instances, in the members especially, the muscles are applied along the length of the bones, and are found, on that account, in conditions very disadvantageous. Their manifest tendency towards *parallelism* with the lever-arm seems to have little connection with the theoretic ideas which we have just given, since a large part of their force is regarded as lost for movement.

This is of no account, however, and it is easy to determine that this disposition is, on the contrary, most fortunate, whatever may have been said concerning it.

Indeed, if the muscle at the beginning of its contraction acts with a defective incidence, this incidence becomes more and more favorable as the contraction progresses, and the muscle will then profit, at the moment its action is most powerful, by the entire quantity of movement already acquired by overcoming the resistance. But if the insertion at the beginning be more perpendicular, the muscular action, instead of acquiring intensity, will gradually lose it, and the movement produced, while overcoming the resistance, will be less extended.

On the other hand, the tendency to parallelism determines in the members of animals those slender forms which we know are in accordance with speed. It is certain that the muscular interstices are much more considerable as the muscles are more removed from their bony columns and therefore more perpendicular to them. This is observed in animals with massive forms and slow movements. Here, the heaviness of the gait is due to the enormous size of the mass as well as to the feeble degree of the contraction of the muscles.

It must not be inferred from this that for speed we should seek absolute parallelism of the muscles with their levers. It must be remembered that this

parallelism is a hinderance to the execution of the initial movement; hence the utility of the eminences which the bones of the members present, more particularly in the vicinity of their extremities. These projections, upon which the muscles are inflected or attached, have the effect of removing them from the bones and increasing the intensity of their action. Such is the *rôle* of the great sesamoids, the supra-carpal bone, the olecranon, the coracoid process, the calcaneum, the anterior tuberosity of the tibia, the patella, the trochanter, etc. Such is the advantage presented by the enlarged extremities of the bones of the members, and such the result of the inclination of the different bones upon each other. These diverse dispositions retain the advantages of parallelism, whilst avoiding the manifest inconveniences at the beginning of the muscular action.

Again, the study of the lever teaches us that *the paths described by the lever-arms are in direct ratio to their length*, since they describe circumferences which are to each other as their radii. If, consequently, one of the forces act upon an arm shorter than another, the arm of the latter will traverse a path much more considerable.[1]

In organisms it is very remarkable to find that the lever-arm of the muscles is usually very weak, especially when the latter are charged with the production of speed. As Lecoq[2] judiciously remarks, power acts in this case with much less intensity, but it may become much greater through the multiplicity of the muscular fibres, which, having only to produce a contraction slightly marked, can be disposed obliquely and be much more numerous in the muscle. On the other hand, if the muscles have their insertion very far from the point of support, their contraction, by removing them from this point, deprives the member of its slender form.

From what we have said above, *à propos* of the inclination of the forces upon their lever-arms, it is easy to determine the force utilized at each instant of the muscular contraction. It is clearly seen that, according as a muscle is at the beginning or at the end of its contraction, there is a tendency to an approximation or a separation of the articular surfaces.

It is said that a muscle is at its *moment* when its traction is exercised perpendicularly to the displaced bone; but a great many muscles cease their action before reaching that position; they often only commence the movement which is terminated by the intervention of other muscles. This takes place in the flexors of the metacarpus, for example, whose parallelism to the lever-arm is almost complete; if the flexors of the phalanges did not initiate the flexion of the metacarpus, these muscles could perhaps not produce it by themselves.

In all the instances which we have just considered the mobile bone represents a lever upon which we always find the three fundamental points: the point of support and the points of application of the power and of the resistance.

The point of support is nearly always situated on a level with the articulation with the fixed bone; this is also the *centre* of movement. The power is always applied at the mobile insertion of the motor muscle. As to the resistance, it is situated upon the lever, at that variable point where the weight or the obstacles to the displacement of the mobile bone act, whatever they may be.

---

[1] See, for further details, G. Colin, Physiologie comparée, t. i. p. 396, 3e éd.

[2] F. Lecoq, Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, 1843, p. 493.

According to the relative position of these three points, we recognize three classes of levers.

In the one called the *first class* (Fig. 7), the fixed point *A* occupies an intermediate position to the two others, *P* and *R*. It is called *inter-fixed lever*.

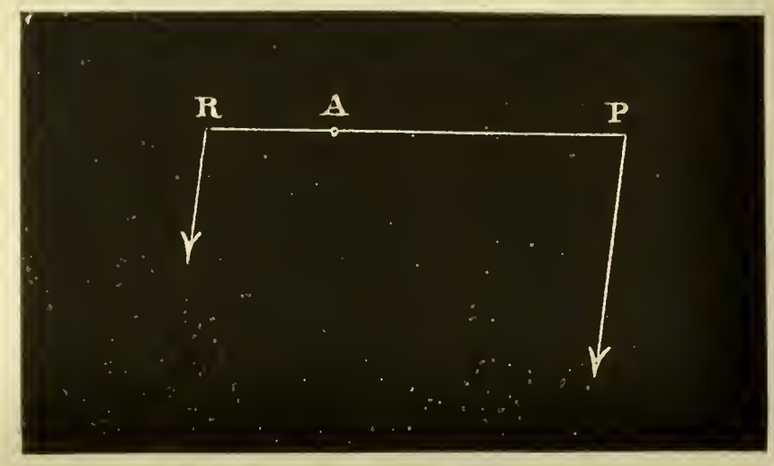


FIG. 7.

A certain number of muscles act upon this class of lever. It is exemplified, for instance, in the extension of the head upon the neck. The fixed point (*occipito-atloid articulation*) is always situated, whatever may be the position of the head, between the resistance (*centre of gravity of the latter*) and the power (*occipital insertion of the muscles of the nape of the neck*).

The cervical ligament in our larger domestic species also equalizes the weight of the head by an analogous mechanism.

It is, however, not correct to consider the head as an inter-fixed lever at the moment of flexion, as some persons think. According to their view, in fact, the obstacles depend on the antagonists (*extensor muscles*) and the elasticity of the cervical ligament. These would be the elements of resistance, the weight of the head becoming, according to this opinion, an auxiliary of the power (*flexor muscles*).

No doubt it is sometimes thus when the head and neck are elevated, but things are very different when these regions are directed towards the ground. The weight of the head then becomes to the flexors a veritable resistance to be overcome, and the lever is no longer of the first class; it is of the third, as we will see further on.

Besides, in order to understand the action of a muscle well, it is necessary to investigate it as if it alone were attached to the lever, without regarding the manner of existence of the antagonistic ones. In most instances the latter do not oppose any resistance, but allow the former to execute the movement freely. The extension of the forearm, and that of the metatarsus, the femur, the pelvis, the spine, etc., take place through the mechanism of an inter-fixed lever in which the arm of power is, according to the case, the olecranon, the calcaneum, the trochanter, the ischial tuberosity, the spinous or transverse apophyses of the vertebræ. In the economy the lever of the first class appears to be more particularly reserved for *extension*. It is also the *lever of speed*, for the arm of power is never equal to that of resistance: the latter is always much longer.

In man, whose standing position is vertical, in whom falling forward is easy, on account of the particular situation of the organs, the lever of the first kind is, with good reason, to be considered as the *lever of station*. We shall see that in animals it is that of the second class in which this usage can be preferably recognized.

In the lever of the *second class* the resistance occupies the intermediate position (Fig. 8). The name *inter-resisting* is applied to it. In this case, whatever

may be the respective positions of the three points, the lever-arm of power exceeds that of resistance, since *PA* always remains hypothetically longer than *RA*. This lever is, then, very truly that *of force*, but has more disadvantage concerning the production of speed, for, the latter being proportional to the lever-arm, the path of the resistance will never be as long as that of the power.

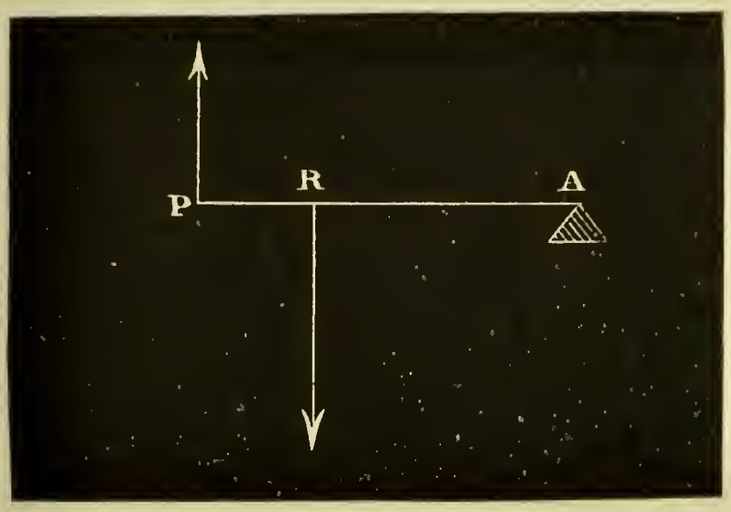


FIG. 8.

Several examples are seen in animals. It is well known that while standing the weight of the body tends to close all the articular angles of the members upon each other. There are also observed, on the convex side or the summit of the latter, muscles which are opposed to this closing, by acting as levers of the second class. It is thus that the supra-spinatus, the coraco-radialis, the sub-spinatus, the subscapular, sustain the scapulo-humeral angle. The insertions of these different muscles are all situated a little beyond the articulation, which represents the point of application of the resistance to be overcome, whilst the point of support is placed at the articulation of the elbow. It is in the same manner that the extensors of the forearm sustain the humero-radial articulation upon which are transmitted the actions of the weight, that the suspensory ligament of the fetlock maintains this region, that the gastrocnemius and the perforatus muscles of the leg retain the calcaneum, that the middle gluteal muscle prevents the closing up of the coxo-femoral angle. It will be noticed that all these muscles act as levers of the first class when the members do not serve as a support, so that the organism has no need of interposing new anatomical dispositions in order to develop *force*. The same levers adapt themselves with the same powers to different conditions in order to produce, according to the necessity of the movement, either force or speed.

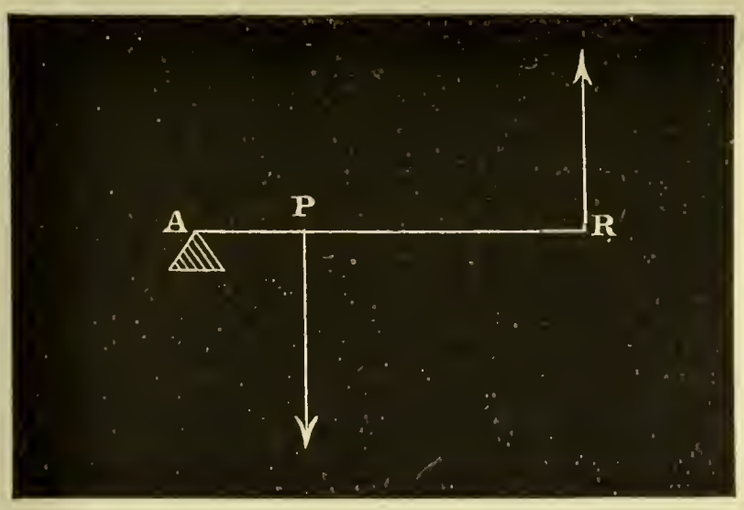


FIG. 9.

Finally, a third case presents itself in the relative situation of the three fundamental points of the lever. It is that in which the power is placed between the resistance and the point of support. This lever is designated the *lever of the third class*, or *inter-puissant* (Fig. 9).

Here the arm of resistance is always hypothetically longer than that of the power, and the velocity is increased at the expense of the force. Like that of the first class, it can also be called the *lever of speed.*

The economy offers numerous examples of this variety. All the flexor muscles act as levers of this kind. The large psoas muscle flexes the femur by this mechanism. The point of support is at the coxo-femoral articulation, the resistance (the weight of the member) is applied at the femoro-tibial articulation, and the power is exerted at the internal trochanter. The flexors of the leg, metatarsus, arm, forearm, metacarpus, phalanges, head, spinal column, etc., act upon levers of the third kind. We are right in saying that this lever is that of *flexion* in the same manner as that of the first kind is the *lever of extension.*

In the animal mechanism all the levers are not distributed in the same number. The manner of articulation of the bones and the function of the parts demand here the use of the inter-fixed lever, there that of the inter-puissant lever, and elsewhere that of the inter-resisting.

We have, however, a right to ask *why the organism utilizes two levers of speed*, the first and the third class, since one of them may become that of force. We have seen, indeed, that the bones which act as levers of the first kind when the member is raised become the second kind during support, by the simple displacement of the fixed point and of the resistance. It cannot be thus for those which act as levers of the third kind. In other words, the lever of flexion cannot be of the first kind; it belongs especially to the third. For, were it otherwise, we should find in the sinus of the articular angles apophyses analogous to the olecranon, the calcaneum, the trochanter, the sesamoids, or the patella, peculiarities destined to substitute the lever of the first class for that of the third. It is not difficult to see that the movement of flexion, already sufficiently limited by the interposition of the muscular masses occupying the articular sinus, would be almost impossible. The presence of these eminences on the opposite side of the locomotory angles does not cause any inconvenience, for the extension is never complete, and, were it so, it would place the two segments in prolongation with each other, which would not limit the normal movement. In flexion it is different; the concavity of the angles should be free in order that certain points of the movable segment do not meet too soon the fixed segment and therefore limit its displacement.

In all the preceding cases we have supposed the muscular action isolated in order to analyze it better. It is, however, never thus. Every muscle which contracts to displace a bone is aided in its *rôle* by the contraction of one or more neighboring muscles. These latter have the effect of fixing the one of the two segments which should not be moved. Not one of the pieces of the machine is arranged in an immovable manner, since all are agencies to produce movement. It is then important, in order to avoid the discharge of force, that certain ones among them be immovable, and it is on this account that the contraction of a muscle is always assisted by that of a congener. This fact, most of the time difficult to determine, becomes most evident at the time of the production of the *effort.*

Finally, we remark that, if the organism frequently employ the lever, the simplest of machines, in the functions of its locomotive apparatus, this animal lever differs much from the ordinary one and, with still greater reason, from the mathematical. If we apply to it the laws of the latter, we simply arrive at a sufficient approximation of its action without seeking to establish any absolute principle.

With M. Mignon,[1] we think that in the animal lever the point of support is

[1] Mignon, Mécanique animale, in Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, 1841, p. 67.

neither invariable nor certain; the insertion of the forces neither well established nor very precise; their intensity always approximative. Whatever may be the exactness of the idea which may exist in regard to volume, length, direction, the structure of the muscle, its angle of insertion, the arm of the lever which it moves, the amount of contractility—that is to say, the value of the force itself—escapes us.

"In the organized machine resistance is only a power disguised alone by the name. It is indeed weight at first, but it is also muscular contraction which opposes and resists the action of the lever. It is an unknown quantity to be overcome by another equally unknown."

Let us add that the forces of extension have their maximum of intensity at the beginning of their action, whilst those of flexion have it at the termination. This is explained by the difference of the result which they should produce. The first resist the weight of the body at the same time that they overcome in locomotion the inertia of the regions situated below them; the second only have to raise the member to permit it to advance over the ground, and are nearly discharged from the *rôle* which the first fulfil during station. The insertion of the extensors is ordinarily more advantageous than that of the flexors, because these latter have but to employ velocity against the others, which should, in addition, develop force.

CHAPTER IV.

THE INCLINED PLANE.

THE inclined plane is, with the lever, the other of the two simple machines employed by the organism in the construction of the locomotory apparatus.

It is known that in the inclined plane (Fig. 10) a solid, *O*, incited by the weight *F*, is drawn the length of this plane by a force, *f*, which is calculated by the following formula:

$$f = OF \sin F = \sin a.$$

In other words, the force *f* is the product of the weight of the body *O* by the sine of the angle of inclination of the plane.

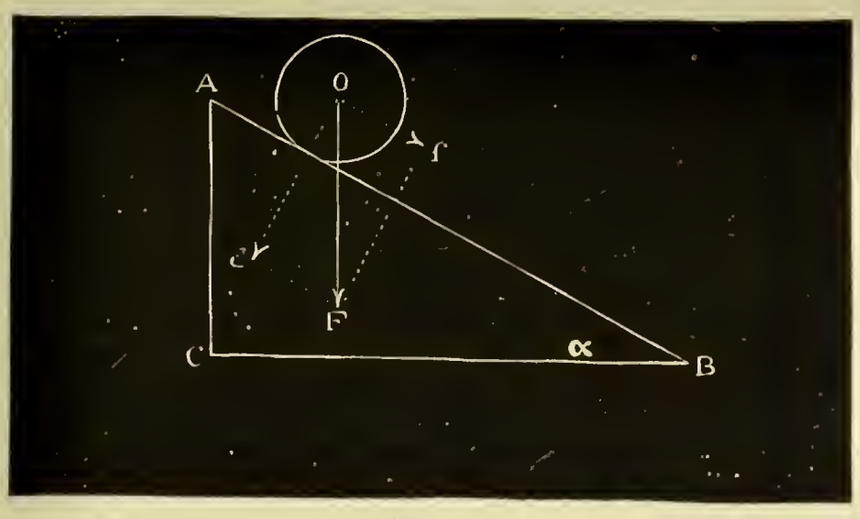


FIG. 10.

The larger this angle becomes, the more the component *f* increases at the expense of the other component, *Od*, destroyed by the resistance of the plane. The *articular surfaces represent a multitude of inclined planes* which decompose the weight of the mass upon the bony levers and the tendinous and ligamentous cords situated in the vicinity of the articulations.

At the superior part of the members the articular surface is a *cavity* more or less deep. It may be considered as being formed by a succession of inclined planes whose inclination diminishes from the periphery to the centre. It thus disseminates the weight of the body upon the *head*, which is adapted to it. The latter acts in the same manner a second time, alternating the actions of the mass by disseminating them upon the ligaments at the same time as upon the bones. On a level with the second articulation of the members we find other inclined surfaces; these surfaces are multiplied towards the carpus and tarsus; finally, they are found in the articulations of the hand and foot.

Thus more and more the weight of the body is disseminated upon the bony columns through the existence of these diverse inclinations, and *the volume of the bones decreases in proportion to the efforts* which they support.

Another mode of dispersion, again very remarkable, is that which M. Mignon [1] calls the *inclined plane of the segment*, in contradistinction to the preceding, which he names *inclined plane of surface.*

"In order to establish the existence of these planes in animal machinery," he says, "it is sufficient to observe that in the members the bony segments superpose themselves by being diversely inclined and by thus forming a series of angles at their reciprocal points of union. As these angles do not become closed, as the action of the weight is one by its direction,—that is to say, *vertical*,—and as the oblique segment, immediately inferior, receives this action, the latter is then transmitted in the direction of the osseous segment; and, since it has followed this inclined segment, it undergoes the influence of this oblique plane which conducts and supports it; that is to say, it is decomposed into two parts, one of which is perpendicular to the segment, the other parallel to it and follows its direction.

"The flexible supports upon which the segments or inclined planes act therefore become one of the elements of these planes.

"If we now examine the mechanical dispositions of the *support*, we find that the weight of the body is dispersed and attenuated upon a series of inclined planes, which receive, decompose, and transmit this weight; that the solid segments, more and more numerous, support that portion of the weight transmitted parallel to the plane and decompose it in their turn; that the flexible parts sustain like a spring the other portion of the weight perpendicular to the different planes; finally, that the levers and pulleys favor, aid, or increase the action of these springs which move and extend intelligent forces that graduate and measure in some manner the entire influence claimed by the necessity of the moment.

"Such is the mechanical system, as simple as it is ingenuous, which concentrates or disseminates action, produces and directs it, increases or diminishes it, resists or combats it."

These primary ideas being well understood, we may now begin the particular study of the regions.

---

[1] Mignon, loc. cit., pp. 69 et 71.

SECTION SECOND.

STUDY OF THE REGIONS.

---

§ 1. Divisions of the Horse.

Most authors who have written upon the exterior, since Bourgelat, have adopted the division of the horse into *fore extremity*, *body*, and *hind extremity;* others have preferred the anatomical division into *trunk* and *members*. All have acted under the influence of three good reasons.

Horsemen, with Bourgelat, have only considered the saddle-horse, and have regarded it as a machine under the rider, extending beyond him, in front and behind. For all those who practise horsemanship, the rider in the management of his mount has two resistances to overcome, two parts to direct: the *fore part*,—that is to say, all that part of the horse in front of him,—and the *hind part*, all that which is behind. The *body* is under him, he feels its action directly, and it cannot escape him. It is not thus with the *fore* and the *hind parts*, whose movements are often far from being correlative, and upon which he should fix his attention.

The authors who have preferred, contrary to the preceding, the division of the horse into *trunk* and *members*, quickly perceived that the division of Bourgelat, whilst applying itself very well to the service of the saddle, becomes defective when applied to the heavy or the light draught-horse. It would be useless to insist upon this point. The contradiction in the terms is still greater when it becomes a question of studying the external conformation of other domestic animals, such as the ox, the sheep, and the dog.

We will adopt the following division, because it is more general and more convenient, and because this book is not alone addressed to horsemen.

Whatever may be the animal examined, or its service, it may always

be divided into three parts: the *head*, the *body*, and the *members*; and the expressions fore extremity and hind extremity may be replaced to advantage by those of *anterior quarters* and *posterior quarters*.

The *head* and the *body* are the most important parts of the animal machinery, for they contain the organs that are indispensable to the maintenance of life.

The *members*, broken columns articulated from space to space, support the trunk and, by their movements, transport it from one place to another.

Besides these principal divisions, there are secondary ones; these are faces or planes which limit the animal in front, behind, above, below, and laterally.

The lateral faces, in ordinary language, are sometimes designated in a particular manner. Thus, horsemen often call the left side (mounting side) the *near-side*, in opposition to the right, which they call the *off-side*. As it is usually on the left side from which a rider mounts a horse, these expressions are only suitable for the training-horse, and would be out of place in all other cases.

Drivers also employ, for the same reasons, denominations which it is well to understand. One who drives draught-horses is always stationed on the left of the team, and it is for this reason that this side is designated under the name of the *side of the man*, the right being called the *off-side of the man*.

In Paris and in a large number of departments there are reasons for the use of these expressions, but in certain localities, Finistère and the northern coast, for example, they would be void of sense, since men often drive horses on the right side.

We have so far only indicated the primary divisions of the horse. Each of them is again subdivided into secondary regions, which we have consigned to the following synoptical table as well as to the explanatory figures which are annexed to it.

In order to facilitate for persons little familiar with dissection a knowledge of the summary anatomical description which accompanies each region, we have, by guiding the artists in the exact representation of the forms of the horse, reproduced Figs. 16, 17, and 18, indicating the various structures. In fact, all the prominences—bony, ligamentous, tendinous, and muscular—which exist under the skin and may become apparent on the exterior are illustrated here.

TABLE OF THE REGIONS.

1.—HEAD (17 regions).

Anterior Face.	Posterior Face.	Lateral Faces.	Inferior Extremity.	Superior Extremity.
1. Forehead. 2. Face. 3. Extremity of the nose.	4. Lower jaw. 5. Intermaxillary space. 6. Chin.	7. Ear. 8. Temple. 9. Supra-orbit. 10. Eyebrow. 11. Eye. 12. Cheek. 13. Nostrils.	14. Mouth. *a.* Lips. *b.* Teeth, Gums. *c.* Bars. *d.* Lingual canal. *e.* Tongue. *f.* Palate.	15. Poll. 16. Parotid region. 17. Throat.

2.—BODY (20 regions).

Superior Face.	Inferior Face.	Lateral Faces.	Anterior Extremity.	Posterior Extremity.	Genital Organs.
1. Neck, Mane, Forelock. 2. Withers. 3. Back. 4. Loins. 5. Croup, Haunch.	6. Xiphoid region. 7. Abdomen.	8. Ribs. 9. Flank. 10. Groin.	11. Chest. 12. Interaxilla. 13. Axilla.	14. Tail. 15. Anus. 16. Perineum.	*Male.* 17. Testicles and envelopes. 18. Sheath and penis. *Female.* 19. Vulva. 20. Mammæ.

3.—MEMBERS (16 regions).

Anterior.	Posterior.	Regions Common to the Two Members.
1. Shoulder. 2. Arm. 3. Elbow. 4. Forearm. 5. Knee.	6. Thigh and buttock. 7. Stifle. 8. Leg. 9. Hock.	10. Chestnut. 11. Canon and tendons. 12. Fetlock. 13. Footlock and ergot. 14. Pastern. 15. Coronet. 16. Foot.

0. Poll or nape of the neck.
1. Neck.
1'. Jugular gutter.
2. Withers.
3. Back.
4. Loins.
5. Croup.
6. Tail.
7. Parotid region.
8. Throat.
9. Shoulder.
10. Point of the shoulder.
11. Arm.
12. Elbow.
13. Forearm.
14. Chestnut.
15. Knee.
16. Canon.
17. Fetlock.
18. Pastern.
19. Coronet.
20. Foot.
21. Xiphoid region.
22. Ribs.
23. Abdomen.
24. Flank.
25. Sheath.
26. Testicles.
27. Buttock.
27 *bis*. Angle of Buttock.
28. Thigh.
28 *bis*. Haunch.
29. Stifle.
30. Leg.
31. Hock.
32. Chestnut.
33. Canon.
34. Fetlock.
35. Pastern.
36. Coronet.
37. Foot.

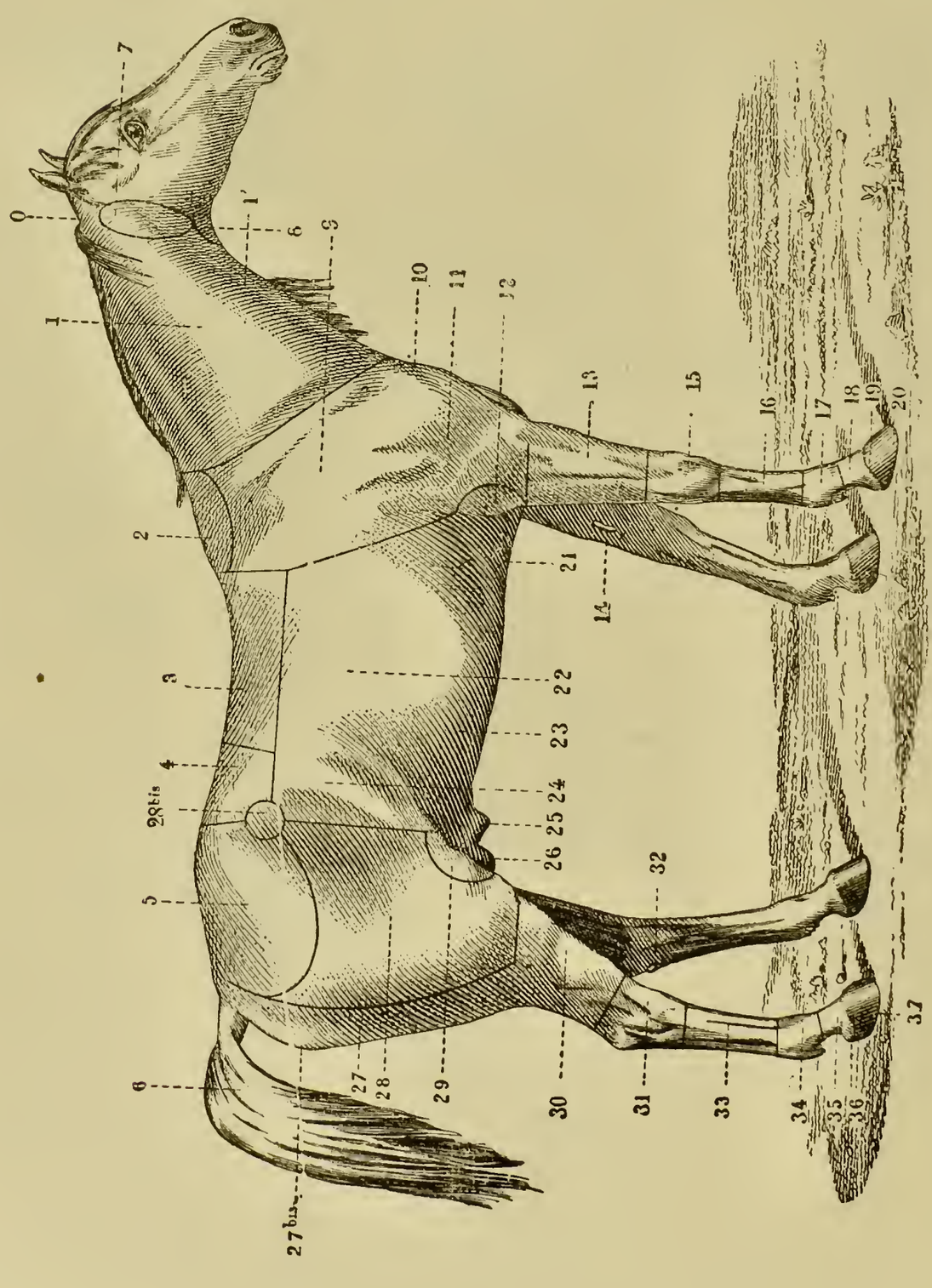


Fig. 11.—Regions of the horse seen in profile.

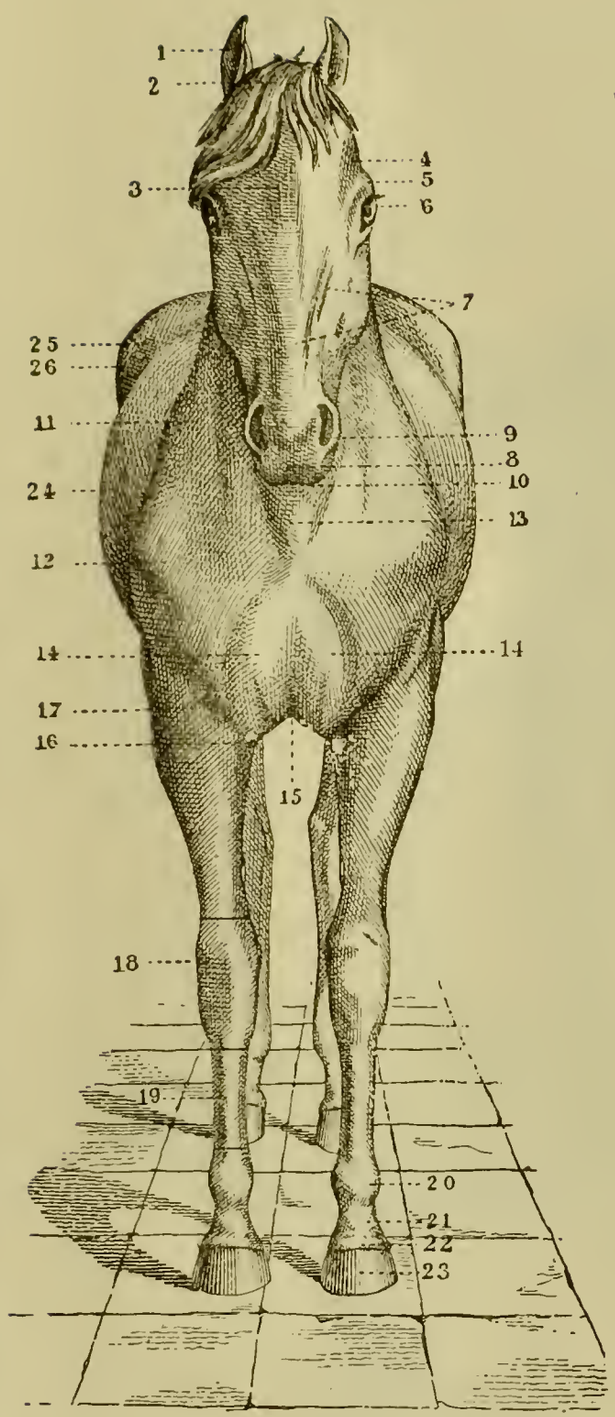


FIG. 12.—Regions of the horse seen in front.

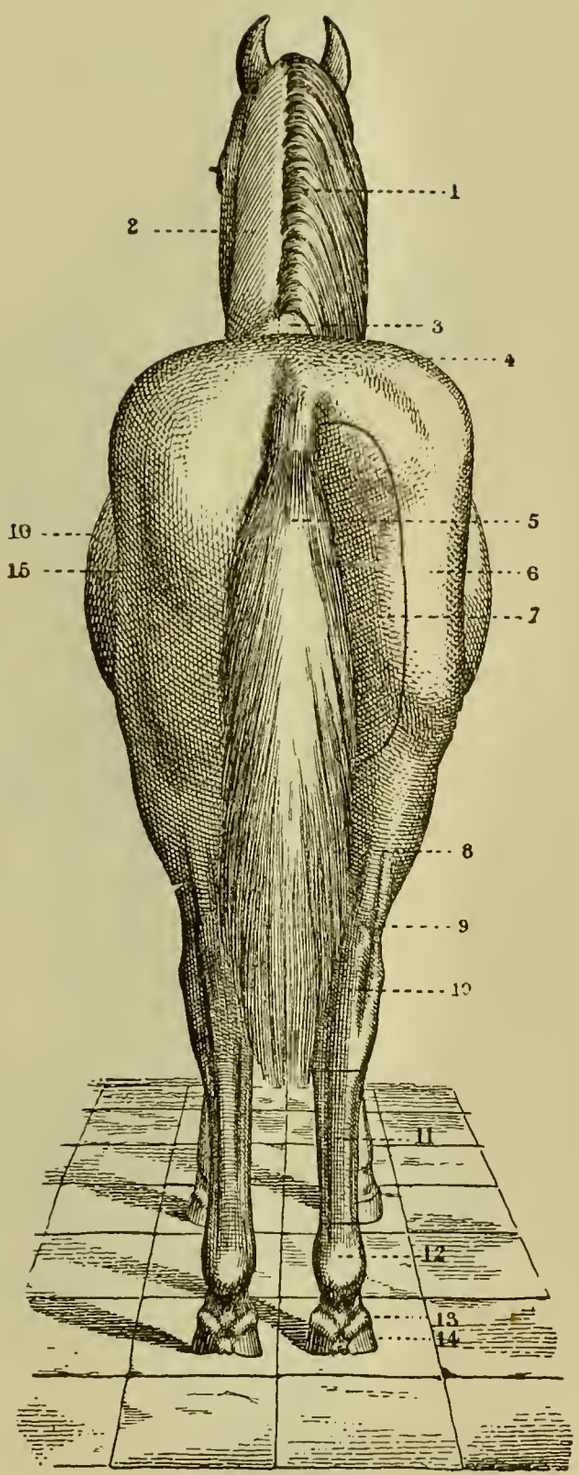


FIG. 13.—Regions of the horse seen behind.

1. Ear.
2. Forelock.
3. Forehead.
4. Supra-orbit.
5. Eyebrow.
6. Eye.
7. Face.
8. Extremity of the nose.
9. Nostril.
10. Superior lip.
11. Shoulder.
12. Point of the shoulder or of the arm.
13. Neck.
14. Chest.
15. Interaxilla.
16. Axilla.
17. Forearm.
18. Knee.
19. Canon.
20. Fetlock.
21. Pastern.
22. Coronet.
23. Foot.
24. Ribs.
25. Hollow of the flank.
26. Haunch.

1. Mane.
2. Neck.
3. Withers.
4. Croup.
5. Tail.
6. Thigh.
7. Buttock.
8. Cord of the hock.
9. Point of the hock.
10. Hock.
11. Canon.
12. Fetlock.
13. Coronet.
14. Foot.
15. Flank.
16. Ribs.

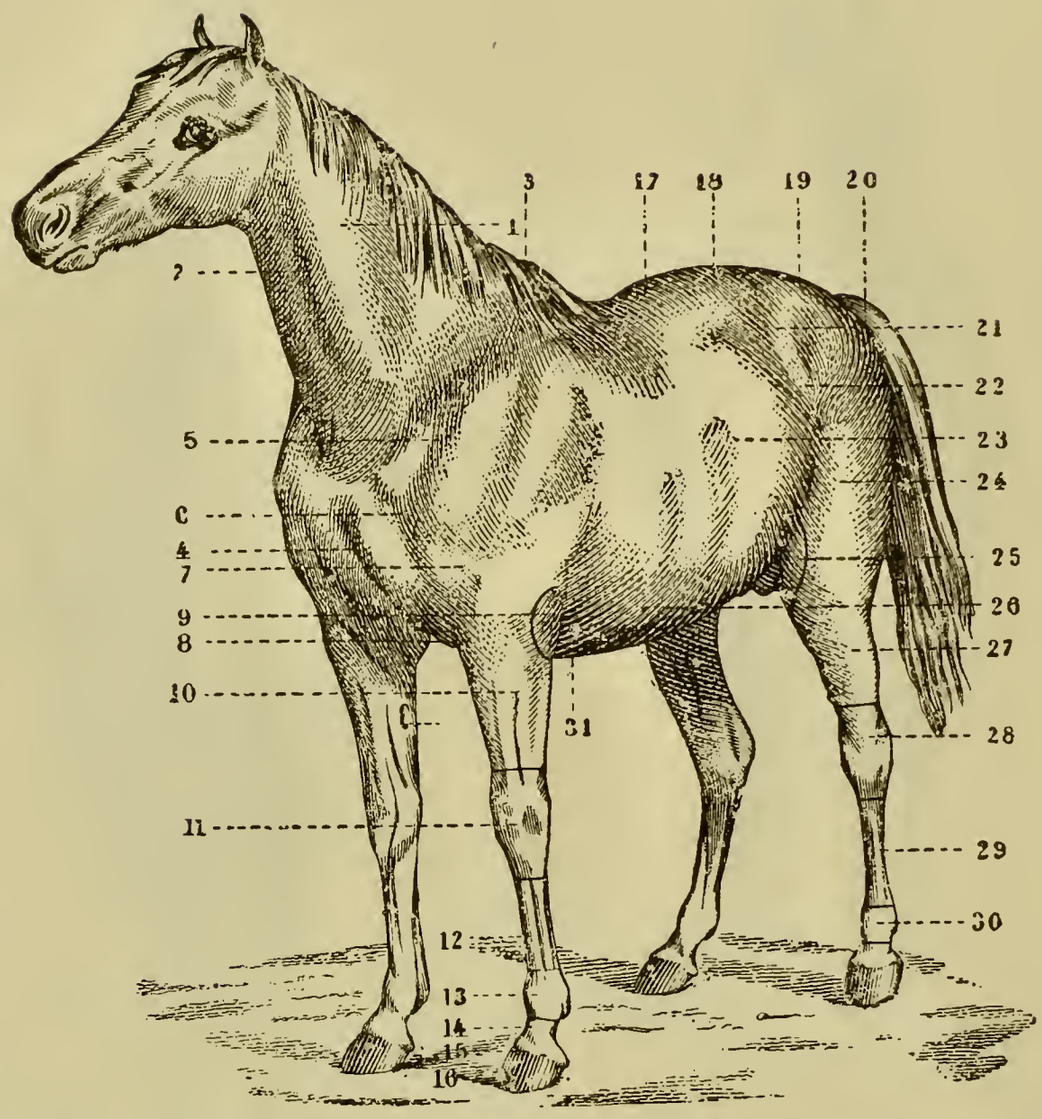


FIG. 14.—Regions of the horse seen laterally and in front.

1. Neck.
2. Jugular gutter.
3. Withers.
4. Breast.
5. Shoulder.
6. Angle of the shoulder.
7. Arm.
8. Axilla.
9. Elbow.
10. Forearm.
11. Knee.
12. Canon.
13. Fetlock.
14. Pastern.
15. Coronet.
16. Foot.
17. Back.
18. Loins.
19. Croup.
20. Tail.
21. Haunch.
22. Flank.
23. Ribs.
24. Thigh.
25. Stifle.
26. Abdomen.
27. Leg.
28. Hock.
29. Canon.
30. Fetlock.
31. Xiphoid region.

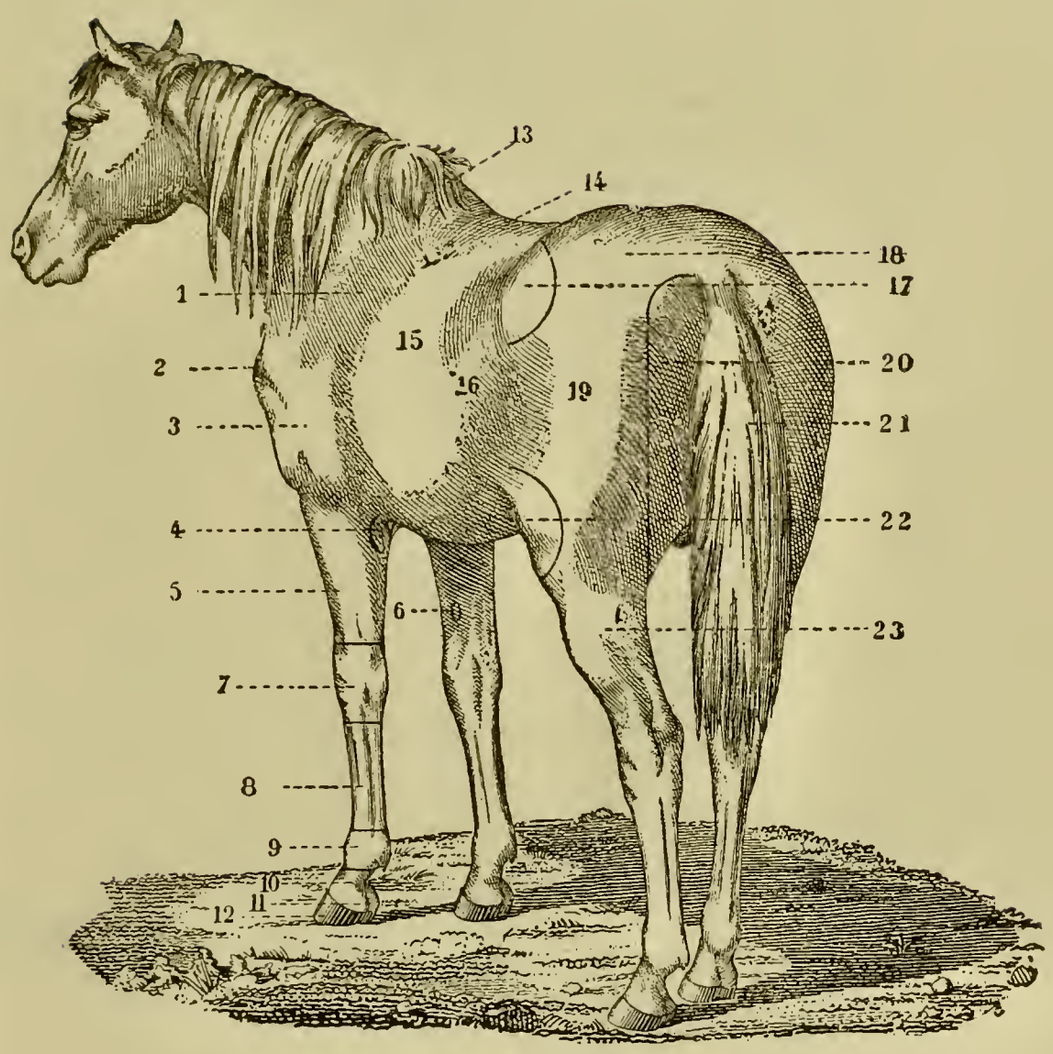


FIG. 15.—Regions of the horse seen laterally and behind.

1. Shoulder.
2. Point of the shoulder.
3. Arm.
4. Elbow.
5. Forearm.
6. Chestnut.
7. Knee.
8. Canon.
9. Fetlock.
10. Pastern.
11. Coronet.
12. Foot.
13. Withers.
14. Back.
15. Ribs.
16. Flank.
17. Haunch.
18. Thigh.
19. Croup.
20. Buttock.
21. Tail.
22. Stifle.
23. Leg.

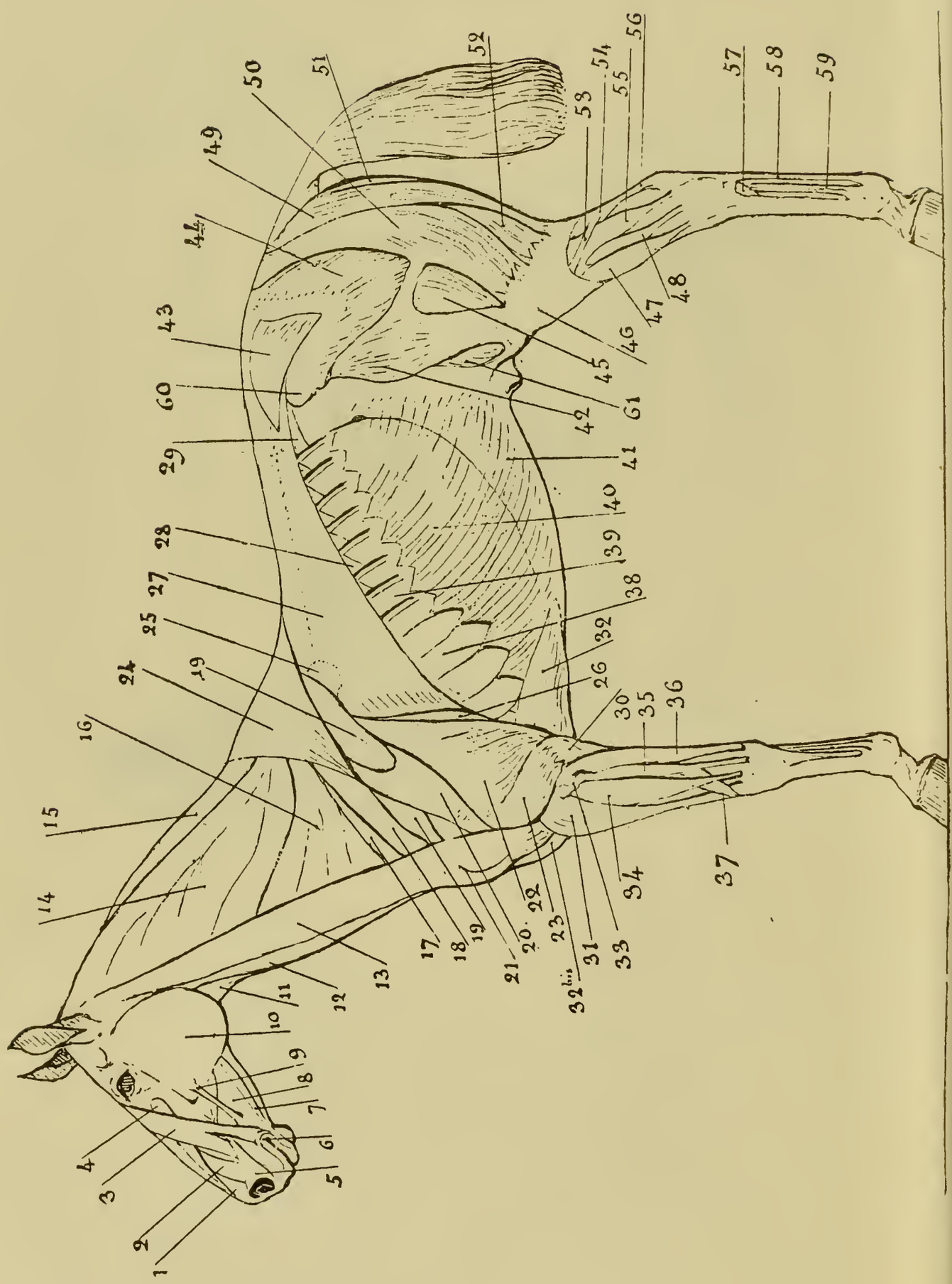


FIG. 18.—Superficial structures viewed in profile

TABLE OF SUPERFICIAL STRUCTURES VIEWED IN PROFILE.

1. False nostril.
2. Incisive bone.
3. Supernaso-labialis.
4. Supermaxillo-labialis.
5. Pyramidalis nasi.
6. Orbicularis.
7. Maxillo-labialis.
8. Buccinator.
9. Zygomatico-labial.
10. Masseter.
11. Subscapulo-hyoid.
12. Sterno-maxillaris.
13. Mastoido-humeralis.
14. Splenius.
15. Proper elevator of the shoulder.
16. Angularis.
17. Sterno-prescapularis.
18. Supra-spinatus.
19–19. Subspinatus.
20. Long abductor of arm.
21. Point of shoulder.
22. Great extensor of forearm.
23. Short extensor of the forearm.
24. Dorsal trapezius.
25. Cartilage of prolongation of scapula.
26. Long extensor of forearm.
27. Great dorsal.
28. The six digitations of the small posterior serrated.
29. Retractor of the last rib.
30. Olecranon.
31. Anterior extensor of the metacarpus.
32. Sterno-trochinus.
32 *bis*. Sterno-humeralis.
33. External lateral ligament of the elbow.
34. Anterior extensor of the phalanges.
35. Lateral extensor of the phalanges.
36. External flexor of the metacarpus.
37. Oblique extensor of the metacarpus.
38. Great serratus.
39. External intercostals.
40. Great oblique of the abdomen.
41. Abdominal tunic.
42. Fascia lata.
43. Middle gluteus (seen through an opening in the gluteal aponeurosis).
44. Superficial gluteus.
45. Vastus externus (seen through an opening in the aponeurosis of the fascia lata).
46. Tibial aponeurosis.
47. Anterior extensor of the phalanges.
48. Lateral extensor of the phalanges.
49. Semi-tendinosus.
50. Posterior portion of superficial gluteus.
51. Semi-membranosus.
52. Femoral biceps.
53. Soleus.
54. Gastrocnemius.
55. Flexors of the phalanges.
56. Cord of the hock.
57. Head of the rudimentary metatarsal bone.
58. Flexor tendons of the phalanges.
59. Suspensory ligament of the fetlock.
60. Angle of the haunch.
61. Anterior rectus of the thigh.

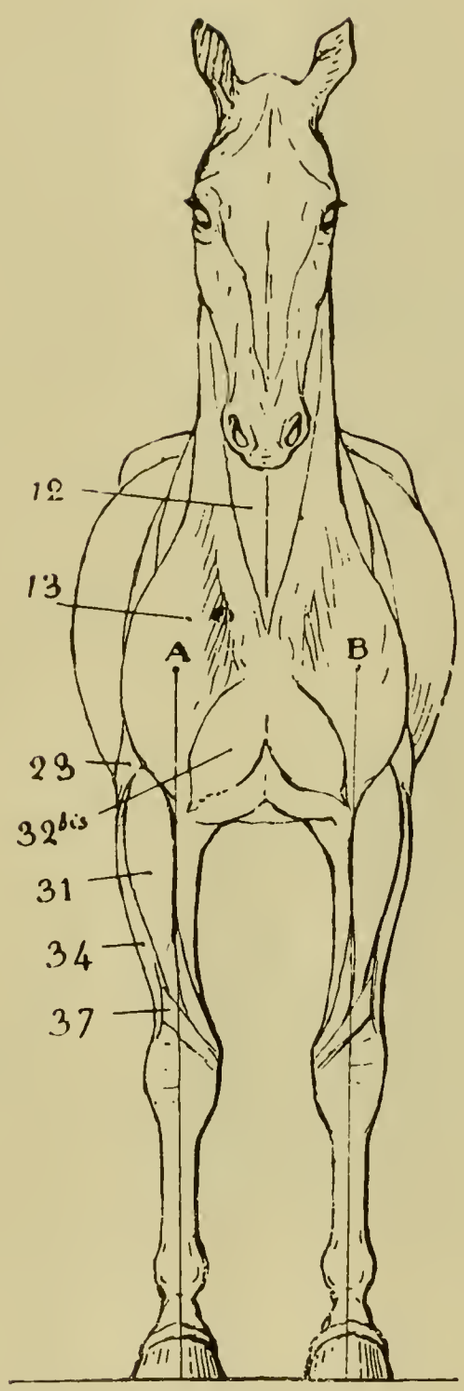


FIG. 17.—Superficial structures viewed in front.

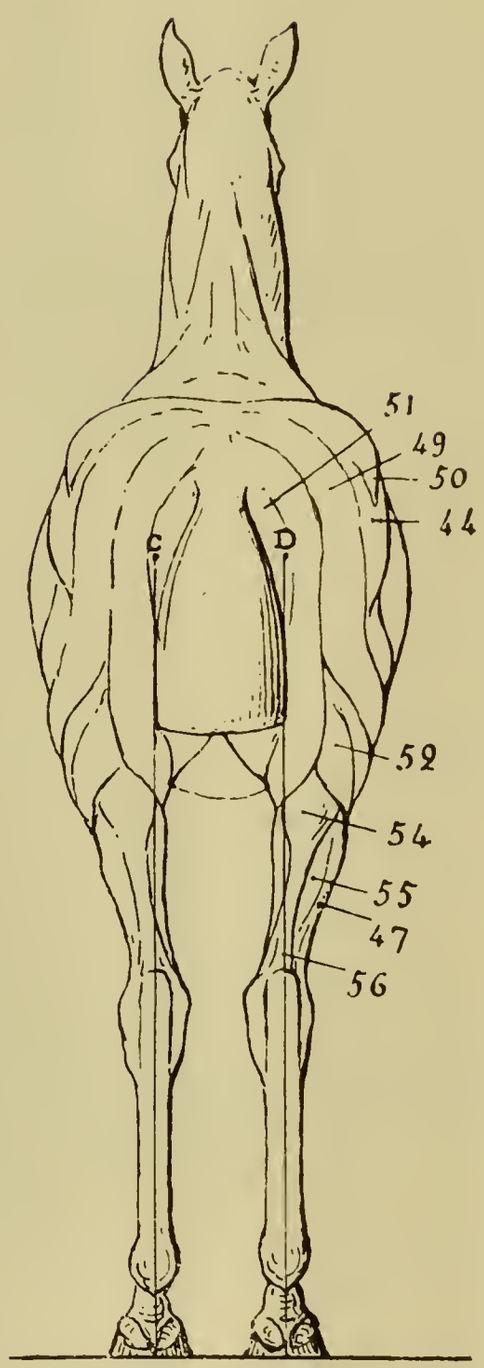


FIG. 18.—Superficial structures viewed from behind.

12. Sterno-maxillaris.
13. Mastoido-humeralis.
23. Short extensor of the forearm.
31. Anterior extensor of the metacarpus.
32 *bis*. Sterno-humeralis.
34. Anterior extensor of the phalanges.
37. Oblique extensor of the metacarpus.

44. Anterior portion of superficial gluteus.
47. Lateral extensor of the phalanges.
49. Posterior portion of superficial gluteus.
50. Middle gluteus.
51. Semi-tendinosus.
52. Femoral biceps.
54. Gastrocnemius.
55. Deep flexor of the phalanges.
56. Cord of the hock.

§ 2. Some Definitions.

In the language of the exterior, certain expressions are often employed whose signification should be exactly known. They are the following: *Beauty, Defect, Blemish, Vice, Fault.*

A.—Beauties.

Beauty, says Bourgelat, resides in the fitness and the relation of the parts. This definition is incomplete, for it refers only to the proportions of the whole and excludes those of the parts taken separately. Indeed, it may be that the general harmony in a horse is defective, although some of the parts are absolutely beautiful; the whole may be composed of elements badly arranged, notwithstanding that certain of them are not incompatible in subjects of the best conformation.

A more precise sense should therefore be attached to the word beautiful, and we should assert that it indicates the perfect adaptation of the organ to its function, or of the subject to the serviee for which he is destined. It is not that which pleases the eye, as is often understood by persons ignorant of these kinds of study, but that which is qualified as fit by the connoisseur, the competent man. *Beauty is therefore synonymous with fitness.* It is seen, then, that a *beautiful region* is a *good region*, a *beautiful horse* is a *good horse*, the *beauty of the whole* results, as Bourgelat says, *from the beauty and reciprocal fitness of all the parts.* One of these may be *beautiful* without the whole possessing that quality.

This acceptation of the word beautiful is applied generally as well as particularly, and it is the only one which should be aceepted when the word is employed.

There is still another distinction to be established among the *beauties:* some are *absolute*, others are *relative.*

Absolute beauties are always sought for whatever may be the service,—the saddle, or light or heavy traction. A spacious chest, large articulations, dense and voluminous muscles, regular equilibrium, and powerful attachments are absolute beauties to be exacted indiscriminately from all horses, for these characters indicate the strength and energy necessary for all services.

Relative beauties, on the contrary, denote a specialization for such and such a service. Thus, we prefer largeness of the chest, massive shoulders, voluminous muscles, short, vigorous members, a body close to the ground, wide loins, etc., in the slow and heavy motors which

must overcome resistance by the mass and the power of their effort; whilst we seek a more elevated and narrower body, a longer neck, a light head, long bones,—in a word, a smaller mass and more subtle and extended movements,—for the rapid motor. These are beauties relative to these two kinds of utilization, which would become prejudicial if instead of being applied to one they were applied to the other.

B.—Defects.

The word **defect** is, in its etymology, the opposite of beauty. It characterizes the want of adaptation of the thing to the end for which it is destined.

Defects are *absolute, relative, congenital,* or *acquired.*

Absolute defects are causes for the rejection of the horse, for they are injurious to every kind of utilization. Thus, a flat costal region lessens the capacity of the chest, flat feet render the application of the shoe difficult and expose the foot to contusions of the heels and the sole; a retracted abdomen indicates a capricious appetite; slender members are soon ruined; small articulations diminish the extent of the movements; unstable equilibrium predisposes to falls, to excessive use of the members, etc. These are so many absolute defects.

On the contrary, defects are *relative* when they only injure the employment of a horse for a determined service. A concave back is defective for the pack-saddle; a croup too oblique and a very large chest will not be suitable for the rapid gaits, whilst they are not prejudicial in the draught-horse; the same is true of the low withers and the high withers, the horizontal croup and the double croup, etc. It is apparent, then, from these examples, that what is a beauty for one service may become a defect for another.

Congenital defects are those which the horse possesses at birth; **acquired defects,** those which are the result of his utilization.

A knee-sprung horse—that is to say, one whose knee is naturally displaced forward—is affected with a *congenital defect;* whilst, if this defect be the result of usage, he is said to be possessed of an *acquired defect.* Most defects are malformations which the animal possesses at birth, and are therefore of a congenital nature; however, there are a large number which he acquires through work.

C.—Blemishes.

It is difficult to give a good definition of the word **blemish,** because the first condition to fulfil in order to define a thing is that the thing itself be *defined* in the literal sense of the word. At this present

time the number and nature of the blemishes are far from being determined. Nothing is more absolute, nothing more relative; all depends upon the idea which is formed of them.

The words *blemish*, *vice*, and *fault* are very often employed synonymously when applied to the horse. They appear, however, to have a particular signification. Thus, by the term *blemish* is designated a cause of depreciation superficial and apparent. *Vice* and *fault* seem rather to convey in themselves something concealed.

Among the numerous definitions which are given of a blemish, that of Littré seems to us to be the most complete: "A blemish is a defect of whatever origin, pathological or otherwise, which has its seat in the skin or the subjacent parts, and which diminishes more or less the value of the horse."

As the word defect has another sense in the exterior; as, besides, it is of little importance to explain the variety of the origin of blemishes, since this origin may or may not be pathological, we will modify this definition in the following manner: *A blemish is every apparent trace of depreciation having its seat in the skin or in the subjacent tissues.* This trace need not be *persistent.* A horse may indeed be blemished to-day and not be so eight days hence. A very slight fall upon the knees sometimes leaves an immediate trace which then blemishes the subject, while oftentimes soon afterwards nothing is visible.

However it may be, we add that most usually the name blemish is given to cicatrices, tumors resulting from accidents, operations which the animal has undergone, or different diseases which have left apparent lesions. Let us give some examples. A horse one of whose articulations has been cauterized is blemished. A horse which presents enlargements around the hock is blemished. The same thing follows when blisters are applied to the walls of the thorax, and the hairs are not replaced at the place of their application. A horse which after having been bled has contracted an inflammation of the jugular vein, with a consecutive obliteration of the latter, is a blemished horse.

Blemishes, as may be conceived, are of more or less gravity, and diminish, on that account, the value of the animal which possesses them. There are some to which no importance is attached. We will return to them in the examination of the regions.

D.—Vices and Faults.

These two expressions have not always the same meaning in the language of the exterior. In certain cases the word *vice* is synonymous with disease or defect, as is seen, for example, in the first article of the

law of August 2, 1884, which treats of the sale and exchange of domestic animals. This law gives, in fact, the enumeration of all the *vices, faults,* or *diseases* reputed redhibitory,—that is to say, which cause a cancelling of the sale or exchange. In other cases, vice results from the bad character of the animal or from his imperfect education. A horse which bites, strikes, rears, and pulls backward without being induced to do so, is a vicious horse.

Generally there exists a certain gradation between vices and faults. To the word *vice* is usually given the sense of a serious moral imperfection; to the word *fault,* that of a slight moral imperfection; finally, to the word *defect,* that of a physical deficiency more or less serious. We repeat, however, that these three expressions are often employed in the same sense in ordinary language, although they are, as we have just seen, quite clearly defined.

PART I.

THE HEAD.

Divisions.—Situated at the anterior extremity of the trunk, the **head** represents a resistance placed at the extremity of the arm of a lever formed by the neck,—a resistance whose relative situation, on account of the extensive movements which it executes, has a great influence in changing the position of the centre of gravity.

Studied as a whole, it presents for consideration *four faces,* a *superior extremity,* continuous with the neck, and an *inferior,* occupied by the oral opening.

Each one of these primary divisions is subdivided into a number of regions enumerated in Fig. 19.

Faces.—1st. The **anterior face** presents successively, from above to below, the *forehead,* the *face* or *nose,* and the *extremity of the nose.*

2d and 3d. The **lateral faces** present the *ear,* the *temple,* the *supra-orbit,* the *eye,* the *masseteric region,* the *cheeks,* and the *nostrils.*

4th. The **posterior face** offers the *branches* of the *inferior maxilla,* the *intermaxillary space,* and the *chin.*

5th. **Inferior Extremity.**—This is entirely occupied by the *mouth,*

which comprises several secondary regions,—namely, the *lips*, the *teeth*, the *gums*, the *bars*, the *lingual canal*, the *tongue*, and the *palate*.

6th. **Superior Extremity.**—It comprises the structures intermediary to the head and neck: above, the *poll* or *nape;* below, the *throat* or *pharyngo-laryngeal* region; on each side, the *parotid* region.

Such are the different regions of the head, which we will examine presently.

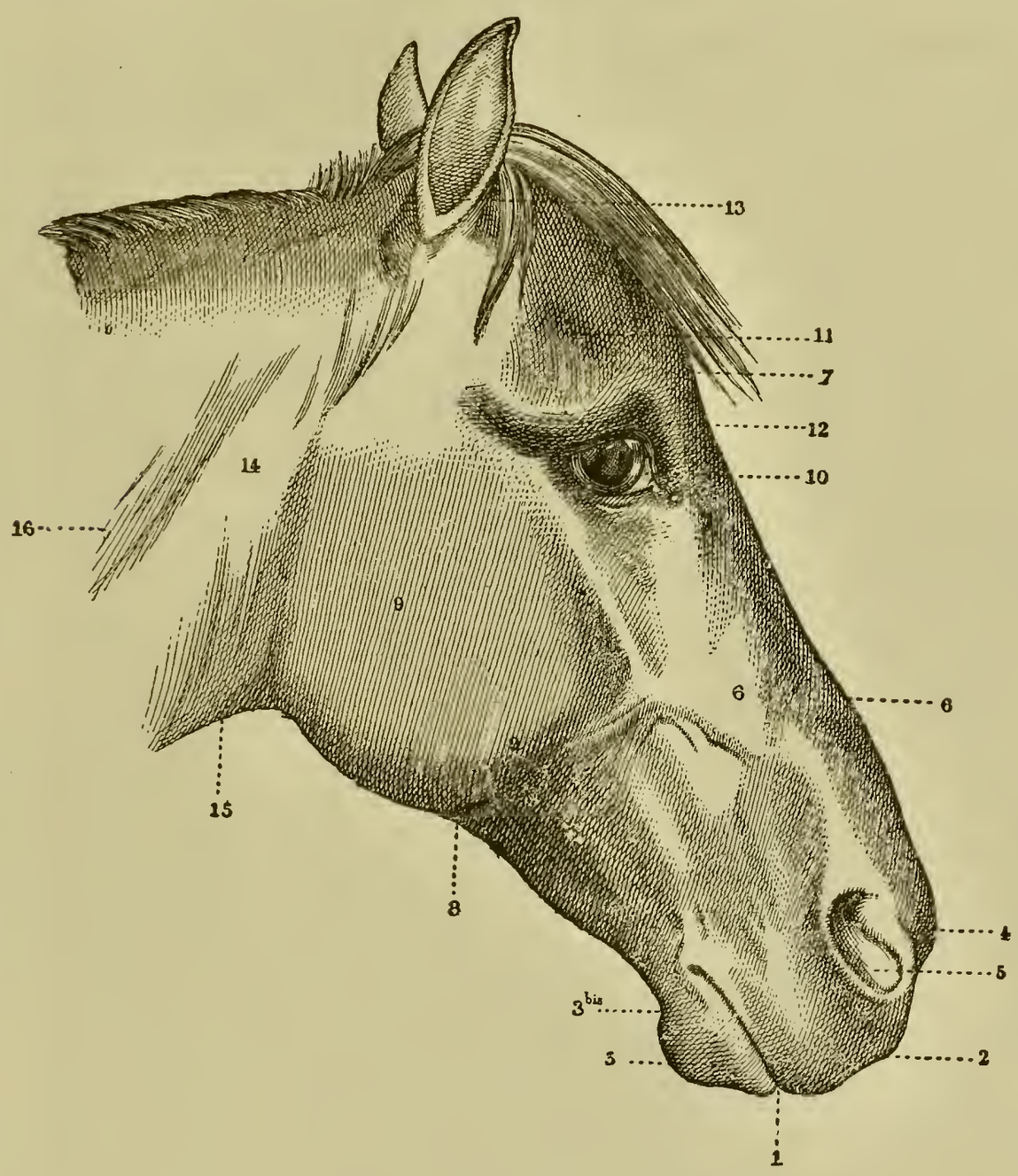


FIG. 19.

1. Mouth.
2. Superior lip.
3. Inferior lip.
3 *bis*. Chin.
4. Extremity of the nose.
5. Nostril.
6–6. Face.
7. Forehead.
8. Inferior maxilla.
9. Cheeks.
10. Eye.
11. Supra-orbit.
12. Temples.
13. Ear.
14. Parotid region.
15. Throat.
16. Neck.

CHAPTER I.

ANTERIOR FACE OF THE HEAD.

A.—The Forehead.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **forehead** is that symmetrical region which occupies the superior part of the anterior face of the head. It is limited above by the *external occipital protuberance* and the *poll;* below by the *face;*[1] on each side, passing from above to below, by the *ear*, the *temple*, the *supra-orbit*, and the *eye*. It is partly concealed by a tuft of hairs, the *forelock*, floating over its surface.

It has for its osseous basis the anterior reflection of the occipital bone and the corresponding portions of the frontal and the parietal bones. On each side of the median line, where the frontal bone is directly covered by the integument, are the temporal fossæ, occupied by the temporal muscles, separated from the skin by the external and internal temporo-auricularis muscles. Whatever may be the general form of the forehead, there always exists over the temporal fossæ a convexity of variable volume which is due to these muscles; for the remainder of its extent the region is almost perfectly plane.

This region should be examined in relation to its *width* and its *direction*.

The **width** of the forehead is an absolute beauty. This is an incontestable fact upon which all are in accord, but to which authors have very often given false interpretations. Most writers exert themselves to demonstrate that this width is in relation with the intelligence, and deduce from this the indication of its beauty. That this assertion may be established it is necessary to prove: 1st, that the width is in direct relation with the volume of the *encephalon;* 2d, that the volume of the latter is proportional to the development of the *intelligence*.

Relative to the first proposition, we should not forget that the frontal diameter depends upon the volume of the surrounding muscles as well as upon the amplitude of the frontal sinuses, filled with air and comprised in the thickness of the cranial parietes. We may even suppose that in most instances it is the resultant of both causes united, and, above all, of the latter, rather than of the actual capacity of the cranial cavity. What, then, becomes of the interpretation given above? Let the reader draw his own conclusion.

Concerning the second assertion, its explanation will be of but little

[1] On a line connecting the internal canthi of the eyes. (Harger.)

more consequence. It is true that in the animal scale the development of the encephalon is in relation with that of the intelligence; but we are not justified to conclude with the positive assertion, that in isolated individuals of the same species this relation is still constant. Contradictory observations against the argument are numerous in man, in whom the facts have been well studied. In the horse, such seem to be the facts by the concurrence of the authors who have adhered to this theory. Vallon[1] reports that at the great cavalry school at Saumur, where large numbers of vicious and unyielding horses from the army are sent, there are many which, compared with others, are not deficient in the transverse measurement of the forehead. The *intelligence*, therefore, is not in constant relation with the *width* of this region. Some subjects, without doubt, are more endowed with this faculty than others; but it is a fact which can only be proved by following the animals in their future career.

Among the Arabians the forehead is regarded as one of the *four principal* characteristics of the horse. This maxim is true, but for reasons very different from those which they have invoked.

Again, the forehead should be wide because its transverse development indicates that of the temporal muscles and of the frontal sinuses, dependencies of the respiratory apparatus. Theoretically, a strong muscularity of a certain region is always an absolute beauty, for not only does it indicate a great aptitude for the execution of its particular function, but it is also a sign of muscular puissance of the locomotory system in general. For analogous reasons a spacious frontal sinus is to be sought, as the dimensions of one organ are proportional to those of the other organs in the same organic apparatus. From the principle that the function makes the organ it will follow that the more developed it be the more perfect will its function be.

It is for this reason that spacious sinuses are an absolute beauty, and not, as Merche[2] thinks, because their object is "the exaltation of the sense of smell." The olfactory cells exist not in the mucous membrane of the sinuses, but in the pituitary membrane along the course of the first pair of encephalic nerves.

In the young animal, as the foal and the colt, the forehead is very prominent, from the fact that the sinuses have not acquired the same capacity that they will have, from the absorption of bone, as the animal advances in age.[3]

---

[1] Vallon, Cours d'hippologie, t. i. p. 306.

[2] Merche, Nouveau Traité des formes extérieures du cheval, p. 15, Paris, 1868.

[3] The *vertical diameter of the forehead* is the distance between the external angle of the eye and the base of the corresponding ear; the *transverse diameter* is the distance from the base

The **direction** of the forehead is closely related to the general form of the head, and varies with the race. It is *straight* when its surface is rectilinear in every sense; *concave* when it is depressed in its inferior portion; *convex* when the profile is arched from above to below. These diverse forms designate the head as *square, flat, arched,* or *hare-faced.* We will return to this *à propos* of the general form of the head.

The form of the forehead is sometimes modified by the presence of small eminences known under the name of *horns,* from their analogy with similar appendages observed on animals of the bovine species. The horses which present this anomaly are rare. They are called *horned* in ordinary language.[1]

We will study, in the article on the *robes,* the peculiarities relative to the color and disposition of the hairs of the forehead.

Diseases and Blemishes.—The most common lesions of this region are *cicatrices* and *excoriations* resulting from falls, blows, and other traumatisms. Among other affections more rare and more serious are *tumefactions* which result from diseases of the frontal sinuses. Sometimes cicatrices are situated on the middle or inferior part of its surface to either side of the median line, indicating that *trepanning* has been practised, with a view of giving exit to pus contained in the sinus. When these are observed, it is necessary to complete our examination by that of the nasal mucous membrane and the submaxillary lymphatic ganglia, because an insidious purulent collection of the sinuses may be a complication of glanders.

Merche,[2] following Bourgelat and many others, mentions a fraud sometimes committed by horse-dealers attempting to mate horses intended for sale. It consists in producing a white coloration in the region of the forehead by cauterizing the skin with a hot iron or with boiling water, etc. The hairs will soon become exfoliated and be replaced by those of a white color. This artifice can be easily detected by the fact that in the centre there is a denuded spot around which the hairs are less numerous than in the surrounding parts. (Bourgelat.) The proof of such a deception is much more detrimental to the reputation of those who employ it than to the value of the animals on which it is practised.

B.—The Face or Nose (Fig. 19).

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **face** is a symmetrical region situated on the anterior surface of the head, limited above by the *forehead,* below by the *extremity of the nose,* and on each side by the *eye,* the *cheek,* and the *nostril.*

---

of one ear to that of the other. Their relative development gives three classes of foreheads: 1. *Brachycephalic* (square-headed), when the two measurements are nearly or quite equal: it includes the Aryan, African, Irish, and English (shire) horses; 2. *Dolichocephalic* (long-headed), when the vertical diameter is in excess, as in the Belgian, Frisian, German, and Percheron races; 3. *Mesocephalic,* which is intermediary between the two preceding. (Harger.)

[1] A. Goubaux, Note sur les chevaux cornus, in Comptes rendus de la Société de biologie, 1852, p. 25.

[2] Merche, Nouveau, Traité des formes extérieures du cheval, p. 16.

The bones entering into its formation are the nasal anteriorly, and the lachrymal, superior maxillary, and incisive laterally. Three pairs of muscles occupy the lateral moieties,—the supermaxillo-labialis,[1] supernaso-labialis, and inferior palpebral or lachrymalis.

The study of this region is very interesting, because it circumscribes the nasal fossæ, whose development is always in direct relation with that of the respiratory apparatus in general. A wide transverse diameter of the face is therefore its first condition of *beauty* as well as of utility.

The face is divided into three regions, a *middle* and *two lateral.*

1. **Middle Region.**—This must be studied as to its direction and its width.

a. The **direction** or **form** of the face or nose gives to the head particular names.

Thus, when it is *straight* or rectilinear from above to below, the head is called *flat* or *square.* When it is *convex* in the same sense, the head is designated as having a *ram's nose* or a *Roman nose,* if the convexity be limited to the face; when the convexity extends to the forehead as well as to the nose, the head is *arched.* Finally, when it is concave in the middle of its length, the head is likened to that of a *rhinoceros,* and is also called *camel-nosed.*

The various forms may be *congenital* or *acquired.* The latter are due to pressure on the nasal bones from the improper employment of the nose-band of the bridle or the halter. Fortunately, this does not interfere with the capacity of the nasal fossæ, which are as capacious as in natural conditions. It will be otherwise, however, if this conformation be occasioned by fracture of the nasal bones, as we shall see further on.

Although the straight form or square head is the most agreeable to the eye, the other forms of the face do not imply anything derogatory to the development of the respiratory apparatus.

b. The **width** of the middle region can be easily determined by examining its anterior surface. The width is in all cases an index of the respiratory capacity, and should be in proportion to that of the forehead to preserve the harmonious relation of the integral parts. We cannot oppose too strongly the erroneous teaching of some authors who regard a convex face, under the pretence that it is narrow, as a predis-

---

[1] This muscle, covering the maxillary sinuses below the eye, can be easily outlined. Its external border is separated from the maxillary spine, with which it is almost parallel, by a space about twenty-five centimetres in width. This space should be selected for trepanning, so as not to injure the muscle. (Harger.)

posing cause of *roaring*. This affection does not have its seat in the nasal fossæ. Narrowness of the face is an absolute defect.

2. **Lateral Regions.**—The lateral divisions present but little of importance. We will observe, nevertheless, that they do not present altogether the same conformation at different periods of the animal's life. Thus, they are more prominent in young horses, because the molar teeth are more deeply implanted into the alveoli of the superior maxilla; as age advances and the teeth are continually worn, the latter are pushed from their sockets, and these regions appear more concave.

Diseases and Blemishes.—The blemishes of the face are:

1. **Deformities** consequent to fracture of the nasal bones from traumatisms received by the parietes of this region. These fractures are rare, not only because the bones themselves possess a marked degree of resistance, but also because the elasticity of the air contained in the nasal fossæ to a great extent breaks the momentum of blows received upon their surface. Nevertheless there is danger of producing, either by the displacement of the bones or the consequent formation of a callus, a serious obstacle to the free passage of the air during ordinary respiration and particularly during exercise. Other deformities may exist upon the lateral parietes of the face. These are *tumefactions* which result from a chronic lesion of the mucous membrane of the maxillary sinuses, due to necrosis of a tooth or other alterations of a diverse nature, whose gravity varies with the cause.

2. **Traces of Cauterization.**—At the present time cauterization of the face is seldom practised. The Arabs employed it in the treatment of strangles and benign affections of the superior respiratory passages. With these exceptions, such blemishes indicate that the animal has been or is still suffering from a grave disease of the nasal cavities.

3. **Cicatrices** which are the result of traumatisms, *excoriations*, or *thickenings* of the skin caused by the halter or bridle; finally, cicatrices of an angular or semicircular shape, arousing the suspicion that the maxillary sinuses have been trephined. These last are situated within the maxillary spine towards the internal angle of the eye.

When any of the blemishes enumerated are present, it is necessary to complete our examination by a minute inspection of the nasal sinuses, the molar teeth, and the submaxillary lymphatic ganglia.

C.—Extremity of the Nose (Fig. 19.)

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The extremity of the nose is situated at the inferior extremity of the face, between the nostrils and above the superior lip.

Anatomically it comprises for its base the anterior extremity of the septum nasi and the comma-shaped cartilages which encircle the internal alæ of the nostrils. The external face of the latter is covered by the transversalis nasi muscle, which is separated on the median line from the fine integument of this region by the terminal tendon of the maxillo-labialis muscle.

All authors who have described this region have confounded it with the *superior lip*, whose organization is entirely different. They have, therefore, erred anatomically in saying that it has an extensive nerve-supply, and physiologically none the less seriously in considering it as the principal organ of touch in the horse. The superior lip fulfils the latter *rôle*. It follows from this that we will describe neither beauty nor defect of this region, excepting that it should be large as an index of the respiratory functions.

It is more important to assure ourselves that it is exempt from *blemishes*. When they exist, they are nearly always the result of falls which the animal has received. It is necessary, then, to examine with care the state of the incisor teeth, the lips, the gums, and the plumb-line of the extremities, to determine as nearly as possible whether the blemishes resulted from an accident or from a weakness of the fore limbs, the effect of usage. They are never produced by the application of the twitch,—a means of torture employed to divert the attention of the animal, and which can only be placed upon the superior lip, whatever precaution in this respect be taken.

CHAPTER II.

LATERAL FACES OF THE HEAD.

A.—The Ear (Fig. 19).

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **ear** is situated at the superior extremity of the lateral face of the head, to one side of the *forehead* and the dependency of the mane known under the name of *forelock*, in front of the *poll*, above the *parotid gland* and behind the *temple*.

Anatomically, this region is easily visible, and has for its base the conchal and scutiform cartilages. These give attachment to ten pairs of muscles which endow the ear with movements either general or partial. The former carry it backward, outward, forward, inward, and rotate it on its adipose cushion. The latter (mastoido-auricularis) are destined to move the concha so as to adjust the volume of air in the auditory chamber (hiatus) to sounds of different intensities.

Diverse **beauties** are recognized in this organ which are dependent upon its length, thickness, situation, direction, and movements.

1. **Length.**—As Bourgelat has remarked, some prefer a long ear,

others a short one. He adds, with much prudence, that good judgment does not approve of an excess of length, and that this organ, being an integral part of the head, should be in proportion with it. It is a fact worthy of remark, that horses in which they are short are usually energetic and courageous. We must also add that small ears diminish the apparent size of the head, render the physiognomy more pleasant and expressive, and brighten the eye. In this respect the Aryan horse has greatly influenced the English thoroughbred; the Boulonnais, the Flemish; the Irish, the Percheron, etc.

2. **Thickness.**—The **thickness** of the ear denotes the quality of the race and of the subject. This is indicated by several other organs which in addition reveal clearly his origin. When the skin of the concha is thick, and garnished on the inside with numerous long hairs, when the subcutaneous connective tissue is abundant and obliterates the blood-vessels and nerves, we have evidences that the subject is common and lymphatic. A concha small, firm, and elastic, covered by a skin fine and adherent, with fine and scanty hairs in the interior, and blood-vessels well outlined, characterizes an animal of distinguished ancestry. This is so well known to horse-merchants that they never fail to tamper with the hairs of the ears of common horses in arranging their toilet prior to offering them for sale.

3. **Situation.**—The **situation** of the ear merits consideration. Its distance to one side of the median line, though dependent in part upon the development of the muscles of this region, allows us to appreciate, to a certain degree, the width of the cranial cavity. If this separation gives more expression to the head and presages greater intelligence, it is nevertheless necessary to guard ourselves against an error of which we have spoken, in according to this character more importance than it deserves. The same argument applies to ears situated *too high;* they have an unpleasant effect on the eye and are often an index of a timid and sulky disposition.

4. **Direction and Movements.**—It is considered a mark of beauty if a horse freely directs his ears to an angle of about forty-five degrees with the axis of the head. It is thus that they present themselves in active and energetic subjects: if, besides, they are short and well placed, they are designated as *bold* or *cunning.*

Ordinarily they are moved in various directions to receive sound-waves, by means of which the animal obtains a direct knowledge of certain conditions of the exterior. Animals in which the ears are motionless are sluggish and indolent or, what is more serious, suffer from a variable degree of deafness.

Let us refer to certain movements which have not been considered. These are forward and backward oscillations of the ears of some horses during work, and particularly during laborious efforts. At each step or at each effort the animal carries the ears quickly forward, then backward to their primitive position, and repeats this action during the continuance of the work. We know of no appropriate expression to qualify these singular oscillations.

En résumé, the ear is **beautiful** when it is short, directed forward, well situated, clean, fine, covered by a thin and adherent skin, with few hairs in the interior of the concha.

Defects.—Ears long, thick, and transversely horizontal designate a horse as being *lop-eared.* This ungraceful carriage does not necessarily detract from the good qualities of the animal. There are many lop-eared horses none the less excellent for service. Nevertheless this defect is more common in lymphatic horses than in those of the finer races.

We speak also of horses whose ears are held in a horizontal direction and undergo, during locomotion, alternate elevations and depressions. It has been said of such, more picturesquely than properly, that they *limp* at the ear. This peculiarity may exist on the right, on the left, or on both sides simultaneously.

When the ear is thick, large, and decidedly pendulous, overhanging the parotid region, it is called *swine-ear.* This defect is no more grave than the preceding, but it is more unpleasant to the eye.

The ears are *restless* or *uncertain* when the animal keeps them in continual motion in the stable as well as during exercise. This is an evidence of a timid nature, impaired vision, or even total blindness. It seems that in the last two instances, as H. Bouley[1] has said, the animal endeavors to compensate for the loss of vision by turning the auditory apparatus in various directions; he endeavors to see by the sense of hearing.

In the language of horsemen, horses are *skittish* if they worry and fret at the least noise when they are driven into such or such a place in the stable or made to execute certain movements; it is often remarkable.

Finally, some horses carry the ears backward against the superior border of the neck. It is evidence of a bad disposition and an inclination to strike or bite when approached.

Blemishes.—The **blemishes** of this region are numerous.

1st. It is quite common to observe draught-horses whose ears are

---

[1] H. Bouley, Maison rustique, t. ii. p. 195.

lacerated. They may become deformed, thickened, and acquire a faulty direction. *Fractures* of the conchal cartilage result ordinarily from blows inflicted by brutal drivers; they have no serious consequences.

2d. At the present time horses with the *ears cropped* in the middle of their length are almost unknown. We have met with only two instances. It appears, however, that this was the custom during the last century. Horses which had undergone this operation were called *crop-eared.* If at the same time the tail had been amputated, they were designated by the term *docked* (J. B. Huzard). Vallon[1] reports that this mutilation was formerly common in Algeria, and was employed by the Arabians in their military expeditions to establish proofs of ownership. Under other circumstances, amputation of the ears is sometimes effected by the application of the twitch, most often by brutal farriers, upon horses difficult to shoe or to dress. It will not be difficult to convince the reader of the danger which the employment of such procedures may occasion.

3d. It is not less rare to meet horses whose ears are *split.* This incision was made upon the left ear of cavalry horses under eight years of age, discharged from the French army. The purchasers did not delay to unite the two flaps. When the incision had existed for a long time, they freshed the edges with a cutting instrument and united them. Nothing more than a cicatrix persisted afterwards, which was often concealed by the hairs.

In Algeria, says Vallon,[2] as in the states of the Mussulmans, it is the custom under certain circumstances to split the ears of colts. We can therefore purchase, without fear, such horses as have been subjected to the operation. This is also practised on the Western prairies of the United States as a brand of ownership.

4th. We sometimes observe at the base of the ear *denudations* or *circular cicatrices* which result from the repeated application of the twitch to this region. It is to be feared, then, that the animal has been treated for a disease of long standing which required repeated dressing, or that he is difficult to shoe, harness, etc. Certain horses during the summer, as soon as they begin to perspire, experience violent itching in the interior of the ear, which causes disordered movements of the head. Cleanliness, hygienic precautions, and detersive lotions are the remedies for the affection.

Let us now consider the **fraudulent means** employed to hide the defects and blemishes of this region.

---

[1] Vallon, Cours d'hippologie, t. i. p. 317. [2] Ibid.

1st. The simplest and most harmless among them consists in **clipping the hairs** of the ears. In this part of the animal's toilet, the dealer carefully cuts the long and abundant hairs which exist in a normal state at the entrance of the concha and which act undoubtedly as organs of protection to the auditory apparatus. These hairs are less abundant in horses of the finer races, as stated above. It is also intended by this procedure to give lightness to the head, fineness to the ear, and distinction to the animal, characteristics which do not belong to common horses. This fraud—for it is a procedure whose object is to deceive the buyer as to the real qualities of the merchandise which is offered—is not easily detected except by those who are experienced with horses. This is so generally resorted to that certain dealers, very honest otherwise, are unwilling to expose horses for sale unless they have been thus prepared. When questioned as to this practice, they respond that, the parts being cleansed with difficulty, the removal of the hairs renders this more easy. We often find on the internal surface of the concha a thick layer of sebaceous matter—cerumen—which becomes irritating, provokes pruritus during the summer, and, at the same time, attracts insects. This material is most abundant in horses whose sanitary conditions are neglected. Particles of fodder and atmospheric dust will adhere to it, against the invasion of which the hairs thus shortened can offer no obstruction. In the army this custom has been abolished.

2d. Another common means is the use of a **hood,** under the pretence of protection from insects. It should always be removed, as it may hide the marks of the twitch, for example, if it be difficult to shoe or harness the animal; or, again, a leaden ball suspended by a thread and placed in the interior of the ear to quiet nervous subjects.

3d. When the ears are long and pendulous they can be made, by horsemen, to assume a good direction by means of a silk thread which is covered by the hairs of the forelock. Being thus adducted towards the median line, they may entirely hide this defect.

4th. Certain operations were formerly practised upon these organs, whose effect was to straighten them. They are not employed at the present time, but have been abandoned, not because of a moral view, but because they are recognized as being dangerous and inefficient. It is not rare to see horsemen attempt to shorten the ears by means of the *ear-cutter*. This instrument is a sort of mould composed of two lateral halves, into which the concha is received. Whatever projects beyond the edges of the instrument is carefully removed with a bistoury.

We have not included deafness among the defects of the ear because

this infirmity is often difficult of appreciation, although it may occasion great inconveniences in animals which are governed by the voice of their master.

As M. Richard[1] remarks, in deaf horses the ears are generally fixed, directed forward or laterally, vainly endeavoring to perceive sound. This attitude, by itself alone, does not permit us to recognize this defect at the time of sale. In most instances it passes unperceived, and is only observed after the animal has been worked for some time. Deaf horses are ordinarily docile, both in harness and in the stable, and respond quickly to all the indications of the bridle and bit. The Arabians, with almost self-love for their horses, urge them with the voice as well as with the hand, and reject those which are deaf as being fit only for the pack-saddle, and of little value as saddle-horses. Nevertheless, it is more prejudicial in draught-horses. Those that are mounted are more easily guided by the action of the bridle.

B.—The Temple (Fig. 19).

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—This is a double region, more or less prominent, situated on the lateral faces of the head. It has for its anatomical base the exterior of the temporo-maxillary articulation, and is limited below by the *cheek*, behind by the *parotid region*, and in front and above more or less directly by the *ear*, the *eye*, and the *supra-orbit*.

The principal qualifications which we seek here are its **distinctness** and its **freedom from blemishes.**

Diseases and Blemishes.—*Denudations*, *excoriations*, and *wounds* of this region deserve to be taken into consideration. The first are the result of friction from disordered movements of the head, as in animals tossing themselves about when suffering from colic, vertigo, epilepsy, or grave diseases of the feet, when the animal assumes a prolonged decubitus, etc. The second, on the contrary, are the consequences of severer causes, as traumatisms of various kinds, which may primarily or secondarily open the articulation, allow the escape of the synovial fluid, and produce a fistula. The last accident is serious, the horse being unable to masticate his aliment properly on account of the pain which the movements of the jaws produce.[2] It is not astonishing that an affection of such a nature might be concealed by a hood which covers the ears to protect their interior from foreign bodies and insects. At any rate, the animal should always be uncovered during the examination, and such an alteration of the temple should never escape the attention of the observer.

---

[1] Richard, Étude du cheval, 6e éd., p. 66.

[2] A. Goubaux, Comptes-Rendus de la Société vétérinaire (séance du 27 avril, 1876).

This is the region in which the first white hairs, common in old horses of a dark color, make their appearance. It is to be remembered, however, that we may find *gray temples* in younger horses as well as in colts and foals.

C.—The Supra-orbit and Eyebrows (Fig. 19).

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **supra-orbit** is an asymmetrical depression situated above the *eye*, on the side of the *forehead*, and above the *cheek* and the *temple*.

This region, which corresponds to the most superficial part of the temporal fossa, is filled with a mass of adipose tissue more or less abundant. It indicates nothing as to the quality of the animal, but it permits us to make an approximate inference of his age. It is a well-known fact that in old horses the supra-orbits become *hollow* from the absorption of the fat which in the young animal completely occludes them. This fact is not so constant that very much importance can be attached to it.

Although the first condition does not lessen the real value of the animal, horse-merchants, in order to obliterate these cavities when empty, have endeavored to **fill them** by a very simple method which, in the majority of cases, occasions no inconvenience. It consists in making a deep puncture into the region with a large needle or the sharp blade of a knife until the connective tissue of the temporal fossa is reached. Having made the incision, the mouth is applied over the opening and the connective tissue is forcibly inflated with air. (A hollow needle would be more expeditious.) We have seen one instance in which an abscess complicated this operation.

To detect this deception, it is only necessary to make pressure with the fingers over the region, which will produce crepitation due to the passage of the air through the connective tissue.

Some authors have admitted a region of the **eyebrows**. Huzard the elder and Merche have absolutely denied their existence. Lecoq[1] refutes with good reason the latter opinion by remarking that in the fœtus the arches of the eyebrows are visible, in a very distinct manner, a little before the remainder of the body is covered with hairs. Later, they are confounded with the surrounding parts and lose, for this reason, all interest from a point of view of the exterior. We will not dwell any longer on this point.

---

[1] F. Lecoq, Extérieur du cheval, 4e éd., p. 215.

D.—The Eye (Fig. 20 and Fig. 23).

Situation; Limits.—The **eye** constitutes a double region situated upon the lateral planes of the head, above the *cheek* and the *face*, below the *supra-orbit*, and on each side of the *forehead*.

Anatomical Base.—The essential part of the visual apparatus consists of a membranous sphere called the **ocular globe**, transparent in front, whose interior is lined by a nervous membrane, the retina, sensitive only to luminous rays.

It is protected over its greater extent by a deep osseous cavity, the *orbital cavity*, to the bottom of which it is fixed; in front also by two mobile curtains, the *eyelids*, which complete the orbit in front and regulate the quantity of light which should be admitted into its interior. Ten pairs of muscles endow it with various movements; finally, special organs of a glandular nature lubricate its anterior surface and protect it from the constantly desiccating influence of the atmosphere. Such, in a general way, is the organization of the ocular region.

1st. **Essential Organs of Vision, or the Globe of the Eye.**—This is a membranous envelope, completely closed, whose interior is filled with transparent substances of a variable density, known under the generic name of the *media of the eye*.

This sac, most bulging in front, is constituted here by a transparent, thick, and resisting expansion, the *lucid cornea*, covering one-fifth of its peripheric surface. Posteriorly it is composed of three layers, to which are assigned different functions. These are, proceeding from without to within:

a. The **sclerotic** (1), white, sometimes pigmented, fibrous, resisting, and thick, which is vulgarly often known under the name of the *white of the eye*, and which is visible from the exterior by its white coloration around the periphery of the cornea whenever the eyelids are separated from each other. Its external surface gives attachment to the motor muscles of the eye-globe. Its anterior elliptical opening is closed by the cornea by bevelled edges after the manner of the crystal fitting into the case of a watch.

b. The **choroid** (2), very thin, black, not visible from the exterior, which plays the *rôle* of an absorbing surface for an excess of luminous rays, and converts the interior of the eye into a veritable dark chamber, into which the images of external objects are received to be appreciated by the retina.

This membrane, in front, where it is called the *ciliary body*, presents numerous radiating folds, the *ciliary processes*, which circumscribe the edges of the *crystalline lens* (7). Through the *ciliary ligament* it gives attachment to the circumference of the *iris* (4), an elliptical diaphragm pierced in its centre by an opening, the *pupil* (5).

The **iris** and the **pupil** are visible through the transparent cornea. The former divides the space anterior to the crystalline lens—*anterior chamber*—into two communicating compartments, an *anterior* (8) and a *posterior* (8′) practically obliterated. The coloration of its anterior face is of a yellowish-brown, but it may vary in different subjects; that of the posterior, on the contrary, is black, due to

the presence of pigment called the "uvea," variable masses of which, called "corpora nigra," or "soot-balls,"[1] are sometimes suspended from its edge into the pupillary opening.

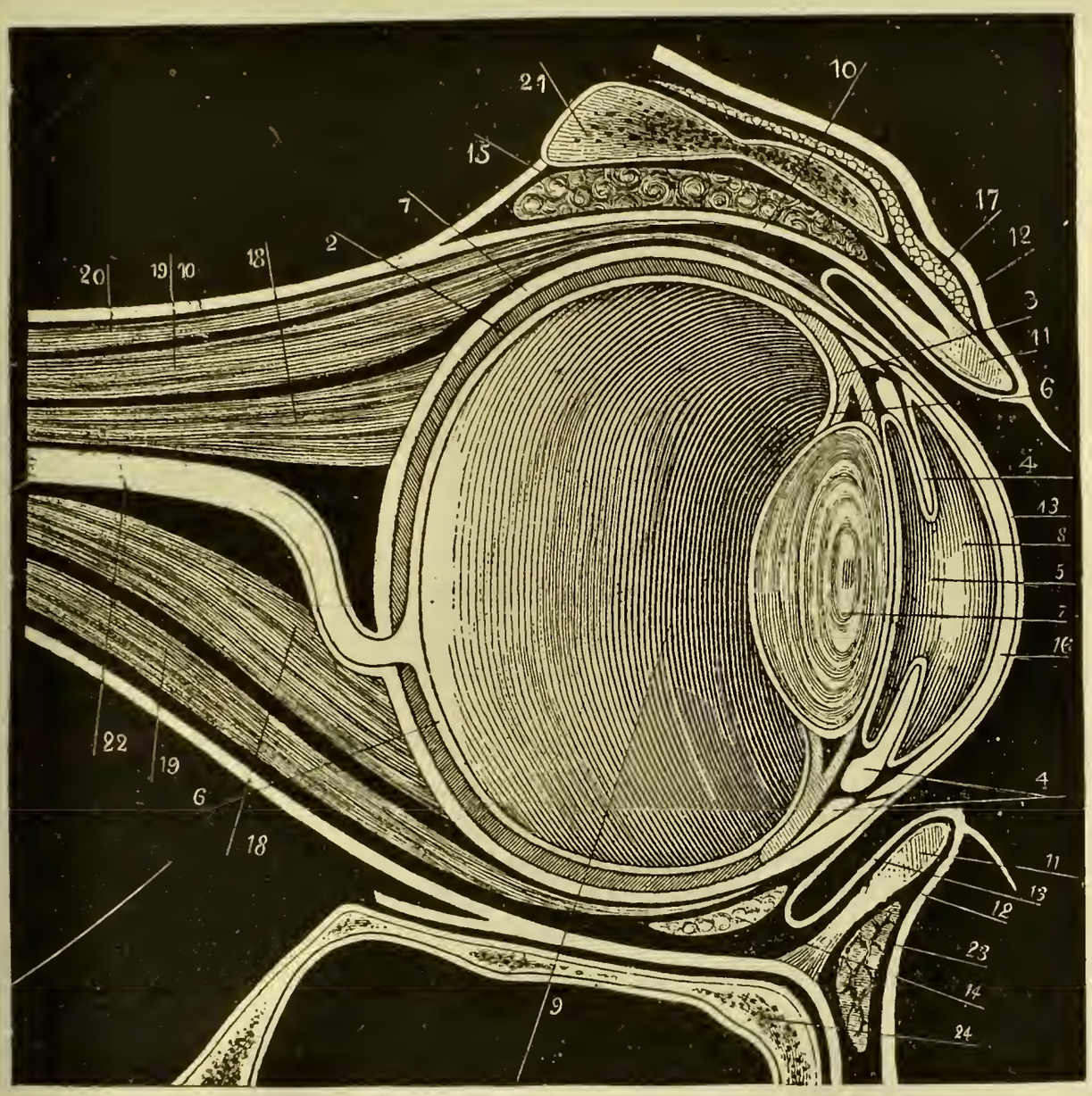


FIG. 20.—VERTICAL SECTION OF THE EYE OF THE HORSE (semi-schematic).

1, sclerotic; 2, choroid; 3, ciliary processes; 4, iris; 5, anterior compartment, with the aqueous humor; 6, retina; 7, crystalline lens; 8, anterior chamber; 8′, posterior chamber: 9, posterior compartment of the eye, with the vitreous humor; 10, ocular sheath; 11, tarsal cartilages; 12, integument of the eyelids; 13, conjunctiva; 14, section of the small oblique muscle; 15, lachrymal gland; 16, cornea; 17, transverse section of the superior half of the orbicularis muscle; 18, posterior straight muscle; 19 superior straight muscle; 20, elevator of the superior eyelid; 21, section of the orbital arch; 22, optic nerve; 23, transverse section of the inferior moiety of the orbicularis muscle; 24, section of the floor of the orbit.

c. The **retina** (6), transparent, very thin and delicate, adherent to the choroid and its dependencies, which is an expansion of the optic nerve, and upon which the impressions of light are directly perceived.

Media of Refraction.—*a.* **Crystalline Lens** (7).—This is a bi-convex,

[1] These are found in most eyes, and when not excessive, so as to obstruct the light, are not an unsoundness. (Harger.)

transparent[1] organ, more convex on its posterior face, and appears behind the pupil. It is closely applied against the posterior face of the iris, and divides the interior of the eye into two great compartments, an *anterior* (5) and a *posterior* (9).

b. **Vitreous Humor** (9).—It is a transparent, limpid, and gelatinous substance which occupies the whole of the posterior chamber.

c. **Aqueous Humor** (8).—The **aqueous humor**, slightly more dense than water, occupies the anterior chamber (8 and 8′) of the eye. It bathes both surfaces of the iris. It is under external as well as internal pressure, and readily escapes when the cornea is perforated.

The function of these three media of the eye is to concentrate the rays of light, by refraction, upon the surface of the retina, where they make an image. The lens, being more convex behind than in front, converges them for this reason and brings them to a focus on the anterior surface of the retina. Its relative position is thus necessitated by this function; if too distant from the retina, the image is formed anterior to the latter and is not perceived by that membrane; if too close, the rays converge posterior to the retina and the image really would tend to be formed outside of the ocular globe and again is not appreciated by this structure.

2d. **Protective Organs of the Eye-Globe.**—These include the **orbital cavity**, the **eyelids**, and the **nictitans membrane.**

a. The **orbital cavity** is a conical, deep cavity, surrounded by a fibro-osseous wall with an osseous opening in front. Its parietes are formed by the *ocular sheath* (10), conical and resisting, attached behind to the crest of the orbital hiatus, whose base is attached to the orbital opening and thence prolonged into the eyelids, whose base they constitute. Superiorly, the eye is only protected by the adipose cushion which forms the base of the supra-orbital region. Internally and inferiorly, the orbital cavity is osseous. The opening of the orbital cavity is circumscribed by the orbital process of the frontal bone (21) and a portion of the lachrymal and zygomatic bones (24). We also find on its floor and towards the internal side the lachrymal fossa and the superior orifice of the canal of the same name.

b. The **eyelids**, distinguished as *superior* and *inferior*, are two mobile musculo-membranous valves which protect the part of the eyeball exposed to the exterior. Their free border, more curved in the superior than in the inferior, presents the excretory orifices of the Meibomian glands as well as a series of tentacular hairs longer above than below, known under the name of *eyelashes.* The eyelids offer, besides, two commissures or angles,—a *temporal* or external, and a *nasal* or internal.

The *external face* is covered by an adherent (12) delicate skin provided with numerous short hairs. The *internal face* moulded on the eye-globe is covered by a delicate mucous membrane—the *conjunctiva* (13)—which is very sensitive to foreign bodies. The conjunctiva in the healthy animal is of a rosy color and becomes reflected over the choroid and the nictitans membrane, and is prolonged into the lachrymal canal. It becomes arrested at the edge of the cornea and its epithelial layer alone covers that structure. At the free border of the eyelids exists a cartilaginous lamina called the *tarsus*, on which the extremity of the ocular sheath terminates.

---

[1] It sometimes has a bluish color, due to the reflection of the variegated colors at the posterior part of the choroid. (Harger.)

The Meibomian glands, embedded in the deep face of the tarsus, secrete a sebaceous matter which prevents the escape of the tears in a normal state and obliges them to follow the natural passages in reaching the exterior.

The orbicularis palpebral muscle approximates the two lids and the levator palpebra elevates the superior; the inferior is depressed by its own weight.

c. The **membrana nictitans**, or *third eyelid* (haw), is a nucleus of very mobile cartilage surrounded by adipose and connective tissue and the conjunctiva, situated at the internal canthus of the eye. It becomes continuous with the adipose tissue enveloping the ocular muscles. It has no inherent movements of its own, but mechanically protrudes when the eye is compressed, and liberates the latter from foreign bodies. It glides over the surface of the cornea when the eye is retracted into its orbit, and can be easily rendered visible when the globe is compressed and drawn into the bottom of the ocular cavity.

3d. **Apparatus of Lubrication of the Eye.**—This apparatus comprises the **lachrymal gland** (15), situated between the orbital process of the frontal bone and the eyeball. It secretes the tears. These are distributed over the surface of the cornea by the hygrophthalmic canals, which open on the inner surface of the superior eyelid towards its temporal angle, and thence they gain the nasal commissure, where they open through the *puncta lachrymalia* into the lachrymal ducts. A small tubercle, the *caruncula lachrymalis*, a dependency of the conjunctiva occupying the inner angle of the eye, directs them towards these two conduits, whence they pass successively through the lachrymal sac and the lachrymal canal to make their exit through the orifice on the floor of the nostril, where they are liberated on the exterior.

4th. **Apparatus of Locomotion.**—The movements of the eye are *protective* and *functional.* The former have for their object the mechanical protrusion of the nictitans membrane upon the ocular surface by retracting the eye into the bottom of its orbit. It is accomplished by the posterior rectus muscle. The latter elevate, depress, deviate laterally, rotate the eye, and control the size of the pupillary opening of the iris to regulate the quantity of light which enters the eye. Elevation, depression, and lateral inclination of the eye-globe are executed by the contraction of the superior, inferior, external, and internal recti muscles; rotation, by the superior and inferior obliques, muscles which are physiological antagonists. These muscles are inserted posteriorily into the bottom orbital hiatus and anteriorily on the external surface of the sclerotic. Their anterior insertion can be exposed by making lateral traction on the eye-globe with a tenaculum.

Method of Procedure in the Examination of the Eye.—Long ago, Bourgelat[1] had clearly indicated the precautions to be taken in executing such an examination skilfully. It is, perhaps, needless to recommend that the head should be divested of all harness, more particularly of blinkers, and that the surroundings should be such as not to obstruct the view or communicate abnormal reflections to the eye. The head is turned towards the entrance of the stable, and the eye is carefully inspected in semi-daylight to observe any pathological

[1] C. Bourgelat, Traité de la conformation extérieure du cheval, 5e éd., p. 57.

alterations. For this purpose the ophthalmoscope may sometimes be used with advantage. Then the animal is taken into broad daylight to see how the eye acts under the influence of the solar rays. To determine simply the integrity of vision the following procedure is pur-

FIG. 21.—Examination of the eye.

sued: The observer places himself in front of the animal, strikes the side of the face lightly with the hand, and suddenly withdraws it in elevating it to a level with the corresponding eye. The latter, if vision is not impaired, will suddenly close from fear of being struck. If the sight is impaired or lost, the eyelids remain stationary. This manœuvre is repeated with the opposite eye. The movements of the hand must not be too forcible, as excessive vibration of the air may even affect a blind eye, particularly in one-eyed horses. If it be desired to examine

the conjunctiva, the nictitanous membrane, the lachrymal caruncle, the media, etc., with more care, and the eyelids are not sufficiently separated, the following manipulation is employed (Fig. 21 and Fig. 22): Having quieted the animal, one hand is placed upon the face to pre-

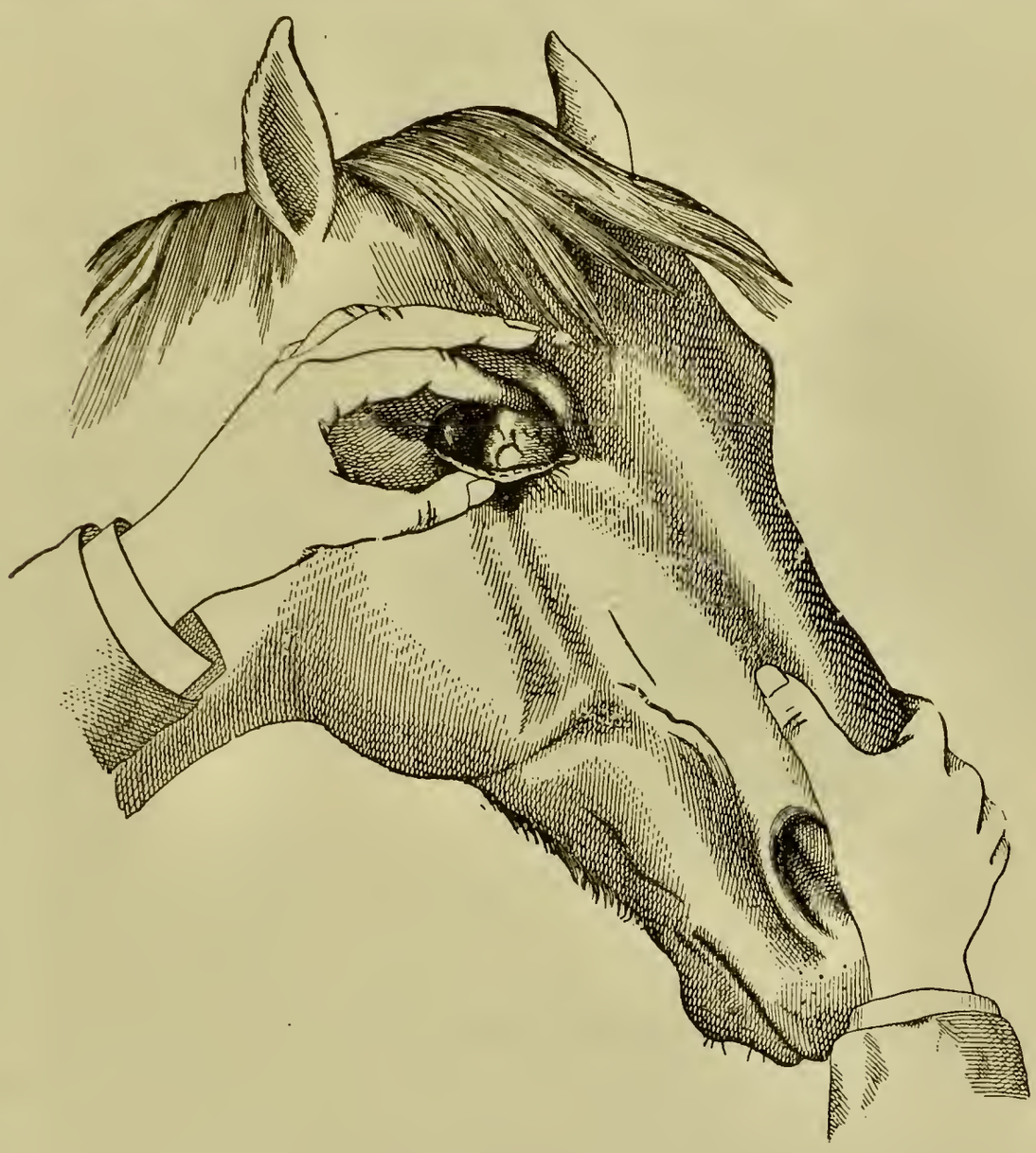


FIG. 22.—Examination of the eye.

vent his advancing, or upon the inferior lip, if the head be held too low. Then, with the thumb and index finger of the free hand, the eyelids are separated and the eye-globe is compressed into the orbital cavity. The nictitans will then protrude and expose a large area of the conjunctiva, and render pathological growths or foreign bodies visible.

Beauties of the Eye.—Whatever may be the physiological integrity of the eye, its **absolute beauty** resides in the following phenomena:

1. Its *separation from the median line*, which coincides with a wide forehead and a wide nose.

2. Its *degree of prominence* over the surrounding regions, which

indicates a fulness of the ocular cavity and the temporal fossa, the size and development of the muscular system in general, and the amplitude of the field of vision.

3. Its *perfect equality* with that of the opposite side.

4. Its *deep coloration* and the *intensity of its reflection*, a white or pale color being symptomatic of more or less serious diseases.

5. Its *freedom from blemishes of the cornea* and the *transparency of the media.* Alteration in these always manifests itself by an opacity and the appearance of abnormal colorations, whence results a variable degree of impermeability to light.

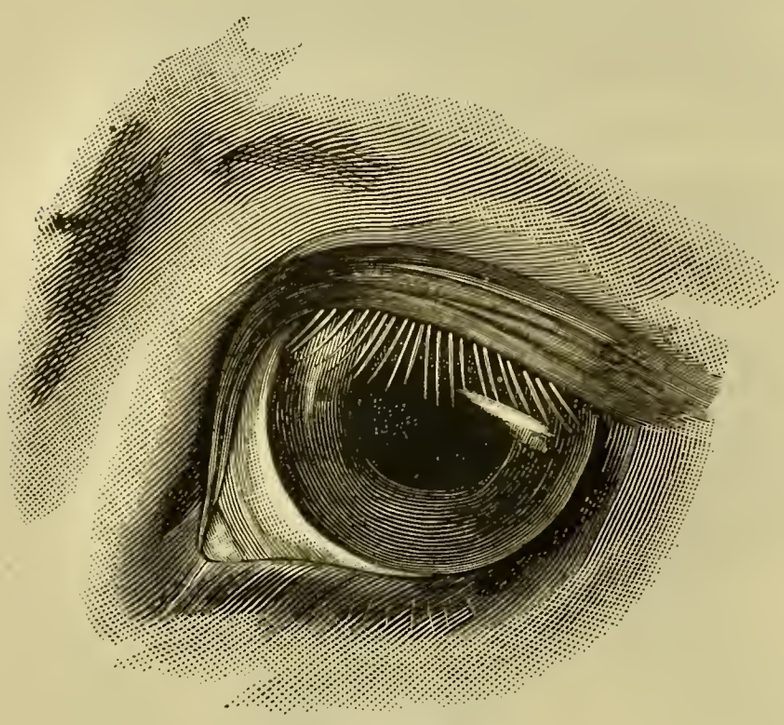


Fig. 23.—Normal eye.

6. The *extent and quickness of the movements of the iris*, immobility indicating complete insensibility of the retina to the impressions of luminous vibrations. The pupil should contract in the presence of light, and dilate in darkness, in order to proportion the retinal sensibility to the functional delicacy of this membrane.

7. A *mean convexity of the cornea*, too much or too little characterizing a myopic, a hypermetropic, and not a normal eye.

8. The *black coloration of the pupil*, which denotes a perfect transparency of the crystalline lens, and indicates the reflection of the black color of the choroid and the ciliary body situated behind.

9. The *integrity, fineness, absence of blemishes*, and *mobility of the eyelids*, all other qualities of these organs indicating imperfections and functional impairment.

10. A *rosy tint of the conjunctiva*, its redness, paleness, and infiltration being symptomatic of a general or local inflammatory state, of a congestive state, or of profound organic debility.

11. The *clearness and little abundance of the tears*, the *dryness of the eyelids*, the *large development* and *good direction of the eyelashes.*

12. Finally, the *vivacity, changeableness*, and *frankness* of the ex-

pression, which denote the energy, the nobleness, and the distinction of the horse.

Such are the numerous beauties sought for in this region.

Defects.—The **defects** of the eye are not less important to consider. We mention:

1. The *small eye*, or *pig's eye*, in which the ocular globe is little developed, the palpebral opening narrow, and the eyelids thick. It accompanies, in general, a lymphatic temperament and a common ancestry. It is said to be an index of a predisposition to diseases of this region.

2. The *concealed eye*, ordinarily small and but little salient, but surmounted by a prominent and voluminous eyelid which partly conceals it, implies a sullen and treacherous disposition and a natural aggressiveness.

3. The *bovine eye*, or *gross eye*, characterized by an excessive convexity of the cornea, is very salient between the eyelids, little mobile, ungraceful, and without expression. It is often predisposed to myopia.

4. The *hollow eye* is seen only in old horses and in those deteriorated by age and hard labor. It is retracted into its orbit, covered by flabby eyelids, surmounted by a hollow supra-orbit, and often weeping.

5. The *circled* or *bordered eye* is one in which a portion of the sclerotic around the edge of the cornea is visible through the palpebral opening. It is very unseemly.

6. The eyes are sometimes *unequal* in size, either from excess or deficiency of growth. When this disproportion is not congenital, it is a subject of apprehension, from always being a constant result of repeated attacks of periodic fluxion. The eye which has experienced repeated attacks of this disease is always the smaller. Its function is practically lost.

7. The *myopic eye* is very convex; it resembles much the bovine eye, save the volume, which is not exaggerated. It is observed most frequently in young animals, and renders them irresolute and liable to shy.

8. The *hypermetropic eye* is, on the contrary, not sufficiently convex. Such animals as possess it discern very poorly objects which are near, whilst those which are at a distance can be easily recognized. It predisposes them to stumbling and uncertainty of the limbs.

9. A *wall-eye* is one in which the iris is of a pearly-white color, being deprived of its pigment. Apart from the visual effect, it is none the less excellent functionally.

Diseases.—The **diseases** of the eye are numerous and more or less grave. They are:

Nuage is constituted by a slight opalescence of the cornea.

Albugo is a complete opacity of a variable area.

Leucoma is a cicatrix of the cornea.

Glaucoma is a greenish coloration of the vitreous humor. It is grave.

Cataract is indicated by a partial or total opacity of the crystalline lens. It is a serious affection.

Amaurosis or *goutte sereine* is due to a paralysis of the retina. It may exist only on one or on both sides.

Hydropsy is an augmentation of the volume of the globe of the eye due to a hypersecretion of the aqueous humor.

Simple ophthalmia is an inflammation of the conjunctiva.

Periodic fluxion is a periodic inflammation of the whole eye, which terminates in the total abolition of sight by the formation of a cataract after a variable period.

Lippitude is an inflammation of the Meibomian glands and the free border of the eyelids. The eye often becomes covered with the secretion of these glands. It is called *blear-eye.*

Trichiasis consists of an inversion of the superior eyelashes against the ocular globe.

Encanthis is a hypertrophy of the caruncula lachrymalis.

Melanotic deposits may form on the preceding structure; warts may grow on the eyelids.

Onglet is nothing else than an inflammation of the nictitans membrane.[1]

Blemishes.—The **blemishes** of the region of the eyes are *denudations, abrasions,* and *wounds* of the superciliary arches. They are the consequences of injuries received by striking the head against resisting objects, etc., or of diseases, as epilepsy, when the animal falls to the ground or when he strikes his head against a wall during an attack of vertigo. Sometimes they are complicated by *fractures* of the orbital arches.

Under other circumstances, the eyelids become the seat of *abrasions, lacerations,* or *deformities* of their free border,—*e.g.*, ectropion and entropion. The deformity which follows periodic fluxion should be taken into serious consideration. It has been observed that the superior eyelid of the eye, after several attacks of this disease, becomes *angular,* from ocular atrophy, towards the nasal angle, which gives to the palpebral opening a triangular form instead of that of a regular oval.

Finally, all *abnormal colors* of the cornea or the media of the eye constitute blemishes to which we must give the most serious prognosis.

---

[1] I have often, in practice, met with eyes affected with strabismus,—external, internal, and oblique. This was easily remedied by the simple section of the antagonistic muscle. (Harger.)

Among these blemishes, many are the symptoms of grave diseases of the ocular structure.

These diseases have too often for their consequence the destruction of one or even of both eyes. The animal is then suffering from partial or total blindness. Generally attempts are made to conceal this infirmity, and sometimes we meet with horses offered for sale, provided with an artificial eye made of hard rubber, which very much resembles that which nature provides. It is needless to say, however, that, with a proper examination of the eye, as before explained, this fraud will deceive only those who are unobserving or inexperienced. But it is not the same with those which are blind in both eyes or suffer from *amaurosis*, in which the eye presents all its normal characteristics. These conditions can also be detected by a scrupulous inspection of the parts. The retina not being sensitive, the iris will remain stationary even when exposed to intense light, and when at liberty the animal will run against surrounding objects. Such horses are uncertain on their feet and not without danger as saddle-horses. Too much reliance cannot be placed on the word of the horse-dealer, and a thorough veterinary examination becomes a necessity to assure one's self of the integrity of the crystalline lens and the movements of the iris.

A blind horse will supply, with the other senses, the deficiency created by the cessation of vision. The ears are extended forward, and, at the least noise, are directed forward and outward to perceive it. During progression, the elevation of the members is exaggerated, but their step is uncertain and the animal is predisposed to stumble. The carriage of the head is elevated to prevent falling, and the nostrils are mobile, as if to examine the surroundings by the odors which they exhale. He carefully smells and feels with the orbicular tentacles all objects presented to him. The eyes are wide open, the mouth is sensitive to the slightest indication of the reins, and the ears are quick to recognize the voices of those who lead him or approach him. As Vallon[1] has written, he is susceptible of rendering good service if we understand how to use him and have the proper respect for him which his condition deserves. At work, as in the stable, it is necessary to place him alongside of one that is gentle and docile, because he cannot defend himself against the attacks of his neighbor. Worked in file, he should not be placed in the lead. We may add that when he is worked in harness he should always have the same driver, or the same rider when used under the saddle. In all cases his master

---

[1] Vallon, Cours d'hippologie, t. ix., p. 318.

should not forget that he must at the same time see for the horse as well as for himself.

E.—The Cheek (Fig. 19).

Situation; Limits; Divisions; Anatomical Base.—The **cheek** is an almost plane surface, occupying the major portion of the lateral face of the head. It is limited in front by the *temple*, the *eye*, and the *face;* behind by the branches of the *inferior maxillary bone;* below by the *commissures of the lips;* and, finally, altogether above by the *parotid region.*

The cheek has an area more considerable externally than internally, where it forms the lateral parietes of the mouth. The latter surface is generally, though incorrectly, not examined, and we will describe it in connection with the mouth in general.

Its external surface is divisible into two regions: the one superior, the *flat of the cheek*, or the *masseteric region;* the other inferior, or the *buccal region.* Their separation is indicated by a vertical gutter in front of the masseter muscle, in which are situated the glosso-facial artery and vein and the duct of Stenon. In its lower half these three structures lie side by side, the artery being anterior and the duct directly against the border of the muscle; at its middle the duct passes obliquely forward over the side of the cheek, to penetrate it opposite to the anterior border of the third superior molar tooth.

Its **base** is formed by the masseter, buccinator, alveolo-labialis, zygomatico-labialis, and maxillo-labialis muscles, separated from the skin by the cuticularis colli. Their surface is covered by the sub-zygomatic plexus of nerves; the superior and inferior molar glands lie opposite to the corresponding teeth.

The **five principal blood-vessels** can be located from the exterior: the glosso-facial artery along the anterior border of the masseter muscle; the superior coronary on the side of the superior maxillary bone, about an inch and a half from its alveolar ridge, with which it is parallel; the inferior coronary between the branch of the lower jaw and the maxillo-labialis muscle; the transverse artery of the face parallel with the zygomatic crest; and the external branch of the maxillo-muscularis parallel with the curvature of the angle of the lower jaw.

Beauty.—The principal **beauty** to be sought for in this region consists of its distinct delineation, characterized by the fineness of the skin and the hairs, and the absence of connective tissue rendering the blood-vessels, the nerves, and the muscles distinctly visible through their thickness. Such we find it in horses which belong to the finer races. When it is excessive, it renders the head *too sharp.* In common horses, on the contrary, the cheek is round in the flat portion and flabby and thick in the buccal portion.

Defects.—The most frequent defect of this region is called the *granary*, and is due to irregularities of the molar teeth. In this condition we remark on the exterior an elongated tumor, often lobu-

lated, produced by the bulging of the cheek in consequence of the accumulation of aliment between the latter and the molar arcades. It is observed principally in old horses. Horse-merchants always take the precaution to cleanse the mouth of such horses with vinegar and water before they are presented for sale, in order to mask the fetid odor which it exhales. The employment of these manœuvres, however, is insufficient for those who examine carefully the condition of the teeth, on the one part, and pouch in the cheek on the external surface, on the other. The latter, on account of its continual distention, is not closely applied upon the molars, but remains flabby, pendulous, and presents longitudinal ridges. We can understand that this defect of itself does not depreciate much the value of the horse, but that its gravity depends upon the cause which produces it and the means which remedy it.

Blemishes.—The **blemishes** of the cheek are traces of *setons*, indicating that the animal has been treated for an affection of the eyes or of the nasal cavities. A seton improperly applied to this region may produce paralysis of the corresponding lips by injuring the branches of the sub-zygomatic plexus of nerves; the former is then drawn to the side opposite to that of the paralysis.

A *salivary fistula*, following an accidental opening of the duct of Stenon, may be found on the maxillary fissure or the side of the face. A transparent, limpid liquid escapes from the opening, perhaps in jets, when the food is masticated on that side. It is a serious accident, on account of its long continuation, the inefficiency of its treatment, and the malnutrition which results from the loss of the saliva.

F.—The Nostrils (Fig. 19).

Situation; Limits; Form; Divisions.—The **nostrils** are the external orifices of the nasal fossæ, and the only passage through which the air can enter the lungs in solipeds, which respire only through the mouth in ordinary conditions. Designated as *right* and *left*, and situated at the inferior extremity of the head on each side of the median line, they are limited, internally, by the "*tip*" *of the nose;* below, by the *superior lip;* and, externally, by the *cheek and the face.* The **form** of the orifice is auricular or crescent-shaped, extending from above to below, and slightly from without to within. They present two *lips*, *wings*, or *alæ*, and two *commissures.*

Anatomical Base.—*a.* The **internal ala** or **lip**, flattened and thin at its free border, which is convex, is turned downward and outward, and is constituted centrally by the nasal cartilage, whose flat portion, with the one on the opposite side, forms the *cartilaginous plate of the extremity of the nose.* The latter, covered externally by the transversalis nasi muscle and the skin, and internally by soft skin and mucous membrane, is prolonged downward and outward through the inferior commissure, to terminate in the external ala.

b. The **external wing** or **ala** of the nostril is concave. Its inferior extremity contains a hard and resisting body, which is the termination of the curved portion of the preceding cartilage. In the remainder of its extent it is soft and flexible, formed only by skin and muscles.

The **muscles** are all dilators. In some mammiferous aquatic animals, as the hippopotamus and the seal, there are constrictors to prevent the entrance of water into the respiratory apparatus. In terrestrial animals, on the contrary, the closure is prevented by the rigidity of their fibro-cartilage.

c. The **commissures** are formed by the junction of the alæ. The inferior is round, concave, and continuous posteriorly with the floor of the nasal fossa; the superior is smaller, acute, and is continuous, with a dependency of the skin called the *false nostril.* The latter is a cul-de-sac formed by a reflection of skin on the inside of the nostril, whose bottom lies at the angle of the incisive and nasal bones. It exists only in the domesticated animals, as the horse, ass, and mule, and admits of the introduction of the finger.[1]

Around the margins, as are all the natural openings, it is covered by soft, thin, and adherent skin, continuous with the nasal mucous membrane. It is covered by two kinds of hairs: the one short, fine, and numerous; the other coarse, long, and scanty. The latter, very deeply implanted and provided at their bulb with a nerve-filament, are organs of *tactile sensation* to the animal analogous to the *moustaches* of carnivora. They are more or less abundant, according to the quality of the race. The habit of cutting them with the scissors, singeing, or extracting them entirely, with the view of giving lightness to the head, is to be reprimanded.

Beauty.—The **absolute beauty** of the nostril resides in its **width** and in its separation from the lips, because it is proportional to the capacity of the respiratory apparatus. In solipeds, buccal respiration is prevented by the development of the soft palate. All the air which enters the lungs must pass through the nostrils, whose amplitude should therefore be in relation with the former. It follows, then, *à priori*, that the greater these orifices are the greater will be the volume of air which enters the lungs during inspiration; that consequently the development of the lungs will always be correlative to the dimensions of the nostrils, and *vice versa.* There is no exception to this rule, and the reverse has never been observed in nature. Small nostrils are an **absolute defect,** and associate themselves with a chest that is narrow and but little spacious.

Movements.—The movements of the nostrils are almost imper-

---

[1] On the floor of the nostril, anterior to the mucous membrane, is the orifice of the lachrymal canal. It is round, excavated, *punched-out,* and resembles a glanderous chancre, for which it must not be mistaken. In the mule and in the ass it is situated on the superior commissure. It is usually single, but may be double or even triple.

ceptible in normal conditions and at rest. They dilate slightly during inspiration and become relaxed again during expiration. It is not thus during exercise; their movements are accelerated in proportion to the efforts executed. Other circumstances, as the age, the temperature, and the seasons of the year, modify their frequency and often their rhythm. The causes of irregular dilatations of the nostrils or of excessive rapidity of their movements should be carefully determined. These are always symptomatic of pulmonary emphysema or of some other grave affection of the respiratory organs. The examination in this case will, therefore, include that of the lungs, the trachea, the larynx, and, if need be, that of the other organic apparatus, if the acceleration be due to their diseased condition.

Examination of the Interior of the Nostrils.—The examination of the interior of the nostrils is made as follows: Let us suppose the animal to be held by the bridle or simply by a halter whose strap is passed through the mouth. Taking, for example, the nostril on the right side (Fig. 24), the inferior lip is seized with the left hand and the bulb of the right thumb is placed under the internal wing in order to remove it from the external, which is separated by means of the index finger. With this simple manœuvre it is usually sufficient to inspect the state of the mucous membrane over a large part of its area. If it do not suffice, an assistant will hold the head, and both hands are used; the internal ala is seized by the right hand and the external by the left hand, the head being so held towards the light as to expose the largest surface of the nasal fossa. In some cases reflected light from a mirror may be utilized.

It is necessary to recall certain normal anatomical dispositions:

The skin which covers the alæ of the nose, preserving its characteristics, is reflected into the nostrils to form a cul-de-sac known under the name of the *false nostril*, and becomes continuous with the pituitary mucous membrane. The hairs with which its free surface is provided are destined to arrest particles of dust held in suspension in the air, which are obnoxious to the respiratory organs, and which, when inhaled into the more sensitive portions of the apparatus, cause irritation.

At the inferior part of the nostril, on the floor and a little anterior to the point of continuity of the skin and the mucous membrane, is found the external orifice of the lachrymal duct, giving exit to the tears in their passage through excretory apparatus and offering such characteristics that it cannot be mistaken for a pathological alteration. It is ordinarily single, but may be double and even triple. Its form is round, its edges perpendicular, commonly called *punched-out*, and the liquid which exudes is limpid and transparent.

A cartilaginous septum, the *septum nasi*, separates the nasal fossæ into *right* and *left*. It is covered by the mucous membrane and is related to a *lamina*

of fibro-cartilage covered by mucous membrane, and extending from the superior turbinated bone to the deep face of the internal ala. In a physical examination this lamina must be unrolled, for it is often the seat of pathological alterations.

Fig. 24.—Examination of the nostril.

State of the Mucous Membrane.—The nasal mucous membrane, in a state of health and of rest, is of a rosy color. After a certain amount of exercise, it becomes bright red, more or less intense, according to the plethora of the subject. It is paler and more follicular upon the branch of the aforesaid lamina of cartilage. Let us only indicate here that in a pathological state it may be pale yellow, leaden as in glanders, infiltrated, and may present on its surface ulcerations, pustules, small red spots, petechia, chancres, decortications, cicatrices, tumors, etc. All these symptoms pertain to diverse diseases concern-

ing which we cannot occupy ourselves in this book. Let us limit ourselves to saying that the most serious of all is farcy-glanders, which should be particularly observed, and in the diagnosis of which the minute examination of the maxillary lymphatic glands must not be neglected.

It is not rare to meet *wounds* in the region of the nostrils, which are found mostly in stallions, and involve the mucous membrane and the cartilage.

At other times we find finger-nail marks which have been made on the pituitary membrane during the examination by inexperienced persons or those unable to control the animal.

Normal Liquid of the Nostril.—We have seen above that the **normal liquid** of the nasal fossæ is clear and transparent, from the fact that it results from the continual discharge of the tears. In certain horses, when the atmosphere is cold, and much more in those whose lungs are emphysematous, we find the presence of a flaky discharge which adheres to the hairs of the nostrils, and designates the latter, according to horsemen, as being *frosted.*

In pathological phenomena the liquid receives the name of **discharge,** and assumes certain characters which depend upon particular diseases. It may be:

1st. Adherent or not to the alæ of the nose.

2d. Thick, tenacious, or clotted.

3d. White, reddish, yellowish-green, sometimes streaked with blood.

4th. Inodorous, fetid, gangrenous, or from caries.

5th. Unilateral or bilateral.

In all cases the examination of the nostrils should be completed by that of the lymphatic ganglia.

Entrance and Exit of the Air.—The expired air merits also to be taken into consideration. It is of little utility to appreciate its quantity, either by placing the hand in front of the nostril, or, when the atmosphere is cold, by considering the two cones of vapor which escape. It is more interesting to assure ourselves of the regularity and equality of the column of air at its exit from the orifices, for it may meet obstructions of a diverse nature in its passage, as polyps, tumors, deviations of the nasal septum, etc. Some authors report that certain tradesmen, to mask the discharge, have placed a sponge into the diseased cavity. This fraud is very easily discovered, and requires no further explanation. In a state of good health the expired air is *inodorous;* the bad odor with which it is contaminated proves a disease of the lungs, caries of the superior molars, and, finally, prolonged

stasis of pus in the guttural pouches or in the frontal and maxillary sinuses. If there is doubt as to the veritable cause of this odor, the animal is made to *cough* by compressing the larynx with the hand, and standing to one side of the animal to avoid being contaminated by the expectorated matter. He is also made to *snort* by touching the sides of the median septum of the nasal fossæ, which will immediately provoke such an effort and render the discharge visible if there be any.

It is important to add that the air should pass in and out *without making any sound;* if a sound is perceived, the animal is affected with *roaring.*

Roaring is acute and chronic. The former is temporary, the second permanent. It is a defect which nullifies the contract of his sale in some Continental countries. (Law of August 2, Article 2, 1884.)

Cysts of the false nostril, between the layers of the integument which are placed in apposition to form it, are observed in some horses. We have seen several examples, and never have we remarked the least interference with respiration.

We have proof of *paralysis* of one or of both nostrils. In the latter case the animal will find it an impossibility to trot, from the fact that the parietes of these openings are collapsed upon themselves and offer an obstacle to the introduction of the air.[1]

Expression of the Nostril.—Let us remark that the nostril is one of the principal *organs of expression* of the physiognomy. According to its state of contraction, dilatation, flaccidity, or crispness, it manifests in a thousand ways the sensations which the animal experiences. Now it is surprise, fear, anger; now joy, pleasure, anxiety, and suffering. Persons who are experienced with horses will soon become familiar with the expression of the organs, which defies all description from the multiple shades in which it is manifested. We will return to this again, *à propos* of the head in general.

Blemishes.—The **blemishes** of this region are situated upon the alæ of the nostrils, the nasal fossæ, the appendices of the turbinated bones, and result from bites or lacerations. These may be produced accidentally in draught-horses by the hook which is often placed at the extremity of the shaft, when the animal is tied to a ring surmounted by a hook, or when, in turning the head, the nostrils strike against any sharp object.

---

[1] A. Goubaux, Mémoire sur les paralysies locales (Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, année 1848, p. 229).

Formerly the nostrils were slit to diminish the sound of neighing. The practice is still exercised upon the ass in the Orient.[1] We have several times repeated this operation upon the horse without producing any modification of the sound. The procedure is therefore inadequate.

To recapitulate:

1. The nostril should be large and clear.
2. The mucous membrane, rosy at rest, more or less red after exercise.
3. The liquid which it discharges, clear and transparent.
4. The air which is exhaled, inodorous.
5. Inspiration and expiration should be noiseless.

CHAPTER III.

POSTERIOR FACE OF THE HEAD.

A.—The Intermaxillary Space.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **intermaxillary space** is a symmetrical and triangular-shaped cavity, situated at the posterior face of the head, comprised between the two branches of the inferior maxilla. It is limited above by the *throat*, below by the *chin*, and on each side by the *borders of the maxillary bone.*

Its **anatomical base** is the body of the hyoid bone and the muscles which attach to it, the inferior face of the tongue, and the *intermaxillary lymphatic glands;* on each side, about an inch from the internal alveolar ridge, and underneath the glands, is the sublingual artery. The skin is fine, covered with hairs ordinarily longer than those in other parts of the body; the connective tissue is abundant.

Beauties and Defects.—The principal structures which offer themselves for consideration in this region are the *lymphatic glands.* These should be small and movable without adhering to the surrounding tissue. It is observed that in all diseases of the nasal sinuses, the nasal fossæ, and the mouth, these ganglia become voluminous, painful, more or less adherent, and approach the corresponding branch of the inferior maxillary bone. In glanders they are decidedly adherent to the latter and to the base of the tongue.

It is not only the inspection of these organs which requires our

---

[1] Vallon, Cours d'hippologie, t. i. p. 232.

consideration, but we shall also examine the *plainness*, the *width*, and the *depth* of this region.

It is **plain** or **clean** when all the structures which enter into its composition are distinct and can be outlined with the fingers. When the connective tissue is abundant the contour of the parts is not discernible and the whole region is *full* or *thick*. Such is its structure in lymphatic horses raised in low and moist districts.

The **depth** is related to the cleanness and the absence of connective tissue.

The **width** of the intermaxillary space denotes a corresponding separation of the branches of the maxilla and a large development of the respiratory apparatus, since the larynx is partly lodged in that space, and thus protected from the movements of flexion of the head upon the neck. It is erroneous to believe that in horses in which the head is arched, this region is narrow, and that these are therefore much more predisposed to roaring. Exclusive of the general form of the head, it is true that there are certain subjects in which the intermaxillary space is wider than in others. Professor Dupuy,[1] in 1829, has taken measurements of sixteen horses of different types, and proved a maximum width of 0.119 m., and a minimum of 0.087 m. In two horses which were roarers, the measurements were 0.079 m. and 0.063 m.; hence it was believed as conclusive that the narrowness in the latter was due to a defective development of the maxilla and an insufficient separation of its branches, causing compression of the larynx. We cannot dispute the figures of Dupuy, but they are very exceptional.

The skin of the intermaxillary space in common races is furnished with long, stiff, coarse, and abundant hairs, which make the head appear heavy and voluminous. Some are in the habit of singeing or extracting them, so as to render the head smaller, to disguise the race.

Diseases and Blemishes.—The general disease known under the name of *strangles* is often followed by considerable inflammatory swelling of this region and the formation of enormous abscesses of the lymphatic ganglia, of which we have spoken above. When the latter do not have their normal characteristics, it is said that there is a *gland* in the region, or that the animal is *glanded*. Great importance must be attached to this tumor, for it may be a symptom of a more serious disease, *glanders*.

---

[1] Dupuy, De la fluxion vulgairement appelée périodique ou Recherches historiques, physiologiques et thérapeutiques sur cette maladie, auxquelles on a ajouté des considérations sur le cornage, la pousse et la section des nerfs pneumo-gastriques, 8vo, Paris, 1829, p. 114.

As consequences of these alterations, we may find *denudations, excoriations,* and *cicatrices* resulting from the application of medicines or from operations, as incising an abscess with a view of causing the disappearance of the swelling. Formerly excision of the gland was practised in horses over five years of age, in which the gland was enlarged. Végèce had already considered this operation useless, the gland being only a symptom and not the disease itself. Strange to say, it has again been revived in some modern publications.

B.—The Inferior Maxillary Region (Fig. 19).

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **inferior maxillary region** is a double area, having for its base the rectilinear branches of the inferior maxillary bone. It is limited internally by the *intermaxillary space,* externally by the *cheek,* anteriorly by the *chin,* and posteriorly, more or less distinctly, by the *parotid region.* Its internal face presents the course of the glosso-facial artery and vein and the excretory duct of the parotid gland,—Stenon's duct. These three structures pass around the maxillary fissure, where they can be easily distinguished through the skin and where the pulse is counted. On the inner side the duct is superficial and the artery deep.

The two rami of this bone circumscribe a V-shaped space with the apex forward, which corresponds to the intermaxillary space, and whose width, as stated above, constitutes an *absolute beauty.* They are not of the same thickness at all periods of life, and some persons attach enough importance to this to judge of the age of the animal by their examination alone. In young animals the molar teeth are deeply implanted into their alveoli, and the maxillary bone, for this reason, is of much greater thickness. Conversely, as the teeth are pushed from their alveoli, whose sides will then approach each other, there is an absorption of bone, the maxilla becomes thinner and the posterior border acute. This phenomenon can be utilized in determining the age, the border becoming sharp when the animal is about thirteen years old. This, however, is not absolute, and too much importance should not be attached to it. Descriptive anatomy has shown numerous individual differences.

Animals of a lymphatic temperament and with large skeletons have thick maxillary bones. This is very marked in Shetland ponies. In horses of a nervous or a nervo-sanguinary temperament they are thin and fine. It indicates nothing but a race characteristic, and does not influence the qualities of the animal.

In animals belonging to the common races this region, like the

intermaxillary space, is covered with long and abundant hairs, which it is the custom to singe, cut, or extract. This practice is called *to make the jaw* or the *hairs of the jaws.*

Diseases and Blemishes.—These are *osseous tumors*, the result of blows which the animal has received or of injuries which are inflicted by the extremities of the shafts. Again, we may find *enlargements* of the bone sometimes accompanied by necrosis and fistulæ emitting an extremely disagreeable odor. The latter lesions are caused by diseases of the inferior molar teeth. Finally, this region may be the seat of salivary fistulæ upon the course of the excretory canal of the parotid gland, most frequently on a level with the point where the duct is inflected around the maxillary fissure.

These diverse alterations have a great tendency to assume a chronic form, and are always followed by deformities quite persistent, which blemish the animals for a more or less long period.

C.—The Chin (Fig. 19).

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—Symmetrical and situated in front of the *intermaxillary space* and the *branches of the lower jaw*, and behind the *tuft of the chin*, the *chin*, upon which rests the curb of the bit, corresponds almost to the point of union of the two branches of the maxillary bone. The symphysis is manifested externally by a slight crest, a gutter, or a simple convex surface.

These diverse conditions, with difficulty appreciated from the exterior, have caused this region to be named *round* or *sharp*, two conformations upon which buyers also attach too much importance. The impression of a portion of the harness or of the curb upon the skin depends much less upon the anatomical disposition of the parts than the degree of natural sensibility of the subject. It is easy to moderate the action of the curb by protecting the latter with a leather cushion and by regulating the quantity of traction exercised on the reins according to the sensibility of the animal.

Denudations and *wounds* are the ordinary consequences of immoderate pressure sustained by the chin of very irritable horses, as from the curb, or other traumatisms. There are also **blemishes** of the chin, which are not without interest in that which concerns special utilizations of the animal.

CHAPTER IV.

INFERIOR EXTREMITY OF THE HEAD.

A.—The Mouth (Fig. 25).

Situation; Divisions.—The **mouth** is a complex region which occupies the inferior extremity of the head and represents the entrance into the digestive apparatus. It is elongated from before to behind, and comprised between the two jaws. We recognize in it the following parts, which we will first study: 1, the *lips;* 2, the *teeth* and the *gums;* 3, the *bars;* 4, the *lingual canal;* 5, the *tongue;* 6, the *palate.* We will afterwards pass to the examination of the *mouth in general.*

1. The Lips (Figs. 19, 25, and 26).

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **lips** are two movable musculo-cutaneous curtains, placed at the entrance of the mouth, whose opening they limit.

They are distinguished as *superior* or anterior and *inferior* or posterior.

Physiologically, they are organs necessary to the prehension of food, and they serve as auxiliaries in mastication. The inferior lip, in relation to the exterior, to a small degree supports the bit, whose impulses are, in a certain measure, first received by it.

The **superior lip,** the more mobile, is limited above by the *extremity of the nose;* on the sides by the *cheek* and the *nostrils;* by its free border, finally, it is in contact with its congener. The **inferior lip** is limited behind by the *chin* and laterally by the *cheeks.*

The lips present for study two *faces,* external and internal; two *commissures,* right and left; and two *borders,* free and adherent. Each is composed of three layers,—an external or cutaneous, an internal or mucous, and a middle or muscular,—besides blood-vessels and nerves. The muscular layer is constituted by the orbicularis oris muscle and the muscles of the face which attach to it. The arteries are the superior and inferior coronary, passing through the centre of their substance.

The **external face** of each lip is covered by fine and very adherent skin, provided with two kinds of hairs: the one consisting of long, stiff, and scattered hairs, called tentacles, and deeply embedded in the subcutaneous tissue and even in the muscles; the other, very fine, short, and numerous, belonging to the ordinary hairs of the coat. The former are provided with a nerve terminal at the base of their papilla, which makes them delicate organs of tactile sensation for the animal. To a large degree these supersede the function of the hand in quadru-

mana. The external face offers on the median line of the superior lip a small gutter more or less distinct, and on each side an elevation more or less prominent. This gutter is the representative of the *nasal gutter*, very pronounced in man and some other animals. This lip is, besides, longer, larger, more movable, and more constricted at its base than the inferior. In the latter, on the contrary, the median gutter is absent, to be replaced by some semicircular folds on a hemispheri-

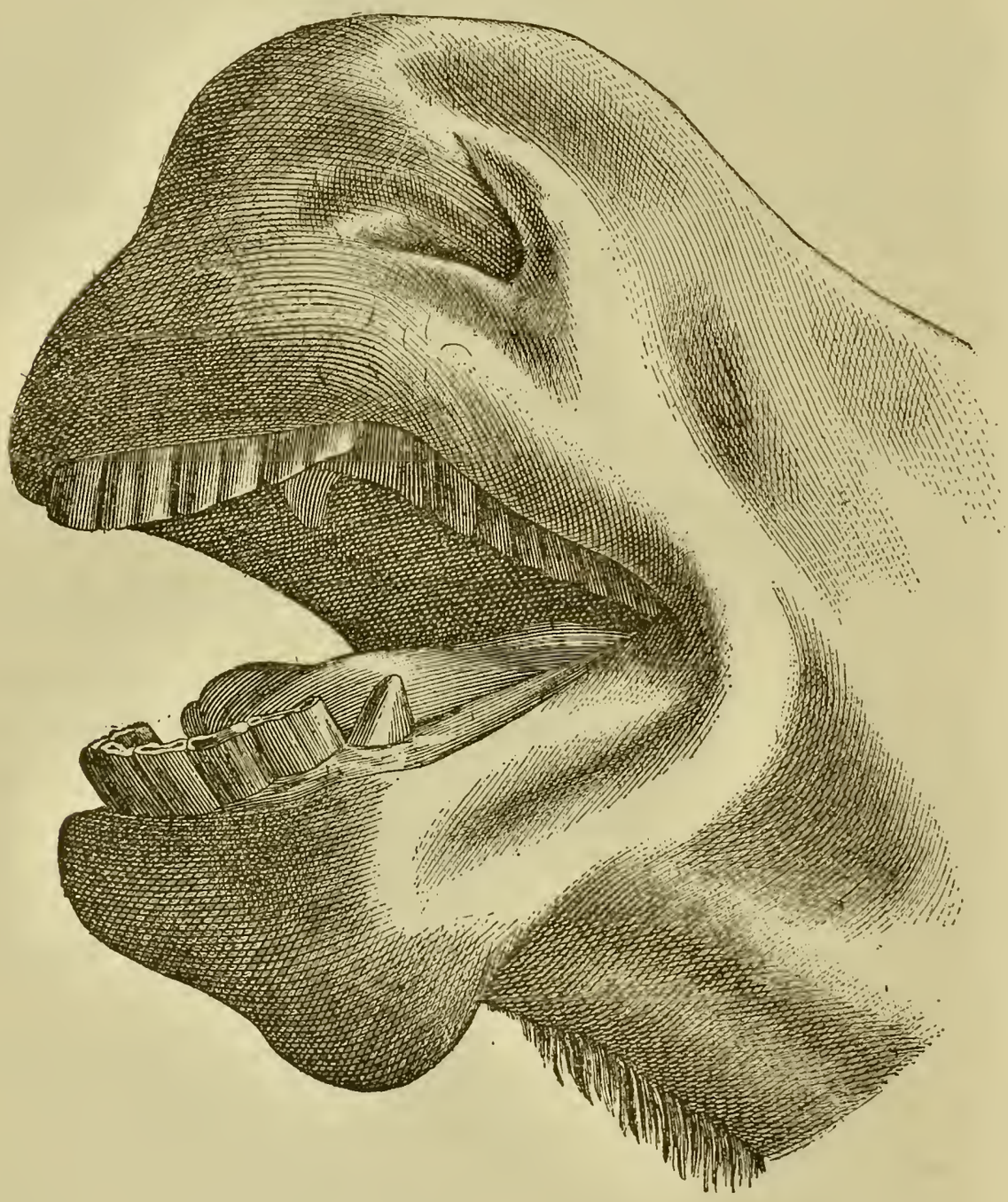


Fig. 25.—Interior of the mouth (after Bruneau).

cal eminence, more or less developed, to which has been given the name of *tuft of the chin*, and whose base is the mento-labialis muscle.

The **internal face** of each lip, concave in every sense, is covered by the buccal mucous membrane, smooth, shining, of a rosy color in good health, and sometimes marbled, due to a deposit of black pigment. This layer becomes reflected on the incisive and inferior maxillary bones, to become continuous with the gums, and lies in contact with the anterior face of the incisor teeth. It

contains large numbers of salivary glands in the thickness of the submucous tissue. The connective tissue which unites it to the adjacent parts is sufficiently loose to allow of an abundant serous effusion.

The **free border** of each lip is thin and bevelled, lies in contact with its congener, and is the point of continuity between the skin and the mucous membrane.

The **adherent border** is marked in the interior of the mouth by a gutter at the point of continuity of the mucous membrane with the gums. Externally, it is not delimitated from the adjacent parts, with which it becomes continuous.

The *commissures* are the points where the two lips become continuous; slightly round and quite thick, they are perfectly closed in ordinary conditions.

Their **volume** appears much larger in young than in old animals, because the direction of the incisor teeth, upon which their internal face rests, becomes more and more horizontal with the progress of age. Also, the head in old horses seems to be tapering at its inferior extremity.

The lip, like the nostril, the eye, and the ear, is a most remarkable **organ of expression.** When it is curled up, relaxed, lowered, elevated, or inclined, we have so many variations which affect the whole physiognomy. When we study the expression of the horse under the influence of pain, fear, pleasure, or distress; when we observe his attitude as he attempts to snatch or bite somebody or one of his companions; when we observe the lips in certain diseases; when we translate the language of the stallion as he scents the mare, or the animal as he passes through the death-agonies, then can we see how perfect the expression is and how it varies in each circumstance.

It is well known, also, that the **physical qualities** are in direct relation with the faculty of expression of which the lip is capable. The horse which is of a sanguine temperament, with a nervous system that is well developed, energetic, and easily stimulated by external causes, presents a high development of this region. The common horse, on the contrary, has a lip which is thin, soft, flabby, immobile, and without expression. The skin which covers it is thick and the hairs long, coarse, and abundant.

The lips should approximate themselves easily by their free border to keep the mouth *constantly closed*, in order to avoid a continuous escape of saliva. Nevertheless, it is not always thus, from the fact that the animal is "reined up too high," or that one of the lips may be *paralyzed.* In the first instance, the mouth remains open from the fatigue of the muscles induced by the unnatural position of the head; in the second, there is great difficulty in the prehension of food, the constant loss of saliva is deleterious, and the physiognomy loses all its

expression. If the paralysis be *unilateral*, one of the lips is drawn to one side by the muscles which still preserve their nervous influence. If it be *bilateral*, the affected lip becomes pendulous. It is this which we sometimes see in the inferior lip of old horses and much more rarely in the young. This state is more often associated with a profound debility of the organism and an atony of the muscular system in general, than as a veritable paralysis, or at least as a complete inertia of the organ.

Nevertheless, the defect in question may be congenital. Delphine, an old brood-mare in the stud of Pin, suffered from paralysis of the inferior lip, and all her progeny inherited the same infirmity; yet she was possessed of great energy and good breeding, and was not inconvenienced in the least (Richard).[1]

Certain horses, whether in harness or under the saddle, at rest or during exercise, have a continual and convulsive movement of the inferior lip which is very ungraceful to the eye. In the language of horsemen, it is said that they *beat the lip*.

Again, some horses continually attempt to seize the branches of the bit with the lower lip, a vicious habit capable of changing its good direction. It is remedied in several ways, either by the application of a leather lip-strap to the bridle, by bending the branches of the bit backward, or, finally, by shaking the reins lightly at each new attempt of the animal, to compel him to let go.

The commissures of the lips, according as they are situated more or less high, designate the mouth as being *well*, *too much*, or *not enough cleft*. This does not constitute a serious defect, because the bridle can always be so adjusted as to prevent the bit from exerting excessive pressure against the first molar tooth or the angles of the mouth.

Most authors since Bourgelat have contended that the inferior lip can prevent the pressure of the bit upon the *bars* by opposing too great a resistance or interposing itself between the two. The former then offers considerable resistance to the bit, and the animal becomes *hard-mouthed*. M. Richard[2] has amply refuted this assertion in pointing out the feeble resistance which the orbicularis muscle is able to offer against the bit, and in demonstrating that hard mouths result ordinarily from the inexperience of the rider in using the reins or the inaptitude of the horse to execute certain movements.

On the inferior lip there exists sometimes, on each side of the median line, a tuft of long curly hairs, which are called, from the

---

[1] Richard (du Cantal), Étude du cheval, p. 81, 6e éd. [2] Ibid.

analogy of their form and position, *moustaches.* This peculiarity is also more rarely observed on the superior lip.

Diseases and Blemishes.—Diverse **diseases,** which may ordinarily prevent the sale of the animal, are observed in the region of the lips. Besides *paralysis,* of which we have spoken, *farcy ulcers* are sometimes observed here over the course of the lymphatics. *Ulcers of variola* also affect this region, attacking young animals principally. These latter ulcers may be situated upon the external surface of the lips, along their free border, as well as in the interior of the buccal cavity, and around the alæ of the nostrils. Their gravity is of little consequence, and with care and practice we are enabled to distinguish them easily from the preceding, which are characteristic and serious in the extreme. Besides these alterations, the lips are the seat of swellings which disfigure the parts because they extend into the surrounding tissues. Such are œdematous effusion due to anasarca, the prolonged ingestion of certain plants, as buckwheat, for example, or the accidental application of vesicants, as when the animal rubs a surface which has been blistered for a therapeutic purpose.

The most common **blemishes** of the lips are *excoriations* and *cicatrices,* resulting from the application of the twitch. These are always an indication of a vicious habit of the animal, difficulty in shoeing, or of his having been subjected to a surgical operation requiring frequent dressings. It is not rare to meet with *cuts* or *lacerations* along their free border. These wounds suggest falls, and it is important to examine with care the condition of the extremity of the nose, the incisor teeth, the gums, and the limbs, to inform ourselves as to the cause which has produced them.

In old horses it is quite common to see *thickenings* or *lacerations* of the one or the other commissure, occasioned by repeated and *violent traction* on the *bit* or by a bit which is too narrow and improperly adjusted. These render the complete closure of the mouth impossible, and may prove to become obstacles to the prehension of liquids. The pain which they cause may, for a certain time, incapacitate the animal for service.

Let us say, in conclusion, that we often see in horses affected with *immobility* particles of hay or straw adhering to the commissures of the lips and remaining there without provoking the least movement of the jaws. It is then said that he *smokes his pipe.*

2. The Teeth and the Gums.

The **teeth** are organs of osseous appearance, implanted in the alveoli of the maxillary and incisive bones. They assist in the prehension and mastication of the aliment, and are distinguished from their use as *incisors, canines,* and *molars.*

The relation of the teeth to the determination of age is so important to recognize that we will devote to it a special chapter. (See *Age.*) We will content ourselves for the present by saying that their minute examination should be made at the same time as that of the mouth, and include their *integrity, soundness, length, direction,* and the *regularity of their surface.*

The mucous membrane which surrounds the teeth and aids to fix

them into their alveoli is called the *gums*. These offer little of interest. In young horses they are rosy, thick, and adherent, but as the animal grows older they become pale and retracted from the teeth. Alimentary matters may penetrate between their dental surface and the teeth, excite inflammation, and become the origin of periostitis or of caries of the bone.

3. The Bars (Figs. 25 and 26).

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **bars**, occupying the inferior interdental space on each side, include that portion of the inferior maxilla between the canine and first molar teeth, and are covered simply by the mucous membrane. In the mare, in which the tushes are undeveloped, the bars are longer, and extend from the corner incisor tooth to the first molar. They support the canon of the bit.

Most authors have pretended that the conformation of the bars is of great importance relative to the pain which the horse feels as a consequence of the pressure of the bit; that if they be *elevated* or *sharp*, the pain is intense, and, on the contrary, feeble when they are *round;* finally, that the form of the bit should be adapted to the one or the other of these dispositions. We repeat here what we have already said above as to the bars: with *equal sensibility* it is certain that on the sharp bars the pressure will be more intense, but the difference which we observe in the sensibility to the action of the bit resides not so much in the conformation of the parts as in the natural sensibility and irritability themselves,—all peculiarities of this region. As M. Sanson [1] has justly said: when sharp bars accompany a nervous and irritable temperament, it is to this alone that a *false* or *spoiled* mouth, as well as the faults of rearing or running away, must be attributed. Most horses whose mouths have been abused with the bit by inexperienced riders or drivers present round and depressed bars. When the mucous membrane is thickened and the sensibility is blunted, they are called *calluses*.

The bars may be the seat of wounds sufficiently grave to prevent the use of the animal for a variable period of time. Due to forcible traction on the bridle, these may terminate in caries, fistula, and exfoliation of a part of the bone which forms their base, and leave a permanent deformity.

To recapitulate, the fineness of the bars constitutes the principal **beauty** to be sought for in their examination.

---

[1] A. Sanson, Nouveau Dictionnaire pratique de médecine, de chirurgie et d'hygiène vétérinaires, t. ii. art. "Bouche."

4. The Lingual Canal (Figs. 25 and 26).

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **lingual canal** is generally described as the space comprised between the branches of the inferior maxilla, in which the tongue is situated. It is a kind of gutter the sides of which are covered by the mucous membrane of the mouth. Anteriorly, where its inferior wall is formed by the body of the aforesaid bone, it is single; posteriorly, it divides into two branches comprised between the sides of the rami of the same bone and side of the fixed portion of the tongue.

At the anterior extremity of these lateral divisions is the lingual crest formed by the superior border of the sublingual gland, covered by mucous membrane, and presenting a series of orifices of the excretory ducts,—ducti Riviniani.

Underneath the mucous membrane covering the lateral faces of the tongue is the duct of Wharton, the excretory canal of the maxillary salivary gland. It opens upon the superior face of the body of the maxilla on each side of the frænum of the tongue by means of an enlargement called the *barb* or *barbillon*, whose function is the protection of the canal against the entrance of alimentary matters.

Depth.—The *lingual canal*, which we must examine in regard to its **depth**, should be proportional to the volume of the tongue. If the latter be not in relation with the capacity of the gutter which contains it, the result will be a vicious position of the bit; in the one case the tongue will entirely support the action of the bit, whilst in the other the latter will rest exclusively upon the bars. We must say, to speak the truth, that nothing has been demonstrated to establish this opinion. The width of the canal is always in relation with the volume of the tongue, and, should it be otherwise, the bit will experience neither more nor less difficulty, as we shall show further on.

We think, also, that there is neither *beauty* nor *defect* to be appreciated in this region. We may, however, observe an *inflammation* of the canal of Wharton from the introduction, through the barbs, of particles of forage proving very often to be pieces of brome-grass. This affection is noticed most frequently in old horses with irregular teeth, and nourished on old Burgundian hay, in which this grass is abundant. It is accompanied by intense congestion of the barb, and perhaps a discharge of pus from its orifice.

It was formerly believed that the barbs could prevent the animal from drinking. It is surprising that this opinion was even shared by Bourgelat, who considered these organs simply as excrescences of the mucous membrane. At present, many persons in the rural districts are imbued with this prejudice, and employ horsemen and empirics who practice its ablation. It is easily understood

that this barbarous operation facilitates the penetration of foreign bodies into the salivary canal, the entrance to which is thus no longer protected.

5. The Tongue (Figs. 25 and 26).

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **tongue** is an organ of prehension and mastication of the aliment, of gustation and deglutition, placed in the *lingual canal*, and which completely fills the mouth when the jaws are in apposition. It is related above to the *hard palate;* in front, to the *incisor teeth* and the *lips;* on each side, to the *bars*, the *molar teeth*, and the *cheeks;* and behind, to the *soft palate.*

The principal structures entering into its organization are five pairs of *muscles.*

Anatomically, it is divided into two portions: anterior, or *free*, and posterior, or *fixed.* The *free portion* is spatula-shaped and flattened from above to below. A fold of mucous membrane of a triangular form is detached from the middle of its inferior face and attached to the body of the inferior maxillary bone. This is the *frœnum*, or *anterior pillar of the tongue.* It limits to a certain degree the movements of this organ.

Its **examination**, which should be made at the same time as that of the teeth, is conducted as follows, supposing the operator to stand on the left side (Fig. 26): The left hand seizes the inferior lip or is placed upon the anterior face of the nose to steady the head. The right hand seizes the tongue; the middle and index fingers are introduced between the lips into the mouth on a level with the bars, and the organ is grasped. Being thus held between these two fingers above and the thumb and annularis below, it is withdrawn from the mouth and, with its adjacent parts, carefully inspected. To examine the base of the tongue, it is necessary to stand in front of the head and allow the light to shine into the buccal cavity.

These manœuvres must be practised with the **greatest gentleness.** Excessive traction will be painful to the animal and make him insubordinate; it may also cause a rupture of the stylo-glossus muscle, which we have several times proved by dissection,[1] as well as the genio-glossus and the frœnum. On account of the pain which is produced, certain dealers, without doubt, do not hesitate to practise this barbarous act on horses suffering from immobility, to make them timid and cause them to "back."

---

[1] A. Goubaux, De quelques pratiques barbares auxquelles on a recours pour examiner la bouche du cheval, pour déterminer son âge, pour le faire reculer, etc. (Journal de l'école de Lyon, 1866, p. 335.)

The *movements* are elevation, depression, extension, retraction, and lateral inclination. Each changes the form and volume of the organ; it becomes wider, thicker, concave or convex, etc.

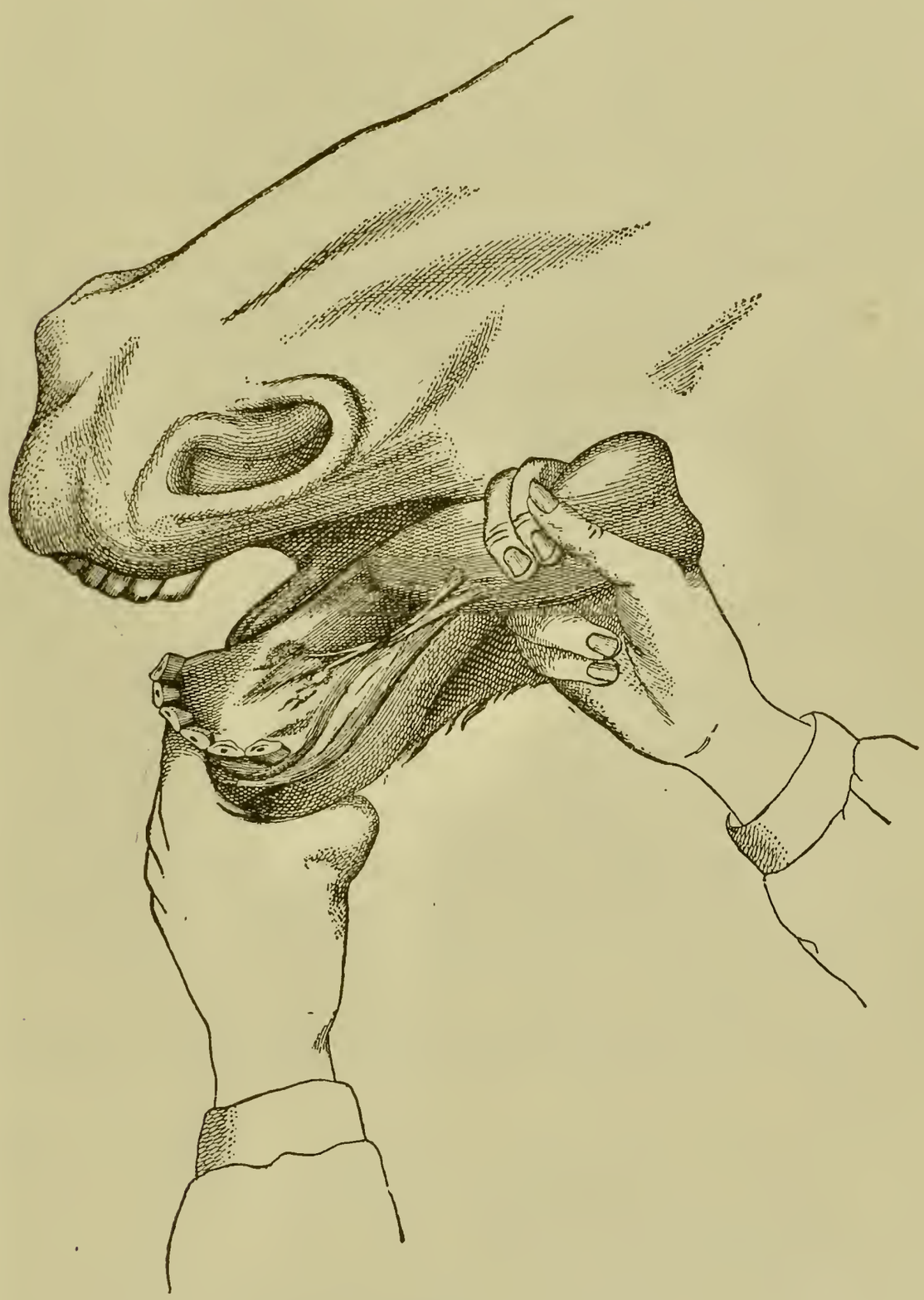


FIG. 26.—Examination of the mouth.

The **volume**, in general, is proportional to the capacity of the buccal cavity. We have never observed, except in very old horses, that the thickness of this organ caused it to project beyond the bars, become the sole support of the shank of the bit, and lessen, for this reason,

the sensitiveness of the mouth. The differences of sensibility, which are quite common, proceed from another cause. We have already spoken of this *à propos* of the *bars* and the *chin*.

In a normal state, the tongue should always be kept in the interior of the buccal cavity. It helps to support the bit and, in concert with the lips, it receives its first impression. Some horses have the bad habit of *doubling the tongue* within the mouth by recurving its free extremity above or underneath the bit. This can be readily detected by separating the lips from each other, and is remedied by tightening the curb-chain.

The **integrity** and **entireness** of the tongue should never escape the attention of the veterinarian. When a horse, tied with the reins of the bridle, or with a strap passed through the mouth, becomes frightened, he will throw himself violently backward and support the weight of the body entirely by the mouth, the point of attachment. Then, if the means of attachment does not break, the tongue may be sufficiently compressed by the bit or the strap to be cut transversely. We know of an instance of this kind in which the free portion was completely separated and fell to the ground. This is always a grave accident. If the section be incomplete, mastication is slow and imperfect; if it be complete, death may be the consequence, as it was in the instance mentioned above. A horse should, therefore, never be attached to the reins of the bridle or to a strap passed through the mouth.

The tongue may become lacerated or cut, more or less deeply, on its lateral borders from irregularities of the molar arcades, which are denticulated in old horses. These wounds are very painful and prevent the animal from masticating his food. The remedy is the dressing of the teeth.

There are some horses whose tongue, during work or at rest, protrudes from the mouth and becomes *pendulous;* this is called *lolling* the tongue.[1]

In other cases it is alternately protruded and retracted in a manner which simulates the movements of a serpent's tongue; hence the appropriate designation, *serpentine.*

Both of these conditions are ungraceful, deleterious from the constant loss of saliva which could be utilized in digestion, and finally the organ ceases to give the same point of support to the bit which it furnishes in ordinary circumstances.

---

[1] I have seen an instance in which this was temporarily prevented by the application of a rubber band to its free portion, the effect of which, however, was an almost complete section of the organ. (Harger.)

6. The Palate (Fig. 25).

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **palate,** which forms the anterior or superior wall of the buccal cavity, has for its osseous base the superior maxillary, incisive, and palatine bones. These are separated from its mucous membrane by a thick layer of erectile tissue, most abundant anteriorly. It is limited in front by the superior *incisors;* laterally, by the superior *molars* and the superior *interdental spaces;* behind, by the attachment of the *soft palate.* Only a portion of it is visible in the examination of the cavity of the mouth. Its surface is of a rose color, sometimes pigmented in different portions of its area. It presents transverse arches, with the concavity behind disposed symmetrically on each side of the median line, and separated from one another by transverse furrows.

With the exception of the **width,** which is most marked in the finer races, the palate has no appreciable **beauty** or **defect.**

The **thickness** varies according to the age and the physiological conditions. The palate may become congested and inflamed, projecting beyond the table of the incisor teeth and thus preventing mastication. This state is vulgarly termed *lampas.* It, however, is not pathological, but physiological, due to the irritation of dentition.

Huzard[1] the elder has long ago shown the uselessness and cruelty of the practice of removing the swelling of this region by excision with the knife or by cauterization with the actual cautery. These barbarous procedures impede mastication and tend more to diminish than to increase the appetite, as is shown by the animal's willing but ineffectual attempts. They are still performed at the present time by farriers and empirics, who call it *burning the lampas.* Scarifications practised for the same reason are not without accidents. They are made posterior to the third bar of the palate and not less than an inch from the edge of the gums of the molar teeth, so as not to puncture the palatine artery.

B.—The Mouth in General.

All the secondary regions which we have studied in the preceding chapter should be in harmony with one another, so that, as a whole, they may fulfil their functions. The mouth, indeed, requires examination not only from a physiological point of view, but from that of the exterior also, in that it is the organ in which is lodged the instrument to guide the animal, called the *bit.*

---

[1] Bourgelat, Traité de la conformation extérieure du cheval, 5e éd., p. 81. (Note de Huzard père.)

The Bit.—This instrument (Fig. 27) is composed of a cylindrical piece of metal, wood, or rubber, straight, curved, or broken, and two *branches*, to which the *reins*, *bridle*, and *curb-chain* are attached. The former, called the *canon* or *bar* of the bit, or the *bitting*, rests upon

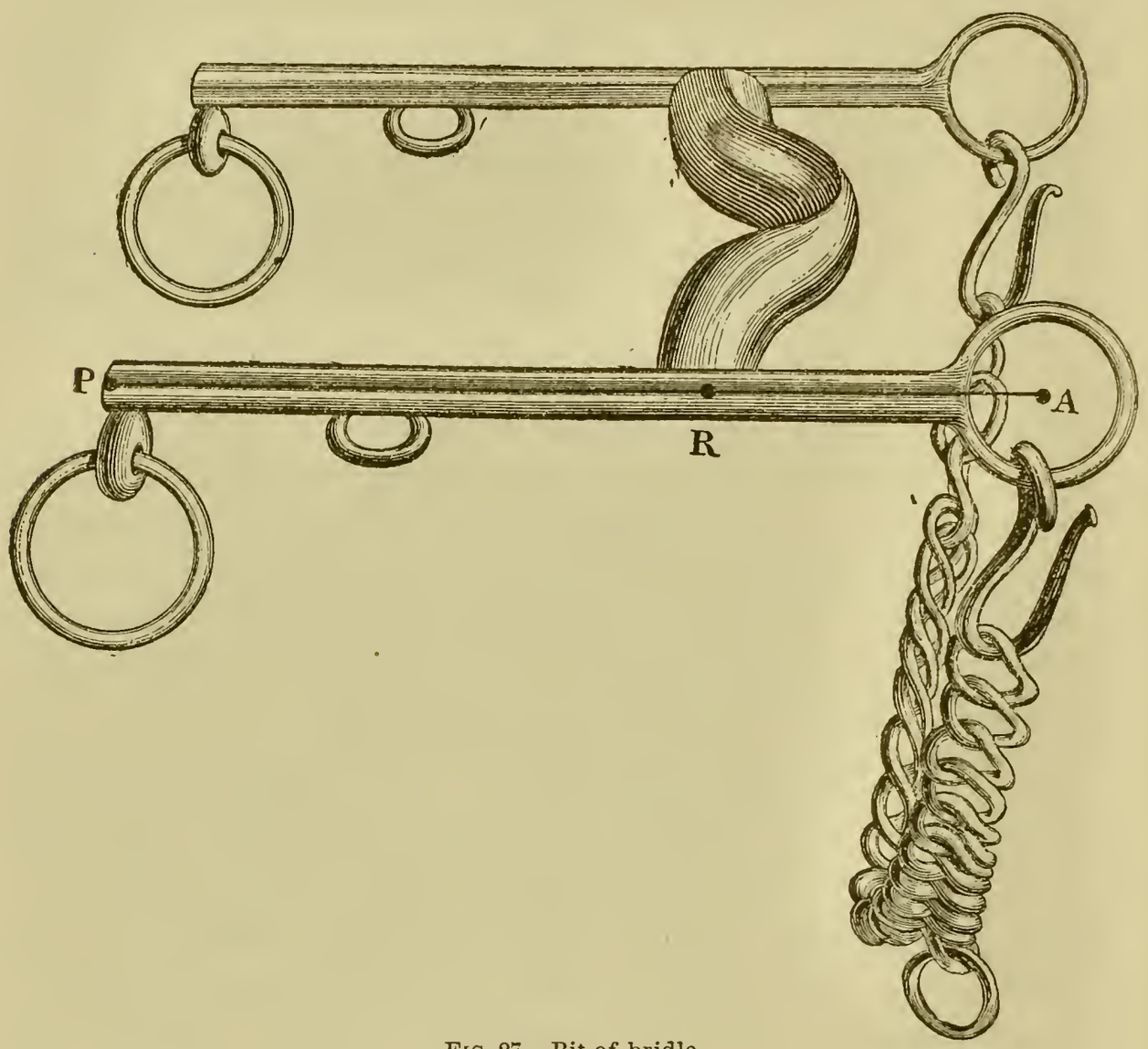


Fig. 27.—Bit of bridle.

the tongue and the bars; the latter prevents deviation and increases the power.

The bit plays the part of a lever of the second class, in which the curb *A* is the fulcrum or point of attachment, *P* the point of application of the power, and *R* the place where the resistance is overcome by pressure upon the bars. *PA* representing the power-arm of the lever, it will be at once perceived that the longer the branches of the bit the more powerful and energetic is its action. The latter augments, with the diminution of the arm of resistance, the distance from the canon to the attachment of the curb, *AR*; also, if the bit be grooved instead of round, or if the free portion of the tongue be large and the pressure on the chin of increasing force, its effect will be more intense.

Functionally, the bit is, therefore, an apparatus of restraint which, by its pressure, more or less severe, on the bars and the chin, causes pain of variable intensity.

Temperament of the Mouth.—The animal will react in consequence of this pain, and Bourgelat designated the **temperament of the mouth** as the particular mode or intensity of this reaction; in other words, as the special effect of the different sensations transmitted by the bit to the mouth.

Thus, the mouth is qualified as being *steady, true,* or *normal* when it supports the bit with freedom, without uneasiness, pain, or fear; when it neither struggles nor yields too easily to the action of the hand.

The mouth is *sensitive, tender, delicate,* or *easy* when it perceives the most delicate impressions of the hand and responds to them with promptness.

It is *strong, hard,* and *thick* when it yields only to energetic traction on the reins.

A *spoiled* mouth is one which reacts falsely towards the indications of the bit, whatever may be its sensibility otherwise.

Finally, the *fresh* mouth or the *active* mouth is that which relishes the bit, chews it without cessation, and appears slightly frothy from the continual agitation which the movements communicate to the saliva.

These different qualities of the mouth can only be judged by the utilization of the animal, but they should not be neglected on that account. In a general way it is always necessary, in the selection of a horse, to seek the most complete information possible and not omit any tests, if such be necessary. Overweening vanity is too often the cause of the most singular mistakes. We cannot insist too much upon the importance of examining *all* parts of the mouth, and of censuring those individuals who confine themselves to an inspection of the teeth with a view to a knowledge of the age alone.

Internal Face of the Cheeks.—We will now refer to the **internal face of the cheeks,** whose external conformation we have already studied. It does not constitute a particular region by itself, but it limits laterally the mouth external to the molar teeth, as the lips do in front of the incisor teeth. It merits, nevertheless, some consideration, because it presents the round *tubercle* at the termination of Stenon's duct, opposite to the anterior border of the third molar tooth.

Wounds or **lacerations** of the mucous membrane, the result of dental spiculæ from irregularities of the molars, often exist here, particularly in old horses. They may produce inability to masticate,

the remedy for which is apparent. The subjects presenting these lesions are poorly nourished, their mastication is incomplete, and frequently food accumulates between the molar arcades and the internal face of the cheeks, producing a peculiar distention (granary) on the exterior, which we have previously described.

Method of Action of the Bit.—The **bit** should be considered as a check which arrests, as a power which masters, and, above all, as a means of communication between the horse and he who directs him. The physical impression which it causes varies from the slightest sensation to the most intense pain.

If the intensity of its effect is not properly measured with the degree of sensibility and the intelligence of the subject, it produces effects opposite to those which are desired; it provokes an energetic and often stubborn defence, in which the man is not always victorious, and which may not be without danger to his person. If, on the contrary, the mechanical effect of the bit be in proportion to the sensitiveness of the mouth, so as to be a simple indication for the horse to surmise what is required of him, and, if necessary, to teach him by the pain that he must obey a will superior to his own, then it becomes a means of education entirely rational and utilized in his *dressing* for various purposes. It becomes an intermediary agent between two intelligences whose communication is thus possible. It translates ideas and information from the language of the master into that of his servant; and, little by little, the latter will comprehend this language, although it varies according to the purpose for which the animal is employed, as the saddle, light carriage, or heavy traction. It is important that the dressing should begin early and under a patient, firm, able, and experienced master.

The **bitting** is the name given to the method by which the bit is most conveniently adjusted to the mouth of the horse.

CHAPTER V.

POSTERIOR EXTREMITY OF THE HEAD.

THE **posterior extremity** of the head comprises three regions, of which one, serving to unite the head with the neck, is double. They are: the *poll* or *nape*, the *parotid region*, and the *throat*.

A.—The Poll or Nape (Fig. 19).

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **poll** or **nape** occupies the summit of the head. It is limited laterally by the *ear* and the *parotid region*, anteriorly by the *forehead*, posteriorly by the *crest of the neck* and the *mane*.

This region, which corresponds anatomically to the occipito-atloid articulation, has for its base, on the median line, the funicular portion of the nuchal ligament, separated from the surface of the atlas by a synovial bursa; on each side are eight pairs of muscles disposed in several layers. Over the side of the atlas, corresponding to the two foramina, at the base of its transverse process, are the two principal blood-vessels, the retrograde and occipito-muscular arteries, separated from each other by a space of about two inches. The skin which covers it is ordinarily protected by the mane, which is usually cut to lodge the head-piece of the halter or bridle.

Diseases and Blemishes.—The veterinarian must thoroughly assure himself of the fineness and freedom from disease of this region; for, on account of the movements and the disposition of the muscles into layers, filtration is favored, and all diseases in this location assume an unfavorable aspect.[1] **Wounds** of the poll result sometimes from a misfitting bridle or halter and from contusions, consequent on the animal's rearing and striking the poll against resisting bodies. The most common result of these is fistula with *necrosis* of the tendons, nuchal ligament, and even the bones. This is extremely serious and often fatal; sometimes a cicatrix alone betrays the disease. A less serious disease is a synovitis and dilatation of the above-mentioned bursa. The swelling is usually bilateral.

No one but the most ignorant would buy horses with such blemishes without observing them. We know of instances in which the hood was employed to cover the parts. An **abnormal sensibility** of the poll is always indicative of a previous or now-existing disease, which can be demonstrated by passing the hand over this region.

B.—The Parotid Region (Fig. 19).

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **parotid region**, like the gland which forms its base, derives its name from its proximity to the ear. It is limited above by the *ear*, below by the

---

[1] A. Goubaux, Note sur quelques lésions de la région de la nuque, chez le cheval (Arch. vétér., 1877, p. 137).

throat, behind by the *neck*, and in front by the *temple* and the *cheek*. The external face of the parotid gland is separated from the skin by the parotido-auricularis and cuticularis colli muscles; underneath, it lies against the pharynx, larynx, guttural pouches, blood-vessels, and nerves, and is traversed obliquely from below upward, and from without to within, by the jugular vein; the superior extremity embraces the base of the ear, and the inferior is lodged in the angle of union of the jugular and glosso-facial veins.

Beauties and Defects.—These are purely conventional and vary according to taste. The region, to be beautiful, it is said, should be light and depressed in order that the movements of the head may be free and extensive; if too much excavated relative to the surrounding parts, the movements will be too easy, the saddle-horse will be able to defend himself against his rider, and the head is *mal-attached;* if too salient over the regions which confine it, the horse becomes difficult to guide and direct, the movements are neither free nor extended, and the head is again *mal-attached.*

These arguments do not rest on any given physiological *rationale.* It suffices to recall the anatomical disposition of the articulations and the muscles to understand that these conformations are arbitrary and render the contradictory theories valueless. A **moderate depression** of the parotid surface is simply agreeable to the eye in that it makes the head appear to be better attached, and, for this reason, deserves the preference accorded to it.

Diseases and Blemishes.—It is of more utility than the preceding to determine the presence or absence of **diseases** and **blemishes**. We observe here *tumefactions* due to melanotic tumors, to alterations in the gland itself, as parotiditis, to diseases of the structures which surround it, as the guttural pouches, or to lesions of the surrounding veins. Parotid abscesses are often complicated with salivary fistulæ, which allow the escape of saliva and produce malnutrition. The hood is again called upon by unscrupulous dealers to hide these conditions.

Let us also mention *denudations, cicatrices,* and *traces of the cautery,* as well as other blemishes which result from the employment of a means of treatment of diseases of the larynx, the gland, or the facial vein. In such cases it is necessary to determine whether or not the animal is a roarer or suffers from an obliteration of the jugular vein. (See *Neck.*)

In conclusion, let us mention the barbarous **usage** which consisted in compression of the parotid region with a farrier's pincers in horses suffering from violent attacks of colic, the cause of which was attributed to pain and engorgement of the parotid glands. In similar circumstances it was also the custom to beat and open the glands to quiet the animal. This operation, dangerous as well as absurd, often terminated in gangrene and its inevitable consequence, the death of the patient. We have proof of such an example.

C.—The Throat (Fig. 19).

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **throat** occupies the bottom of the curvature of the head upon the neck, or the sine of the cervico-cephalic angle. It is limited behind by the inferior border of the neck, in front by the submaxillary space, and laterally by the parotid region. It is a single region, which corresponds to the inferior face of the larynx and the origin of the trachea, which are separated from the internal face of the skin by the muscles. It is bordered inferiorly and on each side by the two glosso-facial veins.

Its **absolute beauty** consists in its large **transverse diameter,** because the larynx, whose diameter is related to that of the throat, belongs to the respiratory apparatus, the capacity of which should always be extensive. Its **narrowness** is, therefore, an absolute defect, because it signifies lungs of small capacity.

In examining a horse, the larynx is generally compressed with the hand to determine the cough, the character of which has an important clinical aspect. All horses, however, are not equally sensitive to this manipulation. In certain animals it is necessary to employ both hands to obtain this result, and in others it is entirely impossible to excite a cough.

The character of the cough indicates the condition of the respiratory organs. Provoking a cough sometimes causes the ejection of a discharge which has been fraudulently concealed. As soon as such is visible it is judicious to examine the nostrils and at the same time observe any movements of deglutition. In some rare cases of *glanderous ulceration* of the larynx and trachea, the expectorated matters are thrown into the mouth and immediately swallowed. Abadie, of Nantes, who has first called attention to this fact, advises in these cases the opening of the mouth of the animal and allowing the secretion to run out.

The **blemishes** of the throat are *depilations*, *excoriations*, and *cicatrices*, indicating the use of revulsives employed in diseases of the larynx and pharynx.

CHAPTER VI.

HEAD IN GENERAL.

We have studied in the preceding chapters the different regions of the head, as to their situation, form, beauty, defects, diseases, and blemishes. In other words, we have employed a *system of analysis* in endeavoring to point out the physical and anatomical characters, the integrity, imperfections, and good qualities of each region in particular.

This study will not be complete without a glance at the different parts as a whole, purposely reserved for a special chapter. This *synthetical* study will enable us to perceive much more easily the **harmonious relations** which should exist among them; it will furnish us also with an opportunity of examining the head, as to its *length, volume, direction, general form, attachments to the neck, movements,* and their *influence upon the displacement of the centre of gravity,* and, finally, the *expression.*

A.—Harmonious Relations of the Head.

M. Richard[1] was the first to insist, with detail, upon the fact that the **relation of construction** of the different regions seems to be much more intimate in the head than in any other portion of the body. It is, he says, not rare to see, for example, a very beautiful hock associated with a defective haunch, a good shoulder with a defective croup, withers well made with loins concave and badly attached, a narrow chest with limbs strong and well formed, etc.

Inharmonious proportions are infinitely less common in the head. Thus, large nostrils, well-situated eyes, ears widely separated, and a large intermaxillary space coexist nearly always with a wide forehead; whilst a narrow forehead implies, in most horses, large ears, placed high and approaching each other, eyes but partly open, small nostrils, and a narrow intermaxillary space. The fineness and mobility of the ears and of the eyelids, the amplitude of the nostrils, the thinness of the lips, the vivacity of the eyes, and the intelligent expression of the physiognomy, are beauties which ordinarily coexist.

It follows, then, that a good or a bad conformation of one part naturally permits a good or a bad disposition of another. Beauty of the forehead is not associated with narrowness of the nose; that of the nostrils with narrowness of the intermaxillary space; the intelligent expression of a beautiful eye with stupidity of the remainder of the face.

In a general way, it is correct to say that the beauties and defects of the head correlate themselves in a manner almost absolute; but we must remember that there are some subjects in which these relations are defective. Therefore, in selecting a horse, such a desirable quality as a wide forehead should not of itself be regarded as conclusive of general excellence. If the harmony be in nature, it is often destroyed by man, who modifies the natural conditions of existence of the domestic animals.

---

[1] A. Richard, Étude du cheval, 5e éd., 1874, p. 127.

A propos of the proportions, we will again revert to this subject. For the present we will only indicate the harmonious relations of the head without ignoring the possible digressions or exceptions to this principle, which is really less absolute than M. Richard has been willing to admit.

B.—Length of the Head.

Since the time of Bourgelat, all have been generally in accord as to the classic **length** of the head: that the height of the body measured from the withers to the ground, or the distance between the angle of the shoulder and the hip-joint, should be *two and one-half times the length of the head.* If these distances were more than two and one-half times the vertical diameter of the head, it was *too short;* if the reverse was true, it was considered *too long.*

When it has an appropriate length, it is carried with grace, responds easily to the action of the bit, and does not overburden the anterior members. A head too long is too heavy, displaces the centre of gravity forward, restrains the movements of the anterior extremities, bears heavily on the reins, and diminishes to such an extent the speed and usefulness of the animal. If too short, it becomes lighter, more movable, and favors rapidity of movement by the removal of the centre of gravity from the anterior limbs.

These are reasons of so little value that an excess or a deficiency in length can be compensated by a short or a long neck. In the saddle-horse, the head should be short; if too long, it displaces the centre of gravity forward, and throws too much weight on the fore limbs. In the draught-horse, however, this objection disappears and is rather favorable to traction. We have seen many excellent horses which, according to the measurements indicated by Bourgelat, had this region very long or very short. In such instances, the length of the head is to be considered as to its harmonious development with the other portions of the body, which vary with size and race, rather than by its influence upon the real qualities of the animal.

C.—Volume of the Head.

The **volume** of the head is represented by different names, which also express its coexisting peculiarity of construction. It is called *fine* when the osseous processes, the muscles, and subcutaneous blood-vessels and nerves are well outlined. This is an index of a good constitution, and is a reliable sign of good breeding; whereas, indistinctness of these

component parts and an abundance of connective tissue always denote a soft, lymphatic temperament and a common ancestry.

The head is termed *gross* or *coarse* when it is defective from an excess of all its dimensions, owing its volume more particularly to the great development of its bony framework. The objections to this conformation are the same as to that of the long head. It is admissible, however, with the same restrictions that we made when speaking of the length of the head. In the draught-horse it is not a defect, because his power depends, in a great measure, upon his weight, and not so much upon the rapidity and extent of his movements; also because it tends to fix the anterior part of the body when the muscles contract.

The head is designated *fleshy* or *plain* when, in addition to grossness, there is an almost complete effacement of the blood-vessels, nerves, and osseous and muscular protuberances in consequence of the thickness of the skin and subcutaneous tissue, as well as of the diminution of the bony processes themselves. It reveals a weak constitution, a lymphatic temperament, and all the predispositions to which the latter is heir.

It is called *senile* or *sharp* when it appears emaciated from atrophy and absorption of the adipose tissue and of the muscles. The eminences of the bones, such as the maxillary spine, become quite conspicuous, the supra-orbit is hollow, the eye is deeply embedded in its orbit, the cheek flat, the face depressed over the maxillary sinuses, and the skin seems attached to the bones. In a word, it presents all the characteristics of advanced age and exhaustion from extreme usage.

It must not be confounded with the *senile* head proper, of which we will speak further on.

D.—Direction of the Head.

The **long axis** of the head may assume three principal positions relative to the vertical line: the *oblique*, the *horizontal*, and the *vertical*. The last two qualifications are not to be taken literally, but as expressing an approximation to the vertical and horizontal positions.

The head has a **good** as well as a **natural direction** when it extends obliquely from above to below, from before to behind, and forms, with the ground surface, an angle of about 45 degrees. The horse is thereby enabled to distinguish perfectly objects placed before him; he is enabled to avoid them, and is less likely to stumble and fall. It is also necessary to add that the bit has a suitable point of support upon the bars, since the insertion of the reins or the lines is more perpendicular to the branches of the lower jaw, which represent the arm of a

lever. But then there are other reasons of a purely mechanical nature (Fig. 28).

We represent by the lines *AB* and *AC* respectively the directions of the head and the neck. The former being very movable, admitting of extension and flexion, we represent the direction of the extensors and flexors by the dotted lines *Ce* and *Cd*, in order to show at what angles they are inserted upon their lever-arm, the head. It is to be remarked that when the obliquity of the head is carried to an angle of 45 degrees, the extensors and the flexors have an incidence approaching a perpendicular direction, which they will not have when the head has any other inclination.

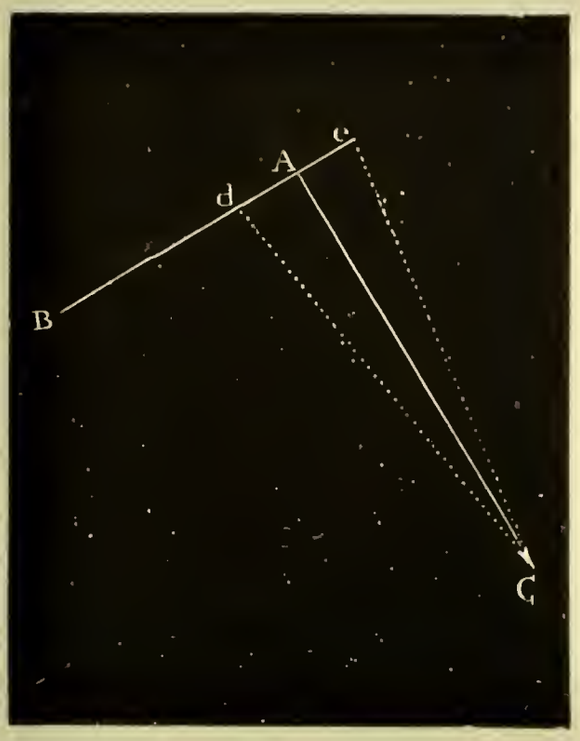


FIG. 28.

The animal respires more easily (the larynx being neither in a state of compression nor exaggerated extension), responds more promptly to the bit, is more readily controlled, and executes with greater facility any movements of the head which may be demanded.

When the head is carried **horizontally**, the centre of gravity is elevated and displaced forward and the stability of the equilibrium is lessened. The larynx and trachea are placed in a straight line, facilitating the entrance and exit of air. The body being then in a state of unstable equilibrium, the hind limbs, which are principally concerned in locomotion, can more easily displace the centre of gravity, the fore limbs, in order to avoid falling forward, move more rapidly, and locomotion is thereby increased.[1]

This position is not maintained at rest, but only during exercise, and more especially in horses which are ewe-necked and in young saddle-horses at the beginning of their dressing, when they are not yet habituated to the action of the bit. This attitude is expressed by saying that the animal carries his head *towards the scent.*

If there are some advantages in horses carrying their heads in this

---

[1] It is a well-known fact that in our fastest trotting-horses the height of the posterior extremities exceeds that of the withers. This excess is an additional aid to the displacement of the centre of gravity by the hind limbs, according to the principle enunciated, and hence favors an increase of speed. An opposite conformation will diminish speed. (Harger.)

position relative to the increase of speed, of which we will speak later, there are at the same time some disadvantages. The horse cannot so easily recognize objects immediately about him; he cannot appreciate as well the nature of the surface over which he travels, and is more likely to stumble and fall. The most serious defect which this direction entails is that the bit cannot act perpendicularly to the bars. All the traction exercised on the bit tends to retract the commissures of the lips and carry it against the first molars. The teeth may now grasp the bit, the animal may become uncontrollable, and is then said to have taken the bit.

It is to be remarked, from another point of view, that in the horizontal position of the head the extensors attach at an obtuse angle, an incidence unfavorable to contraction; the attachment of the flexors, on the other hand, is at an acute angle, also a less favorable incidence (Fig. 29, *A*).

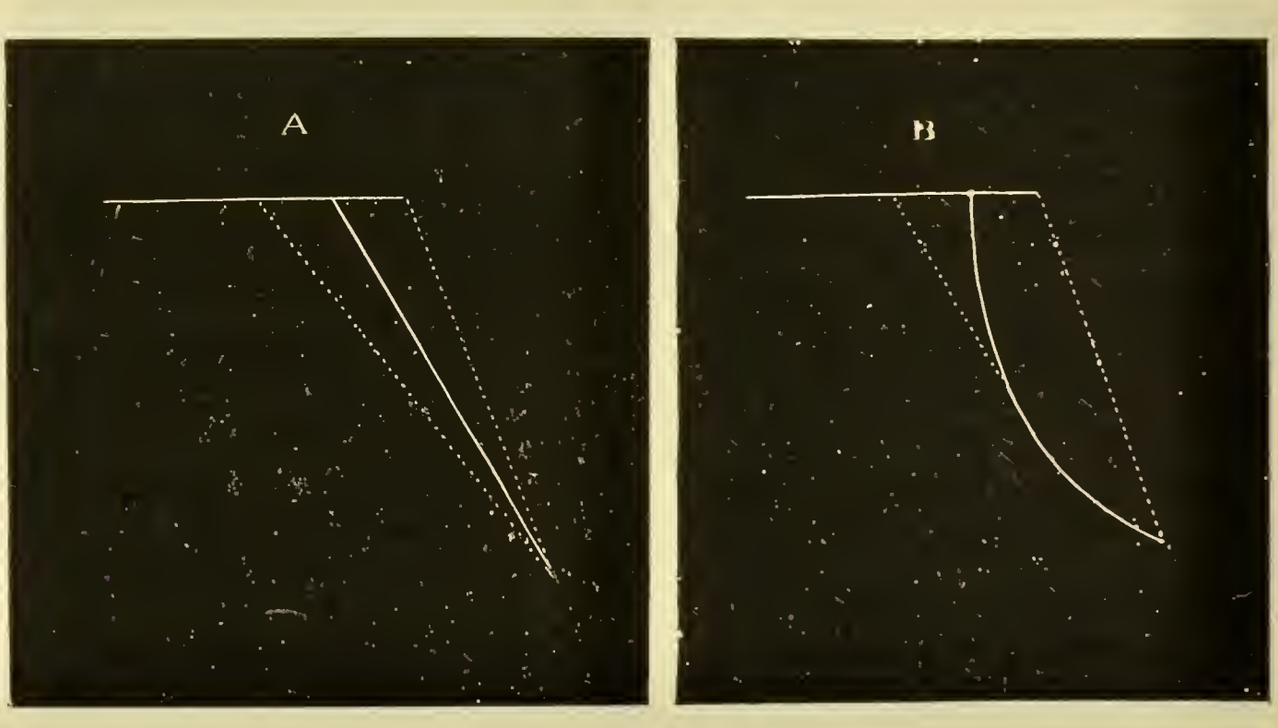


Fig. 29.

This carriage of the head, when habitual, is nearly always accompanied by a concavity or reversing of the neck. In such cases, as Professor Lesbre[1] thinks, the articular relations between the atlas and the axis will assume the normal condition most appropriate for the execution of all the movements. These would be extremely limited in extension if the cervical axis did not curve itself. Anatomy also explains that lateral inclination of the head in such an elevated attitude becomes almost impossible, because its production

[1] Lesbre, Communication orale.

requires a mean position of contact of the articular surfaces. Finally, the reversing of the neck, which is the consequence, renders the insertion of the muscles, now approaching the perpendicular direction, less defective, and at the same time increases the power of the mechanical action of the nuchal ligament (Fig. 29, *B*).

It is sometimes impossible to prevent the animal from holding the head in this position. The remedy consists in the use of the *martingale*, a strap of leather of suitable length extending from the bit to the girth of the saddle. This apparatus is frequently added to the harness simply as an ornament. In saddle-horses this faulty direction can also be prevented by the use of a martingale with rings at its extremity, through which the reins pass, and which act as a pulley to keep the latter in their proper position, and thus prevent the elevation of the head.

When the head is held in the **vertical position** the centre of gravity is carried backward and downward. The line of gravitation approaches the centre of the base of support, whence ensues a state of stable equilibrium, more difficulty in displacing the centre of gravity, and less quickness of movement. This position of the head is objectionable in driving-horses and in running-horses, whilst in draught-horses it is not.

A vertical head is always accompanied by an *arched* or *swan neck*, the appearance of which is agreeable to the eye. Besides having the defect which we have indicated, the head is not in a good position for seeing distinctly objects beyond a certain distance. The field of vision does not extend far enough ahead to enable the animal to avoid obstacles which may be in his path. Also, like those which carry the head in extension, he is apt to stumble and fall, but for opposite reasons.

In this direction of the head the incidence of the extensors is acute and that of the flexors obtuse (Fig. 30, *A*). Here again the neck is incurvated or arched to preserve the normal relation of the articular surfaces of the occipito-atloid articulation and render at the same time the insertion of the muscles more perpendicular to the arm of their lever (Fig. 30, *B*). This vertical direction is less objectionable in the saddle-horse than in any other. In horses which present it the steps are short and the flexion of the knees (knee-action) is more marked. They are more sensitive to the bit, and quite manageable if the conformation be not exaggerated.

When excessive, however, it constitutes a serious defect, as when the head is *oblique from above to below and from before to behind*, and its inferior extremity approaches the sternum. The effect of the backward

displacement of the centre of gravity has here reached its highest

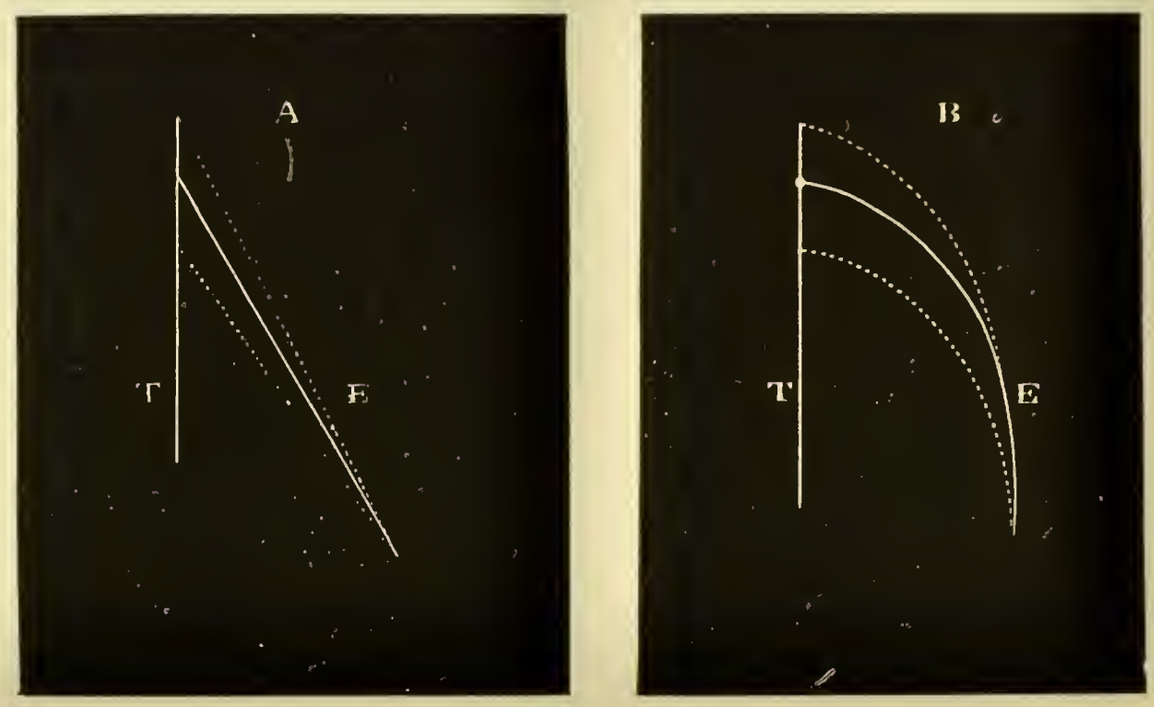


FIG. 30.

limit; according to the usual expression, the horse *arches his neck to his breast*, cannot see the surrounding obstacles, and removes his head entirely from the control of the hand.

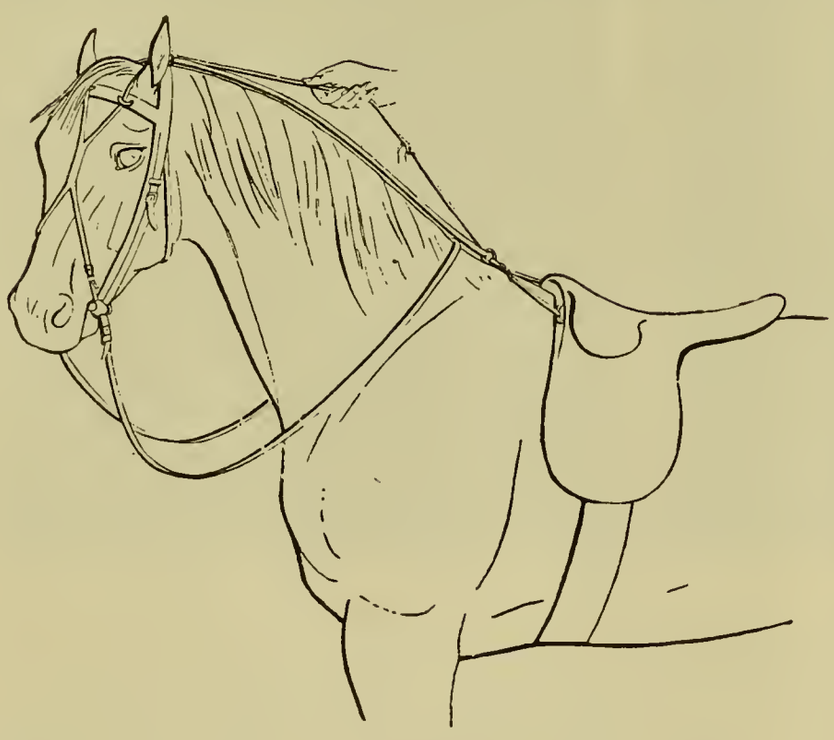


FIG. 31.

In certain subjects the branches of the bit are said to touch the pectoral region. This has not yet been proved by our observation. If it be true it can be remedied by limiting the excessive flexion of the head upon the neck by means of an overcheck,—a system of straps extending from the saddle to each side of the bit and inflected over the poll (Fig. 31).

E.—Forms of the Head.

At the beginning of the chapter we compared the general form of the head to that of a quadrangular pyramid, in order to establish the

different subdivisions and facilitate their description. This comparison is not sufficient to specify clearly certain conformations which must be described, and to which have been given particular names.

1. The head is called **straight** when its anterior face is rectilinear in every sense. It is accompanied ordinarily by a wide forehead and nose, large nostrils, wide separation of the ears, the eyes, and of the branches of the lower jaw, exceeding fineness of the skin, of the eyelids, and of the lips, and a high faculty of expression. It is the *type* of absolute beauty; it indicates the nobleness of the animal, his purity of blood, his energy, and his kindness of temperament. It is found in Aryan and thoroughbred horses and their descendants of mixed breed. It is the one most highly appreciated.

2. The **conical** head is that which is much contracted at its inferior extremity. It is regarded as a defect, because it presents, it is said, all the characters opposed to those of the preceding form. This is true in many cases, and some who designate the beauty of the head by saying that the horse *should be able to drink from a glass*, little suspect that they indicate precisely the defective point; the animal is nearly always incapable of performing work requiring force and energy. Yet we have known, for several years, excellent horses which had the conical head. Old subjects, from senile atrophy of the maxillary bones and the change in the direction of the incisor teeth, sometimes acquire this form of head.

In a general examination it is necessary, therefore, to assure ourselves that the forehead and nose are wide, the jaws well separated; in a word, that the head does not present one of the more exceptional forms of which we will speak immediately. In the latter the anterior surface of the head is characterized by a curvature more or less marked, which may be *concave* or *convex*. These have received special names.

3. The head is **arched** when the profile of its anterior face is convex.

4. It is called **hare-faced** when the convexity is limited to the region of the forehead.

5. It is designated **ram's head** when the convexity is limited to the nose.

De Curnieu also described the *hurdy-gurdy* head, so named on account of its resemblance to the profile of that instrument. It presents "a curve, more or less pronounced, extending without interruption from the poll to the lips; it ordinarily has considerable expression and indicates a pure line of descent." It is not necessary to dwell upon this variety, as all its characteristics correspond to those of the arched form.

The *convexity* of the head, whatever may be its extent and degree, is not very desirable, on account of its inelegance and the habitual narrowness which accompanies it.

For a long time, more especially during the last century, the convex head was very much in demand. But it was believed that horses which presented it had narrow nasal cavities and intermaxillary spaces; that they were particularly predisposed to become *roarers*. By judicious crossing, attempts were made to cause its disappearance from the races in which it was most common,—those of the north of Europe, Normandy, Limousin, Spain, Algeria, etc. To-day it is quite rare and is ceasing to be a distinct race peculiarity. Most authors have considered it as characteristic of a deficient development of the cranial cavity and the respiratory apparatus, and as indicating a predisposition to grave diseases. M. de Curnieu remarks that "it represents the extreme of degeneration; the horse possessing such a shaped head is the idiot of the species, and is found in the poorest parts of England, Germany, and Normandy."

6. The head is **snub-nosed** when its anterior face is concave, or when the concavity is limited to the inferior part of the forehead. It is common among the Irish race, as the Irish cob and the Shetland pony, and in the Corsican and Sardinian ponies. Ordinarily short, wide, and in relation with the development of the respiratory apparatus, it is incorrect to believe that it is an objectionable characteristic. Nothing justifies this belief. It gives the animal a certain air of aggressiveness and independence; it is often allied with marked robustness, great energy, and a series of other good qualities of the race in which it is observed.

7. The head is compared to that of the **rhinoceros** when the concavity exists only at the inferior extremity of the nasal bones. It was formerly observed in the Ardennaise horse and is a good conformation, although perhaps disagreeable to the eye. It may be *congenital* or *acquired:* congenital, when it is present at birth; acquired, when it is the result of pressure or of fracture of the nasal bones, as we have remarked in the chapter on the nose. It only becomes a defect in the latter case when, from displacement or the formation of a callus in the nasal fossæ, it becomes an obstruction to respiration.

The relative value of these different forms is by no means absolute, and each one has numerous exceptions. We have known horses with arched heads, which, during several years, performed extremely laborious services. In others, the width of the maxillary space by our measurements was as great as that in subjects with

straight heads. It appears to us very hazardous to believe that this conformation predisposes to roaring, and the facts which we will relate seem to prove that the observations made during the last century have been mal-interpreted. The lesions of chronic roaring do not reside in the nasal cavities. Among horses with straight heads roaring seems to be as common as among those in which they are convex; finally, it should not occasion surprise to find roaring more common in some races than in others, this resulting not so much from an anatomical defect as from a physiological weakness transmitted by heredity. This conformation is really only defective when accompanied by a veritable narrowness of the cranial cavity, the forehead, nose, nostrils, or maxillary space. In other cases it is perfectly reconcilable with services which exact force and vitality. The same argument is true as to glanders, to which horses with arched heads were, incorrectly, said to be more predisposed than others.

F.—Attachments of the Head.

Attachments of the head is the name given to the mode of union between that part of the body and the neck. The head is said to be *well attached* when there exists a slight depression in front of the transverse apophysis of the atlas, extending from the poll to the throat. When its union with the neck forms a graceful curve, the movements are easy and extended. This is preferable in the saddle-horse and those used for light purposes. It is to be noticed in the finer races as well as in mixed breeds, in the English horse, the true Arabian, the Anglo-Norman, the Tarban horse, etc.

The head is *poorly attached*, or *unfastened*, when the parotid grooves are too much accentuated. Often, with this arrangement, the neck is long and slender, the muscles of the members slightly developed, the loins depressed, the chest narrow, and the animal lacks strength and endurance. The head is *plastered on* when the parotid groove is effaced. The subject is then heavy on the bit and appears unsightly. This condition is most objectionable in the saddle-horse.

G.—Movements of the Head.

The **movements** of the head play an important part in the execution of the different functions which it fulfils. It contains, first, the organs of smell, sight, hearing, and taste. We can add to these the sense of touch, although the latter belongs also to other regions. Whence it follows that the head is obliged to assume different attitudes in order

to place the organs of which it is the seat in the best conditions to establish their proper relation with the external world. The most interesting movements for us to study, however, are those whose object is to modify the position of the centre of gravity while standing or walking. The head occupies, in fact, at the anterior part of the trunk, a position which also allows it to oscillate like a veritable pendulum at the extremity of the cervical stalk. It may be raised or lowered, remain in the axis of the body, or be displaced laterally, backward, or forward; in a word, the centre of gravity can be moved upward, downward, forward, backward, sideways, raised from the base of support or drawn to it, removed from the centre of this base, forced out of it, or again drawn back. These multiple actions are produced still more freely by the head when it is attached to a long neck, in which case its movements are easier and more extended. Therefore, all the influence which it exercises upon locomotion can be understood, since it can, according to the will of the animal, change rapidly the conditions of stability or instability of the equilibrium; in a word, modify the speed.

Not only do we speak of its extensive displacements, the effect of which is understood at first sight, but we also make allusion to its partial movements upon the neck.

According to our researches, the *centre of gravity* of the head is situated on the median line, at the intersection of a transversal plane, which passes posterior to the last superior molar tooth, and of a horizontal plane tangent to the palatine arch. Should the head be extended, it becomes a mass of about fifteen to sixteen kilogrammes, which will carry it, from this fact alone, in advance of the cervical lever, and which will tend to deviate the line of gravitation in front of the base of support. This is the attitude which it assumes in the race-horse when he is running at full speed. When it becomes flexed, reverse effects are produced; when it is directed to the side, the corresponding anterior member will at once be overburdened, and the other as much disburdened. This is sufficient to explain the importance of these total and partial displacements. We will, besides, have occasion to return to the subject when describing, in their proper place, the gaits, the attitudes, and the movements which the animal performs.

H.—Expression of the Head.

The face of the horse is certainly the part of the body upon which the sensations and the passions which he experiences show themselves

most clearly. When this faculty of expression is carried to a high degree, he is said to have **figure** and **expression.**

The parts which are most particularly charged with the manifestations of the different internal states of the animal are: the eyes and the eyelids, the ears, the nostrils, the lips, and the mouth. These organs, through the different attitudes which they take, depict, by turns, gentleness, vivacity, anger, sadness, depression, joy, pain, fear, frankness, courage, ferocity, aggression, savageness, indifference, stupidity, ennui, etc. Ordinarily, the faculty of expression of the head is in direct relation with the purity of the race, the quality of the animals, their energy, and their intelligence. But it is a gross error to believe that it is possible to appreciate the qualities of a horse from an examination of his physiognomy alone. The latter, like that of man, can deceive, perhaps still more, for it has not the same mobility and shades; its language is less familiar to us; its most powerful auxiliary (gesture) and its best interpreter (speech) is wanting. Besides, if the features of the face are quite well understood, through education and habitual intercourse, as regards horses of the same species, they become much less comprehensible when it is a question of different species having between them only limited relations.

Man reads upon the face of his fellow-man sentiments which he feels; long observation and habit are indispensable to him, on the contrary, in order to understand the expressive manifestations of the horse.

Besides, we should not be deceived about their value; for in some select subjects in which the head clearly reveals the greater part of the internal passions, the mass of the body will often deprive it of expression.

The ability of the buyer will consist, then, in the prudence with which he guards himself against the premature inferences that can be drawn from their absence.

It must not be forgotten that he who exhibits the animal for sale is greatly interested in showing qualities which the horse has not, or has only in a feeble degree, and can by a kind of special preparation—the fear of blows, the blows received, the introduction of a piece of ginger into the anus, etc.—give him an appearance of vivacity or energy which, unfortunately, will be only temporary.

PART II.

THE BODY.

CHAPTER I.

SUPERIOR FACE OF THE BODY.

A.—The Neck.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **neck** is a single region, flattened from side to side, situated at the anterior extremity of the trunk and supporting the head. Free on its lateral faces, it is limited in front and above by the *poll*, the *parotid region*, and the *throat;* behind and below by the *withers*, the *shoulders*, and the *breast*.

It has for its osseous base a bony axis formed by the cervical vertebræ, sustained superiorly by the two portions of the nuchal ligament and enveloped completely by numerous and voluminous muscles. The trachea, the œsophagus, the arteries, the veins, the lymphatics, and, finally, the nerves leading to the head, occupy its inferior border. The *mane* adorns its superior border.

This region is an important one to study, because it constitutes at the anterior part of the trunk the arm of a lever more or less long, whose extremity gives attachment to the head, which is a kind of resistance that follows all its displacements and concurs with it to modify the situation of the centre of gravity during progressive movements.

Divisions.—Whatever may be the particular form of the region of the neck, it may be represented as a pyramid flattened from side to side, the *base* of which corresponds to its posterior and the *summit* to its anterior extremity. Its periphery presents, besides, two *faces*, a right and a left, and a *superior* and *inferior border*.

1. **Lateral Faces.**—Each of the *lateral faces* is traversed over its entire length by a round thickening corresponding to the cervical vertebræ covered by the muscles, the most superficial of which is the mastoido-humeralis. Above this enlargement is an irregularly-triangular

surface, on which are seen, in fine and well-bred horses, the digitations and directions of the muscles underneath the skin. Below, it presents a longitudinal depression along the side of the trachea, known under the name of *jugular gutter*. The width of the latter diminishes from before to behind; its depth varies with the subject according to the form of the neck, the muscular development, etc. In those animals in which the neck is *stag-like*, or *reversed*, this gutter is more superficial. Whatever may be its disposition, it lodges under the skin a large superficial vein, the *jugular*, which becomes immediately very apparent when the circulation of the blood is interfered with by any obstacle, as the pressure of too small a collar, for example.

2. **Borders.**—The **inferior border** is thick and rounded, because it has for its base the trachea. Its width from side to side is in relation with the calibre of this conduit and the amplitude of the lungs. It constitutes, therefore, a mark of absolute beauty.

The **superior border**, thinner than the preceding, supports the mane. Its thinness is a matter of beauty and is to be sought for; but, in some old horses, especially stallions, it becomes invaded with adipose tissue, which renders it so heavy that it cannot sustain itself and falls to one side. Such a condition is called *lop-neck*, or *fallen-neck*, an ungraceful disfigurement which makes the application of the collar difficult, and is accompanied by deep transverse folds, which are always hard to cleanse, and in which colonies of acari often take refuge. We have seen some animals in which these furrows were sufficiently deep to bury the hand when the head was extended.

The region of the neck should be examined as to its *form*, *direction*, or *carriage*, *volume*, *length*, *mode of attachment* to the head, and its *movements*.

Form.—The neck is called *straight*, or *pyramidal*, when its borders are rectilinear and its lateral faces nearly plane or but slightly rounded, according to the age, the sex, the volume of the muscles, etc., of the animal. The head is then well supported and well directed. It is *arched* when its superior border describes a convexity more or less pronounced throughout its entire length. In this case the head is ordinarily carried in a vertical position and presents the defectiveness of which we have already spoken. If the convexity be limited to the anterior part it is designated *swan-neck*, by reason of analogy to the neck of that bird, whose graceful curvature it imitates. This form modifies, like the preceding, the carriage of the head, but the vertical direction which the latter shows is less pronounced. Finally, the neck is *reversed*, or *ewe-necked*, when its superior border is concave, which implies a proportional con-

vexity of the inferior border. Many horses showing this conformation have, in front of the withers, a distinct depression. Most of them also hold the head in a horizontal direction, as we have indicated.

In a general way, all these forms are so much more compatible with the velocity of the gait the more the head is carried in advance of the base of support and, consequently, as the cervical trunk is less convex along its superior border. The pyramidal and reversed forms remove the head farthest from the body and denote the greatest speed. On the contrary, the arched and the swan-neck, by their tendency to curve the vertebræ in the shape of an S, diminish the length of the neck, move the centre of gravity backward, and are more favorable to its elevation and depression as well as to the lateral displacement of the trunk. They also offer advantages in the saddle-horse, in which grace, brilliancy, rapidity, and extent of movement are preferred.

These conformations can be acquired by means of mechanical contrivances and appropriate dressing. All horsemen are in the habit of making the necks of their horses supple by obliging them to execute progressively the movements of extension, flexion, and lateral inclination. The utility of such suppleness is easily understood, since this kind of functional gymnastics has no other purpose than to habituate the animal to use this balance—so powerful and so useful—with dexterity and rapidity, and thus overcome the resistance of the head. We shall, farther on, see that these cervical gymnastics, carried to an extreme, will prove prejudicial in certain cases, while, when well employed, their efficacy becomes incontestable in certain others.

Direction or Carriage.—Independently of the particular forms which it assumes, the neck also carries itself in several **directions** relative to the vertical line. We shall consider three varieties:

1st. The **vertical,** or, more properly, *an approximation to the vertical.* In this attitude, which constitutes a point of beauty and indicates energy, the head is easily sustained, the animal is easy on the reins and the bit, and the movements of the shoulders are free and extensive (Fig. 32).

Let *mn* and *OB*, for illustration, represent the directions of the shoulder and the neck respectively. The extensor muscles and the mastoido-humeralis will be schematically represented by the lines *Bm* and *Bn*. The latter, it will be plainly seen, has a more considerable length, and therefore a greater amplitude of contraction to elevate the scapulo-humeral angle and increase the arc described by the forefoot. We see, moreover, that the weight of the head, represented by the line

BR, indicating the direction of the force of gravity, is exerted at the end of the cervical lever at a very acute angle, an incidence which diminishes the intensity of the force of gravity. This explains why horses carrying the neck in this position are not hard-mouthed; the

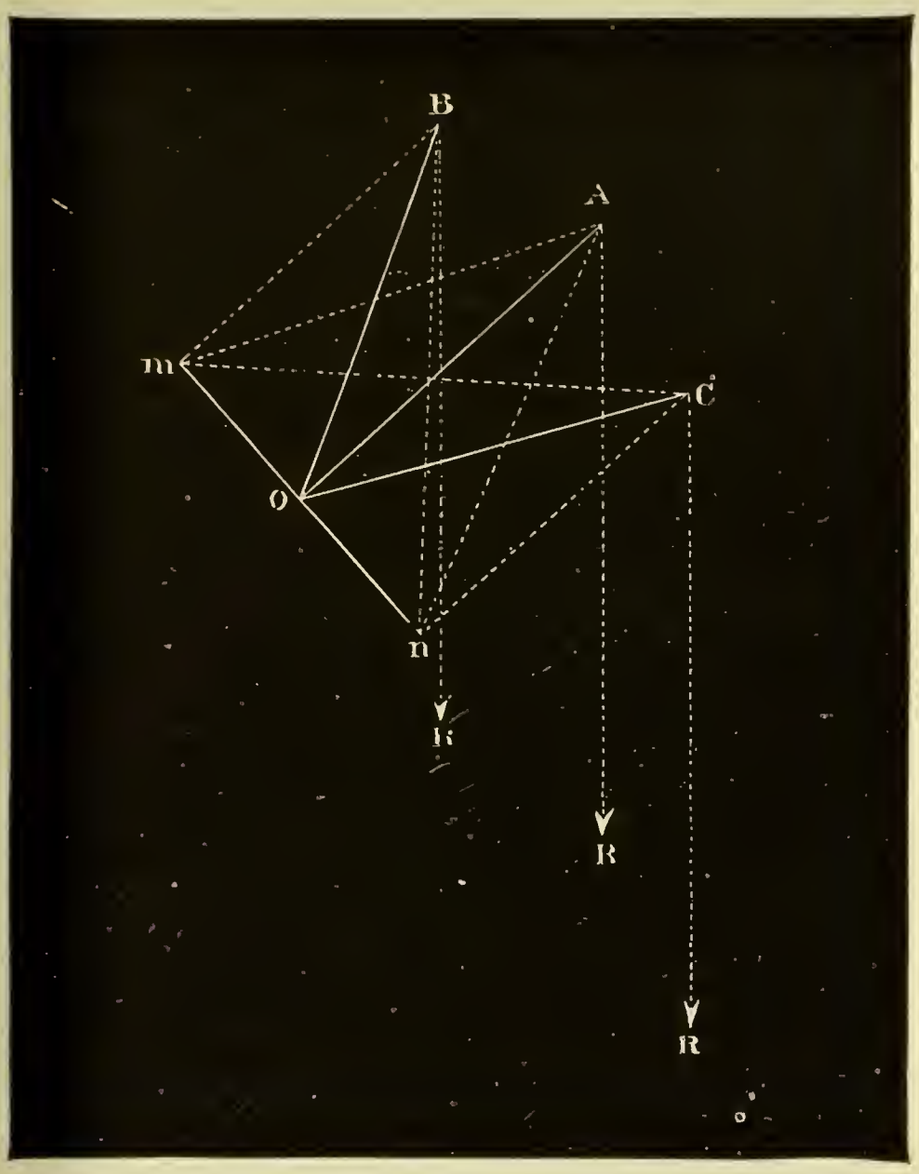


FIG. 32.

head seems to weigh less at the end of the cervical stalk, in consequence of the slightly-perpendicular incidence of the line of gravitation.

Finally, we call attention to the favorable insertion of the extensor muscles, *Bm*, which are in excellent condition to resist the weight of the head and to carry it backward in order to give freedom to the action of the anterior limbs. Horses with necks thus formed are well qualified for all the brilliant movements of tossing and balancing the head in the riding-school and in the parade.

2d. **The Horizontal.**—We observe this direction in animals that are deficient in energy, in the common races, and in those which are

fatigued. "If the last," says H. Bouley,[1] "are prevented, by the resistance of the reins, from inclining the head towards the ground, they continually toss it up and down, and by this oscillating movement ease the muscles and relieve themselves of the fatigue which this position occasions." We also see horses that are attached to heavy loads assume this attitude occasionally, for reasons which we have seen when speaking of the direction of the head.

Whatever may be the circumstances under which we observe it, the animal always has a hard mouth, and his gait is shortened. We must except, here, the race-horse, whose neck is held horizontally when he is urged to his utmost speed, but assumes another position under ordinary circumstances. All these facts are explained by the mechanical considerations employed above.

Let, for example, *mn* and *OC* be the relative direction of the shoulder and the neck (Fig. 32). It is plain that the mastoido-humeralis is shortened, and therefore has a limited degree of contraction. Nevertheless, its insertion in the shoulder is much more perpendicular than in the preceding direction, whence it results that the muscle will be more powerful as regards the intensity of its action. We understand from this fact how it is that horses which become exhausted during a long journey carry the neck in this direction. Moreover, the line of gravitation, *CR*, of the head tends to become more and more perpendicular with the cervical axis, which gives to the head a greater power of resistance and explains why these animals are always hard-mouthed.

The head thus held displaces, besides, the centre of gravity forward, relieves the posterior extremity of the body from a portion of the weight sustained by it, and exacts a smaller expenditure of force in the propulsive efforts of the hind limbs.

3d. Finally, the neck may assume an intermediate direction,—that is to say, an obliquity of about 45 degrees. We see again, by inspecting Fig. 32, that in this instance the advantages and disadvantages of the two preceding directions are about equally distributed. The muscles have a mean length, and their incidence with the shoulder is favorable, the step is sufficiently extended, and the head is neither too light nor too heavy on the rein. In a word, for good service, this is the usual position assumed by most horses, the golden mean to which it should be reduced.

Volume.—The **volume** of the neck should not be too large.

---

[1] H. Bouley, Dictionnaire pratique de médecine, de chirurgie et d'hygiène vétérinaires, t. vi. art. "Encolure."

It is important that the latter should be harmoniously proportioned to the other parts of the body, and only by practice are we enabled to judge of the characters which denote this harmony. Thus, it may be *slender* or *thick*, two conformations intimately associated with an excess or a deficiency of its length. However, in stallions the neck acquires a development which must not be considered as a defect. The effect of castration is a diminution of the thickness of this region to a notable extent.

Length.—The **length** of the neck, which is measured from the middle of the anterior border of the shoulder to the anterior extremity of the transverse process of the atlas, is correlative to its volume, which should be neither excessive nor deficient, under penalty of destroying the usefulness of the animal.

Let us see what happens when the cervical lever is lengthened or shortened on this or on that side of its normal dimensions. Let (Fig. 33) *mn* and *OC* be the relative directions of the shoulder and the neck;

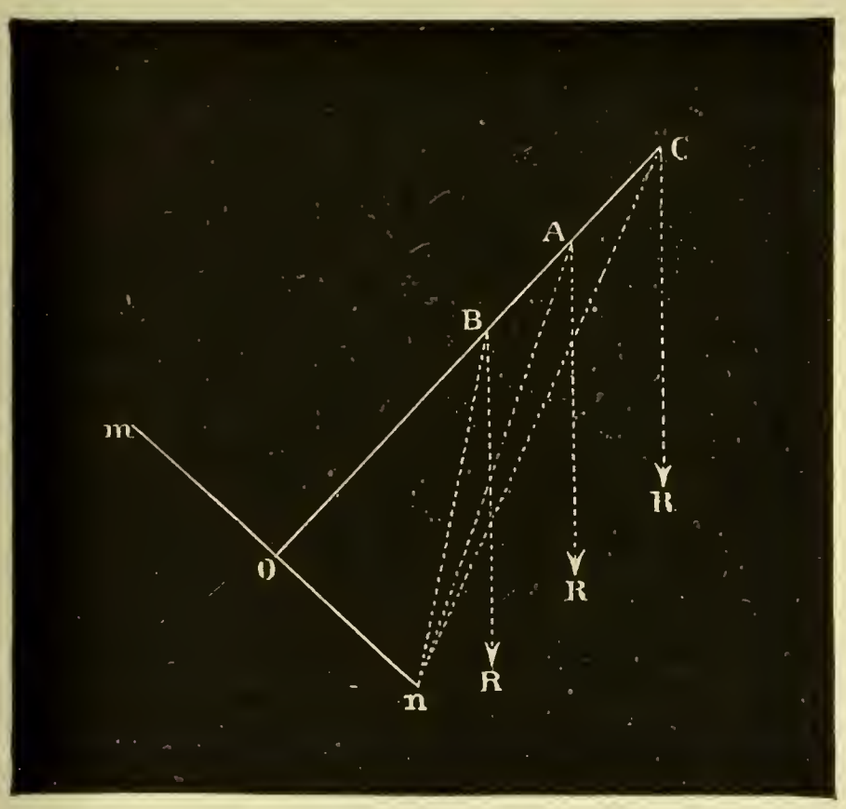


Fig. 33.

let, on the other hand, *OC*, *OA*, and *OB* represent the lengths of the neck gradually decreasing.

1st. When the *length is proportional*, *OA*, it allows a sufficient extension in the movements of the shoulder and in the displacement of the centre of gravity; the head is not too heavy on the bit, and the cervical trunk possesses suppleness and a mean power of mobility. If to this quality be added a good direction and a high carriage, we will find the conditions most favorable for all general services.

The proper length of the neck cannot invariably be determined mathematically, as Bourgelat has pretended when he assigned to it the same length as that of the head. Although this relation may be constant, we find some compensations correcting the errors in the one sense or the other, and altering the external beauty no more than they influence the good qualities of the animal. We will return to this in discussing the *proportions*.

2d. When the neck is too long, *OC*, its greatest disadvantage lies in overburdening the anterior portion of the body and in bringing the centre of gravity too far forward. It frequently becomes defective, besides, by reason of its slender and emaciated appearance. Finally, it renders the head heavy because it increases the length of the lever of this resistance, *CR*.

Nevertheless, nature often brings compensations which remedy the undue length of the neck and give to it the characteristics of a veritable beauty. This consists, first, in its elevated attitude, which does not permit of excessive weight on the anterior quarters, by displacing, to a proper degree, the centre of gravity backward. There is, in consequence, a firm, energetic, and powerful muscularity, which gives sufficient volume and counteracts the slender appearance. The smallness and lightness of the head diminishes the force of the resistance, *R*, in its relation with the abnormal length of the cervical lever. This compensation, joined to a direction approaching the vertical, contributes to render the head lighter on the reins, because the line of gravitation in this case is applied at the extremity of the neck with an incidence more or less acute.

It is useful to remark, also, that the length of the neck denotes a correlative development of the muscles, *Cn*, elevators of the scapulo-humeral angle, and therefore a large extent of contraction and a long swing to the forefoot. The insertion of the muscles on the shoulder being more perpendicular, their action will be for this reason more energetic. In addition, the neck, by lengthening itself, becomes more movable and acquires a greater influence upon the displacement of the centre of gravity. These are its real advantages in the *race-horse*, whose neck is not really *beautiful* unless it is long, very muscular, carried high, and provided with a light head.

3d. Finally, the neck may be too short, *OB*. In this case it presents advantages as well as disadvantages, according to the purposes for which the animal is intended. In driving- and saddle-horses, especially the latter, it lacks suppleness and mobility, is generally thick and massive, and renders the animal less subject to control.

It is essentially defective in the race-horse, because its movements are slow and have but a limited action on the displacements of the centre of gravity. Let us add that the pace lacks amplitude by reason of the defect in the length of the elevator muscles of the shoulder. Horses having short necks owe their speed less to the extent of the movements of the limbs than to their frequent repetition in a given time.

It is not the same in the draught-horse, in which the work is effected altogether by his weight and the energy of his efforts. A short neck can be redeemed by a firm and powerful muscularity, which will furnish a large surface for the support of the collar and will, at the same time, indicate great power. The brevity of the cervical lever will be compensated again by its horizontal tendency, because the elevator muscles of the scapular angle profit by a more perpendicular insertion, without which the anterior displacement of the centre of gravity of the head would overburden too much the anterior members. In a word, the gait will be slow, whilst the energy of the effort will be carried to its maximum if, as we have said, the region has very vigorous muscles.

From the preceding considerations, we must conclude that each kind of service demands a determined length of the neck: that for extreme speed we must have a neck of long dimensions, well carried, and supporting a light head; that for great and powerful efforts we need weight and muscle,—that is to say, a large quantity of contractile elements and these in a voluminous mass; finally, for ordinary speed and energy, the neck should have intermediate proportions.

In all cases it must not be forgotten that between the medium and the extremes there is a whole scale of intermediate forms which are neither excessive nor deficient, and that when the neck attains either extreme there are still certain compensations for it perfectly compatible, if not with absolute beauty, at least with energy and vigor.

Attachments.—Those lines which mark the limits of the superior and the inferior borders of the neck constitute what are called its **attachments.**

À propos of the head, we have already spoken explicitly of the *superior* attachment. We know that there is a slight furrow on the external face of the parotid gland; that the larynx and pharynx are easily lodged in the space between the rami of the inferior maxilla; that the nape of the neck, the parotid gland, and the throat, as a whole, appear to present between the head and the neck a slight constriction, whose rounded and graceful profile enables us to surmise the

perfect freedom of their reciprocal movements. When these conditions are not fulfilled, the head is said to be *plastered on*, or *mal-attached;* its movements are not so easy, as we observe it, more especially in short and thick necks.

"The *inferior* attachments of the neck," says H. Bouley (*loc. cit.*), "should be marked on each side by the slight relief which constitutes the anterior border of the shoulders; on each side of the tracheal border by the angle of union of the jugular gutters converging towards each other above the point of the sternum; finally, towards the withers by a depression in front of the summit of this region, generally not well marked. In these conditions the neck has a *good origin;* it is *well attached.* In other words, it harmonizes with the anterior parts of the trunk, of which it is a continuation. The facts are not the same when the neck is meagre and thin, and its inferior border forms with the chest a very pronounced angle; when the demarcation between it and the shoulders is established in an abrupt and salient manner; when, finally, the depression in front of the withers is deeply marked. In such cases we say that the neck is *mal-attached,* or, better, that it is *stuck into the thorax,* a very striking expression, which conveys an exact idea of this defective conformation."

Since we are speaking of the inferior attachments of the neck, we will describe a peculiarity which is sometimes met with, and to which, for a long time, the name of *cut of the spear* has been given. "The *cut of the spear,*" says Garsault,[1] "is a hollowness quite deep, which is seen in Turkish and Spanish horses at the junction of the neck and the shoulder, sometimes higher and sometimes lower. This is considered as a very good mark, the cause of which is told in a fable, which says that an excellent Turkish stallion received a stab from a spear in that part, and that all his descendants—he having been placed in the stud—inherited this mark of honor."

Lafosse, in his "Dictionnaire d'hippiatrique," observes with truth that this peculiarity is present as often on the left as on the right side, and that it is not hereditary. Special researches have demonstrated that it consists simply in a congenital atrophy of one of the digitations of the angularis muscle of the scapula. The *atrophied* branch leaves a depression which extends to the level of its insertion on the corresponding transverse process of the cervical vertebra.

Movements.—Considered in its relation with the locomotory

---

[1] Garsault, Le nouveau parfait maréchal, 1770.

functions, the neck represents a balance which supports the head at its anterior extremity, and whose displacements carry it upward, downward, backward or forward, and to one side, at the will of the animal. Remarkably mobile, from the fact of the numerous pieces which form its osseous base and the powerful muscles which move them, this balance plays the greatest *rôle* in most of the attitudes taken by the animal machine in movement.

We have already seen its influence upon the stability of the situation of the centre of gravity. (See Experiments of Morris and Baucher, page 6.) This influence is still more apparent when the animal rises, lies down, kicks, prances, walks, trots, gallops, leaps over obstacles, etc. Under all these circumstances the neck is carried first to the side opposite to that part of the body which is to move first; then it liberates successively all those parts which will continue this movement or terminate it. Its displacements are always proportional to those of the entire body; very quickly depressed in kicking, elevated in prancing, moving from side to side in walking, and forward and backward in the gallop. When the movement has a certain degree of uniformity, and is accompanied with great speed in a straight line, the neck acquires then a relative fixity after being extended forward enough to induce the members to move with a celerity in accordance with the rapidity of the gait. We see this, for example, in the fast trot or the gallop.

Some important practical deductions can be drawn from these facts, which may be employed in directing horses, as well as in equestrianism.

If the rider desires the horse to move the left anterior foot when it is in repose, it is only necessary to make traction and urge him forward in such a manner as to increase the weight on the right fore member. If it be desirable to make him change the feet while he is galloping, it is only necessary to disburden this or that member by drawing the neck to the opposite side. If the animal be required to leap over an obstacle, the neck is raised to facilitate the half-prance which precedes the leap. If, on the contrary, the object be to prevent him from falling on his knees, the head is forcibly raised in order to prevent the centre of gravity from being displaced outside of the base of support.

It will be sufficient for us to point out a few instances, in order to demonstrate the importance of the cervical region in the various movements, so that we may be able to apply them intelligently in practice.

Diseases and Blemishes.—The *blemishes* of the neck are *cicatrices*, which have, according to their situation, different significations. We observe them

ordinarily on the lateral faces, along the course of the jugular gutter, and on the borders.

On the lateral faces there are sometimes traces of *setons*, which occupy the superior third of its length. These are very significant, because they indicate that the animal has been treated for disease of the eyes, the nasal sinuses, or the encephalon, as vertigo.

Along the course of the jugular vein there are *traces of firing* and *linear cicatrices*, which suggest that the horse has been affected with inflammation of the jugular vein, or that he has undergone a serious operation in this region. It is important, then, to determine if one of these veins is not *obliterated*. To ascertain this it is sufficient to make pressure with the thumb over its course at the inferior part of the neck, in order to prevent the blood from descending towards the heart. The slight shake of the hand will reflect the waves of the column of blood to the upper extremity of the gutter when the vein is intact. The contrary effect will show that the vessel is obliterated and the circulation is re-established by collateral vessels. If the obliteration exists only in one of the jugulars, the inconvenience is not so great, because the circulation is still sufficiently active through the one of the opposite side. When, however, the obstruction exists on both sides, the animal is unfit to perform rapid service, because the collateral veins are insufficient for the afferent circulation, and congestion of the component parts of the head is the consequence. Moreover, the jugular vein being the vessel selected for phlebotomy, we are not able, under this circumstance, to have recourse to it in cases of emergency.

Very frequently the bleedings, of which one of the veins has been the seat, leave their trace on the skin. A very small longitudinal cicatrix indicates the spot where the tissues have been involved by the fleam of the operator. At other times these traces are more apparent, manifesting themselves by varicose dilations, simple or multiple, along the course of the vein, at the level of the places where it had been punctured. This condition is called *varicose*.

Along the **inferior border** we recognize cicatrices resulting from tracheotomy,—that is to say, the artificial opening of the trachea for the prevention of asphyxia when the natural air-passages are occluded or have an inadequate calibre. It is necessary, in a case like this, to exercise the animal in every possible way to determine whether he is or is not a *roarer*. A horse that carries a tracheal tube permanently will almost completely lose his value, and should not be purchased.

We observe, also, along the inferior border of the neck, surfaces flattened from before to behind, arising from fractures of the cartilaginous rings of the trachea, or from a congenital deformity of the conduit, which infringe on its sides, and always diminish, in the same proportion, its internal calibre. Occasionally, difficulty of respiration arises in consequence of this affection, and we should fully satisfy ourselves as to the manner in which respiration is effected in horses with such a deformity.

Finally, the superior border of the neck may present *cicatrices* following deep abscesses with necrosis of the nuchal ligament, a disease which requires a long time to recover from, and which should never be passed unobserved. These blemishes are ordinarily occasioned by the use of a collar too small or improperly fitted.

From the same causes appear *calluses* and *corns* along the anterior border of the shoulder, or in the vicinity of the superior border of the neck.

The **diseases** of the neck are affections of the skin, as *surfeit* and *mange* along its superior border; inflammation of the jugular veins, *thrombi* and *phlebitis;* lesions of the œsophagus and trachea; inflammation of the lymphatic vessels, *lymphangitis*, followed by knotted indurations along the course of the vessels; and, finally, *lesions of the cervical ligament.*

We cannot enter into long details in this connection without going beyond our province. Suffice it to say, that most of these diseases continue a long time, and are difficult to eradicate, on account of the situation, the structure, and the movements of the region in which they are found.

The Mane and the Forelock.

Situation; Limits.—The *mane* and the *forelock* are formed by the horse-hairs which occupy the superior border of the neck and extend forward to the superior extremity of the head between the ears, and backward to the withers.

a. The **mane** is to the neck of the horse, says H. Bouley (*loc. cit.*), what the capital is to the column which it surmounts; it beautifies the neck by concealing, under its undulating tufts, the angularity of the superior border, and thus gives to the latter a more graceful aspect.

Its abundance varies according to the race, the sex, the age, the state of the genital organs, and the animal himself. In well-bred horses and in foals it is fine, silky, and not abundant, while it is coarse, long, and stiff in common horses and most plentiful in adults. Thus, it appears more bushy in the stallion than in the gelding or in the mare. This state of the mane and its color denote nothing absolute and have very little signification In this respect the individual differences are so numerous that all inferences as to the peculiarities of the animal's character thus deduced are uncertain as well as delusive.

We habitually separate, with the scissors, the mane from the forelock at the level of the nape of the neck, where the head-stall of the bridle rests.

The mane is said to be *single* when all the hairs which compose it fall on one side of the neck, regardless of their length. In saddle-horses it is turned towards the left side so that the rider may seize it in mounting the horse. In the case of draught-horses, which invariably occupy the same position relative to the pole, the one attached on the left side (near horse) has the mane on that side; the one on the right side (off horse) carries it on the right side. This detail, however, is often neglected.

The mane is *double* when naturally parted in the middle, one-half falling to the right and the other half to the left side. Thus, being

exposed in the centre, it is soiled by particles of fodder and dust. It is difficult to preserve cleanliness, and the parts become the seat of such affections as herpes and psoriasis, which persist with so much tenacity that it is sometimes impossible to eradicate them completely.

In their natural condition, as we have already mentioned, the hairs fall from their own weight. They are in certain cases cut so as to assume an erect direction and form a sort of crest on the median line, outlining the convexity of the neck more distinctly and making the latter appear heavier. Such is the custom with ponies and small horses, and particularly those in which the neck is reversed, with the view of rendering its appearance more agreeable to the eye. To-day this is the fashion even in the teams of the wealthy.

Among the ancients it appears to have been the custom to cut the mane as a sign of mourning. To render it thicker and longer, the Arabs of Algeria, according to Vallon,[1] also employed this method for from one to four years, and sometimes even throughout the life of the animal.

The hairs of the mane, like those of the tail, are ordinarily straight. One of our associates, Mercier, has communicated a remark on this subject, which was also believed by the Arabians: that it is in the white or gray horses with frizzled or curly hairs in which melanotic tumors are always found in the interior of the body, although none may have any apparent trace on the exterior, particularly under the tail and around the anus. This remark, the correctness of which we have verified a number of times, both on the living subject and in the cadaver, is very important because of the dangers to which animals affected with melanosis are predisposed.

There are neither *diseases* nor *blemishes* of the mane. It is therefore erroneous to attribute to this appendage what properly belongs to the superior border of the neck.

b. The **forelock** is nothing more, properly speaking, than the superior extremity of the mane. It consists of a tuft of hairs varying in length with the animal and the race, which escapes between the ears in floating meshes, overshadowing the forehead and the eyes. Ordinarily, in the English thoroughbred horse it is light, fine, and silky. In the Arabian horse it is, on the contrary, long and heavy. In common horses it is long and coarse. Like the mane, it may be *single* or *double.* All proportions being preserved, it is most developed in Oriental horses. At the same time that it is an ornament to the

[1] Vallon, Cours d'hippologie, tome i. p. 330.

head, it protects the eyes from insects and excess of light. It acts, perhaps, also as a protection to the organs contained within the cranial cavity against the solar rays, and in horses much exposed to the sun its removal is injudicious.

The mane and the forelock sometimes attain extraordinary dimensions. We have seen *well-bred* and *common* horses in which the former descended to the level of the knees and the latter to the inferior extremity of the nose. With certain exceptions, these appendages are not allowed to reach so great a length; they are dressed by means of a comb or a brush. Sometimes it is desirable to render the mane, which was primitively double, single. This may be accomplished by removing a portion of the hairs by extracting them with the curry-comb and continually brushing those remaining to the same side, the right or the left, as may be desired, according to the fancy of the owner. If, instead of proceeding as we have just indicated, scissors were employed to remove the superabundant hairs, these would again grow and remain straight. We have known a horse which, in consequence of the want of skill of the person who had arranged the mane, had the latter falling to the right, while on the left the hairs were upright like a brush, giving them a very ungraceful appearance.

B.—The Withers.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **withers** comprise a single region situated on the superior face of the trunk, behind the *crest of the neck*, in front of the *back*, and between the two *shoulders*.

This region has for its anatomical base the five or six dorsal vertebræ which follow the first. Their summits, enlarged and tuberous, support a nucleus of permanent cartilage, to which are attached the corresponding portions of the nuchal and dorso-lumbar ligaments, very much widened.

On each side are the cartilages of prolongation of the scapula, and the muscles to which it gives attachment. The spinous processes offer a large surface laterally for the attachment of the trapezius, the rhomboideus, the splenius, the great and small complexi, the small anterior serrated, the ilio-spinalis, and the transverse spinous muscles, arranged in so many superposed layers.

The anatomical complexity and elevated situation of the withers afford an explanation of the gravity of wounds and diseases of this locality. The superposition of the muscles allows of easy filtration of pus into the surrounding parts.

Beauties and Defects.—The **beauties** of the withers reside in the *form*, *elevation*, *extent*, and *freedom from blemishes* thereof.

1. **Form.**—This qualification indicates that they should be well outlined, and that the summit should be formed only by the tissues which

constitute their essential base. As H. Bouley[1] remarks, the superior border, under this definition, should alone present the inert parts, as the bones and ligaments. At the base, on the contrary, the thickness denotes a large development of the muscles which separate it from the internal face of the scapular cartilages.

The abundance of the subcutaneous and interstitial connective tissue, the volume and non-compactness of the muscles, as well as the development of the muscular system in general, are the principal factors in the production of the lateral diameter of the region. Let us add, also, that it always has this aspect in an ordinary degree when its prominence over the surrounding parts (shoulder and back) is not very marked. Such withers are called *coarse*, *thick*, and *low*. They are found in horses with great assimilative powers, thick skin, stiff and coarse hairs, abundant connective tissue, voluminous and flabby muscles, lymphatic temperament, and strong and massive forms.

On the other hand, an ordinary stature, a slender, fine, and distinguished form, prominence of all the external anatomical eminences, a fine skin, an energetic nature, and dense and firm muscles always accompany well-defined withers. This form is the most desirable; it indicates the race, the temperament, and, in a word, the distinction of origin, and all the qualities of the animal so characterized.

When the latter peculiarity is extreme, the withers are called **sharp**. This conformation, which is often seen as a consequence of emaciation from old age or excessive labor, is an attribute of those animals which become very lean when subjected to severe work, and accompanies a general deficiency of muscular development. As Vallon[2] has remarked, it is particularly defective in cavalry horses, for it exacts the use of a very narrow and elevated arcade of the saddle in front, differing much from the ordinary model, and which is not always at our disposal in a campaign. Such animals are difficult and expensive to harness, give the rider an uncomfortable position, and are exposed to traumatisms of this region from the pressure of the saddle during a long march. They necessitate the continued observation of the veterinarian and those who mount them.

2. **Height and Extent.**—The examination of the **height** is not less interesting from the double relation of its utilization and its direction. Writers are not in accord as to the exact sense which should be attached to the word *height* when applied to the withers. In the

---

[1] H. Bouley, Nouveau Dictionnaire pratique de médecine, de chirurgie et d'hygiène vétérinaires, t. viii. p. 72.

[2] Vallon, Cours d'hippologie, t. i. p. 339.

first edition of this book we have wrongfully considered that the height of the withers should be viewed from their elevation in relation to the croup and the adjacent parts.

In view of the criticism which this opinion has received, we recognize to-day that the relative height of the croup is not germane to the subject which we now have under consideration, but to the respective heights of the anterior and the posterior extremities of the body. We will discuss this in the chapter on *proportions*, as to the dimensions of the body as a whole (see *Height and length of the body; Horses high and low in front*).

By the *height of the withers* should be meant, therefore, only the height of the eminence formed by this part of the body above the adjoining regions, such as the shoulders, the back, and the superior border of the neck. By **extent** we are to understand the total dimensions of the withers antero-posteriorly; in a word, the degree in which it is prolonged towards the region of the back. This circumstance, dependent in a large measure upon the length and inclination of the spinous processes, necessarily enables the latter to play the part of the long arms of the levers of the extensor muscles of the vertebral column, and is therefore a favorable condition for the development of speed.

The *height* or *elevation* of the withers depends, on the contrary, upon several diverse causes, which we must determine. Among them we mention:

a. The *well-defined form*, or the *thickness*, of which we have already spoken, which concur to modify the obliquity of the lateral faces in consequence of either the lowness or the prominence of the entire region, as the case may be.

b. The *length* and *obliquity* of the shoulder, which tends to cover, to an extent more or less considerable, the sides of the apophyses of the first dorsal vertebra.

c. The *absolute length* and *vertical direction* of these processes, which, by their summits, exceed to a variable extent the border of the scapular cartilages.

d. Finally, the *mode of suspension of the thorax* between the anterior members, the effect of which is to produce a more or less marked projection of the summits of the spinous processes above the superior border of the shoulders.

The age, the sex, and the state of the genital organs have equally their influence. Poorly delineated in the foal and the young animal, the withers become more prominent towards the fifth, sixth, or seventh

year, the period when the bones have attained their full length and the body its complete development. In the mare it is less prominent than in the gelding or the stallion. In the latter, however, in which the anterior portion of the body is more extensively developed, it appears usually *thick*, *muscular*, *low*, and *effaced*.

The relative influence of all these causes it is easy to comprehend. One may operate alone or several may be combined, and the height of this region should not be attributed exclusively to one alone, as the *sole length of the spinous processes*, for example, which hippotomists until the present time have asserted without offering any proof to substantiate the claim. Taking cognizance of this relation, we have endeavored to prove, by numerous researches upon the living animal and the cadaver, that this opinion is well founded. It is true that we have frequently found an excess of the length of the spinous process of the fifth dorsal vertebra (the culminating point of the region) in horses with high withers, but we have also, all things being equal otherwise, none the less often seen this process only equal to and even shorter than the others. Moreover, we can affirm that this excess of length is not uncommonly met with in horses in which the region appears depressed.

The spinous processes are, therefore, subject to great variations in animals not dissimilar in appearance These variations may attain five centimetres in the one case or the other.

It becomes evident, then, that other influences must assist in the determination of the prominence of the withers. They are those which we have enumerated above. Among them the most important, doubtless, is that which refers to the *mode of suspension of the thorax between the anterior members*. As to this assertion, our researches leave not the least doubt. We daily meet horses which have the same length of the ribs, the shoulder, and the spinous processes, the same inclination of these processes and the scapula, and the same state of muscular development, in which, nevertheless, the summit of the withers does not, to the same degree, project beyond the top of the shoulder. How can we explain this fact, unless it be due to differences in the degree of the elevation of the trunk in its attachment to the anterior extremities? As a proof of this enunciation it has been ascertained, in similar instances, that the distance from the inferior surface of the thorax to the ground augments in direct ratio with the projection of the spinous processes above the scapular cartilages.

Let us remark, in passing, that in practice it is almost impossible to establish the relative *rôle* which is exercised by the one or the other

of these causes to which the height of the withers owes its variations; whether it be due to the length and vertical position of the apophyses or to the lowering of the thorax. But what is well demonstrated by experience is that the best type of withers in a horse is that which is as salient and as much prolonged backward as possible; especially if the horse be expected to perform service at a rapid pace,[1] and also for work under the saddle.

It is not very important to determine the real cause of the prominence of the withers. What is essential to know is that increased height in most instances means a lengthening of the arm of the lever of the spinal and cervical muscles and an increased freedom of movement of the anterior extremity of the body, two conditions, either of which favors the muscular contraction and movements of the anterior limbs, the rotation of the scapula, and, consequently, the movements of extension and flexion. These reasons suffice to justify the preference which is accorded to this conformation.

It is well known that horses with *low* and *thick* withers have ordinarily insufficient action and too much clumsiness of the movements of the fore limbs. The shoulder rotates but little, the animal is predisposed to *forging* and *interfering*, and is unfit for service at a rapid gait. He supports the head insufficiently and is heavy on the bit.

Apart from the foregoing objections, there is still another factor which aggravates this defect. This is the difficulty of maintaining the saddle in place, it having a constant tendency to slide forward and to make direct pressure on and bruise the tissues underneath. Hence result wounds and inflammatory affections, the effects of which are so often incurable. The use of the crupper is an insufficient preventive against such lesions, and may itself become a cause of pathological conditions, from its continued traction at the base of the tail.

Let us close by saying that *beauty of the withers* not only involves the mechanical advantages which we have already considered, but it is also a sign of the *noble qualities* and the *distinction* of its possessor. It endows the surrounding regions with other important qualities, such as are indicated by the length of the shoulder and the height of the chest, and thus presents itself as one of the essential qualifications of this locality. Whenever the chest is deep, and the shoulders long and oblique, it is clearly recognized that the withers are elevated, well attached, and extended well backward, the general harmony presuming that, in most instances, the development of one of the elements of an

[1] This is not invariable. Among our speediest trotters we find some in which the withers are *high*, and others in which they are *low*. (Harger.)

anatomical region coexists with that of the others, whatever may be their number. With respect to the horse, however, it is necessary to guard ourselves against such an absolute generalization; it is essential to remember that the shoulder or the thorax can give this region a prominence in which the withers do not really assume that importance which might be supposed from a point of view of the exterior. Such, at least, have been the deductions made from our own observations.

Diseases and Blemishes.—The withers, in consequence of their prominence, situation, and anatomical complexity, are exposed to numerous lesions of variable gravity. Blows, chafing, bruises, and bites are among the causes which may lead to swellings, wounds, or abscesses with profound complications of necrosis and caries of the bones, the muscles, and the ligaments. These affections, known under the generic name of *evils of the withers*, render themselves apparent, in the majority of instances, by an extraordinary exaggeration of the sensibility, abnormal enlargement of the part, cicatrices, or fistulous tracts discharging pus, which leave their evidence by soiling and decorticating the adjacent skin.

Horses in such a condition are not rarely offered for sale, and we know of two instances in which the dealer cleverly concealed the tumefaction and the fistula, of which it was the seat, with a blanket.

It is more common to meet animals which offer accidental white markings or cicatrices more or less large, where the skin is denuded, thin, and more easily excoriated by the contact of the harness. The presence of these cicatrices furnishes, besides, the evidence of a pre-existing disease implicating the muscles or the bones of the withers and the shoulder, which may result in some irregularity of the gait. They have an important bearing in an examination for soundness in the purchase of horses.

Other blemishes may also result from the application of blisters or the actual cautery. They have their principal value, however, when the affection for the cure of which they have been applied has not yet disappeared. Such diseases are liable to return or become augmented under the persistent action of the causes which produced them.

3. The **freedom from blemishes**, in a general way, as related to the physiological appearance, is, therefore, as indispensable to our study as the form, the elevation, or the extent.

C.—The Back.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—This single region, situated on the superior part of the trunk, is limited anteriorly by the *withers*, posteriorly by the *loins*, and laterally by the *ribs* (*sides*).

It has for its osseous base the eleven or twelve posterior dorsal vertebræ and the superior extremity of the corresponding ribs. These bones give attachment to the different muscles which fill the costo-vertebral grooves,—the great dorsal, the small anterior and posterior serrated, the ilio-spinalis, the transverse spinous, and the intercostals.

Its uses are of primary importance, because it receives the saddle and the weight of the rider. It transmits to the anterior part of the body the efforts of propulsion, which are communicated through the loins by the posterior limbs. The back therefore fulfils, by its conformation, diverse requirements which we will describe.

Direction.—The back may present several **directions.** It is *straight* when it describes almost a horizontal line from before to behind. A straight back is a sign of great strength, for all the weight which the region supports is borne by the bones and tends to efface the rachidian arch. The saddle will, in this conformation, rest in a good position.

The back is *convex* (or the animal is *roach-backed*) when it is slightly arched, prominent, and sharp near the region of the loins. Such a conformation increases the conditions of solidity to external pressure, in which the preceding form is deficient, on account of this arch being exaggerated. It is incorrect to associate this condition with flat ribs and a narrow chest. Convexity increases the reactions of the back and shortens the gaits of the animal. The constituting vertebræ in this disposition are related in such a manner that all pressure made upon them from above to below is supported more by the bones than by the ligaments which unite them, whence less elasticity and flexibility in executing its various functions. The convex back, besides, is generally shorter than the other forms, and does not permit sufficient freedom to the extension and flexion of the posterior members in taking long and rapid steps. It is therefore a contra-indication of rapid locomotion. Horses in which it is observed are predisposed to *forging;* that is to say, the fore and hind feet touch each other when their speed is increased.

The convex back, for these reasons, is a defect in saddle- and driving-horses; in those performing, on the contrary, slow and heavy work, it is of no consequence.

When the dorsal region is *concave* from before to behind, the animal is designated as *sway-backed* or *hollow-backed.* This conformation, *congenital* or *acquired,* is more faulty than the preceding, and any load borne upon it tends to efface the arch formed by the vertebræ of this region. Instead of the latter offering a resistance, from their mutual contact, to the weight which they support, such weight is almost entirely sustained by the ligaments. This fact makes the vertebral column become rectilinear or, when exaggerated, convex along its inferior border. The ligaments which maintain the dorsal arch normally are therefore submitted to constant traction during service, particularly if a weight be superadded to that of the viscera. We have often observed in old horses more or less voluminous exostoses disposed in a

series along the common inferior vertebral ligament. In our opinion, these should be attributed to the violent and continuous pressure of the saddle or the harness. If this be true, it is easily perceived that these excrescences on the body of the vertebræ are most common in animals which, instead of having this region straight, have it strongly concave.

The first ill effect of this concavity is an overtaxing of the vertebral ligaments due to the displacement of the bones,—a condition which communicates to the rachidian column a greater flexibility than is physiological. The result is that the transmission of the impulsive action of the hind limbs communicated to the anterior part of the body is incomplete. The region lacks sufficient rigidity, and a certain part of the force is wasted, to the detriment of the speed, since its effect is to deviate the vertebræ from their normal rectitude.

Sway-backed horses are not adapted to work which exacts much force and resistance of the back. They cannot be employed as hunters, runners, or cavalry horses, but should be reserved to draw vehicles, one with four wheels being preferred.

With M. Bouley[1] we believe, nevertheless, that it is necessary to discriminate between a real concavity of this region and that which is only apparent,—a condition sometimes existing in horses capable of the greatest exertion. The latter *appears* to be due to a concavity of the superficial surface of the back alone, to a peculiar curvature formed by the series of spinous processes, which may be shorter in the middle of this region than in front or behind. It is a veritable anatomical anomaly. In this case the arch of the vertebræ themselves is in a normal condition and fulfils all its functions. This remark should consequently be taken into account, and a positive judgment should not be expressed unless the proof is apparent.

It has also been said of horses thus formed that the reaction of the back is less hard than that of the average horse,—a fact which has recommended them to favor as saddle-horses. Some authors, as Curnieu, Eugene Gayot, and Vallon, assert that this last fact is due to a different order of phenomena, which lead to a suppleness and ease of the movements. These result, in this view, not from any peculiar condition of one region alone, but from the conformation of the body as a whole. The latter interpretation is true, but it does not destroy the validity of the other. One isolated cause may produce the same effect as several others combined.

---

[1] H. Bouley, Nouveau Dictionnaire pratique de médecine, de chirurgie et d'hygiène vétérinaires, t. v. p. 130.

We believe that the more flexible and elastic the vertebral column is the more it will disperse the effects of concussion from violent exertion or accidents. The back will at any time lose this quality as soon as the alternative efforts which elevate and depress it are enacted in an irregular manner. Let us recall the regular movements of the rope-dancer; nothing more graceful and of better rhythm. But would they have the same rhythmical character if, for example, he attempted to jump without regularity upon his rope? Evidently not!

This comparison applies to a certain degree to our subject. In locomotion the weight of the body, whenever it touches its base of support, calls into activity the elasticity of the vertebral column, which describes oscillations whose amplitude is proportional to its elasticity, its degree of tension, and the energy of muscular contraction. If, for one reason or other, these oscillations are excessive, whenever the feet come into contact with the surface upon which the animal moves, an evident antagonism of forces will result, leading to a succession of rebounds, which render the reactions still more exaggerated, even more so than if the back had an opposite conformation. Here is, we think, the cause of the divergence of opinions which we have spoken of.

Horses of this type frequently have very feeble reaction when their gait is rhythmical and perfectly regular, as in the ordinary trot or the gallop; but the reactions become marked as soon as the oscillations of the vertebral column cease to be in accord with the movements of the foot in touching the ground, as in trotting or running at great speed.

Sometimes the line of the back is oblique from above to below, and behind to before, instead of being horizontal, concave, or convex. Such a form is called *dipped*. This direction, due to a more or less marked elevation of the croup above the withers, entails an unequal distribution of the body-weight upon the four extremities. The centre of gravity is carried towards the fore limbs, increasing by so much the weight which they support. We shall hereafter have something further to add in respect to the objections which exist with regard to this type of structure when we come to treat of the axial measurements of the body.

Form.—In horses whose muscular system is very highly developed, there exists on the median line of the back a longitudinal line or furrow, which is slightly surmounted laterally by the environing parts on account of the volume of the muscles situated in the costo-vertebral gutters. This characteristic marks that kind of back which is called *double*. It is a peculiarity observed in heavy and well-muscled animals whose chest is wide, the back somewhat concave, and the withers low.

Many subjects which present it at the time of purchase may not

retain it throughout their whole life. Under the influence of the work to which the animal has been submitted, and poor and innutritious alimentation, the double back often becomes single and the muscular organization in general loses its volume and its high degree of development.

Conversely, the crest of the back becomes prominent and stands out in relief over the surrounding muscles in subjects emaciated from the ravages of age, or in those of a certain natural conformation whose chest is narrow, the back slightly convex, the withers high, and the muscles less voluminous. In the latter form the region is predisposed to become *sharp*, and is more exposed to wounds from the saddle or the harness.

Length.—The *length* of the back is in relation with the depth of the chest and the rapidity of the gait. Its measurement, which requires some judgment, is usually combined with that of the loins. The typical back is regarded as equal in length to the distance between the dorsal angle of the scapula and the external angle of the ilium or the haunch. The determination of how much of this distance belongs to the loins is of little practical utility, but it should be as small as possible. A *long back* implies a corresponding length of the thoracic cavity whose superior wall it forms. We know that it is indispensable to seek, for any kind of work, those anatomical dispositions which imply the development of the respiratory apparatus. Such development requires a proper separation of the anterior from the posterior members; and this separation is in relation with rapidity of locomotion, in that it is the expression of the length of the muscles which pass from the trunk to the superior part of the limbs, as the psoas, great dorsal, and pectoral; also of those which occupy the costo-vertebral gutters, whose function is the extension and propulsion of the vertebral column. Again, it enlarges the base of support and leaves a sufficiently large area underneath the trunk, circumscribed by the four feet, for the movements of the posterior limbs. The latter are thus less liable to come in contact with each other, and so to produce that disagreeable sound called *forging*.

These advantages, however, are often diminished by the following associated imperfections, which the shortness of the loins cannot always rectify.

The dorsal column being long, tends to alter its direction under the impetus received from the posterior extremities during the movements of progression. A certain part of this impulsive force is therefore necessarily lost at the expense of propulsion. Further, from the augmented flexibility and diminished solidity of the vertebral column,

its depression, to an exaggerated degree, is rendered more easy, and the back may even become concave under the pressure of excessive weight. Long-backed horses are more predisposed than others to fracture of the vertebræ during surgical operations in the recumbent position.

As to the **short** back, it presents the elements of great strength and solidity, transmits the action of the hind limbs with greater force, and rarely becomes sway-backed ; but, conversely, it lacks flexibility of movement, diminishes the capacity of the thoracic cavity, and limits the play of the posterior limbs. The animal is predisposed to *forging* as soon as he is obliged to lengthen his steps, unless the loins, by an excess of length, preserve the required proportions of the dorso-lumbar region as a whole. Under these circumstances this defect is apt to be obscured by one that is more grave, as we shall see further on.

Most authors who have written of this subject pretend that shortness of the back constitutes its first beauty. H. Bouley[1] has very judiciously asserted that this proposition is too absolute. A very short back is not desirable except in animals destined to carry heavy weights, as the shaft-horse, the pack-horse, the mule, the ass, and the saddle-horse. In the last, from which speed is exacted, a deficiency in the length of the chest should be compensated by the arching of the ribs and their increased projection backward. As to the diminished stride of the legs, it may be redeemed by the multiplicity and rapidity of their movements. An elevated carriage of the head, throwing the weight upon the hind and liberating the fore limbs, tends to prevent forging. Moreover, by judicious handling, the short-backed saddle-horse can be taught, little by little, to elevate the anterior members quickly enough and sufficiently far in advance, so that they will not be touched by the posterior.

The same considerations are applicable to animals other than saddle-horses, in which a long back would be deemed preferable, with the presumption that the dorso-lumbar spine be well directed and strongly muscled.

Width.—The **width** is also one of the qualities of the back to be considered. It is in relation with the transverse diameter of the chest and the volume of the ilio-spinalis muscles. When the back is *narrow*, the ribs are often flat, the thoracic cavity deficient in space or volume, the spinal crest too prominent, and the parts are predisposed to wounds and abrasions from the harness or the saddle. Thus narrowness of the back, for these reasons, may become a positive defect.

---

[1] H. Bouley, loc. cit., art. "Dos."

Diseases and Blemishes.—Various lesions resulting from a defective pattern or vicious application of the harness or the saddle are sometimes observed in this region. Such are denudations, excoriations, bruises, corns, cysts, abscesses, and fistulæ which exist on the median line, or the lateral parts. Their gravity varies according to position and the anatomical structures of the parts involved. Cure is difficult in proportion to their closeness to the median line. Benign as they may appear at the beginning, there is always danger of complications which may prevent the animal from working for several months. The presence of cicatrices or of white hairs are the indelible evidences which follow lesions of this nature. Finally, we sometimes find the marks of blisters or of the actual cautery, which will indicate that the animal has been treated for some one of these diseases.

D.—The Loins.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—This symmetrical region, situated behind the *back* and in front of the *croup* and the *haunches*, and limited on each side by the *flank*, has for its base the six lumbar vertebræ (sometimes only five), whose costiform processes continue posteriorly the costo-vertebral gutter. This gutter is covered by the transverse spinous and the ilio-spinalis muscles, the anterior extremity of the gluteal muscle, and the aponeurosis of the great dorsal muscle.

We will examine this region as to its *length, width, form, direction,* and *attachments.*

Width.—The **width** of the loins is directly proportional to the development of the costiform apophyses of the lumbar vertebræ, and corresponds in some degree with that of the muscles named above. A wide loin is regarded as a feature of absolute beauty.

Length.—Whatever may be the work the animal is destined to perform, the loins should be as short as possible, a condition of solidity important to recognize, because the lumbar vertebræ have no support laterally, being simply articulated the one with the other. Its *shortness* also favors the transmission of the impetus given by the posterior limbs, because it lessens the elasticity and mobility of the structures through which the force of impulsion must pass. As to the relation of the entire length of the dorso-lumbar region, the back should be *long* and the loins *short,* especially in saddle- and pack-horses. This point cannot be impressed too strongly.

Form.—As in the back, the **form** of the loins is dependent mainly upon that of the muscles. The median line is indicated by a crest or a gutter. In the former case, they are *single,* and should be well muscled; in the latter, they are *double.* When the crest is very high, the loins are called *sharp,* which is a sign of weakness and feeble resistance.

Direction.—As to their direction, the loins are usually *straight,* and their *convexity* is observed only in old horses, or in those abused

by excessive labor, in which the spinal column has been injured by the weight and muscular traction which the region has sustained. In gravely-diseased animals they are often arched and have lost suppleness.

Attachments.—The loins should become insensibly united to the croup and the back. When they are mal-attached, there exists in front of the former a depression of variable depth, which gives them such names as *low*, *weak*, *false*, and *dipped*. Besides, they are often *long*, *narrow*, and *feeble*, peculiarities detracting from their strength.

Examination.—At all times, in conducting an examination of the horse, veterinarians are in the habit of pressing on the loins to determine by their flexibility the state of the health of the subject.

This practice should be executed with some precautions. Taking a position at the side of the animal, with the back towards his head, the hand is passed downward over the back, and the loins are pinched on the median line by making gentle pressure with the thumb and index finger. Under this influence the animal, when in a state of health, will extend the spine, or *flinch*. In those suffering from weakness or certain *few* diseases of this region, as osteoporosis, or in those of a nervous temperament, the sensitiveness may be much exaggerated. In horses suffering from fever or some other diseases, the region will remain perfectly rigid. In a general way, its sensitiveness affords an index of the health of the animal. Certain nervous subjects will resist this manipulation by biting or kicking; in order to avoid this, the head should be raised and the position of the clinician should not be too close to the body. Others will yield to the first attempt, but resist a repetition by stiffening the parts.

Diseases and Blemishes.—The *wounds* of this region are of the same nature as those of the back. They result nearly always from a misfitting harness or its improper application. The posterior part of the saddle frequently bears on the origin of the loins and wounds them on the median line. These wounds are always painful and slow to cicatrize, and may prevent the animal from working for a long period. In olden times they were designated under the name *evils of the loins*.

Strain of the loins, which is sometimes observed, is a much more grave affection, but we will speak of it under *the defects of the gait*.

It manifests itself as a great weakness of the posterior quarters, which is most apparent during locomotion, and renders its victim unfit for active service.

The **blemishes** are traces of blisters or the firing-iron, more or less extensive, proving an old cauterization for a serious disease, principally strain of the loins. There may also be excoriations, white markings in horses of a dark color, or cicatrices of the same nature as those which we have indicated in the region of the back.

E.—The Croup.

Situation; Limits.—The **croup** is a single region situated on the median line of the superior surface of the body. It is bounded in front by the *loins*, behind by the *tail*, and on each side by the *thigh* and the superior part of the buttock.

Although, from an anatomical and physiological point of view, the croup constitutes the first segment of the abdominal limb, yet, on account of its close relationship with the other parts of the back, we prefer to regard it, for our present purpose, as the terminal portion of the trunk giving attachment to the hind limbs. Solidly united with the vertebral column by bones and muscles, it helps to form the periphery of the pelvic cavity. Accordingly, we shall not, in this discussion, separate it from the other regions of the body with which it is so intimately associated.

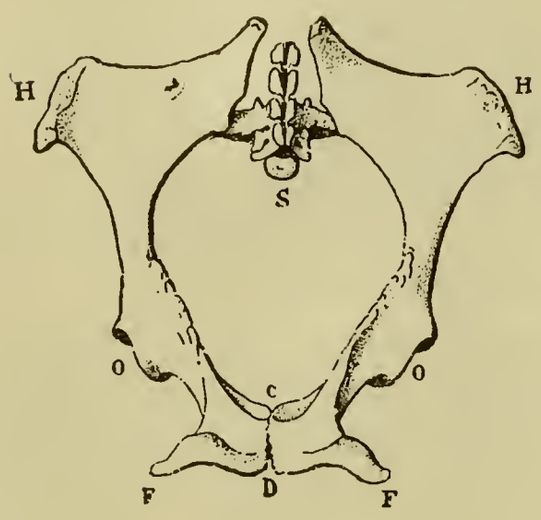


FIG. 34.

Anatomical Base.—It has for its base the two coxæ, *HF* (Fig. 34), firmly united on the median line, *CD;* anteriorly they articulate with the borders of the sacrum, *S*, and are immovable excepting for a certain amount of elasticity. These bones are covered by a large mass of muscles, some of which extend to the femur and to the tibia. On the side is the coxo-femoral articulation, *O*, in which the head of the femur takes part, and which supports this region upon the posterior members.

Considered from a point of view of animal mechanics, the coxa can be represented (Fig. 35) by a bent lever, *HOF*, composed of two arms: the one anterior, *HO*, formed by the *ilium*, extending from the external angle of the haunch, *H*, to the centre of the coxo-femoral articulation, *O;* the other, *OF*, formed by the *ischium*, extends from the centre of the hip-joint to the ischiatic tuberosity or the point of the buttock, *F*.

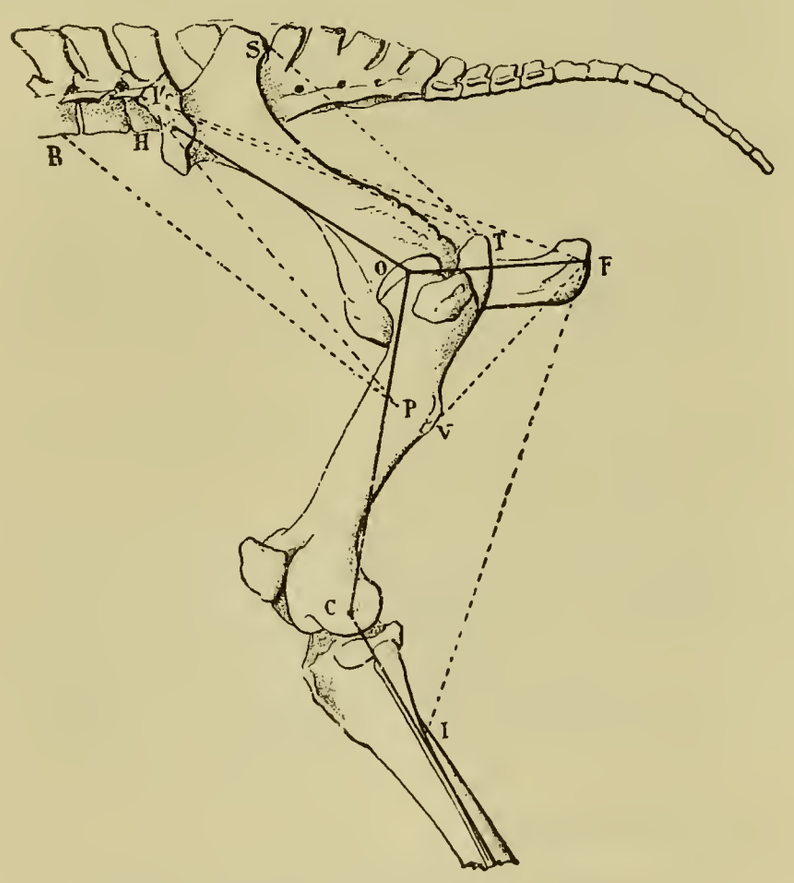


FIG. 35.

These two bones form a a very obtuse angle, *HOF*, whose mean extent, as determined by our researches, is from 140 to 145 degrees, but which may vary ten degrees in either direction, according to the individual. We will call it the *ilio-ischial angle.*

It rests by its summit, *O*, upon the head of the femur, at an inclination varying according to the individual; sometimes it is inclined forward, and then the line of direction, *HF*, tends to become more horizontal; sometimes it tends to an opposite inclination.

Finally, the femur not always having the same obliquity, it forms with the ilium and the ischium two angles, *HOC* (*ilio-femoral*) and *FOC* (*ischio-femoral*), for this reason more or less closed or open.

It will be perceived that the femur surmounts the centre of the articulation, *O*, by the great *trochanter*, *T*.

Among the groups of muscles we recognize

1st. The *gluteal muscles*, *TH*, *TS*, carrying the femur backward when their fixed point is *H*, or elevating the ilium when *T* is the fixed point.

2d. The *flexors of the femur*, *HP*, principally the psoas, *RP*, advancing the thigh when *H* is their fixed point, and depressing the ilium when *P* becomes the fixed insertion.

3d. The *ischio-tibial* (femoral biceps, semi-tendinosus and membranosus), *FI* and *FI'*, extending the femur and flexing the tibia, have as their fixed point *F* or *S*; when *I* or *I'* is the fixed point, the ischium swings downward or upward.

The remaining muscles are all similar in function to those already studied.

We observe, therefore, that there are in this region two principal groups of muscles. The first, *PH*, *flex* the femur, carrying it forward; the second, *TH*, *FI*, *FV*, more voluminous, *extend* this region. When the femoral insertion is *fixed* these muscles are capable of producing the same movements of the croup. The flexors, *HP*, swing the coxæ downward and forward; the extensors rotate them backward. They can thus contribute directly or indirectly in supporting the dorso-lumbar region.

The croup must be studied with regard to its *length*, *width*, *thickness*, *direction*, *muscular development*, and *particular forms*.

Length.—The **length** is measured from the external angle of the ilium (haunch) to the ischiatic tuberosity (buttock). Bourgelat considered it equal to the distance comprised between the summit of the head and the commissures of the lips. These dimensions appear to correspond in most horses of a regular conformation, except in thoroughbreds, in which the croup is relatively longer on account of the exceptional smallness of the head.

The length of the coxæ is, without dispute, the most important condition of the *beauty* of the croup in animals adapted to any rapid service. Whilst it is not a necessity in draught-horses, it nevertheless adds to their usefulness and beauty. Among Arabians this quality is much appreciated. "As to the horse whose croup is as long as his back and loins united, you can safely choose him even with your eyes closed; such a horse is a blessing!" This is one of their maxims. The principal idea which this metaphor teaches is that the long croup should always be preferred, to the exclusion of all others.

The reason for this preference is readily perceived. The great development of its antero-posterior diameter corresponds relatively with the length of the muscles of the croup, notably those of the

gluteal region, the principal extensors of the femur. They, in connection with the other extensors of the hind limb, communicate to the body a greater impulse, which carries it forward by a sudden and forcible opening of all the locomotory angles and a straightening of the whole limb. The greater their length the more they will be capable of shortening during contraction, and, consequently, the greater will be the force which the hind limb possesses.

This impulsion, besides, will have greater power, because the insertion of the muscles will have an incidence approaching the perpendicular. The line *CD′*, which represents the direction (Fig. 36), is less oblique to *BC* (or *CO*) than the line *CD*.

Again, the length of the croup is concomitant with that of the ischio-tibial muscles, *AB* and *A′B*, which flex the tibia or rotate the coxæ backward during rearing or progressive movements in which they

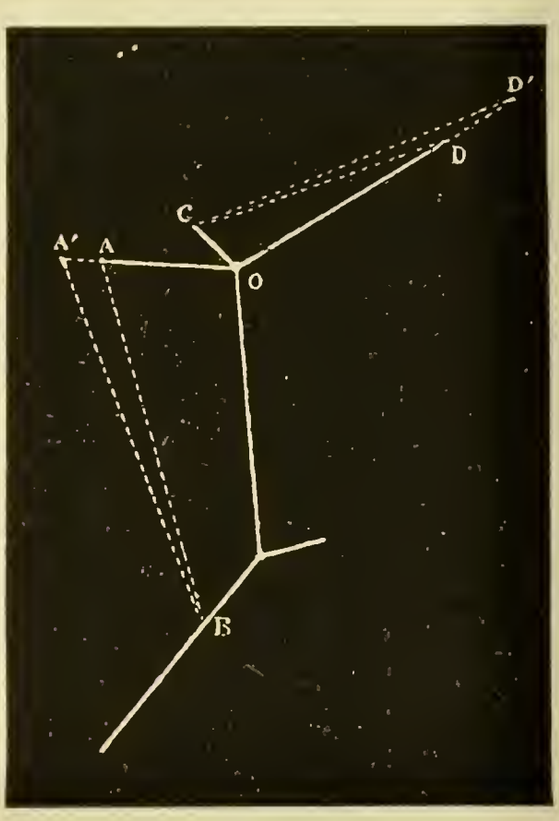


Fig. 36.

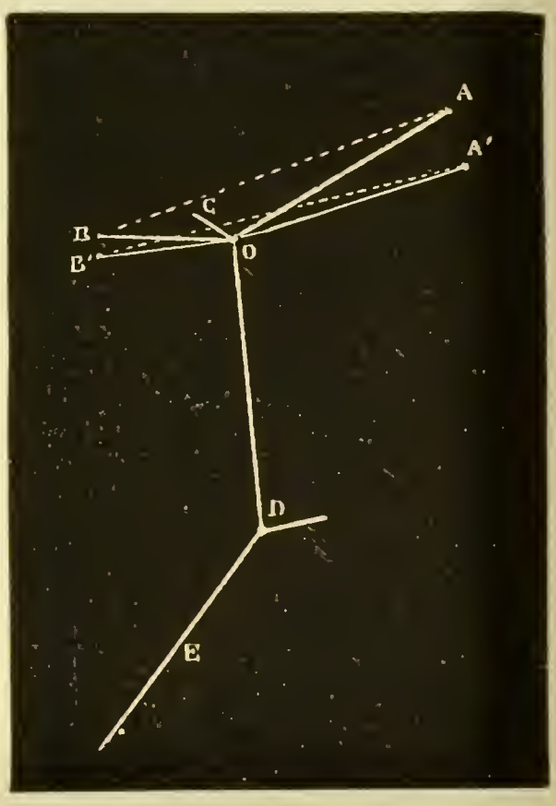


Fig. 37.

are concerned, as the gallop or leaping. Not only the *length* but the *angle of incidence* is also modified.

This is not all. It is also instructive to inform ourselves as to how the length of the croup is produced, for there are three principal factors which enter into its formation,—1st, the *degree of openness* of the ilio-ischial angle; 2d, the *length of the ilium;* and, 3d, the *length of the ischium.*

The **openness** of the ilio-ischial angle, according as it is more or less large, separates correspondingly the angle of the haunch from the

point of the buttock, and makes the croup long or short. This is illustrated in Fig. 37. The lines AB and $A'B'$ are of unequal lengths, whilst they support angles whose sides are exactly equal; nothing but the inclination of these lines has changed. It follows from this that if the increase of the length of the croup can exist without influence upon the real length of the ilium and isehium, it modifies, nevertheless, the direction of the region in such a way that it tends to become, in general, more horizontal. We will return to this subject hereafter.

It is eurious to observe that in our larger quadrupeds the line of direction of the croup always passes perceptibly above the eentre of the coxo-femoral articulation, whilst in our smaller species, as rodents and carnivora, for example, the ilium and the ischium standing more nearly in the same line, and making a less angle the one with the other, this line passes almost through the centre of the joint. The ilio-ischial angle, in this respect, seems more marked, or, if it be preferred, the angle is the more effaced as the volume of the body becomes less and the nimbleness of the movements greater. Thus it augments in size gradually from the horse and the ox to the pig; from the pig to the smaller ruminants; and, finally, from the latter to the carnivora and the rodents. This relative openness, or largeness of the angle, with the corresponding modifications in the length of the muscles, and of their incidence with the osseous levers, and the play of the angles of locomotion in the posterior extremity, seems specially adapted to the execution of the gallop and leaping.

Whatever may be the interpretation, it is well known that in horses of great speed this angle is more open than in draught-horses. In animals used for rapid services, this conformation has the preference. It is manifested externally by the relation of the centre of the articulation with the line of direction of the croup.

The length of the croup, however, is due, more than to aught else, to that of the ilium and the ischium, the ilio-ischial angle remaining the same. These offer some important individual differences. Thus we have seen the relation of these two bones $\frac{ilium}{ischium}$ vary from 1.55 to 1.87. The ratio augments in fast-trotting horses, and diminishes in hunters, saddle-horses, and draught-horses. The length of the ilium determines that of the muscles attaching to it, and favors the amplitude of the femoral extension, whilst that of the ischium fixes the vertebral column when the flexors act, and facilitates the rotation of the pelvis downward and backward.

Here are some very suggestive figures which show these dimensions relatively in certain species other than the horse: We have found the relation to be 0.57 in the swan; 0.87 in the turkey; 1.22 in the hare and the rabbit; 1.30 in the lion; 1.50 in the cat; 1.60 in the greyhound; 1.56 in the goat. In the ox it is only 1.24: it is smaller than in the horse.

In all animals in which the anterior part of the body has no direct support, as in birds, or is comparatively heavy, as in the larger ruminants, or, again, when the natural mode of progression is galloping or leaping, the ratio diminishes in consequence of the relative increase of the ischium.

The result is apparent. It is easy to determine the proportions of the two levers constituting the coxa, by the distance comprised between the centre of the articulation and the point of the buttock. This factor is at least useful, if not indispensable, in estimating the locomotory aptitude of the animal.

To recapitulate: the length of the croup is in close relation with the production of speed. The ilio-ischial line is an insufficient indication, and often the source of error. We should primarily strive to estimate the length of the bones which constitute that line, and should attach only a secondary importance to the line of direction; or, in other words, to the openness of the angle which they form.

Thickness.—Authors have said but little upon the **thickness** of the croup, a point which should, nevertheless, be taken into consideration. We may define it as the distance comprised between the antero-posterior axis of the coxæ and the summit of the sacral spine.

The interval between the sacrum and the coxæ is greater at the outlet than at the inlet of the pelvic cavity, on account of the inclination of the axis of the croup and the horizontal tendency of the axis of the sacrum. It varies singularly in different subjects, owing to the peculiarities of the form of the sacral spine and the general direction of the sacrum itself. This bone may often be curved in draught-horses, while it is ordinarily more or less rectilinear in animals possessed of speed, notably the English thoroughbred and his descendants. The more it is depressed the smaller will be the coxo-sacral interval, or the less the *thickness* of the croup.

When it is straight, on the contrary, this interval augments, and the line which marks the profile of the croup contrasts more strongly with the ilio-ischial line. The region then appears horizontal.

Numerous muscles, among them the ischio-tibial muscles, charged with the rotation of the pelvis and the fixation of the spinal column, attach to the sides of the sacral spine. Its straightness, also indicating

the thickness of the croup, is, therefore, in relation with the length of the muscles, the extent of rotation of the coxæ, and, consequently, the aptitude for galloping and leaping. This straightness may at the same time be considered, in horses of rapid movement, as an index of great power and strength in the upper part of the hind quarter.

Width.—The **width** is the distance between the external angles of the ilia, but depends also upon the separation of the points of the buttock.

In the skeleton, the interval between the external angles of the ilia always slightly exceeds the length of the ilio-ischial line; in other words, the pelvis is wider than long, the excess varying from two to seven centimetres, according to our measurements.

In the living animal it is otherwise on account of the thickness of the muscles which cover the ischiatic tuberosity; the length of the croup becomes equal to, and sometimes exceeds, its width in heavy horses from two to five centimetres.

The development of the transverse diameter of the region varies evidently with the race and the conformation of the animal, but is, in general, an index of the volume of the muscles, and, consequently, of their contractile power, the fibres or contractile units being more numerous in a wide croup than in any other. Such a croup is, therefore, an **absolute beauty,** and a most desirable feature in a horse, no matter for what service he is intended; but it is especially desirable in horses used for heavy work, in which the greatest possible effort is exacted. It is even more desirable in broodmares.

The separation of the haunches is far from furnishing, though it be so regarded, the best criterion for judging of the true width of the croup. Horses having an equal measurement over the haunches may have, in reality, ilia very different in their transverse diameter. It is not rare to meet some subjects whose haunches are less separated than most others, but whose pelvic measurements and iliac surfaces are considerably larger.

We have convinced ourselves that these individual differences depend upon the following causes:

1st. The *degree of inclination* of the iliac surfaces from above to below. 2d. The *degree of concavity* of the external iliac fossæ.

The first cause effects a lowering of the external angle of the ilium in relation with the summit of the croup, and brings it towards the median plane of the body, a circumstance which, it is true, diminishes the distance between the haunches, but which exercises no influence in any manner upon the peripheral surface of the bone for muscular attach-

ment. An *apparent narrowness* of the croup, due to this cause, may exist, all things being otherwise normal, so marked as to diminish the transverse diameter of the croup by more than six centimetres.

As to the degree of concavity of the external face of the ilium, its influence is easily understood. It augments thereby the surface destined for muscular insertion. Let us confine ourselves by saying that it is often much more pronounced than can be determined from the exterior.

The practical conclusion to be drawn from these statements is simple: to judge well the width of the croup, it will suffice to consider the transverse dimension of *the cavity of the pelvis.* With equal length of the ilium, preference is to be given to the horse in which the sides of this region are inclined,—that is to say, a great difference of level between the haunch and the summit of the croup is desirable, the separation of the haunches remaining the same.

Two objectionable consequences may result from excessive width of the croup and a too marked inclination of its sides. Too widely separated from the median line, the coxo-femoral articulations require too large a base of support, and consequently produce exaggerated lateral oscillations of the posterior part of the body during locomotion. From this results an ungraceful swaying of the buttocks, which has been called the *rocking* of the horse; whence results a loss of force and time proportional to the extent of these movements and the excessive oscillations of the centre of gravity. The conditions of locomotion require the centre of gravity to move in as straight a line as possible, because force is required to displace it from that line. In draught-horses this defect is of no importance; in animals used for other purposes it is detrimental, and a mean obliquity of the sides of the croup is preferable.

Other defects, not less serious, may result from an excessive inclination of the lateral parietes of the croup, as is seen more particularly in the form in which it is designated *sharp.* Here the base of support is narrow and the hind limbs do not have their necessary freedom of movement during rapid locomotion; they approach each other, the abduction is limited, and the animal will *interfere* or *forge.* Let us add that such a croup lacks strength and beauty, and is often accompanied by a narrow chest, sufficient cause to render the animal unfit for for some kinds of work.

The *absolute narrowness* of this region is at all times regarded as a defect.

Direction.—The **direction** of the croup has been the theme of extensive discussions among authors who have written upon the exte-

rior. More recently, our learned colleague, M. Neumann,[1] has, in a full review of this subject, endeavored to offer diverse criticisms on certain views which we supported on this point in our first edition. These critieisms have induced us to make a careful revision of this part of our book, and we have conducted numerous experiments, the results of which are given in this edition. We are convineed that the divergenee from our opinion regarding the direction of the croup, held by some writers, is much less reasonable than our critics imagine. They do not sufficiently consider the sources of error, and the compensations and exigencies demanded by the nature of the work which the animal must perform. Very often qualities or defects which belong to other elements of the conformation are attributed to the direction of the croup; finally, it is common to see persons who choose as a standard of excellence such or such an inclination which has given good results in some instances, without reflecting that different purposes also require peculiar anatomical conditions, which endow the mechanism with a peculiar aptitude.

The discussion into which we now enter will furnish the proof of what we have said.

First, how is the direction of the croup manifested?

Certain writers think, incorrectly, that it is indicated by a curve on the median line of the body extending from the termination of the loins to the origin of the tail. This line denotes only the degree of convexity of the sacral spine and the curvature of the sacrum. It is altogether independent of the general direction of the coxæ, and influences but little the form of the region.

The axis of the croup, in our opinion, corresponds almost exactly with a line uniting the angle of the haunch to the point of the ischium and passing some distance above the coxo-femoral articulation; we will call it the *ilio-ischial line.*

We are prepared to assert that the direction of this line depends upon two principles, as follows:

1st. It may depend upon the dimension of the ilio-ischial angle.

2d. It may depend upon the more or less inclined position of the coxæ without variation in its angle.

a. Influence of the Dimension of the Ilio-ischial Angle. —Two causes are eapable of modifying the size of this angle; they may act alone or simultaneously. It may be the inclination of the ilium alone which varies, or that of the ischium, or, finally, that of both, which may vary at the same time.

Let us examine each of these cases in particular.

---

[1] G. Neumann, Sur la direction de la croupe; in Revue vétérinaire, 1887, p. 521.

1st. *Variations in the Inclination of the Ilium.*—When the *ilium approaches the vertical* (Fig. 38), the croup $A'B$ is more oblique and shorter than the croup AB.

The length of the gluteal muscles $A'C$ is diminished; nevertheless, this incidence is more favorable than that of AC, whether for the extension of the femur or the support of the vertebral column. The advantages which follow from this incidence are more efficacious than is generally believed. Are they not evident in the draught-horse, for example, when he endeavors to move his load? The effort inclines his croup and closes proportionally his articular angles, which otherwise are more open. Is it not the immediate consequence of this variation to augment the intensity of the muscular contraction, by rendering the insertion more perpendicular to the bony levers on which they act? If, therefore, from this circumstance the animal approaches a conformation which saves him from exerting all his efforts during traction, he will realize a certain economy of force which must not be overlooked.

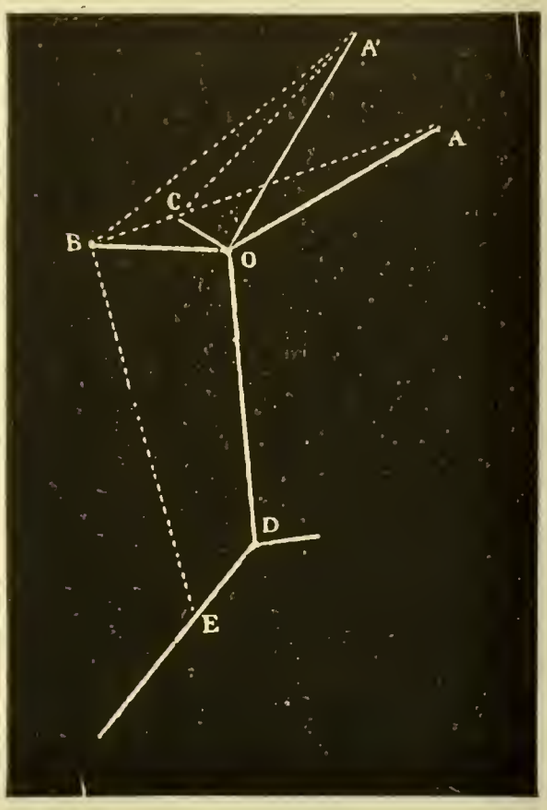


Fig. 38.

The coxo-femoral angle, $A'OD$, being very obtuse, the weight of the body will distribute itself more perpendicularly upon the bones; the muscles $A'C$ and BE, charged to support the spinal column, will expend less force.

From an opposite point of view, if the coxo-femoral angle, $A'OD$, become more obtuse, it places the femur in a position much closer to its limit of extension. (See *Generalities of the Members.*) It follows, then, that if the coxa, by its uprightness, increase the dimension of the angle $A'OD$, which is already large, this bone can only pass through a limited distance during the act of extension, because at the moment of the propulsion of the trunk the posterior limit of the femoral play is reached much more quickly. The movements of the femur will, on the contrary, be much more extensive with the angle AOD less obtuse and approaching the ilium towards the horizontal direction.

If the ilium be lowered, the results are precisely of an opposite order. We will, therefore, not pass further into details.

The following conclusions are derived from the study of this mechanism (Fig. 38):

With the *oblique ilium,* the gluteal muscles are shorter, but better inserted for intensity of power; the fixation of the spine is more easy; the movements of extension and flexion lack amplitude; and the impulsion is transmitted more vertically. Force is increased and speed is diminished.

With the ilium *horizontal* (that is to say, less upright), the mechanical conditions are the opposite of the preceding; the muscles are long; the

femoral movements extensive; impulsion is transmitted horizontally, but the general structure is not adapted to increase the fixation of the spinal column. *Velocity* is increased at the expense of force.

The first conformation, therefore, should exist in horses which are employed to carry burdens or pull heavy loads; the second is found in those which are adapted to rapid locomotion with little or no weight to carry, those whose value depends upon their qualities of speed.

2d. *Variations in the Inclination of the Ischium.*—When it is the *ischium which is lowered* (Fig. 39), the croup, *AB′*, is more oblique, and appears longer. The length of the ischio-tibial muscles, *B′E*, diminishes, but they have an incidence of insertion more favorable, whether for the rotation of the coxæ, in view of fixing the spinal column, or the flexion of the leg during progression.

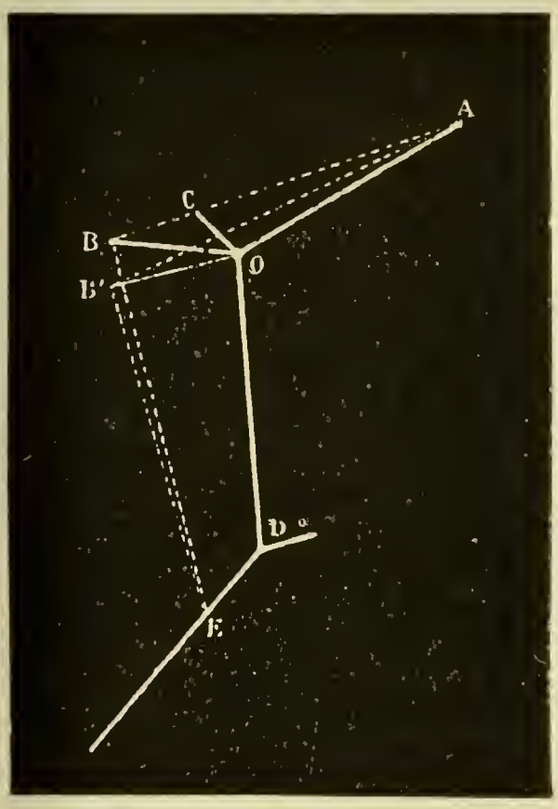


FIG. 39.

The coxo-femoral angle, *AOD*, does not vary, and the extension of the femur preserves its amplitude, provided the ilium, *AO*, remain well directed.

The force of propulsion, at the same time, continues to be transmitted in its proper direction, *OA*.

Nevertheless, the distance, *B′E*, between the ischium and the tibia diminishes, which can only be compensated by an increase in the femoro-tibial angle, *ODE*, thus giving to the bones a more vertical direction, such as is often seen in thoroughbred horses, in which the tibia is ordinarily but little inclined.

The gluteal muscles, *AC*, do not vary.

What are the conclusions from these statements? Simply this: that the obliquity of the croup, due only to the lowering of the ischium, or, if it be preferred, of the point of the buttock, favors again force at the expense of speed, but in a manner less prejudicial than in the preceding case, since the femoral amplitude, as well as a good direction of the force of impulsion, are preserved.

This conformation, if it be not exaggerated, will be excellent for most ordinary services, because it corresponds more uniformly to the *mean* requirements of power, resistance, and velocity demanded from the horse of to-day.

3d. *Simultaneous Variations of the Ischium and the Ilium.*—If the angle, *AOB*, instead of preserving its mean dimension, becomes smaller

by the approximation of its two sides, so as to become $A'OB'$, the results are as follows (Fig. 40):

The apparent length of the croup, $A'B'$, will be diminished, although the dimension of the levers OA' and OB' do not change. The distance between the point of the ischium and the tibia becomes longer.

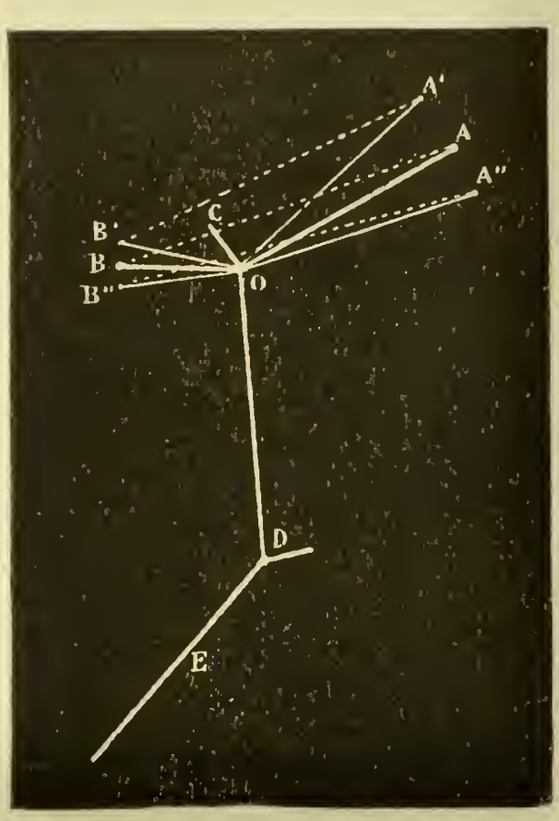


Fig. 40.

The coxo-femoral angle, $A'OD$, being larger, the impulsive force of the femur will be reduced, because it is transmitted too vertically. This is the principal disadvantage of this conformation.

The fixation of the dorso-lumbar spine is easy and powerful, on account of the greater obliquity of the ilium and the perpendicular incidence of insertion of the gluteal muscles, $A'C$.

Such a croup appears short and poorly defined; the animal lacks mobility and develops a vertical impulsion; the region possesses great strength, and he is well fitted to execute the gallop or leap, on account of the length of the buttock, but he is without great speed. We have known many horses whose croup had these characteristics, and which performed ordinary work satisfactorily.

In the opposite conformation, $A''OB''$, the croup will appear longer, but will have a tendency to weakness from the horizontal direction of the ilium.

The movements of the femur will be more extensive, the angle $A''OD$ being smaller.

The impulsion will be better transmitted than in the preceding case.

Finally, the buttock will be shorter.

Feebleness of the croup and loins, greater propulsion from behind, and little aptitude for the gallop and for leaping are the principal characteristics of this form. The gait will lack neither amplitude nor grace, but the weight on the back must be reduced to a minimum. The subject will perform good service as a carriage-horse or for light traction.

An interesting remark to be made in passing is, that in the three varieties, AB, $A'B'$, $A''B''$, the general direction of the croup is not sensibly modified, while the conditions of force, strength, and speed are all of different orders. We shall return to this point later.

b. Influence of the Misplacement of the Coxæ as a

WHOLE.—The pelvis, as a whole, may incline more or less towards the horizontal or the vertical line.

Although these misplacements are more rare and less marked than those of the individual bones, such general misplacements are nevertheless sometimes observed.

The ilio-ischial angle in such cases is ordinarily more closed than is normal, owing to a diminished obliquity of the ischium. The forward and backward rotation of the coxæ can thus be accomplished without perceptibly modifying the direction of the floor of the pelvic cavity.

This rotation, in one direction or in the other, modifies the obliquity of the croup (Fig. 41) more than the partial variations to which we have alluded.

When the *coxæ are rotated backward, A′OB′*, the combined result, a straightening of the ilium and lowering of the ischium, is both favorable and unfavorable. Velocity is diminished and force increased. The croup and loins are strengthened, and the power for traction increased. The femoral impulsion is reduced because it is applied too vertically. This conformation, when it is exaggerated, disturbs the axis of the members by placing the latter under the trunk; it is altogether incompatible with great speed, but is not detrimental to slow work which requires great force.

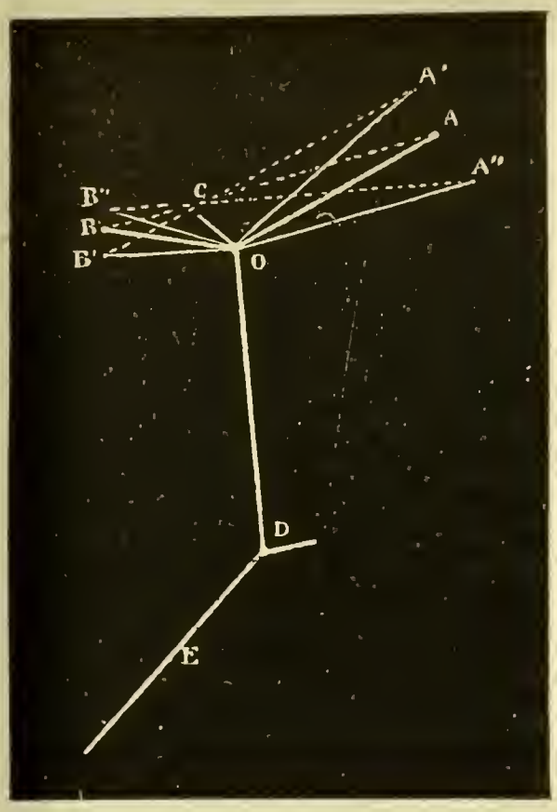


FIG. 41.

An *inverse displacement, A″OB″*, naturally means opposite results. The muscles are longer, their play is augmented, the transmission of the motor impulse is more horizontal, but the regions above are weakened.

As soon as the horizontal direction passes beyond certain limits, the hind limbs tend to rest posterior to their vertical axis, and the extension and flexion of the femur become insufficient. There is a tendency towards a disposition analogous to that in the ox, whose loins are weak, not only on account of their great length, but also in consequence of the conformation of the croup, whose inclination is but faintly marked.

General Considerations relative to the Direction of the Croup.—If the reader is not already discouraged by having followed us in the minute analysis which we have given, he will now recognize that the terms *horizontal croup* and *oblique croup* only have a relative signification, always more or less vague, unless they are somewhat arbitrarily defined. He will know that such or such a croup is not necessarily well directed, from the statement that the ilio-ischial line is oblique or horizontal, as the case may be. He will then understand the distinctions to be made in the two factors, the ilium and the ischium, which occupy such an important relation in the modification of the general direction of the coxæ. Finally, he will perceive that each special aptitude of the horse is associated with a particular inclination of the one or the other of these factors.

The modern horse must respond, by his conformation, to multiple purposes. The two principal, which embrace all the others, require the animal to employ either *force* or *speed*. The muscular forces, however, which in the two cases are intrusted with the double result, must, for the production of the one or the other, act according to a mechanism entirely different as to its mode of construction. Whence we meet certain qualifications, absolute for speed, while those for force may be absent, and *vice versa*.

In this region of the croup, any osseous inclination which implies long gluteal and ischio-tibial muscles, a large femoral extension, and a transmission of the motor impulse as horizontally as possible, should be considered as the three factors which exemplify the best conditions of speed.

The *distinctly-horizontal croup* has an inclination of 20 to 30 degrees, a low ilium inclined 25 to 30 degrees, a horizontal ischium, and an open ischio-ilial angle. The animal thus conformed will have, if the femur be well directed, a coxo-femoral angle of 105 to 110 degrees. This increases the arc of oscillation of the thigh, the limit of which during extension passes well beyond the vertical line of the members. We know, in fact, that the impulsive force especially is only utilized during progression after the moment that the direct axis of the member has passed beyond the vertical line passing through the centre of the coxo-femoral articulation.

Such a horse, however, becomes incapable of carrying, without great fatigue, a heavy weight on his back; light jockeys, therefore, are necessary for the running-horse; the vehicle which he draws must also be very light. Constructed for running, and carrying only his own weight, his speed will be extreme; more than this should not be

demanded of him. How many of his likeness appear on the turf which are capable of astonishing speed for a short distance, but which cannot maintain it when the distance is increased, being overburdened by the weight which they must carry!

Let us change the data of this problem. Let us exact from the motor the production of a force of the greatest possible intensity, whether it be for carrying a heavy weight or drawing a heavy load. Upon what will be based the influence of the direction of the croup in such a case?

With M. Neumann,[1] we respond that it depends, so to speak, exclusively upon the inclination of the croup and the coxo-femoral structures, or, if it be preferred, the position of the ilium under the dorso-lumbar arch. Here the length of the muscles and the extent of the movements are a secondary consideration; it suffices to overcome the intensity of the resistance. Consequently, any anatomical disposition whose effect is to furnish to the pieces of the skeleton a part of the effort required from the muscles, or which gives incidences of insertion to them more favorable to their contraction, must be regarded as being in conformity with the adaptation of the subject to this variety of labor.

A *strongly-oblique croup,* inclined 40 to 45 degrees, with an oblique ilium inclined 45 to 50 degrees, and with a low ischium, will well fulfil these conditions. A large coxo-femoral angle, which will be the consequence, will place the coxæ as a strong support underneath the vertebral column and render the muscles able to sustain the latter, even if it be heavily charged. To exact the least speed from such a horse will be in opposition to physiological laws; he can only employ his force at a slow pace.

Between these two *extremes* there are numerous intermediary types, which may, with sufficient ease, be grouped into three categories, as follows:

1. *Saddle-horses,* which are obliged to move a more or less heavy weight carried on their back, at a sufficiently great velocity, whether at the trot or the gallop. Those which are destined for the turf should have a croup approaching the horizontal ideal of 25 degrees, but with a more oblique ilium (30 degrees), for the purpose of giving solidity to the structures anterior to it. Trotters[2] are benefited by a somewhat

---

[1] G. Neumann, loc. cit., p. 527.

[2] In the American trotting-horse the obliquity of the croup is subject to the greatest variation. In some it is horizontal, in others oblique. In the mare Sunol, three-year-old, record 2.10½, it is extremely oblique. In such cases the mechanical disadvantage is compensated by an excessive length of the ischio-tibial muscles and those of the thigh and leg in general. (Harger.)

more oblique direction of the ilium (35 degrees). As to hunters and cavalry horses, used exclusively under the saddle, and from which great strength of the loins and posterior quarters, but less speed, are demanded, their croup should have an intermediary position between the oblique croup of the draught-horse and the horizontal one of the thoroughbred. The ilium should incline 35 degrees, and the ischium be slightly lowered, in such a manner that the ilio-ischial line shall preserve this intermediate relation.

2. *Driving-horses,* employed on the track or as animals of luxury, whose exclusive gait is the trot, without any weight on the back, can, without disadvantage, have a horizontal croup. This is appreciated as a quality of beauty and fashion as well as for its mechanical advantages in rapid locomotion.

3. In *draught-horses for fast, heavy work,* or mixed motors, combining at the same time force from their bulk and their muscular power, and a certain speed from their relative muscular activity, united with the length of the segments, a croup slightly more inclined than that of the cavalry horse or the trotting-horse will fulfil the required conditions.

Errors in the Estimation of the Direction of the Croup.—The deep situation of the coxo-femoral structure, the large mass of muscles which cover and conceal it, more or less, and, finally, the complexity of the function which it fulfils as an apparatus of station, impulsion, and locomotion, render its study particularly difficult. Without a trained eye, capable of observing and often inferring the anatomy through the external form, errors are not only possible but frequent, even with experts. Some prefer the horizontal and others the oblique direction, while still others have no preference between the two directions, but assert that the inclination of the coxæ alone is without effect on the locomotory aptitude.

Nevertheless, here, as in all other circumstances, the correct method of selection is regular and scientific. Each direction offers advantages which correlate with some determined exigency or need ; each one also has its expediencies with regard to the qualities of speed or of force which it is desired to obtain. The difficulty lies in establishing the kind of conformation which is suitable to each special case.

In order to accomplish this, a thorough examination of the parts is required, irrespective of special *appearances.* Nothing, for example, produces such a deceptive appearance of horizontality in the croup, as the slight prominence and small convexity of the superior line and the horizontal direction of the ischium and the sacrum. Conversely, a depressed ischium and sacrum and a superior surface curved and

oblique, seem to augment the inclination of the coxæ. As we have seen, it may, nevertheless, be that in the two cases the obliquity of the ilium is equal and even more horizontal in the one which appears the more oblique. Hence it is especially the direction of the ilium which it is necessary to take into consideration in the determination of the conditions of force and strength of the regions in front of the croup, and particularly its characteristics of length, width, and thickness, which we have already detailed. A certain intuition which not every one possesses is necessary to appreciate these, and hence the errors of judgment which are so common.

M. Richard[1] has good reason to criticise persons who make no difference, in their selection for speed, between the horse with a horizontal croup and one in which it is oblique, and asserts that *compensations* can equalize their mechanical aptitude, if not in blood, at least in structure. Vallon[2] has not expressed a different opinion in advancing that an oblique croup is capable of forcibly propelling the body and of communicating to it great speed, provided the anterior part of the trunk is low and light. The length of the locomotory segments, the degree of the openness of the articular angles, the position of the limbs under the trunk, the muscular development, the race, the energy, and many other factors of speed, can accompany a croup with an oblique ilium, and would be more or less defective in subjects with a horizontal croup. It is incorrect to connect a special aptitude, whatever it be, to the conformation of one region alone, and much more so to pretend that it depends exclusively upon one particular osseous inclination. We will not dwell on this point.

Modifications in the Direction of the Croup resulting from Labor.—The direction of the croup is not always *congenital;* it is often modified by the manner of utilization or work.

Young animals which are attached to heavy loads too early, and those which are employed in mountainous districts for traction or as animals of burden, will have, in time, a croup more and more oblique. On the contrary, in the saddle- or the pack-horse which are placed in service prematurely, this region tends to become more horizontal.

Muscularity.—Besides the qualifications, length, width, thickness, and direction, which we recognize in this region, it is also necessary that the muscles be firm, dense, well outlined, and well developed.

Without these qualifications the region will be entirely deficient in

---

[1] Richard (du Cantal), Étude du cheval de service et de guerre, 6e éd., p. 215, Paris, 1882.
[2] Vallon, Cours d'hippologie, tome i. p. 406, Paris, 1863.

power. This is a common defect in many horses of a sluggish and lymphatic temperament and raised in low, marshy districts.

Forms.—The different forms of the croup are dependent upon :

1. The dimensions, length, and width.
2. The direction of its large axis.
3. The direction of its superior line.
4. The muscular development.
5. The movements.

The description of these which we have already given above will allow us to notice them rapidly in review.

1. In relation to its **dimensions,** the croup can be *long* or *short, wide* or *narrow.* When the haunches and the points of the buttocks are in planes which tend to be parallel, and at the same time the region is long and wide, the horse is said to be *square behind,* a qualification which is to be admired, because it gives force and velocity.[1] When the croup has a certain width in front but is narrower behind, it takes the names *almond-shaped, mule-like;* the horse viewed from behind appears *narrow, pointed.*

2. In relation to its **great axis,** we know that the croup may be *oblique* or *horizontal.* These terms are applicable to these directions when the latter exist in an ordinary degree ; when they are not exaggerated. It often happens that they become faulty from an excess or a deficiency in the one sense or the other.

Too horizontal, it lacks force, renders the animal incapable of supporting the least weight on his back, and alters the vertical axis of the posterior limb by displacing the latter too far backward. *Too oblique,* it acts prejudicially to this axis by placing the limb too far under the trunk, transmits the force of impulsion ineffectively, and predisposes the back to disease from undue strain. It is then called *low, cut-off, slanting.*

3. **Direction of its Superior Line.**—When the sacral spine is prominent, so that the sides slope strongly outward, downward, and backward, as is remarked in certain strains of horses in the south of central France, the croup is designated *sharp* or *mule-like.* This conformation, quite common in the barb-horse of Andalusia, becomes defective only when it is accompanied by a narrowness of the posterior quarters, lessening the strength of the parts and the velocity of the gait.

The croup is called *hen-tailed* when it presents a more or less distinct depression anterior to the base of the tail. In such animals the

---

[1] A. Rivet, Guide pratique de l'acheteur de chevaux, 1877.

latter is badly carried; the aspect which it presents gives it the name of *rabbit's tail;* it is observed in certain Frisian and German horses with slanting croups.

4. The **development of the muscles** of the croup varies according to the race.

When the median line presents a longitudinal gutter, limited on each side by an elevation of the gluteal muscles, the croup is *double;* its lateral diameter is then nearly always large. It is a characteristic of great force, and is observed in draught-horses of a lymphatic type. It must be considered as being detrimental to the production of speed, because it surcharges the posterior extremities and occasions excessive lateral displacements of the centre of gravity.

When, on the contrary, the sacral spine projects above the surrounding muscles, otherwise well developed, the croup is said to be *angular.* This conformation, which renders the lines and the contour of the region more apparent, is not a defect, but denotes great power of the bony levers. If, however, it results in a disappearance of the harmony between the bones and the muscles, and the latter are weak and poorly developed, the preceding advantages will be absent.

"If the muscles of the croup of the mare appear *sunken,* so that the base of the tail is well detached and the abdomen somewhat pendulous and projecting on each side, we can presume that she is pregnant; a slow and heavy walk confirms this presumption" (Captain Rivet).

5. Finally, in relation to its **movements,** we remark that the croup should propel the trunk without swinging from side to side. If this condition be not fulfilled, the region is said to be *oscillating,* and if it is more exaggerated, the animal *rocks himself.*

In the first case, the region lacks propulsive force; in the second, the gait is ungraceful and deprived of speed.

"In the pregnant mare, nine times out of ten the muscles attaching to the summit of the croup on each side of the base of the tail will tremble when she walks" (Captain Rivet). This condition is due to a relaxation of the sacro-ischiotic ligament, a fact which we have demonstrated.[1]

Diseases and Blemishes.—Certain authors assert that the coxo-femoral articulation is quite frequently the seat of a peculiar *strain,* against which cauterization, setons, and vesicants are employed (Vallon, Merche).

This disease, consigned to-day to the list of maladies whose names have

---

[1] Arm. Goubaux, Société de Biologie, année, 1869, p. 125.

encumbered ancient veterinary medicine, serves as a pretext for a treatment of which the region sometimes bears the traces, and which is too often the proof of the uncertainty into which a lameness *whose seat is unknown* sometimes leads the veterinarian. Be that as it may, it will be necessary to examine carefully the other regions of the posterior member in which the coxo-femoral articulation presents evidence of such disease.

The **blemishes** of the croup are not numerous. They are due to *excoriations* and *wounds* which result from continued friction, caused by a misfitting or a vicious application of the crupper.

The muscles of the croup, with those of the thigh and buttock, sometimes become the seat of *atrophy*, which, manifesting itself by a considerable reduction in their volume, places the osseous apparatus in relief.[1]

This atrophy of the croup, whether of nervous origin or otherwise, is always due to a prolonged inactivity of the muscles, and is sometimes rebellious to treatment. It depreciates the value of the animal, especially when it is the manifestation of a local paralysis.

The Haunch.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **haunch**, an asymmetrical region, is situated upon the antero-external part of the croup, with which it becomes more or less confounded, according to the subject. It is for this reason that its study as a distinct region is somewhat difficult.

It is limited below by the *flank* and the anterior crural region, above by the *loins* and the *croup*, and has for its principal base the external angle of the ilium and the muscles which attach to the latter.

Related in front to the hollow of the flank and behind to the croup, it forms, in horses of a coarse conformation, a large eminence which then receives the qualification *well detached*. If its prominence be due to the meagre development of the surrounding muscles, as is sometimes seen in lean and poorly-developed subjects, in the angular croup of certain Norman horses, and in many with oblique croups, it becomes defective and renders the animal *too angular*. We are familiar with the old jest alluded to by De Curnieu, in which the jockey tries to hang his hat on the haunch of a horse which is very meagrely developed in this respect.[2]

When prominence of the haunch is not due to a vicious conformation of the croup, it simply appears ungraceful to the eye and has no influence upon the qualities of its possessor.

In other instances, the haunch may show an opposite defect; it is not sufficiently salient, and then becomes *effaced*, *low*, *dropped*, or *sunken*.

---

[1] H. Bouley, Nouveau Dictionnaire de médecine, d'hygiène et de chirurgie vétérinaires, t. viii. p. 517.

[2] De Curnieu, Leçons de science hippique générale, 1855, t. i. p. 248.

This is the usual form which it exhibits in very fat horses, or in those whose croup is of insufficient width. We have sufficiently discussed this defect and will not return to it here.

From the preceding statements it follows that it is scarcely possible to draw any indications of importance from the mere examination of the haunches. Nevertheless, this is not the view taken by certain hippotomists. The reason for this difference of opinion lies in the following considerations. Bourgelat first described this region as having for its base the whole of the ilium, including that part of the body extending from the external angle of that bone to the coxo-femoral articulation. Many of his disciples, following his example, have made use of such expressions as *long, short, narrow, wide, straight,* and *oblique haunches,* terms which are still used in the veterinary world, but whose meaning is hard to determine, if we take them in their literal sense.

It is easy to see that it is illogical to make such a distinction as to separate the anterior part of the coxa from the posterior, to call the one part a *haunch* and the other a *croup,* to examine separately structures which are so intimately united and so harmoniously blended in their nature and their anatomy. Accordingly, to avoid those repetitions and confusions which otherwise would not fail to spring up in our minds, the haunch is best regarded as only a secondary region of the croup, interesting us by reason of its particular forms, and, more especially, its blemishes. These are the reasons why we have imitated those of our predecessors who have not accepted the distinction established by Bourgelat.

Diseases and Blemishes.—The haunch may be the seat of excoriations and wounds of more or less gravity, and sometimes accompanied by severe complications. They are always found on horses which have been injured by passing through narrow door-ways, on those which have to keep the recumbent position for a long time after surgical operations or during serious diseases, upon a bed with insufficient litter, or, finally, in those which, suffering from violent attacks of colic, throw themselves on the ground.

In other cases, the haunch is the seat of *hæmatomata* (blood-tumors), *cysts, abscesses, bruises, partial or total fractures.* The latter are followed by marked deformities of this region; one haunch is lower than the other, from the fact that the detached portion is carried downward and forward by the contraction of the muscle of the fascia lata and the small oblique of the abdomen. The lameness which exists at the outset of such an accident disappears at the expiration of a certain time, but the deformity will always persist. An animal which presents it is called *hip-shot;* it has received a *stroke from a broom.*

"Finally, it is possible that in young horses the centre of ossification which forms the tuberosity of the external angle of the ilium may become detached by the force of muscular contractions, as when the animal is forced

into a restrained position for the performance of a surgical operation, castration, for example; thus may be produced an accident which, if it is not a fracture properly speaking, simulates it by its deformity and by its results." [1]

CHAPTER II.

ANTERIOR EXTREMITY OF THE BODY.

A.—The Breast, or Pectoral Region.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **breast** is a symmetrical region situated at the anterior part of the trunk, and limited in front by the inferior border of the *neck*, behind by the *axillæ* and the *inter-axillary region*, and on each side by the *arm*.

It has for its main osseous element the anterior extremity of the sternum, on which are inserted the sterno-hyoideus, sterno-thyroideus, sterno-maxillaris, and sterno-humeralis muscles, and these are separated from the internal face of the skin by an abundance of connective tissue. It contains the plate vein, situated in the gutter formed by the adjoining borders of the sterno-humeralis and mastoido-humeralis muscles, which can be located easily from the exterior, and on which phlebotomy is sometimes practised.

Form.—The configuration of the external surface of the pectoral region varies according to the subject, from the fact that the volume of the above-mentioned muscles leaves the trachelian appendix of the sternum more or less prominent. But little attention need be given to this prominence. Nevertheless, if it is very marked, the region is qualified as *sharp*. Sometimes the breast presents two deep depressions situated within the scapulo-humeral angles; these depressions are due to a meagreness of the muscles or to a change in the direction of the scapulo-humeral angle. This peculiarity is very common in horses which are poorly developed, and the breast is then described as *hollow*, or *sunken*.

Width.—The width is the principal element to be considered in the examination of the breast, and, as Bourgelat has said, it should be proportional to the volume of the body or the general development of the animal.

---

[1] H. Bouley, loc. cit.

Most authors have advanced the opinion that its width is proportionate with that of the chest. In our opinion, it is easy to see in this assertion the false interpretation of the fact (for the most part very well established) that narrowness of the breast accompanies a thorax of little capacity and slender limbs.

It might be supposed, indeed, that there ought to be a certain relation between this narrowness and the space enclosed by the first two ribs. This is, however, an error which we have exposed by more than fifty observations made upon the living subject and completed afterwards upon the cadaver. We have never found marked differences in this respect among subjects of the same size, whatever may have been the width of the breast. This is due to the simple reason: it is not at the anterior extremity that the dimensions of the chest vary, but rather in the middle and posterior regions. Also, the differences in the width of the pectoral region are the result of causes other than the separation of the anterior ribs. We must attribute them to the varying thickness of the pectoral muscles which form its base. It is also true that this region can accidentally become narrow in animals whose thorax is spacious. It is only necessary to place them in bad hygienic conditions, or to give them improper food and injudiciously-chosen work, to convince ourselves that emaciation causes a diminution of its width.

It is physiologically true, however, that the general development of the respiratory apparatus is directly proportional to that of the muscular system. The functional activity of the muscles causes an augmentation of their volume, and their contractions produce an increase of the amount of oxygen consumed. No lungs, no muscles; and, conversely, dense and vigorous muscles require a spacious thorax; whence it follows that the width of the pectoral region, owing to the volume of its muscles, should coincide with a certain degree of respiratory power. If, therefore, this region is narrow, it becomes desirable to determine to what cause this narrowness is due, whether to that of the thorax directly, or to the animal's "condition."

The size being equal, the breast of the English thoroughbred horse is less wide than that of the heavy coach-horse, whilst he is endowed with a chest equally if not more spacious. In this case the harmonious development of the locomotory apparatus must also be considered; the power of the muscles, instead of being the effect of their thickness, is due to their length; and the sternum appears more prominent than it does in a horse with thick muscles. Besides, these muscles are dense, firm, and habituated to repeated energetic and extensive contractions.

There are, therefore, two elements to be considered in the width of the pectoral region: whether it depend solely upon the volume of the pectoral muscles, or if to this cause is also added a well-developed thoracic cavity. In the former case, the width of the breast will vary according to the general condition and health of the animal; in the latter, its variations, whatever they may be, cannot be presumed to be due to narrowness or feeble development of the thorax.

The width should not exceed certain limits; for when these limits are passed width of the breast becomes a defect, since it gives too large an area to the base of support. Horses endowed with speed should be *well open in front*, but their openness must not be **excessive**, because the lateral displacements of the centre of gravity can only take place at the expense of the velocity of the gait.

The English thoroughbred is not too open in front, whilst his chest, which appears narrow, is high and salient in such a way that the extremity of the sternum is prominent and gives attachment to long muscles.

Draught-horses can, without being defective, be very open in front. The lateral oscillations of the centre of gravity, being only prejudicial to velocity, do not diminish the energy of his efforts. His power depends upon his mass, and he demands, therefore, firm and voluminous muscles. From this point of view we may regard a wide breast as an **absolute beauty**, or as a point of great merit, because it gives to the trunk the volume which is necessary for it to have in order to overcome easily, but slowly, heavy resistances.

When the breast is very narrow, it is said that the horse is *closed in front*. In all such cases, this conformation, the opposite of the preceding, is defective. It indicates a feeble development of the muscular system, and very often respiratory organs of small amplitude. If such animals offer some appearance of energy when they are exercised, they are generally incapable of enduring continuous and laborious work.

Narrowness of the breast, as well as its width, may be *congenital* or *acquired*. When it is congenital, it is observed in those subjects which, at birth, show themselves to be defective in the development of the muscular and the respiratory systems. When it is acquired, on the contrary, it is consequent upon a state of emaciation, exhaustion, diverse chronic diseases, and, in general, a profound debility of the organism. In this case, the extremity of the sternum becomes salient, the points of the shoulders project forward, and leave between them and the sterno-humeralis muscles two deep depressions which terminate inferiorly the jugular gutters.

Blemishes.—The most common **blemishes** of the breast are traces of setons, but these need not arouse any apprehension, because people are in the habit of inserting these counter-irritants for the most trifling causes. More or less extensive cicatrices or denudations are also met here, which result from the application of revulsives and blisters in the treatment of diseases of the respiratory apparatus.

Finally, in draught-horses it is common to observe excoriations or cicatrices which extend from the inferior border of the neck to the anterior border of the shoulders, following the direction of the collar. These have no important significance, and are even utilized by the horse-merchant to indicate to the buyer a proof that the animal *settles freely into the collar.*

B.—The Inter-axilla.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **inter-axilla** is a symmetrical region limited in front by the *breast*, behind by the *xiphoid region*, and on each side by the *axillary space.* It responds to the inferior border of the sternum and to the origin of the sterno-humeralis and sterno-aponeuroticus muscles.

Having a variable conformation, concave or convex, according to the volume of the muscles, it presents nothing remarkable as regards the exterior. Setons are applied in this region, to which, in the majority of cases, no more importance need be attached than to the cicatrices which follow them.

C.—The Axilla.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **axilla** corresponds in situation with the point of junction of the supero-internal extremity of the forearm with the trunk.

Limited in front by the *breast*, behind by the *elbow* and the *xiphoid region*, internally by the *inter-axilla*, and externally by the *forearm*, the axilla has for its anatomical base the sterno-aponeuroticus muscle and the muscular interstice situated between the adjoining borders of the sterno-humeralis and mastoido-humeralis, in which the vein of the axilla (brachio-cephalic trunk) is lodged. The skin is soft, pliable, and mobile.

Little importance is attached to this region, viewed from the exterior. Nevertheless, in certain thin-skinned and fat horses whose skin in the axilla offers numerous folds, it presents, during the summer and after a long march on dusty roads, excoriations, accompanied by redness and great sensibility, which may prevent them from performing their duties for several days. This accident, frequent in cavalry horses, and generally of no gravity, is called *fraying of the axilla.*

We may also allude to bloodletting from the brachio-cephalic vein, which is sometimes followed by a thrombus.

CHAPTER III.

INFERIOR FACE OF THE BODY.

A.—The Xiphoid Region.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **xiphoid region** corresponds to the inferior part of the sternum and the xiphoid cartilage (a tract whose approaches are flattened from above to below), at the level of which usually passes the girth of the saddle and the belly-band, when the thorax is properly suspended between the anterior members and the abdomen has a good conformation. If the withers are low or elevated, or the abdomen like that of the greyhound, these bands must be carried either forward or backward of their proper place. It is then understood without difficulty that the situation of the latter must be changed according to the circumstances.

Limited anteriorly by the *inter-axilla*, posteriorly and on the sides by the *abdomen* and the *ribs*, and laterally by the *elbow* and the *ribs*, this region is more or less plainly marked, according to the subject, by a slight concavity which insensibly passes into the neighboring regions, and especially into the abdomen. It is of no great interest with respect to the information which it furnishes, but is, nevertheless, the seat of *blemishes* as well as of *wounds*.

The **blemishes** are excoriations, cicatrices of variable sizes, and traces of revulsives and blisters, recent or remote, applied for therapeutic purposes in serious diseases of the respiratory organs. The diseases of the thoracic cavity which require the employment of such means may not leave any permanent alteration of the organs affected, but, at the same time, it is necessary to examine the thoracic organs carefully, as well as the movements of the flank.

The **wounds** are generally caused by a harness which is misfitting or improperly applied. In saddle-horses, a girth whose tension is severe will, if it be too stiff, too wide, soiled, or exert unequal pressure, irritate the skin and render it extremely painful. It is then necessary to use one which is narrower, or made of softer material, as cotton, or lined with silk. In draught-horses the same wounds are caused by the pinching of the skin between the girth and the belly-band. These denudations disappear never to return when use is made of one wide girth, upon which one more narrow is fastened by means of two keeps.

Other means, such as sheepskin with the wool on, and soft pads, are insufficient, irritating, and difficult to keep clean.

B.—The Abdomen.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—In external anatomy this region corresponds to the inferior surface of the abdominal cavity.

It is circumscribed in front by the *xiphoid region;* behind by the *sheath* and the *scrotum* in the male, and in the female by the *mammary glands;* on each side by the *ribs*, the *flank*, and the *groin.*

The structures which form its base are, proceeding from without to within, the skin, the panniculus carnosus, the tunica abdominalis, the abdominal muscles, and, finally, the peritoneum, the serous membrane which covers the parietes of the abdominal cavity, and the contained organs.

Beauties and Defects.—It is important to consider the region of the abdomen, for by its volume and its weight it influences locomotion. By certain other characteristics it gives information as to the qualities of the animal and its state of health or of disease. We shall now discuss it as to the two following points, intimately associated with each other: the **volume** and the **form.**

Volume.—In a state of health the abdomen is elastic and yields to digital pressure. It augments in volume after a meal and diminishes in a measure when digestion is completed. It should be proportional to the size and the type of the horse.

It varies according to the breed. Though larger in some and smaller in other strains, it is not on this account disproportional, comparatively speaking. In animals used for slow or rapid work, its vertical diameter, measured from the middle of the back, is most generally equal to the length of the head. It is always more voluminous in the light saddle-horse, the product of a half-breed and a pure-blooded animal, or of the latter stock alone, except during the period of training.

It is, perhaps, most exact to consider, with M. Eug. Gayot, the volume of the abdomen as *beautiful* whenever this region continues the external form of the thorax,—*i.e.*, when the latter becomes insensibly continuous with the arch described by the ribs and the flank. Its inferior line, when viewed in profile, should describe a graceful curve from the sternum to the inguinal region. In this case it can be presumed that digestion and assimilation are well performed, because the amplitude of the abdominal cavity corresponds to the volume of the enclosed viscera, which is in relation with their functional activity, particularly when the diet consists of aliments of good quality.

When the abdomen is defective through lack of volume, it indicates an animal with impaired assimilation, whose digestive functions

are irregular and incomplete, unless this state be due to the mode of alimentation, or to the special functional gymnastics to which the race-horse is submitted.

A too voluminous abdomen denotes an animal of a ravenous appetite, of common breeding, or reared in low and damp countries with coarse, very aqueous, and innutritious food. Being compelled to take a large quantity of these aliments in order to obtain the necessary nutritive material, the horse submitted to this regimen has a distended stomach and intestines which, pressing against the posterior face of the diaphragm, compress the heart and the lungs. The muscles remain feeble, flabby, and little developed; the skin becomes thick and the hairs coarse; the form is thick and clumsy, and the constitution soft. The step is heavy, the respiration constrained by the weight of the intestinal mass. The pace is impeded by the lowering and forward displacement of the centre of gravity, and this fact renders the horse unable to execute even the least laborious efforts for any length of time.

In young horses, from the nature and the quantity of the substances which they ingest, the abdomen is ordinarily voluminous. They receive little grain, and their diet consists principally of dry forage and of grass which they obtain in pastures. In broodmares the abdomen is also more developed, either from the fact of gestation or from the peculiarities of their food.

We do not believe, as some veterinarians do, that the volume of the abdomen has any influence upon the disposition of the horse. If certain subjects are irritable, whimsical, gentle, or quiet, their disposition pertains to their inherent nature, and not exclusively to the conformation of such or such a part of the body. In fact, the exceptions to the rule proposed by the veterinarians we have alluded to are so frequent that it is not necessary to give this matter any further attention.

Form.—The abdomen, of which the **form** is in close proportion to its volume, is generally cylindrical in those animals that are well nourished.

If its inferior line, instead of describing the graceful curve of which we have spoken, passes obliquely backward and upward, as we observe it in greyhounds, it is called *greyhound-like.*

The horse which presents it is lank, deficient in the volume of the bowels and of the body, which possess poor assimilation; *too much air passes underneath the abdomen;* the digestive functions are imperfect. Arrived in the stable after a long drive, he stands back from the manger, sulks over his food, *reads the newspaper,* according to the language of horsemen, and is incapable the next day of resuming his work.

This condition must not be confounded with that retraction of the abdomen which is temporarily the result of training in the horse, or of an exclusive diet of oats for those required to perform laborious services.

If, on the contrary, the inferior line of the abdomen is very convex, descending abruptly backward from the sternum, it is spoken of as *dropping, pendulous,* or *cow's belly.* This is a conformation indicating, as we have seen, a horse with a ravenous appetite, sluggish, without activity, and predisposed to be sway-backed and short-winded. In breeding districts where the forage is nutritious and fattening, as in the Valley of Auge and in the Cotentin, it is not necessary to hesitate over a voluminous abdomen when the conformation of the chest is good, and particularly in the case of mares which are pregnant, and that of foals and colts. Diet and exercise will soon cause its disappearance. The skill of the buyer consists in selecting under adverse circumstances, often with little to enlighten him, the animal which, in spite of a heavy abdomen, will with proper care assume a light, graceful, and stylish appearance.[1]

Diseases and Blemishes.—The diseases and blemishes of the abdomen it is important to recognize. They are:

1. **Œdema,** or a serous infiltration of the connective tissue, an enlargement of variable area, which is soft (but not hot or fluctuating) and yields (pits) to the pressure of the finger. It results often from prolonged rest in the stable, and sometimes also follows traumatisms, castration, or the application of irritating substances used with a therapeutic object.

2. **Exomphalus,** or **umbilical hernia,** very common in colts, which consists of a subcutaneous swelling from a protrusion of a portion of the intestines through the umbilical opening, whose obliteration after birth has not taken place. This affection is very rare in adults, because it is treated at an early period, and because it reduces itself spontaneously as the vertical diameter of the abdominal cavity increases.

3. **Ventral hernia,** which only differs from the preceding in that the rupture of the parietes through which the abdominal organ passes is *accidental,* and may be situated upon any part of the abdomen, instead of being *natural* and occupying always the position of the umbilical opening. It is due to rupture of the muscular and fibrous parietes of the abdomen. When the solution of continuity extends to the skin and the intestines protrude, it is called an *eventration.* The two terms do not carry the same importance. Although they are only different degrees of the same accident, yet, in relation to their gravity, they are not comparable.

4. **Traces of setons,** which certain practitioners prefer inserting in this region rather than in the axilla or inter-axilla, so as not to interfere with the application of the girth and the belly-band. They have no importance.

---

[1] A. Rivet, Guide pratique de l'acheteur de chevaux, p. 71.

5. **Excoriations** following vesicants or revulsives. These should induce the buyer to examine with care the state of the lungs, for these agents are sometimes intentionally applied here to divert the attention from the place which should more particularly require their application.

Let us say, finally, that in some instances the abdomen may be *distended*, *tympanitic*, and *painful* to pressure. These symptoms indicate acute or chronic inflammation of the digestive viscera, or the peritoneum, or the presence of diverse profound lesions which we shall here only hint at.

CHAPTER IV.

LATERAL FACES OF THE BODY.

A.—The Costal Region; Ribs; Sides.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The region of the ribs is situated upon the lateral parts of the trunk, below the *back*, behind the *shoulder* and *arm*, in front of the *flank*, and above the *xiphoid region* and the *abdomen*.

It has for its base the last twelve ribs, which are not concealed by the shoulder, and which are covered by the great dorsal, the great serratus, and the great oblique muscles of the abdomen; the intercostal muscles, external and internal, fill the spaces which exist between them.

Movements.—In the normal state, the ribs execute regularly alternative movements of elevation and depression, more or less extensive according to the state of respiration and the numerous circumstances which modify its rhythm. These movements, especially perceptible under the skin of emaciated horses, are of two kinds: the first movement takes place during inspiration, and is explained by an augmentation of the intercostal spaces and the rotation of the ribs forward and their abduction from the median line; it corresponds to the dilatation of the thoracic cavity and the lungs; the second movement, coinciding with expiration, consists in the approximation of the ribs and in their rotation backward and inward; it corresponds to the contraction of the thorax and the compression of the lungs.

Form.—Slightly flattened towards its superior part, and much more rounded as it is examined more posteriorly, this region presents two opposite conformations. The ribs are called *round* when they describe, as a whole, a well-defined convexity from above to below; they are *flat* in the contrary disposition.

Beauties.—The due *curvature* of the ribs, their definite *separation from each other*, and their full development in *length* are three absolute beauties, or points of excellence, to be desired in all horses, whatever

may be their service. In explaining the reasons for this, we will show the inconveniences resulting from their flatness, their nearness to each other, and their want of length.

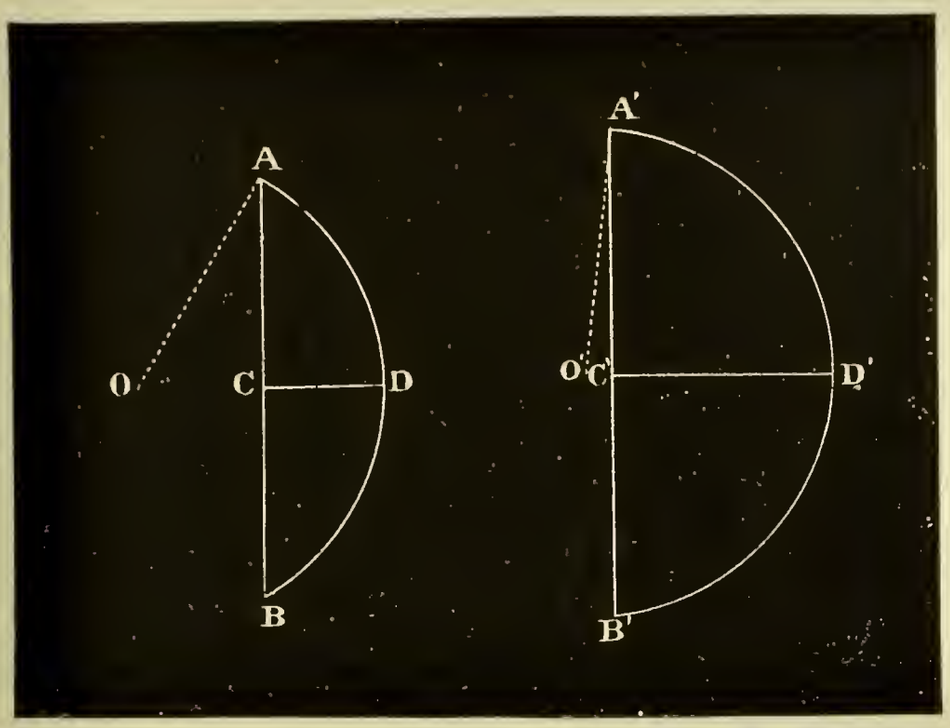


FIG. 42.

1st. The normal **curvation** of the ribs is in direct relation with a large transverse diameter of the thoracic cavity, and, consequently, with the development of the respiratory apparatus.

Before proceeding further, let us determine what is understood by the *convexity of a curve.* It is the relation which exists between the height of its arch and the length of its chord, supposing, be it well understood, that we are speaking of a regular curve. In other words, a curve is much more convex when it forms a greater projection upon a shorter chord. Thus, the two arcs ADB, $A'D'B'$ (Fig. 42), although belonging to two circumferences of the *same radius* ($OA = O'A'$), have not the same convexity relatively to the chord which unites them, for the arcs and their chords are different, and their relations, $\frac{CD}{AB}$, $\frac{C'D'}{A'B'}$, are not equal. Again, the curve AOB (Fig. 43) is more convex than the curve AOC, although its height be equal, because the ratio $\frac{OR}{AB}$ is greater than the ratio $\frac{DE}{AC}$

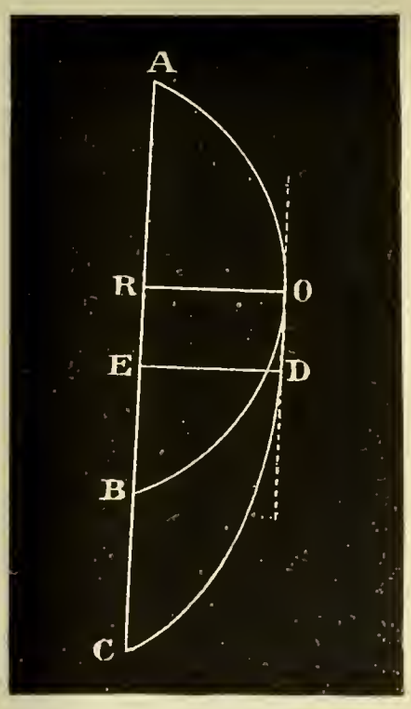


FIG. 43.

Therefore, because two curves have the same projection upon their chord, it must not be concluded that their convexity is the same, this condition being realized only when the chords are equal.

What we have just applied to the arcs can be extended to the ribs, although

complete similarity may not be possible, on account of the irregularity of their curvature and the variations of their length and form.

Henry Cline long ago demonstrated[1] that the more the pectoral cavity deviates from a cylindrical form the more its capacity is diminished. It results from this that the rib which presents the greatest curvature will also be the one which circumscribes the greatest space. Depress a cone or cylinder, and the reduction of their volume is in proportion to the flatness of their surface. The thorax may be regarded as a flattened cone; and this is why we say: *for an equal length of the ribs*, the chest can never gain in height what it has lost in width; or, in other words, the convexity of the ribs is the first beauty, or point of structural merit, to be sought for in a good conformation of this region.

2d. This is not all; the ribs, as structural elements of the costal region, should also be **long**, for this length of ribs constitutes, for an *equal width of the chest*, the thoracic measurement in the vertical sense. The volume of a solid depends upon the relation which exists between its three dimensions; to be large, it is necessary that the dimensions should all be as large as possible.

It is, however, interesting to know that the rib can make up by its length for the lack of chest-volume occasioned by its loss of convexity. This proposition, which appears to be contradictory, in principle, to that which we have just given above, is, however, very logical, as we shall see.

In the preceding case we supposed the length of the rib invariable, and only made its curvature variable. In the present case we investigate the problem under its two aspects by modifying its data to find the compensations, if any exist. This method can be illustrated by the following comparison: Is there for two horses, the one having very round ribs and a low chest, the other, less convex ribs and a very high chest, any compensation in respect to the thoracic capacity?

Nearly all authors answer this question in the affirmative, and, theoretically speaking, they are correct.

Let us suppose the two ribs AOB and ADC (Fig. 44). Let us also remember that they have not the same convexity, since the ratio $\frac{OR}{AB}$ is greater than $\frac{DE}{AC}$, which indicates that the first is more curved than the second.

A glance at the figure shows that not only does the rib ADC circumscribe a surface equal to that of the rib AOB, but one that much exceeds the latter. Here, then, are two animals having the same width of the chest and a different convexity of the ribs, for which there is more than a compensation. Another

[1] Henry Cline, Traité sur la forme des animaux, published in the work of M. G. Lefèvre de Sainte-Marie: De la race bovine courte corne améliorée, dite Race de Durham, Paris, 1849, p. 325.

form of rib, *AOG*, might be found, for example, circumscribing a narrower chest for which there would be a proper compensation.

Such are the results which can be deduced from an examination of the figure.

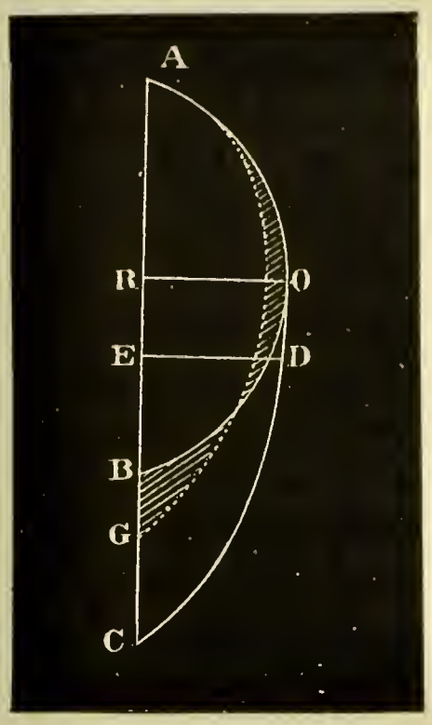


FIG. 44.

But unfortunately for the position of those who defend this opinion, there is here much difference between theory and practice; and since, after all, we must view the horse as he is, and not as we desire him to be, we must say that the ratio existing between the height of the chest and its width does not vary to a great extent. In thirty-six horses of different races, measured in this respect, we have seen this ratio range between 1.125 and 1.468; it should have a mean of 1.273.

It follows from this that the compensations offered by the chest in its height are not as valuable as we were at first sight tempted to believe, because of the harmonious relations which exist between the two diameters of the thorax. A flat rib is in most instances short; a round one is more often long; the thoracic cavity but little developed in one sense has many chances of being small in another; *this is especially the reason why a flat side should be rejected.*

It would always be in defiance of the most elementary observation to say that the existence of pectoral compensations is to be absolutely denied. Such compensations are possible theoretically, and in practice they do exist; but they are rare and very limited. If a large number of horses be measured, some are found having the same conformation and the same width of the chest, with a difference of only two or three centimetres in the height of the latter. Less commonly, horses are seen which present a diminution of, perhaps, one or two centimetres in the width of the chest, but which redeem themselves by an excess of three or four centimetres, at most, in the height. But these last are exceptions so difficult to meet that we have reason to doubt whether the internal mensurations of the thorax would, in fact, give the proof of a real compensation.

It is always true that the ribs, even if deficient in convexity, are still capable of circumscribing a spacious thoracic cavity, upon the sole condition that they are long and their flatness is not very marked. The essential point is to know when the defect will be compensated and when it will not be. This is a point which demands great practical skill, and

upon which many connoisseurs are led into error. We think that we are giving good advice to beginners in recommending them always to disapprove of the flat rib, whatever may be its apparent length. In the presence of such a conformation they should not neglect to assure themselves, by a more complete examination of the other regions, of the state of development which the respiratory organs present. This is, in our opinion, the easiest and most positive means of recognizing the compensation, if any exists.

Besides, the roundness of the chest-wall, often more apparent than real, may lead superficial observers into error. The volume of the muscles which cover the thoracic walls and the abundance of fat and subcutaneous tissue may have the effect of making the parietes of the chest appear more round than it really is, and of concealing the essential bony pieces which constitute its base and limit its internal cavity.

3d. The **width of the intercostal spaces** is a beauty, or point of excellence, of no less importance. When the ribs are well separated, the thoracic walls present a large surface, extending from before to behind, and circumscribing a deeper cavity. Their separation from each other coincides also with their great *projection backward*, and it is easily understood that the latter gives the measure of their *projection forward* during inspiration. The movements of the different parts of the thorax should be as extensive as possible, in order that the lungs may have sufficient freedom of action. Large intercostal spaces support strong inspiratory muscles, and, therefore, imply great possible displacement of the pectoral walls.

To recapitulate, the beauty of the ribs resides:

1st. In their great curvature from the shoulder backward.

2d. In their length, or in the vertical extent of the thoracic perimeter.

3d. In their strong projection backward.

4th. Finally, in their separation from each other.

Defects.—Ribs that are *flat, short, little inclined backward, little separated*, characterize a horse which is short-winded and without power, whatever may be his breed, his stature, his temperament, or his origin.

In ordinary language, this vicious conformation is expressed by saying that the *false ribs are short* and the *hoop-ribs are but little descended*, or that the animal *has need of ribs.*

Diseases and Blemishes.—*a.* Horses which have suffered from a prolonged sickness, and which for this reason have assumed the decubitus for a long time, sometimes present a flatness of the one or the other region of the ribs.

b. Those which have been affected with a serious pneumonia or a pleurisy, and to which repeated applications of revulsives and blisters have been made, often show along the inferior surface of the region denudations accompanied by large discolorations of the skin or the hairs. It is important, in examining such animals, to observe attentively the character of the cough and the movements of the flank, in order to be assured that these affections no longer exist.

c. At other times there are cicatrices situated at the level and in front of parts covered by the saddle, and due to setons inserted for a therapeutic purpose. These counter-irritants are directed vertically, or are slightly oblique from before backward and from above to below. When they are observed, or their traces are found, we should inform ourselves more completely as to the reasons for their application, and the present condition of the horse, according to the manner indicated below.

d. Heavy draught-, light draught-, and saddle-horses offer also, on the parts which receive pressure and friction from the shafts, the pole, the traces, the saddle, and the girth, depilations, wounds, cicatrices, and sit-fasts, known under the name of *corns*, which are the result of wounds occasioned by these pieces of the harness.

e. Finally, bony tumors may be seen upon the course of one or several of the ribs. These are traces of old fractures, usually situated upon the middle parts of the region. Nearly always they are complicated by contracting adhesions with the lung, through the existence of a localized inflammation of the pleura which covers the internal surface of these bones. Likewise, as Lecoq says, we have reason to fear, especially when several ribs have been fractured, that a supervening affection of the chest may be aggravated by this cause.

The Chest in General.

We have now examined separately the regions which concur to form this vast cavity, and we shall next investigate it as a whole with regard to the correlation between its dimensions and its beauties.

Definition; Limits; Anatomical Base; Usages.—The chest is that part of the body which corresponds to the bony cage designated under the name of *thorax*. Bounded above by the *withers* and the *back;* in front by the *neck* and the *breast;* on each side by the *shoulder*, the *arm*, the *axilla*, and the *ribs;* below by the *inter-axilla*, the *xiphoid region*, and the *abdomen;* and, finally, behind by the *abdomen* and the *flanks*, it has for its osseous base the following parts:

a. On the median line and above, the bodies of all the dorsal vertebræ.

b. Laterally, the ribs and the intercostal spaces.

c. Inferiorly, the superior face of the sternum and the cartilages of prolongation of the ribs.

d. Behind, the diaphragm, convex in front and pierced by three openings, traversed by the aorta, the œsophagus, and the posterior vena cava.

Open in front to afford passage to the trachea, the œsophagus, and the vessels of the head and anterior members, as well as to the important nerves, it has in general the form of a cone, with the base posterior and truncated obliquely from above to below, and from behind to before; it is depressed upon its lateral faces.

Its functions are complex and of three kinds:

Through the bony parts, it is primarily an apparatus of *protection* to the central organs of respiration and circulation. By the mobility which it possesses, it constitutes the most important agent in the respiratory mechanism. Finally, by its resistance, its connections with the spine, and the extent of its skeletal surface, it plays an important *rôle* in locomotion by furnishing numerous points of attachment to the muscles which belong to the superior sections of the thoracic members. To fulfil this last purpose, its first pieces are short, strong, straight, and but slightly movable, for their action would be very much disturbed by their relation with the shoulder and arm. The last pieces, on the contrary, are curved more and more, narrower, removed from the median plane, and leave a wide space at the posterior part of the pulmonary lobes.

Beauties.—Although the chest-wall is far from being observable over its whole extent from the outside, it is possible to judge of its capacity with much precision. This knowledge is of the greatest importance, for it furnishes information upon the essential elements of the value of the horse.

The chest may be called *beautiful* when it is *high, wide,* and *long.* Let us see the meaning which should be attached to these three words:

1st. **Height.**—This is measured from the summit of the withers to the inferior surface of the xiphoid region; this line, then, marks the true vertical diameter of the thorax, that diameter being greatest at the spinous process of the fifth dorsal vertebra, which forms, as we have seen, the culminating point of the withers.

This dimension must not be confounded with the *depth,* which is measured from before to behind; it is to be regretted that some hippotomists have changed, in this connection, the meaning of a term established by long usage.[1]

In speaking of the ribs, we have said that this height, with the corresponding width, is directly proportional to the length of these bony arches. When this height is considerable, the chest is said to be *well descended,* an epithet which depicts its situation relative to the ground.

We must remember, moreover, that the extent of this thoracic dimension is one of the conditions of pectoral amplitude. It should, however, not be forgotten that this factor alone is insufficient to the development of the thoracic capacity; the curvature of the ribs must also be taken into the reckoning. Leaving out of the account the length of the fifth dorsal spinal apophysis, the height of the chest is nothing else than the chord of the arch represented by the ribs. Mere height of the chest has no longer any importance but for the coexistent

---

[1] The depth of a thing, says Littré, is the extent of this thing, considered from its entrance to its bottom. The *entrance* of the chest is situated between the first two ribs; its *bottom* is the diaphragm. Therefore, here, depth is synonymous with length.

curvature of the ribs. In fact, it is known that by depressing a cylinder its capacity can be reduced without diminishing its surface.

It is not correct to believe that the height of the chest is always proportionate to the height of the withers. We have already shown that the length of the spinal apophyses of this region is subject to numerous variations, and that the *prominence* of the withers often depends upon the mode of suspension of the trunk between the anterior members.

A horse whose chest has a good height should, according to M. Gayot,[1] measure a greater distance from the top of the withers to the interior face of the sternum than from this point to the ground. The first distance would exceed the second thirty centimetres in well-formed saddle- and driving-horses, with a height of about one hundred and sixty centimetres, whilst it might not be more than fifteen or twenty centimetres in animals of an inferior conformation.

We must acknowledge that we are still ignorant of the exact proportions. Not only is the distance between the ground and the xiphoid region not equal to the height of the chest, but the latter is always several centimetres greater; the difference may even be twenty centimetres. Our measures have been made with the aid of the metrical standard and the compass of depth upon more than fifty horses of all varieties,—slow and rapid workers, saddle- and race-horses, etc.; they have been taken upon common horses, Percherons, Boulonnaise, Belgians, Bretons, Normans, Berrichons, Andalusians, Barbs, Tarbans, and English thoroughbreds.

It is scarcely necessary to add that this height must be examined from the side of the chest; it would be impossible to appreciate it accurately by viewing the region from any other direction. The chest, to be *high* and *well descended*, should extend well below the summit of the elbow.

2d. **Width.**—The **width** of the chest is the result of the curvature of its osseous parts. It is measured from the middle ribs to those which correspond to them upon the opposite lateral plane. To do this, the observer is stationed in front of the animal, so as to see the profile of the ribs and the degree in which they project beyond the shoulders on the right and the left. The roundness of the ribs is also judged by viewing the horse obliquely, either in front or behind.

It is not necessary to refer here to the advantages of a large transverse development of the thoracic cavity, but we would caution the

---

[1] L. Moll et Eug. Gayot, La connaissance générale du cheval, Paris, 1861, p. 137.

reader against certain ideas which are too absolute, and which exist among horsemen. Some prefer the cylindrical chest for slow and heavy motors; they reject it, on the contrary, for rapid services, in which they would prefer the elliptical form. The latter form, whilst giving equal space within the chest, tends to limit the lateral displacements of the centre of gravity, and thus facilitates the velocity of the gait. Others insist that there is sufficient compensation between the two forms, but consider width of chest as a beauty, or point of merit, in all cases.

We have seen, when speaking of the ribs, that a high chest is spacious only on account of its proportional width, but the relation between the vertical and the transverse diameters varies less than is generally thought. The development in one direction very often carries with it a correlative development in the other. The digressions which seem to contradict this principle are more apparent than real, for the condition of the body has much influence upon the external dimensions of the chest. Take a horse in good health, vigorous, well proportioned, and subject him to excessive work and insufficient food, and measure his chest when emaciation has reached its extreme limits. Not only is he unrecognizable in his general form, but his narrow thorax and his flat ribs have modified the correlation of his two thoracic diameters, and we shall be astonished to find it to be 1.4, when, for example, it was 1.2. When the animal is ill cared for, when good nourishment and moderate exercise no longer maintain the harmonies of the economy, all the functions are diminished, especially those of respiration and circulation. The chest tends to become contracted, at the same time that the muscles become smaller, for the lungs are less active in the animal which is emaciated.

To make a contrary experiment, take the same horse and entirely change his conditions of existence; his chest will reassume its form, according as its muscles augment in volume, density, and energy.

The training which animals destined for the race-course undergo, and that which results from the special labor to which work-horses are subjected, constitute, again, important causes of a development of fulness of the chest. In the horse, as in man, muscular gymnastics have the effect of increasing the thoracic perimeter. If we were not convinced of this fact in practice, our purchasing officers would every day refuse horses whose chest is not perfect at the moment of the sale. Our remounts take them because they know that this defect will partly disappear after sufficient exercise.

Thus, in our opinion, amplitude of all the thoracic diameters should

be desired, whatever may be the service required, for they are correlative to one another. The variations, in this respect, are so insignificant that they do not deserve to be taken into consideration. The English thoroughbred horse differs essentially in his form from the heavy draught-horse, but the relations of the three dimensions of his chest are sensibly the same as in the latter when both have a spacious lung. All proportions considered, the rib seems perhaps a little longer and less convex; what tends especially to make it appear thus is the particular nature of the tissues and muscles which cover it.

3d. **Depth or Length.**—The **length** of the chest is measured from before backward, from the angle of the shoulder to the middle part of the last rib. It is easily appreciated by examining the horse in profile. It depends upon: 1st, the width of the intercostal spaces; 2d, the degree of projection of the ribs behind.

The chest may be deep without the back acquiring an immoderate length.

In fact, ribs very much arched and strongly oblique behind and below cause the thoracic cavity to encroach in a certain proportion upon the abdomen. Nevertheless, as the width of the intercostal spaces is in direct ratio with the length of the dorsal region, it follows that a *long* chest is incompatible with a short back. The English horse presents a very fine chest when he is well formed, and he generally transmits this beauty to his descendants as well as to the offspring of his crosses with our native horses.

Defects.—When the chest is deficient in *height*, the horse is said to be *too far from the earth;* he *has no chest*, no xiphoid region; *too much air passes under his abdomen;* he is *wanting in girth;* his *sides* or *false ribs are short;* his *hoops are not low enough.* When the chest is wanting in width, it is said to be *narrow;* it is *short*, on the contrary, when it is wanting in *length* or *depth.*

Finally, when it is deficient in its three dimensions, the animal *lacks* or *has no insides.*

In describing the inherent beauties of a large development of the chest we have, at the same time, demonstrated the inconveniences of its defects; it is, therefore, not necessary to return to the latter here.

To recapitulate, the chest, to be *beautiful*, or ideally perfect, should be *high*, *wide*, and *long.*

The relation existing between its different diameters varies but little in horses of the same race.

The *differences* depend in most instances upon the state of fatness or emaciation of the animals, or upon improper exercise and training.

In a general way, the chest *is* or *is not spacious*, the harmony of the whole implying only that an increase in one direction *is ordinarily followed* by an augmentation in the others.

It is from this point of view, especially, that animals differ in regard to their thoracic capacity.

Exceptions are always found. Certain horses *are deficient* in one or another of the diameters, most often in the *width*.

In such cases *compensations* are *possible*, but within a very *small limit*. They are always *very rare* and *very difficult to estimate*.

We must not, then, allow ourselves to be misled by appearances; we should form our judgment on a complete examination of the respiratory apparatus.

B.—The Flank.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The flank is a double region, situated behind the *ribs*, in front of the *haunch*, the *thigh*, and the *stifle-joint*, below the *loins*, and above the *abdomen*, with which it is continuous. Its principal base is the small oblique muscle of the abdomen, with a portion of the great oblique and the transverse.

Divisions.—Three **divisions** are recognized, more or less distinct according to the individuals and the conditions in which they are placed; the names which have been given to them indicate quite accurately the special configuration which they present.

The first, external to the lumbar region and in front of the haunch, is called the *hollow of the flank*, because it presents a depression so much more distinct as the intestinal mass is heavy and farther removed from it. It is very pronounced in horses with a *pendulous* or *cow's abdomen*.

The second division, or *cord of the flank*, corresponds especially to the fleshy part of the small oblique muscle of the abdomen. It forms a rounded relief, oblique, downward and forward, which extends from the angle of the haunch to the cartilaginous circle of the false ribs.

Finally, the third division, the most inferior of all, known by the name of the *movable portion of the flank*, is united to the stifle-joint by a very mobile cutaneous fold, and becomes insensibly continuous with the abdomen.

Three things are to be examined in this region: its *form*, its *extent*, and its *movements*.

1st. **Form.**—When the flank is well formed, its hollow is but little observed, its cord is scarcely prominent, and its movable part continues regularly with the external surface of the abdomen and the last ribs. A flank of this description is seen in animals that are well fed and in a proper state of flesh.

When its concavity is too deep, it is said to be *hollow*, as may be observed in horses that are indolent, of a lymphatic temperament, and of large form and pendulous abdomen. It is also seen in meagre animals, and in those which are poorly nourished, or which have been obliged to endure great fatigue or a long period of sickness.

It is called *corded* when its cord or middle part projects above the two others, through the simultaneous effect of the depression of one and the retraction of the other. This state is noticed under the same circumstances as those which cause the hollow flank, of which we have just spoken.

When the inferior part of the flank becomes abruptly continuous with the abdomen, and appears as if pushed back towards the sub-lumbar region, it is said to be *tucked up*. Some authors also call it a *greyhound* flank when it becomes a permanent retraction, the tucking up being, in their opinion, only a transient disposition, always disappearing under an appropriate regimen. The greyhound flank, on the contrary, constitutes a veritable defect, being "an indication that the animal does not eat enough, which is the fault of a poorly-developed appetite; it is impossible to repair in a just measure the waste caused by the action of the apparatus of locomotion, and as, by a singular contradiction of nature, greyhound horses are usually endowed with great energy, they are exposed to an early ruin if they are not used with care, since the losses which they sustain are only slowly repaired."[1]

Finally, if the flank unites the three preceding vicious conformations,—if, in other words, it is hollow, corded, and tucked up,—the animal is said to be *thin, poor*.

2d. **Extent.**—The **extent** of this region is estimated by its width, measuring from the angle of the haunch to the last rib. This measurement should be as small as possible, and a flank of this kind is said to be *short* or *narrow*. Let us see the reasons for this.

Most hippotomists assert that the width of the flank is in direct relation with the length of the loins, and that the measure of the one gives correctly that of the other. This assertion can be considered only as relatively true, for the reason that the last rib, on account of its projection backward, does not end where the lumbar region begins. No doubt the width of the flank will, to a certain degree, depend upon the great or small extent of the loin, for the rib comes more or less near to the haunch. In order that this last proposition should become rigorously true, it would be necessary that the length of the loins

---

[1] H. Bouley, Nouveau dictionnaire pratique, etc., t. vii. p. 54, art. "Flanc."

should correspond always to the width of the flank, which, as we have just stated, is not the case.

A more exact relation then remains to be established: it is that this width is the consequence of the depth of the chest first, and the length of the lumbar region afterwards. The latter varies much less than is generally believed in horses of the same size and race. It is quite otherwise with the former. When speaking of the chest, we have seen that the different depths of this cavity depend especially upon the degree of backward projection of the ribs, supposing a constant length of the back. The shortness of the flank indicates a deep chest, short loins, and well-developed muscles; it is in these features that its beauty resides. All are in accord upon this point. Horse-dealers do not fail to show, by placing two fingers flat upon the region, that the *animal has only two fingers' width of flank.*

It seems useless to detail the disadvantages of a contrary conformation. It is evident that too much area is a defect, indicating, at the same time, the mobility and lack of solidity of the loins and the want of capacity of the chest. In this case the flank is said to be *long.*

3d. **Movements.**—Composed exclusively of soft structures, and attached to the last rib, whose movements, normal or abnormal, it follows, the flank is indeed, as has been said, the *true mirror of the thoracic cavity.*

In ordinary conditions, when the horse is at rest, it rises and falls, alternately recedes from and approaches the median line, as the air enters the lungs or is expelled from them. During inspiration its cord is effaced, its hollow is depressed, its inferior part enlarges, descends, and is confounded with the hypochondriac circle. During expiration, on the contrary, its cord is quite apparent, its hollow is less deep, its movable part ascends, is retracted, and increases the prominence of the false ribs.

These movements should be executed regularly, slowly, without any jerks, and should succeed each other at almost equal intervals. Let us, however, notice a very correct observation of J. Girard, ignorance of which might lead one into error: after six or seven equal respirations a longer one occurs.

The number of respiratory movements of the flank varies according to the age, the seasons, and the physiological condition; but its mean may be estimated at twelve or fourteen to the minute. It increases with exercise according to the duration, extent, rapidity, and intensity of the efforts which the animal has been obliged to make. We have determined it to be eighty-seven after a gallop of about half an hour. This number

is always much greater immediately after than during the exercise. This results from the fact that the thorax furnishes numerous points of attachment to the muscles of locomotion, and thus loses its rigidity during work, precisely in the measure necessary to assure pulmonary oxygenation and avoid asphyxia. After a race, on the contrary, the muscles which extend from the thorax to the members no longer act, and the ribs need preserve no longer the same fixity; the respiratory movements are now as much accelerated as they were before separated.

All horses do not have exaggerations of the respirations in the same proportion after exercise; some become breathless much more quickly than others. We shall explain this fact when we discuss the depth of the chest. However it may be, the horse which remains "winded" a long time after exertion lacks endurance, is said to be *panting*, or *short-breathed*, and usually has a narrow chest and a tucked-up flank.

Examination of the Flank.—We often limit ourselves to a superficial examination of this region, but this practice is wrong, for it is one of the most important regions of the surface of the horse's body. To avoid any doubt as to the regularity of its movements, two examinations should be made: the first in the morning and when the horse is at rest, and the next after a certain amount of exercise. It will be well in both cases to give the animal several handfuls of oats.

These are the reasons for this procedure: at rest and in the morning the respiratory movements are less frequent; the horse is not excited, and at this time he presents the most regular and most normal manifestation of his functions. After light exercise, the respiratory movements are increased, and those of the flank are more numerous and more intense, and sometimes reveal respiratory diseases which would have remained unperceived had not the organs themselves, so to speak, been obliged to show, by a greater activity, their physiological imperfections or their pathological alterations. Finally, the few handfuls of oats which the animal eats have the effect of turning his attention away from the persons or things which surround him.

In summer it will also be well to free him from all insects which may torment him.

The observer should place himself in such a position as to view the flank obliquely, in order to distinguish better its profile. He may be stationed either in front, one metre from the shoulder, or behind, and at the same distance from the croup; the eye will then follow with care and ease the oscillations of the lower part of the flank at the level of its attachment to the cartilages of the false ribs. The examination

will be made successively upon the two flanks, for it is sometimes accomplished better on the one side than on the other. The purely anatomical explanation which has been given for this is not sufficiently satisfactory to arrest our attention here.

It will be possible, with the aid of these precautions, to determine the modifications of number and rhythm of the movements without much difficulty. However, it is necessary to have a certain amount of practice and possess some knowledge of the different diseases which may affect this region, for it is a question of slight variations, sometimes scarcely apparent, the appreciation of which requires the co-operation of an expert.

Among the most common alterations of the flank there is one which is quite compatible with all the apparent signs of health, and which frequently escapes detection up to the moment of sale; it is that due to *pulmonary emphysema*, an alteration which produces characteristic lesions in the lungs, consisting of an infiltration of air into the parenchyma of those organs. This lesion, clearly proved, is redhibitory, and nullifies the contract of sale or exchange, according to the terms of Article 2 of the law of August 2, 1884.

The expiratory movement in the emphysematous horse is double, and is separated by a short interval of time (hence called *double time*), during which the flank suddenly expands, and stops for an instant, to continue again its former expiratory movement.

This double expiratory effort is more or less apparent according to the stage of the disease. However this may be, as soon as the disease has been detected, the animal should be made to cough by compressing the origin of the trachea. If the cough is dry, slight, abortive, and several times repeated; if the nostrils are much dilated after exercise; if they are both covered in cold weather with a grayish discharge adhering to the ala; if the chest has an abnormal resonance on percussion; if the movements of the flanks cause the entire body to move, particularly the anus; if labore dbreathing is rapidly developed in warm weather, the respiration loud, the anxiety extreme, etc., the existence of a very advanced case of emphysema may be positively affirmed.

Unfortunately, these characteristics are far from being always evident at the time of the sale, and they very often pass unperceived by inexperienced persons. By placing such animals in special conditions of alimentation, by submitting them to a particular mode of treatment in which arsenious acid plays an important part, merchants can sometimes conceal the disease, or, at least, mitigate it in a notable degree. The purchaser cannot be too exacting as to the integrity of

the movements of the flank, nor too much discredit all the more or less specious reasons which the seller never fails to give, in such cases, in opposition to any unfavorable assertions concerning the horse.

Diseases and Defects.—The flanks may be the seat of *tumors* of diverse nature. Sometimes these are *indurations* of the skin, a kind of callosities produced by the ring of the breeching in shaft-horses; at other times they are *abscesses*, which are caused by the continual rubbing of that part of the harness. They may be the result of a *ventral hernia*, a portion of the intestine being expelled from its cavity on account of a rent in the abdominal walls. Finally, they are due to the presence of *farcy-buds* or *lymphatic cords* which cross the flank to reach the ganglia of the inguinal region.

"The frequent expulsion of gas from the anus, which takes place in emphysematous horses, has induced ignorant horsemen to make an artificial fistula above or upon the side of the anus, by which they pretend to relieve the horse of the great quantity of air which he has in his body. At present this ridiculous operation, which formerly annulled the redhibitory action in regard to horses upon which it had been practised, is abandoned." [1]

The special object of this procedure, of which we have seen some examples, was to prevent the noisy expulsion of gas through the anus by giving it a more direct outlet, in order to conceal to a certain extent the severe emphysema of which it is one of the symptoms.

C.—The Groin.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **groin**, which until now has not been comprised among the regions of the exterior, nevertheless deserves to be pointed out, on account of the examination which should be made of it.

It corresponds on each side to the cutaneous fold extending from the abdomen to the thigh, and has for its base the inferior inguinal ring, which, as we know, gives passage, in the male, to the testicular cord and the external pudic vessels, and, in the female, to the mammary nerves and vessels. The superficial inguinal ganglia are also seen here on the side of the abdomen; much more deeply, and on the side of the thigh, the elongated group of deep inguinal ganglia, less directly explorable than the preceding; finally, the part is covered by a fine skin, with downy hairs, oily to the touch, usually black and very pliable.

Limited in front by the *abdomen*, behind and externally by the superior and internal extremity of the *thigh*, internally by the *scrotum*, or the *mammæ*, this region presents, properly speaking, neither beauties nor defects. We need only assure ourselves of the absence of blemishes.

In undertaking its *exploration*, some precautions must be taken, especially in irritable horses. In examining the right side, for instance, the observer, after having warned the animal, will station himself

---

[1] Lecoq, Traité de l'extérieur du cheval, 5e éd., p. 92.

opposite the flank, apply his left hand to the croup, and with his right seek the inguinal ring, taking care to avoid being injured by the posterior member. If the horse is very sensitive, and attempts to rear, bite, or kick, an anterior member or the left posterior should be raised. The manœuvres are of the same nature, but of an inverse order, when the groin of the opposite side is explored.

The principal *alterations* which are observed in this region are enlargements known by the name of *glands*, which involve the superficial inguinal lymphatic glands, and whose presence often coincides with the existence of a glanderous diathesis. It will be prudent in such a case to examine the corresponding member, as well as the surface of the body, and, particularly, the course of the lymphatics, to see if no other symptoms of farcy exist, such as cords and buds.

Inguinal hernia is sometimes observed in the groin, which enlarges the testicular cord and no longer permits the different parts which compose it to roll under the fingers. We will refer to it again when treating of the scrotum.

CHAPTER V.

POSTERIOR EXTREMITY.

A.—The Tail.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **tail** is a long, flexible appendix, situated at the posterior extremity of the trunk, limited in front by the *croup*, below by the *anus*, and laterally by the *point of the buttock*.

This appendage is an ornament to the horse in the same manner as the mane, and is of great utility in protecting him against insects.

It has for its base the coccygeal vertebræ, as well as the four pairs of coccygeal muscles, which cover their surface. These muscles endow it with movements of elevation, depression, and lateral inclination; the skin which covers them, and which is very adherent, is furnished with long *hairs* over its whole surface, except upon its inferior face and at the level of its base.

Two divisions are recognized in this region,—the *stump* and the *hairs*.

Attachment and Carriage.—The **tail** should be strong at its origin, commencing high up on the croup, and be harmoniously supported during locomotion. It is then said to be *well attached* and *well carried*. When it does not present this uniformity of character, it is

called *badly attached*, or *badly carried*. Often in very energetic horses, during work, it is concave superiorly, and even retroverted forward, which is expressed by saying that it is of *trumpet* form. Some persons call it *rabbit's tail, planted as in an apple*, when it originates almost horizontally from a very oblique croup.

It is easy to understand that its attachment and its carriage depend upon the direction of the croup. When the latter is horizontal, the animal carries this organ with elegance; with an oblique croup, on the contrary, the tail is poorly sustained, being applied against the buttock.

According to its good or its vicious position, admirers of horses draw, in a manner entirely empirical, an accurate conclusion as to the energy and vigor of the animal. The explanation of this opinion is found in the fact that when the elevator muscles are well developed and have a dominant action over the depressors, it is an excellent sign in subjects whose general muscular system is strongly developed. As horses of the finer races have the sacrum rectilinear from before to behind, whilst those of the common races have it usually convex in the same direction; as, besides, this direction of the bone has an influence upon that of the croup, and, therefore, upon the carriage of the tail, we must guard ourselves against forming the conclusion that the beautiful attitude of the latter is in all cases the expression of great energy.

Formerly, dealers and owners frequently attempted to remedy the ungraceful carriage of the tail by excising a part of the depressor muscles so as to allow the elevators their full degree of action; this procedure was simplified by amputating a more or less considerable portion of the stump. This was the operation on the tail *after the English fashion;* the animal which had undergone this operation was said to be *docked in the English style;* it gave him a certain degree of distinction. Cutting the depressor muscles alone, the stump being spared, was called *nicking;* the horse was then *nicked.*

This custom is very old, for Hartmann[1] reports that the council of Calchyd, meeting in England towards the end of the eighth century, prohibited the practice of thus docking horses, on the ground that it was a barbarous custom.[2] There is no doubt that from this usage was derived the nickname *Caudati*, which was given to the English in the thirteenth century.[3] The procedure did not long prevail in England before it passed into Germany.[4]

---

[1] Hartmann, Traité des haras, p. 274.
[2] Journal de Paris, année 1787, Nos. 201 and 216.
[3] Dufresne, Glossar, word "Caudati."
[4] Neue Kriegsbibliothek, Breslau, 1771, 8vo, 6th part.

It is not in place here to speak of the different accidents which may be the consequence of docking; they are quite numerous, and more or less serious. It is sufficient to say that the operation is not always without danger.

Many docked horses carried their tails either to the right or to the left side, like certain terrier dogs. This resulted from raising the tail upon the croup after the operation, and maintaining it there by supporting it by its superior face upon a pad of straw. The latter often became disarranged during locomotion, was displaced backward and forward upon the croup, and rendered the cicatrization irregular.

State of the Stump.—The *stump* has the form of a quadrangular pyramid, whose summit corresponds to the free extremity; its inferior face is normally always devoid of hairs.

The tail whose stump is intact is called *entire;* it is said to be *docked* when a portion has been amputated from the latter. We should not neglect to note the one or the other of these conditions when a description of the animal is required.

Some persons attach importance to the development of this part, because it is generally in harmony with the other muscles of the body. It is also customary to raise it at the time of the sale, and to estimate the vigor of the animal according to the degree of resistance which it opposes. As H. Bouley affirms, "the information furnished by this measurement of force seldom leads into error." [1]

State of the Hairs.—When the tail is *entire*, its stump, intact, naturally carries all the hairs which it can support. At present the horse is said to have a full mane and tail when they have not been shortened. In such cases, their abundance and their length vary much according to the race and the subject. It is known that in Arabian horses the hairs of the tail often touch the ground; in others, they usually stop more or less below the hock; they are always disposed in a point inferiorly, like the bristles of a brush.

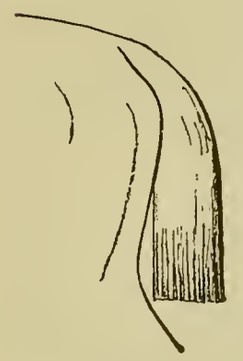


Fig 45.

It is rare that they are preserved in this state. They are usually shortened in different ways; they are divided transversely, sometimes on a level with the chestnuts or the point of the hock, sometimes towards the fold of the buttock. In the description, this kind of section should be indicated in the following manner: *entire tail, shortened hairs.* All race-horses are thus treated

[1] H. Bouley, Maison rustique du XIXe siècle, 1, ii. p. 203.

(Fig. 45). The tail is then more easily *turned up*, it soils the rider less, and is much less liable to catch the reins, an accident often serious on account of the energetic kicking which it at times provokes.

As soon as the stump has been shortened, it is plain that a certain number of hairs are wanting; the horse can no longer be described as having a *full* tail. Special designations have been employed which recall the particular disposition of the hair upon the horse's tail.

Fig. 46.

When, for example, after amputation practised upon the stump, the remaining hairs preserve their entire length, the tail is like a *broom* (Fig. 46), on account of the aspect it presents; inferiorly it terminates in a tapering point, like a paint-brush, as in horses with full mane and tail. When it is too long, it is sometimes shortened with the knife, but its form is preserved. It is usually allowed to have its full length in draught-horses.

If, after the amputation of a portion of the stump, the hairs are cut transversely at the level of the fold of the buttock, or slightly below, the tail, still quite long, is called *banged*. Such is the custom adopted in the army, and in horses performing light work, coach-horses, etc.

At present it is becoming more and more fashionable to have the tail very short in certain horses kept for pleasure, principally Irish cobs, race-horses, and ponies. It then scarcely extends beyond the point of the buttocks.

Three principal forms are given to the tail by the manner in which the hairs are cut; besides, it has not the same aspect on the animal

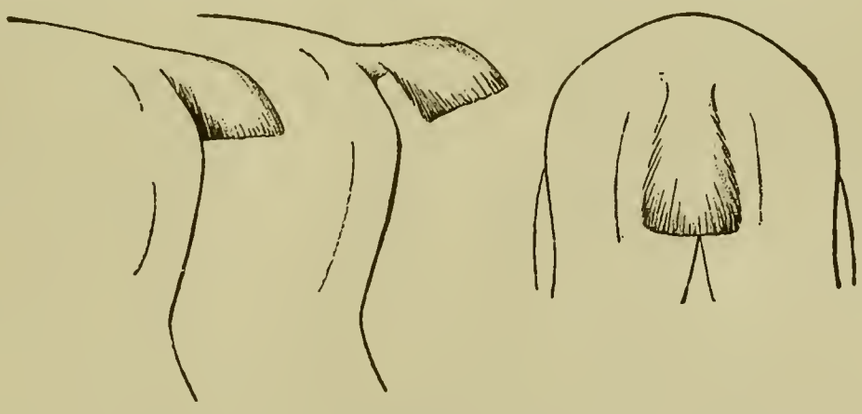


Fig. 47.

when at rest as when at work, in profile as behind, as is shown by the figures. It is called a *short tail* when the hairs have been cut off perpendicularly to the stump and close to the latter (Fig. 47).

Sometimes the hairs are cut obliquely from below upward and from behind to before (Fig. 48).

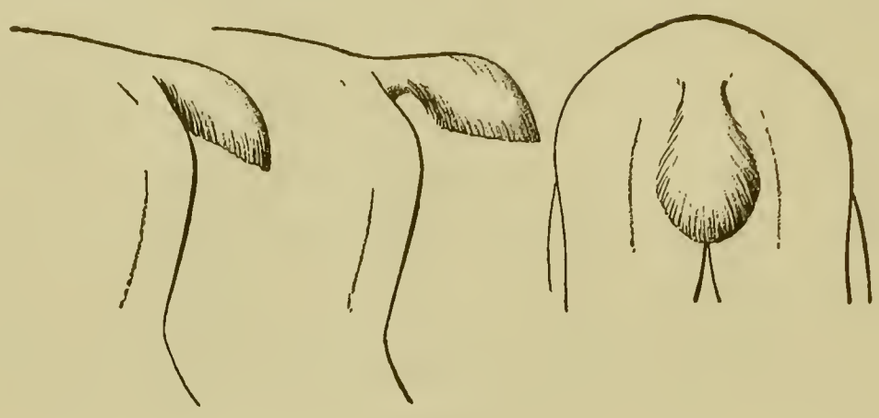


FIG. 48.

Finally, the tail is called *bushy* when the hairs, a little longer than the stump, are excised obliquely, as in the preceding form, but following a convex curve, which is insensibly continued on each side to join the root of the stump. When well supported, it resembles the brushes which bakers use to clean loaves of bread (Fig. 49).

FIG. 49.

Formerly, the name *club-tail* designated one whose stump, with the hairs removed in the middle, cut very short, presented upon the sides two long locks which were allowed to flow freely. The origin of this appellation being much disputed, and, besides, being of little interest, we will say nothing more about it. This form of tail is no longer fashionable. However, Lecoq reports that it is still sometimes seen in tow-path horses.[1]

Finally, the horse is said to be *rat-tailed* when the hairs, thinly scattered, render the partly-denuded skin of the stump visible. Although a proverb asserts that *never does a horse with rat-tail leave his master in trouble,* this peculiarity should always be considered as an inconven-

[1] Lecoq, Extérieur du cheval, p. 73.

ience, on account of the function devolving upon this region, especially in broodmares; it is rejected in services of luxury, on account of the ungraceful appearance which it gives to the animals.

We have already said, in speaking of the mane, that horses with a gray or white coat, with curled woolly mane, always have melanotic deposits in the interior of the body. This state of the mane is extended also to the tail, and constitutes a cause of depreciation so much greater as it is more accentuated, for melanotic tumors often cause the most serious complications.

Merchants have the habit of plaiting the tails of their horses when the hairs are very long, principally in those of heavy draught, before they present them for sale. This practice, intended to give greater apparent width to the posterior part of the trunk and to make the posterior quarters appear more prominent and vigorous, is generally accompanied by a small fraud, which consists in introducing a piece of ginger into the anus. Suddenly the animal feels very energetic, a feeling which he manifests by the elevated carriage of his tail and the vivacity of his movements. We will return to this custom when speaking of the animal at the sale.

A more serious fraud, the employment of which, however, is rare, is the application of a false tail to horses with a rat-tail, for example, or in the case of a pair of horses in which this region is dissimilar. If any doubt is entertained as to this manœuvre, it may always be detected by unplaiting the tail and withdrawing the straw and other accessories which jockeys employ when the horse is to be sold.

When the tail has been the seat of operations practised by dealers, it is useful, at the time of buying, to be guaranteed as to the possible results. On two occasions we have seen animals die of tetanus following amputation of this organ, performed by the seller.

In relation to its **movements**, the tail, during work, should be carried high and remain immobile. If it is agitated in a jerking way, the animal *switches* the organ, as seen in *urinating*, *ticklish* mares when the posterior parts of their bodies are touched or approached. Care should then be taken against kicks and bites; the attitude of the ears and the expression of the physiognomy afford information concerning the intentions of the animal.

Let us remark, in conclusion, that the horse threatened or struck from behind instinctively depresses the tail between the buttocks. It is often sufficient to seize him by this appendage and exercise upon the hairs strong traction from above downward, to prevent him from rearing.

One of the most frequent **diseases** of this region is pruritus, occasioned by the uncleanliness of the skin of the stump, sometimes by the presence of intestinal worms (oxyures), or the itch, which is manifested by depilations, excoriations, and eschars, more or less extensive. These affections always begin by a peculiar straightening of the hairs, which should attract the attention of the purchaser; otherwise they are not serious.

The crupper quite frequently causes wounds when it is not well fitted or padded, especially in animals low in front, in which the saddle and harness have a tendency to slip towards the withers. These lesions are also observed on horses of a good conformation which are harnessed without the breeching, and which are required to descend steep hills. However caused, these wounds sometimes make it impossible for the animal to endure the crupper. We have seen them so deep that they could take the place of nicking. Generally it is sufficient to increase the thickness of the crupper or to discontinue the use of this part of the harness, to enable the sores to heal at once.

We shall further on speak of cicatrices, longitudinal or transverse, traces of docking or nicking; of fistulæ which require a long time to heal, and which complicate these operations; finally, of melanotic tumors, sometimes ulcerated, which cause a black, fetid, and unclean discharge.

B.—The Anus.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **anus** is the posterior orifice of the digestive tube. Situated underneath the *tail* and above the *perineum*, it has for its base the most posterior muscular fibres of the rectum, surrounded by a strong sphincter, related on the sides to two retractor muscles (ischio-anal). Its skin is fine, pliable, oily, devoid of hairs, and black even in white horses; we can sometimes find, however, as in the vicinity of other natural openings, pinkish surfaces deprived of pigment, called *leprous spots*. Internally it is covered by the rectal mucous membrane.

In vigorous and healthy horses the anus forms a rounded projection, firm, depressed, and folded at its centre like the mouth of a purse; it is described as *prominent*. In animals weakened by age, work, and sickness, it appears sunken, soft, and sometimes gaping. It shows, in this case, its mucous interior, and becomes powerless to retain the fæcal matters, which—poorly moulded, on account of the general atony of the digestive tube—are expelled with much gas during locomotion or while the animal is taking a deep inspiration. This state is characterized by giving the animal the epithet *evacuator*.

Diseases and Blemishes.—The anus is especially to be examined in regard to its *alterations*.

Let us speak first of the *melanotic tumors* in certain white or gray horses, the volume of which is an obstacle to the expulsion of the excrements. These

tumors soon soften, ulcerate, and acquire a repulsive aspect and an unpleasant odor, and they lead to fatal results whenever sufficient inflammation is excited.

Anal fistulæ were quite common at the time when the operation of docking the tail was more usually practised, of which they constituted one of the complications. It was not less frequent to find here other fistulæ which were voluntarily made, under the name of *whistle*, or *nightingale*, with the object of relieving horses affected with emphysema, in which the expulsion of gas through the anus is almost constant. As we have shown on a previous page, this practice has long since fallen into disrepute, and is now only the appendage of a gross empiricism.

In certain horses a particular larva is sometimes found, attached strongly to the margin of the anus by the hooks of its cephalic appendix; it is that of the *Œstrus hæmorrhoidalis*, which comes from the stomach and is expelled from the digestive tube to perform its metamorphosis.

There is another larva, that of the *Hippobosca equina*, or horse-tick, better known under the name of *flat fly*, or *spider-fly*, because of its special form. These larvæ are seen under the tail, on the sides of the anus, and on the genital organs, particularly in Oriental horses. They are flat, resistant to pressure, and very adherent to the above-mentioned parts. These flies sometimes emigrate to animals which are not accustomed to them, and excite the horses to such a state of agitation that they are suddenly seized with fright, run away, and demolish everything in their way. It is only necessary to remove the cause of this agitation as soon as it manifests itself, in order to avoid with certainty such formidable dangers.

C.—The Perineum and the Median Raphé.

The **perineum** is a single region comprised between the anus and the external genital organs.

In the **male** it extends from the posterior part of the scrotum to just below the anus. Situated at first between the *thighs*, then between the *buttocks*, it is in relation anatomically to the corresponding part of the urethra and to the perineal aponeurosis which covers the latter. Its skin is black, or sometimes marbled, from the presence of *leprous spots*, which peculiarity should not be omitted in the description of the horse.

It offers neither beauties nor defects for consideration; it should be perfectly distinct and exempt from cicatrices, which might be the result of a dangerous operation, *urethrotomy*, practised in the treatment of calculus of the bladder, or the consequence of blows received by the animal.

In the **mare** this region is much smaller; it corresponds only to the narrow space situated between the vulva and the anus.

Some authors have regarded it as extending to the mammæ, whose situation is quite similar to that of the testicles. But even if we should observe this analogy, the study of the perineum, with regard to the exterior, would not gain in importance.

As to the **raphé**, as its name indicates, it is a kind of cutaneous

thickening which marks the median line, from the sheath and the testicles, or the mammæ, to the anus. It is shown in the form of a small crest, more or less prominent according to the subjects, is a simple peculiarity of the regions upon which it is observed, and, therefore, is devoid of all interest.

CHAPTER VI.

GENITAL ORGANS.

THE examination of the genital organs should not be neglected, either for the purpose of ascertaining their good conformation in animals which are destined for reproduction, or for simply proving their state of health or of disease.

§ 1. GENITAL ORGANS OF THE MALE.

These comprise, with respect to the exterior, the *testicles* and the *penis*, to which are annexed the protecting coverings, dependencies of the integument, known under the name of *enveloping tunics* for the former and *sheath* for the latter.

A.—The Testicles and their Enveloping Tunics.

The organs which secrete the semen, the reproductive fluid of the male, are two glands, situated on each side of the median line, in the inguinal region, and between the thighs. They constitute, as a whole, an irregularly-rounded mass, divided in its middle into two almost equal lobes, by a slight groove, a sort of raphé, which behind is continuous with the perineal *raphé*, and in front is prolonged upon the inferior surface of the *sheath*.

1st. **The Enveloping Tunics.**—The testicles are surrounded by several superposed envelopes, which are, proceeding from the superficial to the deep parts:

a. The *scrotum*, or the skin (but the whole double sac, composed of all the enveloping tunics, is also spoken of as the scrotum).

b. The *dartos*, very adherent to the latter, and forming for each testicle an independent musculo-elastic sac.

c. The *sub-dartoid connective tissue*, a more or less dense layer, which separates the dartos from the following tunic.

d. The *cremaster* or *tunica erythroïdes*, a striated muscle which is attached to

the external surface of the fibrous tunic, and determines the rapid ascending movements of the testicle.

e. The *fibrous tunic*, which surrounds the serous sac in which the testicle is suspended.

f. Finally, the *vaginal tunic* or *sheath*, a diverticulum of the peritoneum, covering the inner face of the fibrous tunic and surrounding the testicle as well as its suspensory cord.

The development of the testicular envelopes varies according to diverse circumstances, such as the degree of descent of the testicles, the state of health or of disease, rest or exercise, the temperature, the race, etc.

Contrary to the general opinion, they are always *formed* at birth, at which time occurs the commencement of the descent of the testicles; but they soon *disappear*, to reappear towards the end of the first year, following, consequently, the migration of the organs which they protect.

These tunics, thin, soft, unctuous, and shiny in fine and well-nourished subjects, are thick, coarse, dull-colored, and rough in common horses. The scrotum or skin is, with few exceptions, almost hairless, of a black color, or only covered by some downy hairs. Nevertheless, in light-colored animals it is sometimes deprived of pigment in certain places, and then offers white or red spots of a variable area, to which is given the name *leprous spots*.

2d. **The Testicles.**—Suspended at the extremity of a *cord* constituted by the vas deferens, blood-vessels, and nerves, these glands consist of ovoid masses depressed laterally, and related by their external face and superior border each to an elongated organ, the *epididymis*, enlarged at its two extremities and formed by an indefinite number of convolutions of its excretory canal. They float freely in their envelopes, but are neither in the same horizontal plane nor in the same transverse line: the left is always more inferior and more posterior than the right. The two testicles are, therefore, so disposed that they can approach the median line without being mutually compressed during the adduction of the thighs, between which they are situated. It is apparent how painful to the animal and dangerous to these organs such friction and compression would be if frequently repeated.

The *examination* of the testicular region requires some precautions, particularly in irritable and sensitive horses.

Let us suppose that this examination be practised upon the left testicle.

The head is maintained in an elevated position by an assistant; in addition, the anterior right foot may be raised. This being done, the

surgeon stations himself opposite the croup of the same side, places the left hand upon the dorso-lumbar region, being careful not to stand in the line of action of the corresponding posterior member, and goes, with the right hand, in search of the testicles, having previously caressed the parts which surround the region.

When these organs are well developed, lie in the scrotum, and are consequently visible and tangible from the exterior, the horse is *entire*,[1] and is also called *stallion;* he is called *gelding* after emasculation. Emasculation is performed for various reasons, most usually with a view of completely destroying the function of these organs.

The testicles, in the entire male, should be well down, rounded, almost equal, firm, and rolling under the pressure of the fingers, without showing any abnormal sensibility. They are larger in the adult animal than in the colt, and in Arabian, Barb, and Andalusian stallions than in those of other races. In hot weather they may become somewhat flabby and pendulous. When they are small and retracted towards the inferior orifice of the inguinal canal, soft, or altogether pendulous, they indicate a horse that is degenerated, without energy, without vigor, and unsuited for reproduction.

The gelding has the testicular envelopes flattened and almost indistinguishable from the posterior part of the sheath of the penis. There always exist on each side of the median line, at the place where the testicles have been, two linear cicatrices, slightly excavated, which present the same characters in all emasculated animals, and which are due to the excision of these glands.

A horse may have been subjected to an operation destroying his reproductive faculties, and still have his testicles in the scrotum. This operation, known under the name *bistournage*, is nothing else than a subcutaneous torsion of the testicular cord, which is soon followed by a complete atrophy of the organ due to the obliteration of the blood-vessels which nourish the testicle.

Although very little practised upon the horse at present, bistournage leaves traces which can be easily recognized: the volume of the testicle is no more than that of a large walnut; it occupies an elevated situation, and is no longer movable in its envelopes, in consequence of the adhesions which are established under the influence of the inflammatory phenomena consequent upon the torsion.

When the testicular envelopes present the characters recognized in the gelding, and there exists on the surface no appreciable cicatrix;

---

[1] Technically, the word *horse* signifies the *entire* male.

when, besides, the animal neighs frequently, has an erection of the penis at the approach of mares, and shows himself endowed, in appearance at least, with all the instincts and aptitudes of the most vigorous entire male, it is certain that he has not been castrated by *bistournage*, or *otherwise*, but that his testicles have not made their normal descent, and either float in the abdominal cavity or remain lodged in the inguinal canal. In either case the horse is called a *cryptorchid*[1] or an *enorchid*.[2] Very often he is called an *anorchid*,[3] but this is an improper designation, because it indicates the absence of the testicles instead of simply expressing their irregular situation.

In ordinary language a cryptorchid is called a *ridgeling*. In scientific language we do not advocate the use of this expression, which originated from the horseman, but which is not confined to him, if we may judge from the favor which it has met among a certain class of individuals.

Whatever terminology may be used, it is none the less true that that cryptorchism does not always exist on both sides at the same time. It is quite common to find it unilateral, but it is an error to believe it affects the right side oftener than the left. Since 1847 we have established the falsity of the foundation of this opinion; it is useless to prolong our remarks on this question.

Cryptorchids have always been regarded, with good reason, as being troublesome and dangerous to their companions as well as to their attendants. They often interfere with the manœuvres of cavalry by kicking and biting, or unfasten themselves in the stable during the night, and mount the mares which they get access to. They are very ardent, and perform copulation readily, although this act appears to fatigue them extremely. We have not succeeded in getting them to repeat it on the same day. Finally, it should not be forgotten that these animals are sterile whenever the two testicles remain in the abdominal cavity; their semen contains no spermatozoa. This secretion has the same characters in those animals in which the glands are arrested in the inguinal canal, as we have several times proved; but we will not assert that it is always thus.

The importance of the preceding facts is clearly demonstrated by the two following instances:

One of them, given by H. Bouley, Jr., has reference to the remarkable Rivière-

---

[1] From κρύπτω, I conceal, and ὄρχις, testicle.
[2] From ἐν, in, and ὄρχις, testicle.
[3] From ἀ, taken away, and ὄρχις, testicle.

Rouleau lawsuit, which was so much discussed in Parisian veterinary circles more than half a century ago.[1]

It concerned a horse sold and guaranteed as *entire* by Mr. Rivière to Lady Rouleau, in which the two testicles, each barely as large as a small hen's egg, were lodged in the inguinal canal. Bouley, Jr., in his report, effected an annulment of the sale by specifying:

1st. That the testicles had acquired only about one-fifth of their normal size, and that they were atrophied, and, consequently, able to fulfil only imperfectly their functions.

2d. That, in this respect, Lady Rouleau had been deceived into buying as an entire horse one that was imperfect, having a defect in his organization which she had not been able to recognize, and which diminished his value and rendered him unable to perform the service for which he was purchased.

In the presence of these conclusions, and upon the concordant opinion of three other experts named by the court, Rivière agreed to dissolve the bargain, took back his horse, and the affair terminated.

The second example is that of *Cloture*, the cryptorchid horse, of remarkable form and qualities, which took twice in succession the purse in the races at the Champ de Mars. Bought some time afterwards by the administration of the governmental studs, he served, at Pompadour, forty mares, without succeeding in impregnating a single one!

In order to prove the existence of cryptorchidism, it is sufficient, as Henry and Symphorien Bouley verified in 1852 in the case of *Cloture*, to determine whether the inguinal region does or does not carry the permanent cicatrix of castration. It is proper to say, however, that, by fraudulent means, this cicatrix can be imitated, thus giving to such a horse the appearance of one that has been castrated. The only method which can then be employed is to lead the animal to the mare, in order to produce an erection of the penis, and to permit a collection of the seminal fluid, which should be subjected to a microscopic examination.[2]

Diseases and Blemishes.—When the testicles, their envelopes, and the cords do not present the normal characters we have indicated above, there is reason to consider them diseased, and the prognosis which should be given is in most instances very grave. The **diseases** of the testicular region are numerous and varied; we will only review them in passing.

They are:

1st. *Œdema*, simple infiltration of the connective tissue of the envelopes, a condition which may be the result of prolonged and complete idleness in the stable, or it may be the manifestation of a local affection or of a grave constitutional disease.

---

[1] Bouley, Jr., Recueil de médecine vétérinaire pratique, 1832, p. 487.

[2] Goubaux et Follin, Mémoire sur la cryptorchidie, in Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, année 1856, p. 820.

2d. *Orchitis*, acute inflammation of the tissues of the testicles, whose multiple causes often give rise to serious complications.

3d. *Sarcocele*, which is usually one of the terminations of chronic orchitis, and consists in a more or less pronounced induration of the gland. It forms a voluminous tumor, insensitive to pressure, complicated at times by hydropsy of the vaginal sheath, and accompanied by a considerable enlargement of the cord. Sarcocele, by its weight, inconveniences the animal considerably; but this would be of little import if it were not frequently one of the manifestations of glanders or the sign of a cancerous state. As the differential diagnosis is difficult, and as there is always apprehension of the presence of a glanderous diathesis, it will be prudent to condemn animals which are thus affected, more particularly if they are intended for reproduction.

False sarcocele is a similar condition, which has its seat in the testicular envelopes. Its prognosis is sometimes as serious as that of the preceding.

4th. *Hydrocele*, which is an acute or a chronic dropsy of the vaginal sheath. The latter form is particularly serious in that it predisposes to hernia, occasions great pain, and causes atrophy of the testicle. It is quite frequently a complication of sarcocele.

5th. *Varicocele*, varicose dilatation of the veins of the envelopes, of the cord, and of the gland itself. It is very rare in the horse.

6th. *Carcinoma*, which affects the substance of the testicle and causes a gradual atrophy of the latter. This tumor is one of the forms of what is called sarcocele.

7th. *Cysts*, distinguished as dermoid or as serous, according to their nature; they are rare, and are located in the testicles, the envelopes, or the cord.

8th. *Champignon*, scirrhous cord, an indurated tumor of the extremity of the cord, which follows castration on one side or the other, and has no tendency towards cicatrization; it presents a deep fistula leading to the interior of the parts and discharging an abundance of pus. It is a common diseased state, and is grave on account of its complications.

9th. Finally, *hernia*, called *inguinal* or *testicular*, due to a displacement of a portion of the intestine into the vaginal sheath. It is *acute* or *chronic*, according to its duration and symptoms. The violent colics which accompany the acute form will always prevent the animal from being offered for sale. It is not the same with the chronic form, examples of which are quite frequently met in stallions.

The old law of redhibitory vices comprised chronic *intermittent* hernia among the diseases capable of causing the annulment of the sale; the law of August 2, 1884, does not include it.

However, a horse suffering from chronic hernia should never be purchased; at some period he may succumb to a strangulation of the hernial intestine, an accident always to be feared, because there is always a possibility of its occurrence.

B.—The Sheath and the Penis.

To the organs charged with the secretion of the semen is annexed an apparatus of excretion, the penis, which serves at the same time for copulation and for the emission of the urine. This organ is protected

as well as maintained in its normal situation by a cutaneous fold, the *sheath*, which we will examine first.

1st. **The Sheath.**—The **sheath** is to the penis what the scrotum is to the testicles.

Constituted by the skin, which, doubled upon itself from before to behind, forms a kind of pouch open in front, it is destined to contain the free portion of the penis in a state of non-erection. Between the layers of the integument which forms the base exists a fibro-elastic expansion, called the *suspensory ligament* of the sheath, a dependency of the abdominal tunic, to which it is attached on each side. The skin in its interior is deprived of hair, irregularly folded upon itself, soft, and unctuous from the numerous sebaceous glands, called the *preputial* glands, which secrete a sebaceous material of a strong and disagreeable odor, known by the vulgar and improper name of *coom.*

The sheath is entirely effaced at the moment of erection of the penis. Its development varies according to the animal: in the stallion it is ample and generally little soiled by its secretion; in the gelding it is smaller, and its narrow opening sometimes prevents the protrusion of the penis during micturition. There may result, in such a case, as Lecoq has remarked, hypersecretion by the sebaceous glands, irritation from the urine, and even ulcerations difficult to heal, which may extend to the penis.[1]

Warts, or *papillomata*, are in certain cases observed on the sheath. They are regarded as contagious, although no irrefutable proof of this has as yet been given.

Œdema of the sheath depends upon a prolonged retention of the penis within it, upon the contact of the urine, or upon the presence of an excess of the sebaceous secretion. It disappears readily under the influence of exercise and cleanliness.

Finally, *melanotic tumors* are met here, which by their volume sometimes prevent the protrusion of the penis and interfere with the exit of the urine.

There are some horses which produce during locomotion, particularly in the trot and the gallop, a sound, always disagreeable, called the *sound of the frog.* It ceases ordinarily at the end of a certain time during the exercise. Some persons have incorrectly attributed it to the churning of the liquids and gases confined in the cæcum, a part of the large intestine remarkably developed in the horse. We long ago made the remark that it is never heard in mares. Franconi, our classmate and friend, informed us one day that it could be made to disappear by packing the sheath with oakum. We have since verified the efficacy of this ingenious means, the action of which is understood without difficulty, knowing the mechanism by which this sound is produced. During locomotion the sheath is alternately raised and lowered, and at the same time the penis executes in its cavity more or less extensive to-and-fro movements. There results from this the formation of a vacuum and the entrance of external air, which occasions this

[1] F. Lecoq. Extérieur du cheval, p. 97.

particular sound. Its intensity appears to depend upon the flaccidity and the disproportion of volume of the parts concerned in the mechanism of its production; its absence is due, on the contrary, to a more complete coaptation of these same parts, which exists in those animals in which this sound is not produced.

2d. **The Penis.**—The **penis** is the male organ of copulation. It represents an erectile shaft, constituted principally by the corpus cavernosum, and supports along its entire length the urethral canal. In the study of the exterior of the horse, however, we shall occupy ourselves only with the *free portion* of this organ, which in a state of relaxation is contained within the sheath, and appears externally only at the moment of erection, when the blood distends and elongates it.

It then appears covered by a fine, unctuous, glistening skin, sometimes rosy and marbled in the places deprived of pigment. Limited at its base by a sort of circular cul-de-sac, it has an almost cylindrical form, excepting at its free extremity, where it suddenly enlarges. The latter, known under the name *head of the penis*, and notched below and behind (*sub-urethral notch*), is hollowed in its middle by a shallow excavation which surmounts a round eminence formed by the extremity of the corpus cavernosum, and in the centre of which opens the *urethral tube*, projecting about one or two centimetres. Above the latter is the *urethral sinus*, a spacious bilocular cavity, often filled with hardened sebaceous matter (*the bean*), which may compress the urethra and interfere with micturition.

It is the erectile tissue of the urethra, altogether independent of that of the corpus cavernosum, which composes the head of the penis. At the beginning of erection the latter alone is dilated so as to give the necessary rigidity to the organ to penetrate the genital passages of the female. As soon as the penis is inserted, the urethra dilates and gives to the free extremity of the organ the aspect of a mushroom or the nose of a watering-can, as is seen in the stallion immediately after the ejaculation of the semen.

Under ordinary conditions the head of the penis is not visible at the entrance of the sheath: it is concealed by the folds of the skin. It is incorrect for painters and sculptors to represent this part almost with the same disposition as that which it affects in man.

The penis of the entire horse is more voluminous and more firm than that of the gelding; but in this respect it differs much in different animals. These variations have not, as is generally believed, any influence upon the qualities of horses which are destined for reproduction; it is the same with those variations which concern the head of the penis, which is often very different in different stallions of the same race, the same form, and equal ardor.

It is more important to assure ourselves that the penis moves with ease in the interior of its protecting envelope. The stallion has quite frequent erections; it is common even to see him masturbate, either in the stable or at rest when he is harnessed. When these erections occur,

the penis emerges from the sheath with more or less rapidity, and increases in volume, in length, and in tension.

In this condition it is easy to determine the state of the parts and to judge as to their good conformation. This cannot be done during micturition, for the penis is only partly protruded.

Erection in the gelding is, on the contrary, rare; the copulative organ is confined to its narrow sheath. If it be not protruded at the time of micturition, the animal urinates into his sheath, an injurious fault, on account of the irritation which the retention of the essentially putrefactive products determines there. In horses carelessly groomed the desiccated sebaceous matter after a time occasions an inflammation of the skin which the simplest hygienic measures could prevent.

We have sometimes observed *melanotic tumors* upon the penis. They give rise, by their softening, to ulcerations, from which escapes a blackish, disagreeable discharge; by their volume they also produce compression of the urethra and obstruct the free passage of the urine.

At other times *blood-tumors* (*hæmatoma*) exist in the corpus cavernosum, resulting from blows received by the penis during erection, or produced by the efforts of the stallion in mounting. Veritable *wounds* are occasioned sometimes from these causes, whose prognosis is much more serious because there is always danger from hemorrhage or from resultant complications of gangrene necessitating the amputation of the organ.

Finally, all animals having *ulcerations* at some point of the penis should be rejected. These are sometimes the expression of the most serious contagious disease, *maladie du coït*, or *dourine*, which is most common in Oriental horses. The ulcerations must not be confounded with the *pustules* of *equine variola*, which resemble the former very much, and upon the differential diagnosis of which our distinguished associate, Professor Peuch, has especially insisted.[1]

Paralysis of the penis is peculiar to jaded stallions degenerated from old age. The organ is then not contained in the sheath; it is said to be *pendulous*.

Flabby, infiltrated, swollen, purplish, and cold, it oscillates in every direction during locomotion, and is continually exposed to wounds and contusions. It is necessary then to place the penis in a leather sheath, acting like a suspensory ligament, which is maintained in situation by leather straps fastened around the loins.

§ 2. Genital Organs of the Female.

A.—The Vulva.

The **vulva** is the only part of the genital apparatus of the female which directly concerns us in this connection; most authors have added a description of the *mammæ*, and we will not change the established custom.

The vulva constitutes the external orifice of the genito-urinary

[1] F. Peuch, Note sur le horse-pox simulant la dourine, in Revue vétérinaire, année 1880, p. 297.

apparatus in the female. This orifice, situated below and at some distance from the *anus*, has the form of a vertical chink, in which can be recognized two lateral lips and two commissures, the one inferior and the other superior.

The *lips* (*labiæ*) are in apposition, the one against the other, in ordinary conditions. The skin which covers them is fine, unctuous, devoid of hairs, usually black, and very adherent. It becomes continuous, at their free border, with the internal mucous membrane.

Of the *commissures*, the superior is acute; the inferior is rounded, and shows, when the labiæ are separated, a single globular organ, the *clitoris*, a veritable penis in miniature, lodged in a mucous fold which constitutes a sort of prepuce, of a rosy color, sometimes black or marbled.

During the period of *heat* (*menstruation*) the vulva is slightly open, swollen, warmer, more sensitive, and all the parts covered by mucous membrane are bright red. From the inferior commissure there is a moderate discharge of liquid, which agglutinates the lips. The animal frequently ejects a small quantity of urine, which is followed by several convulsive protrusions of the clitoris. She is then very excitable, difficult to approach, inclined to kicking, and provoked by the least touch. She is called *pissy* when this condition is habitual; *ovariotomy* (removal of the ovaries) may sometimes remedy this; at other times it is without effect.

Mares which have been pregnant generally present longitudinal folds upon the external face and inferior part of the lips of the vulva. These folds increase with the frequency of parturition. In old and very emaciated mares the vulvo-anal region is strongly excavated, a fact which may render the introduction of the penis somewhat uncertain.

In certain cases fillies are *ringed* in order to prevent copulation when they run in pasture with males. This operation consists simply in approximating the lips of the vulva by means of metallic threads inserted transversely from side to side and disposed in superposed rings, or simply in protecting the vulvar opening by means of a wire netting.

Although this practice opposes a copulation by preventing the introduction of the penis, it fails with those animals that are inclined to accomplish this act to satiate their imperative desires, and, on this account, it is not free from danger. The stallion in his efforts sometimes wounds the lips of the vulva, lacerates them with his teeth, or commits an *error of place* nearly always fatal to the female, without considering the wounds which may be inflicted upon his own organs.

There are neither beauties nor defects to be indicated in this region. It should especially be free from *blemishes.*

Wounds, lacerations, bites from the stallion, pustules of *horse-pox,* and *ulcerations* symptomatic of *maladie du coït* are observable in this region. The last are of a very grave prognosis. *Ruptures* of the superior commissure are nearly always due to difficult parturition. According to J. B. Huzard, the presence of *warts,* or *papillomata,* on account of their hereditary character, should exclude the mare from the stud.[1]

B.—The Mammæ.

The *mammæ,* special to the mare, are two glands endowed with the secretion of the milk. They form two hemispherical eminences placed in the inguinal region and separated from each other by a median groove. Each of them presents in its central part a small protuberance, the *teat,* or *nipple,* whose free extremity has in its middle a shallow depression, at the bottom of which open two excretory ducts which commence in the interior of the organ.

But little developed in the filly and in the mare which has never been pregnant, they acquire a considerable volume towards the end of gestation; they preserve it after parturition during the period of suckling, but reassume their primitive characters afterwards.

The *diseases* of the mammary glands are few; let us mention more especially *melanotic deposits,* of which they are sometimes the seat in gray or white mares.

Linear cicatrices, which result from the cuts of the whip-lash, frequently given in this region, are, as in the sheath of the male, quite frequently found here.

Finally, their surface often shows *corded lymphatics* from *farcy,* because of the abundance of the lymphatic vessels which emerge from them.

PART III.

THE MEMBERS.

General Considerations.—The **members,** limbs, or legs are the *supports* and the natural *motors* of the trunk. They represent four articulated columns, segmented, piece by piece, situated upon the lateral faces of the body, in front and behind the centre of gravity, and distinguished, for this reason, as *anterior* and *posterior.*

The segments which compose them diminish in volume, in periph-

[1] Cl. Bourgelat, Extérieur du cheval, 5e éd., p. 162. (Note of J. B. Huzard.)

eral surface, and, in general, in inclination from above to below, but at the same time they augment gradually in number, compactness, and resistance. Surrounded in their superior sections by voluminous and powerful muscles, they are, as it were, reduced inferiorly almost to skin and bone. These are fortunate dispositions, whose effect is to disseminate and attenuate the combined actions of the weight and the velocity, and to furnish an adequate surface for the attachments of the muscles, all preserving to the centre of gravity all the elevation compatible with the extent of its displacements, and conferring upon the trunk gracefulness, harmony, and elegance of support. If the members were covered with muscles throughout their entire length, their weight would be excessive, and the step heavy and slow on account of the volume of the extremities and the consequent lowering of the centre of gravity.

During locomotion these motor columns are alternately elevated from the ground ; they receive the body-weight which falls on them, and impress it with the needed impulsive force, and are then lifted, projected in advance, and again touch the ground.

Function.—The function of the anterior limbs is very different from that of the posterior.

The **Anterior members,** situated in advance of and close to the centre of gravity, and bearing consequently more weight than the others, have a secondary office, being principally endowed with the

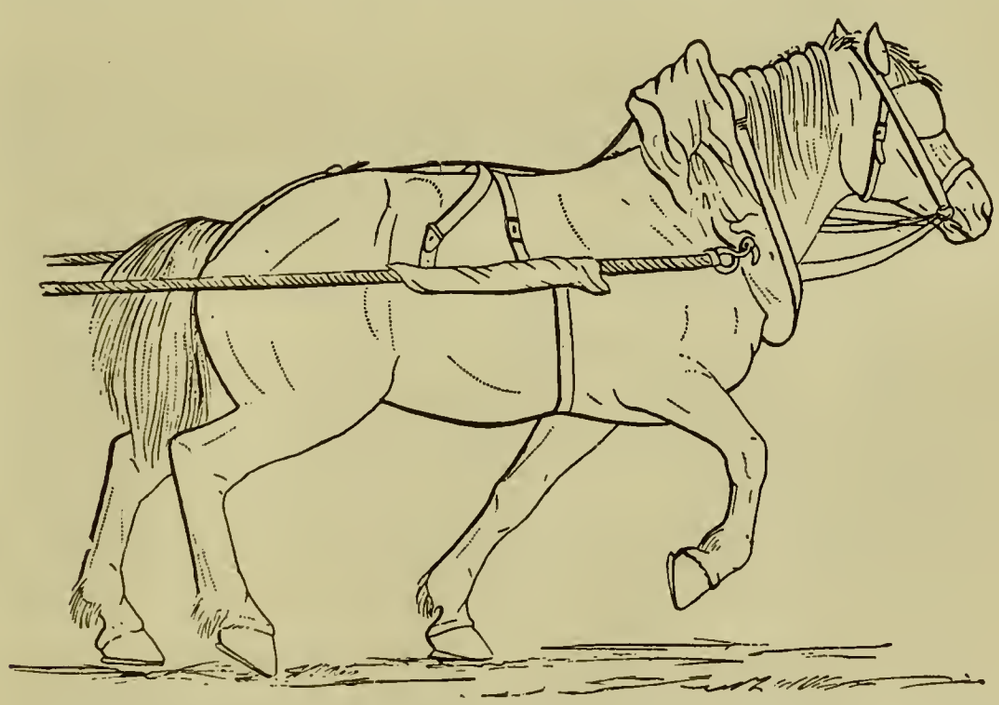


FIG. 50.—From an instantaneous photograph of the author's.

function of support and dispersion of concussion. Their propulsive action is not very marked, excepting at a slow pace and when the animal moves a heavy load. Under these circumstances (Fig. 50) the body,

strongly inclined forward, gives the fore-legs an oblique direction backward, which permits them to push against the collar, to which the shoulders are energetically applied. It is by the extension of all their articular angles, previously semi-flexed, that the fore-legs accomplish this result. When they are directed obliquely and in an inverse direction, as is seen sometimes at the beginning of the effort of traction, the force which they exercise upon the trunk, and therefore against the collar, is at its minimum. Traction forward can be favorably executed only when the foot, directed backward, is fixed against the roughnesses of the ground. This is observed in the draught-horse as he moves his load; when the soil, the point of support, gives way, the feet suddenly glide backward.

Aside from these functions, the anterior member is, as all admit, nothing more than a column of support and an apparatus of dispersion and compensation. From its mode of attachment to the trunk and the disposition of the segments composing it, the fore-leg is adapted in a remarkable manner to this double function. Fixed to the side of the thorax by means of muscles and aponeuroses, it has all the articular angles quite open, except that one of them, the radio-metacarpal, is even entirely effaced. It opposes to the body-weight and to the locomotory reactions resistances, more particularly mechanical, whose passiveness eases the muscular strain. The bones, the ligaments, and the tendons, more than their muscular portions, resist the pressure and concussion of locomotion.

The **posterior members** are widely different in construction and function. Much less of a support to the trunk, and well situated in relation to the centre of gravity, they are articulated solidly with the coxæ without endangering their integrity. By the inclination of their different segments, they push against the trunk at a given moment when the former are straightened, one piece upon the other; thus the angles are obliterated, and the hind-legs communicate to the body the needed force or velocity. The muscles, being obliged to contract in order to oppose the tendency towards closing of the angles of locomotion, are more voluminous and numerous than those of the fore-leg; they are therefore able to sustain without fatigue the part of the body-weight which the osseous framework intrusts to them.

They are therefore, first of all, the agents of *propulsion*. They act with the greatest efficacy and power against the trunk, to which they are attached, at the moment when their line of direction (a line which unites the superior centre of movement to the foot) points obliquely downward and backward. Inclined in an inverse direction

during the beginning of the effort of traction, they can only support that portion of the body and take a position to prepare themselves for the effort which they are to execute the following instant. Besides, this phase is of a very short duration, and the backward obliquity soon manifests itself. The latter exists already at the end of a certain period when the canon is still inclined forward. The phase cannot be expected in the draught-horse, as we shall clearly see if we reflect upon the fact that the body of the animal is continually inclined forward during the efforts of traction. Instantaneous photographs place this matter beyond a doubt (Fig. 51).[1]

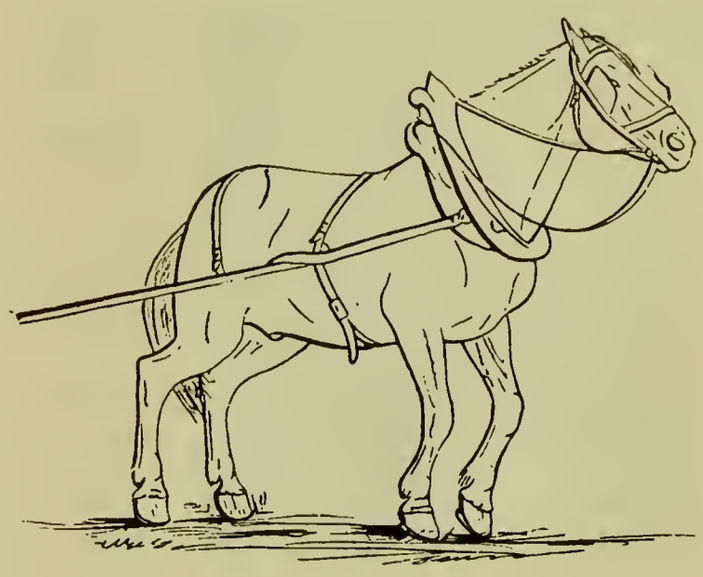


FIG. 51.

Mechanism of Impulsion.—Whichever of the members we examine, the **impulsive force** which they develop at a certain period in their acting as a support results invariably from a more or less forcible extension of the bony segments at the moment when the members are supported against the trunk or the collar. It is an interesting and important fact that we can prove scientifically that this process of extension is the conjoint function of most of the muscles belonging to the limb which originates the impulse. Many of the flexors are capable of contributing to this end, either because they cross over several articular angles and attach to the convex side of one of them,[2] or because they originate from the trunk and concur to straighten the inclined levers upon which they terminate.[3] As to the abductors and adductors, they can, by acting simultaneously, perform the *rôle* of extensors. The other muscles maintain the osseous levers in their proper plane as compared with the median plane of the body, and prevent their outward or inward displacement after the manner of the ropes which fix the mast of a ship.

---

[1] See, for further details and interesting discussions by modern authors. H. Bouley, Nouveau dictionnaire de médecine, de chirurgie et d'hygiène vétérinaires, tome i., art. "Allures," p. 360, Paris, 1856; G. Colin, Physiologie comparée des animaux, t, i., p, 448, 3e éd., Paris, 1886; G. Neumann, Du tirage du cheval, in Rec. de mém. et observ. sur l'hyg. et la méd. ét. milit., année 1876; ibid., Sur les éléments de l'impulsion, in Revue vétérinaire, année 1886, p. 528; G. Chenier, contribution à l'étude des actes locomoteurs, in Écho des soc. et assoc. vétér., Juin, 1866.

[2] Such are: the flexors of the metacarpus, of the phalanges, of the forearm, of the metatarsus, the ischio tibial muscles, etc.

[3] Such are: the psoas, the superficial gluteus, the great dorsal, etc.

We are therefore convinced that during propulsion there is no antagonism of forces, but solely the use of the powers intended to produce an elongation of the members according to a definite plan. To become convinced of this, it will be necessary only to examine the muscles of one's own leg, semi-flexed, just before it becomes extended in order to straighten the body; all the structures are rigid because they all appear to contract in unison, so as to overcome the antagonistic forces.

On the other hand, mechanical dispositions of great power and the arrangements of the muscles and tendons in the hind limbs of the horse associate the articular angles in such a manner that one of them cannot be extended without producing a simultaneous opening of the others. It follows from this that all the forces which are exerted at one point are transmitted at the same time to the adjoining parts and cause them to move successively one upon the other. This process of force-accumulation gives an explanation to some of those spasmodic movements,—*string-halt*,—so sudden and so energetic, of which the posterior members are the seat.

Articular Movements; Orientation or Relative Position of the Angles of Locomotion; Limited Positions of the Osseous Segments.—The **articular movements,** being closely subordinate to the extent of the oscillations of the segments which accomplish them, here offer us an opportunity for general considerations concerning which we should say a few words.

It must be admitted, to begin with, that amplitude of joint-action must increase in a ratio with the initial displacement of the bony levers as studied in their condition of rest when compared with the line of their regular axis.

But the effectiveness of this play depends upon another consideration of primary importance. It is indispensable that the line of direction of the segments of the member should hold certain determinate relations with the vertical line passing through their centre of movement. In other words, it suffices not that the articular angle which they form be *well opened*, but it is also necessary that the angle be *well located* for progression. This condition is realized whenever the angular displacement of the branches of an angle of locomotion tends to separate the two extremities of the member to which it belongs, following a very oblique line rather than the vertical or some analogous direction. When such a relation does not exist, the locomotory columns passing over too little surface at each step, are not properly extended in a forward movement, but are merely elevated, and the

impulse transmitted to the trunk is no longer a trajectory approximating the horizontal, but becomes a short curve.

The inclination of the osseous segments should therefore supply this double purpose: it should augment the effectiveness of the articular play without diminishing its extent.

Each of the locomotory segments, when viewed alone, presents for study (Fig. 52) a *limit of extension*, *A*, and a *limit of flexion*, *B*; in a word, the *line* or *space of oscillation*, *AB*, marking the limit of opening and of closing the angle, beyond which it cannot extend, by reason of the resistance offered by the articular surfaces and the tension of the ligaments.

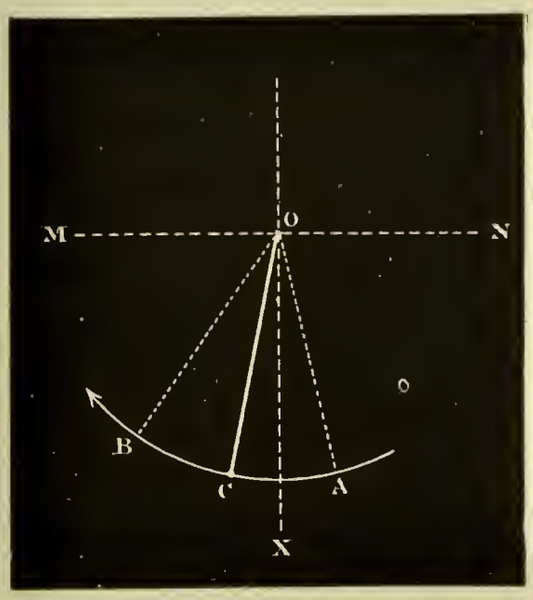


FIG. 52.

Anatomy, through the researches of Vincent and Goiffon[1] upon the cadaver, has determined the extent of this space, *AB*, in a very satisfactory manner; but it becomes a difficult problem when it is a question of the precise location of the angle *AOB* in relation with the vertical line *OX*, or, what amounts to the same thing, to fix the *limited positions A* and *B*,—points which indicate the limit of the oscillation of *OC* in the living animal.

It is in this direction that investigations should now be pursued. It is possible, indeed, that if we could recognize the exact position of these limits in *horses of speed*, it would become easy to determine the most desirable inclination of the bony levers. Evidently this inclination should assume the direction *OC*, bisecting the angle *AOB*. In this case alone the space of oscillation will reach its greatest possible limits; for the extremity *C*, being equivalent from *A* and *B*, admits of equal flexion and extension, the greatest of each that is possible. All other inclinations diminish the one or the other of these movements.

We have presented the only accessible observations that have been made on this subject, excepting only the incomparably accurate researches which MM. Marey and Pagès[2] have undertaken with the aid of instantaneous photographs of horses in locomotion.

---

[1] Vincent et Goiffon, Mémoire artificielle des principes relatifs à la fidèle représentation des animaux, t. ii., Paris, 1779.

[2] Pagès, Analyse cinématique de la locomotion du cheval, in Comptes-Rendus de l'Académie des sciences, 1885, p. 702; Marey et Pagès, Analyse cinématique des allures du cheval, in Comptes-Rendus, 1886; ibid., Mouvements du membre pelvien chez l'homme, l'éléphant et le cheval, in Comptes-Rendus, 1887.

Unfortunately, these experiments have only determined the limited positions in the walk, the trot, and the slow gallop, and leave us still ignorant of what these positions are in extreme speed. Nevertheless, from the facts already acquired, an important proposition can be deduced: that the *limit of extension of the locomotory segments occupies, in horses of speed, a point, A, quite close to a vertical line passing through their centre of movement.*

According to the angles considered, this point is situated either in advance of the vertical line mentioned (angles with the sine posterior), or behind it (angles with the sine anterior). But it is apparent that the farther the limit of extension passes beyond the vertical line of the centre of movement the more will the angle of these segments, when it is opened, be favorable to the augmentation of the obliquity of the member, and consequently the more will it tend to increase the amplitude of the step or the extent of the movement.

It would follow from this that the most favorable inclination of an osseous lever is that which removes it the least from the vertical line *OX* during flexion, and consequently that which tends to approach it to this same line while the animal is standing still. In this case the direction of the segment will be more closely related to the bisecting line *OC*, which is associated, as we have seen, with the largest space of oscillation.

In the preceding statements we have viewed an isolated locomotory segment, as it is moved freely under the horizontal line *MN*, without the intervention of foreign influences. This has permitted us to indicate to the best advantage the direction of the segment associated with a large and effective oscillation.

In natural conditions, however, this arrangement is not so simple, since the locomotory angles are formed by bones which are articulated in twos or in threes. It is therefore in place to inquire whether, under these circumstances, the extreme limits *A* and *B* remain always the same with relation to the vertical line *OX* through the centre movement.

It is easy to assure ourselves of the contrary. These positions depend upon the inclination of the segment with which the one under consideration is articulated. The maximum value of the articular angle may be similar, and, for the sake of the argument, we may say equal; but the orientation of this angle being different, the extreme positions *A* and *B* are displaced either forward or backward of the vertical line, according to the obliquity of the adjacent segment. This will necessarily result in differences in the utilization of the articular movements in forward locomotion.

Let us suppose the two segments OC and OC' to have different obliquities when compared with the vertical line OX (Fig. 53).

Let, on the other hand, COB' be the maximum extension of the angle COB.

The angles, in extension, being equal, for anatomical reasons, to the segment OC', the limit of extension of OB will be B''. A simple inspection, however, shows that OB'', being less inclined upon OX than OB', will also be less favorably directed than OB' in relation with the vertical line OX. Therefore, the orientation OD, bisecting the angle COB, is more favorable than the orientation OD' bisecting the angle $C'OB$.

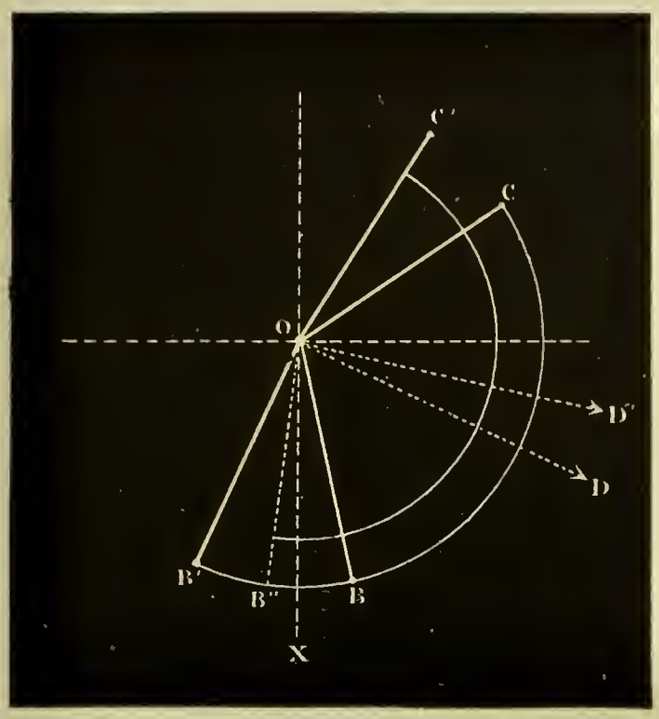


FIG. 53.

It can only be alleged that the angle $C'OB$, since it is more open while the horse is standing still, should be the same in action, but if it were thus *the conditions would no more be equal*, and consequently no more comparable. The condition of the maximum opening of the angle $C'OB$ changing, it can be assumed that in the same manner the angle COB is caused to vary. Moreover, anatomy teaches that there exists for these two angles a maximum separation, practically the same, but dependent upon the disposition of the articular surfaces and the ligaments limiting their displacement. The sole difference which distinguishes them is that in repose their branches are unequally inclined.

Mode of Evolution of the Members during Progression. —*The mode of evolution or oscillation of the members during progression* involves quite a complex analysis, but we must be able to explain its general features in order to understand some subsequent phenomena.

Let us examine this oscillation in the *walk*, a mode of progress in which the body is never entirely disconnected from the ground.

The foot, now elevated from the ground and now in contact with it, passes through two principal phases: one of **elevation**,[1] during which it is in the air, and one of **contact**, during which it supports a portion of the weight of the body. During this evolution, the line of **direction** of the member appears to oscillate alternately around two points situated at its superior and its inferior extremities; the foot, the inferior extremity, is the point of the phase of contact; the superior, the centre of movement of the shoulder or the croup, is that of

[1] The reader must have a clear conception of the meaning of the terms *elevation* and *contact*, because they are frequently employed in the following chapters.

the phase of elevation. When the first is stationary on the ground, the second, or superior point, describes an arc of a circle and is carried forward by the force of impulsion, and *vice versa.*

At the moment when the foot, *D* (Fig. 54), is ready to leave the ground, the line of direction, *H'D*, is inclined downward and back-

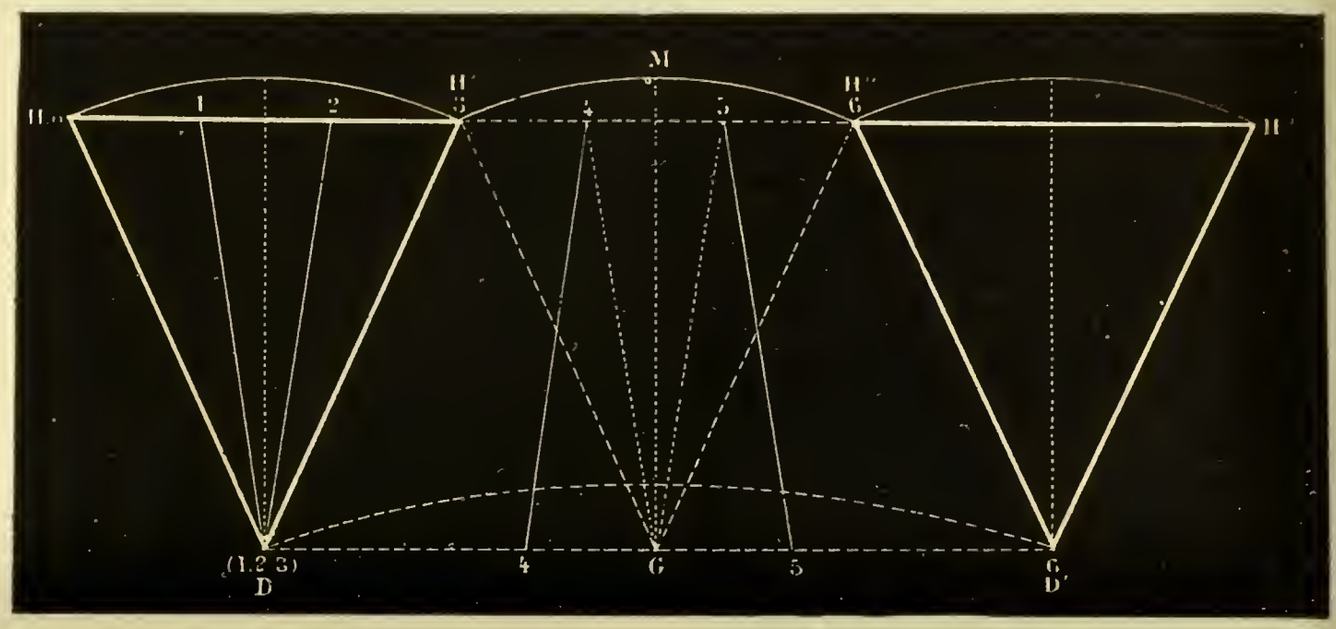


FIG. 54.—Schemes of the evolution of two congeneric members during the phases of contact and of elevation.

ward. It is then advanced, describing an arc of a circle, and when it reaches the point *D'*, where it again touches its support, the line of direction, *H''D*, is reversed.

In the same half of the body (anterior or posterior) the phase, *DD'*, of elevation of one member coincides always exactly with the phase of contact, *H'H''* of the other. The successive positions of one member, whatever they be, are therefore directly the reverse of those of its congener. As to the **relative velocities of the transmission of the body and of the feet,** they are different, but always in simple relation. The foot, in the same space of time, passes over a distance, *DD'*, double that of the centre movement *H'H''*. Its velocity is therefore twice as great.

Many years ago Captain Raabe[1] and M. Colin schematically represented the oscillations of the extremities in the following manner:

Let us suppose that we examine the evolution of the posterior pair of limbs. The centre of the croup, *H*, *during the phase of contact*, describes a uniform movement in advance which carries it from *H* to *H'*, it being supported by the right posterior limb, *D*. At this instant *H'*, the right leg, is elevated, *H'D*, and

[1] Raabe, Examen du Traité de l'extérieur du cheval, de Lecoq, et de la Physiologie, comparée, de M. Colin, Paris, 1857. See, besides, the plates in the Traité de Physiologie, de M. Colin, t. i. p. 445, 3e éd., Paris, 1886.

the posterior left, G, on the contrary, goes to rest on the ground, $H'G$, at a distance, DG, equal to a half-step.

While the latter, G, passes through its phase of contact, the centre of the croup passes through the space from H' to H'' and describes the arc $H'H''$ equal to that described by the right, because, in the normal gait, *the steps are equal.*

Arrived at H'', the left member, G, becomes elevated, $H''G$; the right, on the other hand, is now placed on the ground, $H''D'$, to renew its phase of contact at a distance, GD', equal again to a half-step.

During its progression, the right foot, therefore, proceeds from its initial position D to attain its final position D'. It consequently passes through the arc DD', while the centre of the croup only passes over the space $H'H''$, which is exactly one-half of the distance DD'.

$H'H''$ is parallel to DD', for the isosceles triangles $GH'D$ and $GH''D'$ are equal, since GD and GD' are equal. Again, the analogous angles GDH' and $D'GH''$ being equal, the lines DH' and GH'' are parallel.

Therefore, $H'H'' = DG = \frac{DD'}{2}$.

When one of the members has passed successively through the two phases of contact and of elevation, the body effects what is called a *complete step*, the two pairs of members (anterior and posterior) being jointly concerned. During this evolution it can be seen that the centre of movement, H, and consequently the centre of gravity, has progressed from H to H'', or, what is equivalent, through a space which is equal to the line DD', equal to the distance passed over by one of the feet, a distance completed in two attitudes, HD, $H''D'$, identical and successive.

It follows from these statements that the *length of the step* will be measured by the separation of DD', comprised between the successive imprints left upon the ground surface by the same foot.

But for an accurate analysis (such as is often necessary) the division of the step into the two principal phases of *contact* and *elevation*, above mentioned, is insufficient. It is necessary to subdivide each into a number of *equal* secondary divisions called *periods.* All veterinary writers, with Captain Raabe, recognize at present the following six periods (see Fig. 55):

Phase of contact.	1st period, from 0 to 1 . . .	*Commencement of the contact.*
	2d period, from 1 to 2 . . .	*Middle of the contact.*
	3d period, from 2 to 3 . . .	*Termination of the contact.*
Phase of elevation or of extension.	4th period, from 3 to 4 . . .	*Lifting of the foot.*
	5th period, from 4 to 5 . . .	*Middle of elevation.*
	6th period, from 5 to 6 . . .	*Resting of the foot.*

Systematic Analysis of the Play of the Members.—The general scheme of the evolution of the members, which we have given, has permitted us to prove a certain number of facts, and to

formulate these into intelligible propositions. As a whole, the conclusions which have been deduced are exact; but if we endeavor to make a more minute analysis of these phenomena we shall find that they are not so easily worked out.

Strictly speaking, the limb of a horse cannot be compared to a long lever which alternates by turns round its inferior extremity when the latter is related to the surface of support, or its superior when it is lifted. In other words, the displacements of the leg are not assimilable to those of an *oscillating pendulum*, as Captain Raabe and his disciples have supposed.[1] They result from a series of *partial* movements which influence each other mutually and give to the articular centres very complicated *trajectories*. The recognition of these secondary actions offers interest from a point of view of the particular mechanical *rôle* fulfilled by each region. It is necessary to make some remarks concerning this statement.

MM. Marey and Pagès,[2] in their recent and valuable researches with the aid of *chrono-photography* (see *Generalities upon the Gaits*), have been enabled to register the successive positions of the different bony segments of locomotion and the relative duration of their revolution during the execution of the two principal phases of contact and of elevation of a complete step.

Let us see what interpretations can be given to the phenomena indicated by these original investigations. Take, for example, the movements of the members in the ordinary trot; like MM. Marey and Pagès, we will choose, among the numerous positions affected by these apparatus, a certain number of attitudes well characterized by the extension and flexion of some segments, or by important modifications of the articular trajectories.

1. Action of the Anterior Member (Fig. 55).

A. Phase of Contact.—The anterior member (which during this phase arrives at *a state of rest* in an attitude of extension whose degree varies with the extent of the pace and the nature of the gait) should successively fulfil two very distinct *rôles*, of which the purposes are, first, to deaden the shock of concussion against the soil, and next, to extend itself. After this process is over, it again prepares to elevate itself.

---

[1] These views have been demonstrated in a recent work entitled L'art équestre, par M. Barroil, p. 21 et suiv., Paris, 1887. Chez Rothschild.

[1] Marey et Pagès, Analyse cinématique des allures du cheval, in Comptes-Rendus de l'Académie des sciences, 27 Septembre, 1886; ibid., Mouvement du membre pelvien chez l'homme, l'éléphant et le cheval, in Comptes-Rendus, 18 Juillet, 1887.

1. **Attenuation of Concussion.**—This is effected during the movement from 0 to 2 by the diminution of the two extreme angles (the scapulo-humeral and metacarpo-phalangeal) placed at the extremities of the rigid radio-metacarpal segment. The fetlock is strongly

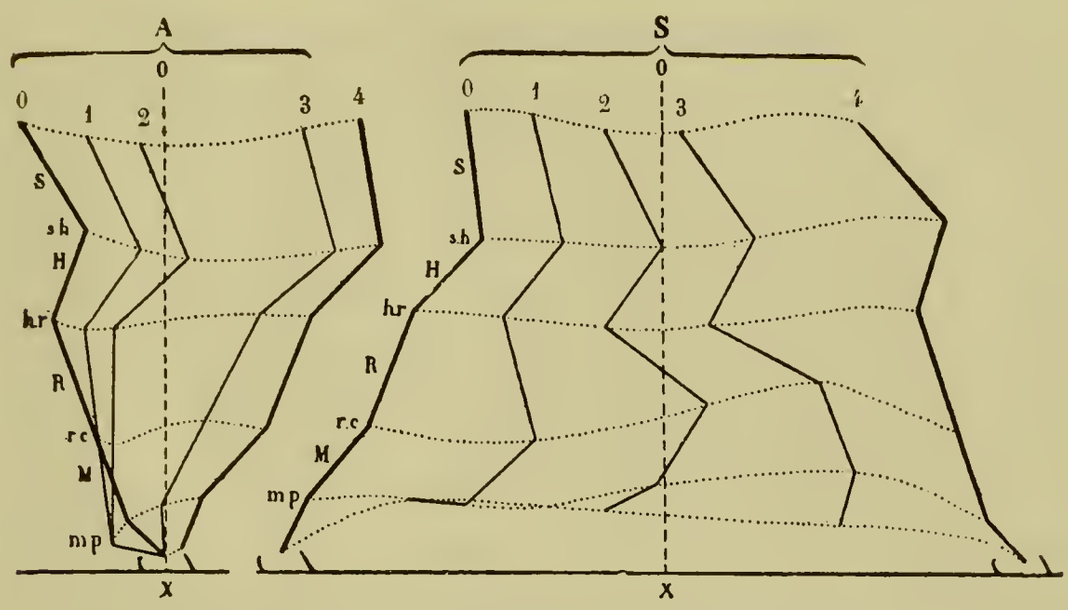


FIG. 55.—Action of the anterior member in the trot.
A. Phase of contact. | *S.* Phase of elevation.

lowered and the radio-metacarpal segment pivots forward upon the pastern, which is horizontal and immobile. During the second period, from 1 to 2, the closure of the scapulo-humeral angle is most marked.

2. **Extension of the Member.—Extension** takes place in a progressive manner from 2 to 3 (Fig. 55). The line of direction of the member becomes vertical, elongated, and at the termination is directed downward and backward. The angle of the fetlock and that of the elbow are opened : the first by the gradual straightening of the pastern, which pivots on the coronet and becomes vertical ; the second by the forward rotation of the radio-metacarpal division, which pivots upon the first phalanx. As to the angle of the shoulder, it becomes slightly augmented by the forward rotation of the scapula. It is now observed that during this period the member can fulfil a function of impulsion, particularly when the resistance to progression is considerable, as in strong traction, for example.

Preparation for Elevation.—Elevation is manifested during the movement from 3 to 4 (Fig. 55). The pastern continues to rotate in advance, carrying with it the foot, which pivots upon its toe. The radio-metacarpal angle becomes slightly flexed, while that of the shoulder continues to augment. At the moment of elevation nearly all the articular angles have reached their maximum extension.

S. Phase of Elevation.—During this phase the foot leaves the

ground, is carried forward, and finally establishes a new point of contact. Directed obliquely downward and backward at the beginning, the member is directed in an inverse sense at the termination. It therefore successively becomes shortened, elongated, and finally assumes a new point of contact.

1. The **shortening** manifests itself more particularly during the motion from 0 to 2 (Fig. 55). It is characterized at first by the maximum flexion of the pastern producing a closure of the angle of the fetlock, of the canon, and of the forearm, resulting in a diminution of the angle of the carpus and of the elbow. Arrived at the point 2, the angle of the fetlock already begins to open in consequence of the straightening of the pastern. As to the shoulder, it contributes, by its backward rotation, in the shortening of the limb and in closing the scapulo-humeral angle, though only to a small degree.

The diminution of the length of the member is therefore progressive, and passes from below upward by a greater and greater flexion of the articular angles.

2. The **elongation,** which commences at 2 (Fig. 55) by the extension of the fetlock, is continued to 3 by that of the metacarpus, by the opening of the angle of the elbow, and, finally, by that of the shoulder. These phenomena are not all simultaneous. They are due to a gradual and successive extension of the pastern, the canon, and the arm, and the lengthening of the inferior extremity of the member commences before the shortening of its superior part has reached its maximum.

The **preparation to touch** the surface carries the anterior member to its limit of extension. The radio-metacarpal angle is effaced; those of the elbow and the shoulder now attain their maximum separation. As to the pastern, it extends obliquely downward and forward; the foot is resting in the same axis.

2. Action of the Posterior Member (Fig. 56).

The posterior member, being an agent of *attenuation, impulsion,* and *ambulation,* offers attitudes analogous to those of the anterior.

A. Phase of Contact.—Like its homologue, this member arrives in station in a state of extension whose degree varies with the length of the pace and the nature of the gait. During this phase it also deadens the concussion against the ground and develops the force of impulsion; having accomplished these, it again prepares for a position of station.

1. The **attenuation** of the concussion is effected from 0 to 2 by

the descent of the fetlock and the closing of the coxo-femoral and the femoro-tibial angles.

These articular phenomena are due : to a sudden horizontal direction of the pastern, which pivots upon the os corona, produces a lowering

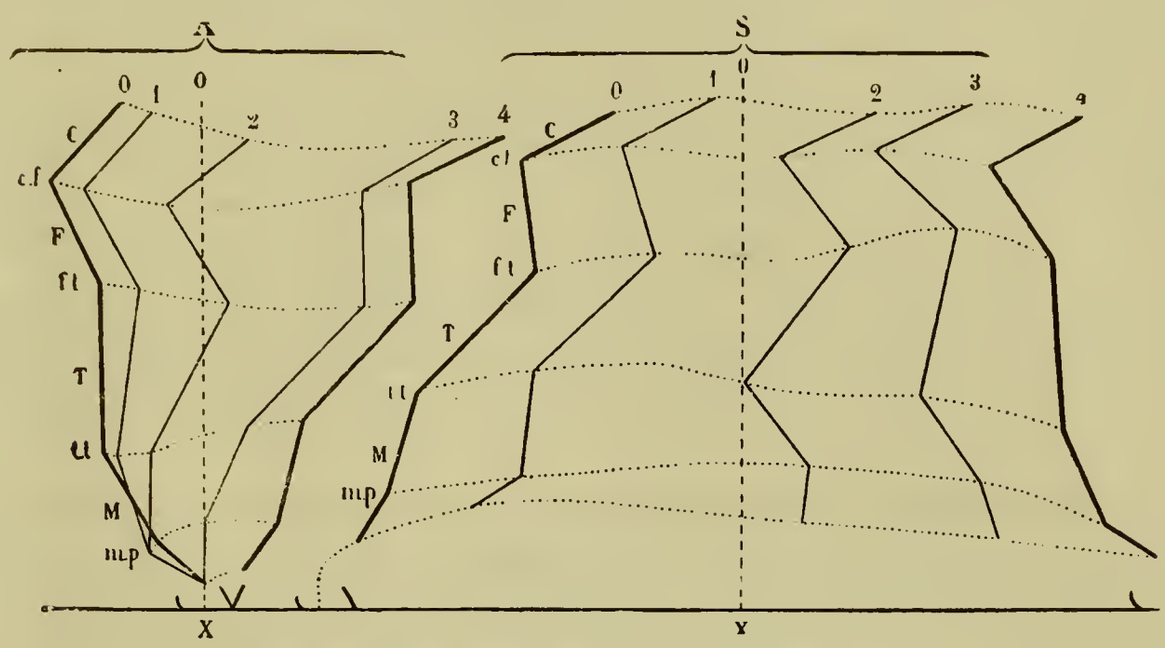


FIG. 56.—Action of the posterior member in the trot.
A. Phase of contact. | *S.* Phase of elevation.

of the fetlock, and straightens the canon ; to the forward rotation of the tibia upon the tarsus, which lowers the femoro-tibial articulation ; finally, to a greater obliquity of the femur, which results in a lowering of the coxo-femoral angle.

2. The **development of the impulsive force** is effected principally from 2 to 4 (Fig. 56), during which movement the foot is on the ground. In this space the line of direction of the member becomes directed obliquely downward and backward, and the latter becomes elongated progressively by the almost simultaneous opening of all its angles. This takes place first at the pastern, which rotates forward upon the os corona, becomes vertical, and opens the angle of the fetlock ; the canon is now extended and opens the angle of the tarsus ; finally, the superior extremity of the tibia is directed more obliquely forward, and the inferior extremity of the femur is carried backward, thus opening the angles of the femoro-tibial and the coxo-femoral articulations.

The **preparation for elevation** succeeds the period of impulsion and manifests itself at 4 (Fig. 56) ; the hoof and the pastern pivot in advance upon the toe, whence a slight flexion of the fetlock ; the canon is now rotated backward at its superior extremity, and the movement also produces a feeble closure of the tibio-metatarsal angle.

S. Phase of Elevation.—In these phenomena the foot leaves the soil, oscillates forward, and then assumes a point of contact. The line of direction of the member is first inclined backward, and afterwards obliquely forward. The posterior column, like the anterior, should successively become shortened, elongated, and prepare itself for station.

1. **Shortening.**—This process presents the following stages: *a.* Maximum flexion of the pastern and slight flexion of the canon and the thigh, producing a marked elevation of the foot and a maximum flexion of the fetlock, which, however, is only feeble in the hock, the stifle, and the hip (0 to 1). *b.* Very marked flexion of the canon and the femur, with an accentuated closing of all the articular angles except that of the fetlock, which commences to open itself by the extension of the phalanges (1 to 2).

2. **Elongation of the Member.**—The elongation commences by the extension of the fetlock, to be continued by that of the hock and the stifle from the sole influence of the extension of the tibia on the tarsus (2 to 4). The coxo-femoral angle has now reached its minimum size.

Before the foot again reaches **its point of contact,** the angles of the stifle, the hock, and the fetlock have reached their limit of extension almost entirely under the influence of that of the leg, which itself has attained this limit of movement. The pastern, which now tends to become horizontal (4) again, thus carries the hoof far in advance.

All these are conditions of structure more or less closely allied to the production of force or speed, and these we shall examine in the pages that follow. We shall also demonstrate that the animal motors can be submitted with the greatest accuracy to the same scientific analyses, according to mechanical principles, as the inanimate motors which are the production of human ingenuity.

CHAPTER I.

ANTERIOR MEMBER.

THE anterior member comprises several regions which we describe in the following order: the *shoulder*, the *arm*, the *forearm*, the *elbow*, the *knee*, the *canon*, the *fetlock*, the *footlock*, the *ergot*, the *pastern*, the *coronet*, and the *foot*.

A.—The Shoulder.

Several authors have intentionally united the description of the shoulder with that of the arm, because of the fact that, in relation with the exterior, there exists between them no definite line of separation, and that, in relation with their functions, they are intimately united. There is, nevertheless, no more reason for confounding these regions than there is for uniting the croup with the thigh, the back with the loins, or the neck with the head. We shall therefore study them separately.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—Situated between the *neck* and the *sides of the thorax*, the *withers* and the *arm*, the shoulder occupies, without any precise demarcation, the lateral and anterior region of the chest.

The scapula is flat and triangular, and is provided with a strong spine on its external surface and a wide cartilage of prolongation at its superior border. It thus forms the osseous base of the shoulder, and gives attachment to two kinds of muscles, which, with respect to the anterior member, can be distinguished as extrinsic and intrinsic. Besides, this bone participates by its inferior extremity in the formation of an articulation very mobile and at the centre of the movements of the arm.

The extrinsic muscles originate from the vertebræ, the ribs, and the sternum. Viewed only as to their action upon the shoulder, their function is to fix the latter to the trunk and regulate its displacements.

The intrinsic muscles embrace and sustain the scapulo-humeral arthrodia, and act exclusively upon the arm, except three which extend to the forearm (the long and short flexors and the great extensor of the forearm). These intrinsic muscles determine most of the movements of the humerus, and carry this bone into extension, flexion, abduction, and adduction. They also oppose the closing of the articular angle during station, and maintain in proper relation the two bones which form it.

Form.—It is difficult to assign a geometrical **form** to the shoulder on account of its intimate connections with the thorax, the neck, the withers, and the arm. In lean subjects, the most salient parts of its conformation are very markedly delineated underneath the skin: in front, its anterior border projects from the base of the neck; above, its cartilage is indicated by a curve parallel with the superior line of the withers; on its external face a longitudinal crest, formed by the acromion spine, extends from above to below; behind, a less marked furrow separates it from the thorax; in front and below, a round, voluminous eminence, improperly called the *point of the shoulder*,[1]

[1] It is formed, in fact, by the superior extremity of the humerus, and merits much more appropriately the name *point of the arm*, under which Bourgelat described it.

forms the summit of the scapulo-humeral angle and indicates externally the origin of the region of the arm; finally, immediately behind this angle, and upon the external surface of the great extensor of the fore-arm, is found what is termed the *blemish of the shoulder*. An ordinance of sanitary police, of the 31st of August, 1842, prescribed that all horses suspected of suffering from contagious diseases should be marked in this region by a square brand.

In fat and well-muscled horses these prominences of the shoulder are almost completely effaced; the external face, the anterior border, and the articulation become rounded and insensibly confounded with the adjoining regions; the form of the shoulder must be surmised rather than perceived, unless it is revealed while the animal is exercised at a more or less rapid gait, in which event its movements will inform us as to its general form, its dimensions, and its direction.

Movements.—When, during the walk, the anterior member leaves its point of contact with the ground, it becomes shortened, directed forward, and all the articular angles close themselves by the flexion of the segments which form them, and the foot is elevated a certain distance above the soil. But if the shortening were manifested only in a vertical direction, it is easy to understand that the foot would arrive at precisely the same point which it previously occupied without, of course, communicating any propulsion to the trunk.

In order to give **amplitude**[1] to the step, it is indispensable therefore that the bones be carried forward, and that the displacements begin at the superior extremity of the limb (the scapula) and terminate with the foot, one piece being moved upon the other.

The shoulder is the region whence proceed the initial movements when the member is advanced.

In this phenomenon the shoulder is slightly elevated by means of the surrounding muscles; its humeral angle rotates forward while its superior border is carried downward and backward, and the extent of this movement is directly proportional to the length of the muscles which produce it.

The elevation of the humeral angle is effected principally, through its connection with the humerus, by the strong mastoido-humeralis muscle which expands over the anterior surface of the articulation. It is aided in this action by

---

[1] We designate under this name the linear displacement of the inferior extremity of the member in advance of its vertical axis, the result of the successive movements of the angles and bones which compose it. This displacement is equal to one-half of the oscillation of the motor column, which is, metaphorically speaking, not unlike a body swinging to and fro in the manner of an articulated pendulum, but with this difference, that here the muscular contraction replaces the weight which alone causes the latter to oscillate.

the sterno-humeralis, directed obliquely outward, downward, and backward; finally must be added the serratus magnus, which draws the dorsal angle of the scapula downward and backward, as well as the dorsal trapezius.

As soon as the member has completed its extension the elevation of its superior border, and consequently the lowering of the articular angle, is effected by the trapezius, the rhomboideus (the proper elevator), and the angularis on the one part, and the sterno-trochineus and the sterno-prescapularis on the other, and the member is again brought into its primitive position. These two movements, intimately associated, are executed actively by the muscles above named, and passively by the weight of the body.

The scapular play, it is needless to say, should be as easy, supple, and extensive as possible. Nevertheless, there are some horses whose shoulders, though regularly constructed, are unable to rotate with sufficient freedom, and this limitation markedly restricts the movements of the member. Such a shoulder is vulgarly called *pegged.* (See *Defects of the Gaits.*)

Length.—The most important phenomenon in the construction of the shoulder is its **length,** or, in other words, its development from the summit of the withers to its point.

Two factors enter into the production of this dimension: the height of the spinous processes of the first dorsal vertebra above the scapular cartilage, and the length of the shoulder properly so called. But as the variations of one of the elements of this region are not always correlative with those of the other, it follows that the real length of the shoulder is not strictly given by the distance from the summit of the withers to the point of the arm. This restriction being established, let us view the assigned limits of this length and the advantages which follow its marked development.

Bourgelat was the first one to mention that the distance comprised between the summit of the head and the commissure of the lips equals almost exactly the measurement of the shoulder from the withers to the insertion of the neck on the breast.[1] This is an observation which is quite accurate, as has been testified by some of the very best authorities on such subjects, notwithstanding the active opposition which it has received from the generality of hippotomists. Those who, like ourselves, have taken the pains to verify by numerous measurements the exactness of this fact, Colonel Duhousset among them, have somewhat modified it by saying that the entire length of the head equals the distance from the summit of the withers to the point of the shoulder. It is thus, at least, in the more beautiful and perfect

---

[1] C. Bourgelat, loc. cit., p. 204.

horses, whatever may be the service to which their conformation adapts them. The exceptions are much less numerous than is generally believed. Nevertheless, such variations, although not very marked, do exist, and the experienced eye will recognize a shoulder that is **long** or one that is **short** (Fig. 57).

Fig. 57.

The length of the shoulder, in order to appreciate it accurately, should be viewed: (1) in the absolute; (2) in relation to the arm.

1. **Absolute Length of the Shoulder.**—It is necessary, for various reasons, that the shoulder should be as long as possible.

First, its length necessitates a correlative development of the intrinsic muscles, the extent of whose contraction is directly proportional to the movements effected by the humerus.

Secondly, the degree of amplitude of the rotation of the scapula in relation with the movements of the member as a whole, and the arc described by each extremity of this bone and taking place around a definite centre, are more extensive as the length of this region increases. The value of high withers lies in the length of its muscles, for long shoulder-muscles correspondingly augment this scapular movement.

Thirdly, besides being in relation with the vertical diameter of the chest, an ample length of the muscles has a disposition to render the shoulder more oblique,—another beauty whose value in horses possessed of speed we will presently explain. A long shoulder, as it is

applied vertically or obliquely upon the sides of the thorax, has a tendency of itself to elevate or to lower the centre of gravity by augmenting or by diminishing the total length of the member in this proportion, at those times when the anterior extremity of the body is being displaced. The centre of gravity, however, in order to be in accordance with the laws of equilibrium and of speed, should have a favorable position and not be too elevated. Furthermore, a shoulder can profit by its length only when it is correspondingly inclined; otherwise, the reactions will be hard and the animal without action in consequence of the defective orientation of the superior angles of the member.

There is an idea, very generally prevalent, that, in the draught-horse, marked length of the shoulder constitutes a defect rather than an advantage. This is an error which the partisans of such a theory could very easily demonstrate by making some practical measurements upon the very best specimens of draught-horses. In them, also, the head is the measurement of the shoulder. The great length of this region is in all cases, in our opinion, the first and most important element of its beauty and perfection. There are, without doubt, draught-horses with short shoulders capable, nevertheless, of very effective service, and the disadvantages of this defect in them do not have the same importance which they would have in the race-horse. In the draught-horse, amplitude of the movements is secondary; the essential qualities reside in the resistance which can be overcome by the power of his muscles and the proper incidence of their insertions. To say that the length of the scapula and its muscles, in these slow-moving animals, is defective and incompatible with the power of the muscles, is to advance a principle which is entirely incorrect and without proof.

2. **Length of the Shoulder in Relation with the Arm.**—On general principles the shoulder and the arm should be long absolutely, in order to be favorable to velocity; but, with the same total length of these two segments, it is necessary that the former be long and the latter short. This becomes apparent from the following demonstration:

Let us represent (Fig. 58) the two shoulders, AB, AB', and the two arms, CD, CD', having the same reciprocal inclination and giving the same total sum, $AB + CD$ being equal to $AB' + C'D'$ by hypothesis.

From our estimations, the relation $\frac{AC}{AD}$ is equal to $\frac{1}{5}$; we have preserved the same relation for $\frac{AC'}{AD'}$, the conditions in both cases being therefore comparable.

Let us suppose now that the extensors of CD and those of $C'D'$ are shortened through the same space ($CE = C'F$), a phenomenon which, however, in reality does not occur, since the muscles are of different lengths. The arm CD will be carried to EG, while $C'D'$ will be displaced to FH. Whence it follows that the point D will reach a situation more advanced, G, in relation with the limit of extension, than the point D', which will describe the arc $D'H$ always smaller than the arc DG under the special proposition with which we started $\left(\frac{AC}{AD} \text{ equalling } \frac{AC'}{AD'}\right)$.

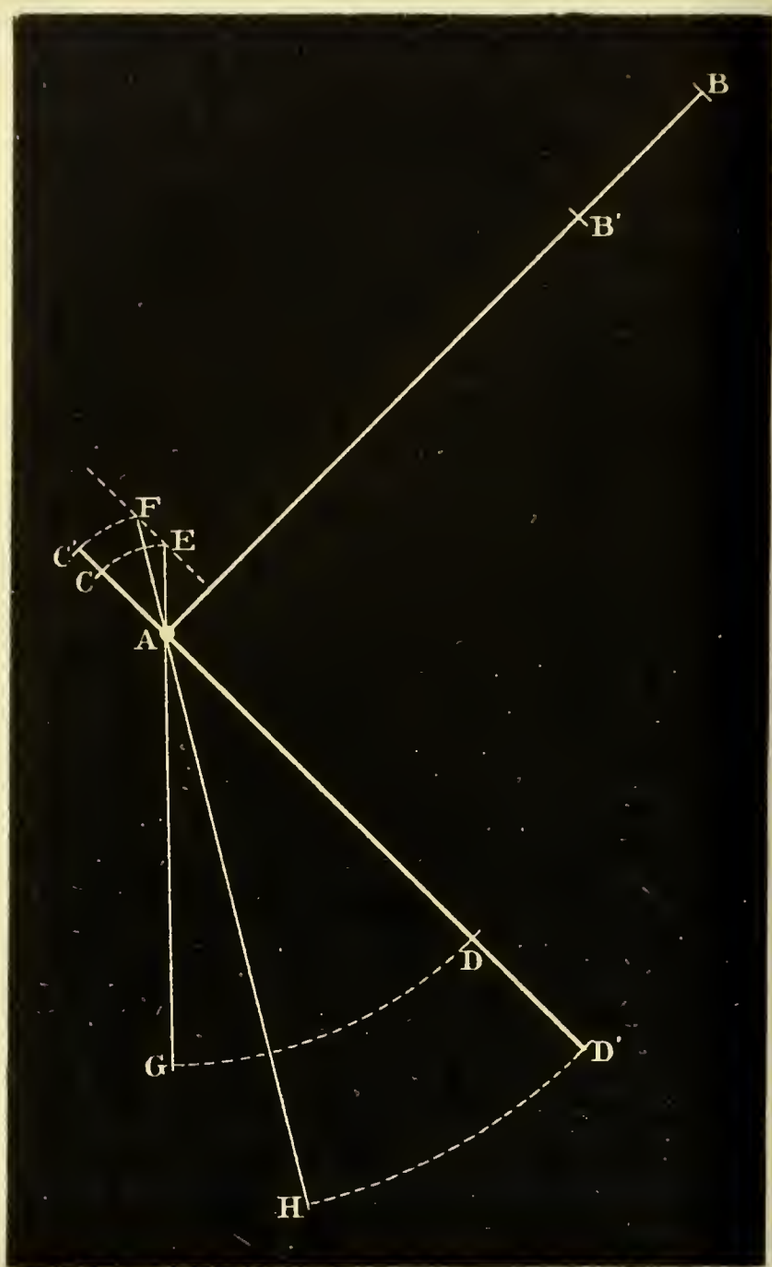


Fig. 58.

The angular displacement of the short arm, CD, is therefore more extensive for an equal contraction or shortening of the muscles than that of the long arm, $C'D'$.

In addition, the extensors of the shoulder AB are longer than those of the shoulder AB'. Consequently, the muscles of the latter are obliged to shorten themselves more for the production of the displacement DG, which the extensors of AB will effect without fatigue.

Finally, as the effort of a muscle varies according to certain conditions, among others with the resistance to be displaced, it follows that the shoulder AB will produce the extension of the arm CD more easily than AB' that of the arm $C'D'$, since the former is shorter and consequently less heavy than the latter.

Thus the length of the shoulder in comparison with that of the arm should be as great as possible, for the reason that it effects a greater displacement of the humerus with a more feeble muscular contraction.

Direction.—Another element in the beauty of the shoulder of the race-horse in particular resides in its **obliquity**.

This direction is indicated by an imaginary line which passes from the summit of the withers through the centre of the scapulo-humeral articulation. Observation has demonstrated that this line passes a little posterior to the scapular spine.

Marked obliquity of the shoulder has always been considered a beauty, or point of excellence, in close relation with the production of speed; while in its relation with the development of force it is comparatively indifferent. Nothing is more easy of comprehension.

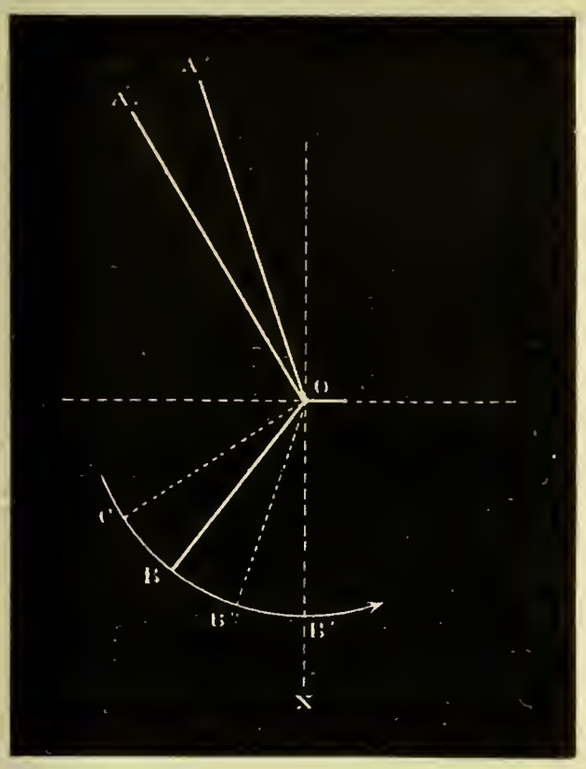


FIG. 59.

Let us represent (Fig. 59) OA and OA', two shoulders of unequal obliquities, and OB, the humerus on which they operate. Let us suppose, also, that AOB' be the maximum opening of the angle AOB.

All things being equal, the limit of extension of the humerus on the shoulder OA' will be carried to B'', since, from the anatomical union of the two regions, the angle $A'OB''$ is equal to the angle AOB'. (See *Generalities on the Members*, p. 194.) OB'' being more distant from the vertical line than OB', will also be less favorably directed than OB' in relation with the vertical direction OX.

The orientation of the scapulo-humeral angle is therefore most favorable to progression when the shoulder is oblique; the inferior segments of the member are further advanced, and such a shoulder—especially if it be long—will be capable of producing a much more extensive revolution of the humerus BB'.

If, instead of becoming larger from the straightening of the shoulder, the scapulo-humeral angle remains the same ($A'OC = AOB$), it is correct to assume that, from an equal functional shortening of the muscles, the humerus OC will be carried less in advance than the humerus OB.

Such are the reasons which operate in favor of a great obliquity in horses of speed; but this is not all.

If we study the movements of the shoulder, viewed separately, the fact becomes evident that, *for an equal elevation of its extremity*, it will

be carried much more in advance when it is inclined than when it is straight.

Let us represent by AB and $A'B'$ (Fig. 60) these two different directions; by BM and $B'M'$ two vertical lines drawn from the superior extremity of each

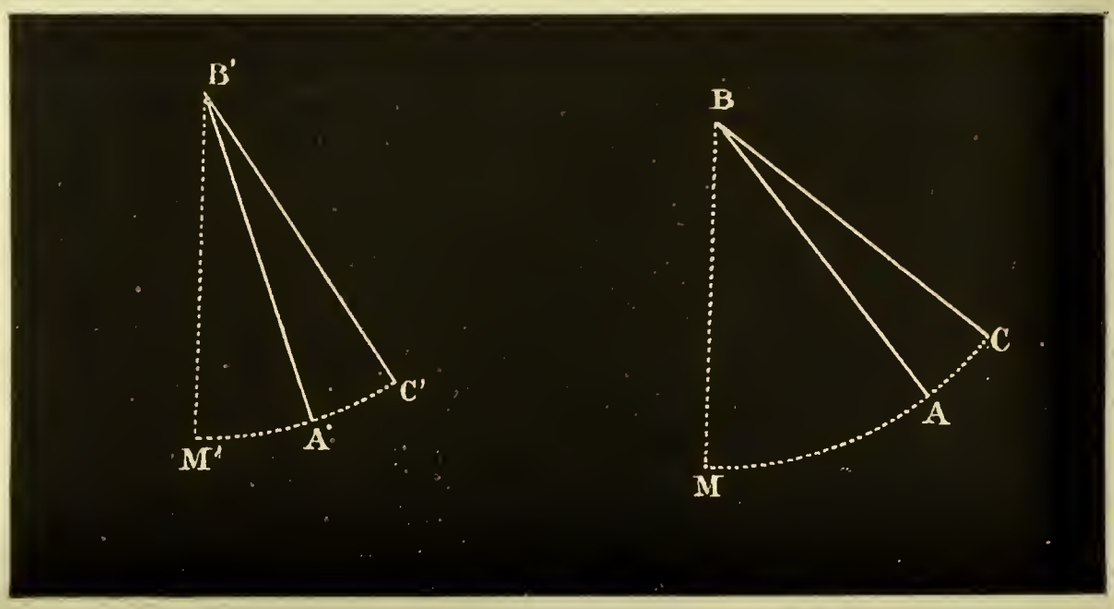


FIG. 60.

shoulder; finally, by AC and $A'C'$, *equal* amplitudes of the two scapular oscillations. It is assumed, by hypothesis, that $AM > A'M'$. Whence it follows that $AM + AC$ is $> A'M' + A'C'$, or, in other words, that MC is $> M'C'$.

Therefore, for an equal arc described by the point of each shoulder, the more inclined will carry the lower or distal extremity to a position the more anterior. This will also allow a greater extension of the humerus, and the forearm will reach forward to a point more in advance. It is certain, *a priori*, that a straight shoulder is capable of a greater oscillation forward, but it must be remembered that the degree of the scapular movements is the result of the functional shortening of the elevator muscles of the point of the arm. This shortening alone gives the measure of rotation, a measure which we know is proportional to the muscular length. We have sufficiently dwelt on this particular point *à propos* to the neck without again making reference to it here.

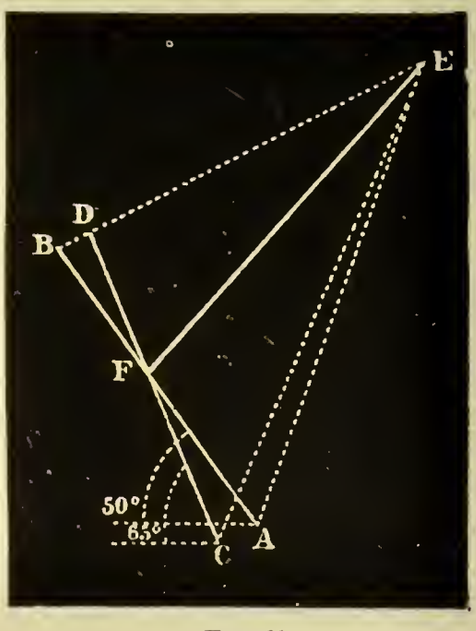


FIG. 61.

Another advantage of an oblique shoulder lies in the perpendicular incidence of the muscular insertions (Fig. 61).

The line *AE*, which indicates the direction of the elevators of the shoulder *AB*, is more perpendicular to this segment, and consequently more powerful than is its homologue *CE*, which is attached to the shoulder *CD*. But it can be seen that the mechanical inconveniences resulting from the latter conformation will be mitigated to a certain degree by a more horizontal direction of the neck *EF*. It is also observed that horses with straight shoulders, and which have to employ great force, carry their necks very low, so as to increase the power of the muscles by giving them the best incidence, and to enable the centre of gravity to be more easily displaced forward.

The Scapulo-humeral Angle.—The obliquity of the shoulder, an element to be desired for velocity, tends to effect a reduction of the dimension of the scapulo-humeral angle. This circumstance would, consequently, restrain the extent of play of the latter, if the humerus, by a more vertical position, did not preserve a normal separation of these two segments.

Whatever may be the value of this direction of the humerus, it never attains such a degree as to give to this angle the same obtuseness which the other angles of locomotion have, excepting the coxo-femoral. Normally, in running- and trotting-horses, the scapulo-humeral angle is much more acute than any of the others. The consideration of this fact alone is, however, not sufficient to establish our position. It is necessary that the arm itself have good direction; in a word, that the angle remain *well situated* in relation to the vertical axis of the member.

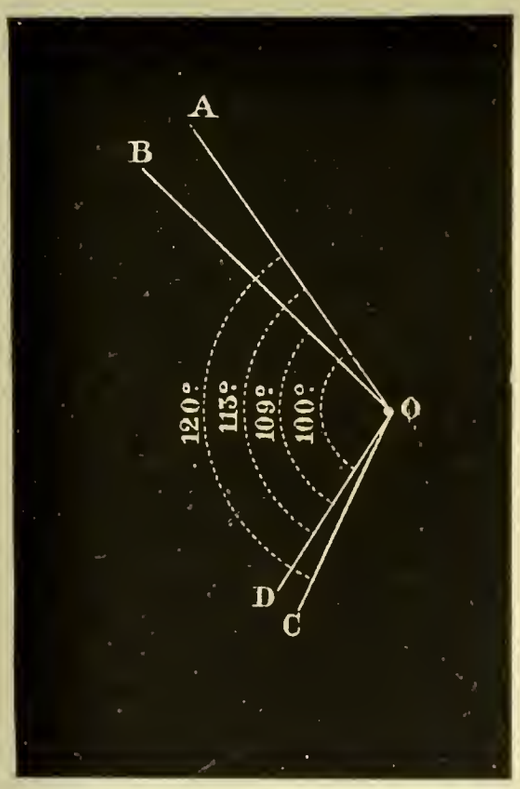


Fig. 62.

Our measurements have shown us, in fact (Fig. 62), the angles *AOD* and *AOC*, as well as the angles *BOD* and *BOC*.

It may be said that a large scapulo-humeral angle can coexist with an oblique shoulder, and, *vice versa*, a small one with a straight shoulder.

It can be understood by this time why so many beautiful or ideally perfect shoulders fail to fulfil the expectations which are based upon them, and how, also, the inclination of the arm constitutes, to a certain point, a compensation for a straight shoulder. In the latter case, the animal may still be capable of great

speed, but he does not receive the benefits which should result from the fixation of the scapulo-humeral angle in advance. Whenever the anterior member is advanced, the point of the shoulder is not sufficiently elevated to permit the other segments to attain their maximum degree of movement. As a natural consequence of this, the gait is deficient, the feet are but little elevated from the ground, the steps are short, and the movements rapid.

The scapulo-humeral angle in horses of the best conformation is not 90 degrees (as is generally but incorrectly supposed); and, *a fortiori*, the inclination upon the horizon of the two segments constituting it is more than 45 degrees. In the articular angles, the axes of movement of the branches should meet in the probable centre of the articulation. The central point of the scapulo-humeral union is not, as has been commonly believed, the point of the arm (the summit of the trochiter and trochin). Its situation is more posterior, and corresponds externally to the convexity of the great trochanter over which the tendon of the sub-spinatus muscle glides. It is at this point that the axes of the scapula and the humerus meet, and the angle formed by these lines can be measured in the living animal when the bones are placed in their normal position in relation with the median line.

Our measurements have given us 55 degrees as a *mean inclination* of the scapula in horses possessed of speed, and 65 to 70 degrees in those used for slow and heavy work. The beautiful models of *rapid* draught-horses do not differ sensibly, in this relation, from the champion of the race-course, and we do not hesitate to affirm this fact in opposition to those obstinate partisans of the oblique shoulder, who value it only in the race-horse, and declare it a defect in the draught-horse. The unpublished observations on this topic which Professor Laulanié has kindly communicated to us, although less numerous than ours, fully corroborate our own. According to our distinguished colleague, the mean scapular inclination is 57 degrees, the extreme measurements varying from 50 to 66 degrees.

The scapulo-humeral angle has been determined by us to have a mean dimension of 115 degrees, and we have seen it vary from 110 to 130 degrees in all types of horses.

Résumé.—It results from the preceding statements that the direction of the shoulder is in intimate relation with the speed. It is desirable to have it as much inclined as possible, because its obliquity will admit of a greater extension of the humerus; it will permit the member to be raised higher and to complete the extension before placing the foot on the soil; it will more strongly project the foot, and will be

compatible with a favorable orientation of the scapulo-humeral angle; finally, it will give suppleness, style, and amplitude to the gait, and at the same time will attenuate those reactions whose effects are as injurious to the rider as to the horse himself. Scapular obliquity usually accompanies elevated withers and great depth of thorax. It gives to the horse a mark of distinction which denotes the nobleness of his race.

All other directions of the shoulder are antagonistic to velocity from the fact that their elements are diametrically opposite to those of the conformation we have described. These disadvantages, however, disappear, as before stated, in slow and heavy work for which force alone is required.

To conclude, from these remarks, that the shoulder of a heavy Percheron is defective because it is not straight, would be wrong; and those who will endeavor to prove it by real measurements will recognize that, in the very best specimens of this class, this region, nevertheless, will show a marked inclination. Without doubt, in such cases, the most beautiful and perfect shoulder is that which offers the greatest surface for the adaptation of the collar. It is a serious mistake to suppose that an inclined scapula does not furnish the elements of this large surface, for it excludes nothing favorable to muscular power.

It has also been said that, in the presence of such a shoulder, the application of the collar is against the scapulo-humeral articulation only; whence a certain amount of pain during the efforts of extreme traction, bruises of the sensitive parts, wounds, etc. These are objections which have value only when the shoulder is too sharp, emaciated, or poorly muscled, and consequently leaves the articulation too much in relief; but if it become defective for this reason alone, the defects must not be attributed to the obliquity. If the muscles be well developed this hinderance will disappear, especially if the precaution be taken to elevate the attachment of the traces. It seems useless to repeat so often the aphorism, the harness is made for the horse, and not the horse for the harness. Nevertheless, how few harness-makers seem to appreciate this fact, but prefer to choose the collar without taking the measurement of the shoulders!

The inclination of the scapular segment having a marked influence only upon the speed, the straight shoulder is accepted in the motor which works exclusively from the weight of the mass. In a rapid motor, these defects will increase whenever the height over the withers is low, and, particularly, when the latter conformation is due to the low attachment of the trunk between the anterior members. Their free movement being already prevented on account of the

defective direction of the shoulder, these members will be advanced with much more difficulty, as they will be required to support a greater portion of the body-weight. Under these circumstances, if the animal be able to perform good service at the gallop or the trot on level roads, he becomes dangerous in descending hills or on rough roads, and is predisposed to stumbling and falling when he increases his speed.

Finally, the shoulder merits our attention from a point of view of the **modifications which may supervene in its direction.** According to the mode of subsistence or the employment of the region, it becomes straight or inclined, oblique or straight, as it was at first. A long time ago, Ch. de Sourdeval, in the *Journal des Haras*, had already recognized the influence of the attitudes which animals assume to obtain their nourishment. This accurate observer has proved that the shoulder becomes more vertical in those which are obliged to eat from the ground, or which are maintained in pasturage, whilst it becomes more oblique in those which are fed in the stable and receive their food from a high manger. Besides, a majority of horsemen think that a proper dressing of the saddle-horse in the riding-school will incline the scapular segment to a notable degree, and that the continuous pressure of the collar will straighten the shoulder of the draught-horse. This is also our opinion.

Position.—It suffices not that the shoulder be long and well directed, it should also be properly **placed** against the vertebral column,—that is to say, so situated as to maintain a proper separation between itself and the croup. When this condition is not fulfilled, the vertebral column is too long, lacks force, transmits the impulsive action of the posterior limbs feebly, and becomes sway-backed as a consequence. This defect, very common in draught-horses, is nearly always accompanied and complicated by a vicious direction and insufficient length of the scapula, which is then called *short*, *straight*, or *forward*. We can determine that it is not so by measuring the distance between the dorsal angle of the scapula and the angle of the haunch. In a natural conformation this distance is about equal to the length of the head, while in disproportionate subjects it may measure one-fourth or even one-third more. (See *Proportions*, length of the body.)

Volume or Muscular Development.—The **volume** of the muscles of the shoulder is an indispensable element of its **beauty**, whatever may be its relative function. This qualification has different degrees, dependent upon the race, the temperament, and the mode of rearing and subsistence. The muscles of the English thoroughbred are

more remarkable for the density, fineness, and eleanness of their fibres than those of the heavy Pereheron, in whieh they are voluminous, short, and separated by an abundanee of eonneetive tissue. In the one ease, the muscles eommunieate to the region a long, slender, and graeeful appearance; in the other, it is the mass, the volume, the power. We should never demand a museular development whieh changes all in all the conditions of its intended utilization.

When the osseous eminenees of the shoulder, espeeially its scapular spine, its point, its tuberosity, its dorsal angle, and its eartilage of prolongation, form a prominenee somewhat marked, whieh allows us to surmise the situation of these parts, it is ealled *well outlined.* This is the form whieh it presents in all horses belonging to the finer breeds.

When, on the eontrary, the same reliefs are very apparent underneath the skin, from the effeet of a eommeneing emaeiation or museular atrophy, as is observed in horses exhausted by fatigue or privations, it is ealled *meagre* or *lean,* and expresses a eertain feebleness of the loeomotory apparatus. When, finally, this emaeiation is such that the seapula can be almost eompletely outlined under the integument by its reliefs and its general eonfiguration; when the situation of the super- and sub-spinati museles is manifested by a deep depression; when the scapular cartilage is delimited above by a prominent eurve from before to behind; when, in a word, the region as a whole overhangs, so to speak, the adjacent parts of surrounding regions, as the neck, ribs, withers, baek, it is ealled *atrophied.*

Conversely, if the museles, instead of being deficient in bulk, exeeed a volume eompatible with their speeial serviee, a volume demanded, besides, for general harmony; if, for example, they affeet, in the saddle-horse, a volume whieh would be sought for in the draught-horse, they will render the movements elumsy by surcharging the anterior part of the body, oppose themselves to the eomplete extension of the anterior member, and diminish the force of propulsion engendered by the hind limbs in rapid locomotion. In these eonditions the shoulder reeeives the appellations of *massive, fleshy, thick, charged with too much muscle,* ete.

Diseases and Blemishes.—These are *denudations* and *excoriations,* due to a mal-fitting collar, which may terminate in smooth or radiating *cicatrices* formed by a portion of the skin which is deprived of its hair, thinner, irritable, and much less resisting to friction. The seat of these wounds is at the level of the anterior borders of the shoulders, where they appear flat and circumscribe the base of the neck. Horse-dealers never fail to point to these as a proof that the horse is free in the collar. Of but little gravity in themselves, they constitute, nevertheless, a cause of depreciation in view of the increased sensitiveness

which they give to the parts and the difficulties which are afterwards experienced in the application of the collar.

At other times, this region may be the seat of *cold abscesses*, disabling the horse for a variable period during their formation. These are sometimes true fibromata, from the induration of the subcutaneous connective tissue. Of a chronic character at first, they soon become so sensitive to the pressure of the collar as to render the most docile horse intractable.

The most serious of these tumors are those at the point of the shoulder, from the fact of the enormous volume which they may acquire, the dangers which their extirpation presents, and the difficulties experienced in healing the consecutive wounds, which are always more or less deep. They are caused by the pressure of a collar badly adjusted, insufficiently padded, or too heavy.

It is not necessary to confound these tumors with diffuse enlargements of the scapulo-humeral articulation, as, for instance, with the particular affection known under the clinical but improper names *sprained shoulder*, *shoulder-slip*, which is accompanied by a lameness in which the anterior member is markedly abducted when it is extended, instead of moving in a direction parallel to that of the body. This movement, which is called *mowing*, is due to the immobilization of the arm upon the shoulder or the sides of the thorax, and is a symptom of diverse lesions of the ligaments, the muscles, the bones, the blood-vessels, or the nerves. Although this phenomenon may be quite rare, the point of the shoulder none the less often carries the evidence of the treatment employed to combat it. Such are the marks of *cauterization*, *setons*, *rowels*, and *blisters*, which occasion decortications, accidental white spots, or cicatrices of a particular form upon a more or less extensive area of this region. The gravest blemishes, above all, are traces of the actual cautery, except in the Barb horses, in which this therapeutic agent is always applied as a means of *prevention* against diseases of the articulation. It is important, in such cases, to examine carefully the inferior portion of the corresponding member, for the scapular lesion may be a feint for another disease, or, what is more frequent, an indication of an error of diagnosis.

Let us mention, also, *paralysis* of the shoulder and *atrophy* of the super- and sub-spinati muscles, which are sometimes observed, but which produce no lameness.

B.—The Arm.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base; Form.—The arm, slightly detached from the trunk, is situated between the *shoulder*, with which it is confounded, and the *forearm*, from which it is separated by an oblique furrow in front.

Limited in front by the *breast* and the *axilla*, behind by the *sides of the thorax*, and lower down by the *elbow*, it contains for its osseous base a long and voluminous bone, the humerus, surrounded by two sets of muscles: the first, coming from the shoulder, the neck, the side of the thorax, and the sternum, moves this region in every direction; the second, extending to the forearm and the foot, regulates the movements of the inferior segments of the member.

Movements.—When the thoracic member is carried forward, as in walking, the humerus is first flexed, then its inferior extremity

describes an arc of a circle forward to increase the opening of the scapulo-humeral angle. It is not, as our distinguished colleague, M. Chénier,[1] has said, that the humeral extension is terminated at the end of the phase of contact, but it is at the end of the elevation, when the foot is being placed on the ground, that the two bones (humerus and scapula) attain their maximum separation. The same phenomena are true of the member of the opposite side; the angle is closed by the approaching of its branches until the step is about to be terminated, when the arm is extended.

Length.—We will not consider the details of this particular element as we did in the case of the shoulder. The arm should be as long as possible, relatively, in order to give greater length to its muscles which attach to the radius, and to permit its inferior extremity to describe an arc of a larger circle. But its length will be defective when it becomes excessive,—that is to say, disproportionate relative to that of the shoulder. In this instance, as we have seen (see Fig. 58), the arc which it describes is not augmented. The foot will pass over a smaller space of the ground surface; the movements are not executed with freedom; the animal is disposed to stumble and fall, at least, if the shoulder be not long and oblique. It is therefore apparent that, in relation with the latter region, the arm should be short to give the necessary extent and rapidity to its oscillations. According to our measurements, confirmed by those of MM. Colin and Duhousset, the distance between the point of the shoulder and the centre of the humero-radial articulation should be equal to one-half of the length of the head in draught-horses. In rapid motors, like the trotter or the running-horse, it is, on the contrary, nearly always longer.

It is important to recognize this dimension from a point of view purely artistic, because sculptors and painters, says Colonel Duhousset,[2] have committed grave errors from antiquity even to the present time. Nearly all represent the humerus too long, placing much too high the point of the arm, which should not extend beyond the level of the extremity of the sternum.

While an exaggerated length of the arm constitutes a defect which is not always compensated, its shortness also produces deficiencies of an inverse order, and both are hinderances in that which concerns the rapid gaits. If too short, it accomplishes an insufficient extension; its muscles contract feebly, and restrain the movements of the forearm; the

---

[1] G. Chénier, Analyse de la première édition du présent ouvrage, in Écho des sociétés et associations vétérinaires, année 1882.

[2] E. Duhousset, Lecheval, Paris, 1881, p. 67.

elevation of the anterior members, when the animal is in locomotion, becomes exaggerated,—an elevation which is executed at the expense of the length of the step. Whence a loss of time which, insignificant as it may be at each step, eventually determines a marked diminution in the total quantity of speed.

Direction.—The **direction** of the arm is indicated by an imaginary line which joins the convexity of the great trochanter to the centre of the external lateral ligament of the elbow.

It should fulfil the principal elements, as follows: to allow to the scapulo-humeral angle, already reduced by the obliquity of the scapula, a sufficient magnitude, and not to alter the direction of the vertical line in relation with the radius.

We estimate, from our researches, that a mean inclination of 60 degrees is favorable to the development of velocity. When the inclination passes beyond these figures, it must be compensated by an augmentation of the scapular obliquity. In the draught-horse, whose scapula is more straight, the humerus does not suffer by becoming more oblique. In the more active draught-horse it is intermediary between the two preceding types.

The data furnished by instantaneous photographs of animals in locomotion[1] show that the limit of extension of the humerus is very close to the vertical line passing through the scapulo-humeral centre.

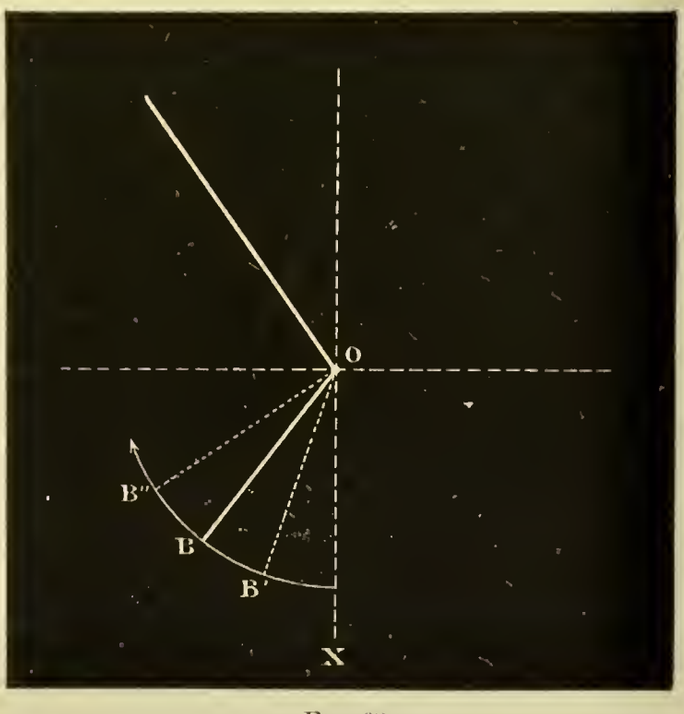


Fig. 63.

Theoretically, therefore, the arm should not be too straight at repose,—that is to say, in such a position that the line of direction of the member is too close to the vertical line passing through the centre of the suspension of this member to the trunk. When the conformation is thus, the extension of the humerus is necessarily limited, and such an arm cannot profit by the advantages of a long shoulder. It is true (Fig. 63) that the segment OB', for example, must pass through much less space to

[1] See the figures of MM. Marey and Pagès, reproducing the details of the oscillation of the members in the gaits.

reach the vertical axis OX than the segment OB, supposed to be well directed. With the latter, however, the forward oscillation will be greater, and it will correspond better with a long shoulder, which, as we know, determines the degree of its displacements.

If it be *too oblique*, on the contrary, as OB'', it does not bring the humero-radial articulation sufficiently in advance to permit the forearm

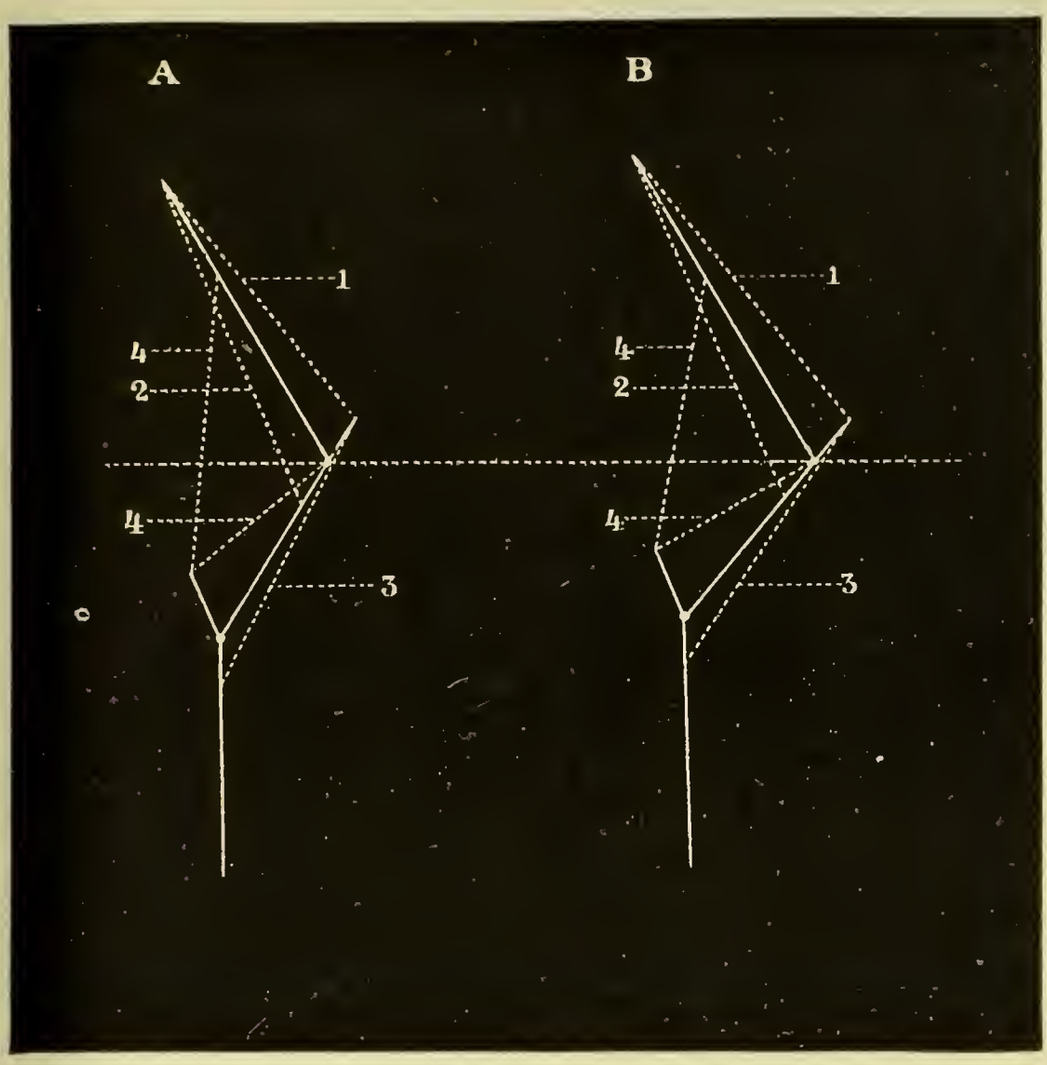


FIG. 64.—Scheme of the muscular incidences in the straight arm, *A*, and in the oblique arm, *B*.

1, Extensors of the humerus; 2, flexors; 3, flexors of the forearm; 4, extensors.

and the canon to evolve themselves completely. It obliges the horse to multiply his movements and elevate the members excessively, instead of being advanced without describing too great a curvature,—a loss of both time and energy.

But a very oblique arm gives a better insertion for the muscles than a straight one, as can be demonstrated by an examination of the two diagrams (*A* and *B*) of Fig. 64, upon which are indicated the flexors and the extensors of the humerus and the radius; its muscles, however, are shorter. It is also not disadvantageous in horses from which great force is exacted.

The degree of brachial inclination, on the other hand, having an

influence on the value of the scapulo-humeral angle, it may be asked if, for velocity or speed, a straight shoulder will not in a measure be compensated by an excess of obliquity of the arm. In other words, is it rational to prefer (Fig. 65) an angle *AOB* to an angle *COD*, both having the same dimension? Evidently it is: to a straight arm an oblique shoulder; this is the law, and for several reasons already known. We will recall them: An oblique shoulder will augment the elevation and extension of its point, from the same quantity of muscular contraction; whence it follows that the inferior extremity of the member will be carried more in advance of its primitive position. As the straightening of the humerus also tends to the same result, the two acting in unison will increase the total amplitude of the movement.

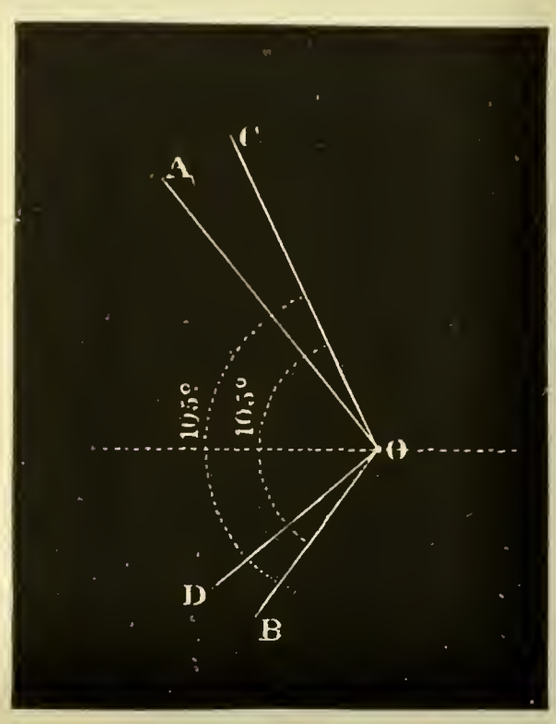


FIG. 65.

If, on the contrary, the conditions be the reverse, if the arm be very oblique and the shoulder straight, the scapulo-humeral angle, although equal to the preceding, will be restrained to a less separation of its branches, because the extremity of the shoulder and the humero-radial articulation will remain too far backward in order to give to the forearm and the canon the ease and the time to be carried sufficiently far in advance.

To *recapitulate*, the inclination of the humerus should not be excessive in rapid motors, and the conditions of a good orientation of the scapulo-humeral angle must be found in the obliquity of the shoulder.

This explains why certain subjects, well marked in appearance in relation with their articular angles, do not confirm the conclusions which are based upon them. It suffices not (as we have seen on page 191) that the angles may have freedom of action, but it is also necessary that this action may be effected in the direction of the movement. If their orientation in relation with the vertical line of the centre of movement is defective, all the mechanical advantages for the accomplishment of our aim, speed, are lost.

These considerations, upon which we have purposely insisted, are not applicable to services which only exact strength. We will except, however, the rapid draught-horse, in which the elements of force seem

to be dependent on the phenomenon of speed. The inclination and the disposition of the articular angles will also very often enable us to judge the amount of thoroughbred blood in such animals. It is, by no means, not the same in slow draught-horses. We frequently meet in them a straight shoulder supported on an oblique arm. The obliquity of the humerus in such cases is not a defect, for it favors the power of the muscles by rendering their insertions more perpendicular. The shortness of the step, the inevitable consequence of such a conformation, offers nothing of special interest, since, in motors of this nature, the ultimate purpose does not consist in the extent but in the power of the effort produced.

Direction of the Arm in Relation with the Median Plane of the Body.—The **long axis** of the arm, in order that its displacements may be effected properly, should be almost parallel to the median plane of the body. If its inferior extremity is directed too much outward, the whole member is deviated in the same degree, the relation of the vertical lines is disturbed, and the foot is turned inward. This is called *cross-footed.* If, on the contrary, the elbow be deviated inward, the inferior part of the limb is turned outward (see *crooked-legged* horse). We will again refer to these *à propos* of the *axes.*

Muscularity.—The development of the muscles is an absolute beauty. It is preferredly appreciated by the prominence and width of the olecranon muscles (extensors of the forearm), which occupy the triangular space between the scapula and the humerus, and by the relief formed by the humeral biceps in front of this region.

Diseases and Blemishes.—The region of the arm is, in most instances, exempt from these lesions. *Contusions* and, more rarely, *fractures*, the result of kicks received from other horses, when they are worked in file, running in pasture, in public exhibitions, or during transportation on railroads, are the principal alterations of this nature which are observed in this region. *Rupture* of the fibres of the coraco-radialis muscle is sometimes a cause of lameness.

C.—The Elbow.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **elbow,** situated between the *arm* and the *forearm,* and in front of the *xiphoid region,* has for its base the superior extremity of the cubitus, a voluminous apophysis called the *olecranon.* It gives attachment principally to the extensors of the forearm.

The elbow offers for consideration three elements: its length, a good direction, and its freedom from blemishes.

Length.—The osseous process which forms the olecranon repre-

sents the arm of a long lever for the muscles to which it gives attachment. Charged to maintain, during station, the summit of the humero-radial angle continually tending to become closed from the pressure of the body-weight, and to produce extension of the same angle in the propulsion of the trunk (Fig. 66), and, finally, to bring the antibrachial region into its primitive position, during locomotion, these muscles act so much the more favorably as the arm of the lever in question is longer and more curved backward. Preference should therefore be given to an elongated and prominent elbow, rather than to one which, in a word, encroaches much upon the arm.

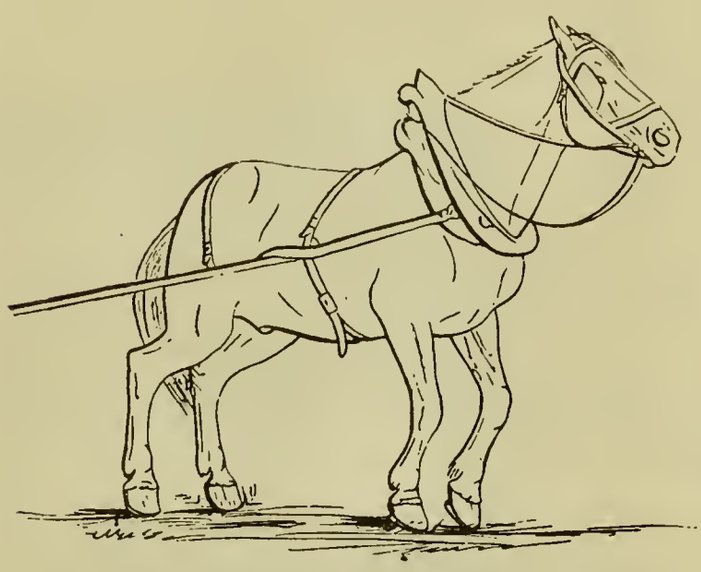


FIG. 66.—Reproduction from an instantaneous photograph.

Direction.—The **direction** of the elbow is related to that of the arm. It is considered fine or beautiful when it occupies a plane parallel to the axis of the body, and when, besides, this plane is sufficiently separated from the lateral faces of the thorax. The elbows are then said to be *well separated* and *well directed.*

If, from the feeble development of the muscles which separate the anterior limb from the ribs, the region in question, although always parallel to the median plane, is too close to the thoracic walls, the horse has the *elbows on the body.* It then lacks vigor, energy, and amplitude of the breast.

When the elbow is *turned outward,* the inferior extremity of the member is deviated inward, which characterizes the animal as being *pigeon-toed;* if, on the contrary, the elbow is turned obliquely inward, the foot is directed outward, and the animal is said to be *outbow-footed.*

Each one of these directions is vicious, because it renders the movements of locomotion ungraceful, disturbs the vertical axis of the members, predisposes them to premature ruin, even including the effects from *speedy cut* and *interfering.*

Freedom from Blemishes.—Wounds of the region of the elbow may be the consequence of the improper application of the belly-band, when the horse is worked in the shafts, particularly of two-wheeled vehicles or the cart.

Most frequently they are due to the mode in which the decubitus is effected.

Certain horses have the habit of lying down like a cow,—that is to say, of maintaining the anterior members flexed under the chest. It results from this that the heels of the shoe come into direct contact with the point of the elbow, irritate and bruise the skin, and cause the formation of a more or less voluminous tumor called *shoe-boil*, so named from the agent which acts as the exciting cause. A tumor of this kind is sometimes sensitive to the touch, and necessitates suspension from work. At other times shoe-boils are not harmful, except as being ugly blemishes. We have had under our observation for several years a horse which performed very active service and carried on each elbow a shoe-boil of the volume of a man's head.

As soon as any excoriation of the skin of this region is perceived, it is necessary to observe the position of the animal in the decubitus, and, if required, to shorten the heels of the shoe, or simply the one on the internal side, which alone is most usually the cause of the "boil;" or, again, we may protect the foot with a leather boot.

We may here mention *fractures* of the olecranon; these are followed by a permanent deformity of the elbow, the extremity of the bone being displaced upward by the contraction of the extensor muscles of the forearm. Even after the fracture is repaired, this injury causes a lameness the nature of which can always be detected by careful observation.

D.—The Forearm.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **forearm**, situated between the *arm* and the *knee*, is related, above and behind, to the *elbow*.

Two bones constitute its base: the radius and the greater portion of the cubitus. These bones are surrounded by two sets of muscles, which all act upon the metacarpus or the phalanges; the one, the anterior, compressing the extensors of these regions, and the other, the posterior, forming the flexors of the same. Indirectly, through the ligaments, they can also move the forearm, and carry it into extension or flexion, according to the muscles which act. They operate for the most part upon levers of the third class, and hence play their principal *rôle* in the production of velocity; rarely do they concur in an active manner in the support of the body, a function provided for by the special mechanical conformation of the parts.

Form.—The forearm, as a whole, has the form of a cone, depressed from side to side towards its base or superior extremity, whose volume is in relation with that of the muscles just named.

Its *external face* is separated from the arm and the elbow by a furrow, with an inferior convexity, due to the prominence of the extensors of the forearm upon the superior extremity of the antibrachial muscles, extensors of the metacarpus, and phalanges. A gutter, extending along the external border of the radius, and in its lower part, separates the anterior from the posterior muscles.

The *internal face* is devoid of muscles over the greater portion of its extent, and the skin is applied almost directly against the radius. The internal subcutaneous vein of the forearm, on which phlebotomy is sometimes practised, crosses this face a little obliquely from below to above. Finally, in the lower third of

this region, we meet a horny excrescence to which has been given the name *chestnut.* It is small in animals of fine breeding.

The *anterior* and *posterior faces,* convex from side to side, are covered by muscles; their thickness is proportional to the volume of the latter.

Movements.—The forearm, from the mode of union of its two bones with themselves and with the humerus, can execute only two principal movements: *extension* and *flexion.*

The first, whose extent is directly proportional to the length of the bones concerned and the degree of openness of the humero-radial angle, carries the knee forward and upward, and enables the anatomical foot to be moved in advance. This is accomplished just before the foot touches the ground.

The second takes place principally during the latter half of the phase of contact, as is shown by instantaneous photographs. It contributes, therefore, in a certain measure to the impulsive forces, since in this period the member, as a whole, is directed obliquely downward and backward.

Beauties.—In order to be in the most favorable conditions for the production of velocity, the forearm should be *long, wide, thick,* and *well directed.*

Length.—The **length** of the antibrachial lever should be considered from two different points of view: the one considers the absolute length; the other, its length as compared with that of the canon.

a. **Absolute Length.**—The absolute length of the forearm should be as great as possible, for the reason that the arc which this segment describes by its extremity is proportional to its length; also, because this length implies a corresponding length of the muscles which cover it. It is upon these two factors that the velocity, in so far as it is produced by the structures of this region, principally depends.

If the forearm be short, its oscillation, it is true, will be more rapid, but the distance passed at each step will be less. It can only preserve the velocity by a greater frequency of the movements, at the expense of a loss of time and more fatigue. Again, the knee being more elevated, the whole limb will be raised rather than projected forward; the animal will trot *upon place,* but with a short forearm the movements will be more brilliant, easy, and harmonious, and the horse is said to have *high knee-action.* In the cavalry horse, or in those used in riding-schools and parades, this is, without doubt, a matter of beauty, but perfection in this respect makes the horse more manageable, and is therefore a useful qualification. A horse with a high knee-

action will be less disposed to stumble, will more easily overcome obstacles in his way, and will be fitted for special varieties of work, but will never be possessed of great speed.

Horses provided with long forearms move their members closely along the ground, and thus offer less safety to the rider on uneven roads. An intelligent handling and a rational training will nearly always cause a disappearance, or at least an attenuation, of most of these disadvantages of a long forearm.

b. **Length in Relation with the Canon.**—Nearly all authors agree that the radio-metacarpal segment should owe its length to the forearm or its superior section, and not to that of the canon. In other words, from a point of view of speed, the conformation should be such as to present a long forearm and a short canon.

The relative length of these regions varies in a small proportion when they are measured in a large number of horses of the same height at the withers. But the few centimetres by which these figures differ are sufficient to produce a very marked effect on the value of the movements at the extremity of the member.

Professor Neumann[1] was the first one to remark that if the metacarpus be considered just before the foot is raised, when the region is inclined downward and backward, it will be seen that the latter plays the *rôle* of a lever, upon the superior extremity of which the weight of the body is decomposed into two secondary forces: the one, perpendicular to the canon, tends to carry the knee forward; the other, parallel to this segment, indicates the intensity with which the foot presses against its point of support, the ground. The latter force, antagonized by the resistance of the soil, offers but little of interest to us in the present discussion. The former force acts behind on the arm of a lever, the metacarpus, antagonized in front by the extensor muscles of this region. It follows, then, that the shorter this arm the less will be the effect of the force in question and the less the fatigue of these muscles in combating the tendency to flexion.

A member with a long forearm will support the body more easily during contact for a longer time without a greater expenditure of force, and will incline itself more before being raised from the ground, a condition which will enable the foot to describe a larger arc and increase the length of the step.

If the inferior extremity of such a forearm, having reached its limit of inclination, be now flexed, it will describe, for an equal angular displacement, a greater quantity of movement, and the latter is always proportional to the speed acquired, which is itself in direct

---

[1] G. Neumann, De l'avant-bras du cheval et de l'influence de sa longueur sur la rapidité des allures, in Journal de médecine vétérinaire militaire, t. xi., année 1873, 1874, p. 157.

ratio with the distance passed over in a unit of time; but the extension of the canon taking place after the flexion of the forearm, the quantity of movement of the latter will tend to augment that which the antibrachial muscles will communicate to the canon, in order to favor the rapid and extensive projection of the inferior part of the member.

It is, therefore, also necessary to seek for a great development of the forearm in the parts where the muscles are situated, since the degree of muscular shortening gives the measure of the angular displacements of the bones. For this reason it is preferable to have a short canon in relation with the forearm. From a point of view of locomotion, it is just to say that, of these two segments, the one is active and the other passive; the first, by its mobility, overcomes the inertia of the second.

Finally, with a short forearm, the displacement of the knee is effected upward instead of its being projected forward in the direction of movement. The arm of the lever (radius) of the resistance (weight of canon) diminishes, whilst the intensity of the power (flexors of the radius) remains the same, which favors so much the latter and gives to it more facility to elevate the knee. With a long radius, the arm of the lever (radius) of the resistance (weight of the canon) augments, and the power (extensors of the metacarpus) remains invariable, a condition which favors this bone again and disposes it more favorably for the extension of the canon. This is the reason why, in the first case, the knee-action is exaggerated, the members badly employed and not properly advanced; also why, in the second case, the knee is not unduly elevated, the segments being at the same time well projected forward. The animal thus acquires more speed without increasing the rapidity of his efforts and without compromising the integrity of the locomotory apparatus.

Width.—It suffices not that the forearm should merely be long, but it should also be wide, this wideness being an indicator of the volume of the muscles.

This width is measured from before to behind below the elbow, viewing the horse in profile, at a point always a little superior to the widest part of the tibial region, and at the level of the most prominent portion of its anterior muscles; it is, finally, on the same level as that of the tibial region at the point where the latter receives the insertion of the fold of the buttock.

The forearm has such a conformation in well-formed horses, which qualifies it *wide, muscular, well muscled.*

The tendons which terminate, under such conditions, the posterior radial muscles are short and thick; they are well separated from the canon and favorably disposed to fulfil their function of support in relation to the fetlock. The antero-posterior diameter of this region should be considerable,—in the draught-horse more than in any others, since it is in relation with the contractile force of these muscles, provided they are dense, firm, and poor in adipose and connective tissues.

When the forearm offers dimensions opposed to the preceding, it is defective by reason of its small volume, and is called *slender*. The slender forearm characterizes ordinarily a horse without energy, with long, disproportionate limbs, vulgarly called *weedy;* he lacks strength and firmness, and, in general, is defective in most instances in the other regions.

Thickness.—The **thickness,** in close relation with the width, is measured from side to side, viewing the region from in front. It is recognizable by the prominence which the anterior antibrachial muscles form externally. It is desirable to have the thickness as extensive as possible, for the reasons which we have previously indicated. It may be remarked, nevertheless, that the forearm does not have the same muscular development in the thoroughbred horse as in the draught-horse; the region appears flat in the former, whilst it seems rounded in the latter.

Direction.—The **direction** of the forearm is as important a characteristic of its beauty as its length and its breadth. It should be vertical when the horse is examined in profile, and parallel with the median plane of the body when he is viewed in front. The vertical axis in this case is not altered, and the members are well placed to support the weight of the body.

If the inferior extremity of the region be directed forward or backward, outward or inward from the vertical line, the direction is vicious; certain parts of the limbs become exhausted and prematurely ruined, to which we will again refer in speaking of the *knee* and the *vertical axes*, because any deviation of this nature, altering the vertical position of the segment, demands an increase of function of the muscles equivalent to the part of the weight which is no more supported by the bones themselves.

It is not without interest to present here the details of the *rôle* which the direction of the arm plays in the effective utilization of the antibrachial movements. The angle formed by the two segments depends upon the more or less marked degree of inclination of the humerus. When the latter approaches the horizontal, this angle is so

much more closed than when the bone in question is more vertical. In order that the horse may have speed it is necessary that the forearm be not only long but that it be also enabled to become flexed to a large degree, so as to give the greatest possible amplitude to the step. The more vertical the arm the better will this condition be fulfilled. Such a disposition will, besides, favor the opening of the humero-radial angle during the propulsion of the trunk, another qualification which all the articular angles of rapid motors possess. Here observation confirms the theoretical data presented in discussing the arm. In race-horses the latter region is not inclined, a disposition which, as we have seen, is not incompatible with an extensive closing of the scapulo-humeral angle, since the obliquity of the scapulum counteracts the disadvantages which result from a vertical humerus.

These slight variations in the direction of the bones and the mode of opening of the superior articular angles of the members contribute to explain the contradictory results which are observed in race-horses of the best *appearance* as to conformation. Very difficult to appreciate, these variations often pass unperceived and lead the observer into error as to the importance of their effects.

These, nevertheless, may sometimes be quite considerable, as we shall presently see.

Let us suppose, for an instant, that a horse be able, at each step, to open the scapulo-humeral angle and close the humero-radial, each to a greater degree than in another horse. Let us assume, also, to make use of round numbers, that this feeble amplitude of two degrees is manifested upon a lever only one metre in length. We know that the distance passed over by the extremity of this lever for each degree will be:

$$\frac{2\,\pi\,R}{360} = \frac{2 \times 3.1416}{360} = 0.017\text{ m.}$$

This will signify that each step of this horse will be 34 millimetres longer than that of the second horse. These 34 millimetres will give him an increase of 22 metres and 644 millimetres over a distance of 4000 metres travelled at a fast gallop (the step measuring 6 metres); at a fast trot (the step being 3 metres), an increase of 68 metres.

Thus, the influence of the articular angles merits to be taken into consideration, in that they can determine the amount of speed which a given animal is able to employ. As it has been well remarked, we must take cognizance of only a very feeble augmentation for a very short lever, as in the example which we have chosen. What might have been the results if, instead of calculating them upon two degrees, we had estimated them upon four, six, or eight, as it frequently exists?

Diseases and Blemishes.—These are *wounds*, the result of kicks upon this region from other horses, but which are only grave when they interest the internal face of the region, where the bone, as we know, is directly subcutaneous and not covered with muscles. In this situation they are often complicated by *fractures* of the bone.

At other times, *synovial dilatations*, which proceed from the upper extremity of the region of the knee, may exist here, but these appear upon the forearm only when they have reached a large development. Those of the humero-radio-cubital articulation are extremely rare, and, in our experience, we have seen only two examples. They manifest themselves posterior to the external lateral ligament of this joint, and can be clearly seen when the member is placed upon the ground. They then acquire a volume equal to one-half of that of a hen's egg, and disappear altogether when the limb is raised.

Finally, let us mention the wounds which are located upon the external lateral ligament of the humero-radial articulation. The external side of the joint forms a prominence, projecting above the level of the surrounding surface, which is continually being bruised, and receives most of the pressure when the animal assumes the decubitus for a long time upon a bed with insufficient litter. These wounds are very grave, for they may be complicated by an opening of the articulation and terminate in the death of the animal.

The *defects of direction*, true blemishes, we will study with the *vertical axes* of the members.

E.—The Chestnuts.

The name **chestnut** is given to a horny production, more or less voluminous, according to the race, situated upon the middle part or the inferior third of the internal face of the forearm.

But little developed in the finer races, it is large in common horses, in which it is habitually cut or peeled off in arranging the animal's toilet before presenting him for sale.

The absence of the chestnuts in the anterior members has been observed, but it is a very rare fact. (The chestnuts are the rudiment of the nail or hoof of the internal digit or thumb.)

F.—The Knee.

Situation.—The **knee**, corresponding to the *wrist* of man, comprises all the radio-carpo-metacarpal articulations. It is at this region that the anatomical foot commences. It is also the region where the anterior member is almost completely divested of its muscles, and is constituted by nothing but the bones, the tendons, and the ligaments.

Limits; Anatomical Base.—Limited above by the *forearm* and below by the *canon*, this region has for its osseous base the seven carpal bones arranged in two superposed layers. One of these bones, the first and the most external of the four of the superior row, also called the *supra-carpal*, is situated somewhat

without the region, and forms behind a more or less pronounced elevation under the skin.

Several *special ligaments*, short, strong, and numerous, unite the bones of the same row to one another; others maintain the two rows in contiguity, or concur to fix the one or the other to the forearm or the canon; finally, the *common ligaments*, which are much longer and more resisting, and common to all the carpal articulations, appear to assume the *rôle* of insuring general solidity of the whole region.

Among the last, two are lateral, funicular, which circumscribe the carpus within and without, and extend from the tuberosities of the radius to terminate on the head of the rudimentary metacarpals; the other two are capsular: the one, the anterior, is thin, more particularly charged to sustain the synovial membrane of the joint and to furnish gliding surfaces for the tendons which pass over the anterior surface of the knee; the other, the posterior, much more fibrous, extremely thick and resisting, fills up all the irregularities on the posterior face of the carpal bones and transforms this face into a veritable *sheath*, the carpal sheath, which is completed posteriorly by the supra-carpal bone and an arch of fibrous tisssue, in which are lodged the flexor tendons of the phalanges. This ligament, one of the most powerful in the organism, is prolonged at its inferior extremity by a strong band to constitute the *check tendon*, which is inserted into one of these tendons (that of the deep flexor), and plays a mechanical but important *rôle* in supporting the fetlock and maintaining its angle.

Three *synovial membranes* lubricate the articular surfaces and facilitate their movements. They are everywhere firmly surrounded by the ligaments as well as the extensor tendons of the foot, excepting at certain places where they are more feebly supported, and become the seat of abnormal dilatations. We will refer to these in discussing the *blemishes*.

The **anterior face** of the carpus is traversed from above to below by two principal *tendons*, which are maintained there by means of special synovial sheaths: one of them is that of the anterior extensor of the metacarpus, the other that of the anterior extensor of the phalanges.

The **external face** is traversed by the tendon of the lateral extensor of the phalanges; the **internal face** by that of the internal flexor of the metacarpus.

Finally, upon the **posterior face** of the region is located the vast *carpal sheath*, whose synovial membrane covering its walls and reflected upon the two tendons of the flexors of the phalanges, ascends on the posterior face of the radius to about its inferior fourth, and descends against the metacarpus to the lower limit of its superior third. Although strongly surrounded above by the muscular cone of the flexors of the metacarpus and the antibrachial aponeurosis, below and in its middle portion by the carpal arch, it nevertheless becomes apparent, when it is the seat of abnormal distentions in the form of tumors, whose exact characteristics and situation we will indicate farther on.

The **movements** of the canon on the forearm mechanically excite those of the knee; they consist of *flexion* and *extension*.

The first is produced when the foot is elevated from the ground and before it is advanced to complete the step. It is worthy of remark that the inferior extremity of the member, instead of moving in its own plane, is deviated outward in consequence of the obliquity of all the articular surfaces, and is not thus exposed to come in contact with the posterior face of the forearm.

The second only takes place when the member, sufficiently relieved from the weight it supports, is projected forward to complete the step and assume its contact. It has attained its extreme limit as soon as the two segments are placed in a straight line, as they were during station.

As to the displacements which the carpal bones undergo, the one upon the other, their importance is considerable in relation with the distribution of the quantity of force upon the metacarpal surfaces. Their multiple facets, indeed, represent so many inclined planes which deaden the concussion and disseminate it upon the powerful ligaments which unite these bones.

Form.—The anatomical details which we have summarily reviewed are indispensable in order to conceive an exact idea of the external aspect of a well-constituted knee.

The skin, in horses of the finer and more nervous races, is thin, covers all irregularities of the region, and shows its contour with the most perfect details. Also it is in these that the characters of a beautiful conformation can be best studied.

Viewed on the *anterior face* (Fig. 67, *A*), the knee appears slightly rounded from side to side, and a little wider above than below. It offers on its middle an

A B C D

Fig. 67.

elongated eminence, the termination of the tendon of the anterior extensor of the metacarpus. Two curved lines circumscribe it on the sides: the internal, very marked, commences at the tuberosity of the radius; the external begins almost on the same level, but makes a less salient angle; both terminate quite abruptly at the canon below the head of the rudimentary metacarpal bones.

Examined *in profile* from the external side (Fig. 67, *B*), its anterior line, almost straight, continues that of the forearm; two eminences, scarcely marked, modify it slightly and indicate the relief of the two rows of carpal bones. Its posterior line, on the contrary, presents a very pronounced angle, formed by the supra-carpal bone, below, which it curves obliquely forward upon the tendons. Between these two lines there are two prominences which indicate the external tuberosity of the radius, above, and the head of the corresponding splint bone, below. The branch from the tendon of the lateral extensor of the phalanges joining that of the anterior extensor is detached below the latter.

The *profile* of the knee from the *inner side* (Fig. 67, *C*) is very much similar to that which is seen from the outer side. It presents the internal radial tuberosity, well outlined, the internal metacarpal vein, and the head of the internal splint bone.

Finally, viewed *from behind* (Fig. 67, *D*), the lines which circumscribe it on the side are similar to those which we have described in connection with the anterior face, while in its middle it is traversed by a voluminous conical eminence formed by the insertion of the flexors of the metacarpus upon the supra-carpal bone. This relief, slightly depressed below the latter at a point called the fold of the knee, is continuous inferiorly, without any sharp demarcation, with the flexor tendons of the phalanges.

Beauties.—The knee, in order to be beautiful, must be *fine, thick, wide, well situated, well directed,* and *free from blemishes.*

Fineness.—This quality is one that, in a general manner, is desirable in all the articulations. It denotes that they are formed only of those parts which should constitute them. It resides in the apparent prominence of all the normal osseous reliefs, the ligaments and the tendons, which implies a thin and delicate skin, a small abundance and great density of the connective tissue which covers these structures. All horses belonging to the more distinguished races are noted for this peculiarity; those of the common races present it in a small degree, and in nerveless and lymphatic animals it is absolutely defective; the articulations in the last are always more or less poorly defined.

Thickness.—The **thickness** of the knee is its diameter from side to side. It is particularly desirable, because the lateral diameter is in relation with the transverse development of the articular surfaces, with the volume of the carpal bones, and, consequently, with the firmness of the step and safety of the gait. When this region is *narrow*, the animal is liable to *stumble* and to a premature ruin of his limbs, which are too feeble to support the weight of the body beyond a certain rate of speed.

Width.—The **width** is measured from *before to behind,* for the extent of the knee measures more in this sense than from one side to the other. A large width always indicates the antero-posterior development of the articular surfaces and a decided prominence of the supra-carpal bone.

The effect of the first of these factors is to render the carpal bones more resisting, to augment the movements of flexion and extension, at the same time that it makes the inferior extremity of the radius appear larger, a disposition which separates the muscles from their parallelism with the bones and favors their action. The second only implies a longer arm of the lever for the flexors of the metacarpus.

The knee is called *calf's knee* when it is defective in its width, its thickness, and in the effacement of all the bony prominences; it denotes a general feebleness of the member, the volume of an articulation being correlative also to that of the regions which confine it.

Height.—The **height** of the knee above the ground depends on the relative length of the forearm and the canon. We have seen that a long forearm gives a great advantage in the function of long antibrachial muscles, and it is for this reason that preference should be given to a knee *well descended* and situated very low. In this connection, all other things being equal, saddle- and carriage-horses have the knee higher than draught-horses, a fact which can be easily ascertained by actual measurement. Their canons are longer, their body is less close to the ground. Nevertheless, this does not change the principle which has just been laid down. The latter applies only to those subjects whose conformation is comparable, and to no others.

Direction.—The **vertical direction** of the forearm and of the canon is without doubt one of the principal conditions of the strength and endurance of the anterior members. So true is this that everything in the carpal articulations is so arranged as to determine this mode of superposition of the osseous segments. Such is, however, not always the direction of the knee: sometimes it is deviated forward or backward from the vertical line; sometimes it is within or without this axis. Hence grave defects of the axis of the member, to which are given particular names.

Fig. 68.

Thus, the horse is called *over in the knees, knee-sprung,* when this region is curved forward (Fig. 68).

This condition is also distinguished as *acquired* and *congenital:* acquired or accidental when it is the result of fatigue and excessive wear and tear of the parts; congenital, on the contrary, when it exists from the time of the animal's birth.

The first case is a serious condition, indicative of the muscular weakness of the part, of its worn-out state, or of the contraction of the posterior tendons; such a horse is utterly unsteady on his feet, is positively unsafe to ride, and may fall on his knees at any moment, as is shown by the indelible scars with which they are usually disfigured.

In the second case the defect is only apparent, and in no way interferes with a firm and steady grip of the ground or with the freedom of movements.

"In this class," says H. Bouley,[1] "we even find horses whose knees arch forward to such an extent, when they are standing still, that we wonder how they manage to hold themselves up; and nevertheless, even laboring under such an exaggerated form of this defect, they never stumble when once they have been started. The reason of it is that the remarkable attitude of these animals does not bespeak any weakening in the powers of their extensor muscles, as it does in the horse that has become knee-sprung through hard work and old age."

Custom alone enables us to distinguish true or acquired *sprung knees;* let us add that it is also revealed by the trembling of the knees when the horse is in a resting posture, as well as by the habitual presence of hard or soft blemishes upon the inferior regions of the members.

If, contrary to what we have seen, the knee deviates towards the back of the vertical axis (Fig. 69), it is termed *effaced, sunken, hollow,* or *sheep-knee.*

Fig. 69.

This defect, characterized by a concavity of its anterior face and a more distinct prominence of the supra-carpal bone, has not, so far as we know, the importance, as regards speed, which some would attach to it. It necessitates, without doubt, a somewhat more extensive contraction of the flexors of the metacarpus, to bring that region into the attitude required by normal flexion, whence a loss of time in the execution of the movements. This loss of time and of muscular force, which result from it, are insignificant and can hardly be appreciated. Such a conformation is vicious, rather in so far as it causes a continual tension of the posterior ligamentous apparatus of the carpus and the check tendon of the perforans, a tension which tells likewise upon the lateral ligaments and becomes further increased at every instant of contact with the ground, when the animal is moving at great speed. These excessive tractions, injuring the articular ligaments, will eventually bring about the formation of osseous deposits at the points of their insertion upon the bones, or else a permanent induration of the check tendon and the suspensory ligament of the fetlock.

Considerations of a similar nature are applicable to a knee which deviates to the inner side of the vertical axis, and which is styled *ox-knee,* from its analogy to that of the animal whose name it bears (Fig. 70). Very convex upon its internal face and concave externally,

[1] H. Bouley, Nouveau Dictionnaire pratique de médecine, de chirurgie et d'hygiène vétérinaires, t. viii. p. 201.

it is no longer compatible here with a uniform distribution of the body-weight upon the metacarpal region, because the articular surfaces in the horse's carpus have a slant different from that of the carpal bones in the ox. The inward deviation has a tendency to increase in the state of rest and at the time of contact with the ground during locomotion; the outer half of the bones is overloaded, while the internal lateral ligament is stretched to its utmost. Hence, for this reason, first and foremost, do we look upon this anatomical conformation as a vice of the greatest importance in carriage- or in saddle-horses, the latter in particular.

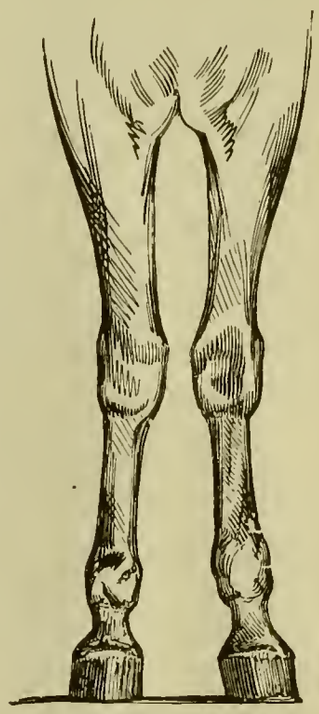


FIG. 70.

Moreover, during the act of flexion, it exaggerates the movement of abduction of the metacarpus, which, on the contrary, under ordinary normal conditions, is always very slight. At every step the animal throws the canon outside of the vertical axis, wastes a certain amount of time in bringing it back to its normal attitude, and uses his limb in a most ungraceful style, described by H. Bouley as "a kind of *all-over-the-shop* gait, displeasing to the eye of the true connoisseur." Finally, the necessary consequence of this form of the knee is the outward deviation of the inferior part of the member, notably the hoof. We will return to this in speaking of the *outbow-footed* horse. (See *Axes.*)

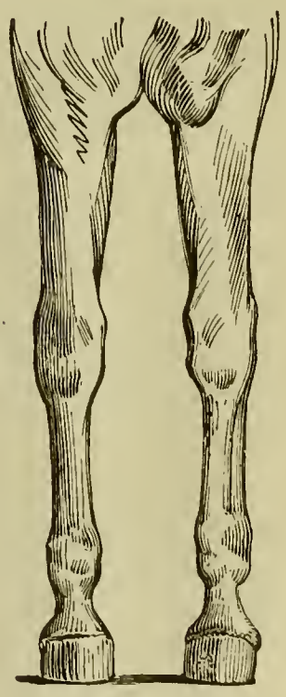


FIG. 71.

When the region of the carpus deviates to the *external* side of the vertical axis it is the seat of a grave defect, which is denoted by the limb being convex on the external side and concave inwardly, as well as by a convergence of the two hoofs (Fig. 71). This conformation is not common, but, like the preceding, it causes unsteadiness in the "grip" of the ground and a straining of the ligaments. In this case it is the internal surface of the articulations which is overloaded, and the external lateral ligaments that are subjected to the abnormal tension; and for this reason blemishes are the speedy result of this form of the knee. Besides, as the toe of the hoof is turned inward, the horse is *pigeon-toed* and exposed, consequently, to all the evils of this defect, particularly *interfering.*

Clearness of Outline.—It is not sufficient that the knee be "dry," wide, thick, well located, and set in the right direction, but it is absolutely indispensable that the outline be perfectly *clear*,—that is to say, neatly defined in its external lines, whether viewed from the front or from the side. Any deformity, even a slight one, should be considered grave, for it is a sign of the weakness and the ultimate ruin of the limb in which it is noticed.

Diseases and Blemishes.—H. Bouley[1] has described the diseases and the blemishes of the knee in his usual happy style. We will therefore limit ourselves to condensing here what he has written on this subject.

1. **Recent Lesions and Diseases.**—First among these are *denudations*, *excoriations*, and more or less deep *wounds* of the skin of the anterior surface of this region, the result of falls, and the gravity of which varies with the nature of the soil, the velocity of the gait, and the weight of the burden which the animal carried at the time. These lesions, as well as the scars they leave behind, are, as a rule, somewhat circular in shape, on which account the horse thus disfigured is said to be *crowned*. The cicatrices which succeed them usually have quite a regularly circular form, and designate the animal that presents them *crowned*. It is important to ascertain whether they are the result of a lack of steadiness in the anterior limbs or due to accidental falls. It is likewise necessary to find out if the lesion of the knee has affected only the skin and the subcutaneous connective tissue, or if, on the contrary, the synovial bursæ have been involved, for the gravity under these diverse circumstances is not the same. In general, superficial wounds are not accompanied by any great difficulty in walking, while the deep ones, those which have brought about the opening of the articulations, are extremely painful, and make it impossible for the animal to press his hoof on the ground.

Sometimes injuries or falls have determined no other consequences than a simple excoriation of the epidermis and the hairs thereon, which latter will grow again with their natural change of color. At other times the region is more or less contused, without a loss of substance, and the extravasation of blood or serum underneath the skin will occasion the formation of abscesses capable of rendering the subjects incapable of service for some time.

2. **Chronic Lesions and Diseases.**—In this category are arranged numerous lesions and affections, which, in most instances, are tantamount to true *blemishes*. They involve the skin, subcutaneous connective tissue, the articular and tendinous synovial bursæ, and the bones. Let us examine them rapidly.

a. **Skin.**—We have seen that the horse styled *crowned* may receive upon the anterior surface of the knees injuries of greater or less importance; but the skin only preserves permanent traces when it has been affected in its essential parts. The most trifling of these after-results are those which proceed merely from a modification of the hair-follicles. Where these follicles are the new hair grows white, and thus bears witness of the fall which has taken place. In other

[1] H. Bouley, loc. cit.

cases the integument has been injured more deeply or even partly destroyed, and then no new hairs grow when the cicatrization has been completed. In the eyes of the connoisseur the horse is no less blemished in the one case than the other, whether he has an abnormal white spot upon the knee or an indelible cicatrix deprived of hairs; he is considered weak upon his limbs, predisposed to repeated falls, and, consequently, much depreciated from a commercial point of view, although, at times, the blemish may be altogether accidental. We should, therefore, beware of the so-called recipes which horse-merchants never fail to recommend for the reproduction of the hairs. More especially should we be on our guard against the fraudulent means used by certain individuals for the purpose of concealing from the eyes of too credulous buyers a blemish which baffles all such attempts. Some have been known to go so far as to blacken the denuded spot with a particular blacking; others cover it rather skilfully with false hairs, which they temporarily keep in due position by means of a thin coating of dextrine! As may be readily imagined, all these expedients are of such a nature as not to deceive the attentive and experienced observer.

Fissures known under the name of *malanders* are met in the region of the fold of the knee. They are grave in so far as they cause much pain, and are often very tedious to heal.

b. **Subcutaneous Connective Tissue.**—It is not rare to observe more or less abundant effusions into the subcutaneous connective tissue as the result of contusions of the knee. The anterior face of this region is then seen to present a voluminous, fluctuating, and non-inflammatory tumor, whose walls, at first thin, soon become indurated and irregularly thickened; this constitutes the *hygroma*, or cyst, of the knee. It sometimes becomes inflamed and very painful. As a general rule, it interferes with locomotion only in a mechanical manner, and is nothing more than an eyesore.

Indurated tumors of the connective tissue have the same origin; they differ from hygromata in the fact that they are not fluctuating and that they can be much more easily dissolved.

c. **Tendinous and Articular Bursæ.**—A complex articulation like the knee, endowed as it is with such extensive movements, is sure to give signs of fatigue in the long run, by synovial dilatations at the level of the most mobile parts,—that is to say, at the points where the gliding apparatus must needs have displayed an excessive and almost incessant functional activity. Indeed, that is what is observed in the radio-carpal and intercarpal articulations, in spite of the powerful union which protects them.

Hydropsy or hydrarthrosis of the first manifests itself by the presence of two tumors, soft and fluctuating when the limb is semiflexed, and tense and convex when it is in extension. The one is situated immediately above the supra-carpal bone and against the radius; the other forms at the upper part of the anterior surface of the knee. They correspond evidently, therefore, to the portions of the synovial membrane which are feebly supported; pressure applied upon the lateral tumor is distinctly transmitted to the anterior, a fact which indicates the close relation which they bear to each other.

Hydrarthrosis of the intercarpal joint is shown, when the foot is in contact with the ground, by the appearance of two or three nodosities of the size of a hazel-nut or a walnut, between the extensor tendons of the phalanges and of the metacarpus, almost over the middle of the anterior surface of this region.

When the articular dilatations of the knee are very old, their wall becomes indurated and even ossified. This constitutes, in the latter case, one of the varieties of *hooped knee*, of which we will speak farther on.

The *dilatations of the tendinous synovial bursæ* are of two varieties: they appear either along the course of the flexor tendons or along that of the extensors. Larger than the preceding, they may acquire very great dimensions. It sometimes happens, at least with the second variety, that they communicate between themselves or with the articular capsules,[1] an important peculiarity, which should warn us against the danger of opening them.

Hydropsy of the **carpal sheath**, better known under the name of *carpal* or *tendinous thorough-pin of the knee*, is manifested by the formation of two tumors posterior to the carpus, between the radius and the flexor muscles of the metacarpus. Each one of these is ovoid in shape; the internal is ordinarily smaller than the external, and both extend higher up than the articular dilatation. Inferiorly, the tendinous dilatation is prolonged below the knee by a soft, elongated, and irregularly-lobulated swelling, which follows the course of the flexor tendons, and transmits its fluctuation and palpation to the two superior culs-de-sac, thus giving evidence of its communication with them. This is a circumstance which is never noticed in the articular synovial dilatation.

The synovial dilatations of the tendinous bursæ situated upon the anterior capsular ligament of the carpus present analogous characteristics. They consist of elongated tumors, from one to three in number, located under each of the extensor tendons, and always perfectly distinct at the beginning of their formation. In advanced stages they become diffused over the anterior surface of the knee, and may communicate among themselves and with the articular synovial membranes; their parietes become indurated and, in some places, ossified. They might be easily confounded with the cysts, which are always more superficial, were it not for their relative situation with the tendinous cords.

d. **Osseous Apparatus.**—Not even the osseous apparatus is exempt from the traces of the wear and tear resulting from age or from excessive work. Exostoses appear, in time, upon the anterior surface of the carpal bones and upon their articular edges, at the points which correspond to the insertions of the ligaments. These osseous tumors of the knee have received the generic name of *osselets*. Their formation begins at the head of the rudimentary metacarpal, preferably on the internal side, and then they gradually extend, little by little, to the pieces of the two rows. When they are thus generalized, it has been the custom to say that the knee is *hooped*, a very appropriate expression, which conveys to the mind the idea of the alterations of which the region is the seat. These osselets, like the tendinous and articular dilatations, are grave *blemishes;* they disfigure the animal, produce a deviation of the forearm and of the canon, and, finally, often give rise to a rebellious and, very often, persistent lameness of variable intensity.

As the regions situated below the knee and the hock offer but few differences in their anatomy and their external appearance, we will study them with the posterior members.

---

[1] I have examined a large number of articulations and have not once verified such a condition. (Harger.)

CHAPTER II.

POSTERIOR MEMBER.

We have already stated the reasons for uniting the description of the *croup* with that of the trunk, and need not return to them here.

The regions of the posterior members correspond to those of the anterior, with some unimportant variations consequent upon the particular mode in which these parts execute their movements.

Thus, the *thigh* is the counterpart of the *arm;* the *stifle,* of the *elbow;* the *leg,* of the *forearm;* the *hock,* of the *knee.* Such are the diverse regions which it remains for us to examine.

A.—The Thigh and the Buttock.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—We deem it advisable to combine the *thigh* and the *buttock* in one description, since there is so close a relation between them.

We will merely consider the latter as that part of the former which is charged with the flexion of the tibia, the extension of the femur, and the rotation of the coxa.

The **thigh** is the region where the posterior member becomes separated from the trunk. It is limited above by the *croup* and the *haunch;* below, by the *leg* and the *stifle;* in front, by the *flank;* inwardly, by the *groin* (in both sexes), the *sheath* and the *scrotum* in the male and the *mammary glands* in the female; behind, finally, it is altogether free, and is simply in relation with the trunk and the hairs of the *tail.*

Its anatomical *base* consists of the femur and of numerous muscles which, originating in adjoining regions, terminate here, or, on the contrary, are detached here to terminate on the sections immediately below it,—viz., the leg and the foot.

Form.—The thigh offers for study two surfaces and two borders.

The **external surface** is slightly rounded, according to its length and its width, in a horse in good condition. It forms, in such cases, below the croup, an almost vertical plane, which blends off below with the corresponding surface of the leg, and, in front, with the side of the flank. But hard work and insufficient food render the muscular interstices and the natural prominences of the skeleton very apparent: the femur is indicated by a thick longitudinal elevation, in front of which the muscles appear hollow, in consequence of the contraction of the flank; the ischiatic tuberosity and the trochanter become very salient, and leave between them a deep furrow which separates the superficial gluteus muscle

from the posterior ischio-tibial muscles, and which is known under the picturesque name of *furrow of misery.*

The **internal surface**, called the *flat of the thigh*, is also more or less convex. It is traversed above in its direction and from back to front by a large vein, the *saphena*, on which phlebotomy is sometimes practised. This vein is accompanied by a small artery bearing the same name and covered over with a net-work of nerve-branches and of lymphatic vessels, whose situation it is important to remember from a surgical point of view.

The **anterior border** of the thigh is constituted by a voluminous muscular mass, the crural triceps, whose function it is to extend the leg. Over the middle and inferior portion of this border attaches a musculo-cutaneous fold, which is called the *fold of the stifle*, and spreads over from the side of the flank to the anterior surface of the stifle-joint.

As to the **posterior border**, it represents by itself the sub-region of the *buttock* or the *breeching*, and has for its base the ischio-tibial muscles. It describes, beginning at the base of the tail where it becomes continuous with the croup, a regularly-curved line, which becomes concave inferiorly and disappears at the posterior border of the leg. The most salient point of this graceful curve has received the name of *point* or *angle of the buttock;* it is due to the prominence of the ischiatic tuberosity of the coxa. On the other hand, the *fold of the buttock* is the most concave portion of this line, and corresponds about to the centre of flexion of the tibia on the femur. It is worthy of remark that in very emaciated subjects the point and the fold of the buttock are always strongly marked, while they are scarcely indicated in those that are in good condition, particularly in the heavy draught-horse, whose muscular system is voluminous.

Viewed from behind, the thigh is thicker as its muscular masses are more developed and as the animal belongs to a race of a more lymphatic and less nervous temperament.

Movements.—This region, in relation with the **movements** which it executes, is most interesting to study. It describes two principal movements, whose centre is the coxo-femoral articulation: these are extension and flexion. Their maximum amplitude is about 30 degrees.

During *flexion*, the femur is displaced angularly to begin the step. It reaches its limit of flexion a little before the foot arrives on the ground, so as to allow the full extension of the tibia, which has not yet been completed at the moment that the femoral flexion is accomplished.

During *extension*, the phenomena have an inverse order: the femur moves backward, thus strongly opening the coxo-femoral angle; its obliquity is changed in direction; it becomes vertical or even inclined backward and downward when the limb is about to rise. The extension of the thigh takes place during the last phase of contact and ceases as soon as the foot has left the ground to accomplish a new step. The muscles which execute it are more numerous and stronger than those which produce flexion; a fact not to be wondered at, since these

muscles have to displace the body-weight as well as to overcome the inertia, while, in the second case, they only raise the member and project it forward. The energy and the extent of their contraction will determine the intensity and amplitude of the femoral force which, in concert with the stifle and the hock, communicates to the trunk the initial impulsion, the *action*, as it is customary to say.

Direction.—The **direction** of the thigh cannot be suitably described unless we understand well the signification which it is necessary to accord to this word.

In animal mechanics, osseous segments have an axis of form which is not always their axis of movement. The latter being defined as the imaginary line which connects the two probable centres of movement, it is clear that it will differ from the axis of form whenever the articular surfaces are situated in front, behind, without, or within the axis of the latter. This has already been noticed in the case of the humerus, and is evident here again in the consideration of the femur. The axis of form of this bone follows almost exactly the direction of a line connecting the trochanter with the fossa which exists between the trochlea and the external condyle; the axis of movement, on the contrary, joins the centre of the coxo-femoral to the centre of the femoro-tibial articulation, and crosses the first by reason of the fact that the head of the femur occupies the internal side of this bone instead of being situated directly at its superior extremity.

In spite of the difficulties which, in the living animal, hinder the determination of this fact, we may obtain the result in an *approximate* manner by seeking the two points indicative of the two aforesaid articular centres; these are, on the one part, the concavity of the trochanter, and, on the other, the middle of the length of the external femoro-tibial ligament. The line joining these two points will constitute the axis of movement of the femur. In many subjects, the horse being supposed to be in equilibrium, it is almost vertical; in others, it falls to a slight extent obliquely forward and downward; finally, there are some in which it is oblique in an inverse sense,—that is to say, downward and backward.

The direction of the thigh should satisfy the four principal requirements which follow:

1st. Give to the coxo-femoral angle, already reduced by the horizontal direction of the croup, a sufficiently wide opening.

2d. Permit of an extensive separation of the branches of the femoro-tibial angle, while allowing, at the same time, a feeble obliquity of the leg.

3d. Not alter the vertical axis, which implies the tangency of the hock to the vertical line falling from the point of the buttock.

4th. Finally, maintain the stifle in a certain state of separation from the median plane.

We estimate, from our researches, that a mean inclination of 80 degrees fulfils all these *desiderata* in rapid motors. The obliquity in

the slow draught-horse may be more accentuated, since the coxa is less horizontal, but this modification is rarely observed. Ordinarily, in these horses, the femur is straighter at the same time that the croup is slanting, which thus increases this angle instead of diminishing it, so as to place the inferior parts of the member in a less defective position in relation with the vertical axis.

Examinations of instantaneous photographs teach us that the limit of extension of the crural segment is situated but slightly posterior to the vertical line passing through the centre of the coxo-femoral articulation.

In principle, therefore, the thigh should not be *too straight* when the animal is normally at rest,—that is to say, when the line of direction of the femur becomes confounded with the vertical line which extends from the centre of suspension of the limb upon the trunk. (See *Vertical Axes.*)

When it is thus (Fig. 72, *AB*), the degree of extension of the femur is necessarily limited, the animal lacks action, and is incapable of utilizing the advantages of a long croup. Besides, his vertical axis becomes vicious, and the hock and the foot carried too far backward, render him *camped* behind. As to the muscles, the gluteals, *HA*, the extensors of the leg, *mn*, and the ischio-tibial muscles, *Go*, are short; the flexors, *iH*, alone are long.

When the femur, on the contrary, is *too oblique*, as *CD*, it is the flexion that is unduly limited. The arc which the foot describes at each step is too short; the member, stationed too much under the trunk, works upward, and loses a part of its extension power in raising the body instead of projecting it forward, whatever may be the greater length of the gluteal muscles, *HC*, of the ischio-tibials, *Go''*, and the extensors of the leg, *mn''*.

On the other hand, the degree of inclination of the thigh being capable of modifying the value of the coxo-femoral angle, it may be questioned whether, for velocity, the obliquity of the croup would not be capable of compensating the excess of obliquity of the crural segment in such a manner as to leave to this angle the same opening and, consequently, the same degree of play.

This compensation, as we have seen above, is possible, but only within very narrow limits, because the *orientation* of the articular angle soon becomes defective; its bisecting plane assumes too horizontal a direction. Here, as in the arm, the principle is: to a horizontal croup should correspond a straight thigh.

On the other hand, if it be necessary that the femur should pre-

serve a suitable and efficacious opening of the coxo-femoral joint, it is no less obligatory that it should give a proper direction, as well as a

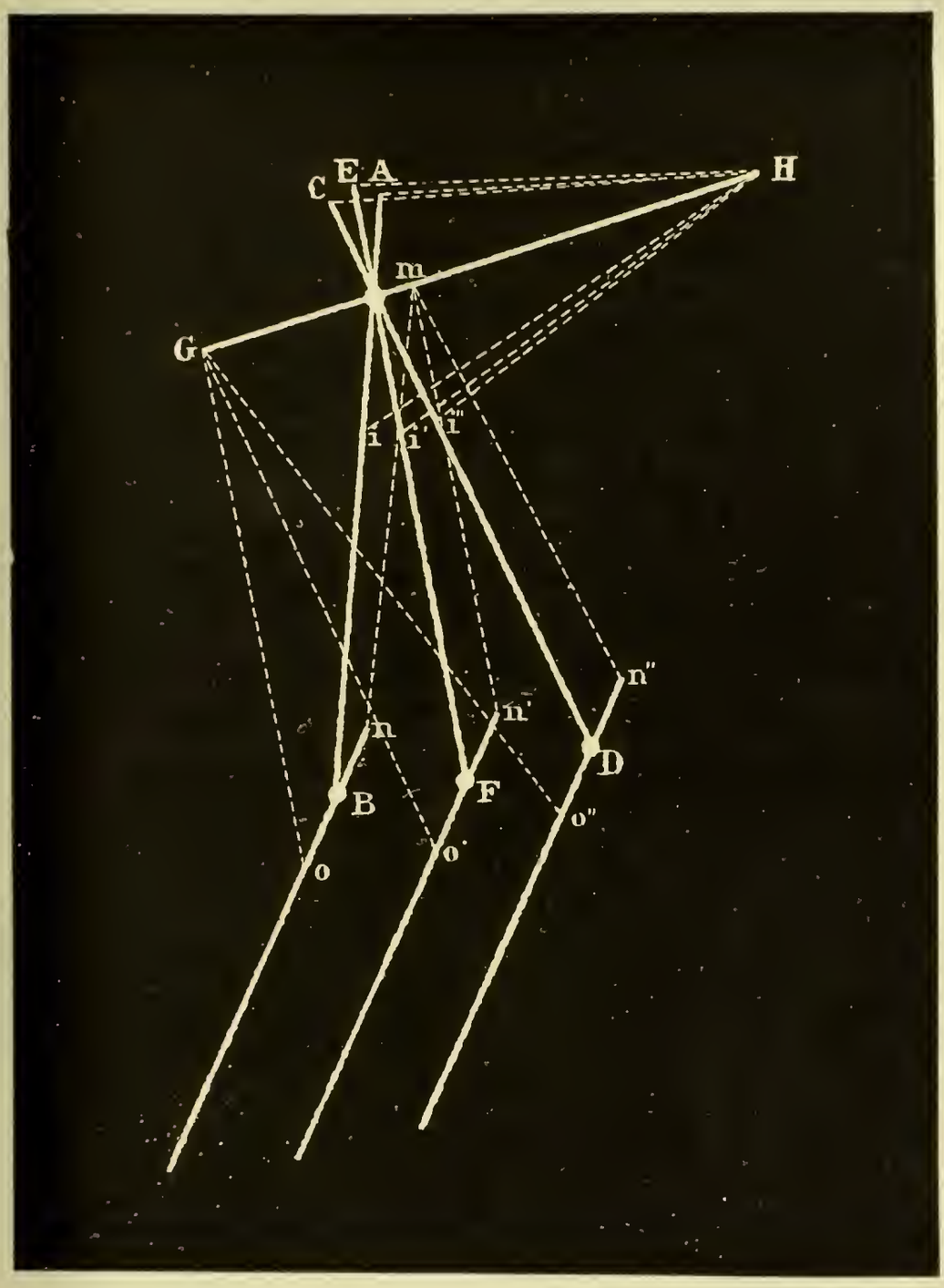


FIG. 72.

wide opening, to the angle which it forms with the leg. Observation demonstrates, in fact, that the femoro-tibial angle always has a wider opening in rapid motors; this is the factor which prevents the tibia from assuming an excessive inclination which would place it in a position disadvantageous to its movements of extension and flexion and its effectiveness in progression.

We therefore believe that a somewhat oblique thigh fulfils all these diverse requirements. It is the kind of thigh which is best for long strides, extensive and effective propulsive movements, and a normal

relation with the vertical axis. This is very different from the classical teachings of a certain school, that all the superior segments of the members should incline at an angle of 45 degrees with the horizon!

Finally, one more point of excellence in the thigh consists in its being well away from the median plane towards its inferior extremity. The region of the stifle, of which we will soon speak, will not, in this case, be exposed, in rapid locomotion, to come in contact with the abdominal parietes. If this separation, however, be too marked, it will cause an outward deviation of the inferior parts of the limb. Many horses, close behind and outbow-footed, owe the faulty direction of their posterior extremities to this cause. (See *Vertical Axes.*)

Length.—The **length** of the thigh, it can be plainly seen, must be in close relation with the amplitude of the oscillations of which it is capable; besides, it governs the degree of the displacements of the tibia. In our opinion, it should be computed from the coxo-femoral articulation to the inferior part of the stifle. But its variations manifest themselves principally at the level of its posterior border. They are usually characterized by different expressions. Thus, such a *buttock* is said to be *long* or *well descended* (Fig. 73), which constitutes for this

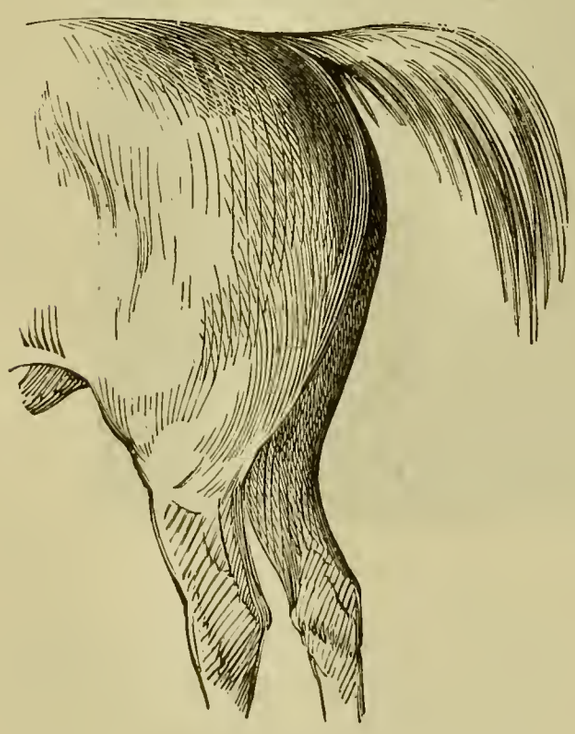


Fig. 73.

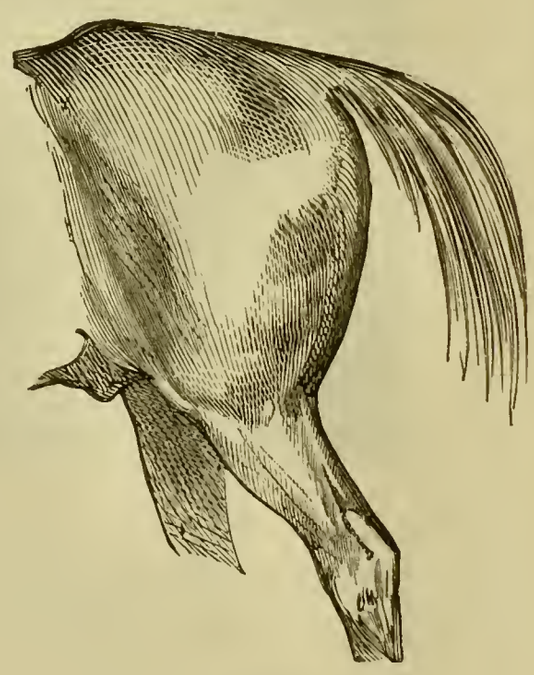


Fig. 74.

region a beauty of the first order, and of which the English thoroughbred, especially, offers a remarkable example.

When the thigh is deficient in length, it renders the buttock *round* and *short* (Fig. 74), a defect which may also be due to too small a femoro-tibial angle. The buttock is also named *salient* when its point

is prominent in a horse in good condition, which signifies an easy rotation of the coxæ on the posterior members.

Width and Thickness.—The **width** of the thigh is measured by a horizontal line which crosses it underneath the coxo-femoral articulation. Its **thickness,** on the contrary, is appreciated, from side to side, either by viewing the animal from behind or obliquely from in front.

It is almost superfluous to dwell upon the importance of these two dimensions, which show the muscular development of the region and, consequently, the impulsive force of the hind extremities. A thigh lacking sufficient thickness is designated as *sharp;* when this deficiency affects the whole thigh, and is accompanied, moreover, by a lack of width, the thigh is styled *flat, lean,* or is called a *frog's* thigh; among horsemen the animal himself is known by the name *froggy,* by reason of the striking weakness of his hind quarters.

The beautiful muscularity of the thigh can be summarized in a word: the animal is *well rumped* and *strong-limbed;* his buttock is *well furnished;* his muscles are firm, dense, and elastic.

Peculiar Markings.—The external surface of the thighs often presents **cauterization** *brands,* practised for the purpose of distinguishing subjects, of recognizing their breed, and of testifying of their purchase, or of any prizes they may have obtained.

Up to a recent date, horses in the French army were marked upon the left thigh as follows: with a grenade, if used by riflemen; a C, by the cuirassiers; a D, by the dragoons; an H, by the hussars; an A, by the artillery; a hunting-horn, by the chasseurs; a cross, by the lancers; a T and an E, for the transportation horses, etc. This practice having sometimes occasioned extensive sloughing of the integument and disfigured the animals, these marks were subsequently made upon the side of the neck, where they were more or less concealed by the mane. Ultimately the accidents to the operators, the pain occasioned by the branding, and the complications and the blemishes resulting therefrom led to the adoption of a much wiser method, the *marking of the hoof,* which is alone practised nowadays.

Nevertheless, in spite of the numerous disadvantages of the hot-iron brand, some large corporations have thought it advisable to preserve it. The Paris General Omnibus Company's horses are all marked with a number upon the left side of the neck; those of the Paris "Petites Voitures" (or light-stage) Company, on the contrary, are marked on the hoof. There are cases in which one of the thighs bears likewise peculiar markings. Sometimes we find a number, sometimes a date, and at other times various letters, very often a P on horses that have won prizes; again, figures of a special form, as in

the case of many Russian, Hungarian, and Andalusian horses, or those of certain studs.

Diseases and Blemishes.—The diseases of the thigh and the buttock consist in general of *wounds, abscesses,* and *blood tumors,* which are the result of blows, knocks, falls, or other purely accidental causes. There is, nevertheless, an important one for which we should keep a sharp watch; this is an *inflammation* of the *lymphatic vessels* on the flat of the thigh. An examination of the course of these vessels reveals a hard, cylindrical, sometimes bosselated, cord, painful or painless to the touch, and of variable volume, which goes right up to the inguinal lymphatic glands in the groin. This elongated tumor, known under the name of *corded lymphatics,* is very often the symptom of glanders-farcy, and, for this reason, its existence is an ugly symptom. In other cases this condition is the consequence of diseases of the foot or of the inferior regions of the member. Whatever its cause may be, its presence always demands a most searching examination of the part by those who propose purchasing the animal.

Let us also indicate the *varix* and *thrombosis* of the superior part of the saphena vein, comparatively insignificant though they be, and, finally, the more or less numerous *wounds* and *cicatrices* which are the result of the cuts of the whip applied to this region.

The thigh is a favorite spot, even as the breast, the axilla, the ribs, the sides of the neck, etc., for the application of *setons.* Traces of these indicate that the horse has been affected with chronic diseases of the foot, such as grease, canker, etc., or that these issues have been employed as counter-irritants against grave alterations of the encephalon or the spinal cord. Not infrequently, either, the external surface of the thigh shows *marks of cautery* in the vicinity of the coxo-femoral articulation. These reveal former cases of lameness where the seat of the malady has remained unascertained and all other methods of treatment have proved ineffectual. Their presence demands a minute examination of all the inferior regions of the member, even of the hoof. Many are the chances of locating the true cause of the lameness in those parts.

B.—The Stifle.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **stifle** corresponds to the femoro-patellar articulation, and is comprised between the inferior extremity of the thigh and the superior part of the leg.

Externally, its outline represents two rounded, unequal eminences, one above the other. The upper, more voluminous, and due to the anterior crural muscles, overhangs the lower, which is smaller, and is caused by the patella. Below the latter there exists a slight depression corresponding to the patellar ligaments and the patellar adipose cushion. Finally, the cutaneous fold, known under the name of *fold of the stifle,* extends from the superior prominence of which we have spoken to the surface of the flank in the direction of the hypochondriac region.

The stifle, in relation to its conformation, offers neither special points nor defects for consideration. It is important, above all, that its essential parts can be distinctly outlined. Its distance from the

ground is ordinarily equal to that of the elbow, in swift horses as well as in others, whatever may have been said to the contrary.

Whilst the neatness of outline of this region is a quality to be desired, its *direction* should not escape a careful examination. With good reason, a stifle which lies close to the abdomen, and is slightly deviated outward, is preferred to one that is low, deviated inward, or even parallel to the median plane. The first direction, indeed, indicates great length and a beautiful obliquity of the thigh and great ease in executing the movement of flexion of this segment. In the second case, the stifle is liable to strike the abdominal parietes, a drawback which must needs have a certain importance in the modification of the rapidity of the gait, confining as it does the forward displacement of the thigh, the more so as it often coincides with a femur which is short and not sufficiently oblique.

Nevertheless, too great a separation of the stifles will be defective, in so far that it will surely superinduce an outward deviation of the inferior part of the members and render the animal *outbow-footed.* We will return to this point *à propos* of the *axes.*

Diseases and Blemishes.—The stifle presents various affections which deserve our attention. They are:

1st. **Synovial dilatations,** a kind of thorough-pins, which appear in the form of a soft tumor, more developed internally than externally, at the level of the patellar ligaments. They manifest themselves by a round, sometimes lobulated, fluctuating enlargement of a variable volume. When the distention is of large dimensions, the synovial membrane is bulged out above the patella underneath the extremity of the crural triceps muscle, where it forms a more or less accentuated swelling. Its prognosis is then rather serious on account both of the difficulty which is experienced in obtaining its resolution and of the lameness of the horse.

2d. **Exostoses,** located on the anterior surface of the patella, and resulting most frequently from external violence.

3d. **Superficial** or else **deep wounds,** inflicted by knocks or blows. They have no gravity so long as the skin alone is involved; but the immediate consequence of such causes may be *fracture of the patella,*—a rare accident, fortunately, for it incapacitates the animal for work for a long time and induces nearly always a permanent lameness.

4th. Displacements, called **luxations of the patella,** common in young horses, and vulgarly designated under the name of *foal's cramp.* This bone, according to some, is supposed to be thrown out of its cavity of reception,—that is to say, altogether dislocated towards the outer side of its trochlea; according to others, it is supported, or rather held, by the very salient eminence which is formed by the superior extremity of the internal lip of the femoral trochlea.[1]

---

[1] See, for more details, Bulletin de la Société centrale de médecine vétérinaire, séances du 11 Août et du 27 Octobre, 1881. (MM. Bouley, Chuchu, Cagny, Nocard, Trasbot, Weber.)

The latter opinion is nowadays most generally accepted. Be this as it may, the accident occurs but once, or again its reproduction may be intermittent and frequent, the bone becoming alternately dislocated and reduced spontaneously at the end of a variable period. In either case a very intense lameness supervenes, the chief diagnostic character of which consists in the attitude of the member, which remains in a state of forced extension, and can only be carried forward by a very marked abductive movement. A horse in such a state is, of course, not in a condition to be sold, unless, however, the sale should be made during the interval of two displacements of the patella, as we have had occasion to observe several times.

5th. **Traces of blisters and cauterization** denote that the region has been treated for one of the diseases of which we have just spoken, principally synovial dilatations.

C.—The Leg.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **leg** is the intermediate region between the thigh and the hock; the stifle and the buttock are also its upper boundaries.

Two bones form its resisting, osseous base: the tibia and the peroneus. The latter is so rudimentary in the horse that it is hardly of any account so far as animal mechanics are concerned. The tibia, on the contrary, strong and prismatic, is situated obliquely from above downward and from before backward under the femur, to which it is joined by a very movable articulation.

Two groups of powerful muscles cover it in front, on the back, and on the outside. Its internal face alone is subcutaneous, and therefore more exposed to traumatisms. The function of the anterior tibial muscles is the flexion of the canon and the extension of the phalanges upon each other and upon the metacarpus. The *rôle* of the posterior tibial muscles is precisely the reverse: with the exception of one, the popliteus, they are all extensors of the metacarpus or flexors of the digital region. They are, in a great measure, concealed externally by the inferior extremity of the ischio-tibial muscles which cover them. Lastly, most of them become inflected over the back part of the hock,—that is to say, the summit of the tibio-tarsal angle,—and by this very fact help to prevent the closing of this angle when the member is standing still.

External Form.—The tibial muscles, like those of the antibrachial region, have this peculiarity, that above they are constituted by a fleshy body, and below they are continued by a shorter or a longer tendon, destined to transmit their action to the canon or to the phalanges. The result of this is that the region, considered as a whole, presents a somewhat pyramidal or conical form, wider above than below, and compressed from one side to the other. Four faces may be recognized on this region, two of which, the external and the internal, especially merit our attention.

The **external face**, almost plane superiorly, and confounded with the most declivitous part of the thigh and the buttock, shows quite distinctly the outlines of the muscles that we have mentioned above. Inferiorly, there is a change in its appearance near the hock: the external tuberosity of the tibia may be discerned in front, the anterior border of the calcaneus behind, and between these two eminences a depression which is called the *hollow of the hock*. It is

limited in front by the *tibial crest* and behind by the tendon of the gastrocnemius and perforatus muscles (*cord of the hock*, incorrectly called the *hamstring tendon*), which is inserted on the summit of the calcaneus.

The **internal face**, almost plane and subcutaneous, is traversed by the saphena vein, which is accompanied by the artery of the same name and several lymphatic vessels, voluminous but not visible in the normal state. The very lowest extremity of this face displays in relief the internal tuberosity of the tibia, as well as the corresponding portion of the tendo Achillis, and, between these two, the concavity already indicated under the name hollow of the hock.

Movements.—The leg, owing to its mode of articulation with the thigh, is the seat of two principal movements, flexion and extension.

During the former, the leg is carried upward and backward; the femoro-tibial angle is closed in proportion to the length of the flexor muscles. Flexion commences in the latter part of the phase of contact, and is completed a little after the raising up of the foot. It does not entail much fatigue on the agents which execute it, as they have only to overcome the weight of the member to be raised.

As soon as the thigh has effected its forward movement, the leg rapidly completes its own, and the amplitude of the arc of a circle thus described by its inferior extremity depends always (apart from the length of the tibia itself) upon the degree of flexion which it effects and the distance at which the foot was raised above the ground. If the foot is not raised high enough at the moment when it is to come down on the ground, the hoof will be in contact again before the leg has had sufficient time to attain the maximum degree of extension of which it is capable. Indeed, it is evident that the length of the step is in direct ratio with that of the tibial extension.

Length.—The **length** of the leg is measured from the inferior part of the stifle to the fold of the hock. It is always equal to that of the forearm, and should be as extensively developed as possible in rapid motors. Upon it depends, indeed, the extent of the movements undergone by its inferior extremity, at the same time that it implies a proportional length of the muscles which belong to this region; moreover, as these muscles are destined to move the canon, it follows that, for these two reasons, a *long* leg is indispensable to the velocity of the gait.

If it be too short, the foot passes over less surface at each step; the animal can only preserve his speed by dint of multiplying his movements and increasing his fatigue. It is needless to say that this conformation offers nothing objectionable in slow motors, from which nothing more is expected than great muscular power.

The length of the leg deserves, likewise, to be studied *in relation*

with that of the canon. In this connection, all authors are agreed that a short canon at the extremity of a long leg constitutes a great point. But why? No one has explained it. Still, it is easy to account for it. The reasons are of the same nature as those which have been explained in connection with the forearm.

Here, also, the metatarsus, at the time of contact, plays the part of a lever, at the superior extremity of which the weight of the body is decomposed into two secondary forces: the one, perpendicular to the canon, tending to carry the hock backward; the other, parallel to this segment, showing the intensity with which the foot presses against the ground. The latter force, destroyed by the resistance of the soil, is for us void of interest. As to the former, it has the metatarsus for its lever-arm, while the extensors of this region are its antagonists. The shorter this arm will be, the less will be the muscular force required to counteract the tendency to flexion. Not only this, but, during the impulsion, the extension of the canon will equally be effected without any greater expenditure of force.

A canon which is short relatively to a long leg describes a less extensive arc of a circle, and is less heavy. These are additional reasons why the tibial muscles will have to contract with less intensity and to a smaller degree in order to produce the same effect.

On the other hand, the metatarsus is covered only by tendons,—in other words, by inert cords, simple agents of transmission. The tibia, on the contrary, is surrounded by the fleshy portion of the muscles, contractile organs, whose shortening gives the measure of the osseous displacements. Large dimensions should, therefore, be looked for in this region, which, it may be said, constitutes the active part of the segmented pendulum represented by the tibia and the metatarsus. The length of the canon not compensating the shortness of the leg, since its *rôle* in locomotion is absolutely passive, there is the best reason to select one that is short in relation with the leg when the object is to combine the best conditions for speed. This consideration in the draught-horse is of no importance.

Width.—The **width** of the leg is recognized at its superior extremity from before backward, and at the level of the enlarged portion of the extensors. It is always somewhat inferior to that of the forearm.

It indicates the development of the muscles in this zone, and we know that the volume, density, and compactness of the muscles are, in the superior sections of the members, qualities of the first order. A horse with a leg thus muscled is called *strong-limbed;* the *calf* of

the leg is well outlined and *powerful.* In the opposite conformation, the leg is *lean, flat,* or *frog-like,* from analogy with that of the familiar batrachian. That is a grave defect, particularly in the draught-horse.

The leg should also be wide in the vicinity of the tarsus. The calcanean cord must be distinctly separated from the tibia, for then the probabilities are that this separation is due to the length of the calcaneum, that arm of the lever of the muscles which produces the *impulsion,* the extension of the hock.

Nevertheless, let no error be committed here; the separation in question may depend upon another factor: a more or less accentuated inclination of the tibia upon the canon.

It is evident, from the mere examination of the diagrams of Fig. 75, representing two tibiæ, *OM* and *ON,* differently inclined upon their respective canons, that the wider leg is also the more inclined of the two, *OM,* although its calcanean lever, *OC,* may be absolutely of the same length as that, *OD,* of the straight leg, *ON.*

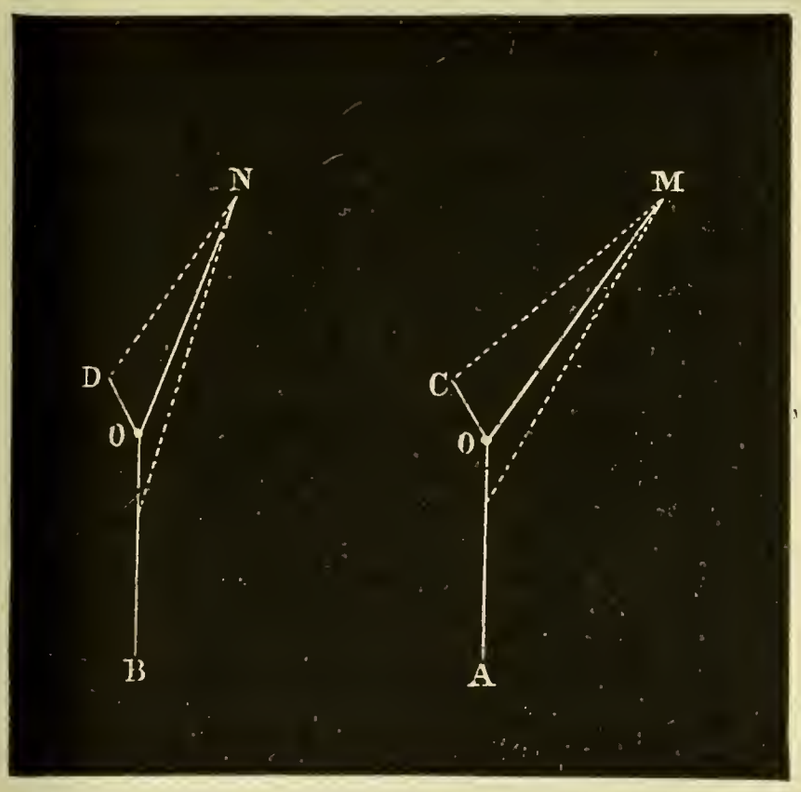


Fig. 75.

It is therefore requisite, at all times, to take into consideration the direction of the tibia in estimating the value of the width of the inferior part of the tibial region.

Thickness.—In order to estimate properly the muscular development of this region, it is necessary to consider its **thickness,**—in other words, its transverse diameter. This can be appreciated by examining the horse obliquely from in front, or by viewing it from

before or from behind. The reliefs of the anterior muscles in either of these positions should be plainly marked and strongly convex outward. When the leg possesses but little thickness, it then lacks force, and is qualified *thin, lean, flat,* as we have seen above.

Direction.—The **direction** of the leg is as important a qualification with regard to the development of force as to the production of speed, for it favors the muscular action and facilitates the play of the articular angles, according to its obliquity. It is measured by a line joining two points situated the one above, the other below, the two external tibial tuberosities, superior and inferior respectively.

The direction of the leg, like that of the thigh, should fulfil two principal requirements:

1st. It should not alter the regularity of the vertical axis, which axis affects the verticality of the canon and the tangency of the hock to the vertical line which falls from the apex of the buttock.

2d. It should secure a large opening and the proper direction of the femoro-tibial and tibio-tarsal angles.

A mean inclination of 65 to 70 degrees, according to our researches, fulfils very well these conditions in swift horses. Indeed, instantaneous photographs demonstrate that the limit of extension of the tibial section is situated very nearly on the vertical line which passes through the centre of the coxo-femoral joint. Remembering this disposition, as well as the fact that the femur is capable, during flexion, of surpassing posteriorly the vertical line through its centre of movement, it is only natural that the obliquity of the tibia should be more marked than that of the femur.

When the leg is *too straight,* which is rare, its degree of extension is necessarily limited, and the step is short, whatever may be the length of the thigh; the foot, being too far forward, causes the horse to be *under himself* behind. When it is *too oblique,* the flexion, on the contrary, is reduced, and the hock, being carried too far backward, produces the opposite defect, and the animal is said to *camp* behind.

In speaking thus, we have supposed the direction of the femur and the metatarsus to be invariable, for it will be understood that the former of these segments, by modifying its inclination, might re-establish the normal axis of the limb. But given a proper obliquity of the femur, and, besides, the vertical direction of the canon as necessary, the position of the tibia has a direct influence upon the axes and the degree of aperture of the femoro-tibial and tibio-tarsal angles. Should it become more vertical, it widens the angles, lengthens the member, raises the trunk, diminishes the stability of the equilibrium, and

favors speed; should it become more inclined, it closes the angles, shortens the member, draws the body down to the ground, and favors the muscular insertions and the production of force.

It is easy to understand that the more the tibia is inclined on the femur the more perpendicular is the insertion of the muscles upon their lever-arm and the more effective are their contractions. These two segments are never so oblique upon each other as to form a right angle, even when the member is in station. Although normally very obtuse, the more closed the femoro-tibial angle is the more favorably is it disposed for all the manifestations of force. It renders the buttock shorter without preventing it from being strongly muscled; it diminishes the height of the animal without interfering with an increase of its bulk. Besides, is not this the form which this angle assumes when the draught-horse is called upon to move his load and to display great force? Does he not incline the croup, the thigh, the leg, and the canon, close all the angles, bring the body to the ground, correct the muscular insertions, and, in a word, adapt his locomotory apparatus to the new conditions which are imposed on him?

In the rapid motor, the angle of the stifle should offer a greater amplitude. If, indeed, on the one hand we should seek in the abdominal limb for a certain horizontality of the croup with a view of augmenting the power and extent of the contraction of the muscles, the case is quite different with the inferior segments, the femur, tibia, and canon, which require but little obliquity to move one upon the other with a great amplitude when the foot is raised from the ground. It is for this reason that the femoro-tibial angle is much more open in the running-horse than in any other. A tibia excessively inclined in relation with the femur would not reach its limit of extension quickly enough; too much time would be taken up, and the extension would not be terminated before the foot had touched the ground again. We have seen in discussing the thigh that the femoro-tibial angle is about 145 to 150 degrees in horses endowed with speed. This is a quality which we have recognized in the best running-horses, and which we will give only as a simple datum on which our judgment can be based, for this angle varies according to the type of the horse examined.

In order to subserve speed, it is necessary, besides, that the tibio-tarsal angle be very wide, another condition which implies a small inclination of the direction of the leg. The canon can then be more strongly flexed, pass over more space, and take a long stride, particularly if the tibia be long and well muscled. Moreover, when the foot gets on to the ground again, the extension of the hock is at its full on

account of the degree of closing which its angle has attained, and also because the extensor muscles of the canon are in a more favorable position to contract with intensity.

A small tibio-tarsal angle depends upon one of two causes: an excessive obliquity either of the canon or of the tibia. In the first case, a portion of the force is expended in raising the trunk upward instead of propelling it forward. In the second case, the tibia, being too much inclined and too much directed backward, cannot execute its movements upon the femur with sufficient freedom, and limits the gracefulness and velocity of the locomotion.

The tibio-tarsal angle, according to our measurements, oscillates about 156 to 160 degrees in the most beautifully constructed running-horses. It is never 136 degrees, as affirmed by the partisans of the theory of the parallelism of the segments, not even in the draught-horse, in which the angle is smaller, and in which, in truth, its examination is of no importance.

In this respect our observations are absolutely in accord with those of our colleague, M. Laulanié.

Diseases and Blemishes.—The diseases of this region, few as they are, are nevertheless capable of presenting characters of exceptional gravity. We will cite:

1st. **Wounds** caused by kicks from other horses, received during work, out-door exercise, or in the stable. These wounds generally appear on the internal and the anterior faces of the tibia. They are less grave upon the external surface, because here the bone, protected by the muscles, is less predisposed to fractures. The intense lameness which accompanies these injuries usually prevents the animal from working or being presentable for sale.

2d. **Osseous tumors**, of about the size of a hen's egg, sometimes observed on the internal faces of the two tibiæ, deserve the greatest consideration on the part of the buyer. Although their presence may be related to a simple external violence, yet they are often the sign of a veritable *callus*,—that is to say, of the work of consolidation which has taken place at the point where the bone has been fractured in consequence of more or less intense traumatisms. Experience has demonstrated that incomplete fractures of the bone, imperfectly consolidated, may be rendered complete under the influence of muscular contraction alone. It is advisable, therefore, to defer the purchase of a horse which presents this blemish.

3d. Lastly, let us mention the lameness due to **rupture of the tendon of the flexor of the metatarsus.** This tendon, an integrant part of the muscle in question, extends from the inferior and external extremity of the femur to the supero-anterior extremity of the canon; it plays a most important mechanical *rôle*, in so far as it establishes an intimate connection between the movements of the metatarsus and those of the thigh. This tendinous cord, under the influence of the energetic efforts made by the animals to free themselves from their bonds when placed under such restraint as is used by the blacksmith in shoeing a vicious

subject, or when their limbs get entangled in the traces, when they are down on the ground, or again under the influence of a forcible gliding backward of the foot, etc., may not withstand the strain and may become ruptured. The simultaneousness which at first existed between the movements of the two above-named segments at once disappears. The flexion of the canon is no more synchronous with that of the thigh; the former sometimes remains pendulous or swings backward, and the tendo Achillis (*cord of the hock*) becomes relaxed and thrown into folds when the animal walks. As to the position of the limb in station, it is normal.

This lameness, which must not be mistaken for a symptom of fracture of the tibia, in spite of its appearance, is ordinarily not serious; it simply incapacitates the animal for his work for six or seven weeks.

4th. We need only mention, in terminating, the **excoriations** which are rather frequent upon the legs of kicking horses. They are common on the internal face in those subjects that struggle and kick to disengage themselves when the members have been displaced over the shaft or the pole of the vehicle or the traces of the harness. The presence of these wounds, or their traces on the skin, should be a warning to the intending purchaser of some bad and vicious disposition in the animal which is offered to him.

D.—The Hock.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **hock,** in the horse, is analogous to the *knee.* It corresponds to the tibio-tarso-metatarsal articulations, supports the bones of the leg, and forms the centre of the chief movements of the foot.

Functionally, it is, more than any other, a region of dispersion of concussion as well as of propulsion. It is upon this region that the efforts of the extensor muscles which propel the body are concentrated; it is on this point that the reactions of locomotion bear at the moment when the body, moving with great velocity, and projected forward, strikes the ground; finally, this is the region on which, in the act of rearing, all the weight of the body presses down with such great force.

Under these different aspects its study is full of interest, as much in relation to animal mechanics as to that of pathology.

Let us examine with some detail the parts which compose it.

The Bones.—The tarsus of the horse is composed of six small bones, sometimes seven, from a want of fusion of the median and small cuneiforms in one of them. Among these bones there are two whose volume and function are quite peculiar; these are the astragalus and the calcaneus. The first presents a very movable articular trochlea, or pulley, which is opposed to the inferior extremity of the tibia; the second, more salient and elongated, is situated behind the preceding, continues, by its direction, the canon, and forms a powerful arm of a lever for the extensor muscles of the metatarsus.

Underneath these two principal bones are found the four others, flattened from above downward, with numerous facets. They are very solidly united to the

calcaneus and the astragalus, the three pieces of the metatarsus, and play the *rôle* of dispersing agents for the weight of the body in movement.

Ligaments.—The bones of which we have spoken are joined in a most intimate manner to the adjoining structures, the tibia and the metatarsus, by capsular and funicular ligaments, which allow perfect freedom in the tibio-tarsal hinge.

Among these ligaments, *two lateral*, external and internal, unite the external and the internal tuberosities of the tibia to the head of the corresponding rudimentary metatarsal bones. They are elongated, rounded, unelastic, tortuous according to their length, and take successive attachments on the lateral surfaces of the bones which lie in their course.

Two capsular ligaments of unequal resistance protect the tarsus in front and behind. The *anterior*, somewhat thin and stronger outwardly, extends from the anterior edge of the inferior articular surface of the tibia to the surface of the tarsal bones and the canon. It protects the synovial membrane in front. The *posterior* affects a general analogous disposition as to its attachments, but it is thin and membranous in its superior part in order to yield easily to movements of flexion, whilst in its centre and inferiorly it is reinforced by a plate of fibro-cartilage, which serves as a gliding surface for the tendon of the deep flexor of the phalanges. It keeps in position the articular synovial membrane behind.

Articular Synovial Membranes.—Of the five tarsal articulations, only one is interesting from an external point of view. This is the tibio-astragaloid, which is lined by a special synovial membrane. Although this membrane is firmly maintained on the sides by the lateral ligaments, and in front and behind by the capsular ligaments described above, nevertheless, it presents certain weak spots which may possibly yield under the influence of the interarticular pressure from an excess of synovial secretion. These spots are three in number: the one antero-internal, where the ligament is not protected by the anterior tibial muscles, the other two posterior, and situated above the reinforcing fibro-cartilage of the posterior ligament. Pressure applied to any one of these swellings will cause the liquid to flow into the others, a fact which demonstrates conclusively enough their intercommunication.

Fig. 76.

Tendons and Tendinous Bursæ.—The tendons of the various muscles glide over the bones and the ligaments of the hock by means of synovial bursæ, of which it is necessary to say a few words.

In front and on the outside, the anterior capsular ligament is maintained by the tendons of the anterior extensor of the phalanges and the flexor of the metatarsus, which is held by a fibrous aponeurosis in the bend of the hock; their movements are effected through the intervention of the underlying connective tissue.

On the outside is the tendon of the lateral extensor of the phalanges, which a bursa of its own enables to glide through a duplicate of the external lateral ligament.

On the inside we find the tendon of the oblique flexor of the phalanges (Fig.

76) having almost the same disposition along the internal lateral ligament, while below, supplied also with a special synovial bursa, the cunean tendon of the flexor metatarsi passes obliquely backward over the internal face of the hock; this, when in a state of abnormal distention, is capable, according to Bouley,[1] of simulating a spavin by the enlargement that it forms under the skin at the very point where a spavin is located.

Finally, at the back, the tarsus is transformed into a fibrous envelope known as the **tarsal sheath**. Its anterior wall is constituted by the posterior ligaments of the hock; it is completed behind by an arch of fibrous tissue extending from the posterior border of the calcaneus to the inner side of the tarsal bones. It gives passage to the perforans tendon through the medium of a synovial membrane. The latter extends from the inferior fourth of the tibia downward to about the superior third of the canon. When this synovial membrane becomes dilated it forms two herniæ superiorly in the hollow of the hock, one on the outer and the other on the inner side, posterior to the corresponding culs-de-sac of the tibio-astragaloid articulation. It is also prolonged downward along the flexor tendons in the shape of a tumor of variable size, sometimes simulating *curb*.

The summit of the calcaneus also presents a little synovial gland, where the tendon of the gastrocnemius muscle is attached, to facilitate its gliding upon the aforesaid bones during extension and flexion of the metatarsus. This bursa, being very firmly sustained over its periphery, is not liable to become distended and form external dilatations. It is different, however, with the bursa which facilitates the play of the superficial flexor of the phalanges over the summit and along the posterior border of the calcaneus, and which almost entirely covers this surface. This tendon, after winding around that of the gastrocnemius, widens, becomes inflected over the head of the calcaneus, almost completely enveloping it, and is then continued in the region of the canon. Now, it is for a distance of about five centimetres along the perforatus tendon in front of the summit of the calcaneus that the enlargement manifests itself when, from excessive secretion of the synovial fluid, this membrane becomes distended.

External Conformation.—The hock is a centre of movement, whose perfect integrity is so important, as affecting the usefulness of the animal, that the eye should know and recognize its normal form in its least details.

This region is divided into four faces: an anterior, a posterior, and two lateral.

a. **Anterior Face.**—The anterior face (Fig. 77, *A*) corresponds to the summit of the tibio-tarsal angle; it has received the name of *fold of the hock*, and shows, on each side, the profile of the lateral faces. It presents, outwardly, above and behind, the summit, *a*, of the calcaneus; below this, the external tuberosity of the tibia, *b*; finally, below, the eminence, *c*, formed by the base of the calcaneus, the cuboid and the head of the external rudimentary metatarsal bone. On the inside, it offers the very prominent internal tuberosity of the tibia, *d*; lower down, the internal tubercle of the astragalus, *e*; finally, altogether below, the prominence of the head of the internal metacarpal bone, *f*; in its

[1] H. Bouley, Nouveau Dictionnaire pratique, etc., t. x. p. 569.

middle is visible the tendons of the flexor metatarsi and of the anterior extensor of the phalanges, *g;* inferiorly, the groove, *h*, of the pulley of the astragalus; inwardly, the saphena vein crosses this face obliquely from above to below, *i;* finally, still on its internal part, the unsustained portion of the articular synovial membrane, *k*.

b. **Posterior Face.**—This face (Fig. 77, *B*) is angular and constituted from above downward: by the *cord*, *l*, and the *point of the hock*, *a;* the posterior border, *a′*, of the calcaneus and the perforatus tendon. But, viewed from behind, the hock also presents: the profiles of the lateral faces, *b*, *n*, *c*, and *d*, *e*, *f* (the same letters as in the preceding figure); the hollow of the hock, *m*, *m*, and the chestnut, *o*.

c. **External Face.**—This face is limited in front by a line which has, in its middle part, a summit, *h* (Fig. 77, *C*), corresponding to the astragaloid trochlea; behind, the line, forming the profile of this same face, is very angular at the level of the summit of the calcaneus, *a*, at a point known, in external anatomy, under the name of the *point of the hock*. Between the latter and the canon are seen successively: the posterior border of the calcaneus, *a′;* then the tendon, *t;* above the point of the hock is detached, very prominently, the *cord of the hock*, *l*, in front of which is seen a deep depression, *m*, called the *hollow of the hock*. This face, for the remainder of its extent, is undulated in its middle by three superposed processes: the superior is formed by the infero-external

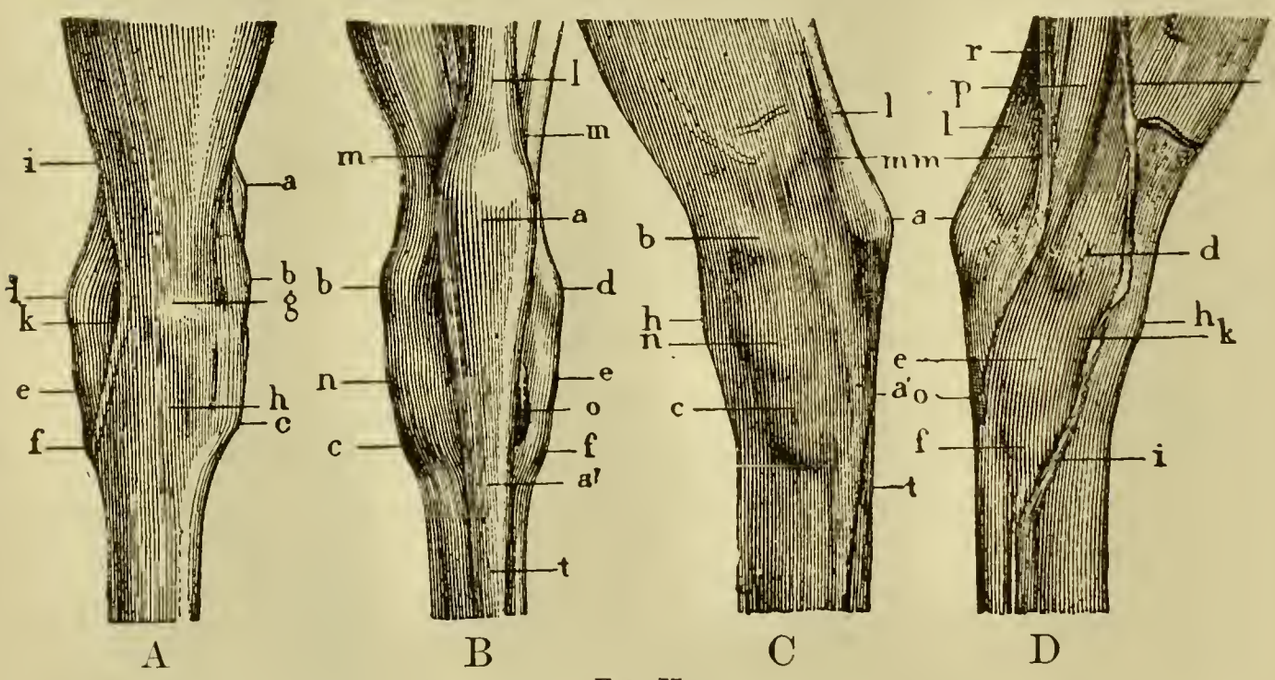


FIG. 77.

tuberosity of the tibia, *b;* the middle one, more effaced, is constituted by the base of the calcaneus, *n;* the inferior, *c*, corresponds to the cuboid and the head of the external rudimentary metatarsal bone.

d. **Internal Face.**—The internal face offers almost the same peculiarities as the external. It shows anteriorly the convexity due to the astragalus, *h* (Fig. 77, *D*); posteriorly, the *point*, *a*, the *cord*, *l*, and the *hollow*, *m*, of the hock; in the centre and from above downward the infero-internal tuberosity of the tibia, *d*, the internal tubercle of the astragalus, *e*, and, finally, the large cuneiform and the head of the internal rudimentary metatarsal bone, *f*. But on this face are seen, besides: the muscular portion of the deep flexor of the phalanges, which

is well outlined, *p*, over which are located numerous venous branches, *r*; the saphena vein, *i*; the chestnut, *o*; and, finally, the point, *k*, where the articular synovial is unsustained.

Such is the conformation which the normal hock presents when it is examined on its four faces. We have insisted much upon this, in order that the beginner may not mistake for incipient blemishes normal eminences and depressions which are only the indications of one of the primary qualities of this region, its neatness of outline.

Examination of the Hock.—The blemishes of the hock, as soon as they become apparent, modify at once the neatness of its lines, which cannot deceive the attentive and educated observer; it is not the same, however, with the student. We would therefore advise the latter to examine the region with care in front, between the fore-legs, and behind, in order to determine the form of the profile of the lateral faces; then to view it from the side, to see the profile of the anterior and the posterior faces. When he has acquired a certain skill, he can attempt a more complicated but more rapid examination, which is called *oblique* or *three-quarters*, either in front or behind. The complexity and the greater rapidity of the oblique examination are readily understood, since, in such a case, the eye endeavors to appreciate, with the same glance, the two adjacent faces of the region.

Some persons claim that it is ridiculous to examine the hock by viewing it from between the fore members; others remark the same of those who, not contented with seeing with minuteness, insist, moreover, on feeling with their hands, the better to ascertain the facts. Such deference for the spectators' opinions would be very injudicious, and, moreover, a very bad example for beginners whose many-minded teachers are already so numerous. We are not aware that any one ever became possessed of science by intuition; in order to know a thing a man must have given himself the trouble of learning it.

Now, this book is especially prepared for the student, whom it is necessary to impress with this great truth,—namely, that, in the purchase of horses, "he who does not open his eyes opens his purse wide!" Open your eyes wide, therefore, until you have acquired absolute certainty concerning what you are examining, and by no means refrain from feeling with your fingers if needs be. We will never regret too much precaution in such a case, if we can thereby avoid committing an error; and in any case the purchaser will not be the party who will complain of it.

Whatever precautions may be employed, a careful examination of the hock always requires certain preparatory conditions in the animal.

He must stand in such a manner that each of the four members supports its own share of the body-weight and lies in its natural axis. If this little detail is neglected, the eye will be deceived as to the true dimensions of the region and cannot compare the one side with the other, as we shall see in a future chapter.

Movements.—The hock is the seat of only two extensive movements, that of *extension* and that of *flexion*. The plane of these movements, on account of the obliquity of the astragaloid trochlea, is slightly oblique outward, a disposition which, coinciding with a certain obliquity of the femur, permits the member to be extended without being restrained by its contact with the abdominal parietes.

There are, besides these principal movements, others, very limited, consisting of simple gliding of the contiguous bones, whose effect is to attenuate the locomotory reactions, and which are, in the case of the hock, an apparatus of dispersion analogous to that of the knee.

When leaving the state of repose, the foot is always more abducted in flexion than in extension, and both are executed with the most perfect regularity. When, however, the articulations of the member are diseased, whether those of the leg or those of the hock, as deduced from the observations of Rigot and from our own, flexion is sudden, jerking, exaggerated, and sometimes so extensive that the anterior face of the fetlock almost touches the parietes of the abdomen. This phenomenon constitutes *string-halt* or *dry spavin;* but the hock offers no trace of external deformity. We will again revert to this on the subject of the *gaits*.

Finally, when, at the moment of contact, the points of the calcanei are turned outward by a sort of rotation, of which the foot is the centre, the horse is said to have *rotating hocks*. (See *Gaits*.)

The Hock as a Centre of Amortissement and Impulsion.—This region is one of the most energetic centres of impulsion in the posterior member. It is by its aid that the tibio-tarsal angle can suddenly open in order to project the body forward at the end of the phase of contact.

The quantity of movement of the body, after being first disseminated upon the bones and the ligaments of the coxo-femoral articulation, and secondly upon those of the femoro-tibial union, is then transmitted to the tibio-tarsal articulation, where, a certain portion having already been destroyed, it is again dispersed upon the tarsal bones and their ligaments. The combined action of the weight of the body and its velocity results in a diminution of the tibio-tarsal angle as well as of the other angles in the superior part of the member. In the hock, as

elsewhere, the extensor muscles hinder this closing of the angle by acting in the manner of a lever of the second class, or that of force. The canon, which is a portion of the arm of this lever, takes its point of contact upon the soil by means of the foot, and receives the weight of the body upon the astragaloid pulley, while the power, represented by the gastrocnemius and the perforatus muscles, maintains the equilibrium of this weight by strong traction upon the extremity of the calcaneus.

A fact here strikes the mind of whoever considers the nature of this power, that it has to overcome at every moment a resistance of more than 100 kilogrammes! It is its relative feebleness; it is the small volume of the fleshy body of the gastrocnemius and the perforatus muscles, and even of the perforans, which can also sustain the tibio-tarsal angle; it is the small volume of these agents, compared with the powerful muscles of the croup and the thigh, which Professor Lemoigne justly regards as a **key to the rigidity** of the member,—a key without which all the other extensors would be deprived of their fulcrum or point of support.[1] It seems that there exists here an enormous contradiction between the means at the disposal of the organism and the effects which it is to produce.

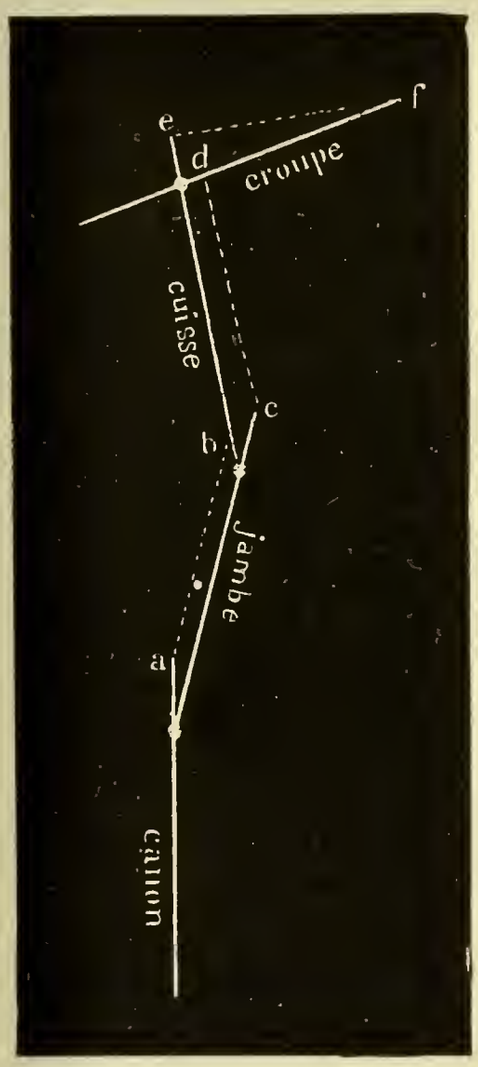


Fig. 78.

This inconsistency is only apparent, and disappears as soon as we examine the mode of proceeding by which the extension of the hock is effected. By reason of the connections which exist between the femur and the calcaneus, through the intervention of the cord *ab* (Fig. 78), the opening of the femoro-tibial angle cannot take place without producing coincidently and in the same proportion the opening of the tibio-tarsal angle.

As the opening of the former may depend upon the straightening of the femur or of the tibia, under the influence of their proper extensors, *ef*, *cd*, it follows that all muscular traction exerted on the summit,

[1] A. Lemoigne, Note communiquée.

e, of the trochanter, or on the summit, *c*, of the patella, is communicated also in the same sense and with an equal intensity to the summit, *a*, of the calcaneus.

It is thus that, in spite of their distance of separation, the extensors of the femur and of the tibia participate in an indirect manner in the extension of the canon,—that is to say, in the maintenance of the tibio-tarsal angle, owing to the mechanical *rôle* of the cord of the hock. This remarkable synergy or correlation in the extension of the articular angles of the posterior limb explains the vigor, precision, and suddenness of the propulsive movements of this member during locomotion. It also accounts for the true action of the gastrocnemius, the perforatus, and part of the tibial aponeurosis, which thus become agents of transmission in common with the muscles of the croup, the stifle, and the leg, enormous muscles, acting together and simultaneously to overcome the inertia of the body and to propel the latter forward.

Thus the organization of this cord responds admirably to the function which is allotted to it. Being composed of two voluminous tendons, that of the perforatus and that of the gastrocnemius, twisted one upon the other, reinforced by a thick lamina of the tibial aponeurosis, and, finally, attached to the summit of the calcaneus, this cord acts, besides, almost perpendicularly to the extremity of one of the longest lever-arms in the economy. The tarsus, from the number of its bones, the smallness of their dimensions, the strength of their means of union, the tenuity of their movements, becomes finally the instrument which receives the force, transmits it, attenuates it, disperses and decomposes it without inconvenience to the living machine, on condition, however, that this base be constituted according to the mechanical principles which we are about to explain.

Beauties.—The hock, to be well formed, should be *neatly outlined*, *lean*, *wide*, *thick*, *well opened*, and *well directed*.

Neatness of Outline.—The hock is said to be *neat* and *nicely cut out* when it reproduces exactly the shape which we have described above. It is, in this case, exempt from blemishes, and its hollow is very pronounced.

Leanness or Dryness.—This region is, moreover, qualified **lean** or **dry** when all its normal elevations and depressions are well marked and covered by a fine, supple skin, adherent to the adjacent parts. The neatness of outline indicates the soundness of the pieces of the tarsal apparatus; its leanness, on the contrary, implies the pureness of the breed, the fineness of the constitution, and the energy and excitability of the individual. In subjects of a lymphatic temperament, as

in those of the North of France and some of the districts of the West, the skin and the hairs are thick, the subcutaneous connective tissue abundant, and all the osseous reliefs more or less effaced. These animals frequently have a *fat, full, doughy hock.* We must not confound this state with an absolutely blemished condition of the parts, for we should thereby frequently be liable to discard many excellent horses, in which, on account of the race, the climate, and the soil, it is impossible to obtain the *dry* hock which is usually observed in horses of meridional countries, above all in the finer races.

Width.—The **width** of the tarsus is an absolute quality, but in order to appreciate the same it is indispensable that the members be stationed in their normal axis. It is measured from the point to the fold of this region. It will be readily understood that, if the canon be placed well under the trunk, for example, this dimension will appear more considerable in consequence of the diminished obliquity of the calcaneus upon the tibia. It is precisely on account of this possible error, resulting very frequently from a defect in the vertical axis or a variable obliquity of the leg, that deception as to the width of the hock may arise, and the latter is not always—far from it—the expression of the length of the calcaneus, even as many think. With H. Bouley, we should recommend the intending purchaser not to be satisfied with the one dimension indicated above. He should, moreover, appreciate the distance comprised between the cord and the anterior profile of the leg on the one part, and the perforatus tendon and the anterior profile of the canon on the other. In other words, it is absolutely necessary to ascertain the width of the hock above, in the middle, and below. If these three conditions are not fulfilled the region cannot be qualified *wide,* for it is eminently defective from the very disproportion of its parts.

It is ordinarily at the inferior extremity, at the level of its base, that the region shows an abnormal narrowness, owing to which it is styled *strangled.* The tarsal bones of the lower row are, in this case, not in relation, in their development, with the dimensions of the astragalus, the tibia, and the calcaneus; above all, with the last, which loses none of its power and acts, by this very reason, with so much more force upon the ligaments which unite it to the metatarsal lever, of which it really constitutes the superior extremity. Such a hock, therefore, becomes blemished very soon, and should be rejected for very severe services expected from the saddle- or the draught-horse.

When the region is deficient in width over its whole area. it is called *slender, narrow.* This is, we believe, a serious defect, although

there are some authors who excuse it, and even class this form of hock among the good conformations. We can only admit one thing or the other: either the width is an absolute beauty or it is a defect. If the former of these opinions be adopted, it is plain that the same qualities cannot be attributed to the narrow hock as to the wide hock, which is exactly the reverse. This is, nevertheless, what the authors of whom we speak have done, unknown to themselves, although the inconsistency of such a theory is at once apparent.

The width of the hock, in reality (we suppose it well directed and well opened), implies:

1. The separation of the calcanean cord, which, in its turn, depends upon both the volume of the posterior muscles and the length of the calcaneus (superior width).

2. The antero-posterior diameter of the tibio-astragaloid articulation and, here again, the length of the calcaneus (middle width).

3. Finally, the antero-posterior development of the inferior row of tarsal bones (inferior width), which is tantamount to saying that a wide hock commands a well-muscled leg; a well-directed tarsal cord in relation to the arm of its lever, which is, in addition, powerful of itself on account of its great length; large articular surfaces securing, consequently, much amplitude to the movements of extension and flexion; finally, a solid union with the metatarsal column, whose width is evidently correlative.

The slender, narrow hock presents a conformation precisely the opposite. It is, therefore, for inverse reasons, defective, which is indeed confirmed by observation. A strange sophism would be committed, unknown to himself, by the man who would argue the usefulness of so powerful a hock associated with a weak croup and bad loins.[1] The solidity of one region, it is true, can sometimes exaggerate the feebleness of another; but this is not the case in the example under consideration. If such a croup or such loins transmit the impulsion badly, what will the impulsion be with a narrow hock? The two defects will be superadded to each other without any chance of compensation!

Thickness.—The **thickness** of the hock is measured from one lateral face to another. It is appreciated by examining the region in front, behind, or obliquely, if one has more experience and a more practised eye. Like the width, we must view it above, in the middle, and below, in order to assure ourselves that there is a proper correlation

[1] Merche, Nouveau Traité des formes extérieures du cheval, p. 447.

between the development of each of these secondary parts. The *thick* hock merits this name and is truly beautiful only on condition of its great transverse diameter at the level of the tibia, the astragalus, and the superior extremity of the canon.

The tarsal thickness indicates that of the leg, of the canon, of the fetlock, and of the pastern. It bespeaks perfect steadiness and equilibrium in every part of the hind limb; while its breadth has the entire command of the extent of the movements, the latter taking place backward and forward and *vice versa.*

It is evident, however, that this thickness in the draught-horse, for example, should not be compared to that of the thoroughbred, two types essentially different. In the one, the bones are voluminous, short, and the muscles powerful; in the other, the bones are long, relatively slender, and the muscles long. If each requires, with equal propriety, wide and thick articulations, absolute beauties applying to all services, still it is necessary that the proportions and the general harmony should not suffer thereby.

Extent of the Tibio-tarsal Angle.—As the hock is practically only one articulation, the summit of an angle, it is not useless to inquire if its degree of openness is capable of influencing the functions of the parts, and if this angle, once determined, can owe the separation of its branches to a greater or lesser inclination of the one or the other of them. In other terms, what is the value of the tibio-tarsal angle, and what is its orientation on the member to be in the most favorable attitude for the development of force or the display of velocity?

Most writers have endeavored to answer this question by advancing theoretical views insufficiently based on facts. Hence their writings contain numerous contradictions. We think we have been more logical in studying first very beautiful models, with a view of reasoning afterwards more easily in the particular cases which present neither an absolute beauty nor a veritable defect, and which are so often met in practice.

Dismissing for a moment the obliquity of the leg, let us remark that the angle of the hock undergoes more or less the influence of the three metatarsal directions, as follows:

a. The canon remains vertical.

b. It is oblique forward and downward.

c. It is oblique backward and downward.

We will suppose, in each of these instances, the point of the hock tangent to a vertical line which would start from the point of the buttock, as we remark it in the member with a normal axis. (See *Axes.*)

a. **The Canon, Vertical.**—The canon in this case is tangent

throughout its entire length to the previously-cited vertical axis. This position of the member is the most favorable to the proper execution of its locomotory function, as we will verify *à propos* of the vertical axes. It belongs, besides, to all properly-conformed horses, whatever may be the service for which they are destined.

The tibio-tarsal angle, under this premise, can be more or less open according to the situation of the tibia which constitutes its superior branch. Whence, consequently, there follow two secondary propositions with regard to the direction of the latter segment.

1st. **The Tibia, Straight.**—We will designate thus a tibia whose obliquity is little marked (about 65 to 70 degrees). The hock which corresponds to it is called *straight;* the angle which it forms is very open (Fig. 79). A similar conformation is favorable to velocity or speed, for it allows long strides, during which the calcaneus becomes more and more perpendicular to the muscles that have to move it. Besides, the foot, on arriving on the ground, is more strongly flexed upon the leg, which gives the hock a more energetic and extensive impulsion.

Fig. 79.

Running-horses ordinarily have this region thus disposed; their tibio-tarsal angle is about 155 to 160 degrees, as we have already seen in treating of the leg.

The observer is easily deceived as to the width of the straight hock on account of the direction which the calcaneus here affects. On that account it is necessary to observe the length of this bone during walking. But it is an error to believe that this hock, implying but little inclination of the tibia, necessarily violates the vertical axis by placing the limb more under the trunk. It suffices, to convince ourselves of the contrary, to observe the thoroughbred horses, which have in nearly all instances a marked opening of the tibio-tarsal angle, and to make measurements, as we have done, upon their articular angles; it will then be verified that their axes are perfectly normal on account of the suitable direction of the croup and the thigh.

The straight hock, which it seems should produce much fatigue to the animal from the little perpendicularity of its cord upon the calcaneus, is precisely so disposed in order that the deficient muscular contraction may not interfere in a great measure. As H. Bouley[1] has

[1] H. Bouley, loc. cit., p. 580.

remarked, "when the pieces of a freshly-dissected hock are moved, it is easy to recognize that, towards the limits of its movement of extension and flexion, the angle opens and closes by a sort of spring-like action, which cannot be better compared than to that of the blade of a pocket-knife upon its handle. The articulation, being once opened, the two segments will remain in this state of extension by the very fact of the manner of coaptation of their surfaces of contact, and the intervention of a muscular force to maintain them vertically is not at all necessary."

The straight hock, finally, possesses this advantage from a point of view of speed, that it is usually associated with long posterior members capable of taking long steps. Supposing the lengths of the crural, tibial, and metatarsal segments to be equal, it is evident that their superposition, in a more or less vertical manner, will give a more considerable total height to the member than if these pieces are joined in a more oblique manner. Whence it follows that a horse having his bones thus articulated will have his locomotory apparatus more developed relatively to the body, and hence will be endowed with greater speed.

2d. **The Tibia, Oblique.**—The first effect of such a direction is the closing of the tibio-tarsal angle, allowing less freedom to the movements of flexion than if this angle were more open. Another effect is a more perpendicular insertion of the cord of the hock, which places the latter in the best conditions for the proper utilization of its force. The last result is a lessening of the total length of the posterior member and a proportionate diminution of the aptitude of the organism in relation to speed.

Thus conformed, the animal is closer to his base of support; the hock is strong, and its muscles well disposed; but the step is shorter on account of the smallness of the tarsal angle and the diminished length of the member. All things being equal otherwise, the gait will be less rapid, unless it makes up by the repetition of its movements for the space and time lost at each stride, which will fatigue the animal and wear him out more quickly; but if the step lacks amplitude and the member length, the muscles may be more voluminous, the body developed, and the total mass considerable. The animal being then capable of the most energetic efforts at a very slow pace, the quantity of movement (mv) produced will not be less, because it will displace a greater weight with more feeble velocity. Poorly adapted for the turf, he will be excellent for traction, provided that his conformation has been modified in the sense which we have indicated.

The hock with a small angle, which we will call *common*, because it is ordinarily met in horses for light-draught and rapid heavy-draught services, is, in our opinion, more favorable to the production of force. Does this mean that the straight hock is defective for all laborious services, and that it is only observed in long-striding horses? By no means. It is rather frequently seen in our heavy, lymphatic horses, which our measurements have proved; it should not, in such cases, be considered as defective unless it at the same time lacks width, which is not rare, or unless its deficiency is not compensated by a muscular and powerful leg.

b. **The Canon, Oblique forward and downward.**—This conformation, in which the canon is deviated in advance of the vertical line falling from the point of the buttock, has caused the hock to be qualified *elbowed* or **angular** (Fig. 80).

Fig. 80.

This hock, says H. Bouley,[1] "always appears wide in its superior part, because its angularness results in a separation of the calcaneus from the tibia and, consequently, places the calcanean cord at a greater distance from the latter bone; whence a widening of the external surface. This bending of the region, besides, also has the effect of placing the arm of the calcanean lever in the most favorable condition for the production of force.

"But, by the side of these advantages, real disadvantages present themselves, which give ample reasons for considering this conformation as being defective. First, the column of support below the tibia being situated obliquely, it results that the pressure of the weight of the body, instead of being transmitted to the ground by the bones exclusively, as in the vertical position of this segment, causes a strain, proportionate to the degree of the obliquity, on the ligaments which unite the tarsus with the metatarsus as a whole, and imposes upon them an abnormal function. In addition, these ligaments, during locomotion, are subjected to all the greater strain, because the muscular force finds, in the direction of the calcanean lever-arm, more favorable conditions for its development. These are two causes which fatigue the apparatus of the hock more and hasten its premature ruin. Experience bears witness to this

[1] H. Bouley, loc. cit., t. x. p. 579.

effect. Nothing is more common than to witness, at the base of elbowed hocks, the development of osseous tumors, which are the expression of the excess of its function, to which such hocks are predisposed from the very fact of their defective conformation. We can understand that this defect will tend to become more exaggerated when the hock, instead of corresponding to the vertical through the buttock, is situated farther under the centre of gravity. Horses whose hocks are angular are often animals of superior quality so far as energy for work is concerned, and are, consequently, predisposed to ruin themselves so much more quickly, as the apparatus upon which they apply their force possesses less favorable conditions for resistance."

The learned author of this quotation might have added that the angular hock, by drawing the inferior part of the member towards the centre of gravity, by causing an exaggerated closing of the tibio-tarsal angle and too great a stretch of the foot forward under the trunk, determines, besides, an overloading of the posterior members prejudicial to their functions. It augments the work of the extensor muscles of the metatarsus during station, diminishes the amplitude of the step by restraining the movement of flexion, and, finally, expends to no purpose a part of the effort of impulsion to elevate the trunk instead of carrying it directly forward.

Such a hock should, for these reasons, be rejected in spite of its apparent width, for it is the result of an imperfection in the axis of the member which will soon ruin it.

c. **The Canon, Oblique downward and backward.**—This direction of the canon places the posterior member in the attitude which is called *camping*, and which approaches somewhat that of the animal when he urinates. We will have occasion to return to this in discussing the axes. Let us say, for the present, that it places the members in a very unfavorable condition to fulfil, with ease, their functions as columns of support and as agents of impulsion, relatively to the trunk. It removes them too far from the centre of gravity, transfers a corresponding portion of the body-weight upon the anterior members and the loins, and renders the impulsion more feeble and less extensive; it predisposes to gliding backward, fatigues the animal more, leads to sway-backedness, etc. (See *Axes.*)

We must not confound this conformation with that which is proper to a straight hock. The femoro-tibial and tibio-tarsal angles, in the latter case, are open, but the natural axis of the limb is preserved, while, in the horse camping behind (only from the hock down), the tibia remains very oblique, whilst it leaves the tibio-tarsal angle very

large and disturbs the normal axes. Whence it follows that this angle is badly disposed for the functions of its branches during locomotion, and even tends to resist the efforts intended to draw them towards each other during station. Its bisectrix, if prolonged to the ground, meets the latter at a point insufficiently distant from that where the hind feet effect their contact, and the consequence then is that the angle is quite as *badly opened* for the production of speed as for that of force.

Direction of the Hock.—The **direction** of the hock must be studied from two different points of view: in relation with the median plane of the body and in relation with the axis of the member.

1st. **Direction Relative to the Median Plane.**—Relative to the median plane of the body, the hock can assume three situations, —namely:

It is *parallel* and thus *well directed.*

It is *deviated inward* and qualified *close* or *cow-hocked.*

Finally, it is *deviated outward,* which renders the horse *open* behind.

In order to have its normal direction, the hock should be parallel to the median plane, for its branches are flexed and extended upon each other in a plane equally parallel, not to speak of the normal deviation which the inferior part of the member affects during flexion. In this case the impulsion given by the posterior limbs is transmitted, without lateral oscillations, to the spinal column, whose direction it follows, and there is no waste of force in the projection of the body. The play of the extremities is easy; the feet are not predisposed to interfering; their contact with the ground is uniform; the gait is free, regular, brilliant, and the tarsal apparatus will withstand a prolonged service.

When the hocks are *close* or *crooked* (Fig. 81), their points, when viewed from behind, converge, and the inferior part of the members is deviated outward. The horse is then designated *cow-hocked,* or *close-hammed;* his movements are without elegance, although the conformation is often associated with very great qualities.

If, on the contrary, the points of the hocks (Fig. 82) are diverging, the lower part of the member is turned inward; the animal is *open,* or *too open behind,* in view of the great separation of the two calcanei.

We will explain, when treating of the *axes of the members,* the disadvantages of these defects, which give to such subjects the most ungraceful gaits imaginable.

2d. **Direction Relative to the Axis of the Member.**—In

order that the tarsal apparatus may fulfil its functions well, it is not enough that it should be in a plane parallel to the axis of the body, but it is also necessary that the median line of the member divide it into two very equal moieties. If this condition be not realized, the

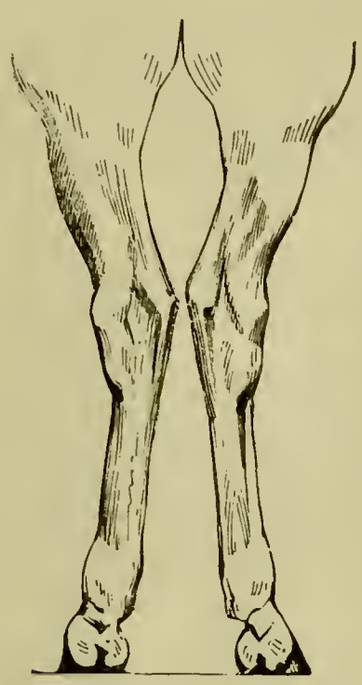


FIG. 81.

FIG. 82.

region of the hock is displaced inwardly or outwardly, and becomes the seat of irregularities in its contact more or less prejudicial to the integrity of the locomotory machine.

When the hocks are strongly convex on their internal face from above to below, they are most ordinarily angular in front, and the animal is close behind.

The deviation opposite to the latter, and common in horses too open behind, consists in a rather strongly-marked concavity of the whole of the internal surface of the member, in virtue of which the calcanei become very diverging, while the two hoofs, nearer each other than they should be, converge and even touch each other in the region of the toes. A horse offering this conformation could be called *bow-legged*, on account of its analogy to the aspect of the man whose legs are thus directed. In both forms the hock does not give the natural impulsion to the body, and the members move in a very ungraceful manner. (See *Axes of Members.*)

Diseases and Blemishes.—The alterations of which the hock may be the seat, says H. Bouley,[1] are numerous, varied, and often of extreme gravity. They may affect any of the constituent parts of

[1] H. Bouley, loc. cit., p. 586.

this complex apparatus: the bones, the synovial membranes, the ligaments, the tendons and their sheaths, and, finally, the subcutaneous tissue. The skin itself is sometimes affected, but only in a mild degree, as compared with the intrinsic pieces of the region.

The number and gravity of these lesions are readily explained by the important *rôle* of the hock in the function of locomotion.

Following the method of H. Bouley, we will study them by passing from without to within. They exist, in fact, upon the skin, the connective tissue, the tendons and their bursæ, the bones, and the tibio-tarsal articular synovial membrane.

a. **The Skin.**—The point of the hock is quite frequently the seat of **denudations and excoriations**, whose presence should attract the attention. Such wounds, by reason of their locality, are often an index of the vicious character of the animal, or of his irritable disposition. They result from blows, kicks, kicking, and are particularly common in irritable mares which are continually urinating. They are sometimes followed by accidental *white markings* in subjects with dark-colored extremities; at other times by **cicatrices** of a variable configuration, visible on the outside, covered by the surrounding hairs, or fraudulently hidden by a colored coating.

Traces of cauterization, in points or in lines, which are seen on blemished hocks should induce one to ascertain whether the affection for which the cauterization has been employed has entirely disappeared, or whether the region is improved in a manner to permit of a better utilization of the animal.

It is in the fold of this hock that the most serious cutaneous lesions are observed. They consist of transverse fissures, known under the vulgar name of **sallenders**, occasioned by external irritation, continual friction, or the application of a vesicant. Primarily benign, sallenders soon becomes complicated in consequence of the incessant movements of the parts, and also other causes, such as the humidity, the elevation of the temperature, uncleanness, etc. It then becomes a wound, rebellious to cicatrization, with thick, indurated borders, covered with scabs, and always very painful during the hot seasons.

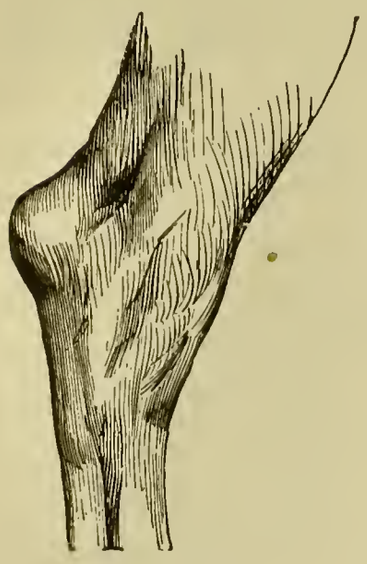


Fig. 83.

b. **Connective Tissue.**—The subcutaneous connective tissue at the point of the hock, under the influence of contusions and repeated frictions, becomes infiltrated with serum, and forms at the end of a certain time a soft, fluctuating, sometimes œdematous, non-inflammatory tumor designated under the names *capped hock* and *capellet*[1] (Fig. 83).

Capped hock is nothing else but *hygroma* of the summit of the calcaneus. Its greatest inconvenience is the deformity of the point of the hock, but it occasions no lameness. It constitutes none the less quite a

[1] "The first of these names is without doubt derived from the fact that the tumor has been compared to a small cap adorning the head of the calcaneus." (H. Bouley.)

serious blemish in pleasure-horses, on account of the deformity which it produces and the tenacity with which it resists the means employed for its resolution. It must not be confounded with the purely accidental œdema of this part in horses standing in the stable for a long time, which disappears promptly under the influence of exercise.

c. **Tendons and Tendinous Synovials.**—We will mention, in passing, the *rupture of the tendinous portion of the flexor metatarsi*, of which we have already spoken in the article on the leg, and which gives rise to a lameness of a special character.

We will also name an accident,—an exceptional one, indeed,—*luxation of the calcanean attachment of the perforatus.* In the two known cases, the tendinous portion of this muscle had ruptured its insertion on this bone from a very violent effort of traction, was dislocated externally to the point of the hock, and produced so visible a deformity that the animal could not have been offered for sale.

It is the same with the *ossification of this calcanean cap*, as well as of a portion of the tendon itself, which we have observed, on one occasion only, in an old horse that was sacrificed for dissection, and whose hock we deposited in the Department of Collections at the Alfort School.

These lesions have no other interest than their rarity. A different case, however, is that of the abnormal dilatations of the synovial sheaths which facilitate the gliding of the tendons in the region of the hock. These are, on the contrary, most common, always very grave (some of them at least), with regard to the depreciation in the value of the animal. They are known under the generic name of tendinous *hygroma* or *thorough-pin.*

The most serious among them is undoubtedly that of the tarsal sheath, which, for this reason, has received the name of *tarsal* or *tendinous thorough-pin.* It is characterized by subcutaneous tumors, which appear at the superior or at the inferior part of the hock, at the points where the synovial membrane has no support. The superior dilatation is situated in the hollow of the hock, immediately in front of the tendo Achillis or cord, and along its course. More salient on the internal side, it is sometimes bilobed, and may reach the inferior fourth of the leg. When it is very voluminous, pressure exercised upon it will not force the liquid to the anterior face of the hock, because the tarsal sheath does not communicate with the articulation; but such pressure, being transmitted to the swelling at the inferior part of the hock, renders them more apparent.

These tumors, less developed than the preceding one, and less distinctly outlined in consequence of the thickness of the walls of the sheath, follow the course of the flexor tendons to the superior third of the canon.

"Tarsal thorough-pin," says H. Bouley, "is susceptible of acquiring enormous dimensions, particularly on the internal side. It has been seen to be enlarged in such proportions that the space between the two members was no longer sufficient for their normal movements, and the skin over its surface was excoriated from the constant friction against the opposite hock during the movements of locomotion."

The synovial bursa which facilitates the gliding of the expansion of the perforatus upon the summit of the calcaneus is also capable of becoming dilated to an abnormal degree. Although very strongly attached here, it can yield to the pressure of the liquids from within, forming along the cord of the hock an

elongated, cylindrical tumor, ordinarily of a small volume, and about ten centimetres in length. This is called *calcanean hygroma.*

H. Bouley observed with justness that the synovial cul-de-sac which permits the gastrocnemius tendon to glide upon the summit of the calcaneus, during the movements of extensive flexion, is so powerfully supported by the expansion of the perforatus that it is absolutely impossible for it to dilate in the form of external enlargements. He adds, with equal accuracy, that this synovial cannot in any manner give rise to the tumor which we have studied above under the name of *capped hock.*

Finally, it is also possible to meet hydropsy of the small bursa which facilitates the gliding of the cunean tendon of the flexor of the metatarsus over the surface of the internal lateral ligament. It presents a small, soft, fluctuating tumor of the size of a large bean, situated in front of the point where the exostosis of a spavin usually forms and for which it is sometimes mistaken. This dilatation has received the name of *cunean hygroma,* on account of its location in relation with the tendinous branch under which it is developed.

d. **Articular Synovials.**—It is rather common to meet upon the astragaloid pulley and in the corresponding grooves of the tibia more or less deep multiple striæ or fissures, perfectly regular, and all of them parallel to the lips of the astragalus. These *striæ* of the articular surfaces are most common in old horses. They are, without doubt, due to some slow and obscure irritation of the tibio-tarsal joint, and correspond probably to a special irregularity of its movements; but clinicians at present have not determined in a precise manner the external symptoms of this variety of lesions, which should consequently be investigated. (See *Defects of the Gaits: String-halt.*)

The most serious alteration of the tibio-astragaloid articulation is consecutive to a hydropsy of its synovial membrane. The synovia, under the influence of an excessive functional activity on the part of this membrane, is secreted in larger quantity in the articular cavity, and, in the long run, exercises pressure from within which, little by little, dislocates the parietes of the articular cavity. But as the latter are not equally sustained everywhere, the places which offer the least resistance to the internal pressure are distended beyond their physiological limits and produce a hernia, by forming under the skin three tumors whose position is stationary, whose volume and tension alone change according to the intensity of the alteration. These three tumors constitute what is called *articular thorough-pin of the hock.*

The first of these is located in the fold of the hock and a little to the internal side. It modifies the profile of the anterior face of this region by the presence of an abnormal curve, yielding, and always more tense to the finger when the member is on the ground.

The other two articular dilatations are situated behind and above the lateral ligaments, between the tibia and the perforans tendon. They have a variable volume, which ranges from that of a walnut to that of a child's head; the internal is most frequently larger than the external, which is sometimes absent. The presence of one of these constantly coexists with that of the anterior swelling, and that is what we might expect, since all three are only diverticula of the same cavity. Pressure exercised upon one of them is communicated to the others.

The synovial dilatations are, in general, less grave than the osseous tumors.

They may for a long time remain compatible with the liberty of the movements. They (the articular especially) lame the animal only in cases of abundant hypersecretion of synovia and excessive tension on the surrounding tissues. Their parietes, in long-standing cases, become thickened and calcified in places, restraining greatly the tarsal movements. When the calcification is very extensive, it constitutes a false anchylosis of the articulation, which renders rapid locomotion absolutely impossible.

c. **The Bones.**—The **osseous blemishes** in the region of the hock have received different names. They are: *curb*, *spavin*, and *jarde*.

1st. **Curb.**—**Curb** (Fig. 84, *B*, and Fig. 85, *A*) is a periostitis of the infero-internal tuberosity of the tibia, which is developed under the influence of external violence or excessive strain of the articulation. It is characterized by the formation of osseous layers, which are disposed in regular strata upon the tibial tuberosity, over the surface covered by the attachment of the internal lateral ligament.

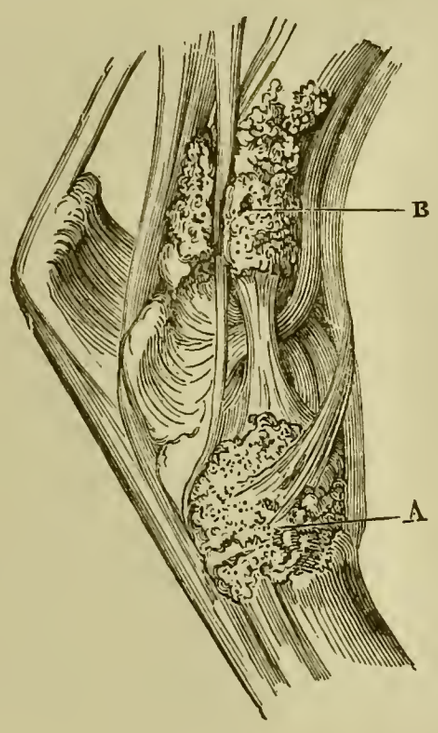


FIG. 84.

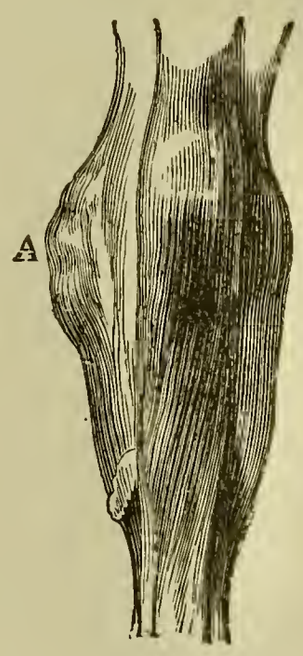


FIG. 85.

This formation offers a longitudinal groove in which the tendon of the oblique flexor of the phalanges glides and manifests itself externally by a *curve*, more pronounced than in a normal state, when this face is viewed from in front, behind, or obliquely. At the beginning, it is often difficult of recognition from its feeble dimensions, which render the comparison of the two hocks necessary. Unless they are both blemished, it is generally easy to determine the presence of such a neoplasm, for it is exceptional that the two enlargements should be absolutely identical in relation to their form and volume. Curb only occasions lameness during its formation; when it is once developed, the lameness disappears. Nevertheless, there are some which from the volume which they attain cover up the margin of the tibial articular surfaces and interfere, more or less, with the freedom of the movements; in such cases they are all the more grave, as they are rebellious to all means of treatment.

2d. **Spavin.**—The term **spavin** should be reserved to denote a periostitis at the lower and internal part of the hock (Fig. 84 and Fig. 86, *A*). It involves

most usually certain bones of the tarsus and of the metatarsus covered by the expansion of the inferior extremity of the internal lateral ligament of the articulation,—that is to say, the head of the rudimentary metatarsal bone, a small portion of the principal metatarsal, the cuneiforms, the scaphoid, and even the base of the astragalus. Frequently, however, it is much more circumscribed, which has led H. Bouley to specify as *metatarsal*, or *low*, the spavin which is situated at the upper extremity of the canon, and as *tarso-metatarsal*, or *high*, that which affects the bones of the tarsus as well as those of the metatarsus.

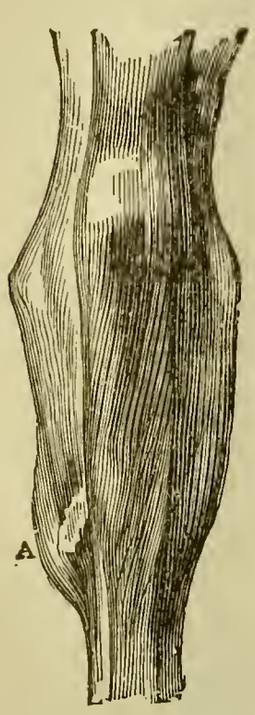


FIG. 86.

The first is manifested externally as an exaggeration of the eminence formed by the head of the internal splint bone, or, again, when it is more anterior, by the greater volume of the tuberosity of insertion of the flexor muscle of the metatarsus. Sometimes it is complicated by a splint on the canon, in consequence of the abnormal ossification of the interosseous ligament which unites the rudimentary to the principal metatarsal bone. Whatever may be its exact seat and its volume, which are susceptible to variation, *metatarsal* spavin ordinarily occasions only a temporary lameness, which ceases, in most instances, after a certain lapse of time, when the work of ossification is completed.

As to *tarso-metatarsal* spavin, its gravity is very different and its frequency much greater. It constitutes, in fact, a kind of exostosis which solders the inferior bones of the tarsus to one another and to the metatarsus. It is at first limited to the periphery of the articular margins, but progressively invades the articular surfaces themselves. The latter complication, whose evil effects are easily understood,—in one word, true anchylosis,—does not always exist, even in the case of very voluminous exostoses. We have examined the articular surfaces in a number of instances in old horses, and found them still intact. Such a lesion does not, as can be perceived, completely annihilate the movements of the tarsal articulations, and, consequently, lessens the gravity of the prognosis which may have been deduced from it.

Bone spavin, at the beginning of its formation, and before the appearance of the external tumor, determines a lameness, generally very intense, upon the nature of which it is almost impossible to decide with certainty. The lameness which follows has no pathognomonic character, even when it is accompanied by the *jerk* of *string-halt*. It is only at the end of a certain time that the exostosis is manifested in profile upon the internal side of the hock. Its volume and its seat are, in such cases, very variable. Sometimes scarcely distinct, sometimes very well defined, it projects inward, forward, or backward from the articulation. In rather frequent cases the lameness at this period diminishes in intensity or disappears entirely; but in most instances it persists and remains in relation with the extent of the tumor. Its characteristics are no longer the same; the animal suffers less pain and the limp seems to be due more to the mechanical difficulties which the tarsal bones experience in their displacements. However it may be, it is apparent that the gravity of the prognosis varies with the nature of the articular lesions, the obstacles offered to locomotion, and the persistence and tenacity of the rational symptoms to which the blemish is heir.

3d. **Jarde.**[1]—**Jarde** (Fig. 87) is not, as every one wrongly believes, an osseous tumor, reproducing identically, upon the external side of the hock, the enlargement which a spavin forms on the internal side of the same region. It is simply a *more or less extensive periostitis of the head of the external rudimentary metatarsal bone.* This lesion is very often complicated by a splint, as in the case which we represent (Figs. 88 and 89); at other times, and this is perhaps the most frequent circumstance, nothing is found but a tumor developed at the superior and external side of the canon,—that is to say, a simple splint. This is at least the opinion which we have acquired as the result of our researches for a period of observation extending over more than forty years, in conditions altogether exceptional in so far as the abundance of the specimens studied was concerned.

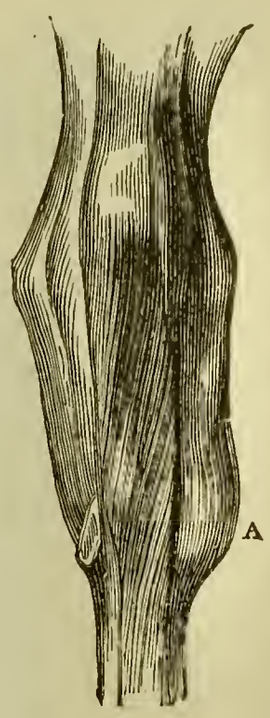


FIG. 87.

Jarde is never situated at the same height as spavin; it is always lower, which already implies that the external tarsal bones are not the seat of it. Besides, it remains confined outwardly or posteriorly, and does not extend forward as spavin does; finally, it is rather inclined to descend along the rudimentary metatarsal than to ascend upon the cuboid or the base of the calcaneus, additional reasons which militate in favor of its metatarsal origin. It should, therefore, neither in location, lesions, nor gravity, be considered as the homologue of spavin.

We also sometimes meet, on the outer side of the hock, a tumor localized on the base of the calcaneus, the scaphoid, the cuboid, and the head of the external metatarsal bone,—a tumor sufficiently circumscribed to merit a special name other than that of osteophyte, of which we shall speak farther on. (It could be called *external spavin.*)

In 1852, M. Gillet[2] represented the true jarde with great exactness, although, by a singular deference for the erroneous opinions of his predecessors and his contemporaries, he would not abide by his own observations alone. His drawing, altogether similar to our own (Figs. 88 and 89), differed, for good reasons, from all the other more or less fantastic representations which have been made of the blemish in question. We will add that it is *very rare* to meet lesions of this nature, and we are certain not to be contradicted upon this point by those who have taken the trouble to search for them.

The anatomical facts explain why the periostitis of which we speak can really only take its origin upon the head of the external splint bone and not otherwise. It is necessary first to recall that exostoses resulting from usage appear only at points of insertion of the large articular ligaments. It is at these points that tractions and irritations are conveyed to the periosteum and inflame it. The irritation, spreading little by little, invades ultimately all the bony surfaces covered by these ligaments. It is according to this process that curb, spavin, and exostoses of the bodies of the vertebræ are produced; this same process we shall find again as the primary factor in the formation of splints or

---

[1] This is the "curb" of English authors.

[2] Gillet, Des Tares osseuses des membres du cheval, in Recueil de mémoires et observations sur l'hygiène et la médecine vétérinaires militaires, t. iv. p. 317, chez Dumaine, Paris, 1852.

exostoses of the canon. The formation of a jarde is no exception to this principle.

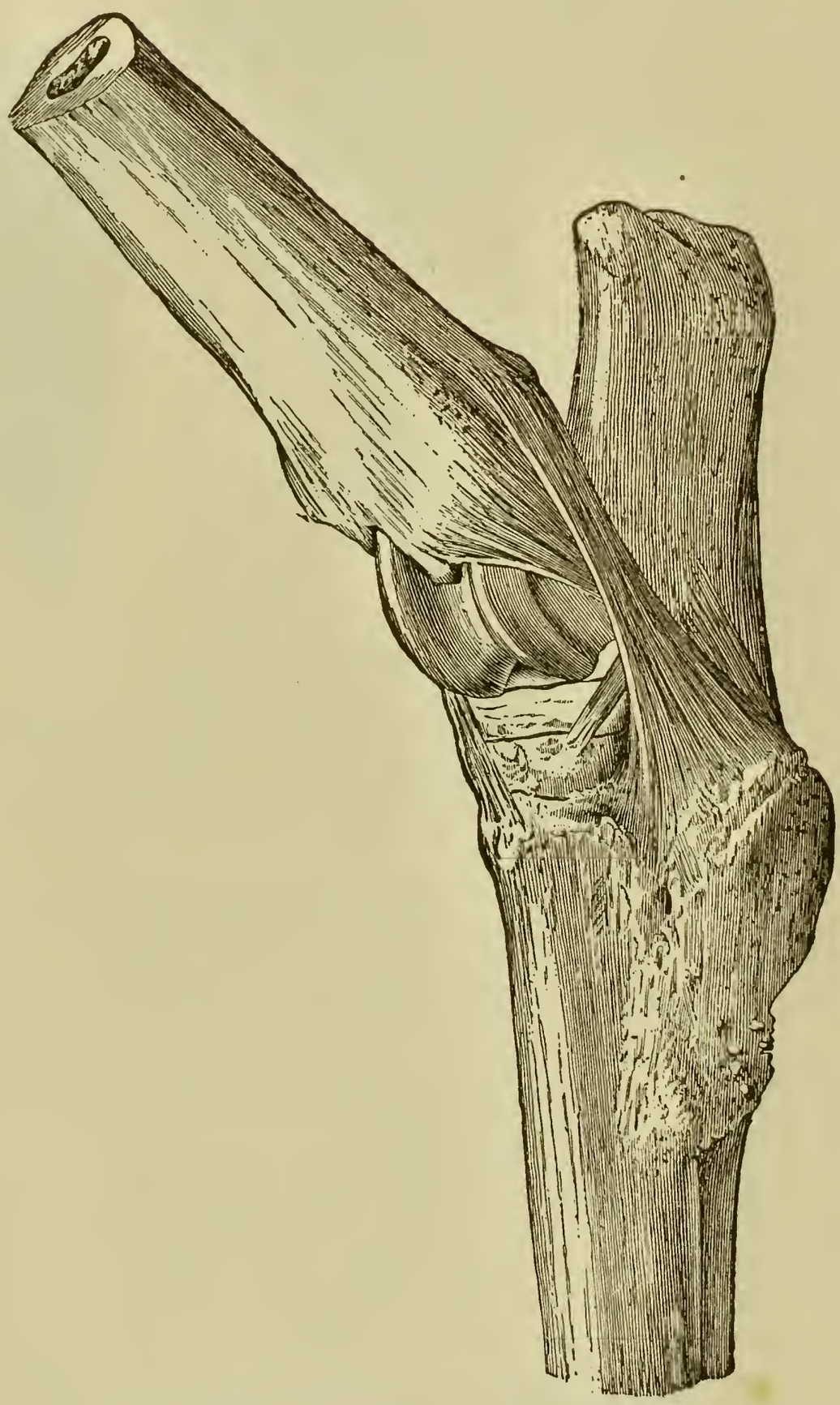


FIG. 88.—Jarde upon the dissected hock.

It commences at the head of the external metatarsal bone (Fig. 90),—that is to say, at the inferior insertion of the powerful calcaneo-metatarsal ligament, *b*, so much more exposed to traction on its component fibres as the efforts which

produce it are exerted at the extremity of a calcaneus longer and more oblique upon the tibia. Hence it has always been considered as coexistent with *angular*

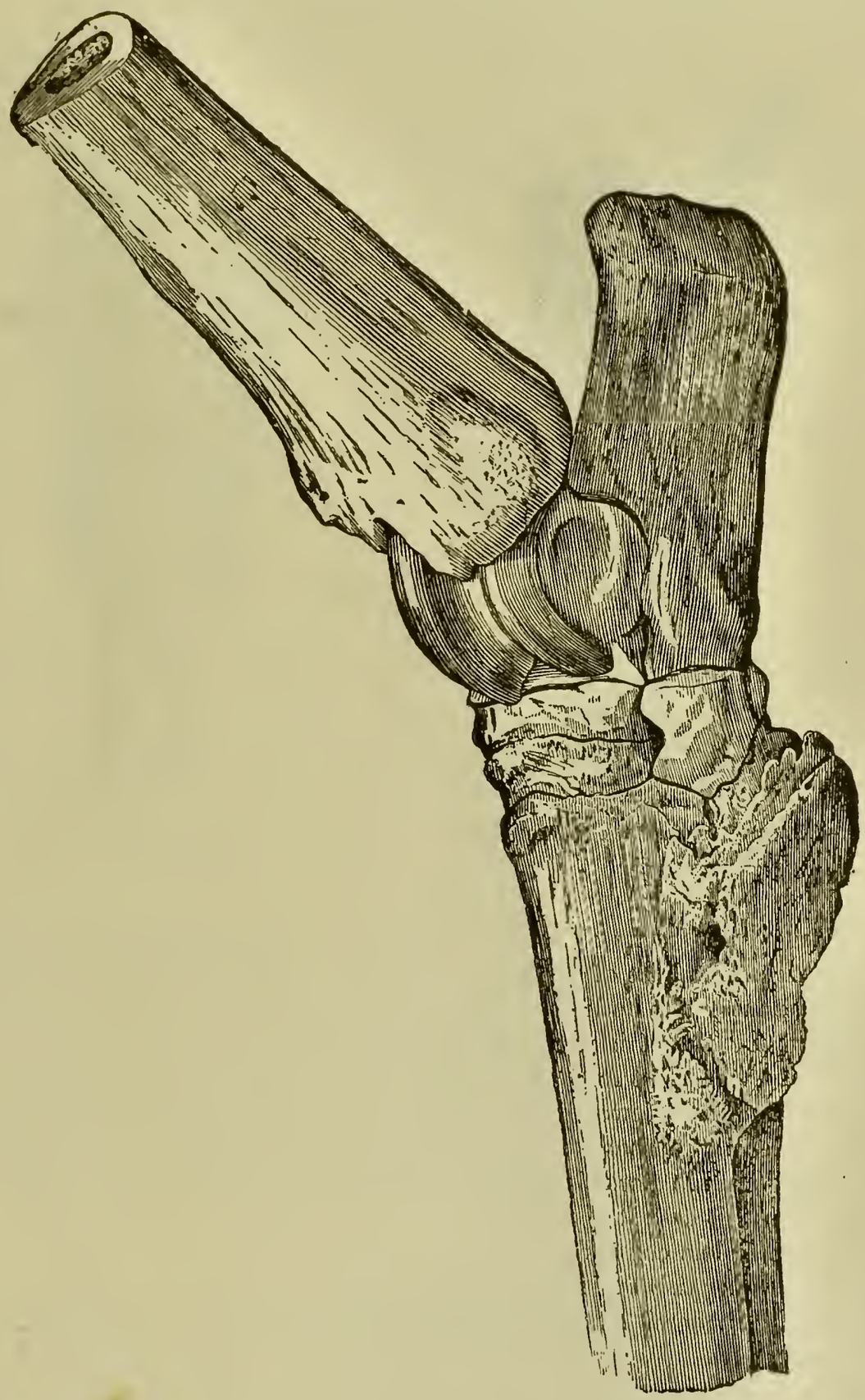


FIG. 89.—Jarde upon the macerated hock.

hocks. The tumor, once formed, has no tendency to ascend; it remains localized at the place which we have just indicated, or, perhaps, is complicated by a splint upon the tract of the interosseous ligament, which unites the principal metatarsal to the corresponding rudimentary bone. With regard to its seat, it may

be defined as a periostitis of the calcaneo-metatarsal ligament, *b* (Fig. 90), and the external tibio-tarsal, *a* (Fig. 91), and spavin as that of the astragalo-metatarsal, *b* (Fig. 91), and the internal tibio-tarsal, *a* (Fig. 90), ligaments.

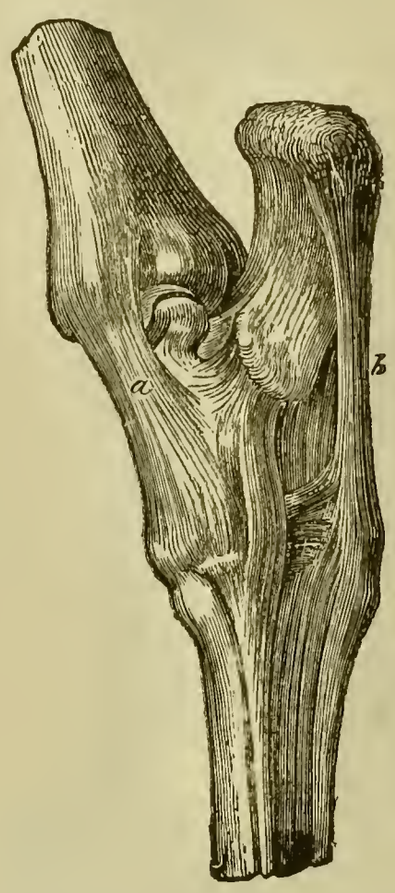


FIG. 90.—Dissected hock viewed inwardly and posteriorly.

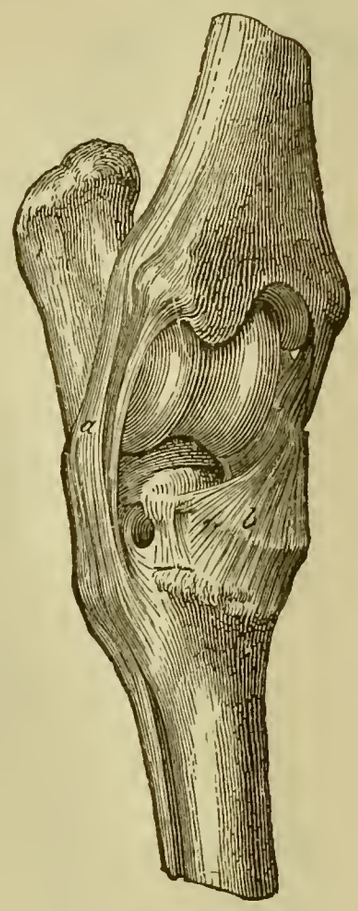


FIG. 91.—Dissected hock viewed inwardly and in front.

Whatever may be its situation, it occasions a very characteristic deformity of the profile of the base of the hock. The line which passes from the summit of the calcaneus to the fetlock, instead of being perfectly straight, describes, on the contrary, a curve with the convexity posterior, at the level of the head of the splint bone and most frequently a little below. The enlargement is also perceived upon the hock viewed from behind or obliquely. When the jarde assumes the form of a splint, it sometimes elevates the suspensory ligament of the fetlock by developing in the posterior gutter, which serves as a cavity of reception for the latter. In this case it is the line of the tendon which loses its rectitude and becomes more or less convex behind.

Before leaving this subject, we should warn our readers against a tendency which is quite general among horsemen, particularly in the army: it is the *mania of jardes*, if we may use such an expression. Many jardes exist often only in the imagination of those who speak of it, and who, to a certain degree, cannot inspect a horse without seeing this lesion. The head of the external metatarsal bone, in our opinion, has not always the same configuration; it is sometimes very angular, and may, in this case, alter externally the posterior profile of the tarsus,—above all, if the hock is cow-hocked,—without justifying thereby a conclusion of the existence of a blemish, because the structures still are and will remain perfectly normal.

A jarde is far from offering the same gravity as spavin. This is simply due to the fact that it never terminates in anchylosis of the inferior tarsal articulations; the latter remain absolutely intact.

The lameness which it determines, when the work of ossification has been completed, depends upon the want of freedom experienced by the small metatarsal arthrodia or the compression of the suspensory ligament of the fetlock and the flexor tendons.

Osteophytes.—The hock does not always present so clear a delimitation of its osseous blemishes; in old horses it is quite frequently the seat of disseminated bony deposits whose point of origin may be in the thickness of the anterior capsular ligaments, that of the lateral ligaments, or again in that of the articular and tendinous synovial membranes. This condition, as we have seen, is the ultimate complication of synovial dilatations, and, consequently, is nothing remarkable. The normal profiles of the hock, in such instances, are completely changed. At the level of these osseous tumors the region presents more or less voluminous, hard, and irregular reliefs, which have a great tendency to join and eventually encircle the tarsal apparatus. These are always conclusive evidence of ruin and of usage driven to its utmost limits.

E.—The Chestnut.

The **chestnut**, *o* (Fig. 77, *B* and *D*), in the posterior member, is situated on the inferior part of the internal surface of the hock. It responds anatomically to the small cuneiform, and is sometimes wanting. Huzard the elder has mentioned its absence, and we have also verified it in several instances. In such a case the description of the horse should mention the fact. As in the anterior member, its area and volume vary in a great measure according to the race; it has, besides, nothing of special interest.

(The chestnut, anatomically, is the rudiment of the hoof of the fifth digit or thumb, which it represents. Its absence is most frequently noticed in meridional horses, probably the descendants of the African horse, which, of all the equine races, is the most closely related to the ass. It is smaller in well-bred horses.—*Harger.*)

F.—The Canon and the Tendons.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **canon** is the region of the members which extends vertically from the *knee* or the *hock* to the *fetlock.*

Its anatomical base consists of the three metatarsal or metacarpal bones, the tendons of the different motor muscles of the phalanges, and a very strong ligament, known, on account of its functions, under the name of the *suspensory ligament of the fetlock.*

Of these three bones, one, the principal metatarsal or metacarpal, is much more developed than the other two, which are altogether *rudimentary*. The latter (Fig. 92) are united to the sides of the principal bone by means of a very resisting interosseous ligament which ossifies with age, save at its two extremities.

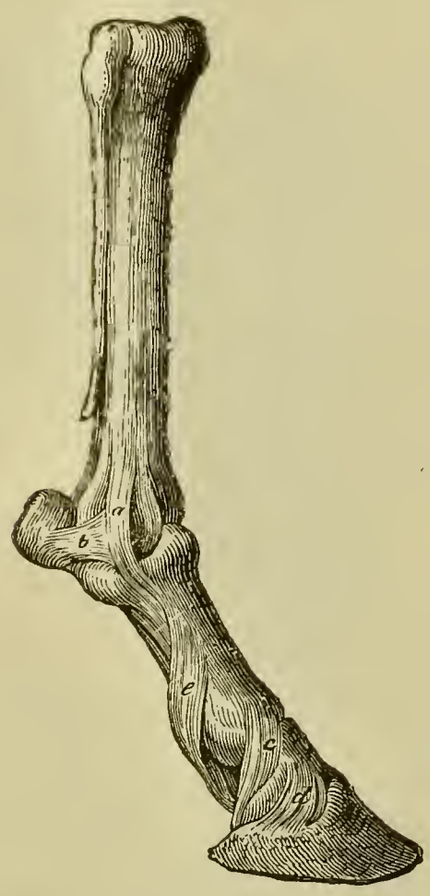


FIG. 92.

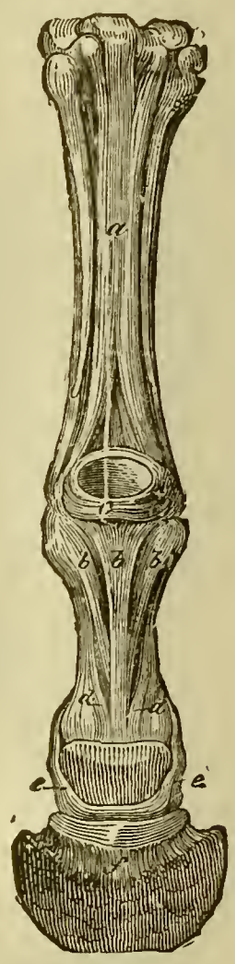


FIG. 93.

The superior part, or the *head* of these small styloid bones, is articulated by two diarthrodial facets with the extremity of the median bone of the canon; their inferior extremity, slightly dilated and *button-shaped*, almost free and tangible to the finger, is united by a fibrous ligament to the region which we will study as the *ergot*.

Thus constituted, the canon is articulated above, through the intervention of its component parts, with the lower row of carpal or tarsal bones, from which it receives and transmits impressions; below, the middle bone forms with the first phalanx a very movable joint, which is completed, behind, by the two sesamoid bones.

No muscles worthy of attention exist in this region. The tendons of the extensor muscles of the phalanges are found on its anterior surface, and those of the flexors, perforans, and perforatus on the posterior. We must mention, besides, the **carpal** and the **tarsal check tendons**, fibrous, unelastic laminæ, which emanate from the posterior ligament of the carpus and the tarsus, and terminate, after a more or less extensive course, in the deep flexor tendon of the digit.

Two large synovial membranes exist, one above, the other below, upon about a third of the length of the canon. The superior we have already studied: it belongs to the *carpal* or the *tarsal sheath*. The inferior will be studied with the

fetlock: it is that of the *metacarpo-* or *metatarso-phalangeal sheath*, also called the *great sesamoid sheath.* They both facilitate the gliding of the flexor tendons of the phalanges, the first against the posterior face of the hock or the knee, and the second over the angle of the fetlock; both permit, besides, the movements of the two cords upon each other.

Finally, against the posterior face of the principal bone of the canon, in a sort of gutter formed by the splint bones, is lodged the vast ligamentous brace of the fetlock, *a* (Fig. 93), which is bifid inferiorly and terminates upon the sesamoid bones.

It is not without interest to note, in passing, a somewhat infrequent fact of which science, nevertheless, has a certain number of examples; we refer to the existence of *supernumerary digits*[1] on the internal face of the canon of one, two, or all four of the members of the horse at one time. This anomaly consists in the abnormal and almost complete development of the internal digit, which, in ordinary conditions, is simply represented by the corresponding but aborted metatarsal or metacarpal bone.

The external digit occurs much more rarely. Professor R. S. Huidekoper has observed a very remarkable case in a Texas horse. The animal had, in all, ten hoofs, three on each anterior member and two on each posterior. The anterior supernumerary digits were formed each of three phalanges; their hoofs descended almost to the ground. The supernumerary digits on the posterior members existed only on the internal side; their phalanges were rudimentary and their horny covering only reached to the middle of the pastern.[2]

Rôle and Action of the Canon.—The canon is a locomotory lever which plays a most important *rôle* in progression, station, and impulsion. Let us examine it rapidly from these diverse relations.

It is primarily the seat of two principal movements, *flexion* and *extension.*

The first, much more pronounced in the anterior member, elevates the foot and places the canon in a favorable position to accomplish the second, which it is desirable should be as extensive as possible. The length of the forearm and that of the tibia are, as we know, in relation with the amplitude of these displacements.

The movement of the canon in the two members is of an inverse order, on account of the opposite positions of the articular angles. When that in the anterior member is extended, it simply passes over the ground, places itself in prolongation with the radius, arrives thus on the soil, and preserves this attitude as long as the foot remains on the ground. In the posterior member, its extension commences a little before the foot is in station, and continues during the whole period that

---

[1] Supernumerary digits constitute simply an example of the *law of reversion* to the pentadactylous or five-toed type of the foot of the ancestral forms of the horse, as the *eo-hippus*, in which four digits exist. (Harger.)

[2] R. Huidekoper, Note communiquée.

the foot is on the soil in such a manner that, at its termination, when the foot is elevated, the tibia and the metatarsus are in a straight line. It is apparent from this that the anterior canon, in this action, is especially utilized as an organ of support, whilst the posterior becomes a veritable agent of impulsion.

This region, however, only fulfils a passive *rôle* in locomotion. It is an inert lever having no influence in itself upon the movements which follow or precede it, since it is traversed in its length only by tendinous cords, organs of transmission, and not by contractile muscles. It is the same during station: its vertical direction and its inertia make it a veritable column of support for the weight of the body, whose total pressure accumulates upon it. It is therefore very appropriately disposed to fulfil this end. Besides being vertical, it also has an almost cylindrical form; its median bone has parietes of great thickness; the tissue which constitutes it is extremely compact; finally, by the concurrence of the rudimentary bones attached to its lateral faces, it augments the area of the superior articular surface and serves as an important apparatus of breaking concussion in virtue of the double articulation which is found there and the obscure movements which are produced there.

Its tendinous cords, even, and the posterior ligament, from their peculiar relations, present a special disposition to serve with efficacy as an apparatus of support. The carpal or tarsal check tendon relieves the former by displacing a large share of the weight upon the bones, while the obscurely muscular nature and the mode of intercrossing of the fibres of the suspensory ligament of the fetlock[1] make this ligament a veritable elastic brace, which disperses the effects of the weight in such a measure as to render them compatible with the resistance and integrity of the tissues.

Finally, the action of the canon in relation to the impulsion is not the same in the two members. This function, as we have seen, is more particularly imparted by the posterior members. The extensor muscles of the metatarsus are also provided with more powerful lever-arms. The calcaneus, by its length and by the prominence which it forms above and behind the centre of the tibio-tarsal articulation, places these muscles in very favorable conditions relative to the intensity of force and the rapidity of speed.

---

[1] From the point of view of comparative anatomy, the suspensory ligament of the fetlock is, in fact, only a modified muscle which has its full development in the species whose hand and foot approach, by the number of their digits, the conformation which is observed in man. Thus, it occurs in quadrumana, carnivora, rodents, and many of the insectivora.

Form.—The canon is subdivided into four faces: an anterior, a posterior, and two lateral. They offer some slight differences according as they are examined in the anterior or in the posterior biped.

Viewed from in front, the region is rectilinear in its length, rounded transversely, and widest towards its extremities.

The lateral faces are flat, and leave the parts under the skin, which we already recognize, tangible to the eye and finger,—namely, in front, the borders of the principal metacarpal or metatarsal bone; behind and above, under the hock or the knee, the eminence of the corresponding rudimentary bone; below and a little above the fetlock, the button of this bone; posteriorly and in the middle part, a groove augmenting in depth and width down to the fetlock, which separates the suspensory ligament from the principal canon bone; it is in this groove that herniæ or dilatations of the synovial membrane of the metacarpo- or metatarso-phalangeal articulations appear; more posteriorly, the suspensory ligament of the fetlock, whose prominence increases from above to below; then a second groove, less deep than the preceding, separating this ligament from the flexor tendons, and lodging the synovial dilatations of the great sesamoid sheath; finally, the cord of the flexors, known in the exterior under the name of *tendon*, strong and resisting, which falls perpendicularly from the supra-carpal bone or the calcaneus upon the fetlock.

The **tendon**, an eminence rectilinear from above to below, narrow and round from side to side, forms exclusively the posterior face.

The *skin* of the canon, as well as the layer of the subcutaneous connective tissue, is more or less thick, according to the fineness of the race. These minute but important details which we have described are not observed in all subjects. They are the characteristics of horses of fine breeding and of good qualities.

The *hairs* on the posterior face are always longer, more abundant, and coarser than the others, except in animals of the finer races, the Aryan or the English thoroughbred, for example.

Coarse, sluggish, and lymphatic horses are remarkable, on the contrary, for the abundance and the length of these hairs, which are only the origin of those of the *footlock*. Horsemen and many horse-owners have the habit of cutting, clipping, or singeing them, in the preparation of the animal for sale, in order to give to the members an appearance of fineness and of good qualities; they are spared in draught-horses to make the limbs appear more voluminous. We will again have occasion to return to this practice in discussing the *toilet*.

Beauties and Defects.—The canon, in order to be *beautiful*, must be vertical, short, wide, thick, fine, and neat of outline; its posterior part, or the *tendon*, must also be fine, unblemished, firm, and well detached. It is defective in opposite conditions.

Direction.—We have only one word to say on the subject of the direction of the canon, which should be perpendicular to the ground

in order to duly sustain the body-weight, particularly in the anterior members, in view of their function and their closer situation to the centre of gravity. The least displacement forward, backward, outward, or inward makes the horse appear deficient in the axes; its articulations in certain regions are surcharged; their constituent parts and the ligaments which unite them show signs, in the long run, of the concussions, of the violent tractions, a necessary consequence of the mode of superposition of the locomotory segments. Finally, the muscles themselves, supposing that the articulations are sound, are obliged to display more force in order to maintain the bones in a good direction, which in normal conditions claim but little of their co-operation to preserve their equilibrium. The deviations of the canon are less prejudicial to the integrity of the locomotory apparatus when they are confined only to the posterior members; the animal is not less defective for this reason; only the effects of these alterations are slower in manifesting themselves. We will return to all these facts when we discuss the direction of the *axes*.

Length.—The absolute length of the canon merits to be taken into consideration in the case of rapid motors. It has not much importance in the draught-horse.

In well-formed subjects, whatever may be the race to which they belong, the metatarsus is always longer than the metacarpus. We will say that, all things being equal, the latter are constantly longer in animals of speed, when compared in this relation to those of the draught-horse. With equality of form, the canon of the draught-horse is shorter than that of the thoroughbred; the body of the former is nearer to the ground and more voluminous than that of the latter, which, to use the comparison, appears, to a certain degree, mounted on stilts. It is easy to verify this statement by measurements which we ourselves have been careful to make before abandoning the classical opinion which claims that race-horses have their hocks as low as possible. We see, then, all proportions being of course considered, that their canons are always longer than is believed. Hence these animals possess more speed, for necessarily they embrace at each step a longer expanse of space.

The *relative* length of the canon should be studied with regard to the region which surmounts it, the leg or the forearm.

We know already that the length of the broken radio-metacarpal or tibio-metatarsal lever in rapid motors is due to the development of the superior bone, the radius or the tibia. It is necessary, therefore, that the canon be in such cases short. When it is thus, we know that

the muscles experience less fatigue and contract to better advantage. A short canon is less heavy, oscillates more freely, unfolds itself more, and does not necessitate the same elevation of the member above the ground to reach the limit of its movements. Hence it is advisable to seek, in the pendulum under examination, a great extent for the display of what we have already designated its *active* function; in its *passive* function the canon is inert, being incapable of accelerating or slackening the movement which is communicated to it. (See *Forearm* and *Leg.*)

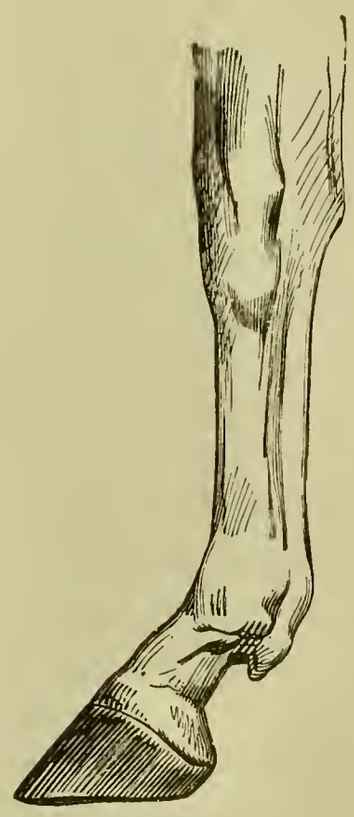


FIG. 94.

Width and Thickness.—The **width** of the canon is measured from before to behind, considering the animal in profile. It proceeds from the separation of the principal bone of this region from the flexor tendons of the phalanges, which procured also to the latter the designation *well detached* (Fig. 94). It is due, in the anterior members, to the volume of the antibrachial muscles; in the posterior, to the width of the hock, which carries the summit of the calcaneus more behind. In each of the members it results, besides, from a more or less marked prominence of the sesamoid bones behind the fetlock articulation.

FIG. 95.

Is it necessary to say now that this width is an absolute quality for all kinds of services? Evidently not, since it is itself derived from other good points which we have already described, such as the volume of the muscles, the width of the articulations, and the length of the lever-arm. If, however, in theory, the width of the canon in the anterior member coincides generally with that of the fetlock, it is possible, notwithstanding the development of the latter, that the former may be deficient from excessive narrowness at its superior part.

The flexor tendons, being then too strongly tensed in the fold of the knee by the tarsal sheath, descend obliquely upon the sesamoids by gradually separating from the metatarsus, a vice of conformation which renders the tendons *weak*, less effective

(Fig. 95). The horse affected with this fault appears slender in its build, which, in fact, lacks strength. Horse-dealers, in order to conceal it, leave the hairs at the upper part of the canon in arranging the *toilet*, while below they cut them off very closely, a deceitful procedure which it is easy to detect.

The tendon in the posterior members is never *weak*, thanks to the particular disposition of the tarsal sheath.

The **thickness** of the canon is measured, on the contrary, from side to side, viewing the parts either in front or behind. This dimension, which indicates the transverse development of the principal bone, and, consequently, that of the regions between which it is placed, is always greater in the fore-limbs, columns of support, than in the hind, agents of impulsion. This is a fortunate adaptation of a part of the locomotory apparatus destined to fulfil such different functions.

A thick canon, therefore, constitutes an absolute beauty, which denotes great strength of the members; and because this is not the same in the well-bred as in the common horse of equal forms, because the meagreness of the canon in the former is not indicative of any weakness, it does not follow, as several authors have advanced, that such a conformation is not to be taken into account. H. Bouley has very forcibly elucidated how unwise this theory is, by saying, "*The bones of the canon should be developed proportionately to the mass which they support.*" This conception is important. The slenderness of this region not only implies its feebleness of support, but it also involves that of the adjoining bones and of the tendinous apparatus which is annexed to it. A slender canon means a narrow knee; the phalanges, the sesamoids, and the tendons lack proper development. In these conditions, the members wear away in a very short time, and so much more quickly as the body is heavier, as the animal is endowed, from his race, with greater energy. It is common to meet this defect in horses of poor conformation which are the product of injudicious selections or crosses. (H. Bouley.)

When the region lacks width and thickness, the canon is called *meagre, narrow, slender;* when to these characters is added an excessive length, the animal is said to be *mounted upon matches;* finally, this same horse *has nothing under his knee* when the tendons are not sufficiently developed, while the member is qualified *well cast* when the tendons of the flexors are strong and well separated from the bones which constitute its lever-arm.

Fineness.—The **fineness** of the canon is characterized by the thinness of the skin and the spareness of subjacent connective tissue,

which expose to external view, in all their details, the bones, the suspensory ligament, the tendons, and the blood-vessels. This state indicates a noble ancestry; it is found in horses of the distinguished races and those of their race which show their lineage.

This quality can habitually be perceived by a glance of the eye; but many also endeavor to appreciate it by passing the hand over the lateral faces of the region, a manner of procedure which has primarily the advantage of betraying the existence of blemishes. It is necessary to attract the animal's attention before practising this manipulation upon the posterior members, in order to avoid his kicking or biting.

In common subjects, even in the best, the skin is thick and the connective tissue abundant. When carried to the extreme, these characteristics cause the canon to be spoken of as *round* and the tendons as *fleshy*, defects essentially prejudicial in pleasure-horses, in which the distinctness of the *lines* and the fineness of their extremities are the indispensable conditions of their value, while in draught-horses no importance is attached to them.

Density.—The firmness of the tendons denotes the density of the tissues, the energy, the quickness of movement, the blood, the race, and the resistance of the constitution. This is ascertained by the sense of touch and not by striking the cord of the flexors with the foot, which some persons practise to judge of it as well as of the solidity of the member. It is easy to comprehend that such a method can give no positive information, since it is the surprise and not the weakness of the parts which causes the horse to flex the limbs.

Neatness of Outline.—This neatness—that is to say, the **absence of blemishes**—is the most important qualification to be realized in the examination of the canon. It is indispensable that to the inspection and to the touch the outline should be normal; that the ridges and grooves of this region, which we have described, should be quite marked without any alteration.

Diseases and Blemishes.—First among these are *skin wounds* resulting from contusions and kicks given or received by the animal. When these are the result of the repeated contact and friction of the opposite feet during locomotion they receive the name *speedy-cut*, and the animal is said to *overreach himself*, *strike himself*, *cut himself*. We will again return to them when treating of the *defects of the gaits*.

It is not rare, either, to see *blood-tumors*, *hot abscesses*, and *inflammatory enlargements* of the subcutaneous tissue or of the lymphatic vessels on the internal face of the canon. *Lymphangitis* of a malignant type, often symptomatic of a glandero-farcinous diathesis, has a favorite seat in this region. Let us also indicate the enormous *indurations* of the skin and the subjacent connective tissue,

very common upon the posterior members and completely deforming the regions between the hock and the hoof. These indurations, known under the name of *fibrous elephantiasis* (Trasbot) on account of their analogy with *elephantiasis* in man and of the aspect which they give to the members, are sometimes complicated by lesions of the bones. In spite of their hardness, their volume, and the pressure exercised on the organs which they cover, they do not occasion very great inconvenience in walking and permit the utilization of the animal at a slow pace. They are rebellious to all treatment, and the very means employed to combat them have no other result, in most instances, than the development of an activity analogous to that which is observed in similar cases in the formation of neoplasms, which may have with them, according to our colleague, Professor Trasbot, a closely-related origin.

We will also cite the hard and indolent *enlargement* of the *tibial aponeurosis* at the point where it terminates on the tendons of the extensor muscles of the phalanges. This induration, which is located at about the superior third of the anterior face of the hind canon, is susceptible of ulceration under the influence of friction, and seems more particularly confined to English thoroughbred and other horses of great speed.

Eczema (*grease, water in the legs*), a chronic affection of the skin, somewhat scarce to-day, consisting of an abundant and fetid exudation on the very lowest part of the member, may ascend to the posterior region of the canon when it is of long standing. Although not disabling the animal from work, this should nevertheless be considered serious, from the uncleanliness which it engenders and the care which it necessitates.

Contusions and *ruptures* of the tendons of the canon are frequent in the anterior members, while in the posterior they are, so to speak, at least from our own experience, almost unknown.

Designated under the name *over-stretching*, or, better, *strains of the tendon*, they result from traction or partial lacerations of the tendinous fibres during the violent efforts of locomotion at great speed. This alteration of the tendons or of the structures situated more deeply (check tendon) is followed by a more or less acute inflammation accompanied at the beginning by a severe lameness and succeeded soon by an enlargement, which renders the organs knotted and always very sensitive. The symptoms, at the end of a certain period, ameliorate, but the swelling and the lameness persist, while the contraction of the tendons and the consecutive deformity of the angle of the fetlock take place. For these reasons, *over-stretching* is a grave accident. It depreciates so much more the value of the animal as he is intended for pleasure and parade, and as it is necessary to employ the most energetic means of treatment against it, such as tenotomy or the actual cautery, whose indelible traces have all the characteristics of the most permanent blemishes.

It is vulgarly said of the hippodrome horse which meets with the accident on the race-course, that *he has snapped a tendon* or that *he is broken down.*

The most common blemish of the canon, involving the bones themselves, manifests itself by the presence of osseous tumors, known under the name of *splints.*

These exostoses, in the majority of cases, have their seat on the interosseous ligament which unites the rudimentary metacarpal or metatarsal to the principal bone of the canon. Those which exist on the anterior face of the latter are the

result of contusions and have little gravity; they are in most instances absorbed spontaneously, are much more rare, and only appear accidentally at all periods of life.

Splints occur more often upon the anterior members than upon the posterior, and on the internal side than the external. This is due to their cause of development. They proceed, in fact, from tractions exerted on the interosseous ligament under the influence of the vertical pressure which is exercised on the head of the splint bones during rapid locomotion. As long as these small bones are not soldered to the principal bone in consequence of the normal ossification of their ligament of union, they tend to glide up and down in a measure proportional to the weight which they sustain. Whence results rupture of the ligamentous fibres, which is propagated to the periosteum, irritates the latter, and causes a periostitis with the appearance of one or more tumors upon the tract of the metacarpal or metatarsal synarthrodial articulations.

It is easily understood from this that the formation of splints is a disease more frequent in young horses used too young, and without moderation, for heavy work, than in old horses, in which the process of co-ossification of the bones of the canon has already been completed. It can also, without difficulty, be perceived that they should be more common on the anterior limbs, nearer to the centre of gravity, which receive, more especially, the effect of the quantity of movement at great speed. Finally, it is equally easy to explain their habitual presence upon the internal side if we only recall: first, that the weight of the body presses more upon the internal side of the articulation; second, that the pressure sustained by the bones is proportional to the area of compressed surfaces. Now, in this connection, it is to be remarked that, all proportions being considered, the articular surfaces of the internal metacarpal or metatarsal bones are larger than their homologues of the external side; whence it follows that these bones are more disposed to glide against the median piece which supports them than the external, and, consequently, to lacerate their interosseous ligament.

Splints, the volume of which varies from that of a small hazel-nut to that of a hen's egg, are characterized externally by the relief which they form underneath the skin, and by a sensation of hardness which is conveyed to the hand on palpation. They are readily perceived if the canon be viewed from in front.[1]

Their disposition is very variable: sometimes only one exists (*simple splint*); sometimes there are two, situated almost on the same level on each side of the region (*pegged splints*); at other times there are several in succession from above downward, upon the same face, and of an almost uniform volume (*chain splints*); finally, there are some which, in relation to size, form a decreasing series from above downward, on the one side or the other (*spindle-shaped splints*).

Whatever may be their form, these tumors are more grave as they are situated towards the carpal or the tarsal articulations, or are developed in the posterior gutter destined to lodge the suspensory ligament of the fetlock. In this case they cause an evident constraint and induce too often a persistent lameness. Most ordinarily a splint lames a horse, only at the first, when the inflammatory process of the periosteum is still in full activity. The lameness disappears as soon as the tumor is quite developed.

---

[1] The buttons of the rudimentary metatarsal or metacarpal bones should not be mistaken for splints.

Fractures of the canon, though rather common, are, so far as our study is concerned, absolutely deprived of interest. We should, nevertheless, mention some: they are those of the rudimentary metacarpal or metatarsal bones. Resulting from traumatisms, they give rise to a complication, similar to the formation of a splint, at the point of union of the two osseous segments.

As to the *synovial dilatations* of the canon, they properly belong to either of the regions between which the canon is situated. The superior have already been pointed out with the *knee;* they are due to an abnormal distention of the carpal sheath. The inferior, known under the name of *windgalls*, consist of a hydropsy of the synovial membrane of the metacarpo-phalangeal articulation, or of the great sesamoid sheath, and will be studied with the *fetlock.*

Finally, there are also found, along the length of the canon, *traces of actual cautery* of varying area and configuration, which indicate, according to their situation, that the animal has been treated for disease of the osseous apparatus, the tendons, or the synovial membranes. In spite of these markings, the alterations of which they are the evidence may not have disappeared, and it is wise, consequently, to submit the member which presents them to a minute examination. In any case, the horse has none the less lost at least a part of his value, for he is *blemished*, and so much more gravely as the treatment to which he has been subjected has been less efficacious.

G.—The Fetlock.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **fetlock** is situated between the *canon* and the *pastern.* It supports, at its posterior part, a horny production, the *ergot*, and a tuft of hair to which has been given the name of *footlock.*

It has for its anatomical base the metacarpo- or the metatarso-phalangeal articulation, which results from the apposition of the inferior extremity of the principal bone of the canon and the superior extremity of the first phalanx, complemented behind by the great sesamoid bones (Fig. 96).

These bones are united by numerous *ligaments:* an anterior or capsular; two lateral funicular, *a;* a posterior, the *suspensory of the fetlock*, which has already been mentioned, and whose two branches terminate upon the sesamoid bones, *a* (Fig. 97); finally, the group of inferior, *b* (Fig. 97), and lateral, *b* (Fig. 96), sesamoid ligaments, short and strong, which fix these bones to the first phalanx and the canon. The two sesamoid bones are, moreover, intimately united to each other by means of a fibro-cartilaginous mass which transforms their posterior face into a pulley, *c* (Fig. 97), upon which the flexor tendons of the phalanges glide.

This ligamentous apparatus, of great strength, is, in addition, reinforced by the extensor tendons of the phalanges in front, and by the flexor tendons behind, which also fulfil the *rôle* of suspensors like the superior sesamoid ligament, whose function they supplement.

Three distinct *synovial membranes* exist in the region of the fetlock: one articular and two tendinous.

The first, firmly maintained in front and on the sides, can become dilated

behind and above, between the canon bone and the suspensory ligament of the fetlock; behind and below, upon the sides of the first phalanx.

The largest of the tendinous synovials, posterior to the articulation, subserves the gliding of the tendons against the sesamoid pulley; it is known by the name

Fig. 96.

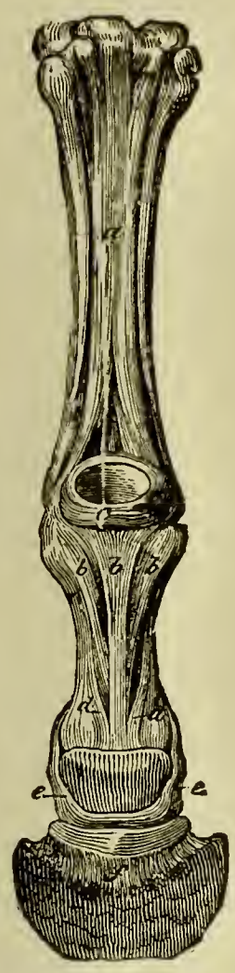


Fig. 97.

of *great sesamoid sheath.* Extending from the inferior third of the canon to the superior part of the second phalanx, and unequally sustained by the surrounding tissue, it sometimes forms a dilatation on each side, above the fetlock, between the suspensory ligament and the flexor tendons. It presents, also, along the length of the pastern, two weak points, of which we will only make mention, and whose enlargement is always much less marked than that of the preceding.

The second and the smallest of the tendinous synovials is found in front, underneath the tendons of the extensors of the phalanges, and permits their gliding upon the anterior face of the capsular ligament. It is extremely rare that it communicates with the articular synovial membrane. It is susceptible of becoming distended over its whole periphery, unsustained by the tendons, and even of rupturing its parietes into the surrounding connective tissue under the influence of internal pressure.

Mechanism of the Articulation of the Fetlock.—By reason of the oblique direction of the first phalanx and of its superior articular surface, which play, with regard to the weight of the body, the *rôle* of an inclined plane, the principal bone of the canon constantly

tends (Fig. 98) to press on the sesamoid bones, *A*, and tends to effect a closing of the angle *PBC*.

The ligamentous apparatus, however, and the tendons which exist behind this angle, constantly resist this tendency and, by their tenacity as well as their elasticity, transform the articular joint into a veritable elastic spring admirably adapted to the sustentation of the body, the dispersion of the reactions, and the impulsion of the mass.

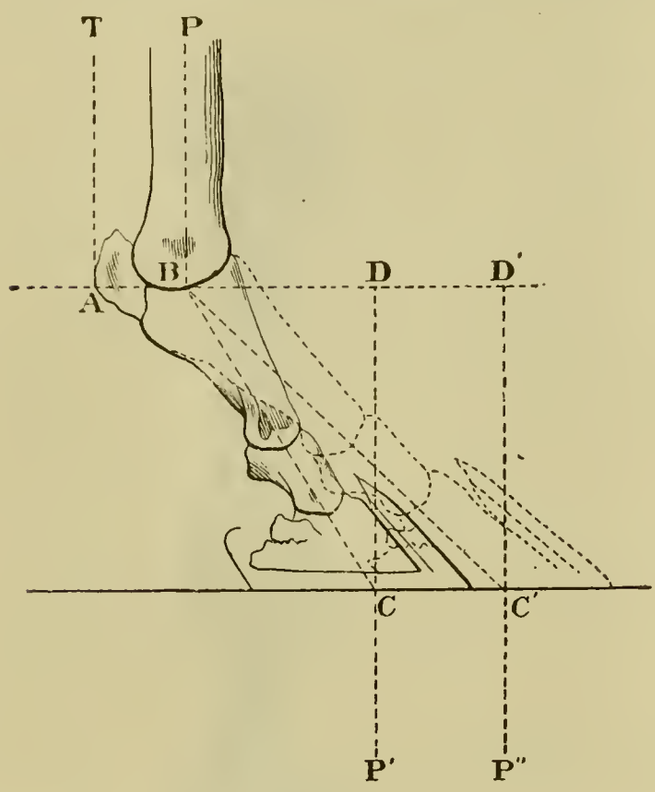


FIG. 98.

The suspensory ligament of the fetlock, being resisting and elastic, thanks to the few muscular fasciculi which enter into its composition, yields more or less, according to the intensity of traction which it undergoes, to the lowering of the great sesamoids, and through its attachments upon the bones of the canon distributes upon the latter a portion of the pressure of the weight of the body, in such a measure as is compatible with their integrity.

As to the cord *T*, of the flexor tendons, though much less elastic, it acts in the same manner upon the extremity of the lever-arm *AB*, in order to limit to some extent the movement of descent of the fetlock and prevent the elasticity of its suspensory ligament from being strained beyond its limits. But as it is continuous, superiorly, with the fleshy portion of the corresponding muscles, and as an intermission in the action of all these contractile organs is necessary, there exists, behind and below the carpal and the tarsal articulations, a strong ligamentous band emanating from the posterior capsular ligaments of the latter, which permits the flexor tendons to perform the *rôle* of passive organs of suspension, by giving them a function completely independent of their respective muscular portions. The *carpal and the tarsal check ligaments* therefore transfer to the superior part of the canon bone the remaining pressure of the body-weight which has not been completely overcome by the elasticity of the suspensory ligament of the fetlock. Hence their force of resistance is in relation with the intensity of the tractions which they must support, and it is for this reason that the

carpal check tendon always has a greater volume than its homologue in the posterior member.

The function of the fetlock is deduced from the preceding considerations. It is a veritable elastic mechanism or *spring*, which constitutes, for the weight of the body, an apparatus of sustentation and an apparatus of dispersion; it relieves the muscles charged with the support of the body, at the same time that it prevents, by its elasticity, the effects of the concussion of the latter against the ground.

External Form.—Viewed in front, the fetlock forms a spheroidal relief circumscribed laterally by two convex lines which are continuous above and below with the lateral faces of the canon and of the fetlock. Viewed in profile, it is limited, on the contrary, in front by a concave curve which continues symmetrically the profile of the anterior face of the adjoining regions, while, behind, it presents a salient angle whose superior branch is tangent to the tendons, and whose summit corresponds to a tuft of hairs, the *footlock*, containing in its centre the horny production called the *ergot*. A fine skin with short hairs covers it and, to a certain point, enables one to conjecture its anatomy in highly-bred horses. In horses of the common races, on the contrary, the external details are more or less masked in consequence of the thickness of the integument and the quantity and coarseness of the pilous production. The region is also, in such cases, the object of special care on the part of dealers, which consists in removing the hairs of the footlock in order to give to the animals an appearance of fineness and distinction which they do not in reality possess. We will again return to this in the chapter on the *toilet*.

Beauties.—The fetlock, like all the articulations, in order to be **beautiful**, should be wide, thick, well directed, fine, and free from blemishes.

Width.—The **width** is given by the extent of the antero-posterior diameter, and is appreciated, consequently, by examining the horse in profile. It depends upon two elements: the volume of the inferior extremity of the canon and that of the sesamoid bones (Fig. 98); whence it is apparent that it should be ample, for it is proportional to the firmness of contact of the members, to the extent of the movements, and, finally, to the length of the arm of the lever AB, whose development favors the action of the suspensory apparatus of the tendons and of the suspensory ligament of the fetlock. When the articulation is *narrow*, the tendon is close to the canon, the animal has little firmness of step, lacks force, and is ruined all the quicker as the members are weaker as columns of support in relation to the body.

Thickness.—The **thickness** is the transverse diameter. It indicates the large development, from side to side, of the inferior extremity of the canon and of the corresponding part of the first phalanx. It is needless to insist upon the advantages of these peculiarities; it stands to reason that they denote large articular surfaces, and firmness and sureness of the step, important conditions to exact whatever may be the service.

The fetlock which is deficient by lack of width and thickness, by lack of volume, in a word, is called *small, round;* the animal is also said to have *thin, light wrists,* to be *wanting in the wrists,* to have *weak pins,* etc.

Direction.—To the two preceding qualities it is important to add a third,—that is, the good **direction** of the segments which concur to the formation of this articulation. We know already that one of them, the canon, should be vertical; as to the other, it implies a certain obliquity which we will determine when we treat of the *pastern.* Suffice it to say for the present, that this obliquity would be greatly exaggerated if it attained only 40 or 45 degrees with the horizon; in any well-conformed horse it attains at least 55 degrees.

When the branches of the spring represented by the fetlock straighten themselves one upon the other, their angle becomes more and more obtuse and even tends to become effaced. The animal is then said to be *straight in the members, in the fetlocks.* In certain cases, however, the deviation of the segments is such that their obliquity takes place in a sense inverse to that which they normally affect; the summit of the articular angle is directed forward while its sine looks backward. This is a somewhat common deformity to which the name *knuckling* has been given. We will treat of this with the *pastern* and the *axes* of the members.

At other times, an accidental, momentary deviation results from fatigue, and exists only in the fetlock of the posterior members, which are suddenly projected forward when the animal stands still and reassume their proper situation as soon as he steps out again. This singular attitude, which is manifested also in the stable, is expressed by saying that the horse is *at roost.*

Finally, when this deviation, instead of being parallel to the median plane, in front of or behind the axis of the member, is situated in an oblique plane, outward or inward, in relation to the median plane of the body, the horse is qualified *splay-footed* or *parrot-toed.* It is a vice of the axes of the members which we will study in a future chapter.

Fineness.—The **fineness** or dryness of the fetlock implies a

delicacy of the skin and of the hairs which cover it, spareness of the subcutaneous connective tissue, and the precise and clean delimitation of all its parts. It is considered as an index of quality, temperament, energy, and vigor. When it is not thus the region is called *puffy*. In this respect, horses of the finer races approach those of the common races according to the condition they are kept in. We have known a rather large number which, working in low and moist countries, or upon muddy and filthy soil, had in the long run acquired long and abundant hairs and more or less thickened extremities.

Absence of Blemishes.—The fetlock is *clean* when it is exempt from blemishes and from diseases. The *rationale* of this beauty will be apparent from what follows.

Diseases and Blemishes.—From the situation which the fetlock occupies, numerous diseases, acute and chronic, as well as accidents, may affect it, which depreciate the animal in different ways.

The skin, first, is often the seat of *excoriations*, *contusions*, and *wounds*, most frequent on the inner side, and resulting generally from injuries which the subject inflicts on himself during locomotion. It is then said that the horse *overreaches*, *interferes*, *cuts himself*, *strikes himself;* he is usually affected with a defective axis of the parts, and ordinarily has an ungraceful gait. (See *Defects of the Gaits.*)

Like the knee, the fetlock becomes more or less gravely *lacerated* on its anterior face in consequence of falls upon hard and irregular soil.

At other times it presents *cicatrices*, *callosities*, or *traces of the actual cautery* in points or in lines of a variable extent and configuration.

The integument sometimes, but more rarely, offers an abundant, fetid exudation, which transudes from warty excrescences called *fici*, and agglutinates the scattered hairs over the diseased surface. This disease, known under the names of *water in the legs*, *grapes*, *fici*, and *grease*, etc., is an index of a soft constitution and a lymphatic temperament, dependent most often upon bad hygiene. It is regarded as grave on account of its chronic state, its tendency to ascend into the region of the canon or descend towards that of the foot, of the putrid odor which it gives off, and of the tenacity which it offers against all means of treatment.

The connective tissue is frequently the seat of *œdema*, *cysts*, *hæmatoma* (*blood-tumors*), *abscesses*, *lymphangitis*, *fistulous wounds*, etc., occasioned by very diverse causes, to concern ourselves with which would be beyond our province, the acute character of all these affections being given.

It is not the same, however, with *cystic tumors*, which are met either on the internal or on the anterior face, and which proceed nearly always from repeated contusions during locomotion. The cyst on the anterior face, sometimes very voluminous, produces an abnormal convexity of the region, when it is viewed in profile. This swelling is indolent, uniformly fluctuating and somewhat tense, whatever may be the attitude of the member, which permits it to be diagnosed from a synovial dilatation. It is not serious, but constitutes a decided blemish in pleasure-horses, in consequence of the deformity which it entails.

The cyst on the internal face, always much smaller, lies upon the tract of the internal lateral ligament of the metacarpo- or metatarso-phalangeal articulation. Its symptoms are the same as those of the preceding, but the blemish which it occasions is less grave.

À propos of the canon, we have spoken of the enormous indurations of the subcutaneous connective tissue which Professor Trasbot designates under the name of *fibrous elephantiasis of the members.* In the region of the fetlock they acquire at times colossal dimensions. H. Bouley[1] has seen some that extended from the inferior half of the canon to the hoof, which they enveloped like a hood. Measuring more than a metre in circumference, they touched the ground behind, with the foot in station, and rubbed, in walking, against the opposite member, into which they had made a deep cut. Two tumors of this nature, of which Prudhomme[2] has given the description, weighed twenty-one kilos. and twenty-seven kilos. respectively. The deep base of these enlargements is ordinarily formed by extremely-developed vegetations from the periosteum.

The most common lesions of the fetlock, those which indicate at a glance the excessive function of this articulation and the premature wearing away of the member, are without doubt the tendinous or articular synovial dilatations, which have received the generic name *windgalls.*

One of these dilatations, however, that of the synovial bursa, facilitates the gliding of the extensor tendons over the superficial surface of the anterior capsular ligament of the articulation, and could with equal propriety be called *anterior windgall.* In relation to its development, it is absolutely identical with the others.

It must not be confounded with the anterior cyst of which we have spoken above. Like the latter, it determines an abnormal swelling upon this region according to the degree of the synovial hydropsy; but what will always permit it to be differentiated from the preceding is its relative situation with the tendon. In the first case, the tendon is never located upon the surface of the tumor; in the second, on the contrary, it is most usually the reverse, unless, under the effect of extreme distention, the somewhat weak parietes of the synovial membrane allow some of the contents to escape into the interspaces of the surrounding connective tissue. Before things have gone so far, however, over the middle of the anterior face of the tumor is seen a vertical gutter which renders it bilobed, and which is due to the compression exercised by the anterior extensor tendon of the phalanges. Rarely does the *anterior windgall* of the fetlock communicate with the articular synovial. Still, such a communication may be present (Rigot), and it is easy of appreciation, for other lateral dilatations will be found coexisting with it, pressure on which is integrally transmitted to the former (Bouley).

The true *windgalls* are of two varieties: *articular* and *tendinous.* It is important to be able to distinguish them.

Articular windgalls appear above the fetlock in the form of two small, round tumors, one on each side, tense when the member is in station, and softer when it is elevated. They are situated exactly in the angular space comprised between the border of the principal canon bone and the corresponding branch of the suspensory ligament of the fetlock. It is only when they have attained a large

---

[1] H. Bouley, loc. cit., p. 580.

[2] Prudhomme, Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, 1844, p. 589.

volume that there appears, against the first phalanx, in the fold of the pastern and on each side, the outline of two other tumors, always much smaller, whose fluctuations are transmitted to the preceding. We have seen that these are the points of the synovial membrane which are only feebly supported.

Tendinous windgalls, formed within the great sesamoid sheath, are more voluminous and ascend higher than the articular, behind which they are located. Their exact position is the space comprised on each side between the suspensory ligament and the tendons ; it is the point which corresponds to the superior culs-de-sac of the sheath in question. Below the fetlock there are two other smaller tumors, in the fold of the pastern and along the latter border of the flexor tendons; they communicate with the superior, but are only visible in a state of extreme dilatation of the sheath.

The parietes of windgalls in time become thickened, indurated, and ossified. The accumulation of a large quantity of synovia in their interior renders the movements less easy, and occasions painful pressure upon the surrounding tissues; and, in consequence, the articulation itself becomes deviated from its normal direction owing to the mechanical restraint which it experiences and the pain which it causes during station.

The tendinous cords, relieving themselves instinctively, so to speak, from their habitual tension, retract and tend to produce, little by little, a more or less complete effacement of the angle of the fetlock, a complication always grave by reason of the vicious axis of the members which it occasions, *knuckling*. It is then that the articular extremities, deprived of their apparatus of dispersion, manifest the violence of the concussions which they experience during locomotion by the appearance of osseous formations upon their periphery. The exostoses, whose formation is excited under the influence of these causes on the anterior and the lateral faces of the fetlock, have received the name *osselets*.

Generally speaking, the chronic diseases of the region, which we have enumerated, are compatible with the normal function of the joint. But the hard indurations of the tissues and the formation of osseous vegetations around the articular margins produce a certain restraint of the movements. In spite of the variable stiffness of the members, the animal is still utilizable. A decided lameness, save in exceptional cases, appears only after a long time, when, for example, the synovial membranes are very distended and the articular surfaces notably altered.

H.—The Footlock and the Ergot.

The **footlock** is a tuft of hairs situated behind the *fetlock*, around the *ergot*. Properly speaking, it merits but little attention when a horse is examined for soundness. It is small and formed of hairs of fine texture in the finer races, while in the common races, whose pilous system at the inferior part of the member is, in general, thick, coarse, and very extensive, especially if the subjects inhabit low and damp localities, it presents the opposite characters. It is not rare to see, in these, the hairs of the footlock touch the soil and often ascend to the posterior part of the knee.

Many horse-merchants, in *doing up the hairs*, do not fail to cut the

footlock to the form of that in the English thoroughbred, in order to give to their horses an appearance of fineness and quality which they do not really possess.

The **ergot** is a more or less voluminous horny production, which occupies the posterior part of the *fetlock* in the middle of the hairs of the *footlock*.

In relation to comparative anatomy, by reason of its situation, its connections, and the structures which form its base in some species, it is considered as the vestige of an aborted digit. It is, however, without interest from an external point of view.

Like the footlock, it acquires quite a great length in common horses. It is sometimes seen to divide under the influence of desiccation, and in the end is shed off. When it is too voluminous, it is cut when the hairs of the footlock are being arranged, a useless practice in well-bred animals, for with them it always has very feeble dimensions.

The ergot, in spite of its apparent insignificance, plays none the less a certain *rôle* of protection, in locomotion at great speed, in relation to the posterior part of the fetlock, which the violence of the reactions tends to lower to the ground. It is common to see on the race-course, after a race, horses whose ergots are covered with blood from their use, an evident proof that the fetlock must go down to the ground at each time of the contact. It is always, in this case, the diagonal biped upon which the horse gallops that is most injured, a result easy of explanation, since the feet which constitute this biped support, in succession and singly, all the weight of the body multiplied by the velocity of the locomotory movements.

I.—The Pastern.

Situation; Limits.—The **pastern** is situated between the *fetlock* and the *coronet;* it is the narrowest part of the member of the horse, and owes without doubt to this characteristic the name *wrist*, by which it is also designated in ordinary language.

Anatomical Base.—Its osseous base is formed by the first phalanx, which gives to it, consequently, its oblique direction from above downward and behind forward. We have made mention above (see *Fetlock*) of all the mechanical advantages which depend upon the inclination of the superior articular surfaces of this bone; others will be noticed when we discuss the obliquity of its great axis. We will also revert to them in describing the function of the pastern as an inclined plane receiving the weight of the body and transmitting it to

the hoof, besides disseminating it in part upon the environing retentive apparatus.

The first phalanx is united behind to the sesamoid bones; above, to the principal bone of the canon through the medium of ligaments which we have already enumerated. (See *Fetlock.*) Inferiorly, it is firmly articulated with the second phalanx by the lateral ligaments, *e*, *c* (Fig. 96), which are common also to the articulation of the foot.

These means of union are completed, anteriorly, by the tendon of the anterior extensor of the phalanges; posteriorly, by the cord of the flexors, separated from the inferior sesamoid ligaments, *b*, *b*, *b* (Fig. 97), by the inferior cul-de-sac of the great sesamoid sheath.

Movements.—The pastern is the seat of two movements, *flexion* and *extension*. Each of these modifies the opening of the metacarpo- or metatarso-phalangeal angle, which, in a state of repose, can be considered as in an attitude of extreme extension. They have, however, not the same value. Almost insurmountable anatomical obstacles, as we have seen, hinder a greater extension; these reside in the presence of the suspensory ligament and the flexor tendons upon the summit of this angle; a fortunate disposition, in virtue of which the bones maintain their function in sustaining the body, without being exposed to too violent effects from the tractions of the extensive displacements of the latter. The flexion of the pastern, on the contrary, has, so to speak, no definite limits. The articular movement is capable not only of causing a disappearance of the primitive angle, but even of giving it a disposition inverse to that which it occupied at first. In this case, the obstacle to the closing of the new angle is entirely mechanical; it is due to the presence of the sesamoid bones and the soft tissues, which interpose their thickness between the canon and the phalangal segment.

At the moment of the contact, when the body-weight is thrown on the member, the fetlock is pushed backward and downward, and the pastern tends to become horizontal. It then gradually becomes straightened upon the canon until towards the termination of this phase. The two segments are now almost in a straight line. The pastern then becomes strongly flexed, elevates the foot, and is finally placed in prolongation with the canon to commence again the phase of contact with the ground. These diverse attitudes have been accurately recorded by MM. Marey and Pagès by means of instantaneous photographs.[1]

Form.—The anterior face of the pastern is slightly constricted in its middle, particularly in horses in which this region is somewhat

[1] Marey et Pagès, Analyse cinématique des allures du cheval, in Comptes-Rendus des séances de l'Académie des sciences, Paris, 27 Septembre, 1866.

long; the posterior face, less extensive, and known under the name *fold of the pastern*, is the centre of the movement of flexion of the hoof upon the phalanges; finally, the two lateral faces, almost subcutaneous, are crossed from above downward, and from before backward, by a ligament of constraint which the suspensory of the fetlock sends to the tendon of the anterior extensor of the digit. The skin which covers this region is more or less thick according to the race; the hairs also have a variable abundance and texture.

Beauties.—The pastern should be wide, thick, of medium length, well directed, fine, and free from blemishes.

Width and Thickness.—The **width** is measured in an antero-posterior sense, viewing the animal in profile; the **thickness**, on the contrary, is appreciated from side to side, examining the subject in front.

Great importance is attached to the development of both of these dimensions. The width gives the measure of the volume of the first phalanx and of the tendons which pass over its two faces. The thickness indicates the transverse development of the articular surfaces, which, we know, is correlative to that of the fetlock and that of the coronet. Now the principal condition to be realized in the solidity of the members of the horse is the volume of the bones and the ligaments which unite them, in order to maintain their locomotory angles; we judge of it, therefore, in relation to the body, as a whole, keeping in view the thickness of the segment and the abundance of the hairy productions which cover them.

Length.—To assign an absolute length to the pastern would oblige us to enter into too many minute details, as the excess or the deficiency of this element can be, and quite frequently is, compensated by a more or less oblique direction of the phalanges under the canon. The various differences in this respect can be quickly recognized by the practised eye. We will therefore refer to them only to show the advantages and the disadvantages dependent upon these variations, with regard to the particular service which a horse is destined to perform.

A horse whose pasterns are too long is called *long-jointed;* he is *short-jointed* in an opposite sense. Each of these conformations is regarded as an absolute defect, if it be not compensated, in part at least, by a proper direction, as we shall see farther on.

Until now, and for convenience of demonstration, the phalangal segment was considered as an almost rigid column extending from the fetlock to the ground.

This view, too absolute in its character, has been recently opposed by our colleague, M. Pader,[1] who has pointed out with reason the articulation of the foot—that is to say, the last inter-phalangal articulation, and not the hoof—as the centre of the movements of rotation of the phalangal lever upon the soil.

This statement being made, the phalangal segment may be represented schematically, *during station*, by the angular lever *AOB* (Fig. 99), which rests by its point, *B* (fixed point), upon the third phalanx, and receives at *O* (fetlock) the weight of the body, *OR*, transmitted through the canon, *OC*.

The muscular action, *M*, exercised upon the sesamoid bones, *A*, must therefore, at each instant of the contact, in order to maintain the equilibrium, antagonize the force, *R*, and counterbalance it, so that the fetlock, *O*, where it is applied, may remain in its normal situation.

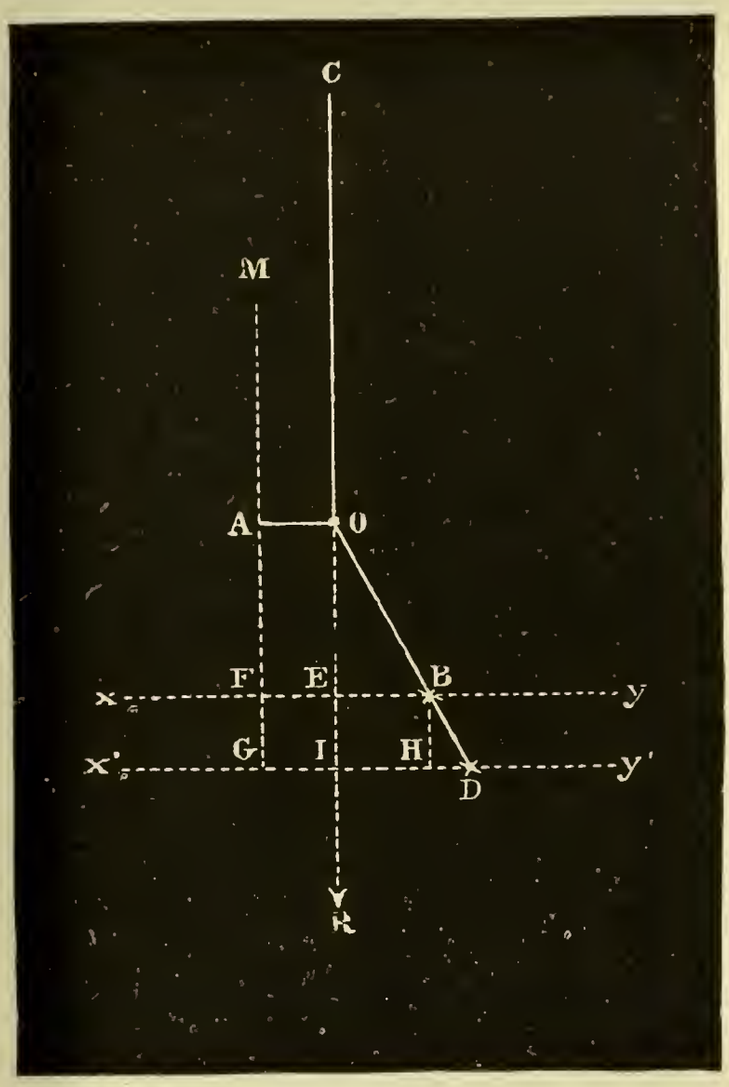


FIG. 99.

Let us now draw, from the point of support, *B*, the perpendiculars *BF* and *BE* upon the direction of the two forces, *M* and *R*; these lines, it is seen, are the respective lever-arms of each of these forces, and it will be seen that here, as in all levers of the second class, the arm, *BF*, of the power overcomes that, *BE*, of the resistance.

It is known, besides, that a lever is in equilibrium when the movements of the two forces are equal.

Whence, since equilibrium does exist, we have the following formula: $M \times BF$ (mom. of the force M) $= R \times BE$ or IH (mom. of the force R).

This being laid down, let us now lengthen the pastern, and make it *OD*, for example.

The new arms of the lever will be *DG* and *DI*. Both will be lengthened by the same quantity, *HD*, which will necessarily disturb the equilibrium, for the arm of resistance will have augmented, relatively, by a greater quantity than that

[1] Pader, De la ferrure normale, in Bulletin de la Soc. cent. de méd., vét. année, 1888, p. 497.

of the power. The absolute augmentation, however, being equal for both, the preservation of the equilibrium will demand that the power or the muscular contraction be more intense to counterbalance the resistance, or the weight of the body, whose arm has lengthened beyond the limits required by the mechanism of the parts.

Whence it follows that the elongation of the pastern increases the force *R* at the expense of the force *M*, because its effect is to lengthen the arm of the lever by the same quantity, instead of in an inverse ratio to the forces which move them.

During locomotion, when the foot has reached the ground, it is no longer the first two phalanges that constitute the phalangal segment, as M. Pader[1] believes, but it is the entire digital region, the hoof included.

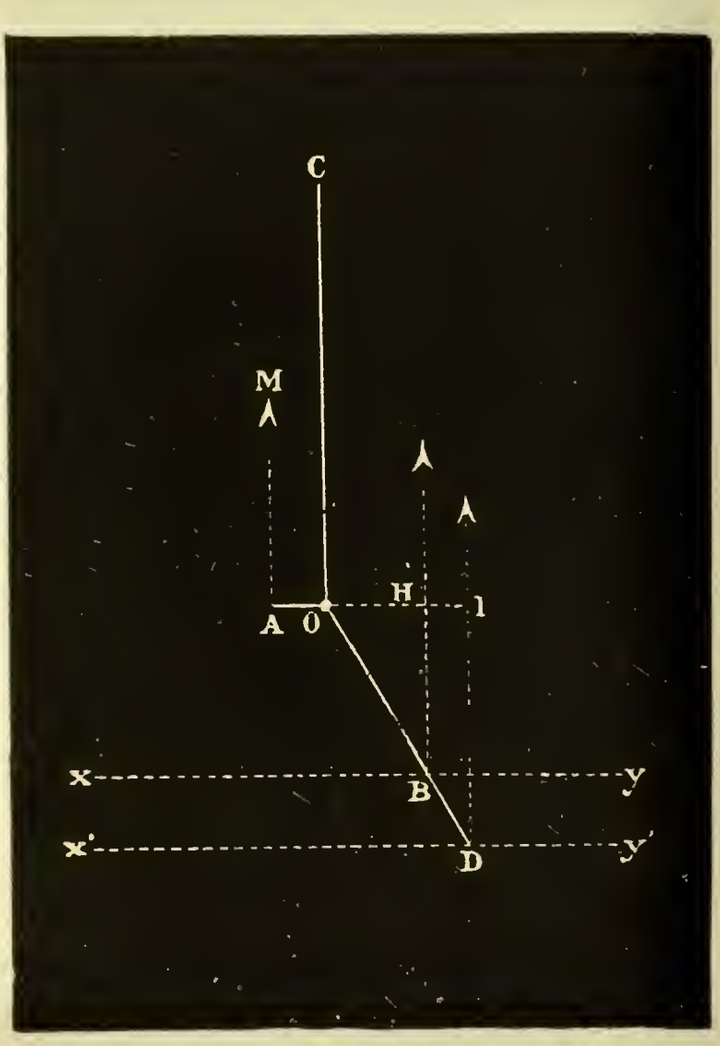


FIG. 100.

These form, it is true, a broken lever composed of two pieces (1st, the first two phalanges; 2d, the hoof), but their successive movements, always in the same direction, are so closely associated as to give to the total displacement a unity analogous to that produced by a rigid lever, *OB* (Fig. 100), extending from the soil, *B*, to the fetlock, *O*.

With a quantity of movement that varies according to the weight of the body and the velocity of the gait, the extremity, *B*, of this segment comes, at each step, in contact with the ground, *xy*, which necessarily reacts in proportion to the action which it communicates to the hoof. It is easy to convince ourselves that this action is also modified by the variations in the length of the digital region.

Let the line *BH* represent the force which, acting at the extremity, *B*, of the lever, *BOA*, tends to rotate it around the point *O*, and, consequently, to close the

[1] Pader, loc. cit.

angle *BOC*, by antagonizing the muscular action, *M*, which is exercised at the extremity, *A*, of the same lever. In this case, the fetlock becomes the fixed point or fulcrum and the lever belongs to the first class.

Let us determine, as above, the arms of the lever of the forces, *BH* and *AM*, by inserting from the fixed point a line perpendicular to their direction; these arms evidently are *OH* and *OA*.

Now let us lengthen the lever *OB* to *OD*, and we will see that the arm of the force, *BH*, becomes *OI*, while that of *AM* will always remain *OA*.

Thus, the longer the pastern the more the reaction of the soil against the weight of the body augments and fatigues the tendons and the ligaments which are inserted, at *A*, upon the sesamoid bones. The causes which tend to augment the length of the phalangal region are very significant, exception being made, of course, of the dimensions of the bones.

First among these we will place the elongation of the hoof, resulting from the normal growth of the horn in a horse whose shoe is not sufficiently often reset; secondly, the error of the farrier in not sufficiently paring the foot; finally, the tendency which farriers or proprietors have, according to their interests, of applying too thick a shoe in order not to have the trouble or the expense of resetting them at proper intervals, as often as the state of the hoof requires it.

Deficiency of the length of the pastern evidently has inverse drawbacks. The *short-jointed* horse surcharges his bones beyond measure; he lacks suppleness in consequence of the insufficiency of the fetlock as an apparatus of dispersion, and has, from this fact, *hard reactions;* besides, he is more predisposed to osseous blemishes of the bones of the members, as ring-bones.

The inconveniences of the *long joints* and the *short joints* have not, by far, the same importance in the anterior as in the posterior members, on account of their unequal distance from the centre of gravity. It is beyond a doubt that the anterior extremities, incomparably more loaded than the posterior in the sustentation of the body, show more quickly and more gravely the injurious consequences of these defects. In fact, experience has demonstrated this; blemishes of the anterior members are more common than those of the posterior, and the part which the pastern takes is more marked in the former, this region being always longer in the fore than the hind limbs, and also more oblique, doubtless on account of their proximity to the centre of gravity.

Direction.—The **direction** of the pastern is intimately allied to its length,—that is to say, a long pastern is in most cases too horizontal,

while it becomes more vertical when it is too short. In the first case, the horse is *low-jointed;* in the second, he is qualified *straight-jointed* (Fig. 101 and Fig. 102).

The close relationship which associates *long-jointedness* with *low-jointedness* is easy of comprehension, the pastern becoming less and less a column of support, and more and more an elastic spring in proportion as its length increases. We have seen above that the arm of the lever of resistance (weight of the body) elongates and imposes greater efforts upon the muscles and the ligaments. A spring also gives all the more as it is more elastic and as the pressure which it supports is greater. This is precisely what takes place in a *long-jointed* pastern, which is at the same time nearly always *low-jointed,* because it is relatively weak and flexible under the weight and the reactions of the body.

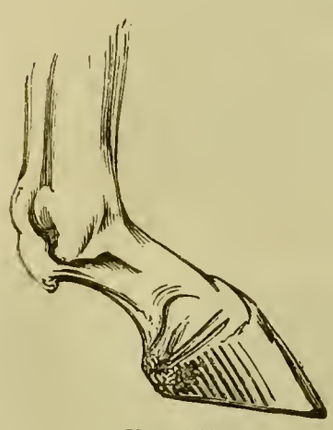


Fig. 101.

Fig. 102.

Some horses, nevertheless, are exceptions. Either from the great resistance of the fibrous ligaments or the tendons to traction, the mode of articulation of their bones, a greater energy of their muscles, an intensity of action which is more effective from the length of the arm of the lever and the perpendicular incidence of insertion, or, finally, for some other cause, these animals redeem the excess of the length of the pastern, and mitigate the evil effects by a less oblique direction. These instances, however, are rare, which is nothing but natural, as we have just seen.

Most authors who define the direction of this region estimate it at about 40 to 45 degrees, in such a manner as to form with the fetlock an angle of 130 to 135 degrees. Vallon and M. Lemoigne are the only ones, to our knowledge, who seem to have measured this inclination with some care upon the living horse or upon the skeleton. Aside from the purely theoretical idea that the pastern should have a direction intermediary between the absolutely vertical and the horizontal, it has been believed to be good logic to recommend a mean obliquity of 45 degrees, without perceiving that this argument is faulty, first of all, in its premises, since it is not based upon facts.

The mean obliquity, in our opinion, oscillates around 60 degrees upon the horizon, in the anterior members, and 65 degrees in the pos-

terior, which are always more vertical to the fetlocks. An inclination of 45 degrees is not observed in well-formed horses provided with good axes; it constitutes, on the contrary, a low-jointedness quite marked.

Let us now see the disadvantages which accrue from an excess or an insufficiency of obliquity; they are of the same nature as those which follow an excess or an insufficiency of length. There are several ways of explaining this:

Let us first regard the pastern as an *inclined plane of surface and of segment* in the decomposition of forces parallel to the weight.

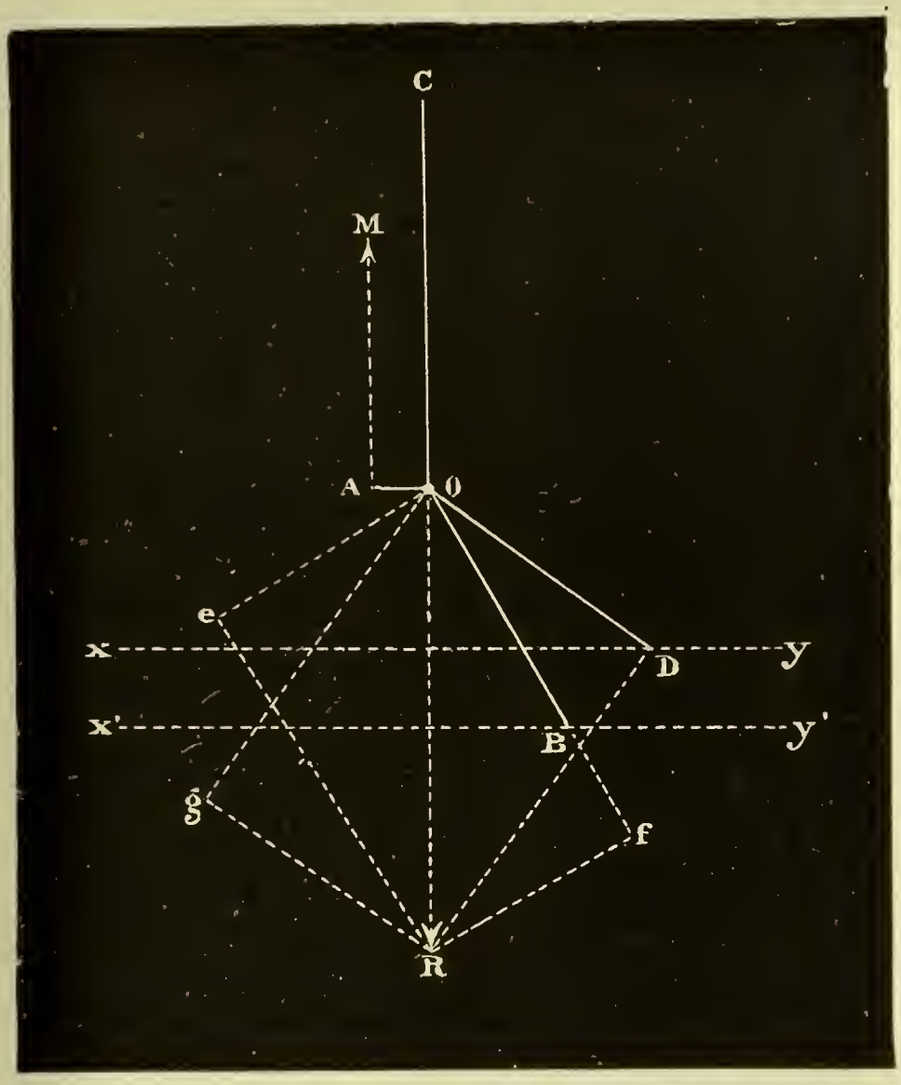


Fig. 103.

Suppose *OB* and *OD* (Fig. 103) are two pasterns of the *same length*, but unequally inclined upon the canon *OC*. From the fact of this inclination, the weight of the body, which we will represent in quantity and direction by the line *OR*, is decomposed, at the level of the fetlock *O*, into two forces, one of which is parallel to the phalangal region, and is overcome by its own resistance; the other is perpendicular to the preceding. The latter is exerted upon the sesamoid bones, and tends to lower the angle of the fetlock against the summit of which the tendons are applied.

These two components of the resultant *OR* are, by constructing the parallelogram of forces: for *OB*, *Oe* and *Of*; for *OD*, *Og* and *OD*. They indicate, for each inclination, the *rôle* which is intrusted to the bones and the muscles. The sole inspection of the figure shows that with the pastern *OB* (*straight-jointed*), the component *Of* exceeds *Oe*, and therefore likewise *OD*, which corresponds to it in the other case.

Therefore the straight joint surcharges the bones and relieves the muscles *AM*, which antagonize the force *Oe*, while the long joint favors the bones at the expense of the tendons which it exhausts.

The pastern plays a no less important part as a *lever*, whatever way we examine it.

Being still given the two pasterns *OB* and *OD* (Fig. 104), of the same length, but unequally inclined upon the canon *OC:* They form with the great

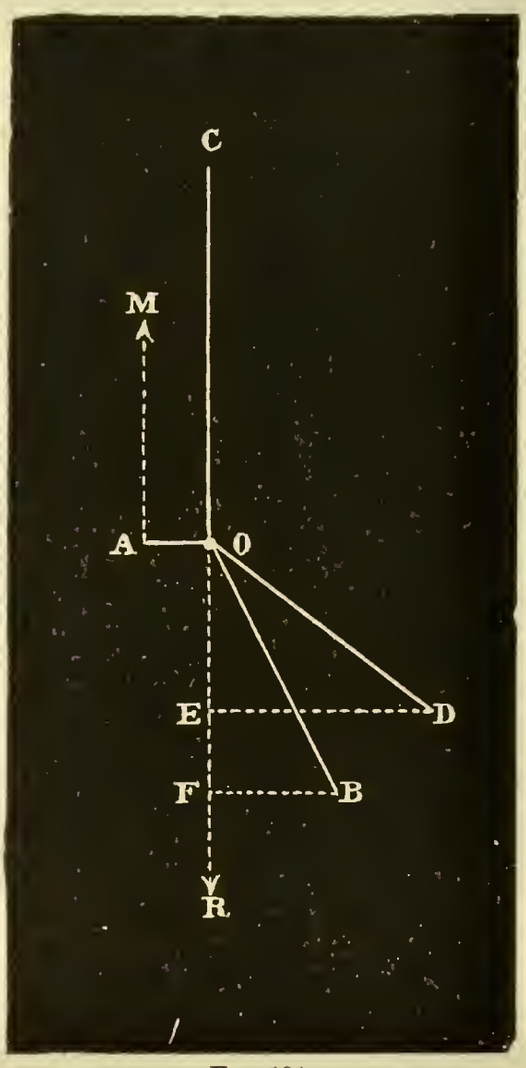


FIG. 104.

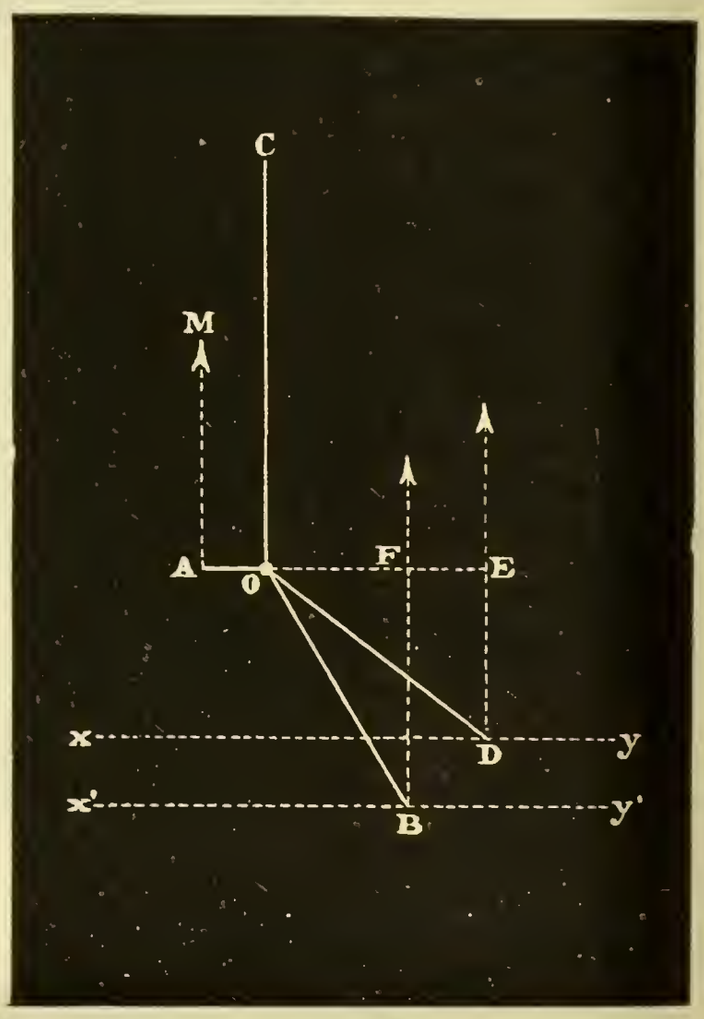


FIG. 105.

sesamoids, *A*, two angular levers, *AOB* and *AOD*, of the second class, whose point of contact or fulcrum is on the ground at *B* and *D*, whose resistance, *R*, is at *O*, and whose power, *M*, is at *A*.

It is apparent that by drawing the perpendiculars *BF* and *DE* from the points of contact upon the direction of the force *R*,—that is to say, the arms of the lever of resistance for each of these inclinations,—this force will act at the extremity of an arm longer in the case of the low-jointed pastern than in that of the straight-jointed one.

The obliquity of the phalangal lever, therefore, obliges the muscles *AM*, whose lever-arm remains invariable, to make more energetic

contractions, in order to maintain the equilibrium of the fetlock which receives the weight of the body, whose lever-arm has augmented.

Finally, the results are identical when the animal machine, moving at great speed, *strikes the ground* at each step of the gait.

When the levers *AOB* and *AOD* (Fig. 105) are of the second class, the power is always applied at *A*, the fulcrum is at *O*, while the resistance becomes the reactions, *DE*, *BF*, of the soil against the weight of the body, which are perceived at the points *B* and *D*. By drawing the perpendiculars *OF* and *OE* from the fulcrum, or point of relation, upon the direction of the vertical forces *BF* and *DE*, it is found, as in the preceding figure, that the greater the inclination of the pastern the more the lever-arms *OE* and *OF* augment at the expense of the arm, *OA*, of the muscles, *AM*.

This implies that the obliquity of the phalangal region renders the reactions of the soil against the quantity of movement with which the body is animated at great speed more laborious and fatiguing for the tendons.

It results from the preceding that the inconveniences of low-jointedness are of the same value as those of long-jointedness, and hence it follows that they will be superadded to each other in horses suffering simultaneously from these two defects. The same may be said of the straight and the short-jointed pastern.

These conformations, nevertheless, do not offer the same gravity in all services. The long and oblique pastern renders the horse more supple and more pleasant to ride; it enables him to disperse more easily the violent reaction of locomotion at great speed, and it would be very desirable in the saddle-horse, the driving-horse, and the race-horse, were it not a source of danger to the integrity of the tendons. The short and straight pastern is strong; it has no very prejudicial influences against heavy-draught services, but it renders the reactions hard and jeopardizes thereby the integrity of the osseous apparatus; hence it unfits a horse for the riding-school or for fast riding.

To recapitulate, numerous disadvantages and sometimes advantages may accrue from a pastern erring in its length and in its direction. If both sides be compared, it will be seen that it is injudicious to extol too much any one of these conformations in preference to that which we have indicated as the beautiful: the *long*, *low*, *straight*, and *short joints* will always constitute defects.

Neatness of Outline and Freedom from Blemish.—The pastern is called **neat** when its skin is thin, the subcutaneous connective tissue rather scarce, the hairs delicate and short; the bones and the tendons are then apparent in their special form and direction.

Here, also, *neatness* is a characteristic of quality and distinction, which the thoroughbred horse presents in the highest degree. Common horses, like the draught-horse, have this region more or less thick, and the hairs of the footlock almost cover its posterior face. It is the custom to cut these hairs in the lighter variety of horses which are somewhat lymphatic and lack in breeding, so as to make the members appear more slender and render the form and outline of the extremities more apparent. This procedure is not practised in heavy horses, in which these hairs fulfil the *rôle* of protecting organs against mud and dust.

The **neatness of outline** of the pastern implies, as in the other regions, the absence of diseases and blemishes.

Diseases and Blemishes.—Many diseases are observed upon the pastern or extend there from other regions: such are contusions, excoriations, superficial wounds of the skin, cuts, fissures, collosities, œdema, abscess, grease, lymphangitis, fibrous elephantiasis, etc. We will only mention them in passing.

However, there are some diseases and blemishes whose seat is entirely confined to the pastern.

Let us cite first the effects of *halter-cast*, a transverse or oblique wound which is occasioned in the fold of the pastern by the friction of too long a strap fastening the horse to the manger. This accident is produced when the animal, in endeavoring to rub the mane with one of the posterior bipeds, or the pastern of one of these with the teeth, carries the posterior member forward, which then becomes entangled in the halter-strap. The latter, strongly tensed by the inverse actions of the neck, which is straightened, and of the foot, which is carried backward, moves to and fro over the skin, whence result more or less profound wounds.[1] Sometimes the animal loses his equilibrium, falls down, and twists the neck, which determines a permanent deviation of the latter.[2] Such a mishap can also be produced under other circumstances, when, for example, the horse is tied to a post, or to a cord with a fetter fixed to one of the anterior pasterns; when he is cast for the purpose of undergoing a surgical operation; when he is obliged to eat from the ground, and being in harness, accidentally entangles one of the members in the reins, etc. The symptoms and the gravity of this accident vary according to the qualities of the rubbing body, its hardness, the intensity of the friction, and the nature of the lesions. We will not expatiate on these. Let us merely say that a cicatrix follows these lesions, which, in most instances, is permanent, and upon which the hairs are not replaced. At times, the cicatricial tissue is so abundant that the region remains permanently enlarged and deformed; the movement of flexion of the foot is rendered less easy and the skin is much more sensitive to causes capable of irritating and excoriating it. Finally, there are cases in which cicatrization never follows, and the wound con-

---

[1] H. Bouley, Nouveau dictionnaire de médecine, de chirurgie et d'hygiène vétérinaires, t. v. p. 662.

[2] This accident, caused by the struggles of the animal, often gives rise to *wryneck* or partial luxation of the cervical vertebræ.

tinues to discharge. The latter is then converted into an incurable fissure, often with an eczematous condition of the surrounding parts.

Fissures on the pastern are more grave than in any other region by reason of the movements and the difficulty of maintaining the wound which they occasion in a proper state of cleanliness.

The *soft tumors* which are observed here are synovial dilatations belonging to the great sesamoid sheath, or to the articulation of the fetlock. They appear on each side of the flexor tendons, but usually do not acquire a large volume. However it may be, they accompany *windgalls*, and only show themselves when the latter are largely developed.

Linear cicatrices are met on the lateral planes of the pastern, indicating that the animal has been subjected to *neurotomy* for a chronic disease of the organs contained in the hoof, or for osseous tumors of the coronary region. It is therefore necessary to ascertain if the malady against which the treatment has been employed has disappeared.

Exostoses of the first phalanx receive the name of *osselets*. Some incorrectly call them *ring-bones*, this appellation being reserved for the osseous tumors of the coronet or of the complementary fibro-cartilages of the third phalanx. The osselets may or may not cause lameness, according to the restraint which is experienced by the tendons or the articulation; they generally result from hard usage, and occur more frequently upon the anterior members, upon short and straight pasterns oftener than upon any others. Sometimes they result from blows, and are even the consequence of fractures of the first phalanx, accompanied by the formation of a callus.

Finally, let us mention *traces of actual cautery*, in points or in lines, used as a means of treatment against osseous tumors, indurations of the skin, or all other chronic affections of this region. These blemishes are, however, in most instances, only an extension of those which are dependent upon the cauterization of the fetlock or the coronet. When they are present, it is imperative to examine with care the adjoining parts of the member in order to assign to these blemishes their just value in the depreciation they cause to the animal.

J.—The Coronet.

Situation; Limits; Anatomical Base.—The **coronet**, a region rather difficult to delimitate, is situated between the pastern and the hoof.

Its anatomical base is that part of the second phalanx not contained in the horny case, covered anteriorly by the tendon of the anterior extensor muscle of the phalanges, posteriorly by that of the deep flexor, and laterally by the superior portion of the complementary fibro-cartilage of the third phalanx as well as by the glomes of the plantar cushion.

Rounded from side to side on its anterior face, wider below than above in consequence of the presence of the coronary band, and depressed on its posterior face at the level of the concavity which separates the two bulbs of the aforesaid cushion, the coronet also presents on each side the tuberosities which give attachment to the lateral ligaments of the first inter-phalangal articulation. It is

covered by a thick skin provided with hairs more or less abundant and coarse, according to the fineness of the animal.

Before presenting a pleasure-horse for sale, they usually clip his hairs in order to give to the members a certain appearance of lightness. But neither horses of the finer races nor heavy-draught horses are, as a rule, subjected to this practice, because in the former the hairs are short and fine, and in the latter they constitute an apparatus of protection of which it is unjust to deprive the horse.

In the army it is prohibited to dress the hairs over the parts corresponding to the pastern, in order to protect them as much as possible against the injuries so frequent during the manœuvres.

Beauties.—The only points of this region are the *width*, the *fineness*, and the *freedom from blemishes*.

The first implies a correlative width of the phalanges and the firmness of the member. The second consists in the thinness of the skin and the delicacy of the hairs; it indicates the ancestry, the temperament, the energy, and the vigor of the horse. As to the third, it implies a perfect regularity of the parts and the absence of diseases and blemishes.

Diseases and Blemishes.—The coronet, like all the other inferior regions of the members, shows numerous alterations which involve either the skin and the subcutaneous connective tissue, the tendons, or the bones. Their gravity necessarily depends upon the nature of the lesions, their location, their period of existence, and the interference which they offer to the locomotory function.

These are first *calks*, deep wounds of the skin, of a variable extent, which result from the contact of the feet in some circumstances, as on the race-course or in leaping over obstacles, for example.

Grease or *water in the legs*, already cited in the description of the canon, the fetlock, and the pastern, often begins at the coronet, whose hairs it agglutinates into small pencils of a bristly aspect which is quite peculiar, and which is vulgarly compared with a comb.

Contusions and other traumatisms produce, at times, deep alterations of the lateral cartilages, the tendons, the glomes of the plantar cushion, or even the skin, and give rise to a partial necrosis of these structures, known under the generic name *quitter*. A quitter may be *tendinous*, *cartilaginous*, or *cutaneous*, according to the tissue involved. In general, they should be considered as being grave, for they incapacitate the animal from service for a long time and compromise his very life by the complications which accompany them. (See *Foot*.)

The anterior face of the coronet is sometimes the seat of an affection called *crapaudine*, which is characterized by a peculiar modification of the secretory function of the coronary band, which becomes fissured and cracked after the manner of the bark of an old tree. (See *Foot*.)

The *osseous tumors* of the region have received the name *ring-bone*, and are located on the anterior and the lateral faces. Clinically, they are distinguished as *coronary* and *cartilaginous*, according as they are developed upon the second phalanx or in the thickness of the lateral cartilages of the foot.[1]

They are usually, to whichever variety they may belong, the consequence of violent percussions received by the bones during locomotion, or of contusions of the cartilages. They also follow inflammatory conditions of a diverse nature, such as abscesses of the coronet, tendinous or cartilaginous quitter, the prick of a nail, etc.; finally, they are frequently sequelæ to fractures, in which case it is observed they are persistent. Short-jointed horses, young horses with a precocious constitution, which are subjected to laborious work, and full-grown horses which are employed in severe labor on the pavements of large cities are much more predisposed to such formations than others. The influence of heredity has been recognized for a long time; certain families of horses, from injudicious selections or crossing, invariably transmit these blemishes to their descendants.

Ring-bones are recognized by a hard, resisting tumefaction, which covers the anterior or lateral faces of the coronary region, and manifests itself as an abnormal convexity when the animal is examined from in front or in profile. Although the enlargement is most often apparent to the eye, it is sometimes concealed by the thickness of the integument and the abundance of the hairs; it is therefore necessary to complete the examination by the use of the hand, especially in horses whose coronet is not very distinct in its outlines.

A ring-bone most usually at its beginning occasions lameness; but when the tumor is once formed the lameness disappears, unless the exostosis has reached the contour of the articular surfaces.

Knuckling also appears as a complication of old ring-bones; to this symptom may be added contraction of the hoof, due to the deviation of the coronary band.

These exostoses always constitute a serious blemish, but the degree of the gravity nevertheless varies. It is clear that the depreciation of the value of the animal is greater as he is one of luxury or a rapid motor, and as the interference with the locomotory functions is more pronounced. Many horses are but little depreciated even by a voluminous ring-bone which is not accompanied by lameness, or whose lameness does not interfere with their utility as draught-horses. It is entirely different with pleasure-horses, in which the perfectness of conformation and the cleanness of the members form one of the essential conditions of their acquisition. Finally, these exostoses are, from their hereditary tendency, an absolute reason for *condemning such horses as are destined for breeding purposes.*

The coronet rather frequently presents on its surface traces of the *actual cautery* in points or in lines. We will repeat here the advice we have so often given in such cases: it is necessary to ascertain by a minute examination that the diseased processes against which this treatment has been employed have really disappeared. Certain horse-dealers, indeed, have applied, with fraudulent intent, the actual cautery upon the member for the concealment of a lameness whose seat is more or less distant from the cauterized parts.

Let us remark, in terminating, that there is a particular variety of *scabies* or *mange* affecting the inferior extremities of the members of the horse; it is qualified *symbiotic* or *chorioptic* mange, because it is caused by an acarus named *sym-*

---

[1] These are ordinarily called *side-bones.*

biotes or *chorioptes spathiferus.* It resides in the coronary band, the fold of the pastern, and the footlock, which are soon covered by an abundant scurfy desquamation of the epidermis and gradually deprived of their hairs. This mange is benign, in consequence of its very slow spreading and the little tendency of the acarus towards migration; it passes easily from one anterior or posterior member to the other, whilst it is more rarely seen to be communicated from one anterior member to the corresponding posterior. However it may be, this variety of mange occasions decided itching, which prevails during the night or after work and induces the animal to rub and bite himself. From this symptom, it disturbs their rest, worries them unnecessarily, and exposes them to wounds which are to be dreaded on account of their situation. It is only contagious from horse to horse, and not at all from horse to man.

CHAPTER III.

THE FOOT.

Definition.—The **foot,** in its relation to comparative anatomy, is all that part of the member which is *below the forearm* or *the leg.*

This definition, on the contrary, much more limited so far as the *exterior* is concerned, is here applied only to the extremity of the members which rests upon the ground, the *nail,* properly so called, the *horny box,* vulgarly known under the name of the *hoof,* which contains and protects living, sensitive tissues of variable texture and properties.

Distinction.—Four in number, the feet are qualified *fore* or *hind,* according to their relative situation with the centre of gravity. All have the same general organization; they differ, nevertheless, in several external characters which we will soon explain.

In each biped, anterior or posterior, they are distinguished as *right* and *left;* their conformation otherwise is absolutely identical.

A.—Organization of the Foot.

The foot has always been considered as one of the most important regions to study. This will be the better appreciated when we learn the part it plays in station and in locomotion, the influence of its beauties and defects upon the aptitude of the animal for diverse services, and, finally, the gravity of its diseases.

More than twenty-two centuries ago, Xenophon said that the members are the very first parts to be examined in the horse: "A house cannot serve any purpose, however perfect it may be in its superior

parts, if it has not a good foundation; it is the same with a war-horse; he will be good for nothing if, being perfect otherwise, he has bad legs (members); for he is unable to use whatever good points he may have.

"*In the examination of the legs, look first at the foot!*"[1]

This is the same idea which is reproduced, in our days, in the forms of aphorisms in all treatises on the exterior:

"*No foot, no horse!*" said Lafosse.

"*No foot, no horse!*" repeat the English.

Bracy-Clark has only translated the thought of Xenophon when he said, "Incerta basis instabile ædificium!"

The foot is formed by a certain number of *internal parts*, covered by a modified skin admirably adapted to its special functions, as well as by a horny envelope known under the name *hoof*. Let us examine them rapidly.

1. Internal Parts of the Foot.

These parts are complex and numerous; their relation can be clearly recognized in a vertical and antero-posterior section of the organ (Fig. 106).

Three *bones* form its osseous base and permit it to accomplish its various movements. These are: the third phalanx or *pedal bone* (*a*); the second phalanx, or *coronary bone* (*b*); finally, the *navicular*, or *small sesamoid bone* (*c*), situated behind the preceding and complementing the articulation which the other two form.

Short, strong *ligaments* consolidate the joint on the sides, while two wide fibro-cartilaginous plates, *lateral cartilages of the third phalanx*, intimately united to this bone, seem like two elastic and diverging springs, placed on the outside and on the inside of this bone, to prevent it from descending or rocking too suddenly in the hoof at the moment when the latter strikes the ground.

Two strong, expanded *tendons* terminate upon the third phalanx: the *anterior* (*d*) carries it into extension; the *posterior* (*e*) permits, on the contrary, the flexion of this bone upon the os coronæ; it glides over the inferior face of the navicular bone by means of a synovial sheath designated under the name *small sesamoid sheath* (better called the *navicular sheath*).

Finally, a voluminous fibro-elastic cushion (*g*), called the *plantar cushion*, bifurcated behind and pointed in front (Fig. 107, *B : d*), is placed under the flexor tendon, to which it serves as a flexible buffer when the foot has reached the ground. All pressure upon the hoof from below upward tends to depress it and force it against the lateral parts, where it is maintained by the two elastic cartilages indicated above.

Cutaneous Envelope of the Foot.—This is the skin, modified in its functions and external characters, which covers the surface of all these organs. The proof of this can be easily obtained by maceration of the hoof, or the artificial removal of the hoof and the hairs of the digital extremity, in order to see

---

[1] Xénophon, De l'Équitation, traduction du baron de Curnieu, chap. i. p. 7. Paris, 1840.

the integuments in direct continuity with the living parts which might, at first sight, be mistaken for tissues consisting of an entirely different organization. Let Fig. 107 represent, by *A*, the normal foot before maceration; by *B*, the same

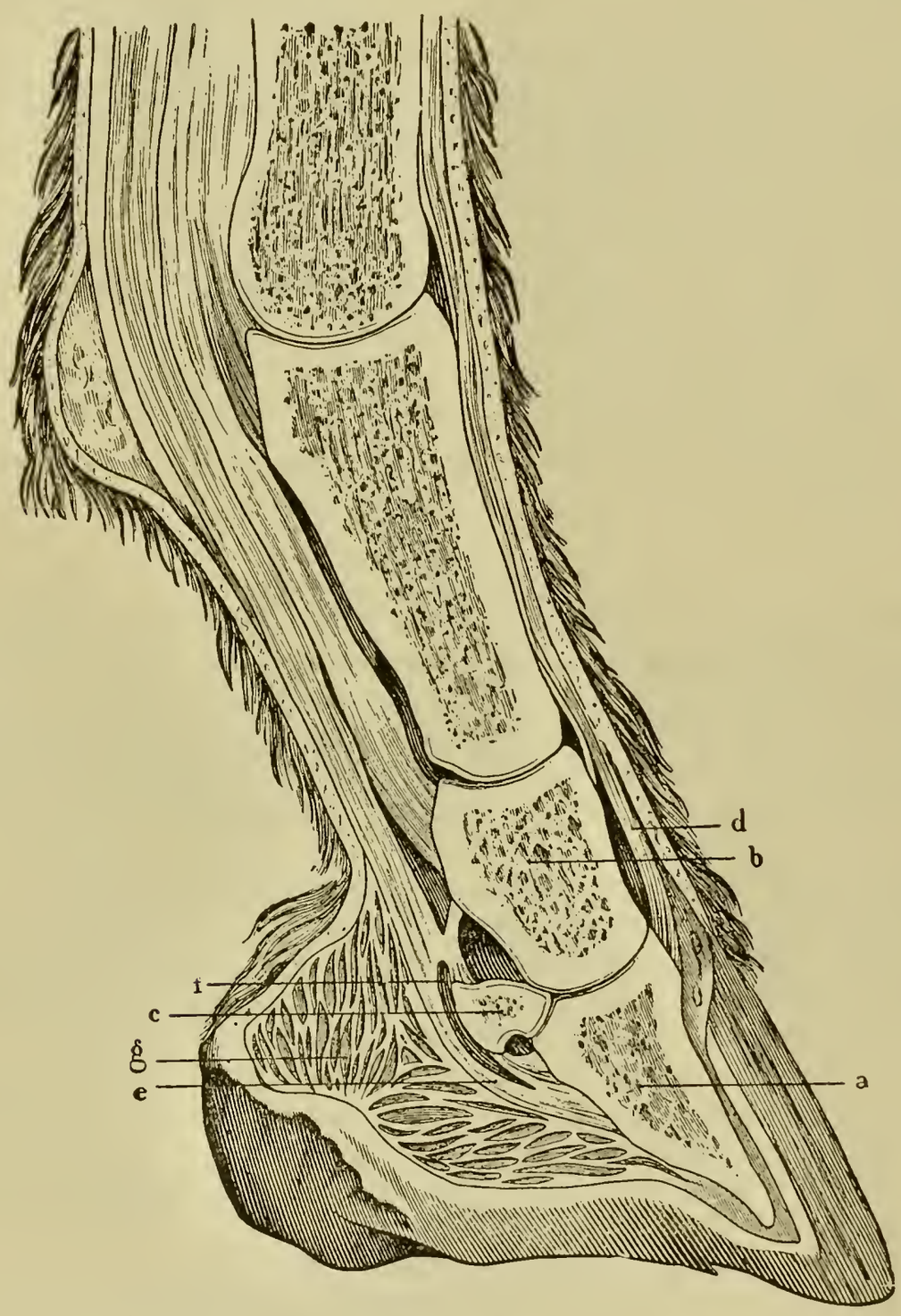


FIG. 106.—Longitudinal and median section of the foot.

foot after prolonged soaking in water. The epidermic productions, the horn and the hairs, naturally detached, leave the cutaneous covering intact.

The latter, vulgarly known under the name *fleshy envelope, flesh of the foot*, is remarkable for its great vascularity and the abundance of its nerves. Hence it is very susceptible of congestion and inflammation as soon as the hoof, which surrounds it, has lost its physiological properties. All its lesions, of whatever nature they may be, are always accompanied by intense pain, the tumefaction of the living parts becoming impossible, incased as they are in a resisting, almost inextensible, envelope.

The cutaneous envelope of the foot, also called the *keratogenous membrane*, is subdivided into three important regions. These are:

a. The **coronary band** or **cutidure** (Fig. 107, *B : a*) is an enlarged, circular band or ridge, crowning superiorly the living parts and terminating behind

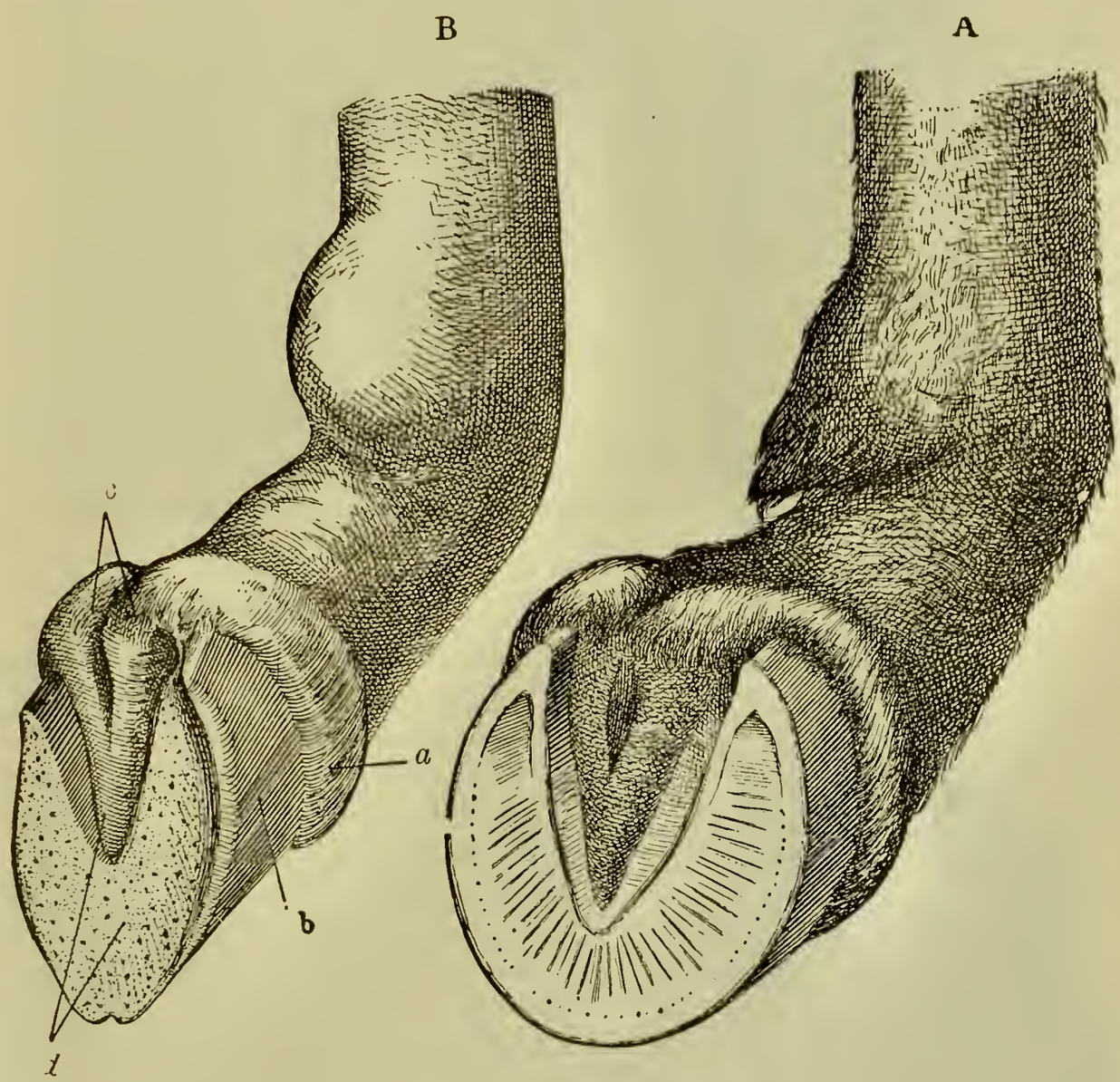


FIG. 107.—*A.* The normal foot before maceration. *B.* The foot after maceration.

by a continuity with the glomes, *c*, of the plantar cushion. It offers along the entire length of its superior border a much smaller secondary convexity, known under the name of **perioplic band**, to which are intrusted special functions.

It is covered over the remainder of its surface by a multitude of filamentous prolongations, *papillæ*, easily perceived when immersed in water. These penetrate, by so many foramina, the superior border of the wall. Endowed, physiologically, with the elaboration of the latter, the cutidure constitutes also, by its *villosities* or papillæ, very rich in nerve filaments, a veritable organ of tactile sensation for the horse, which can thus recognize, with all the perfection desirable, the quality of the surface upon which his foot rests.

b. The **podophyllous, laminated,** or **lamellar** tissue (Fig. 107, *B : b*) comprises the whole periphery of the cutaneous envelope situated below the coronary band. This tissue, which owes its name to the numerous laminæ or longitudinal leaves which it presents, also forms a whitish, soft horn, composed of

laminæ intimately united to the horn which descends from the coronary band. This adherence of the two horny productions is so strong that it resists the most prolonged maceration. Behind, the laminæ are reflected into each of the lateral lacunæ of the plantar cushion, and are in relation with that part of the parietes of the hoof which is called the *bars*.

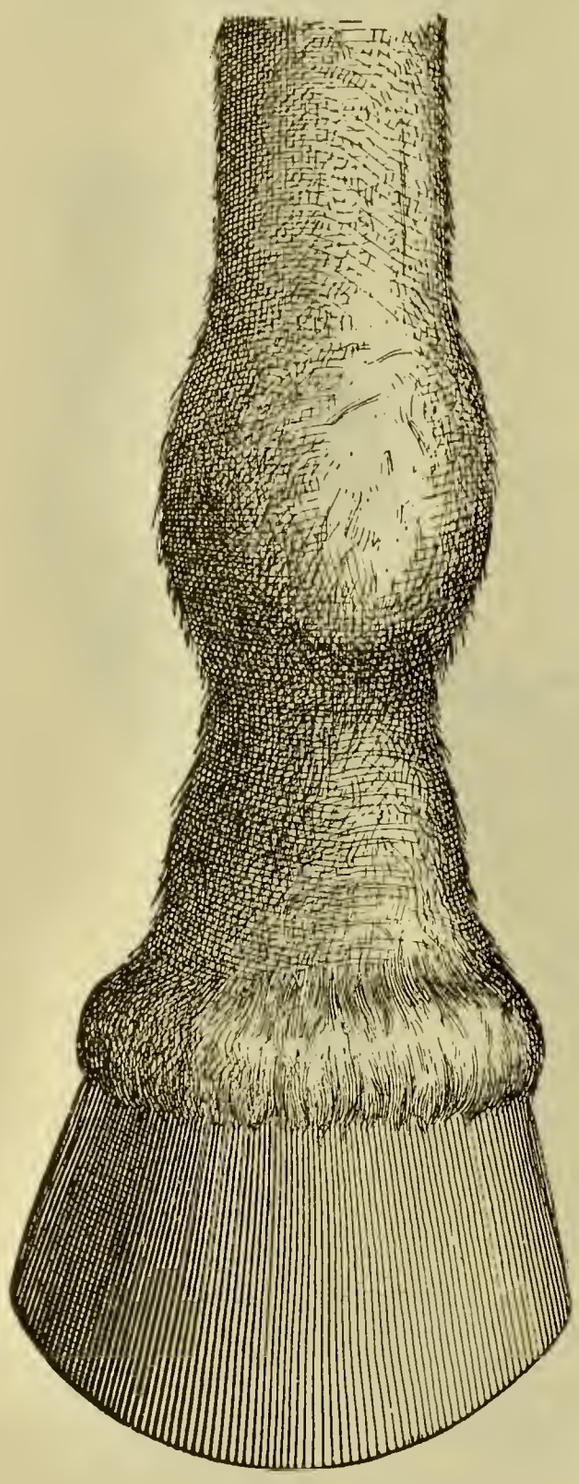


Fig. 108.—Foot viewed in front.

c. The **villous** or **velvety tissue** (Fig. 107, *B : d*), whose aspect approaches that of a bushy sod, in consequence of the innumerable villosities over its surface, covers the whole of the plantar surface of the third phalanx and the plantar cushion or *fleshy frog*. Like those of the cutidure, these papillæ are received into the numerous foramina of the subjacent horn which is produced by the most superficial layer of the velvety tissue.

2. The Hoof.

The **hoof**, as we know, is the external horny envelope of the foot, or, more properly speaking, the **nail** of the horse. Its form is that of a cone with its base downward and the summit truncated obliquely from above to below and from before to behind (Fig. 108). Its conical disposition, however, being always very slight, is only very apparent when it is examined from in front or behind. Viewed in profile, it has more the form of a cylinder, as has been remarked by Bracy-Clark[1] (Fig. 109).

Concave below, cleft behind, and bordered superiorly by the skin of the coronet, the hoof is composed of three distinct pieces intimately united to one another. These pieces can be separated the one from the other by prolonged maceration or boiling; they are designated under the names *wall*, *sole*, and *frog*. We must enter into a special study of each in order to understand the mechanism well.

a. **The Wall.**—The *wall* or *paries* forms, as its name indicates, the circumference of the hoof, and includes all that portion of the horny case which is visible when the foot rests upon the soil. It represents a large crescent of horn, curved on itself (Fig. 110), placed against the anterior face of the foot on which

[1] Bracy-Clark, Recherches sur la construction du sabot du cheval.

it is moulded, and folded from behind forward at its extremities. The latter terminate in a point, converge towards each other by encircling the frog, and unite at the point of the latter.[1]

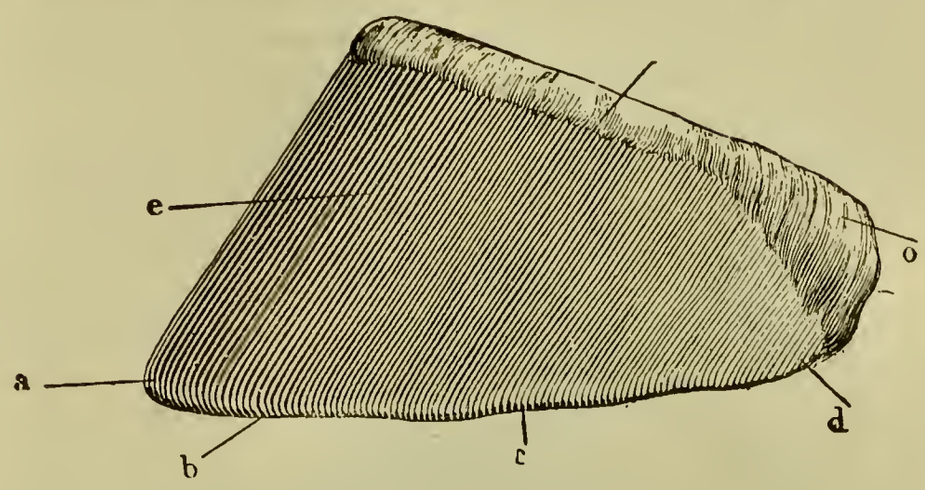


FIG. 109.—Profile of the hoof.

The wall is divided into several important regions bearing various names (Figs. 109 and 111).

The *toe*, *a*, is the median and anterior fifth of the circumference.

The *mammæ*, *b*, include the fifth on each side of the toe.

The *quarter*, *c*, also double, constitutes the posterior fifth of the lateral surface, immediately behind the preceding.

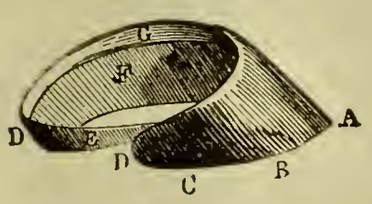


FIG. 110.

The *heel*, *d*, situated altogether behind, corresponds to the point where the wall becomes inflected inward to constitute the bars.

Finally, the *bar* or *stay*, *e* (Fig. 111), visible only on the raised foot, is the reflected portion representing the extremities of the wall, placed between the frog and the sole.

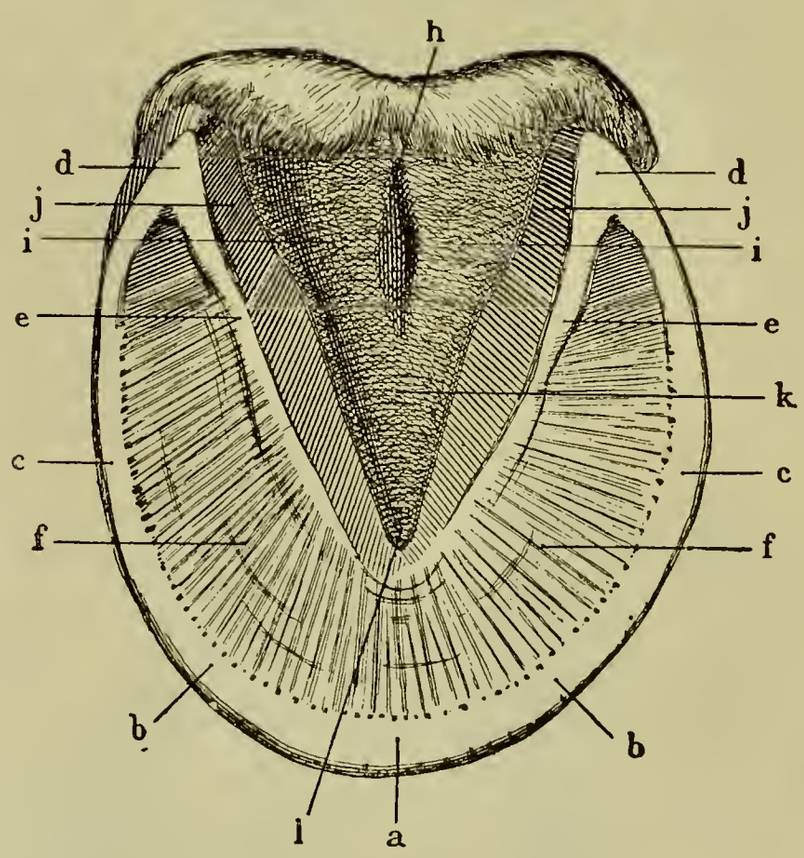


FIG. 111.—Inferior face of the hoof.

The wall offers for study, also, besides these subdivisions, two *faces* and two *borders*.

The **faces**, distinguished as *external*, *e* (Fig. 109), and *internal*, *q* (Figs. 112 and 113), diminish gradually in height from the toe to the extremity of the bars.

---

[1] This statement is entirely erroneous, because the bars do not extend beyond the posterior two-thirds of the lateral faces of the frog, which I have repeatedly observed. (Harger.)

The *first*, convex transversely, rectilinear from above to below, is smooth, polished, and shiny. It is more oblique anteriorly than on the sides, which are themselves unequally inclined and incurvated. The internal quarter is always more straight and less round than the external.

The *second*, concave from side to side, is covered by numerous longitudinal laminæ, *q*, of white horn (*keraphyllous tissue*), which are solidly dovetailed into those of the podophyllous laminæ on the pedal bone.

As to the *borders*, the *inferior* (Fig. 111), the longest, rests upon the ground, whose friction and wear it sustains, particularly at the toe and the mammæ, in the unshod foot. On the contrary, bearing upon the superior face of the shoe in the domesticated horse, this border is removed by the farrier at each shoeing; and the latter should, in this connection, endeavor to imitate the natural conditions of wear and tear.

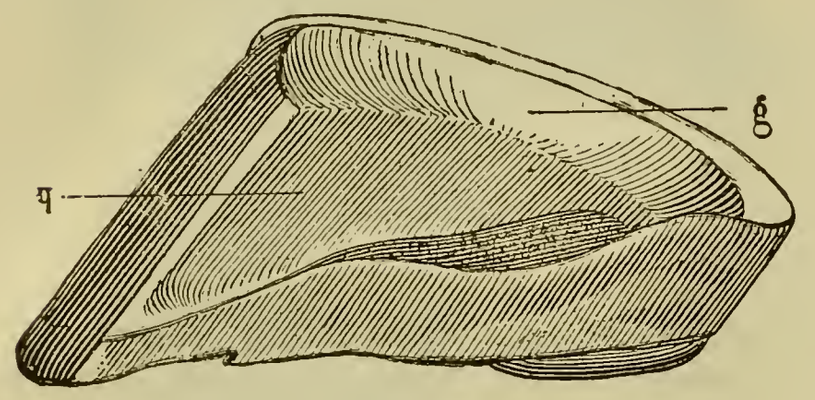


FIG. 112.—Antero-posterior and vertical section of the hoof (internal face).

Its thickness diminishes from the toe to the heels, and then augments suddenly at this point to form the bars. Finally, it is intimately united along its whole periphery to the contour of the sole.

The *superior*, thin and oblique, shorter than the preceding, and bounded exteriorly by the periople, *p* (Figs. 109 and 117), is transformed, inwardly, into a semi-cylindrical gutter, *g* (Figs. 112 and 113), which traverses its entire length and lodges the coronary band. It is at the region of this gutter, called the *cutigeral cavity*, which becomes effaced towards the region of the bars, that the parietal horn is elaborated by the cutaneous thickening in question.

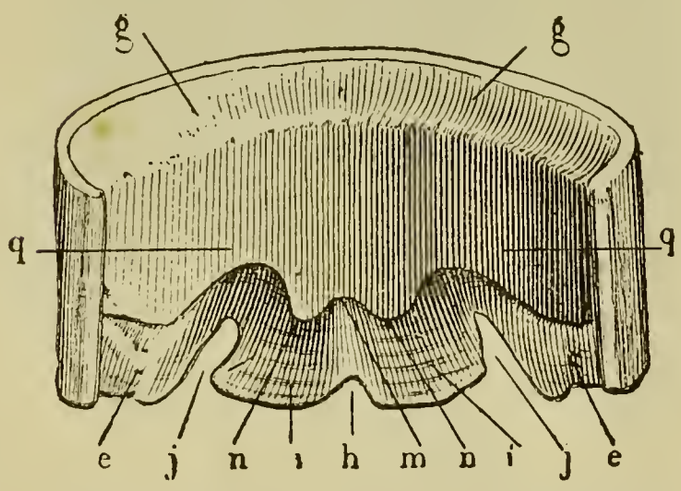


FIG. 113.—Transverse section of the hoof (anterior part).

b. **The Sole.**—The *sole* is a large horny plate (Fig. 111), deeply notched behind for the reception of the frog, which occupies the inferior face of the foot. Concave inferiorly and convex superiorly, it fills the interval which exists between the inferior border of the wall, the bars, and the point of the frog.

Its *superior* or *internal* face (Fig. 114, *a*) is studded with porosities in which are embedded the numerous papillæ of the velvety tissue, and receives the pressure of the third phalanx.

The *inferior*, *f* (Fig. 111), excavated, arch-like, and in contact only with the inequalities of the ground in the wild horse, is hard, dry, and scaly.

Of the two *borders*, the *external* or *anterior* describes almost a semi-circumference, and unites intimately with the inferior border of the wall. The *internal* or *posterior*, on the contrary, much less extensive, simulates a re-entering angle, like the letter V, whose sides are adherent to the bars and the frog.

c. **The Frog.**—The *frog* is a wedge or pyramid of soft horn, which covers the plantar cushion, whose form it reproduces. Lodged in the angle formed by the bars and the posterior border of the sole, it is seen to be single in front and bifid behind; two faces and two extremities are thus assigned to it.

The *superior* or *internal* face, *b* (Fig. 114), is the reverse of the inferior face of the plantar cushion; it presents, consequently, a marked relief on the median line, known under the name *frog-stay*, *m* (Figs. 113 and 115), and on each side two gutters, *n*, *n*, converging in front, which respond to the branches of the plantar cushion. Like the sole, it is covered by a large number of perforations, which receive the corresponding villosities of the velvety tissue.

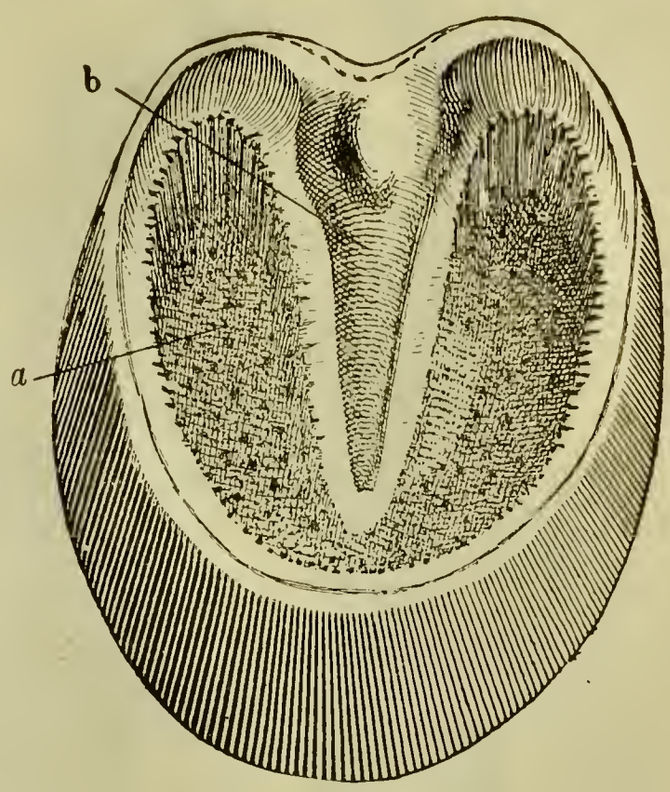


FIG. 114.—Interior of the hoof.

The *inferior* or *external* face (Figs. 111 and 116), much more important with regard to the exterior, is hollowed in its middle by a cavity, *h*, called the *median lacuna*, separating the two *branches*, *i*, *i*, from each other. Between each branch, *i*, and the bar are the lateral lacunæ, *j*, *j* (Figs. 111, 113, and 115); finally, the *body* of the frog is the point of juncture of its two branches.

In the wild state, the inferior face of the furuncular branches, in conditions of nature, is upon the same level as that of the heels and the bars; it consequently rests upon the ground, as can be

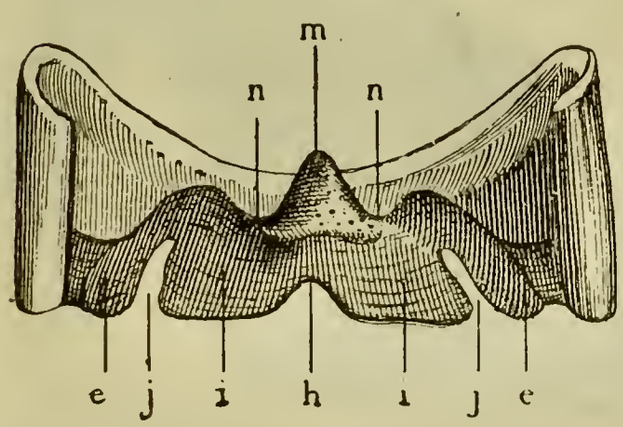


FIG. 115.—Transverse section of the hoof (posterior part).

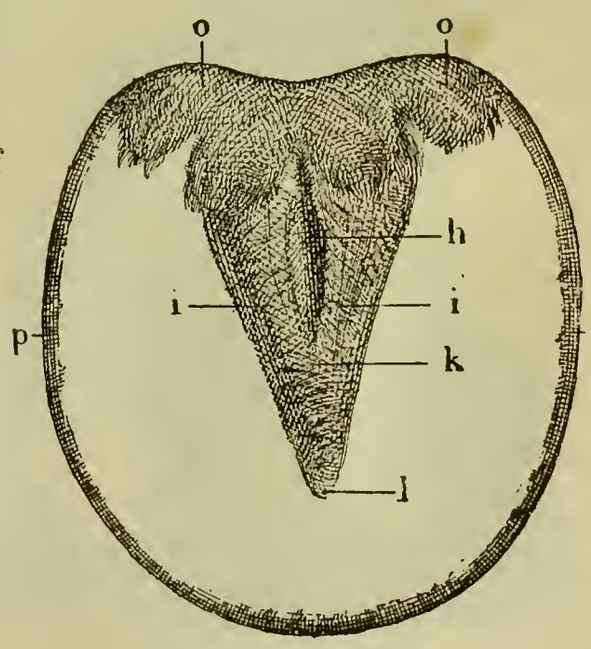


FIG. 116.—Frog and periople.

readily observed by the examination of the transverse sections represented in Figs. 113 and 115, practised upon unshod feet.

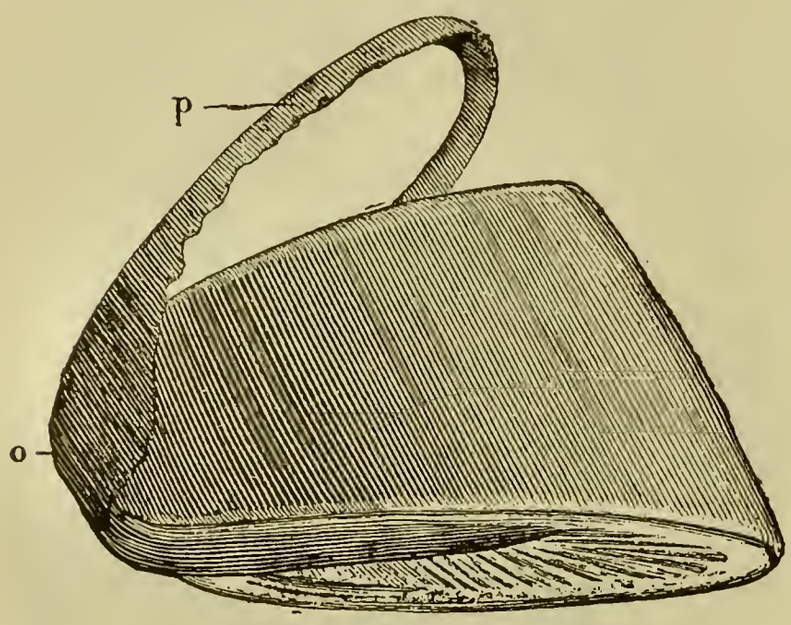


Fig. 117.—Hoof whose perioplic band is detached.

The frog, at its *anterior extremity*, terminates in a *point* (Figs. 111 and 116), which is lodged in the summit of the re-entering angle of the sole.

Its *posterior extremity* bifurcates and terminates by two enlargements, *o*, *o* (Figs. 109, 116, and 117), called the *glomes*, which overhang the heels and become continuous along the superior border of the wall by a thin, soft, flexible band of horn, *p*, little pervious to water. The latter production, known under the name of *periople*, and secreted by the perioplic band of which we have already

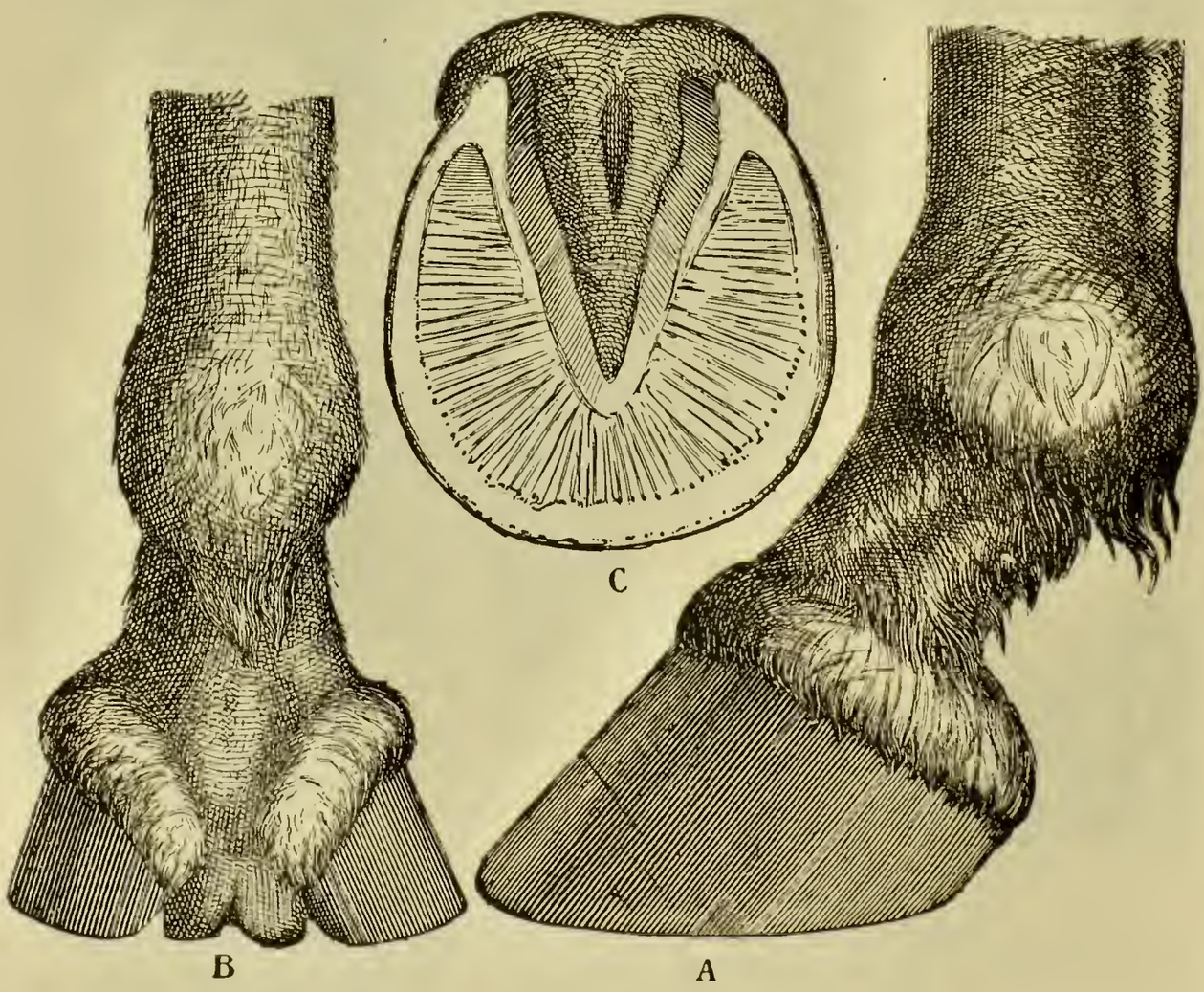


Fig. 118.—Fore-foot.

A. Profile. *B*. Posterior view. *C*. Inferior face.

spoken, is nothing else than the prolongation of the cutaneous epidermis upon

the hoof, for which it forms a sort of protective varnish against the variations of dryness and moisture.

Such is, in a summary manner, the anatomical construction of the foot of the horse. Let us now see the peculiarities concerning this organ if it be examined in the two sorts of members.

Differences between the Fore- and Hind-Feet; the Left and the Right.—These differences are secondary, altogether superficial, and do not modify the preceding details which bear on the general organization.

The **fore-foot** (Fig. 118, *A*, *B*, *C*) is more round, more spread out, less concave, and a little wider than the *hind;* the heels are less separated; the wall, in profile, is more oblique; the frog is less long, but more voluminous, thicker, and closer to the ground.

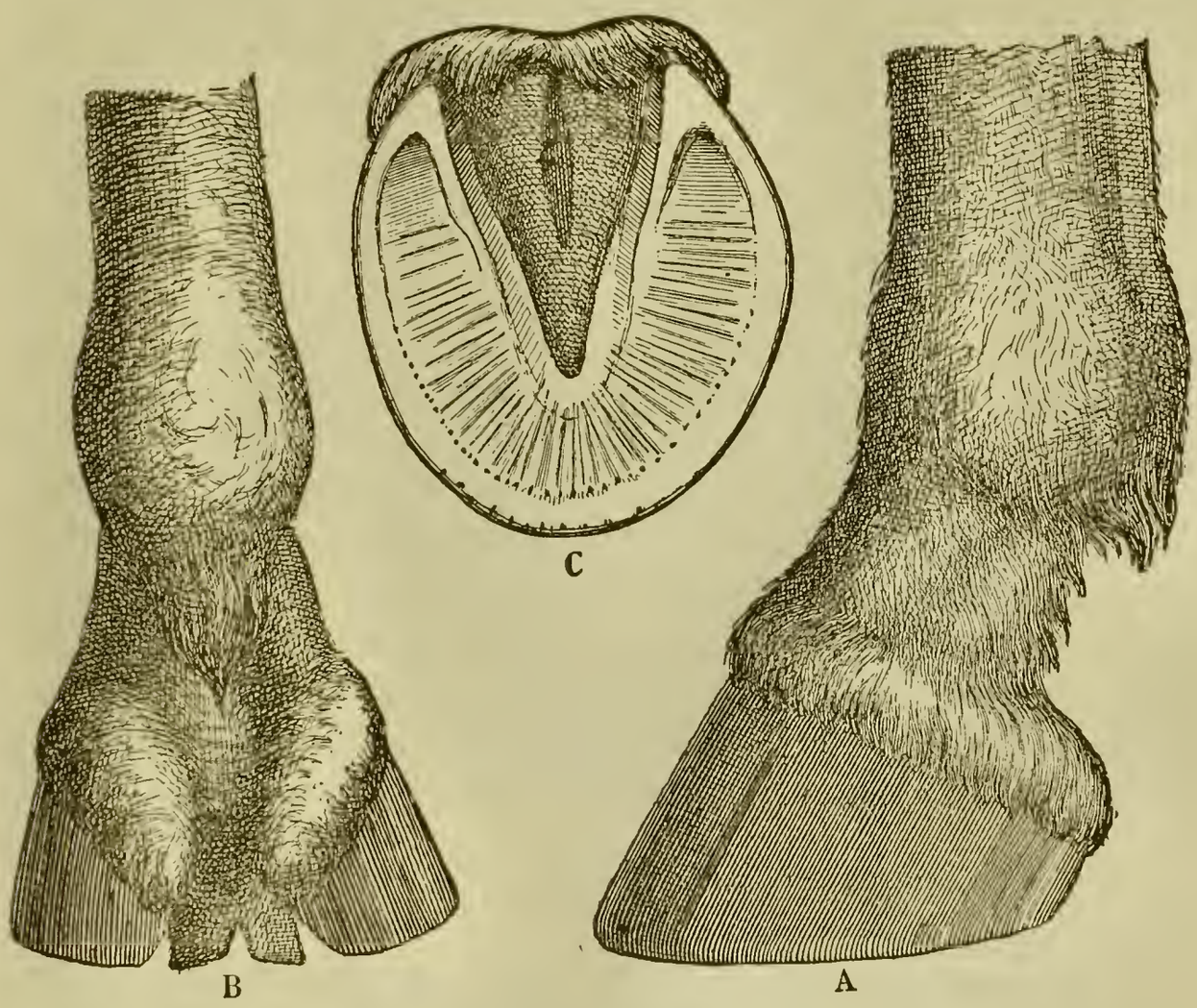


Fig. 119.—Hind-foot.

A. Profile. *B.* Posterior view. *C.* Inferior face.

The **hind-foot** (Fig. 119, *A*, *B*, *C*), on the contrary, is oval, concave, with higher and more separated heels, and a more vertical wall; the branches of the frog are less thick and more separated; the bars, finally, are somewhat stronger.

Nothing is more easy than to distinguish a *left* from a *right foot*,

whether they belong to the anterior or the posterior biped : the external side of the wall is constantly more inclined and more convex than the internal ; also, the inferior border of the wall is always rounder and stronger on this side than on the other.

B.—Properties and Mechanism of the Foot.

The foot of the horse, such as we have described, is an organ which enjoys certain properties inherent both to the nature and disposition of the tissues which compose its internal parts and to these same qualities possessed by the horny envelope. It is on account of these properties that the foot can fulfil, with all the desirable perfection, the important functions which devolve upon it.

The Horn : Properties.—The **horn** is a hard, compact, resisting, elastic, and tenacious substance, which is softened by contact with water or the influence of dampness, and hardens by evaporation. It is very combustible, and gives origin, when burning, to abundant fumes of a characteristic odor and a carbonaceous adherent matter which protects the living tissues against the action of the heat.

a. **Origin.**—The diverse regions of the cutaneous envelope (*keratogenous membrane, flesh of the foot*) of the foot do not contribute in the same manner to the formation of the horn. As our colleague, M. Arloing,[1] judiciously remarked, some are *keratogenous* and others *keratophorous.* Upon the first (coronary band, velvety tissue, perioplic ring) is imposed the elaboration of the nail, properly so called ; upon the second (podophyllous tissue) more particularly devolves the *rôle* of support, consolidation, and union. Analogous to a sort of physiological cement, the latter establishes the relation and adherence between the horn and the living parts. Its production is represented for this purpose by the white, horny laminæ situated on the deep face of the wall, to which we have made reference above under the name *keraphyllous tissue.*

Thus the wall, the sole, and the frog are formed by the keratogenous regions of the ungual matrix.

b. **Structure.**—Under the *microscope*, the horn appears constituted by a great number of parallel tubes, rectilinear (wall, sole) or undulating (frog), which originate from the vascular papillæ of the cutidure or the velvety tissue by enveloping them in the most intimate manner. Altogether comparable to hairs of a large calibre placed side by side, these tubes are composed of a multitude of horny (epithelial)

---

[1] S. Arloing, Poils et Ongles, thèse d'agrégation, 1880, p. 111.

cells, disposed concentrically around the axis in numerous layers in an imbricated manner. The most superficial of these layers affect a different disposition: the cells become perpendicular to the direction of the tube instead of remaining parallel, and in this manner is formed the intertubular horn, a veritable cement substance which agglutinates the hair cylinders to one another.

c. **Color.**—The horn cells, being epithelial in nature and formed from the cells of the epidermis of the skin, the hoof assumes a white or black *coloration* according as the parts which form it are or are not provided with pigment. When the skin of the coronary band is red, the wall is white for an equal extent; in the opposite case, it remains black. The same considerations are applicable to that of the sole and the frog.

d. **Consistency.**—The **consistency** of the nail is in direct relation with the degree of humidity of the horn, and this humidity is obtained by the foot either from the surrounding atmosphere or from its own tissues.

The temperature of the soil, the quality of the pasture, the hygrometric state of the air, the season of the year, the nature of the climate, are so many causes whose influence is evident and which it is needless to dwell upon.

Likewise, the horn becomes more supple and softer as it is examined closer to the living tissues; it is, on the contrary, more resisting, brittle, and difficult to cut as it is more distant. The superficial parts of the frog, the sole, and the wall, the inferior border of the latter, are always excessively dry compared to the deeper parts of these structures.

These diverse conditions of the hoof, when existing in extremes, offer serious evils from the double point of view of the preservation of the foot and the use of the animal. We will revert to this in the chapter on *defects.*

Growth and Wear of the Hoof.—New layers of horn are incessantly secreted at the level of the villous papillæ of the keratogenous apparatus, pushing down the older layers to repair the loss occasioned by use. It is clear that each portion of the hoof grows according to the direction of its own fibres: the wall in its height, the sole and the frog in the sense of their thickness.

This growth is effected slowly. It requires about eight months for the production of a completely new hoof. All loss of substance to the wall is therefore reproduced very slowly; whence the lesson is taught that we should avoid this loss as much as possible.

In the wild horse the continual growth, always compensated by a proportional loss from wear, does not induce a deformity of the nail; but the case is different in horses which we utilize as motors, on account of the shoe, which restrains the elasticity of the foot and disturbs the normal growth of the hoof. In such cases the wall may acquire an excessive length if the farrier does not take the care to shorten the whole extent of its inferior border to the limits required by the natural wear. As to the sole and the frog, their mode of exfoliation is such that their thickness never becomes excessive; they become dried, cracked, and peel off spontaneously in more or less voluminous scales.

The secretion of the horn is exaggerated by certain influences, as the external temperature, the state of health or of disease, the nourishment, etc. We know that the process is more active in warm than in cold countries, in summer than in winter, in the healthy animal, abundantly nourished, than in the diseased animal, suffering from bad hygiene and an insufficient alimentation. This is so true that the hoof itself often testifies, by the unequal zones of which it is the seat, of the physical conditions or suffering which the horse has endured.

Certain *rammy* or *circled* hoofs have in most instances no other origin.

Elasticity of the Foot.—The digital extremity of the equidæ, below the pastern, is disposed so as to disperse or break the concussions and the pressure which it receives during locomotion at the moment when the body, at great speed, comes in contact with the ground. Not only is the quantity of movement with which the body is animated dispersed and decomposed by the inclined planes of surface and of segment, but it is destroyed also by the intervention of the elasticity of several organs which we will recognize. It is therefore already considerably lessened when it arrives at the hoof, where it meets several elastic apparatus, whose mode of functional activity we must rapidly review. These apparatus are: the perforans tendon, the lateral cartilages, the plantar cushion, and the diverse parts of the nail (the wall, the sole, and the frog).

The first effect of the contact of the foot with the soil is the displacement of the third phalanx from above to below in the interior of the horny covering (Fig. 106). This movement of the bone is counteracted by the mechanical action of three very evident causes: anteriorly and peripherally, by the adherence of the podophyllous and keraphyllous tissues; above and laterally, by the resistance of the lateral cartilages; finally, below, by the presence of the plantar aponeurosis and the plantar cushion.

The remarkably solid union between the hoof and the sensitive tissues is due, above all, to the intimate dovetailing of the sensitive laminæ with the horny laminæ.[1]

These two sets of laminæ, however, are not simply placed in juxtaposition in a parallel manner, but they interdigitate with one another by the numerous secondary prolongations which they offer on their lateral faces and which are disposed after the manner of the barbs of a feather upon its stalk. This construction admits of a very slight gliding of the keraphyllous laminæ of the wall upon those, soft and flexible, of the podophyllous tissue, whence, in consequence, the first decomposition of force at their level.

Besides, the wedge formed by the third phalanx not only descends parallel to the wall, but describes a sort of vertical rotation, from the pressure transmitted by the second phalanx to the navicular bone. This pressure is first exercised upon the plantar aponeurosis, *e*, which maintains the articular angle, and, secondly, upon the elastic plantar cushion situated immediately below. Following this, there exist also at this place two new structures whose elasticity, now called into activity at the moment of the *contact*, notably diminishes the intensity of the reactions.

But the phenomena do not cease here. The plantar cushion, strongly compressed from above to below by the weight of the body, tends to depress the plantar arch at the same time that it elongates transversely, where it is maintained by the two lateral cartilages. The latter, flat, wide, supple, and very elastic, overlap behind the superior border of the wall and sensibly separate from each other under the influence of the eccentric pressure which they receive from the plantar cushion. They are therefore opposed, in their turn, to the rotation of the third phalanx in the interior of the hoof.

Thus, little by little, the internal parts of the foot decompose the reactions of the weight, by changing their form and relative situation; and, finally, by concentrating their action upon the diverse parts of the hoof, especially the frog, the quarters, and the sole.

The sole is flattened and becomes less concave inferiorly; its

---

[1] M. Pader has recently called attention to the remarkable manner in which the horny case is attached to the living parts. According to him, in a horse of medium form, the laminæ of the foot being supposed to have an area of a square decimetre, the total surface of the principal and secondary laminæ, which he has had the patience to compute, should attain about *one square metre!* It can then be readily understood how this system of dovetailing of the laminæ is calculated to insure the intimate union of the horn and the flesh, to decompose the concussion, at times enormous, which the ungual extremity receives, and to distribute uniformly the pressure upon the whole of the internal face of the wall.

(See, for more details, Bulletin de la Soc. cent. de méd. vétér., année 1888, p. 491.)

peripheral border expands more and presses against the wall, whose thin and narrow extremities are thus feebly separated from each other.

The frog is depressed to the same degree; its median lacuna enlarges; its branches are forced outward and press against the bars propped against them after the manner of two springs.

Finally, the wall reacts in an opposite direction to the simultaneous pressure of the lateral cartilages, the sole, and the frog. Its superior border and its quarters expand.

The elasticity of the hoof is manifested, therefore, by a slight movement of separation and approximation of its heels, whose amplitude is the greater in proportion as the frog is larger and more related (*frog pressure*) to the ground, conditions always realized in a state of nature (Figs. 97 and 99).

Hence rational shoeing should never be an obstacle to the opening of the posterior cleft of the foot at the moment of the contact and to its closing during the elevation.

The farrier, when *paring* the foot, must imitate the natural usage and respect that which nature spares: it strongly rounds and shortens the toe, and the mammæ a little less; it affects the sole only at its anterior circumference, without weakening too much its union with the wall; it rounds more outwardly than inwardly the sharp border of the latter; removes from the sole, the frog, and the bars only that which is eliminated spontaneously. The foot which has undergone natural usage has been adapted to locomotion, and bears flatly from the mammæ to the heels.[1]

Preservation of the Form of the Hoof.—The hoof, in a state of nature, the *Commission d'hygiène hippique*[2] also says, preserves its form and its qualities under the following conditions:

1st. Its elasticity is complete when the frog is in full relation with the ground.

2d. Its constant use maintains a proper length and a regular axis.

3d. The sole has all its thickness, all its strength, and prevents contraction of the heels.

4th. The hairs of the coronet cover and protect the cutidure; the varnish of the wall (periople) protects the horn against alterations of dryness and humidity.

5th. Finally, the moisture of the soil, the dew, and the freshness

---

[1] Manuel de maréchalerie, rédigé par les soins de la Commission d'hygiène hippique, p. 105. Paris, 1876.

[2] Loc. cit., p. 55.

of the pasture maintain it in a state of humidity favorable to the preservation of its form.

C.—Beauties of the Foot.

The volume of the foot is susceptible of variation in notable proportions without being necessarily considered defective. English horses, as well as those of Algeria and Central France, generally have a small, hard, and resisting foot. Those of the common races, and of a lymphatic temperament, raised in low and damp districts, on the contrary, have this region more voluminous. It should, in all cases, be proportional to the height of the horse, his weight, his conformation, and his special aptitudes. The width of the hock, measured from the point to the bend of this articulation, equals that of the hoof from the toe to the heel, or at least very nearly, in a beautiful draught-horse. It is always more considerable in pleasure-horses, whose feet are nevertheless well formed.

"The *unshod foot* of a horse bred on favorable soil and sufficiently exercised is a type of beauty and perfection. Compared to the foot that has been shod, it is large, strong, as wide as long, and in proper equilibrium; it constitutes a solid support.

"*Viewed in front*, it is narrower above than below, more expanded externally than internally, and of equal height at its quarters.

"*Viewed in profile*, the line of the toe has a mean inclination;[1] the height of the heels is equal to at least one-half of the height of the toe.

"*Viewed from behind*, the heels of the standard foot are well separated, equal, of the same height, and fall vertically to the ground, especially the internal, which is sensibly more vertical than the external.

"*Viewed from below*, its sole is hollow and thick, the frog strong, healthy, and quite hard; the bars neither too straight nor too much inclined; the toe and the mammæ of the wall and the sole are perceptibly worn from usage.

"The *horn* of the standard foot is black or dark gray; the wall, smooth and shiny, shows its fibrous structure."[2]

Such are the characters of the virgin foot which we have represented in the text.[3]

---

[1] About 50 degrees for the front feet and 60 for the hind.

[2] Commission d'hygiène hippique, loc. cit., p. 56.

[3] See, for more details, Mathieu, De la face inférieure du sabot, chez le cheval vierge de ferrure, in Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, année 1876, p. 761.

D.—Defects of the Foot.

Most authors have unnecessarily increased the list of defects of the foot, by comprising in it a certain number of conformations which are nothing else than the expression of a diseased state very common and very variable in its manifestations: *contraction of the hoof.*

The foot of the horse may be defective under four different conditions which receive special appellations:

1. **By Defect of Volume and of Proportion:** Foot *large, small, narrow,* and *unequal.*

2. **By Defect of Conformation:** Foot *flat, full, pumiced, with bunions, with high, low, sloping heels.*

3. **By Defect of Axis:** *outbow-foot, cross-foot, club-foot, crooked foot, pincard foot.*

4. **By Defect of Quality of the Horn:** Foot *soft, dry, brittle, with weak heels.*

Let us rapidly examine each one of these defects in particular.

1. Defects of Volume and of Proportion.

Large Foot.—An **excess of the volume** of the foot has serious inconveniences in the fast horse on account of its weight, its width, and the weight of the shoe.

The step is heavy and awkward; the reactions upon the ground are too violent. The horse is liable to stumble, pull the shoes, and interfere; he is more predisposed to contusions of the sole and congestion and inflammation of the vascular tissues; the horn is often brittle and retains the nails poorly. Finally, a large foot is a characteristic of slow, lymphatic horses, and always indicates the absence of fine breeding and good qualities.

These objections disappear in the slow draught-horse, which, from the nature of the pace, is firmer on his feet, and jeopardizes to a less degree the integrity of the apparatus of support.

He must have a wide-webbed shoe, with the toe well elevated, without *garniture* on the inner side (not projecting beyond the wall), and slightly projecting on the outer side.

Small Foot.—A foot **too small,** in spite of its neatness and lightness, is chiefly defective from the excessive reduction which it causes in the width of the base of support. Its horn is thin and ordinarily dry and brittle. The foot is easily bruised, contracted at the heels, becomes painful after prolonged exercise, and is always more

or less sensitive. It is particularly seen in the meridional raees, upon very active and energetic subjeets. It is the more defective as it is more disproportionate with the volume of the body and the height of the animal.

A *semi-covered* shoe with a good garniture—that is to say, projecting beyond the border of the wall more than usual externally and internally—eases the foot much.[1]

Narrow Foot.—This variety of foot differs from the preceding by the meagre development of its transverse diameter as compared to its antero-posterior diameter. Its toe acquires an exaggerated length, which augments, consequently, that of the pastern to the detriment of the tendons, as we have already seen. (See *Pastern*, page 301.) It is also, like the small foot, subjeet to contraction,—that is to say, approximation or narrowing of its posterior parts; its shoeing is similar to that of the small foot.

Unequal Feet.—The **inequality of the volume** of the feet would be, without doubt, more rationally studied in the chapter on the diseases, for it is rarely congenital. Be it as it may, such a conformation should be considered grave by reason of its cause. It is always the smallest foot which, in this case, is the first to beeome diseased on account of its relative weakness. Among the diseases of which it may be the seat, contraction of the quarters and the heels oecupies, without contradiction, the first rank. It can be obviated in a certain measure by applying a more *covered* (wider-webbed) but lighter shoe to which is given garniture proportional to the reduction of the volume of the hoof; it will be advisable to employ small nails.

2. Defects of Conformation.

Flat Foot.—This foot is thus named on account of the *flatness* of its *plantar surface.* It is ordinarily large, spreading, with an oblique wall, low heels, very inclined bars, and a voluminous frog. It offers more difficulties in shoeing than one is tempted to believe. The farrier should apply a eovered shoe sufficiently light and concave, in order that it may not press on the sole, always very little arched; he will spare the heels and dress the frog only superficially; the toe should be well raised up and the heel flat, never thickened; besides, the farrier should drive the nails at a suitable inclination, so that they may not be

---

[1] The French system of shoeing is entirely different from and, it would seem, inferior to the American.

too shallow or enter the vital parts; two conditions which require great tact on his part.

For the pleasure-horse, the Charlier shoe, the English shoe, or the French shoe adjusted after the English manner, with a plate of leather or India-rubber under the sole to protect it, should be employed.

The flat foot is, indeed, predisposed to contusions of the heels, the sole, and the frog; it is unsightly from its form and its volume; its great width causes the horse to interfere; it takes a bad grip of the pavement.

Full Foot.—This defect is only an exaggeration of the preceding. Here, the sole does not have the least concavity; it is almost a perfect plane over its whole surface. This foot is also more exposed to contusions, and requires a very wide shoe applied with small nails in order to avoid pressing on or pricking the sensitive tissue.

Pumiced Foot.—In the **pumiced** foot, not only is the sole not a plane surface, but it is bulging inferiorly, and surpasses the inferior border of the wall almost over its entire periphery. The difficulties of properly shoeing such a foot increase proportionally with the degree of the defect. The farrier, in fitting the shoe, if he is not very skilful, alters the axis of the member, deforms the axis of the foot and diminishes the security of its contact with the ground.

This vice of conformation does not consist in a simple defect of the hoof alone; it extends also to the *third phalanx*, whose inferior face is plane or convex. A horse with pumiced feet can doubtless render good service, but as soon as the shoes are removed he cannot perform labor, the plantar surface not being protected from the incessant contusions which are produced by the roughnesses of the soil. He should therefore be reserved for the farmer or for soft roads.

Foot with Bunions.—The foot is thus designated (though incorrectly) when there exists upon its inferior face, at the level of the quarters, more or less voluminous eminences (*bunions*), due to an abnormal conformation of the third phalanx in the corresponding region. This defect most often accompanies full and pumiced feet, and is more frequently observed on the internal side than on the external. It predisposes the sole to bruises from the convexity of which the latter is the seat, and exacts the most accurate and careful shoeing. The web of the shoe, indeed, should be wide and so adjusted in regard to the tumor that it can be protected with tar and oakum maintained by a plate of leather. If the animal lose the shoe on the road he will soon fall lame.

Feet that are *flat, full, pumiced,* and *with bunions* are peculiar to

the anterior members; the sole of the posterior supports less weight and is always more concave.

Foot with High Heels.—This conformation (Fig. 120), common in some horses in meridional France (also in the so-called Arabian horses), does not result, as might be believed, from an excessive height of the wall at the heels. The sole here is hollow and the frog elevated from the ground. The pastern, from the fact of this bad direction of the foot, becomes straight, renders the animal straight-jointed, and displaces most of the weight on the toe. Many horses are high-heeled from the neglect of the farrier to lower the heels before resetting the shoe, and hence in the long run they become hoof-bound. Such cases are not difficult to remedy; it suffices to pare off the heels regularly and give them a proper height. If the defect is congenital, we must content ourselves with the foot such as it is, and only endeavor to prevent the increase of the defect in the shoeing, by employing a shoe thin at the heels.

Fig. 120.

Foot with Low Heels.—This form of the foot (Fig. 121) is open to objections of an inverse order. The weight of the body bears upon the heels, which, ordinarily weak and sensitive, are thus easily bruised and contused. There results, besides, a more marked inclination of the pastern, which fatigues the tendons, and this so much more as the toe is longer and the horse longer-jointed. The shoeing, in this case, should aim at restoring the foot to its normal axis and, at the same time, protect the posterior part of the heels. It is with this object in view that we recommend a semi-covered wide-heeled shoe; nor should the heel ever be thickened, as is the usual tendency to recommend. It is better to raise the heels by interposing between them and the shoe one or two thicknesses of leather, of India-rubber, or again, by the application of the English patents; in a word, of elastic pads incapable of producing contusions. If the frog is well developed, it will be judicious to alternate the covered-heel shoe with the bar shoe.

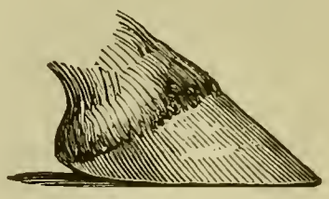


Fig. 121.

Foot with Sloping Heels.—The heels in this conformation are much inclined forward and acquire an abnormal length, a disposition which leads to all the evil results of a low- and long-jointed pastern.

The indication, therefore, is to shorten the foot over its whole area, particularly towards the toe and the mammæ. Precaution in paring it

must, however, be employed, for the toe is not as long as it might appear. The latter should be shortened as much as possible. The shoe should be closely fitted at the toe and well sunk into the wall at this point; its extremities also must be kept somewhat long. Plates of leather under the heels or the English patents, by tilting the hoof forward, will contribute to re-establish its normal axis.

Low and *sloping* heels are phenomena peculiar to the fore-feet.

3. Defects of the Axis.

Outbow-footed.—The **outbowed foot** is that in which the toe is turned outward; it is more frequently observed in the posterior members than in the anterior. We have already seen that this conformation is associated in most instances with a deviation of the part of the member below the knee or the hock; but it may also be due to a mere change in the axis of the foot. In either case the hoof will soon show the effects of this vicious direction of its axis. The internal quarter, pressed towards the median line, and consequently more surcharged, has a tendency to contract and press upon the living tissues below. The animal, besides, almost invariably strikes the opposite member with this quarter, as is well known. This is the principal accident which the farrier is called upon to prevent. Paring the external quarter more will ease the internal, which is always weaker; the axis will thus be regulated in the greatest measure possible. The shoe must not project beyond the wall at the external mamma or at the internal quarter; the heels should be of equal length and width. It is only after several shoeings that certain feet may be straightened.[1]

Parrot-toed Foot, Cross-footed.—This is a defect diametrically opposed to the preceding, and has inverse deformities. Here it is the toe which is turned inward, and much more frequently in the fore- than in the hind-foot. The internal quarter is stronger and relatively more prominent than the external, the heel of which is contracted and bruised quite easily. The horse, in this case, interferes with the mamma. Hence, before the shoe is adjusted, the internal mamma and the anterior part of the corresponding quarter must be well rasped off, so as to lower that side of the foot. The shoe will have to be close-fitting on the inside, well "garnished" and slightly covered on the outside; the *garniture* of its heels should be equal on both sides.

Crooked Foot.—The crooked foot is that in which the hoof is

---

[1] This defect is so obstinate to treatment by shoeing because it is often dependent upon anatomical alterations of the phalanges and their articular surfaces, which cannot be modified.

inclined to the one side or to the other. This defect, rarely congenital, depends rather upon improper shoeing. In the first case, it is caused by a vicious axis of the superior parts of the member, and very often accompanies the outbowed and the parrot-toed foot. At other times it is observed in a horse simply too close or too open in front or behind. In the second case, it is due to excessive paring by the farrier of one of the two quarters.

However it may be, the evil effects remain the same; the lower side bears the most weight; the soft parts here are compressed and bruised, and the quarter becomes tilted to one side. The shoeing should endeavor to re-establish gradually the normal axis, by sparing the deformed quarter, protecting it with the wide-heeled, projecting shoe, if this be possible, and, finally, by lowering the normal quarter.

Foot Pincard or Rampin (Fig. 122).—Some make a difference between the pincard and the rampin foot. Still, these two are only degrees of the same defect, characterized especially by the foot touching the ground only with the toe. This disposition allows the heels to acquire a great height. This defect is peculiar to the hind feet, where it is in reality only an exaggeration and continuation of the attitude which these members affect during the efforts of violent traction. It often coexists with a low-jointed pastern. The rampin horse wears his shoe very rapidly, but only at the toe; his shoeing is expensive, and he is exposed to fissures of the wall called toe-cracks, on account of the excess of weight which this region of the foot must support. We believe, with Lecoq, that most of the corrective measures resorted to in the shoeing only aggravate this defect. Let us say, nevertheless, that we are in the habit, in order to cure it, to save the heels and employ the *pincard shoe*, with corks on the heels, whose length is in relation with the distance of the foot from the ground.

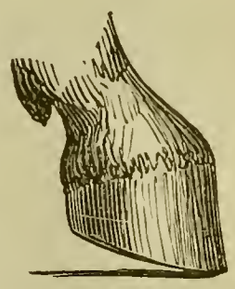


Fig. 122.

Club-Foot.—"There is not much accord," says Lecoq,[1] "upon the true meaning of this word as applied to the foot of the horse. Some, comparing this malformation to the same species of deformity existing in the human subject, designate by the term *club-foot* any foot that is strongly deviated outward or inward. This is a very rare condition, since, as Girard has observed, a horse thus conformed, not being able to render any service, is promptly sacrificed. Others designate under the name club-foot all the deformities of the horse's foot in

[1] F. Lecoq, Extérieur du cheval, p. 175, 5e éd., Paris, 1876.

which the coronet as well as the fetlock are strongly displaced forward, from the retraction of the ligaments and the tendons primarily, and the elongation of the heels secondarily. This defect sometimes exists to such a degree that the anterior face of the wall touches the ground at each step.

"When a club-foot is of long standing, a modification of the articular surfaces of the phalanges takes place, and the disease is then incurable. If, however, the accident is recent and due especially to contraction of the flexor tendons, the horse still has some value, for the operation of *tenotomy* can sometimes straighten the foot, though the member may not entirely regain its original strength."

4. Defects of Quality of the Horn.

Soft Foot.—The foot is thus characterized when the horn is soft, without consistency, and yielding to pressure. The wall and the sole, in spite of the large volume of the hoof, are thinner than in ordinary conditions. Hence such a foot is difficult to shoe.

The clinches of the nails easily tear through the soft horn and will not hold the shoe. The foot is easily pricked in driving the nail, on account of the thinness of the wall. Finally, the horse is subject, for the same reason, to contusions of the sole, contusions which are so much more frequent as the foot is heavy and the knee-action high. The shoeing consists of a light, *semi-covered* shoe, to be nailed on with thin nails.

Dry Foot.—The *dry* foot is one whose horn is hard, dry, and brittle. The latter grows slowly and breaks readily when the foot is unshod or when too heavy nails are employed in fastening the shoe. Exposed to the same accidents as the soft foot, it must be dealt with in the same cautious way.

Broken Foot.—The foot is called *broken* when more or less extensive areas of the wall along its plantar border are broken or chipped off, so as to interfere with the regular distribution of the nails.

In the unshod horse, the best hoof is susceptible of breaking accidentally, but most often this defect depends upon a poor quality of the horn, which is too soft or too brittle. It is more serious than is believed, on account of the extreme care which it demands from the farrier. The nail-holes of the shoe can only be placed at those points where the wall is still intact. The nails must not be driven too close to the edges under the penalty of breaking the horn still more. The latter circumstance would necessitate too many *shoulders* or *tongues* on

the shoe, sunk into the horn at the toe or the mammæ, to supply the insufficiency of the nails.

The broken hoof is sometimes restored to its normal form by the application of gutta-percha at the points where this is necessary. It is then possible to apply a normal shoe provided with an ordinary number of nail holes equally distant from each other. It is not rare to see an animal whose foot has thus been treated offered for sale; at times even the nails at the level of the broken parts are simply riveted on the shoe at these places and the irregularities filled with gutta-percha or some other coating. The examination of the hoof can therefore never be too minute.

Foot with Weak Heels.—This is a variety of the low-heeled foot, in which the posterior parts are defective by reason of an insufficient consistency of the horn, and are consequently predisposed to contusions of all kinds. The shoe, in such cases, should protect the parts which lack strength, without bearing on them, either by means of a wide-heeled shoe, or, if the frog be well developed, the application of a bar shoe.

E.—Accidents occasioned by Shoeing.

The conditions of domestication of the horse make it necessary for those who employ him to protect the four hoofs by a shoe, a sort of incomplete metallic sole, destined to insure them against the excessive wear of the horn, which would otherwise soon impair their functional usefulness.

Shoeing, farriery, is the art which consists in the methodical application to the foot of the *shoe* or the protecting apparatus of which we have spoken. It is, in most instances, not very difficult to perform this operation, but there are some cases in which, either from the incompetency and unskilfulness of the farrier or the conformation of the foot itself, shoeing causes more or less grave accidents, in regard to which we must confine ourselves to a simple enumeration.

Pricking.—Pricking is the penetration into the sensitive tissues of a nail which is driven too closely by the farrier. Again, it can be caused by the division of a flawy nail, of which one segment enters the living tissues (the quick), while the other issues on the outer side. Its gravity varies with the length of time the nail remains in the soft parts. If the nail be drawn out again immediately, it is without gravity; if, however, the direction of the nail be not recognized, it may lead to serious complications. The nail should be removed and not reinserted.

Pricking is sometimes concealed by the farrier, who rivets the nail upon the shoe at the level of the seat of injury.

Compression by the Nail.—This condition is produced when the nails are driven too deeply (*too soft*),—that is to say, too close to the sensitive tissues, which are thus more or less compressed. This accident happens quite often in soft or weak feet, in consequence of the thinness of their horn. It is easy to perceive this accident by making the horse trot, and to remedy it by removing the shoe immediately.

Compression by the Shoe.—Compression of the sole occurs when the shoe, which is badly fitted, bears in some places on a weak or thin sole. Compression also takes place when the farrier has pared the sole too much or draws the shoe too tightly. Certain defective feet (flat and pumiced feet) are more particularly predisposed to this accident.

Heated Sole.—The sole is called *heated* when it has been subjected for too long a time to the contact of the red-hot shoe; it is the more predisposed as it is less concave.

Burnt Sole.—The sole upon which has been applied for too long a time a shoe simply *red* is, on the contrary, qualified *burnt*. In the preceding case the abundant carbonaceous layer formed by burnt horn has protected the foot against the injurious effect of the heat. Here, there is very little charring of the horn, which permits the heat to penetrate quickly and deeply into the living tissues.

The burnt sole is rebellious to treatment.

Excessive Paring of the Foot.—When the foot is pared too much it acquires an exaggerated sensibility from the excessive thinness given, by the farrier's knife, both to the sole and the inferior border of the wall.

Cuts from the Hoof-Knife and the Butteris.—These are accidents produced by unskilful or unintelligent employment of these instruments of farriery. Their gravity is in relation with the depth, the nature and the seat of the wounds which result from them. They are sometimes complicated by red excrescences, excessive granulations of the subjacent tissue, known under the name of *cherries*.

F.—Diseases of the Foot.

"These numerous and varied diseases," says J. Girard,[1] "can be produced by prolonged travelling on dry, hard, rough, and stony roads; by concussion, the contact of external bodies and even of one

[1] J. Girard, Traité du pied, 2e éd., p. 95, Paris, 1828.

foot with the other; by the deviation of some of the superior regions or articulations; and, finally, by the shoeing."

In all diseases of the foot the horse, when exercised at a walk or the trot, does not make a free and equal contact with the ground upon the whole of the plantar surface of the foot; certain movements are precipitated, others are effected in preference upon the toe, upon one quarter more than the other, or again upon the heels.

We must confine ourselves, not to go beyond our domain, to the enumeration of the principal of these diseases, by simply mentioning in what they consist.

Contraction of the Foot.—**Contraction of the foot** (hoof-bound) is the more or less marked contraction of the foot in its posterior parts.

It is distinguished as *true* and *false*, according to the form which it assumes.

In *true contraction* the diminution of the lateral diameter affects the quarters as well as the heels, which are always very high; and hence such a foot is qualified *mule's foot*. As a consequence of the compression, the sole becomes more concave and the frog, in a great measure, becomes atrophied.

It is nearly always acquired, and occurs more frequently in meridional horses than in any others. The causes are numerous, but all can be traced to one of two factors: desiccation of the horn or interference with its normal elasticity.

In *false contraction*, known under the name *contraction of the heels* (*narrow heels*, *compressed heels*, etc.), the hoof preserves its ordinary form, except in the region of the heels, which are more or less drawn towards each other without attaining the excessive height which they assume in true contraction.

Inflammation of the Frog, Thrush.—These are two inflammatory conditions of the frog, which are accompanied by a separation of the horn, with a blackish, purulent, and very fetid discharge, emanating from the median and the lateral lacunæ, principally from the former, especially when in feet in which it is prolonged between the two heels.

Canker.—In **canker** the horn of the frog first, and then that of the sole, softens, separates, and, finally, is shed, thus exposing the living tissues, whose papillæ, very hypertrophied, form fleshy vegetations, often voluminous, known under the name *fici*. These alterations of the keratogenous membrane, which have a tendency to spread to the surrounding healthy tissues, discharge an abundant caseous secretion of a very fetid odor.

Seams.—**Seams** (*cracks*) are longitudinal fissures of the wall, which extend from the inferior border to the coronary band or to the vicinity of the latter.

They are called *complete* when, involving the entire length and thickness of the wall, they extend to the podophyllous tissue; they are qualified *incomplete* in the contrary case.

Relatively to their seat, they are distinguished as follows: *quarter seam*, the complete fissure of the quarter, which is more common in the anterior members, and on the internal side more than the external side.

Seam of the *toe* (toe-crack), fissure of the toe; it occurs more frequently in the hind- than the fore-foot, and as it seems to divide the foot into two lateral moieties, the animal is, on this account, sometimes called *cloven-footed*.

Seam of the *bars* affects the latter and breaks their continuity. This is one of the accidents of the foot most rebellious to treatment.

We will also say, in this connection, that seams or cracks are sometimes concealed, in animals offered for sale, either by a coating of gutta-percha, putty, wax, or simply hoof ointment. They are called *barred* when, as a means of treatment, their borders are approximated by the aid of special iron clasps.

Corns.—**Corns** are contusions of the sole in the region comprised between the wall and the bars. They are common in feet with low and weak heels, especially in contracted feet.

They are called *dry* when the horn which covers them is of a yellowish color and stained with blood.

A corn is *moist* when the exudation of blood and serum, in consequence of the bruising, is more abundant, renders the horn softer, and even separates it over a small area from the tissues below.

Finally, it is called *suppurating* whenever the alteration, not confined to a simple ecchymosis, has occasioned inflammation and suppuration of the subjacent tissues.

Bruised Sole.—**Bruised sole** is an accident of the same nature as that of corns. It only differs from the latter in that it consists of a contusion of a more or less large area of the sole at the quarters or at the toe. According to the objective characters of the horn, it is also qualified *dry*, *moist*, or *suppurating*.

Concussion of the Hoof.—Ancient veterinarians have designated under this name a localized congestive state of the keratogenous membrane of the foot resulting from external violence, most frequently the blows of the farrier's hammer.

This alteration differs only from that of laminitis in that it is due to the influence of purely local causes. Anatomically speaking, they are identical.

Laminitis.—**Laminitis** (*founder*) is, primarily, a congestion of the keratogenous apparatus in the region of the toe and the mammæ.

Under the pressure of the serous and sanguineous exudation which results therefrom, the podophyllous tissue (*flesh of the foot*), tightly compressed between the wall and the third phalanx, becomes extremely sensitive, which obliges the animal to walk upon the heel, or even renders all support by the foot impossible. The founder, in this case, is called *acute*, for it is accompanied by phenomena generally very intense.

If the temperature fall, the symptoms ameliorate, and inflammatory phenomena gradually invade the tissues previously congested, the keratogenous membrane, at this level, becomes the seat of an abnormal and exaggerated secretory function, characterized by a profound deformity of the hoof and a decided alteration in the form and relation of the internal osseous structures. It is this which constitutes *chronic founder* or *laminitis*.

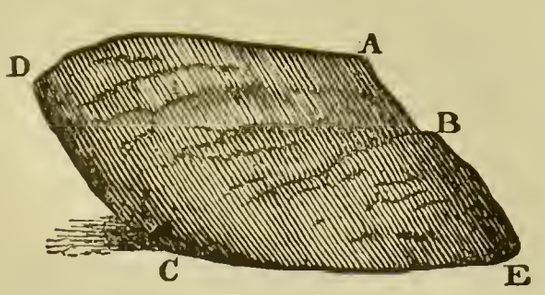


Fig. 123.

The foot, in such cases, assumes an oval form and the wall is decidedly *rammy*; its toe acquires an enormous thickness and becomes convex; its heels are high and touch the ground first in locomotion. The sole, compressed by the plantar border of the third phalanx, loses

its concavity; it presents, towards the toe, a swelling in the form of a *crescent;* its peripheral border, finally, is separated from the inferior border of the wall at the toe and the mammæ by a voluminous *wedge* of podophyllous horn. The latter may be solid, or it may contain an internal cavity (*seedy-toe*), filled by a reddish, dry, porous mass formed by the residue of the serous and bloody exudate from the podophyllous tissue, which the farrier at times fraudulently endeavors to conceal with the shoe.

Seedy-Toe.—This condition is not always due to founder, because the cavity by which it manifests itself may exist under the sole as well as under the wall. This allows us to distinguish two varieties of seedy-toe: that of the *sole* and that of the *wall.* The first is much less grave than the second; it is occasioned by strong contusions of the velvety tissue; percussion of the sole over this region is resonant as soon as the cavity is formed.

False Quarter.—"**False quarter** is especially characterized by the absence of the wall at the quarter, in consequence of an operation or an accident sacrificing the coronary band. While it lasts there is nothing in this region but the horn secreted by the podophyllous tissue."[1] The foot is, in this case, quite frequently restored by a false quarter made of gutta-percha.

Avalure and Circles.—By the term *avalure* is meant the *normal* descent or growth of the horn, from the fact of the continual formation over the whole periphery of the cutidure. It becomes morbid, *pathological,* when it takes place in an irregular manner only over a portion of the wall, or over the whole area, which qualifies it *entire* or *partial;* the animal then grows a *new foot* or a *new quarter.* According to the case, it is called: *complete,* when the growth of the horn which corresponds to it extends to the inferior border of the wall; *incomplete,* when this growth has not yet reached this border; *irregular,* if it takes place more rapidly at one point than at another. Under these diverse circumstances we have altered nutrition of the coronary band manifesting itself in the form of *circles* (*rammy foot*), which often surround the whole wall, sometimes one of the quarters, and which occasion a marked soreness in the foot from the compression which they exercise upon the sensitive parts. The circled foot (Fig. 124) is frequently a symptom of chronic founder and, in general, of all the diseases in which the keratogenous membrane is extensively involved.

Fig. 124.

Keraphyllocele.—**Keraphyllocele** is a horn tumor of a cylindrical or conical form, which exists on the internal face of the wall, particularly at the toe; it compresses and atrophies the vascular tissues.

It is qualified *fistulous* or *solid* according as it contains, or does not contain, an internal cavity. Its mode of formation resembles in all respects that of the *wedge* of horn in chronic laminitis; it consists, in fact, of a localized congestion of the podophyllous tissue, followed by a hypersecretion of the corresponding laminæ. Among its causes we may recognize either a slight founder, a seam, or most frequently violent contusions of the wall, consecutive, for example, to the blows of the farrier's hammer when he sets the toe-clip.

Quitters.—This term designates a partial necrosis of some of the tissues

[1] Commission d'hygiène hippique, loc. cit., p. 190.

entering into the construction of the inferior part of the members. Quitters are divided as follows:

The *cutaneous* is that of the cutidure or coronary band, and may be considered as a veritable *furuncle*.

The *tendinous* is the necrosis, in small fragments, of the aponeurotic, ligamentous, and tendinous tissues of the phalangal region.

Furuncle of the frog consists in a partial necrosis of the plantar cushion or fleshy frog.

Finally, *cartilaginous quitter* is nothing else than a slowly-progressive necrosis of the complementary fibro-cartilages of the third phalanx. This is much the gravest on account of its complications and its duration.

Calk.—**Calk** is a wound, a contusion of the coronary band, at the toe, the quarters, or the heels, which the animal inflicts himself by the contact of the shoe of another foot during locomotion. It belongs to the category of grave diseases.

Crapaudine or "Mal d'Ane."—This affection, thus named because it is more common in the ass than in the horse, develops first at the toe upon the perioplic band, then upon the cutidure, and originates essentially from a chronic inflammation with perverted secretory functions of these two structures. It seems to be, as H. Bouley believed, of the same nature as canker, and as a sort of exfoliation of the periople, with this difference, nevertheless, "that the secreted product, instead of remaining diffluent, concretes after its formation,"[1] and constitutes, at the seat of the disease, a rugous surface, laminated longitudinally and transversely, varying in severity and extent according to its period of duration.

We have deemed it needless to enter into more details as to the diseases of the foot, since their diagnosis, their prognosis, and their treatment belong entirely to the jurisdiction of the veterinarian. The foot is the veritable foundation of the animal edifice, which should always be remembered in the purchase of a horse. It is a region in relation to which one cannot be too fastidious. Is it defective? is it diseased? One can then foretell the speedy wearing out and ruin of the animal, as well as considerable expenses of shoeing and treatment. On the contrary, is it duly constituted? is it healthy? Every day the animal will resume, without discomfort, the work of the day before; he will never be incapacitated from work, for it is in the inferior regions that the members begin to blemish, and all the more slowly as the extremities are better conformed. Hence, in what concerns the diseases, we have only defined them and indicated their seat, not so much for the student to understand them as to direct his attention to certain parts of the hoof more predisposed than others to lose those characters which constitute the desirable points in these parts.

---

[1] H. Bouley, Nouveau Dictionnaire de médecine, d'hygiène et de chirurgie vétérinaires, t. iv. p. 552.

SECTION THIRD.

PROPORTIONS.

PART I.

INTRODUCTION.

CHAPTER I.

PRELIMINARY IDEAS.

Definition.—The word **proportions,** in its most general acceptation, signifies agreement and correlation when it is applied to the different parts of one whole. Considering it from the point of view which concerns us, this meaning should still be preserved, and, in the exterior, the study of the proportions endeavors to point out with precision the agreement of the regions with each other and with the body as a whole.

Agreement or Relation of the Regions.—The bodies by which we are surrounded are composed of elements, simple or complex, possessing a kind of reciprocal connection with one another, from which results the particular state in which these bodies appear to us.

As to living beings, they are a collection of organs whose action conspires to a sole end, the manifestation of that special mode of activity which is called *life.* These organs, when we study only that which is apparent to us from the exterior, show us relations of length, width, thickness, direction, development, etc., which cause the animated machine to present itself to us in a form always similar in its *general* features, but, on the contrary, infinitely varied in its details. It is on account of these general proportions, constantly the same and easily recognized in each individual of the same species, that we distinguish,

at first sight, for example, a horse from an ass or a zebra. But the opponents of the relationship theory affirm that these characters cannot be compared; it is the disposition, the attitude, the appearance, the color, the presence or the absence, etc., of such or such parts, much more than the dimensions, which impress us at first. To make this assertion is to recognize implicitly the relations of the many parts of the organic collection, from which proceed the differences shown. The proportions of the ass are not more similar to those of man than those of man are to be confounded with those of the monkey; and so long as these species exist, we shall find in their external form the relations, more or less comprehensible, which their regions disclose at the present time. In different individuals these vary but very little, and in the same race they are not, as has been said, essentially variable, for the features of resemblance become purely illusionary; we know, on the contrary, that they are used as a principal foundation for all classifications whose object is the methodical description of the different ethnic groups.

Harmony and Discord; Proportion and Disproportion.—When the mind examines any living form whatsoever, a conception, a production of its own activity, it always experiences in the presence of the one or the other a series of sensations which convey to it an *agreeable* or a *disagreeable* impression. We are not affected in the same way by the reading of a literary composition, at the sight of a picture, a statue, an object of art, the recital of a dramatic adventure. The association of ideas, words, facts; the musical power of a sentence; the rhythm of discourse; the elevation of sentiment; the combination of geometrical lines, color, objects, or scenes described,—all these conditions of persons and things excite our sensibility differently, please or fatigue us according to the manner in which they are expressed and the aptitude of the person whom we wish to appreciate them.

In the same manner, the sight of a horse pleases or displeases us by the elegance of his form, the expression of his physiognomy, the vigor, the gracefulness, and the elegance of his gaits. Beautiful nature, like a fine book, manifests in every one a sentiment of physical and moral pleasure in proportion to the degree of impressionability and special culture which the observer possesses. Sympathy or antipathy, emotion or indifference, such are the results by which the correlation of things is manifested to our senses; by which, in other words, the harmony or discord of these relations is indicated. In ordinary language everything that is in harmony or concordance is called *proportionate;* everything that is not so is *disproportionate,* although in many

instances the arrangement of the parts is different. In this respect, it is plain that the type of a handsome draught-horse approaches as near perfection, in its way, as that of a fine race-horse. Both satisfy in the same degree, although in a different way, the requirements of the true connoisseur, for both are the expressions of a perfect adaptation to the end desired.

Proportions are then *good* or *bad*, *perfect* or *defective;* the subject in which they are found is *well formed, correct in his lines, has a handsome form, beautiful symmetry, beautiful lines;* or he is *in two pieces, inharmoniously constructed, wanting in form and in symmetry.*

The Agreeable, the Beautiful, and the Good.—"But," Bourgelat[1] says, "it is just as certain that all eyes have not the power to judge well, though, as it is a fact that all men indiscriminately believe that they have the right of judging. However, the decisions formed upon the knowledge of certain established and demonstrated rules are the only ones which should be held as the law; for every judgment which has for its foundation only fancy, prejudice, inclination, a purely customary and imperfected notion of the thing, is only a self-conceited and often false opinion, denied by some, accepted by others, and sometimes even soon abandoned by him who has conceived it."

Thus the distinction between the *agreeable* and the *beautiful* in things pertaining to the horse has for a long time, as we know, been very clearly established; between that which pleases the eye and that which signifies energy, vigor, a perfect adaptation of the motor to its end; between that which is self-conceit, prejudice, mode, and that which is reason or demonstrated truth, science.

What, then, are the qualities which impress the laity,—that is to say, the mass of people, ignorant of the facts of which we speak? Elegance of form, gracefulness of attitude and movement, roundness of the lines, indicating an easy, graceful action, and implying the absence of effort in the movements; vivacity, mobility, a certain gentle look of distinction in the physiognomy, which admits the predominance of moral perfection over the purely physical instincts. The animal which performs a laborious work contracts his muscles, stiffens his spine, extends his members, and shows under his skin a multitude of angular projections, straight or broken lines, which suggest vigor, energy, power, but which always indicate hard labor. Hence it is that we dwell, in preference, unknown to ourselves, on the spectacle of this energy in the state of rest, for as soon as it

---

[1] C. Bourgelat, Traité de la conformation extérieure du cheval, 5e éd., p. 194.

becomes visible, the grace, calmness, ease, which before pleased, will disappear. A round croup, flattened haunches, a sway back, a "fat," thick withers, an arched neck, slim canons, small feet, and a slender head will give more pleasure to the majority of inexperienced eyes than long, projecting lines, even a little roughly so, well-marked muscles, strong members, a spacious chest, broad articulations, large nostrils, etc.

All eyes do not see in the same way, nor even appreciate forcibly what is simply agreeable. With greater reason the horsemen are rare who are capable of appreciating the beauty of which Bourgelat speaks; not the arbitrary, which varies with individuals and their artistic temperament, but the *useful*, which should be understood as synonymous with fitness, and which consists essentially in the adaptation of the organs to their function; that which results from the harmonious proportions of the parts and communicates to the *whole* a combination of qualities which renders it good, and not that which makes the same agreeable only to the senses. This beauty, to be appreciated, demands a certain intuition, much culture, study, acute observation, and judgment; we will refer to this at the end of this work.

CHAPTER II.

HISTORICAL.

Now that we know what difficulties are comprised in the study of proportions, it is not surprising that all horsemen have endeavored to establish the basis of these proportions the more safely to lead their pupils to a knowledge of the horse. But, among the many authors, those are few in number who have really produced upon this subject anything original. Many criticisms not founded upon facts, any amount of commentaries, and often much injustice are, unfortunately, the arguments of those who have entered the arena after the masters whose researches they have had neither the patience nor the courage to investigate carefully.

Abou-Bekr-Ibn-Bedr.—A veterinarian of distinction, Abou-Bekr, son of Bedr, has given in his book, "Le Nâcérî," all the questions referring to the science and the treatment of the Arabian horse. We find in this important

work, which dates from the first third of the fourteenth century of the Christian era, the first vague, incomplete, and indeed incorrect indication of the measurements concerning the proportions of the horse. We will confine ourselves to this mention.[1]

Grisone.—The origin of the idea of proportions is therefore wrongly attributed to an Italian veterinarian of the sixteenth century, Frederico Grisone,[2] a very imperfect idea, too, for he attempts in his book, which treats especially of horsemanship, rather to determine the qualities of the parts than to express their relations; he indicates the characters which, according to his opinion, should constitute beauty; besides these characters being in several respects very disputable, and in others very erroneous, we do not see that he has felt the necessity of comparing the regions with one another, and of expressing their relations with positive data. The establishment of the proportions, such as they are understood at the present time, does not therefore belong to him.

Bourgelat.—To Bourgelat, then, belongs all the praise of this attempt. He says[3] that, "since beauty resides in the fitness and agreement of the parts, it is very necessary to observe their particular and respective dimensions; and, to acquire a knowledge of the proportions, *we must institute a kind of measurement which may be indiscriminately common to all horses.*

"The part which can be used as a basis of proportions for all others is the *head.* Let us measure its length between two parallel lines, one tangent to the nape of the neck, or to the top of the forelock, the other tangent to the extremity of the superior lip, by a line perpendicular to these two parallel lines; we will thus obtain its geometrical length. Divide this length into three parts, and give them a particular name which can be applied to all heads, as, for example, that of *prime.* . . . But all the parts which we shall consider, either in their length, height, or thickness, cannot constantly have either a whole prime, a prime and a half, or three primes; subdivide each prime into three equal parts, which we will name *seconds;* and as this subdivision is not sufficient to furnish us with the correct measure of all the parts, we will again subdivide each second into twenty-four *points.*"

The geometrical length of the head is then divided into 3 primes, 9 seconds, or 216 points. Now, as this region may be defective in proportion, Bourgelat had to seek for another unit of measure in the height and in the length of the body, which, in the well-formed horse, are equal to two and one-half times the length of the head. By dividing one or the other of these dimensions into five equal parts, and by taking two of these parts, he then established a unit of measure such as the head would give if it were well proportioned.

This being laid down, let us now detail the law of Bourgelat,—that is to say,

---

For more details, see: 1. Le Nâcéri ou Traité complet d'hippologie et d'hippiatrie arabes, translated from the Arabian by M. Perron, t. ii. p. 96, Paris, 1859, chez Bouchard-Huzard; 2. Le Livre de l'agriculture d'Ibn-al-Awam, translated from the Arabian by J.-J. Clément-Mullet, t. ii., 2d part, p. 33, Paris, 1866. This manuscript is older than the preceding. M. Clément-Mullet wrote it in the twelfth century of our era.

[2] Frederico Grisone, Ordini di cavalcare et modi di conoscere le nature de cavalli, emendare i vitii loro, et ammaestrargli per l'uso della guerra et commodità de gli huomini, Venetia, 1558, p. 5.

[3] C. Bourgelat, loc. cit., p. 199.

the *résumé* of the rules which, according to his opinion, constitute the foundation of the beautiful proportions of the horse's body.[1]

1st. **Three geometrical lengths of the head** give:

The *entire height of the horse, ab* (Fig. 125, *A*), counting from the forelock to the ground upon which he rests, provided that his head be well carried.

2d. **Two heads and a half** equal:

The *height of the body, cd*, from the top of the withers to the ground.

The *length of this same body, ef*, from the point of the arm to the point of the buttock inclusive.

3d. **A whole head** gives:

The *length of the neck, cg*, from the summit of the withers to the posterior part of the poll.

The *height of the shoulders, ch*, from the top of the withers to the point of the elbow.

The *thickness of the body, ij*, from the middle of the abdomen to the middle of the back.

The *width of the body* from one side to the other, *kl* (Fig. 125, *B* and *C*).

4th. **A head, *bb′*, measured from the top of the forelock to the commissure of the lips,** will equal (Fig. 125):

The *length of the croup, of*, from the angle of the haunch to the point of the buttock.

The *width of the croup or of the haunches, mn* (Fig. 125, *B* and *C*).

The *height of the croup, pq* (Fig. 125, *A*), taken from the summit of the latter to the patella, the leg being at rest.

The *postero-lateral length of the legs or tibial region, qr*, from the patella to the centre of the tibio-astragaloid articulation.

The *perpendicular height, rs*, of the same articulation above the ground.

The *distance from the summit of the withers to the insertion of the neck into the chest, ct.*

5th. **Twice the length of the croup, *bb′***, gives almost:

The *distance from the point of the patella to the summit of the withers, uc.*

The *distance from the point of the elbow to the summit of the croup. hp.*

6th. **Two-thirds of the length of the head** will equal:

The *width of the breast, vx* (Fig. 125, *B*), from one point of the arm to the other, from outside to outside.

The *horizontal length of the croup, yz* (Fig. 125, *A*), between two verticals, one of which touches the point of the buttock, and the other passes through the summit of the croup and touches the point of the patella.

The *thirds of the hind quarters and of the body*, taken together, *cz*, to the perpendicular line from the withers touching the elbow.

The *anterior length of the leg, uw*, taken from the tuberosity of the tibia to the fold of the hock.

7th. **The half of the head** is the same as:

The *horizontal distance from the point of the arm to the vertical line from the summit of the withers and from the elbow, ee′.*

The *width of the neck, mn*, viewed laterally and taken from its insertion at the intermaxillary space, or from the throat, to the root of the first hairs of the mane, upon a line which forms with the contour of the poll two equal angles.

8th. **The third of the head** gives:

The *height of its superior parts, op* (Fig. 125, *B*), from the summit of the forelock to the line which passes through the most prominent points of the orbits.

---

[1] In Fig. 125, which is an exact reproduction from the large plate of the book of Bourgelat, we have omitted all the more confusing lines; it has also seemed necessary to us to change the letters and somewhat modify the expressions of the original description in order to render the ideas more intelligible to the reader. Finally, we have omitted paragraphs 6 and 7 of the *proportions* of the founder of the veterinary schools, because the measurements which are given there are only a repetition of those mentioned in paragraph 2.

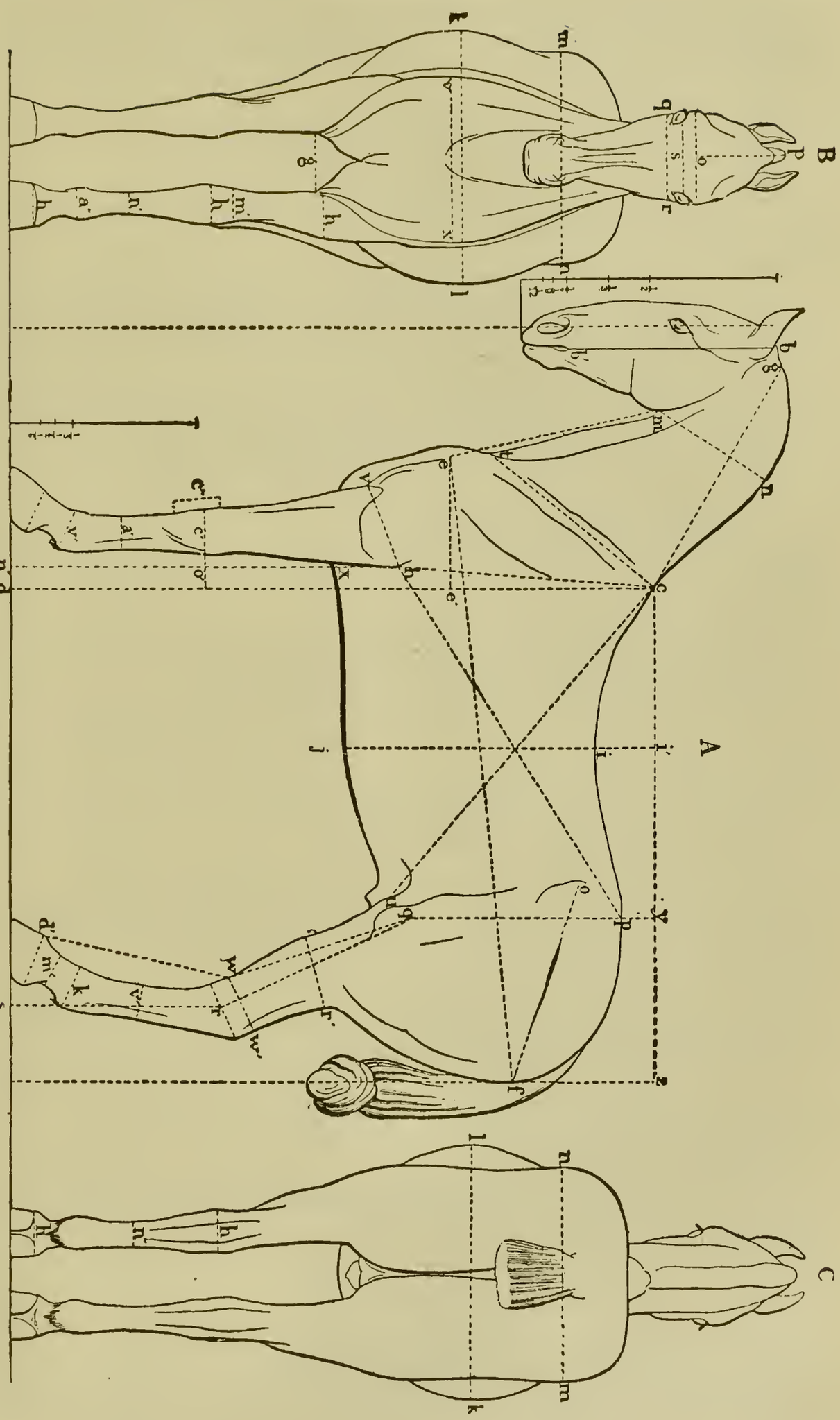


FIG. 125.—The *proportions*, after Bourgelat.

The *width of the head*, *qr*, below the inferior eyelids.

The *lateral width of the forearm*, *vh* (Fig. 125, *A*), taken from its origin in front to the point of the elbow.

9th. **Two-ninths of the head** give:

The *vertical elevation of the point of the elbow* above the sternum, *hx*.

The *depression of the back*, *ii'*, in relation to the summit of the withers.

The *lateral width of the legs*, *vw'*, close to the hocks.

The *opening*, *g* (Fig. 125, *B*), or rather the *distance between the forearms*, from one axilla to the other.

10th. **One-sixth of the head** equals:

The *thickness of the forearm*, *h* (Fig. 125, *B*), seen in front, at its origin, from the axilla to its external contour horizontally.

The *width of the coronet of the anterior feet*, *h* (same figure), either from one side to the other or from before to behind.

The *width of the coronet of the posterior feet*, *h* (Fig. 125, *C*), from one side to the other only.

The *width of the posterior fetlocks*, *k* (Fig. 125, *A*), from in front to behind.

The *width of the knee*, *h* (Fig. 125, *B*), seen in front (measure a little large).

The *thickness of the hocks*, *h* (Fig. 125, *C*) (measure a little small).

11th. **One-twelfth of the head** gives:

The *thickness of the anterior canon*, *n'* (Fig. 125, *B*); the *posterior*, *n''* (Fig. 125, *C*), is a little thicker.

12th. **One-ninth of the head** equals:

The *thickness of the forearm* in its narrowest part, *m'* (Fig. 125, *B*).

The *thickness of the posterior pasterns*, *m'*, seen laterally (Fig. 125, *A*).

13th. **The height of the elbow from the fold of the knee** (Fig. 125, *A*, below) is the same as:

The *height of this same fold to the ground*, *o'n'* (Fig. 125, *A*).

The *height of the patella above the fold of the hock*, *qw*.

The *distance from the fold of the hock to the coronet*, *wd'*.

14th. **One-sixth of the preceding measure** (13th) gives:

The *width of the canon of the forefoot*, *a'* (Fig. 125, *A*), viewed laterally in the middle of its length.

The *width of the anterior fetlock* viewed in front, *a''* (Fig. 125, *B*).

15th. **One-third of the same measure** (13th) is almost equal to:

The *width of the hock* from the fold to the point, *r* (Fig. 125, *A*).

16th. **One-quarter of the same measure** (13th) gives:

The *width of the knee* seen laterally, *c'* (Fig. 125, *A*).

The *length of the knee*, *c''* (Fig. 125, *A*).

17th. **The space between the eyes from one angle to the other**, *s* (Fig. 125, *B*), equals:

The *width of the leg or tibial region* seen laterally at the level of the fold of the buttock, *r'r'* (Fig. 125, *A*).

18th. **One-half of this interval between the eyes** gives:

The *width of the posterior canon* seen laterally, *v* (Fig. 125, *A*).

The *width of the anterior fetlock* seen laterally, *v'* (Fig. 125, *A*).

Finally, the *difference of the height of the croup in relation to the summit of the withers*, *py* (Fig. 125, *A*).

Bourgelat adds that "these are, in the horse, nearly all the parts corresponding through reciprocal dimensions. The eye which is experienced in these different data will recognize them without the use of the hippometre, the compass, or the scale upon the parts whose defects he wishes to judge by the measurement with as much facility as the painter reduces his sketch in making from an ordinary figure one that is colossal."

Bourgelat's work is almost entirely contained in the preceding data; contrary to the accepted opinion, it is based upon a profound knowledge of the horse, as well as upon observations as positive as those which are daily recorded by purely descriptive sciences, as anatomy, for example.

Still, the first and most frequent of the criticisms made against the founder of veterinary schools is his having acted under the inspiration of his own ideas and borrowed from other sources than from nature itself. How can we, indeed, uphold the bad expression, the ugly form, of the model upon which he has traced his geometrical lines? This model, known to-day by the name the *Bourgelat horse*, with his Roman nose, his arched neck, and massive, straight shoulder, rounded croup, flattened haunches, round buttocks, angular hock, and long canons, appears to have aimed at the establishment of a special and new type, very different, however, from that which he had mentally devised. The beholders failed to see all the beauty and accuracy contained in that rough scheme which Vincent's pencil produced under the very eyes of the master. Disagreeably impressed by the whole work, they missed the harmony of the important lines, they objected to the minuteness of the measurements, and looked upon it as a work of pure imagination, without reflecting that the most gifted imagination is powerless to create such combinations.

It is true Bourgelat did establish his *laws* according to his own idea of the beautiful horse, but he has obtained the proportions from a real type, which still exists, and which by a unanimous acknowledgment connoisseurs also consider the type of beauty.

That there are exaggerations, inaccuracies, in his system is incontestable. Is not this the danger of all inventors, and does it follow from this that we should discredit any of the truths that are offered? Bourgelat has attempted to determine the agreement of the parts with one another and with the whole; this is his main idea; to have seen and appreciated these relations is his merit; finally, he has found some which will live and which show the results to which a correct idea, supported by a good judgment and an exceptional talent, may lead.

But we do not think that we can, following the example of Professor Baron,[1] blame him for having estimated all the external measurement of the body by only one and the same unit: the length of the head. According to our colleague, the *length* of this region should only be used to measure the longitudinal axes, its *width* the transverse, and its *thickness* all that which, in the body, is an element of thickness. Truly, this logic appears a little exclusive. In practice it results in this: a single *rule* being insufficient, three are necessary. Instead of simplifying a rule already too complex, we increase the difficulties threefold at the time when it is so important to point out, in passing, the exceptions and the deviations that are of some interest. To understand the regional relations, one single *common measure* is sufficient, the head or any other part,

[1] Baron, Méthodes de reproduction en zootechnie, p. 159, Paris, 1888.

it matters little which. The head has been rightly selected, because this unit is easy to be obtained, and its individual variations in the same race are more rare than those of the other regions. It is just as convenient to compare the different dimensions of the horse, with the head, and to find their harmonious combinations, as to determine the relations of height, width, and depth of a room, for example, by the same yard measure.

Bourgelat has been criticised for the minutiæ into which he has entered, notably, of the width and the thickness of the articulations and the members, the separation of the eyes, etc. But would he have fallen into this error if he had not especially worked to guide artists in the realization of their works? No doubt he forgot that the more minute his measurements became the more liable they were to show what was erroneous in them, for if the generality of horses are in conformity with his principal rules, they are notably different from the secondary as soon as dissimilar types are in question. This is the very reason why these rules have been successfully opposed, and without difficulty, by most horsemen. It seemed, in fact, a deduction from the ideas of Bourgelat, that there was but one single type of beauty for the horse, while it is evident that the type is *multiple.* To attempt to apply the same scale to the heavy-draught horse and to the race-horse, and assert it beforehand as infallible, was the obligatory consequence that his opponents were sure to draw from Bourgelat's forgetfulness, and to make the most of against him. He believed that his rules had an absolute value, whilst they are essentially *relative* to some particular types.

His other great fault is to have misunderstood the compensations which exist between these regions. In assigning such precise limits to what he believed to be the ideal beauty, he has tacitly declared defective all that was not in conformity with his measures, a logical deduction of his system. The head, for example, was in his opinion either proportionate, too short, or too long. In these latter cases it was to be rejected, whatever might be the length of the neck. Still, we have seen that a neck which is too long redeems a small head; a neck that is short and massive ameliorates in the same manner the effects of a head that is too large. It follows from this that the defects of certain regions are capable of compensating those of some others, always on condition that these last, by agreement with the preceding, are of a reverse order in their results.

Another criticism which can be made against Bourgelat lies in his having absolutely ignored, so to speak, the relations between the angles of the osseous segments of the members. He has occupied himself with little more than the relations of length, width, and thickness of the parts, without considering the desired angles of locomotion which tend to an increase of speed. This is a regrettable omission in this sense, that if the founder of veterinary schools had thought of it with the same intelligence that he showed in the establishment of his *horse-measuring rules*, science would have possessed at least some correct ideas upon this subject, which would have prevented General Morris from inventing, aside from all positive observations, his theory upon the similitude of angles and the parallelism of the bony segments.

Finally, Bourgelat has also omitted to speak of the relations of the body as a whole with the nervous system, another important consideration which might have caused him to speak of the interesting question of the *blood*,—that is to say, of the moral qualities, transmissible by heredity, which endows the horse with the highest qualities of the choicest families of the species.

Saint-Bel.—Saint-Bel,[1] the founder of the veterinary school of Saint-Pancras, endeavored to propagate the principles of Bourgelat in England. He thought that Eclipse, that extraordinary and always unconquerable horse, would be for English scholars the best type of the conformation of the beautiful horse, and he prepared with great care the scale of the proportions of this noble animal.

We do not know what instruments Saint-Bel made use of to measure Eclipse. It is certain that he indicates accurate measurements alongside of others that are altogether impossible. Perhaps he employed the tape-measure. If this were so, the incompatibilities of several of his assertions may be explained. However this may be, we have shown in our drawing the head of Eclipse, such as this horse should have had in order to be regularly conformed.

The length of the head is supposed to be divided into twenty-two equal parts, which are used as a common measure for all parts of the body (Fig. 126):

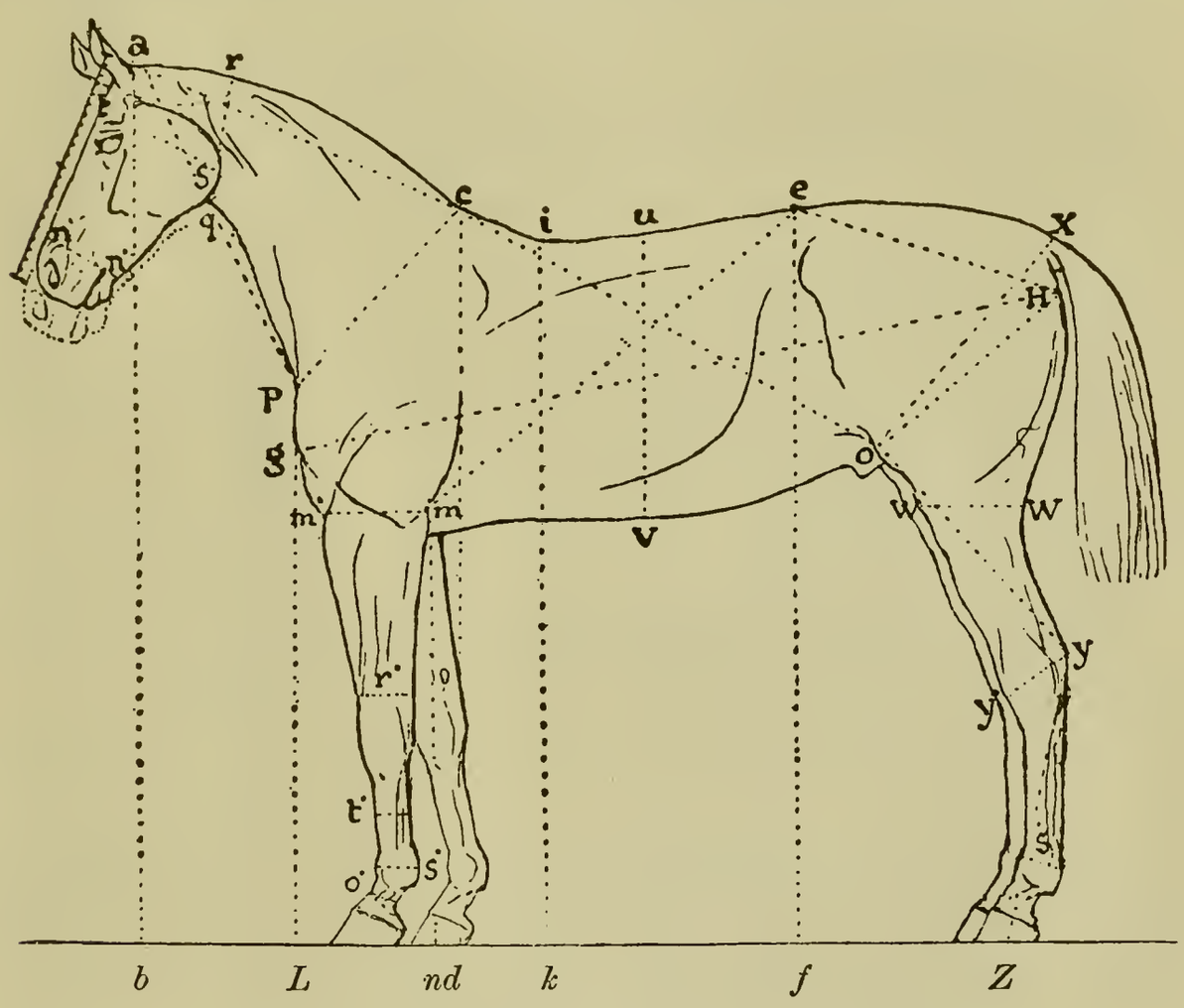


FIG. 126.—The proportions of Eclipse, after Saint-Bel.

1st.	Height of the poll from the ground (*ab*)	3 heads and 13 parts.
2d.	Height of the withers from the ground (*cd*)	3 heads.
3d.	Height of the croup from the ground (*ef*)	3 heads.
4th.	Whole length of the body, from the point of the shoulder to that of the buttock (*gh*)	3 heads and 3 parts.
5th.	Height of the body at the level of the centre of gravity (*ik*)	2 heads and 20 parts.
6th.	Elevation of the chest above the ground (?)	2 heads and 7 parts.
7th.	Height of the perpendicular falling from the point of the shoulder upon the hoof (*gl*)	2 heads and 5 parts.
8th.	Height of the perpendicular from the point of the elbow to the ground (*mn*)	1 head and 19 parts.

[1] William Youatt, History of the English Thoroughbred Horse.

9th.	Distance from the summit of the withers to the stifle-joint (*co*)	1 head and 19 parts.
10th.	Distance from the summit of the croup to the elbow (*em*)	1 head and 19 parts.
11th.	Length of the neck from the withers to the top of the head (*ca*)	1 head and 11 parts.
12th.	Length of the neck from the top of the head to its insertion in the chest (*ap*)	1 head and 11 parts.
13th.	Width of the neck at its union with the chest (*cp*)	1 head.
14th.	Width of the neck in its narrowest part (*qr*)	12 parts.
15th.	Width of the head taken above the eyes (*st*)	12 parts.
16th.	Thickness of the body between the middle of the back and the middle of the abdomen (*uv*)	1 head and 4 parts.
17th.	Width of the body	1 head and 4 parts.
18th.	Distance from the top of the croup to the point of the buttock (*eh*)	1 head and 4 parts.
19th.	Distance from the root of the tail to the stifle-joint (*ox*)	1 head and 4 parts.
20th.	Distance from the stifle-joint to the point of the hock (*oy*)	1 head and 4 parts.
21st.	Distance from the point of the hock to the hoof (*yz*)	1 head and 4 parts.
22d.	Distance from the point of the buttock to the stifle-joint (*oh*)	20 parts.
23d.	Width of the croup	20 parts.
24th.	Width of the anterior members at the level of the elbow (*mm'*)	10 parts.
25th.	Width of the posterior members at the level of the fold of the buttock (*ww*)	10 parts.
26th.	Width of the hock at the level of its fold (*yy'*)	8 parts.
27th.	Width of the head above the nostrils (*n'n'*)	8 parts.
28th.	Distance from the internal angle of one eye to that of the other	7 parts.
29th.	Separation of the anterior members	7 parts.
30th.	Width of the anterior face of the knees	5 parts.
31st.	Width of the anterio member above the knee (*r'*)	5 parts.
32d.	Width of the hocks (anterior face)	5 parts.
33d.	Width of the fetlock (*s'*)	4 parts.
34th.	Width of the anterior face of the coronet	4 parts.
35th.	Same width, but a little lower	4½ parts.
36th.	Width of the member in its narrowest part (*t'*)	3 parts.
37th.	Width of the posterior pastern (anterior face)	2¾ parts.
38th.	Width of the anterior pastern (*o'*)	2¼ parts.
39th.	Width of the anterior canon	2¾ parts.
40th.	Width of the anterior and posterior canons upon their anterior face	1¾ parts.

Vallon.—Vallon[1] also attempted to indicate proportions, but he has not been more successful than the English, especially in what concerns the length of the body, which he considers to be three heads in the saddle-horse, which is incorrect. Here are the measurements which he gives for a horse of 1.60 m.:

Length of the head	0.60 m.
Length of the neck (a head and a fifth)	0.72 m.
Height of the horse from the withers to the ground (two and two-thirds heads)	1.60 m.
Height of the chest from the withers to the xiphoid region (a head and a quarter)	0.75 m.
Length of the anterior members from the passage of the girth to the ground (a head and about a third)	0.85 m.
Height of the posterior quarters from the top of the croup to the ground (a little more than two heads and a half)	1.55 m.
Length of the body from the point of the shoulder to the point of the buttock (three heads)	1.80 m.

[1] Vallon, Cours d'hippologie, t. i. p. 448.

If, with these proportions, the head is square and light, the forehead wide and long, the eye large, placed far from the ears, the withers elevated and extending backward, the loins short and straight, the croup, the shoulder, the leg, and the forearm long and well muscled, the canon short, the pastern of medium length and properly inclined, the articulations wide, the articular angles well oriented, the muscular system dominant and firm, the foot irreproachable, the horse has, as a whole, good proportions.

"As to the work-horse," he adds,[1] "he should not be in all respects similar to the cavalry horse. The fore-quarters need not be as light nor the shoulder as long and oblique, the withers as elevated; the chest should be spacious, the members shorter, the muscular system more strongly developed, the degree of the temperament (blood) less sanguinary.

"The proportions which suit the horse of 1.50 m. the best are the following:

Head	0.60 m.
Neck (a head and about a fifth)	0.70 m.
Height of the body (two heads and a half)	1.50 m.
Length of the chest (a little more than a head and about a fifth)	0.70 m.
Length of the members (a head and a third)	0.80 m.
Length of the body (two and two-thirds heads)	1.60 m.
Height of the hind-quarters (a little less than two heads and a half)	1.45 m."

The preceding measures do not differ much in principle from those of Bourgelat, which they reproduce, as a whole, under another form. Their points of difference consist, in our opinion, in errors or at least exaggerations, the evidence of which will be seen when we present our own ideas concerning this.

M. Richard.—To our regret, and contrary to our custom, we are here forced to oppose one of the most distinguished horsemen, who, in France, contributed much to bring discredit upon Bourgelat's system. We mean M. Richard, whose opinions on other questions are in most instances in conformity with ours.

The principal objection to this recommendable writer proceeds from the point of view in which he regards the horse. Starting out with the idea that this animal has become for man a generator of force and speed, he cannot conceive that an attempt could be made to impose limits to the mechanical beauties of the horse-machine, which he would wish to realize. This manner of reasoning, although very just in principle, has led M. Richard into numerous exaggerations; because beauty resides principally in the harmony of the parts, and not in the extreme development of some of them, considered as more particularly advantageous for the proper action of the whole. If the disproportion results from the number of the defects, it may also become the consequence of a functional discord of the relations.

Now, it is with the beauties of the horse as with all other things analogous to them through utilization; the motor in question must be benefited by them, for otherwise they become useless or detrimental. It being granted that large wheels are for a vehicle one of the first conditions of speed, of what use would they be if their elevation gave it such an instability that it could be used only upon special roads, or turn only in certain curves? In the same way, it is acknowledged, in an absolute manner, that a long forearm, long legs, a long

[1] Vallon, Cours d'hippologie, t. i. p. 457.

croup, and a very oblique shoulder are elements indispensable to the velocity of the gait; now, increase these beauties of the forearm and the leg *in an exaggerated degree* and you will make your horse taller; do the same thing with the croup and the shoulder, you will lengthen his body, and if you do not develop *in the same proportion* the chest, the abdomen, the neck, the head, the articulations, etc., you will have made, according to your fancy or talent, a giraffe, a dromedary, or an elephant, but you will no longer have a horse,—that is to say, a special motor adapted to our needs, to our civilization; because you will have destroyed the pre-existing harmony of the regions. That is what M. Richard has misunderstood, and which caused him not only to disregard the opinions of Bourgelat, but also to shower upon him those harsh criticisms which fell with equal force upon his followers, the members of the Board of Education.

Here are, besides, some extracts which abundantly prove that we have not exaggerated his thoughts:

"The model horse of Bourgelat, constructed in accordance with his method, cannot fulfil the conditions required by reason and by a good locomotor. How, indeed, can we accept limits to the development of certain regions, *especially when the very excesses would always and without exception be a desirable beauty?* How is it possible to limit the width of the forehead, the height of the cranium, the development of the withers, the height of the chest, that of the shoulders, or their obliquity? Shall we ever find a fetlock or a forearm that is too wide, the latter too long, a knee too much developed, a tendon too neatly outlined? Can we fix the limits to the width of the hock, to that of the leg, to the length of the croup and that of the ribs?

"He who wishes to study the horse according to his destination will be convinced, as we are, that it is contrary to reason to establish by *arbitrary* measures (*there can be no others*) limits to the development of such or such region of his body. We understand perfectly that the artist should have data to direct him in the perfection of his work, the forms of which are regulated by taste and fashion, but the mechanic must obey only the laws of mechanics; he can judge of the qualities of the machine only from the invariable rules upon which these laws are established."

And still further:

"Physiology and mechanics united, in accordance with the observation of facts, teach us that a square head is generally beautiful. Its masticating muscles are usually quite prominent. Its nostrils are very mobile, very wide, very dilatable. Large eyes, wide open, bright, and placed low, a large forehead, and a well-developed cranium are its characteristics. Such a head is always to be recommended, *whatever may otherwise be the indications of the proportions, which prove absolutely nothing if they are contrary to beauty.* If, on the other hand, a horse has his neck well muscled, to execute well all the movements, without an excess of fatty or cellular tissue; if he has very high withers, and here we know no limits; if he has a short back and short loins, very wide and with strong muscles; if his croup is long and well muscled, high and well-inclined shoulders; if the chest is very deep and the ribs long, well arched, and rounded; if the flank is short, the forearm very long and wide; if the knee is strong, the tendon extremely detached, the fetlock wide, the pastern short and of the desired degree of inclination; if the buttocks are prominent and furnished with strong, long, well-marked and well-descended muscles; if the leg and the hock are wide, *whatever may be the excess of their width, take no account of proportions whose value nothing justifies;* you will always be sure of having found the model horse."

M. Richard does not perceive, in the two quotations which we have just made, that, more than all others, he has the idea of proportions, the name of which irritates him so much. He speaks of the *excess* of certain beauties, without thinking that the excess of things is judged only by comparing them with one another, or by appreciating how they exceed the dimensions and the mean limits which they ordinarily possess. If *that* particular thing cannot be too wide, or *this* one too long, it follows that another one can be right, or even too narrow and too small. Now, the *excess*, the *sufficiency*, and the *deficiency* are qualities

impossible to be determined if the relations of the parts have not been studied, and if there be not for them certain mean terms of comparison. To say that a region is too long, exactly normal, or too short, is to express that, relative to its ordinary beautiful length, it is *proportional* or *disproportional;* it is therefore tantamount to admitting *good* or *bad proportions.* There exist, therefore, certain standard dimensions which must be known in order to be able to base one's judgment.

Without any doubt, it would be contrary to reason to establish *by arbitrary measures* the limits of development of any region. But the great error in our esteemed colleague's argument lies in not proving what he asserts. The measurements are arbitrary only when they proceed solely from the self-conceit of him who invents them; in all other cases they are as real as the things from which they are taken.

M. Richard has advanced exactly, with regard to Bourgelat, that of which he has accused the latter: a pure theory. He has not taken the trouble to study this author closely. If he had attempted this, would he ever have written the following passage?

"But we will go still further. We mean to prove in two words that a horse which would display the most rigorous proportions advanced by this author *might be very badly conformed and in very bad condition* as regards strength and speed. We wish to show still further that, in order to remedy his vice of conformation, we are forced to do the contrary of what is prescribed by the founder of veterinary medicine.

"Suppose that a horse which is in conformity with the proportions of Bourgelat has *very long and corded flanks and a very short croup,* which is often observed; this horse will have weak loins, and his gait will be shortened for want of length in its croupal muscles. What shall we do now, if we wish to give this horse the qualities of strength in which he is wanting and which the acknowledged proportions would indicate as excellent? We will lengthen its iliac bones, which Bourgelat condemns, so as to diminish a part of the surplus length of the loins; we will also lengthen the ischiums to carry the point of the buttocks farther backward. We have no other means of remedying the evil and making a good horse from a bad type of construction of the loins and the croup. To arrive at this essential result, what shall we do? We will do the opposite of what is prescribed by the proportions of Bourgelat: we will lengthen the body of the horse by lengthening the croup in front and behind through a greater predominance of the buttocks. The proportions of the whole, like those of the individual regions, are therefore contrary to physiological and mechanical laws as well as to those of reason. Then, as we have said, written, and taught for more than fifteen years, the proportions of Bourgelat, which have always been considered as the key to the basis of all the principles established by this author, are *falsely founded;* we cannot repeat too often that they *should be condemned as a material error, fatal to the progress of science, fatal to the perfecting of our races of horses,* especially cavalry horses."

In the face of such assertions, without proof, we must acknowledge that this verdict is very severe. M. Richard takes for granted precisely what he should at first have commenced to demonstrate,—namely, that a croup such as Bourgelat requires would be *very short.* But it would have been easy for him to ascertain the contrary by measuring this region upon subjects selected by himself as well formed in that part of their body. Then he could have proved that a croup whose length is equal to the distance comprised between the top of the head and the commissure of the lips is not too short, that, consequently, this proportion was not poorly founded, and should not be condemned as a material error and one fatal to the progress of science. M. Richard's objections, very judicious theoretically, we repeat, fail when practically applied, for the same reason: want of deliberation. To what would they be reduced if it were settled that Bourgelat had taken his measurements upon horses in which they showed

themselves really irreproachable? To nothing, since upon these subjects the shoulder, the croup, the forearm, the neck, the leg, etc., would exactly enter into the conditions of length, width, and thickness required by his contradictor. And yet this is the very merit, we do not say of all, but of many, of the proportions of the founder of veterinary schools, and M. Richard would not have failed to recognize it if he had seriously undertaken to verify, with compass in hand, the assertions of the former. This is the reason why, when we take literally the data of an author, without taking account of the almost inevitable exaggerations to which he is naturally inclined, one is easily led to draw from them wrong conclusions, to overlook the good in order to see only the weak points, and present these as the only result which this theory can attain.

Most certainly we would ourselves deserve this reproach if we should not now make prominent the correct and truly practical idea which is apparent in M. Richard's criticisms. This distinguished horseman desires principally to call the attention of the observer to the absolute beauties of the horse, beauties which we should never oppose, since they are the best index of the conditions of strength and speed, attributes which should never be limited, for they are fundamental qualities of the animal machine, elements indispensable to its proper action. If the eye is impressed with a want of harmony in the whole, it is not to the fulness of the chest, the length of the croup, of the forearm, of the leg, the obliquity of the shoulder, the height of the withers, the width of the articulations, etc., that this defect is to be attributed; it is due to the weakness, the bad conformation, of the other regions. The disproportion should be considered especially as characterizing the predominance of defects, and not as being derived from excess of the beauties. *A horse is defective not because he is too well formed in some of his parts, but because he is not enough so in others.* A kind of correlation of development exists between all the organs; if one of them acquires dimensions somewhat considerable, others follow it, so to speak, in the same measure; and this is what justifies to a certain extent the words of M. Richard, when he asserts that he does not understand how we can limit the width of the forehead, the height of the cranium, the development of the withers, the height of the chest, and the length of the shoulders; when he defies us in some way to find too wide a fetlock, a forearm too long, a knee too much developed, a tendon too much detached; when he rejects the limits imposed to the width of the hock, that of the forearm and the leg, the width of the croup and that of the ribs. The giraffe-, dromedary-, or elephant-horse is not possible, even in driving to extremities M. Richard's exaggerations, on account of those very organic correlations of which we have just spoken. This has been mentioned only to show the consequences which may be the result of the *a priori* in matters concerning the horse. We get to believe that facts are overthrown by words, and the more readily so, as we are encouraged in it by the mass of those who content themselves with admiring facts through the eyes of others.

PART II.

OBJECT AND UTILITY OF THE PROPORTIONS.

Now that we have demonstrated the existence of the relations existing among the different parts of the body, it will be easy to understand what result can be reached by seeking for the proportions of the horse. The question at issue is to express in simple terms the relations of the regions in such a manner as to establish the elements of beauty which should here be looked upon as a reflection of perfection. Such a study is most fruitful for one who wishes to succeed promptly in developing his "eye" and his judgment; it is not less useful for the artist anxious to impress his works with the stamp of accurate imitation.

We do not wish to say by this that imitation is the supreme aim of art and that the merit of artistic productions lies infallibly in their accuracy. It is far from our intention to compare the artist to a photographic apparatus: this would be the ignoring of his personality, of the very passion with which he sees the things of his domain; it would be the very negation of his talent. His work should, principally, reflect movement and animation, the emotion he felt in the presence of the subject which he wished to reproduce. He will be pardoned for the want of physical resemblance in his conceptions, whilst he will always be blamed for his want of sentiment or his absolute indifference. But if we have been able to say with reason in this respect that sincerity in art can replace truth, it is not less evident that the artist who is at the same time accurate and sincere in his reproduction will constantly excel him who has only one or the other of these qualities. It is on this account that the study of proportions is of the greatest necessity to him.

CHAPTER I.

POINTS OF VIEW FROM WHICH THE PROPORTIONS ARE STUDIED.

Until now, under the head of proportions, we have only treated of the relations of length, of width, and of thickness of the constituent parts of the body, and even this has been done in a very incomplete manner. This too exclusive view is certainly insufficient for one

who wishes to analyze minutely the horse as a machine productive of force and speed. It is necessary, besides, to inquire into the relations of direction which the osseous segments may affect among each other, to determine in what manner they are articulated, and what rules govern their most extensive and regular action.

We should then examine the whole body with regard to its larger dimensions, its general harmony.

Finally, we should determine in what measure the nervous system, this ultimate regulator of all activity and of all vital manifestation, is in functional equilibrium with the machinery which animates and directs the animal with absolute power.

These four important questions will be the subject of the present chapter.

A.—Relation of Dimensions between the Parts.

We have not to deal with long and slender or with short and thick forms only,—that is to say, with two extreme conformations between which there might exist a mean one related as much to the first as to the second. In reality, the types of conformation, varying with the conditions of existence and the kinds of utilization, are much more numerous. He who intends to make an artistic reproduction of them, or who wishes to choose them with a view to some special purpose, should therefore be acquainted with the characters proper to each, and seek for their *differences.*

Nevertheless, certain *common* characters always unite them, which establish their relationship, their analogies, and their resemblance. It is these qualities, easily found in the great majority of horses, which, hereafter, we propose to consider.

But an important observation should first of all be made with reference to the documents of which we are about treating. It is, that they constitute only mean data capable of directing and aiding the artists or amateurs who are making their *début.* We cannot see in them absolute ideas beyond which everything is false. They are only beacons, landmarks of reference to be consulted, which, whilst showing general harmonious relations of the form of the horse, will cause gross errors, regrettable *mistakes,* and opinions falsely founded.

Since Bourgelat's time, several observers, besides Saint-Bel and Vallon, have endeavored to establish the relations of the dimensions which should exist between the parts of the horse's body.

Professor Colin,[1] a long time ago, indicated the mean length of

---

[1] G. Colin, Physiologie comparée des animaux domestiques, 1ère éd., t. i p. 252, Paris, 1855.

the bony segments of the members. Our colleagues, M. Neumann[1] and Professor Lemoigne,[2] of Milan, have confirmed, on their part, the results published by M. Colin; we will say the same about our own personal researches.[3]

But Colonel Duhousset is indeed the man who, in France, is the most interested in the measurements of all the regions of the horse. We have had the pleasure of guiding him in his first attempts and investigating, afterwards, the correctness of his observations. These are published in a pamphlet, from which we have borrowed the greater part of the following details.[4] After the example of Bourgelat, M. Duhousset has chosen the head as a *unit of measure*, and considers its length from the poll to the extremity of the upper lip. This dimension, as well as those of which we will hereafter speak, is obtained by the aid of a compass of thickness, and not by the tape-measure system, in order to avoid the causes of error inherent to the prominence of the parts whose outlines this measure would have to follow. It is also well that the animal be placed in normal equilibrium, and that his head, a little raised, should as nearly as possible be parallel to the direction of the slope of the shoulders.

We will annex to our description the following drawing (Fig. 127), a reproduction of a photograph on which the subject is shown absolutely in profile, a position which in no way alters the reciprocal relations of the parts;[5] the animal here represented was as high as he was long.

"The *length of the head* almost exactly equals the distance:

1st. From the back to the abdomen, *NO* (thickness of the body).
2d. From the top of the withers to the point of the arm, *HE* (shoulder).
3d. From the superior fold of the stifle-joint to the point of the hock, *J'J*.
4th. From the point of the hock to the ground, *JK*.
5th. From the dorsal angle of the scapula to the point of the haunch, *D'D*.
6th. From the xiphoid region to the fetlock-joint, *MI*; above this latter for large horses and race-horses; below and in the middle, in small horses and in those of medium size.
7th. From the superior fold of the stifle-joint to the summit of the croup in subjects whose coxo-femoral angle is large; this distance is always less in other cases (G. and B.).

---

[1] G. Neumann, Des aplombs chez le cheval, in Journal de méd. vét. milit., t. viii. p. 352.

[2] A. Lemoigne, Recherches sur la mécanique animale du cheval, in Rec. de méd. vét., année 1877, p. 81.

[3] See, besides, J. Kiéner, Journal de l'agriculture, année 1884, t. ii. p. 341. (He treats there of the relation of the widths of the anterior and posterior canons.)

[4] E. Duhousset, Le cheval, p. 63 et suiv., Paris, 1881.

[5] In measuring a horse from a photograph, it is necessary to take him absolutely in profile. Without this precaution the regions are not shown perpendicularly upon the same plane; the length and the height of those which are more distant from the observer appear shorter in relation to those which are nearer.

"*Two and one-half times the head* gives:

1st. The height of the withers, *H*, above the ground.

2d. The height of the top of the croup above the ground.

3d. Very often the length of the body from the point of the arm to that of the buttock, although for a long time Bourgelat's type has been rejected as a purely conventional type, short and massive. Our drawing, which is two heads and a half in length and in height, is that of a horse which is often seen.

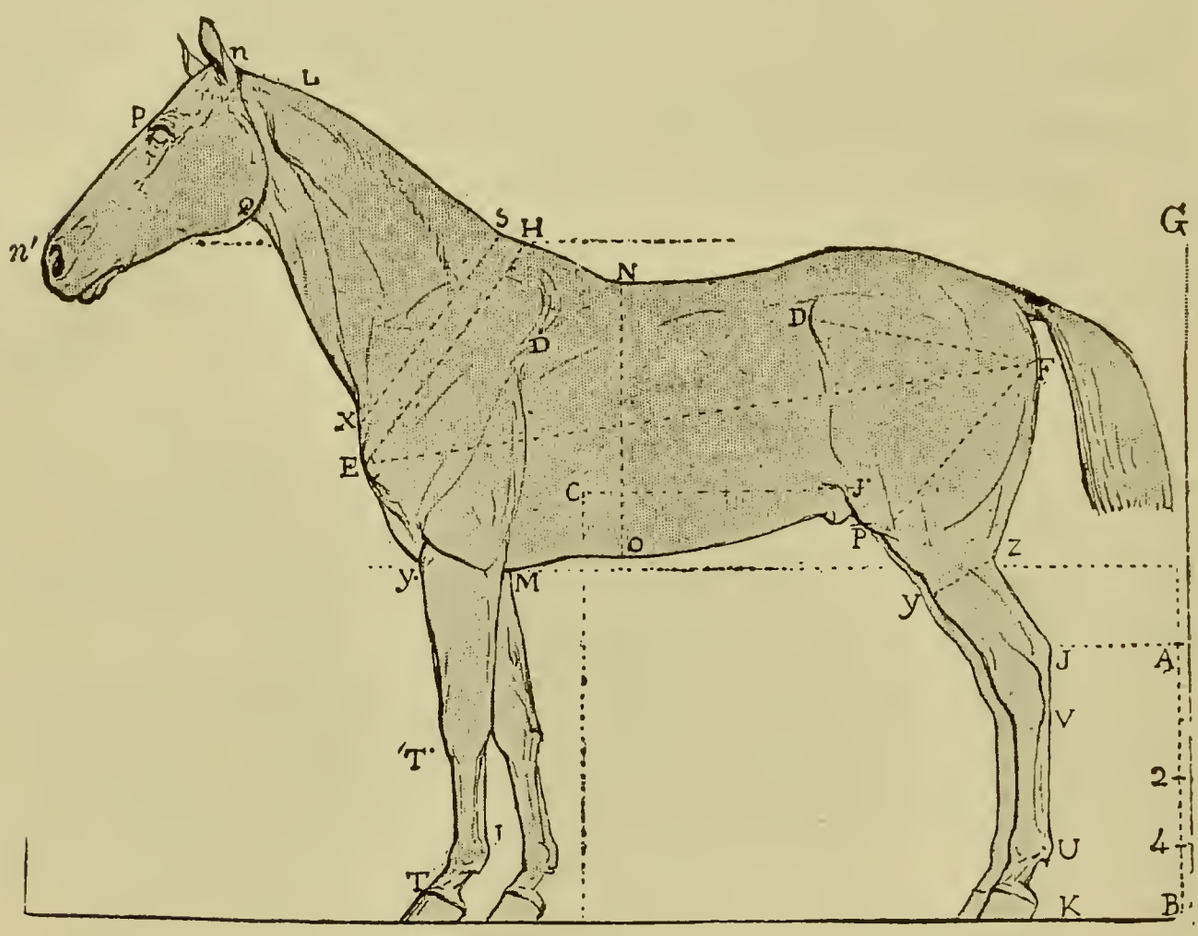


FIG. 127.—The proportions of the horse seen in profile.

"The *length of the croup*, from the point of the haunch to that of the buttock, *DF*, is always less than that of the head: this varies from 5 to 10 centimetres. As to its width from one haunch to the other, it often exceeds only very little its length (often it is equal to the latter) (G. and B.).

"The *croup*, *DF*, exists quite accurately in length four times in the same horse:

1st. From the point of the buttock to the inferior part of the stifle-joint, *FP*.

2d. In the width of the neck at its inferior attachment, from its insertion into the chest to the origin of the withers, *SX*.

3d. From the insertion of the neck into the chest to the angle of the lower jaw, *XQ*, when the head is held parallel to the shoulder.

4th. Finally, from the nape of the neck to the nostril, *nn'*, or to the commissure of the lips.

"The measure of *one-half of the head* will also guide us very much in the construction of the horse, when we know that it is frequently applied to several of his parts,—namely:

1st. From the most prominent point of the angle of the lower jaw to the anterior profile of the forehead, above the eye, *PQ* (thickness of the head).

2d. From the throat to the superior border of the neck, behind the poll, *QL* (attachment of the head).

3d. From the inferior part of the knee to the coronet, *TT*.

4th. From the base of the hock to the fetlock, *VU*.

5th. Finally, from the point of the arm to the articulation of the elbow (approximate length of the arm)."

The proportions of the head are also of great importance to artists, who, in this respect, depend entirely too much upon the inspiration of the moment. We always borrow from M. Duhousset—whose graphic precepts appear to us to be the nearest to the real form—the indications which he recorded in an unpublished work upon this subject; we will add to them, in passing, our personal researches.

"Although it is very difficult," says he, "when we speak of measurements taken upon the living horse, to form anything but approximations, still we think we are very near the truth when we give the following results which proceed from our numerous observations. The head which we present is that of a horse which is frequently seen as a medium between the pleasure-horse and the draught-horse." In this respect, it will not be uninteresting to accompany with figures the two drawings upon which are found the measurements we are speaking of:

HEAD VIEWED IN PROFILE (FIG. 128).

Length, *AB*, from the poll to the end of the lips . . . . . 0.60 m.

Thickness, *CD*, from the angle of the lower jaw to the anterior face (half a head) . . . . . 0.30 m.

This line passes through the middle of the eye and is taken perpendicularly to the profile of the anterior face. It is seen in many common horses, especially in the heavy-draught horses; in finer subjects it is a little shorter (G. and B.).

Width, *IH*, of the neck in its narrowest part (half a head) . . . . . 0.30 m.

It is frequently greater, which is noticed whenever the superior attachments of the neck are wanting in neatness of outline. This is seen in lymphatic and draught-horses, and in those which are excessively corpulent (G. and B.).

Distance, *OR*, from the internal angle of the eye to the superior commissure of the nostril (G. and B.) (half a head) . . . . . 0.30 m.

It is greater in the common head and in one which is too long.

Distance, *AO*, from the poll to the internal angle of the eye . . . . . 0.22 m.

This distance is equal to the thickness of the head (*PQ*), taken perpendicularly to the profile of the anterior face, and passing the level of the maxillary fissure and the maxillary spine.

Again, it is equal to *QO*, from the internal angle of the eye to the maxillary fissure; and to *PG*, from the middle of the face to the commissure of the lips (G. and B.).

The distance, *PE*, from the middle of the face to the maxillary spine is about one-sixth of the total length of the head . . . . . 0.10 m.

The line *BE*, considered from the end of the lips to the maxillary spine is equal:

To *EF*, from the maxillary spine to the external auditory hiatus, visible only upon the skull.

To *HG*, from the insertion of the throat into the intermaxillary space to the commissure of the lips (G. and B.).

To *QR*, from the maxillary fissure to the superior commissure of the nostril (G. and B.).

To *QB*, from the maxillary fissure to the end of the lips (G. and B.).

To *OD*, from the internal angle of the eye to the curved portion of the border of the lower jaw, provided the line *CD* be in proportion (G. and B.).

Finally, very often to *OH*, from the internal angle of the eye to the insertion of the throat into the intermaxillary space (G. and B.).

A very frequent equality is that which exists between the distances:

OB, from the internal angle of the eye to the end of the lips.

AH, from the nape of the neck to the insertion of the throat into the intermaxillary space.

And *HB*, from the latter point to the end of the lip.

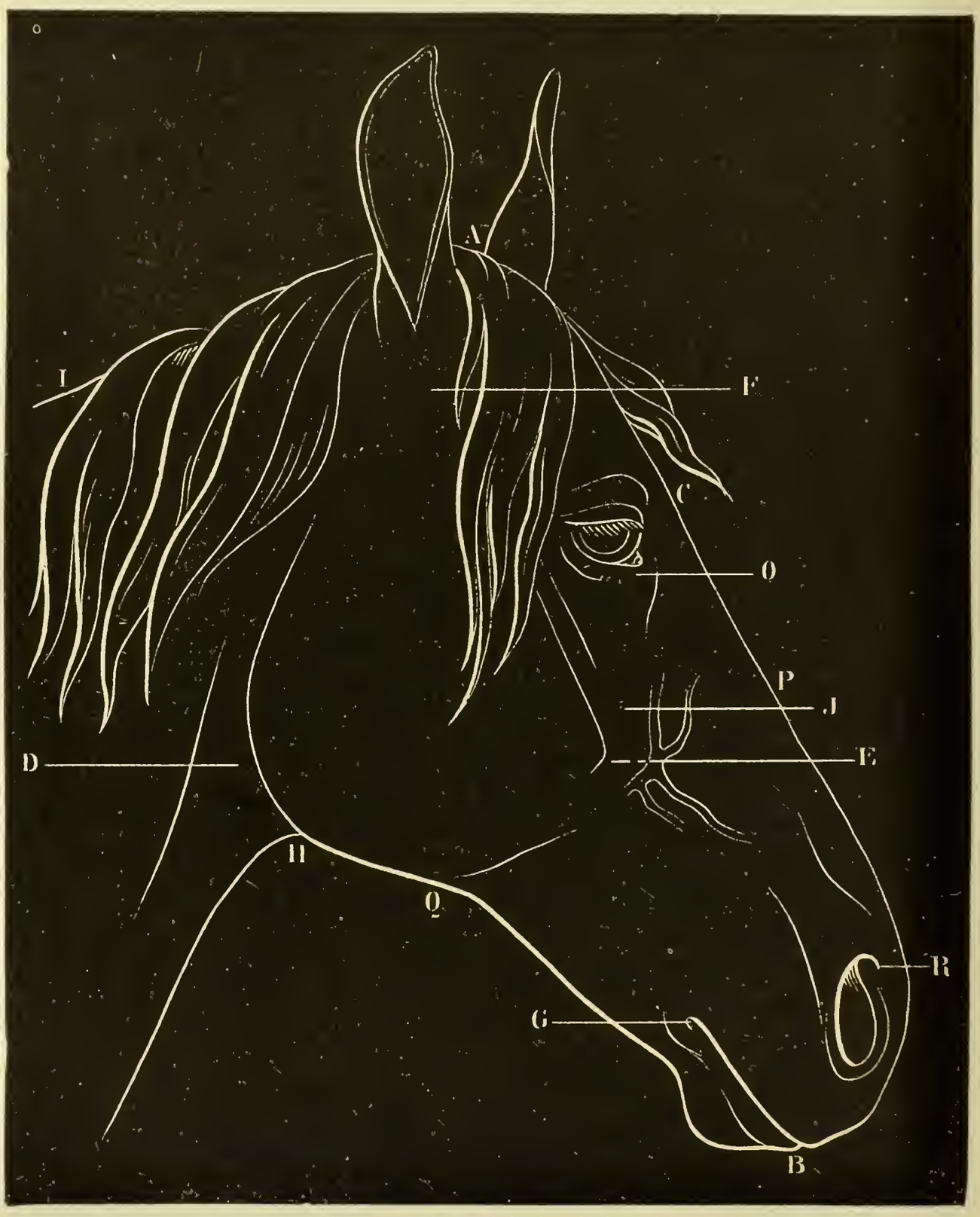


Fig. 128.—The proportions of the head viewed in profile.

HEAD VIEWED IN FRONT (FIG. 129).

M. Duhousset adds that if, in order to continue our examination, we regard the head in front, we find its greatest width in *AB*, extreme points of the orbital arches.

This width is 22 centimetres.

It is also equal to:

AC, from one arch to the poll.

AD, from one arch to the middle of the face.

DE, from the middle of the face to the end of the lips.

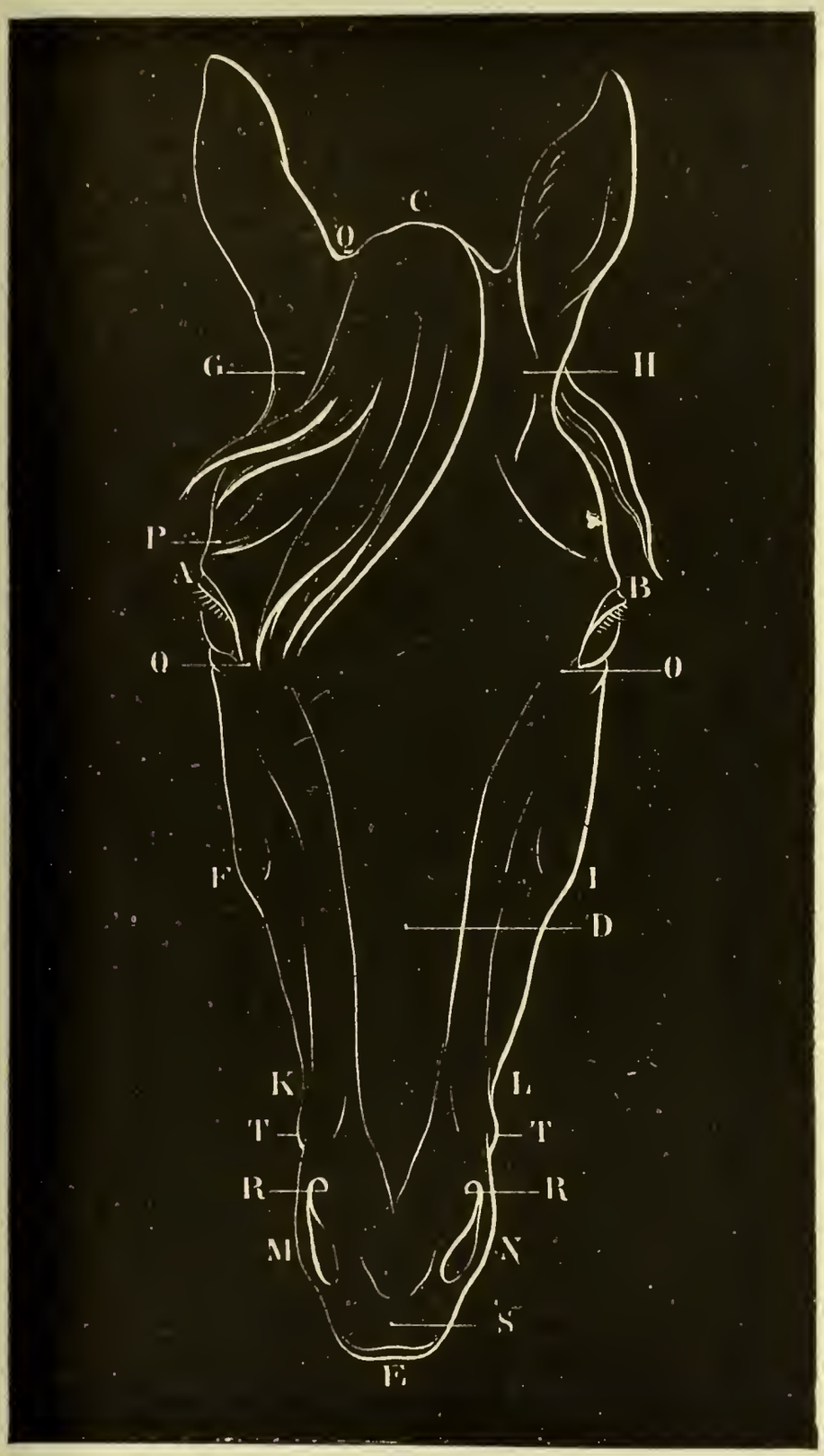


FIG. 129.—The proportions of the head viewed in front.

From the auditory hiatus, *G*, to the maxillary spine, *F*, it is the same distance as from this point to the end of the lips, *E*, and still better to the end of the teeth.

The line *GC*, from the auditory hiatus to the poll, equals one-sixth of the head, or 10 centimetres; the line *AG*, from the orbital arch to the auditory hiatus, is a little longer and measures 12 centimetres.

The distance *FI*, comprised between the two maxillary spines, is 18 centimetres.

It is of the same value as:

OO, distance from one internal angle of the eye to the other (G. and B.).

FR, distance from the maxillary spine to the superior commissure of the corresponding nostril (G. and B.).

FP, from the maxillary spine to the supra-orbit (G. and B.).

From the auditory hiatus, *G*, to the tip of the ear, approximate length of this latter organ (G. and B.).

And *PQ*, from the supra-orbit to the insertion of the ear upon the poll (G. and B.).

From the poll to the internal angle of the eye, *CO*, the distance is equal to that from this last point to the commissure of the lips, *OT*, and from the maxillary spine to the superior lips, *FS* (G. and B.).

The separation, *TT*, of the two commissures of the lips is almost the distance from the superior border of the orbital arch to the base of the ear or to the auditory hiatus.

In a state of rest, the external limit of the separation of the nostrils does not exceed the width of the knee; the same distance often exists between the base of the ears, in quietude, over the region of the poll. We have intentionally represented in the figure the latter directed in different directions, in order to show that when the external part of the ear is turned back-

FIG. 130.—Comparative proportions of the man and the horse.

ward, it none the less preserves its accolade form, more or less marked according to the fineness of the subject, and characterizing at rest the internal curve of the ear.

The limit, *MN*, of the lips exceeds very little that of the nostrils; in many heads displaying harmonious proportions, this distance is one-half of *AB*.

As to that which concerns the comparative proportions of man and horse, the reader may gather information from Fig. 130, which represents a man of 1.70 m. mounted upon a horse of 1.60 m. The latter is in the position of *rassembler*, ready to begin the step.[1]

B.—Angular Relations of the Osseous Segments.

Besides the relations of length, width, and thickness which exist between the different regions of the body, it is also important to know the relations of direction possessed by the different bony regions superposed one upon the other to form the members. These relations, as we have seen, have an influence upon the production of speed and force.

From this mode of superposition, *angles* are produced upon the course of the various bones, whose summit always corresponds to the centre of movement of an articulation, and whose sinus is either in the anterior or the posterior part of the particular region.

But as the bones of the skeleton have a variable external configuration, and as their *axis of figure* does not always terminate in an articular centre,—witness the femur, whose surfaces of contact with the pelvis and the tibia are situated internal to and behind the median line of the bone,—it follows that we can logically determine the angles of locomotion only after having previously ascertained the *axis of movement* of each of their branches. Now, the latter are obtained by simply uniting to each other the articular centres, which are at the same time the centres of rotation of the said branches. All researches not founded upon this experimental mode are therefore at once condemned as being vitiated by arbitrariness and error. The analysis of the following theory will give the proof.

Theory of the Similitude of the Angles and the Parallelism of the Bony Segments.—More than half a century ago, in 1835, Captain Morris,[2] later commanding general of the Imperial Guard, published a pamphlet in which was expressed the opinion that in all well-formed horses *the same articular angles had a uniform opening or size and the osseous segments inclined in the same direction,—were parallel.* Again, *these bony segments were inclined at an angle of 45 degrees to the horizon.* Whence it follows that the head, the shoulder, the thigh, and the pastern on one hand; the neck, the humerus, the croup, and the leg on the other, in order to combine the conditions of beauty, were

---

[1] For further details, see E. Duhousset, Étude sur les proportions du cheval, d'après son ossature, in Illustration, nos. des 18-25, Août et 1er Septembre, 1883.

[2] Capitaine Morris, Essai sur l'Extérieur du cheval, Paris, 1835, chez Mme. Huzard, rue de l'Éperon.

regarded as having the same inclination, the same parallelism, and, finally, forming, two by two, angles of 90 degrees.

Such, in substance, is Morris's theory, by the aid of which he was led to construct the horse whose type he gives at the head of his treatise,

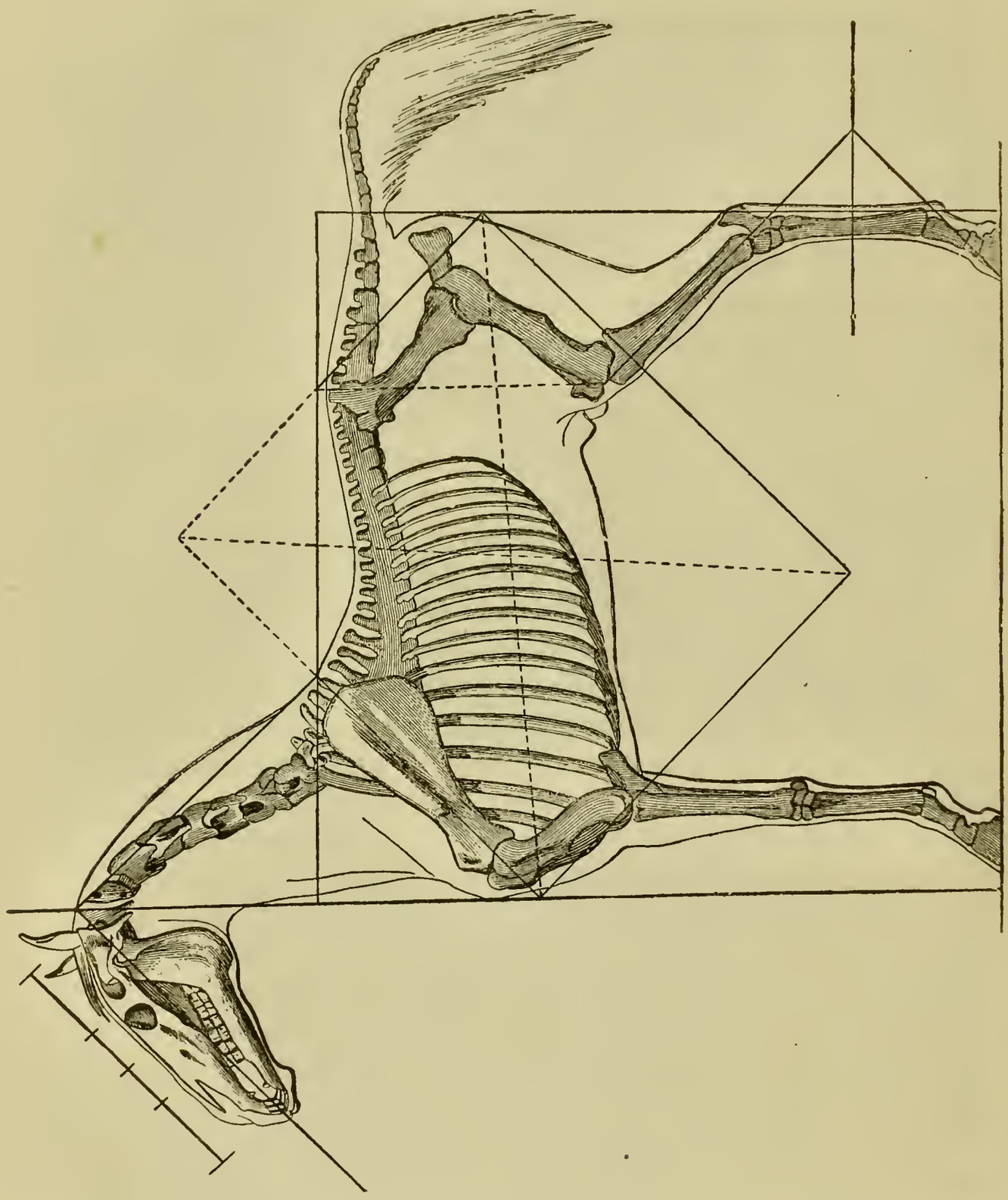


Fig. 131.—Articular angles, after Morris.

and which we consider it our duty to reproduce with the most scrupulous accuracy (Fig. 131). It is sufficient for us to look at this drawing to see that the author himself duly appreciated the maxim of Descartes, which he recommends to the attention of his readers: "He who

wishes to know the truth should, at least once in his life, doubt all that he has been taught." It will be acknowledged that the general might have been better inspired; not only was he satisfied to doubt, but he never learned what he represented!

Still, it is upon this horse that he traced his geometrical lines. It is true that he himself admits that the directions considered are not strictly those of the bones, but those of the regions whose base they form. With such a reservation we may conceive that the most inventive mind has a free field and may persuade itself into believing in the objective reality of its conceptions, whatever may be their exaggerations.

We would not oblige the reader to formulate an opinion upon the *theory of the similitude of the angles and the parallelism of the bony segments* if the views of General Morris had not found partisans, even among men of great merit. His arguments in favor of his doctrine are (the expression is not too strong) absolutely unintelligible. As to the theory of the similitude of the angles, taken in itself, it has no scientific value, since common sense and facts are opposed to it. Its only merit consists in having drawn horsemen's attention to a question formerly completely ignored.

The most judicious criticism of it that we know of is that of our colleague of the school of Toulouse, Professor Neumann.[1] We will review his principal arguments, which, in all points, are the same as ours.

And first of all, since the ideal conditions of speed imply certain angles and certain inclinations of the bones, how is it that these conditions are applicable only to the horse and not to other animals as swift as the horse, for example, the hare, the dog, the gazelle, etc.? Whence comes this exception to the laws of nature, which always show us organisms adapted in the same manner to the same needs? It being granted that long members and a tall form are especially necessary to produce speed, in order that they may be able to move extensively under the body; it being granted, on the other hand, as a deduction of this principle, that animals with long members have all their articular angles very open, we do not see why the horse, so very similar to them with regard to locomotion, should have been endowed with a particular and contrary disposition residing in the closing of his angles and the parallelism of his bony segments. *A priori*, the theory of Morris presents itself, then, for examination as an exception to the natural laws of speed, which should already arouse our apprehensions against its consequences.

Let us pursue the purely theoretical objections which result from its application to the construction of the horse; this M. Neumann has very fortunately attempted; we will resume our colleague's reasoning and confirm it with our own observations.

In subjects which are well formed the length of the anterior and the

---

[1] G. Neumann, Des aplombs chez le cheval, in Journal des vétérinaires militaires, t. viii. p. 352.

posterior members is about equal; the excess of the height at the withers over that at the croup results most usually from the projection of the spinal apophyses above the scapular cartilages.

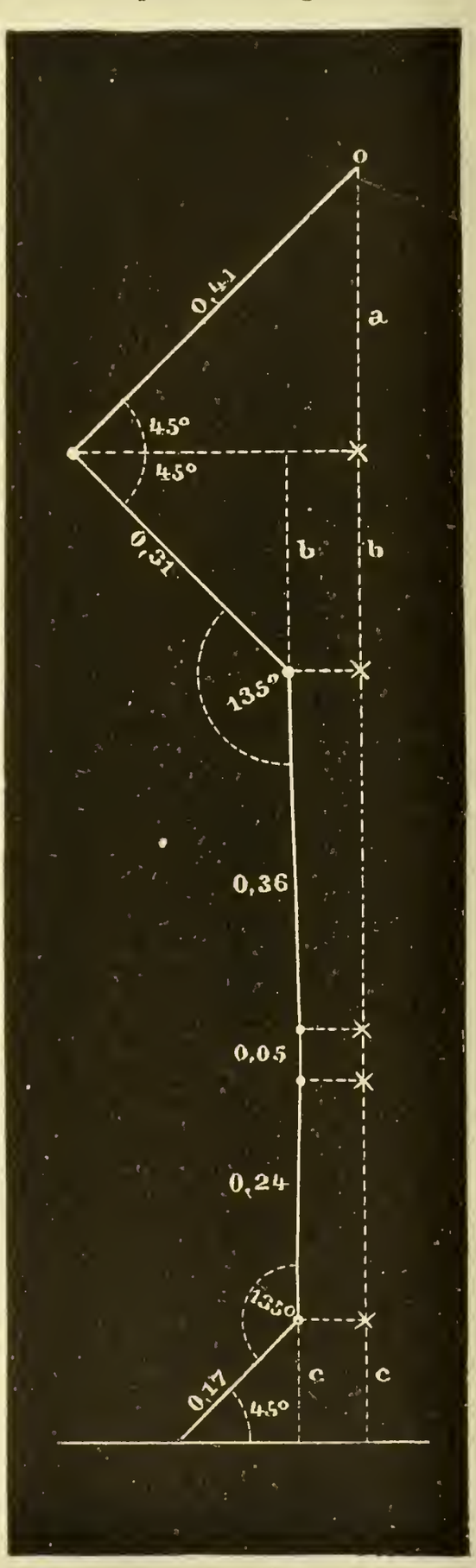


Fig. 132.

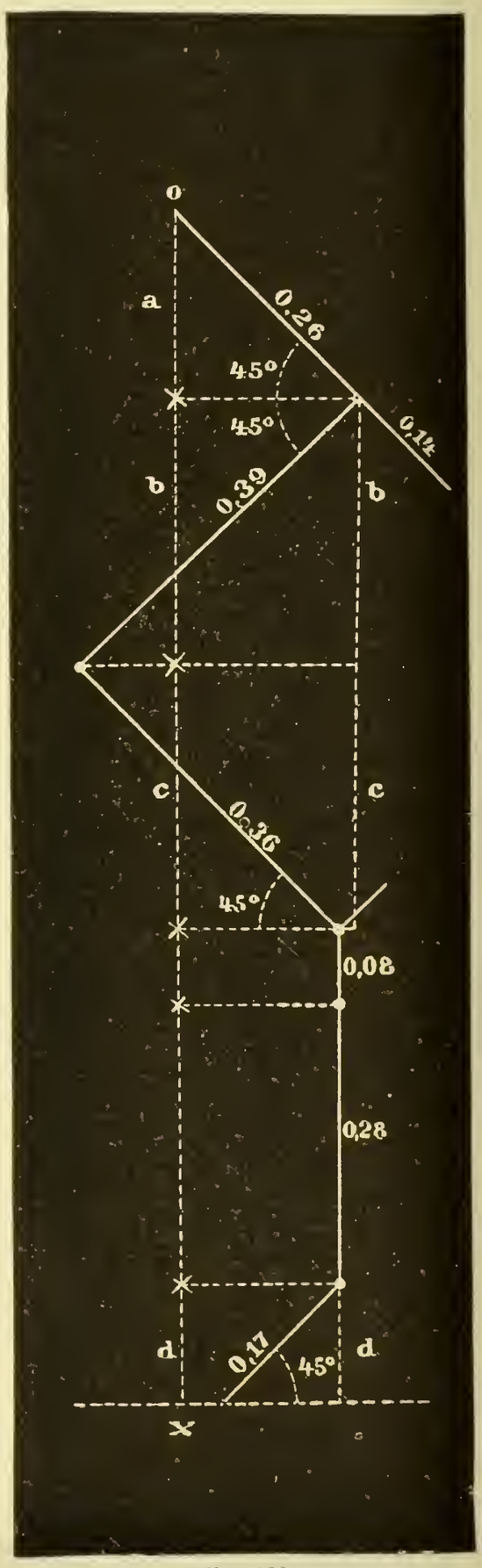


Fig. 133.

This being admitted, let us represent (Fig. 132) the anterior member of a horse of medium height with the oblique long segments inclined 45 degrees to

the horizon, as affirmed by General Morris. Again, let us give to each segment its medium length, such as has been determined by the concordant observations of MM. Colin, Neumann, Lemoigne, and our own,—namely:

For the shoulder	0.41 m.
For the arm	0.31 m.
For the forearm	0.36 m.
For the knee	0.05 m.
For the canon	0.24 m.
And for the phalangal segment	0.17 m.

Then project each region upon the vertical line *o.x*, which means nothing else than the height of the member above the ground.

Finally, calculate the sides *a*, *b*, and *c*, which belong to the right-angled isosceles triangles having for hypothenuses the recognized length of the shoulder, the arm, and the phalanges.

We will have:

$$a = \sqrt{\frac{(0.41)^2}{2}} = 0.28991 \text{ m.}$$

From which results

$$2a^2 = (0.41)^2.$$

Likewise, we will have:

$$b = \sqrt{\frac{(0.31)^2}{2}} = 0.21920 \text{ m. and } c = \sqrt{\frac{(0.17)^2}{2}} = 0.11313 \text{ m.}$$

Add the values of *a*, *b*, and *c* thus obtained to those of the vertical segments which are projected in their actual length; add to them 0.12 m. for the projection of the cartilage of prolongment, the thickness of the shoe, the hoof, the articular cartilages, the skin, etc., and we will obtain the following results:

VERTICAL HEIGHT, *ox*, OF THE ANTERIOR MEMBER ABOVE THE GROUND.

Shoulder (*a*)	0.28991 m.
Arm (*b*)	0.21920 m.
Forearm	0.36000 m.
Carpus	0.05000 m.
Metacarpus	0.24000 m.
Phalanges (*c*)	0.11313 m.
Cartilage of prolongation, shoe, hoof, etc.	0.12000 m.
Total height of the member	1.39224 m.

The same calculations are applied to the posterior member according to the following medium length (Fig. 133):

Ilium	0.26 m.
Femur	0.39 m.
Tibia	0.36 m.
Tarsus	0.08 m.
Metatarsus	0.28 m.
Phalanges	0.17 m.

VERTICAL HEIGHT, *ox*, OF THE POSTERIOR MEMBER ABOVE THE GROUND.

Pelvis (*a*)	0.28384 m.
Thigh (*b*)	0.27575 m.
Leg (*c*)	0.25455 m.
Tarsus	0.08000 m.
Metatarsus	0.28000 m.
Digital region	0.12020 m.
Vertical distance between the summit of the croup and that of the haunch	0.02000 m.
Thickness of the interarticular menisci, the cartilages, the skin, the shoe, the hoof	0.05000 m.
Total height of the member	1.36434 m.

Whence it follows that if the locomotory segments of the horse were really inclined, as General Morris asserts, a subject of *medium size* would measure only 1.39 m. at the withers and only 1.26 m. at the croup. Besides, the summit of his withers would be 12 centimetres higher than that of the croup! Medium horses so small, or withers so prominent, are no longer seen! What is the conclusion? Evidently that the articular segments are not inclined 45 degrees to the horizon and that the angles are more open than the theory asserts.

On the other hand, M. Neumann adds, "Since some kind of mathematical accuracy is the principal merit of this conception, is it not strange that, in a practical question, ideal *lines*, which are left to the appreciation of those who wish to apply them, are established as a foundation? For, if the direction of the region by itself be considered, it is seen—to speak of the shoulder alone—that this direction may vary from five to six degrees upon the same subject, according to the line which one wishes to obtain. Each region is not so well delineated. It does not offer points of delimitation so precise and so invariable that the *lines* which may be taken as a basis shall be the same in all horses which are made an object of comparison; and, if these *lines* are not the same, of what use can they be in that comparative examination of the subjects which is necessary to the establishing of a theory?

"An oblique croup will necessarily correspond to an oblique shoulder; a horizontal croup to a straight shoulder; so that draught-horses which, in the opinion of connoisseurs, would be well adapted to their service, would present, on the contrary, a very defective conformation, if such a theory was to be the guide; to an oblique croup (that of the race-horse) would correspond an *elbowed* hock (that of the draught-horse); the anterior and the posterior pasterns should have the same direction, whilst it is well known that the latter are nearly always straighter than the former; and many other details upon which we do not wish to insist."

Thus, from a purely theoretical point of view, the conception of the similitude of the angles and the parallelism of the bony segments is unsupportable, nor is it less so if we endeavor to verify it experimentally.

In order to do this, as we have said at the beginning, it is necessary to determine with the greatest care the external landmarks of the axes or centres of rotation around which the osseous levers turn.

The Determination of the Articular Angles.—Several attempts have already been made to gain a knowledge of the articular angles of the horse. Vallon[1] and Daudet[2] have, indeed, indicated in their works angular openings in opposition to the ideas of General Morris, in vogue at the time among all horsemen. But these observers no doubt lacked sufficient instruments, judging from the conclusions to which they were led, and which otherwise fail in accuracy. They do not relate in their writings either their method or the class of horses they experimented upon. Some of their ideas are even so far from being true, that we are tempted to believe that in many cases they depended only upon the accuracy of their eyesight. However it may be, and though their researches were of so little account, it was already praiseworthy to invalidate in their time, as they have done, the classical opinions of the day.

In this way they made it easier for their followers to obtain the general acceptation and the ultimate triumph of ideas for which they had, so to speak, paved the way.

Little by little the theory of Morris fell into disrepute, unable as it was to stand the slightest investigation, and it would have remained thus if some observers of merit had not very recently attempted to set it up again.

And yet, as early as 1865, Professor Alexis Lemoigne,[3] of Milan, published his researches upon the articular angles, with the intention of determining the direction of the final resultant of the horse's efforts in the act of pulling. This is what they consisted of:

Our learned colleague, in his measurements, made use of the tape-measure, the hippometer, the plumb-line, and the goniometer, provided with a spirit-level.

First of all he sought to establish with great accuracy, upon the skeleton, the axis of rotation of the bones,—that is to say, the centres of movement forming the mathematical summit of the angles of locomotion. We have, on our side, verified M. Lemoigne's principles; they are absolutely precise. Here is the *résumé*. The reader can more easily follow this review by consulting Fig. 134, which represents the copy of a photograph of Fitz-Gladiator.

a. **Anterior Member:**

1st. *Scapulo-humeral Axis.*—Its point of external localization, upon the living animal, is situated about at the level of the convexity of the great trochanter.

---

[1] A. Vallon, Cours d'hippologie, Saumur, 1865.

[2] Daudet, Traité de locomotion du cheval relatif à l'équitation, Saumur, 1864.

[3] Alexis Lemoigne, in Giornale delle razze degli animali utili e di medicina veterinaria, fascic. 11 et 12, Naples, 1865; ibid., in Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, année 1877, pp. 81 et 208.

2d. *Humero-radial Axis.*—Point of external localization: at the humeral insertion of the external lateral ligament of this articulation.

3d. *Radio-carpal Axis.*—Point of external localization: a centimetre below the external and inferior tuberosity of the radius.

4th. *Metacarpo-phalangeal Axis.*—Point of external localization: at the superior insertion of the corresponding lateral ligament of the articulation.

We have intentionally omitted, as of little importance to our subject, the intercarpal and the interphalangal axes also established by M. Lemoigne.

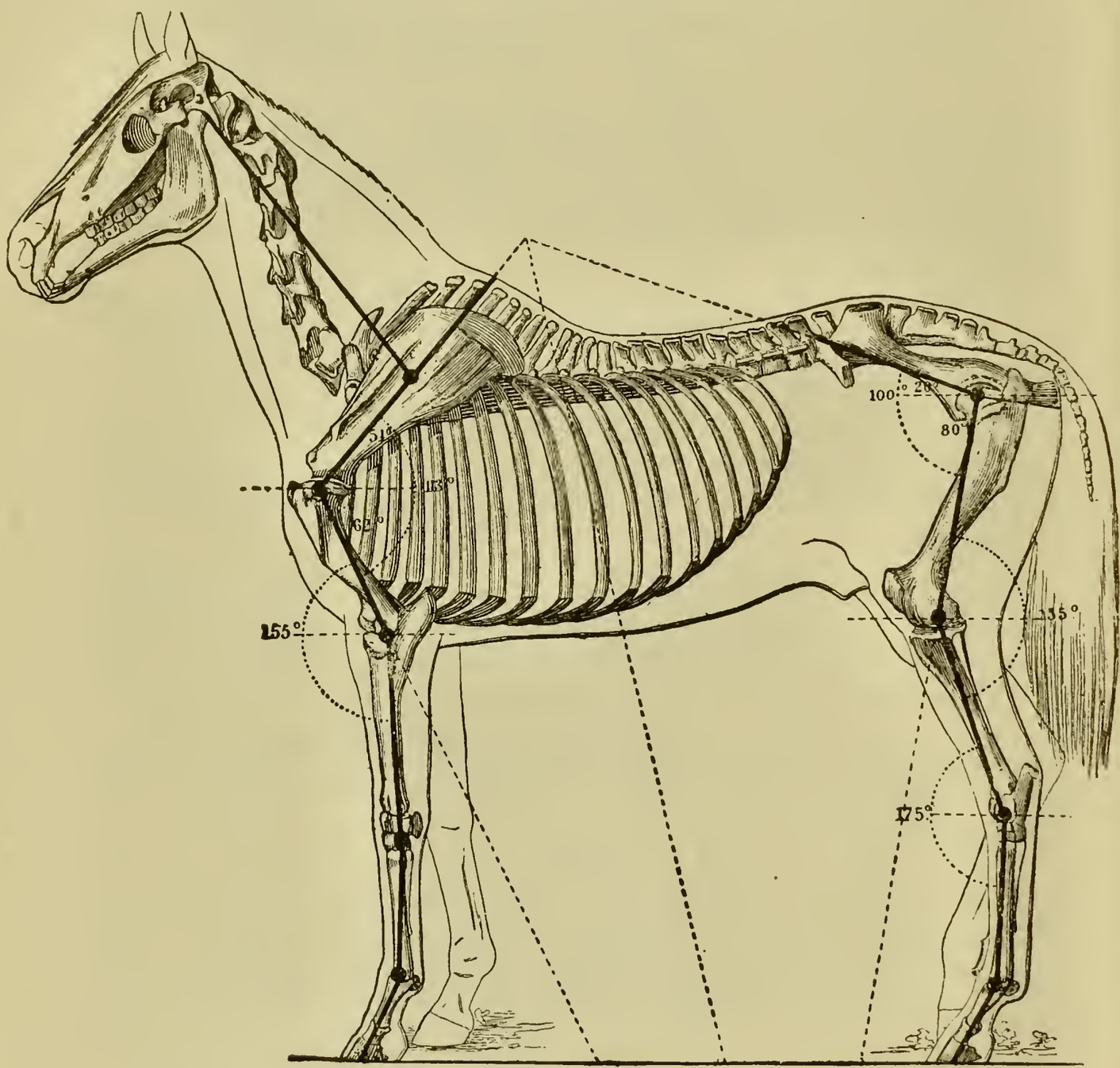


FIG. 134.—The articular angles upon a drawing from a photograph of Fitz-Gladiator.

b. **Posterior Member:**

1st. *Coxo-femoral Axis.*—Point of external localization: a little below and behind the convexity of the trochanter.

2d. *Femoro-tibial Axis.*—Point of external localization: a little below the superior insertion of the corresponding lateral ligament of this articulation.

3d. *Tibio-tarsal or Metatarsal Axis.*—Point of external localization: centre of the astragalus.

4th. *Metatarso-phalangal Axis.*—Point of external localization: at the superior insertion of the corresponding lateral ligament of the articulation.

All these points of localization—the points where the centre of rotation can be located externally—can with a little practice be easily recognized in the living animal. But it is indispensable that this habit should be acquired by numerous experiments; otherwise, those who explore and measure are exposed to almost inevitable mistakes. Nor are all subjects suitable for such an experiment; there are some that must be absolutely rejected: those whose state of obesity conceals not only from sight but also from touch those external points of which we have been speaking.

These restrictions being established, we will suppose that upon a chosen subject all the articular centres have been marked with a colored pencil or chalk. In order to obtain the *imaginary axes of movement* of the osseous levers it will be sufficient to join these points by straight lines.

This direction should be determined accurately in a special manner for the shoulder, the coxa, and the phalanges, which are connected with only one articular centre. All the other regions are indeed placed between two of these centres, and therefore as soon as the latter are discovered their direction is known.

It is M. Lemoigne's opinion, as well as ours, that the *line of direction of the shoulder* starts from the scapulo-humeral centre, and superiorly divides the dorsal border of the scapula at about two centimetres behind the line of the scapular spine.

That of the *ilium* extends from the coxo-femoral centre to the angle of the haunch, which it divides in its middle.

Finally, that of the *phalanges* extends from the metacarpo- or metatarso-phalangal centre to the ground, and remains almost parallel to the anterior profile of the digital region.

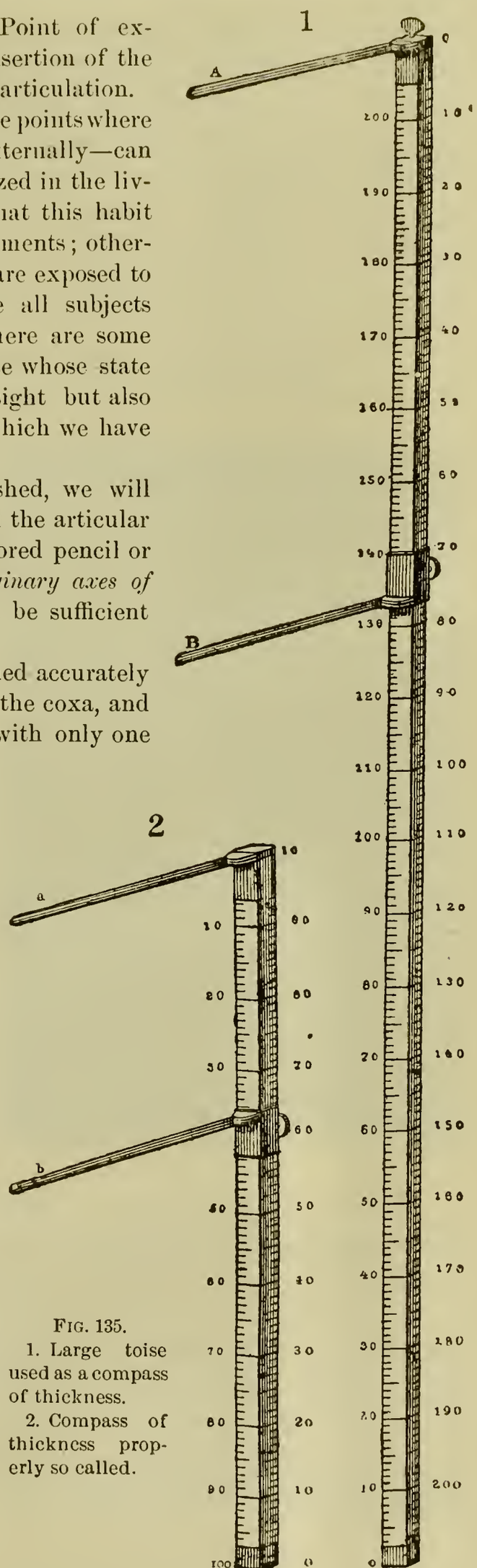


FIG. 135.
1. Large toise used as a compass of thickness.
2. Compass of thickness properly so called.

The animal being placed and maintained in its normal equi-

librium, the top of the goniometer, M. Lemoigne says, is placed in juxtaposition "to the external determining point of one of the axes of rotation; an arm of the instrument is directed in such a manner that its line of direction passes through the external determining point of the axis of rotation which is immediately superior; the other arm is placed in a perfectly horizontal direction,—which is ascertained by means of a spirit-level,—and the degrees of the angle thus formed between the horizontal and the osseous segment whose inclination is desired are then counted. . . ."

By taking these precautions, and by the greatest care, M. Lemoigne has been able to determine the following figures, which represent, upon fourteen subjects, the mean of the inclinations of the osseous levers and the angles which they form.

TABLE A.

INCLINATION OF THE OSSEOUS SEGMENTS UPON THE HORIZON.				
SEGMENTS.	Medium.	Maximum.	Minimum.	Medium adopted.
Scapular	65°	70°	59°	65°
Humeral	57	65	53	55
Iliac	35	43	28	35
Femoral	78	85	70	78
Tibial	65	72	55	65

OPENING OF THE ARTICULAR ANGLES IN STATION.				
SEGMENTS.	Medium.	Maximum.	Minimum.	Medium adopted.
Scapulo-humeral	121°	130°	116°	121°
Humero-radial	148	157	137	148
Metacarpo-phalangal	158	170	152	158
Ilio-femoral	117	130	100	117
Femoro-tibial	144	151	138	144
Tibio-metatarsal	152	158	148	150
Metatarso-phalangal	158	165	150	158

We, too, have attempted to determine the standard inclinations of the articular segments of the horse, and this we have done upon nearly a hundred subjects of different conformations.

For this purpose we have constructed (Fig. 135) a *toise* (1) and a *compass for measuring thickness* (2). Each of these instruments is composed of a strong, square rule bearing two graduations disposed in an inverse sense from each other, upon which glides by gentle friction a gauge, *B* and *b*, which may be held in position by means of a pressure-screw. By raising the rod *A*, the large rule forms a standard,

and is used to measure the height; by turning the gauge *B*, after having completely withdrawn it, it becomes a compass of thickness to measure the great lengths. As to the compass of thickness properly so called, merely turning it will transform it into a small toise.

On the other hand, in connection with M. Vignardou, principal of the department of physics and chemistry at the Alfort school, we have constructed a goniometer by the use of which we can dispense with the spirit-level, an instrument very difficult to use on an irritable horse.

Suppose, for example, we are measuring (Fig. 136) the inclination of the segment, *AB*, upon the horizon, *XY*. To do this, it will be sufficient to estimate the angle, *BAP*, formed by this segment with the vertical line, and deduct 90 degrees from the angle obtained. It is quite easy to arrive at this result by employing the following instrument, which we intend to designate by the name *arthrogoniometer*, on account of its use.

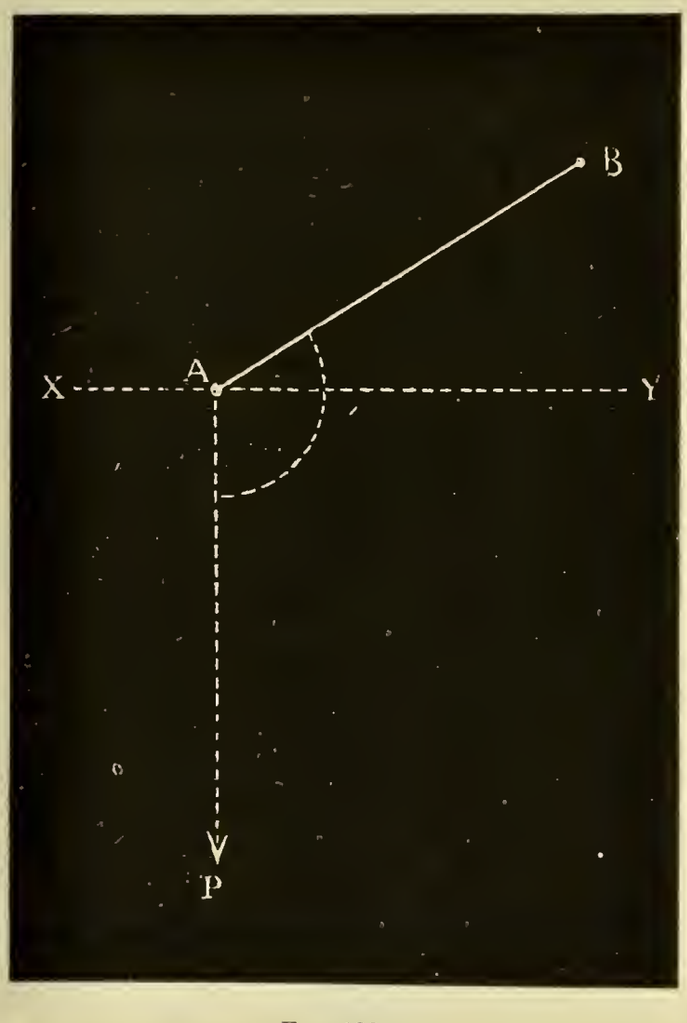


Fig. 136.

It is composed (Fig. 138) of a compass of precision, made of wood, whose branches are 0.65 m. long, and which at the same time is used as a compass of thickness.

Upon one of these branches a semicircular piece of copper, very accurately graduated, well centred, and having a radius of 0.20 m., is fixed by means of movable screws. The centre of this circle corresponds to the axis of rotation of the branches, an axis upon which a small metallic rod 0.10 m. long is screwed perpendicularly, upon which freely slides a hollow cylinder supporting a plumb-line.

In order to use the arthrogoniometer, we stand the horse in his normal equilibrium, and then place the articulation of the instrument over an articular centre, as, for example, the scapulo-humeral (Fig. 137). The observer stations himself about fifty centimetres from the animal; he is careful not to touch the latter, and recommends the assistant to hold his hand over the eye of the corresponding side, so that the horse may not be frightened by the examination

about being made. This done, the operator places the instrument in such a position that the branch of the compass to which the half-circle is fastened is perfectly tangent to the plumb-line. Then he gently moves the other branch until it has the direction of the osseous segment the inclination of which he desires to obtain. Having again proved the correct position of the apparatus, he reads upon the half-circle the value of the angle contained between the two branches, and deducts 90 degrees from this angle to obtain the desired inclination.

If, on the contrary, we simply desire to measure an articular angle, the plumb-line is needless. It is unfastened from the sliding cylinder, and the two

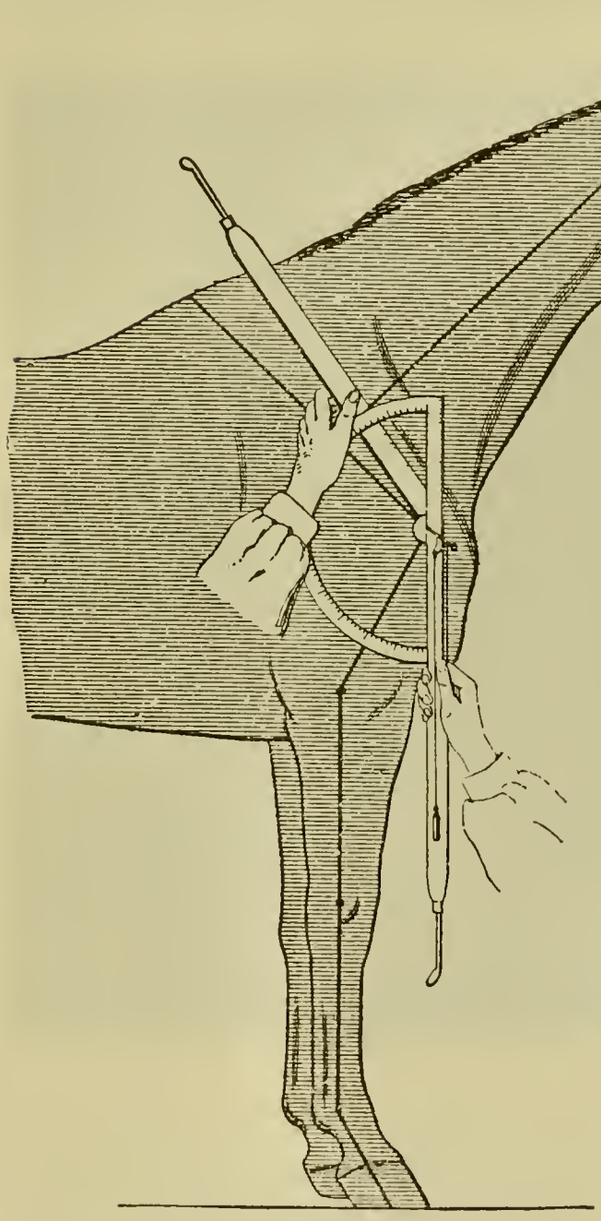


FIG. 137.—Use of the arthrogoniometer for measuring the articular angles.

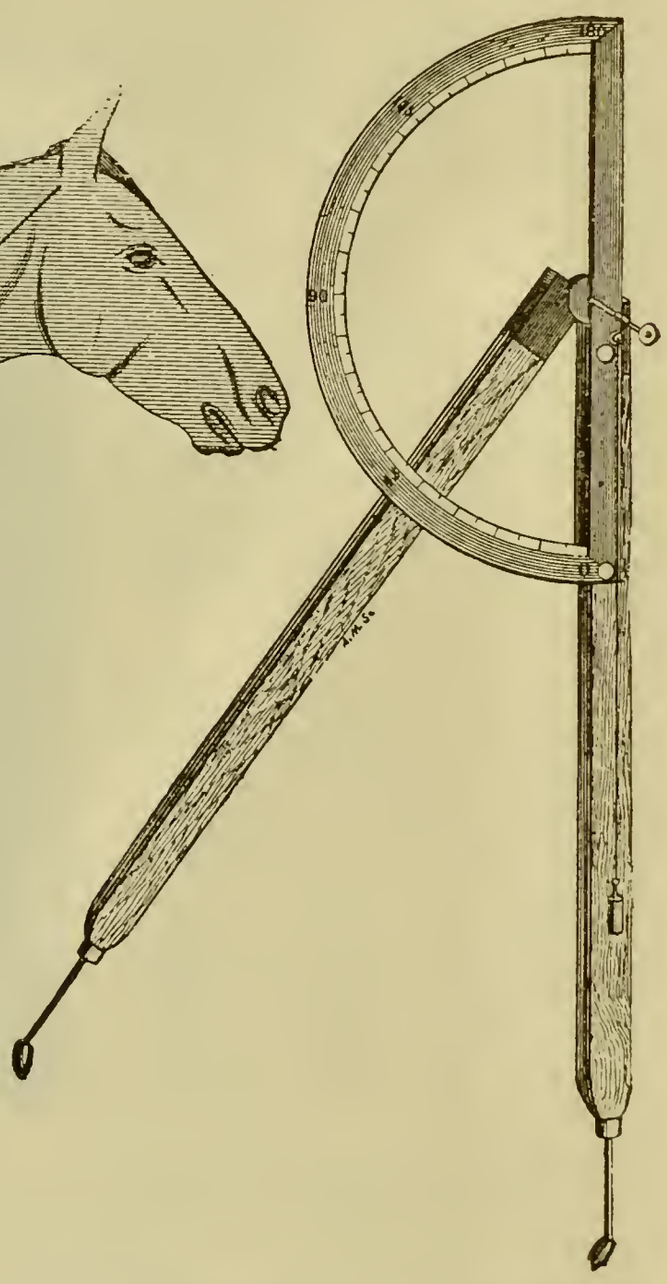


FIG. 138.—Arthrogoniometer for measuring the articular angles.

arms of the arthrogoniometer are placed in the prolongation of the two axes of movement whose separation we desire to determine. For the metacarpo- and metatarso-phalangal angles an ordinary compass is used, which is afterwards applied upon an appropriate protractor in order to obtain the angle contained. Although, in reality, the metacarpus and the metatarsus are not absolutely ver-

tical, a sufficient approximation is nevertheless obtained by considering them so to determine the inclination of the anterior and the posterior phalanges.

By operating in this way and with great care upon a large number of subjects destined for different services, but of irreproachable conformation for their kind, we have succeeded in obtaining the angles and the inclinations given in the following table:

TABLE B.

INCLINATION OF THE SEGMENTS OF LOCOMOTION UPON THE HORIZON AND THE VALUE OF THE ARTICULAR ANGLES IN FAST HORSES.

Designation of the Angles.	Inclination		Value of Angle contained.
	Of the Superior Segment.	Of the Inferior Segment.	
Anterior Member.			
Scapulo-humeral	55°	60°	115°
Humero-radial	50° to 55°	90°	140° to 145°
Metacarpo-phalangal	90°	60°	150°
Posterior Member.			
Coxo-femoral	30° to 35°	80°	110° to 115°
Femoro-tibial	80°	65° to 70°	145° to 150°
Tibio-tarsal	65° to 70°	90°	155° to 160°
Metatarso-phalangal	90°	65°	155°

Notwithstanding the improvement which is obtained from the employment of the arthrogoniometer, the measurement of all the angles of locomotion in the same horse was none the less a long, delicate, and often dangerous operation. It was necessary to place the horse in equilibrium, and thus maintain him during the entire duration of the experiment,—that is to say, for nearly an hour.

In order to gain time and operate with more accuracy, we have recently conceived the idea of applying *photography* to the measurement of the articular angles. This proceeding, which is more precise, more convenient, also gives more security to the observer.[1]

It consists in this:

Wafers (white or black, according to the color of the horse) are fastened to the skin over each articular centre. Others are also placed on the withers, the haunch, and the hoofs, which are used as marks to indicate the direction of the extreme segments of the members (shoulder, croup, phalanges). Different measurements are then taken: the height at the withers and at the croup, the length of the body, length of the head, etc.

This being done, the horse is placed in the direction of an axis marked out

[1] G. Barrier, Sur un nouveau procédé de mensuration des angles articulaires, in Bulletin de la Soc. cent. de méd. vétér. (Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, année 1885, p. 224).

upon the ground. On the other hand, a photographic apparatus is stationed upon another axis perpendicular to the first. As soon as the animal is placed in a good position, and his members are in their normal equilibrium, the photograph is instantaneously taken.

The photographic proof thus obtained is in some measure a mathematical reduction of the silhouette, or the profile of the subject, and the measurements previously taken upon the latter, then compared to the corresponding dimensions of the photograph, show exactly the ratio of the reduction effected. To avoid the causes of error inherent to the slight alteration of forms due to the lenses, the photographic apparatus is placed at a certain distance, in such a manner as to obtain as small an image as possible.

Upon this image the wafers serve as so many points of determination or landmarks which it will be sufficient to join by straight lines to obtain the real direction of the osseous segments. It only remains now to estimate with a protractor the inclination of each line, as well as the angles which are formed by their union. With this new process we can measure quietly, at our ease, without fatigue, without danger, and whenever convenient. The measurements are all comparable, since all the angles of the same subject have been photographed at the same time, and since on different horses we operate constantly under the same conditions.

The results obtained are very analogous to those already indicated.

What we have said with regard to each region, concerning the osseous inclination and the angular relations, excuses us from entering here into more minute details relative to the numerous variations which are observed in subjects according to their adaptation.

We will not speak of draught-horses used for slow work, in which the service at a walk requires only bulk and muscle; their scapulo-humeral and coxo-femoral angles are always more open; the others, on the contrary, are more closed. When the researches of M. Lemoigne appeared, Professor Neumann was the only one who submitted them to a judicious analysis; and as the criticisms which he opposed to them have an important value and may equally occur to the mind of the reader, it is our duty to give an account of them, inasmuch as they apply to us also who have, since the beginning, sided with our Milan colleague.

M. Neumann has reasoned upon these things in a purely mathematical light, and, in this respect, no objection can be made to his deductions. But the case is entirely different if the researches of M. Lemoigne and our own are considered as a *very accurate* means of obtaining information upon the different inclinations of the bones of fast horses. It is no longer a problem to know if these inclinations can be calculated with strict precision, a precision which it is impossible to realize in the researches which have animal mechanics for their object; it practically resolves itself into this: *It*

being granted that the angular relations of the osseous levers have an immediate influence upon the development of speed (we think that we have shown this *à propos* of the regions), *is it possible to estimate these relations with more accuracy than a single glance of the eye would give, and, this being so, are the centres of rotation obtained by the process indicated above sufficiently precise to allow comparative observations to be made upon different subjects and afterwards to reason in a general manner upon the results obtained?*

Well, there is no doubt but the question, brought down to these limits, is susceptible of a positive solution; and however approximative this solution may be, it will always be better than the state of ignorance in which the observer was previously, or than the often erroneous appreciations suggested by our senses. Let us see, besides, the criticisms of M. Neumann, which, without contradiction, we ourselves would have presented if our colleague had not previously formulated them.[1]

First, it is certainly not demonstrated that the articular angles are always of the same geometrical kind for the same bone; that they possess a centre and only one; that the position of this centre is always the same in relation with the external surface of the bone; finally, that the supposed axis of rotation is perpendicular to a cross-section of the latter. Nor is it established, either, that the axes passing through the centres of rotation, perpendicularly to the plane of movement, invariably meet the same anatomical points of the external surface of the bones. All this is true, but the variations among different animals are less marked than M. Neumann seems to believe. We will go further, for we have sought to determine it, and say that these variations, already so minute in the hybrids (mule, hinny), or in subjects of the same genus (ass), are recognized with extreme difficulty and are even unappreciable, so feeble are they, among the representatives of the same species. Therefore, although these objections are applied to possible and even probable errors, they are of little value as concerns definite results, and may be neglected without great inconvenience.

This is not the case in the search for the points of external data, or location of the axes of rotation in the living animal. Errors of one, two, or three centimetres, either above or below the point indicated, are easily committed, which lead without a doubt to solutions

---

[1] G. Neumann, Quelques observations sur la mécanique animale, à propos des recherches de M. Alexis Lemoigne, in Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, année 1877, p. 489.

entirely erroneous. This is not, however, an irrefutable argument. At every moment, in physiological experiments, we find ourselves face to face with such difficulties, and notwithstanding the failures, notwithstanding the errors every day, these experiments are renewed, and science constantly goes on reaping benefits from them. Must we say, then, that this idea should be renounced? Must we reject beforehand and with determination the facts acquired for this reason alone, that they may have been badly collected, wrongly studied, wrongly interpreted, or that they are simply approximative? Certainly not; this would prove a deplorable state of the scientific mind.

Far from us be the thought of drawing this conclusion from the criticisms of M. Neumann. Our distinguished colleague (and he is to be praised for this) has signalized the danger; he has appealed to corroborating observations; he has shown and demonstrated with proof the inevitable errors into which investigators incompletely prepared would fall, and we cannot too warmly approve his aim. All eyes are not apt to see well, all hands are not skilled in exploring, all horses are not suitable for this kind of study. Let it be well noted that if the results obtained by two observers do not agree in an absolute manner, if even their differences appear exaggerated, it is not less certain that these results, for each of them, can still be compared, for the chances are great that whatever error is committed is repeated everywhere the same way. In M. Lemoigne's opinions and in ours the differences are insignificant; we are in accord as to his articular angles. In table B (page 377) we gave only the angular relations of the bones in fast horses,—that is to say, in animals with an oblique shoulder, a straight arm, a horizontal croup, and a straight leg; this shows why our scapulo-humeral and humero-radial angles are a little more closed and our tibio-tarsal angle a little more open, and even then the opening of the last results, perhaps, from the fact that in all our estimations we have considered the canon as vertical.

Let us try now, as M. Neumann has done above in order to refute the theory of General Morris, to estimate, with our angles, the vertical height of the members of a horse of medium size.

Let the anterior member be represented schematically with its axis of movement (Fig. 139). The heights a, b, c of the segments which do not themselves lie parallel with the vertical line are the sides of as many rectangular triangles, whose hypothenuse and one of the adjacent angles are known. It is then easy to calculate them by vulgar trigonometrical formulæ, and we have:

$$a = 0.41 \text{ m. sin. } 60^\circ = 0.35507 \text{ m.}$$
$$b = 0.31 \text{ m. sin. } 55^\circ = 0.25394 \text{ m.}$$
$$c = 0.17 \text{ m. sin. } 60^\circ = 0.14722 \text{ m.}$$

Add the values of *a*, *b*, *c*, thus obtained, to those of the vertical segments, those which lie parallel in their actual length with the vertical line; add to this

FIG. 139.

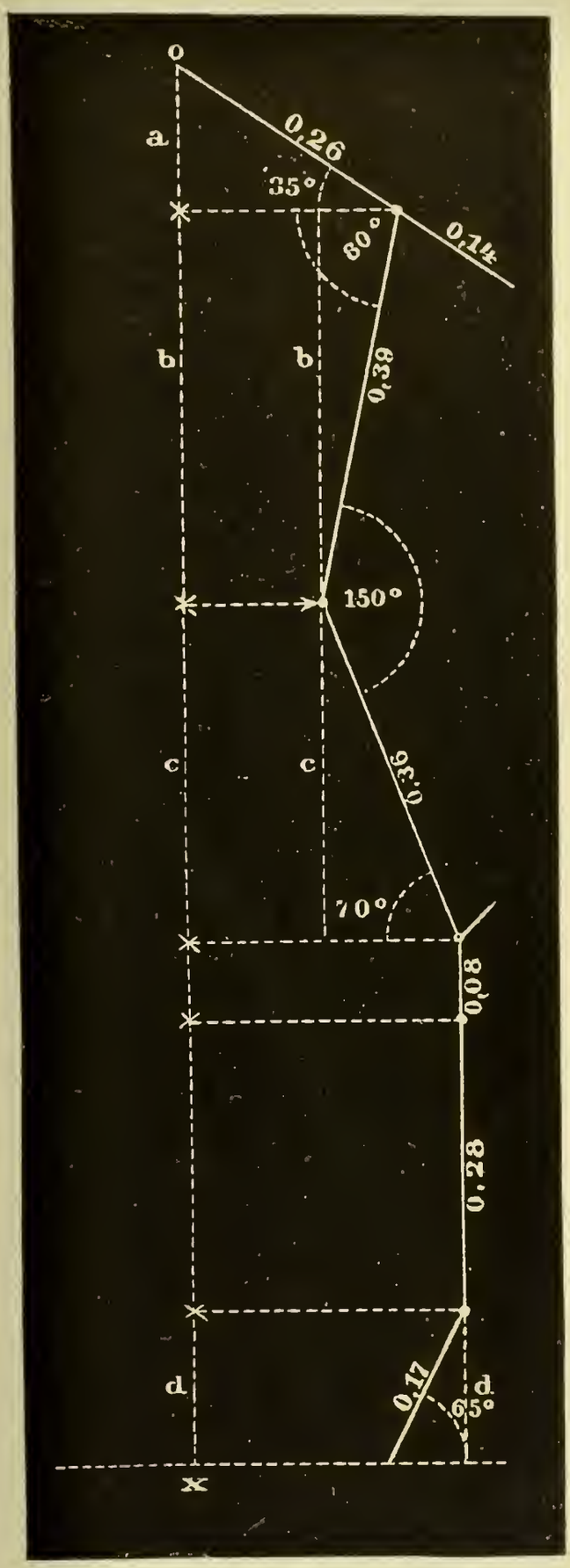


FIG. 140.

0.12 m. for the prominence of the scapular cartilage, the thickness of the shoe, hoof, articular cartilages, skin, etc., and we will obtain the following results:

VERTICAL HEIGHT OF THE ANTERIOR MEMBER CALCULATED FROM THE NORMAL LENGTH OF THE SEGMENTS AND THE REAL ARTICULAR ANGLES WHICH THEY FORM WITH EACH OTHER.

Shoulder (*a*)	0.35507 m.
Arm (*b*)	0.25394 m.
Forearm	0.36000 m.
Carpus	0.05000 m.
Metacarpus	0.24000 m.
Phalanges (*c*)	0.14722 m.
Cartilage of prolongation, shoe, hoof, etc.	0.12000 m.
Total of the member	1.52623 m.
Same height calculated from the figures of M. Lemoigne[1]	1.55316 m.

The same calculations applied to the posterior member (Fig. 140) give for the values of *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*:

$$a = 0.26 \text{ m. sin. } 35^\circ = 0.14912 \text{ m.}$$
$$b = 0.39 \text{ m. sin. } 80^\circ = 0.38407 \text{ m.}$$
$$c = 0.36 \text{ m. sin. } 70^\circ = 0.33828 \text{ m.}$$
$$d = 0.17 \text{ m. sin. } 65^\circ = 0.15407 \text{ m.}$$

VERTICAL HEIGHT OF THE POSTERIOR MEMBER CALCULATED FROM THE NORMAL LENGTH AND INCLINATION OF THE SEGMENTS.

Ilium (*a*)	0.14912 m.
Thigh (*b*)	0.38407 m.
Leg (*c*)	0.33828 m.
Tarsus	0.08000 m.
Metatarsus	0.28000 m.
Digital region (*d*)	0.15407 m.
Vertical distance between the summit of the croup and that of the haunch (we have intentionally represented it as very small)	0.02000 m.
Thickness of the interarticular menisci, cartilages, skin, shoe, hoof, etc.	0.05000 m.
Total of the member	1.45554 m.
Same height calculated from the figures of M. Lemoigne[2]	1.44448 m.

Thus, by taking M. Lemoigne's measurements as well as our own as a base, we succeed in reconstructing the members with their normal medium height, which proves the relative precision of our observations.

Influence of the Inclinations of the Bones upon Speed.—The degree of opening of the locomotory angles of the horse have a marked influence upon the development of speed. With regard to the superior regions of the members, we have not failed to mention and to indicate, for each bone, the value of the inclination which it should

[1] Here the shoulder and the phalanges are a little less inclined than they should be, which makes the member a little longer.

[2] Here the femur and the tibia are a little more inclined than they should be, which makes the member a little shorter.

possess. It would therefore be fastidious to reproduce here all the details into which we have entered; our point of view now is much more general.

We will limit ourselves to the following short *résumé:*

1st. The articular angles are alternately closed and opened during locomotion.

Their closing should dispose their branches in such a manner as to shorten as much as possible the whole member in order to prepare it for an attitude of considerable extension.

Their opening, lengthening the locomotory column, should permit the inferior extremity of the latter to acquire an extreme position, as far removed as possible from the original position, in order that the step may have a great length and the impulsion be of long duration.

2d. The extent of the articular action is intimately dependent upon the respective position of the osseous segments during the regular station. In principle, the original separation of these latter increases it, and their approximation diminishes it.

3d. In order that the articular action may produce the greatest amount of useful effects, it must be accomplished in such a manner that the two extremities of the member may be separated, at the time of extension, in a very oblique direction and not according to the vertical or any other direction approaching the vertical. It is under these conditions that the length of the step and the impulsive power acquire their highest limit. It is in this case also that the impulsion is most efficaciously transmitted,—that is to say, following a trajectory close to the horizontal, having a forward movement and not an upward one.

4th. The degree of inclination of the locomotory segments is therefore capable of influencing the action of the articular angles in two ways: either by modifying its extent or modifying its efficacy. The obliquity of these segments should therefore satisfy this double requirement,—viz., increase the efficacy of the articular action without diminishing its extent.

5th. To do this we know that the superior segments, the shoulder and the croup, little movable, should rather tend towards the horizontal, in order to acquire more length without increasing beyond measure the height, to facilitate the forward and backward movement of the inferior regions, and give them the freedom of extending themselves effectively to pass over the ground or communicate the impulsion.

This horizontality of the shoulder and the croup naturally implies

in fast horses a more marked closing of the superior angles. In draught-horses these angles should be more open, because greater rigidity of the members is required in pulling.

6th. We have also seen that the inferior segments, much more movable, are all the better for having, when at rest, only a slightly oblique inclination, which brings them nearer to the vertical line passing through their centre of movement, because then the action of their articular angles develops the greatest amount of motion.

7th. Observation and theory agree in proving that the locomotory segments are far from having an inclination of 45 degrees to the horizon in beautifully-formed horses, and from being parallel with one another in the members of the same biped, as the theory of General Morris would require.

8th. The similitude of the homologous angles does not seem to be established either, nor even necessary to the most favorable static and dynamic conditions.

The *tendency to the equality* of the following angles should, however, be recognized : the scapulo-humeral and the coxo-femoral, the humero-radial and the femoro-tibial, the metacarpo-phalangal and the metatarso-phalangal.

9th. All things being equal, the fast horse has his locomotory angles, the superior and the inferior, less open than the draught-horse, on account of the greater inclination of his shoulder, his croup, and his pasterns.

On the contrary, the other angles are more open and the segments a little longer, especially the canons.

10th. The angular relations of the locomotory segments are of importance in the production of force only in so far as they realize better static conditions and favor muscular incidences.

Now, how shall we judge of the closing of the articular angles without having recourse to the use of mechanical instruments? This is certainly one of the most delicate points, and one which demands great practice and great accuracy of sight. It is, however, possible to give some hints capable of guiding one in this respect.

Thus, the closure of the scapulo-humeral angle can be estimated by the obliquity of the shoulder and the elevation of its point.

The coxo-femoral angle can be approximately estimated by the horizontality of the croup. Many common horses, as has been seen, present the length of the head between the summit of that region and the superior fold of the stifle-joint; it is, on the contrary, very rare to

find this in well-formed race-horses. In our opinion this difference results only from a smaller coxo-femoral angle in the latter.

A proper opening of the superior angles being once determined, nothing remains to be done but to ascertain the perfect regularity of the equilibrium, in order to judge of the inferior angles. And, sure enough, if the inclination of the shoulder be good, it is evident that the humero-radial joint will be found in advantageous conditions, provided the forearm be almost vertical, and the fetlock-joint and the foot be well placed in relation with the vertical line.

Likewise, the position of the croup being ascertained to be right, it is evident that the direction of the leg will become correct also, from this fact alone, that the hock will occupy its normal position with respect to the plumb-line which is tangent to it.

The correct opening of the superior angles of the members, therefore, commands that of the inferior, on condition that the locomotory columns be regularly disposed for the support of the body, and that the osseous segments have maintained their proper length.

C.—General Relations of the Ensemble, the Whole Organism.

The word *ensemble*, when not employed as synonymous with *regularity, harmony, beautiful proportions*, signifies the totality of the animal machine acting as one generator of force or speed, irrespective of the parts which compose it.

It is by restriction, and incorrectly, that the large divisions, lines, or dimensions of the whole are called *ensembles;* we will therefore seldom use this latter expression, which seems to refer rather to the details, while its true acceptation gives it a much more general sense.

Several horsemen criticise and take pleasure in ridiculing the ingenuous comparison which has been formed between the horse and an ordinary machine; it is to be regretted that they have neither felt nor understood analogies in which they no doubt would have found the solution of more than one difficult problem.

From a didactic point of view it is, indeed, convenient and allowable to compare the horse to a vehicle, for the reason that it is always more simple to make an examination upon a scheme than upon the thing itself, especially when the latter is complicated. Whatever may be the essence, nature, and position of the motor relatively to the vehicle, the latter, to fulfil effectually the end to which it is destined, should comply with certain conditions of height, length, and width, maintain certain relations between what we may be allowed to call its

inert part, the frame, and its active part, the wheels. These are the relations which it remains for us to determine by applying them to the horse. We will see in them at the same time the most general and the most important characteristics of his conformation.

Height.—The **height** of an animal is the elevation of its body above the ground, the members having the altitude they usually take during station. It is measured from the withers or from the croup, two external points easily found when we are careful to take the necessary precautions. (See *Height.*)

Observations show that these points are situated upon the same horizontal line or upon different levels. In the latter case, the horse is said to be *high* or *low in front* according to the corresponding height of the croup. There results evidently from this an abnormal distribution of the weight of the body upon the four extremities; this, at least, is the result of our measurements and our weighings.

A lowering of some centimetres at the withers usually causes a surcharge of the anterior members, and therefore modifies the conditions of the equilibrium and the velocity of the gait. These drawbacks increase in proportion to the burden carried on the back, which is often added to the subject's own bulk. Lastly, the region of the withers is more exposed, on account of its prominence, to contusions and wounds caused by the harness.

Inverse effects accompany the diminution of the height over the croup. The hind-quarters, surcharged in their turn, are wanting in action, and are obliged to use greater efforts; the hocks are soon ruined.

But these different disadvantages, with their grievous consequences, manifest themselves only when the inequality in the height of the two bipeds is very marked. When it is slight, it is but little perceived in practice. Besides, it has not the same importance in all services. The cavalry horse, the pack-horse, and the dray-horse, always heavily loaded, will show the effects of being *low in front* much sooner than the race-horse, the coacher, the trotter, or the light draught-horse. These latter, on the contrary, in which speed is the main quality, suffer much more from a defect in the hind-quarters; an excess of height of the croup over that of the withers is a favorable disposition in them, whilst an equality of the height of the two bipeds is the best conformation in the others.

Many horses of good breeding and of great speed have the croup considerably higher than the withers; this conformation is even very much appreciated by horsemen, especially in hunters and

steeple-chasers. It should not be forgotten, however, that in such cases the overloading of the anterior members is *compensated* by the relative lightness of the fore-quarters and the power and great length of the hind-quarters. Here, as with the hare, according to M. Richard's[1] comparison, the posterior members are carried far under the trunk, their footprints are much beyond those of the anterior, the hind-quarters are strongly built, the croup and loins are vigorous and well supported, the dorsal spinous apophyses are long, and the shoulder very oblique. There is then truly a compensation.

One point which should be insisted upon in passing is, that we never see subjects *three heads in height.* The most exceptional in this respect only reach two heads and three-quarters, whilst the happy medium reaches but two and a half heads, according to Bourgelat's judicious remark.[2] Those which very much exceed this figure, as well as those which do not attain it, should be considered disproportionately built; these last are more seldom seen. Let us cite an example of this kind, occurring in our observations, which is quite remarkable, and in which the height at the withers was only two heads and one-third.

The height is an organic sum composed of two elements, the body and the members, between which harmony does not always exist. Then there results one of the defects of construction most prejudicial to a good functional activity of the living machine. We will soon have occasion to return to this.

Length.—The **length** of the body is considered from the point of the shoulder to that of the buttock, the animal being in the normal position. Bourgelat rightly assigned to it two heads and a half in well-formed horses. Our best types nowadays are still constructed according to these incontestable measurements.

Perhaps this dimension is subject to variation more than the preceding; we insist upon this, however, that its variations remain constantly below three heads, even in subjects reputed to be long by the greater number of horsemen and artists,—English horses, for example, which are usually shorter than others.

M. Duhousset[3] says that nothing is easier than to be mistaken by a superficial observation. To prove this, we place before the eyes of the reader a drawing of the two horses in Fig. 141. No. 1 is taken from a photograph having exactly two heads and a half in the two

---

[1] A. Richard, Étude du cheval, etc., p. 149.
[2] Cl. Bourgelat, loc cit., p. 203.
[3] E. Duhousset, Le Cheval, p. 69.

measurements, height and length. No. 2 is this type lengthened only

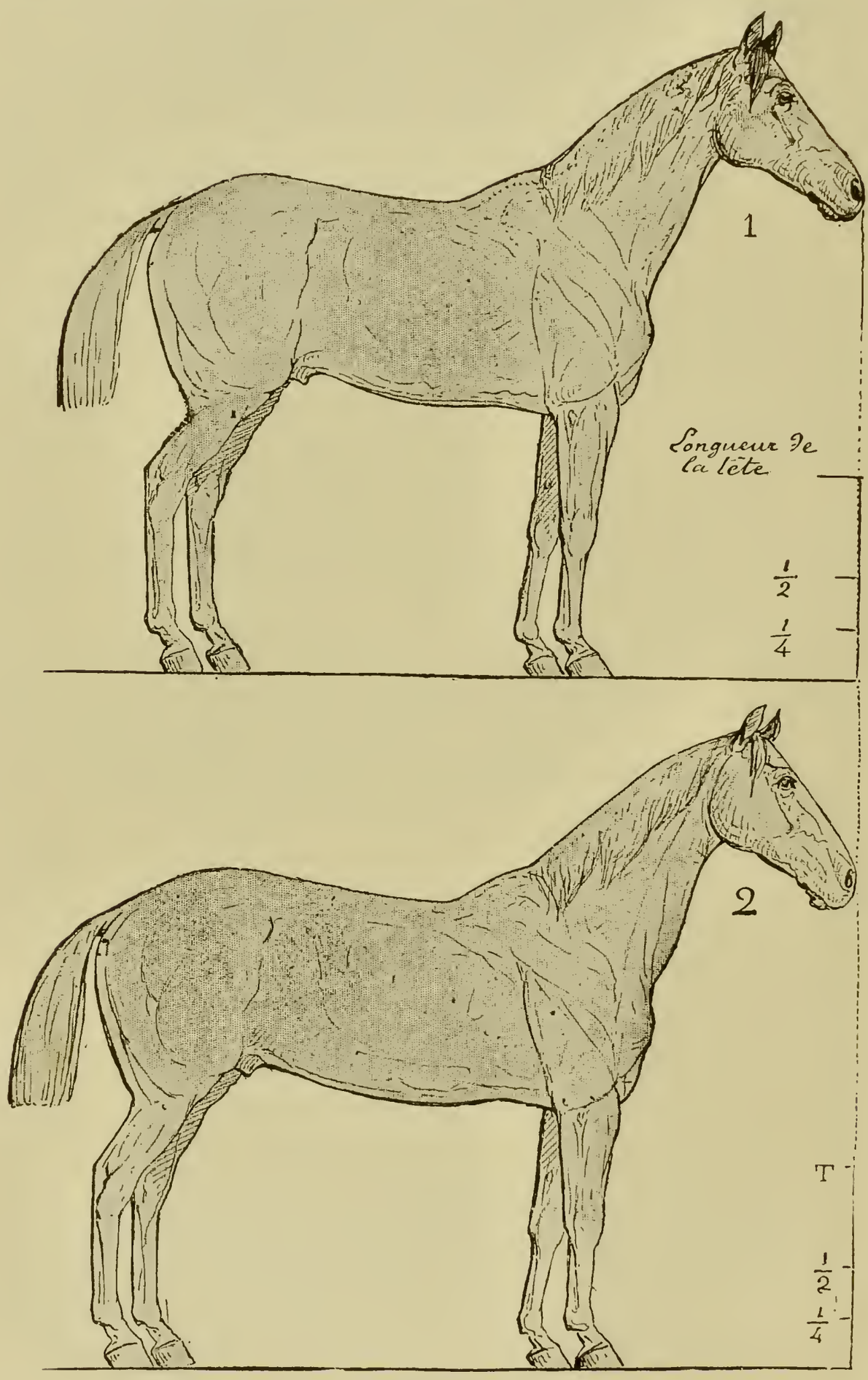


FIG. 141.

by one-fourth of the length of the head. It is evident that the first

will appear short, but the second will always have the appearance of a long animal ; however, that the minimum difference is accurate may be verified by the use of the compass. According to this, we may imagine the still greater apparent difference which would be produced by this second horse if the length compared with the height had been three heads instead of two and three-fourths.

One of the most extraordinary horses, in this respect, which we have measured was two heads and four-fifths long ; it is needless to add that it was entirely defective in other respects. Horses which do not reach two heads and one-half in length are far from being common ; still, we have noticed several examples.

However this may be, it is important to recognize the fact that the pure and simple consideration of the length of the body is insufficient to form an opinion as to the shortness of the dorso-lumbar column, a *sine quâ non* condition of his strength and aptness to properly utilize the impulsive action of the hind-quarters. This results from the length being an organic sum whose elements are: 1st, the length of the spine; 2d, the length, the direction, as well as the relative situation of the shoulder and the croup. It is plain that the point of the shoulder and that of the buttock will be still more distant from each other as they belong respectively to regions longer, more inclined, and more separated.

The question, then, is to determine in what way the spinal column is covered by these regions. Now, the *scapulo-iliac* distance comprised between the dorsal angle of the scapulum and the angle of the haunch furnishes a rather convenient means of obtaining this result. This distance, as we have already seen in speaking of the shoulder (page 203), is equal to that of the head in all beautiful horses. If it is found to exceed this, we may infer that it depends either upon the excessive length of the loins or the position of the shoulder and the croup. As the disposition of these may be easily appreciated, since they occupy a superficial position, it follows that, all things being equal, the horse which has the greatest separation between the dorsal angle of the scapula and the haunch will also be provided with the longest spine, and will be the most predisposed to become sway-backed.

But an excess of length does not always imply a like formation of the vertebral column. De Saint-Ange[1] has explained this judicious remark by means of an ingenious graphic demonstration, of which the scheme of Fig. 142 is only the reproduction. The subjects Nos. 1 and

---

[1] De Saint-Ange, Cours d'hippologie, t. i. p. 154, Saumur, 1850.

2 have the same total length; they differ only in the dimensions of the back and loins; in the first, they are long, *mn;* in the second, they are in good condition, *op*. In the latter the total length, *AD*, depends,

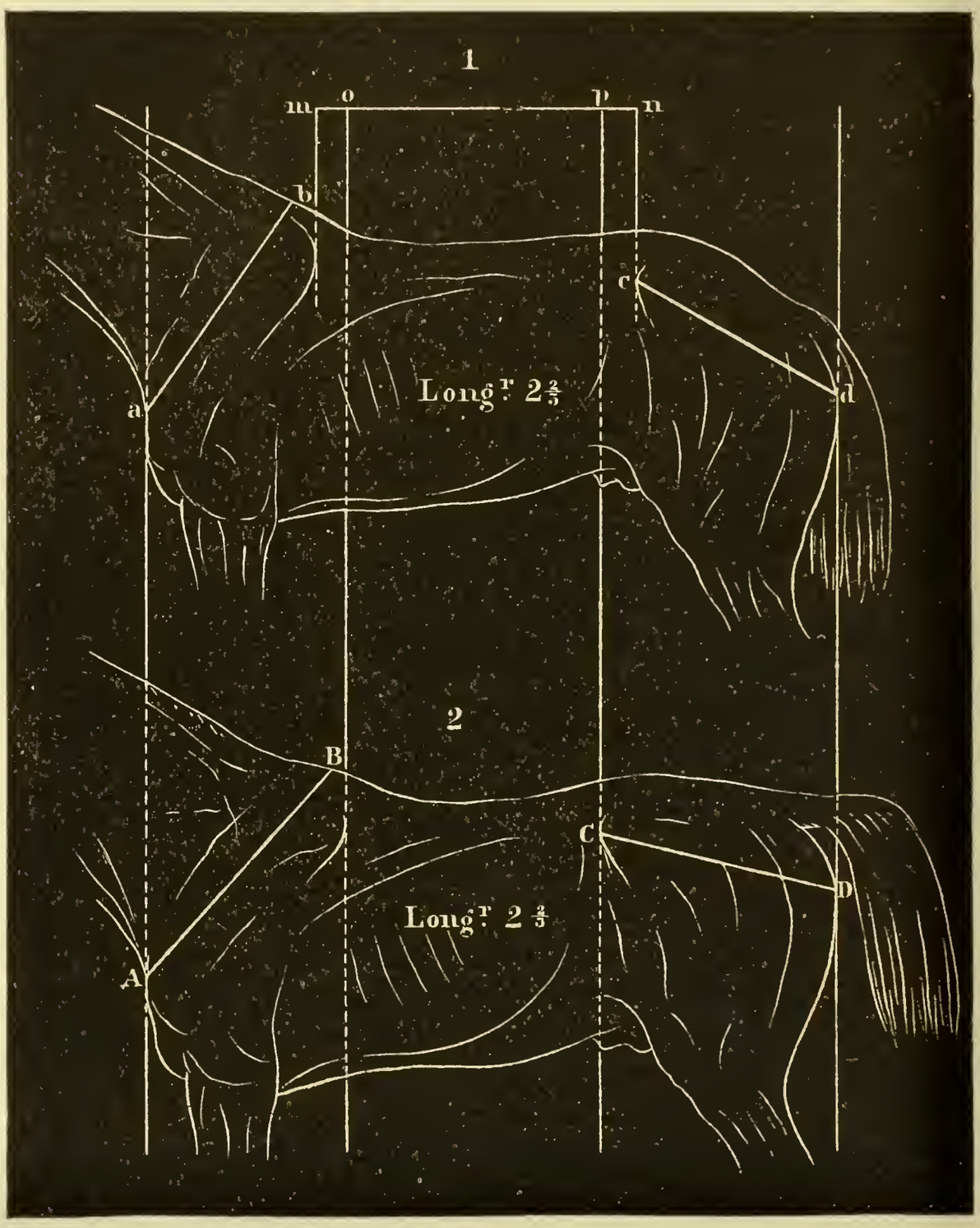


Fig 142.

without contradiction, upon the position of *AB* and *CD*, regions which, without a longer interval between them, are more separated at their extremes by becoming more horizontal, therefore covering a larger extent of the body, and acquiring more favorable dimensions and inclinations. Here the separation of the points *A* and *D* is not then due, as in subject No. 1, to an excess in the length of the dorso-lumbar

column, but rather to the strengthening of the points of the shoulder and the buttock, two points which *compensate* what the total length *AD* at first sight appears to be defective in, since it measures two and two-thirds heads.

The normal length, two heads and a half, on the contrary, is not always constant when the animal is short and compactly built. The back and the loins of many horses meeting these general requirements are weak, on account of a want of development of the croup, vertical direction of the shoulder, and often also on account of the prominence of the spine, poorly covered by these parts. Again, this defect is judged of by the value of the scapulo-iliac distance, of which we have already spoken.

Finally, the excess of length, when it is not exaggerated, cannot only be compensated, as is seen in Fig. 142, but it is to be preferred to the classic length of two heads and a half,—even supposing the scapulo-iliac separation to be normal,—if it is due to the disposition of the shoulder and croup, and if it coincides with a long chest and a short flank. In this case, in fact, the dorso-lumbar column is in good proportion and strongly supported; it supports a spacious thoracic cavity; the animal has brilliant and extensive action, endurance, and a harmonious form. This may be seen in Fig. 143, in which subject No. 2 is one-sixth of a head longer than subject No. 1, which possesses normal conditions, but whose shoulder and croup are wanting in length and inclination.

From all that has been said, it is seen that we cannot investigate too carefully the value of the different elements which compose the length of the body. A *superficial* estimation of this dimension is insufficient, even when it appears to be in the condition indicated above. The relative condition of the back and the loins on the one part, the shoulders and the croup on the other, must also be appreciated; the apparent excess of length should not be considered, *a priori*, as resulting from the spine, nor regarded as implying always the length of the chest. We should be in danger of committing errors. When assigning two heads and a half to the length, we meant to imply at the same time a proper scapulo-iliac distance, a well-formed shoulder and croup. The particular cases which we have analyzed positively prove that it is impossible to determine absolute figures.

Relations between the Height and the Length.—What we have said in regard to these proportions naturally foreshadows that, with Bourgelat, we give preference to the *square* (*carré*) horse, one in which the height at the withers is sensibly equal to his length, and

which therefore might be inscribed within a perfect square. But how many prejudices exist upon this particular point! Not to lose time, we will not consider them. Some prefer the long horse, others the short; most people reject the square,—the only one, perhaps, which realizes in the best way a beautiful conformation.

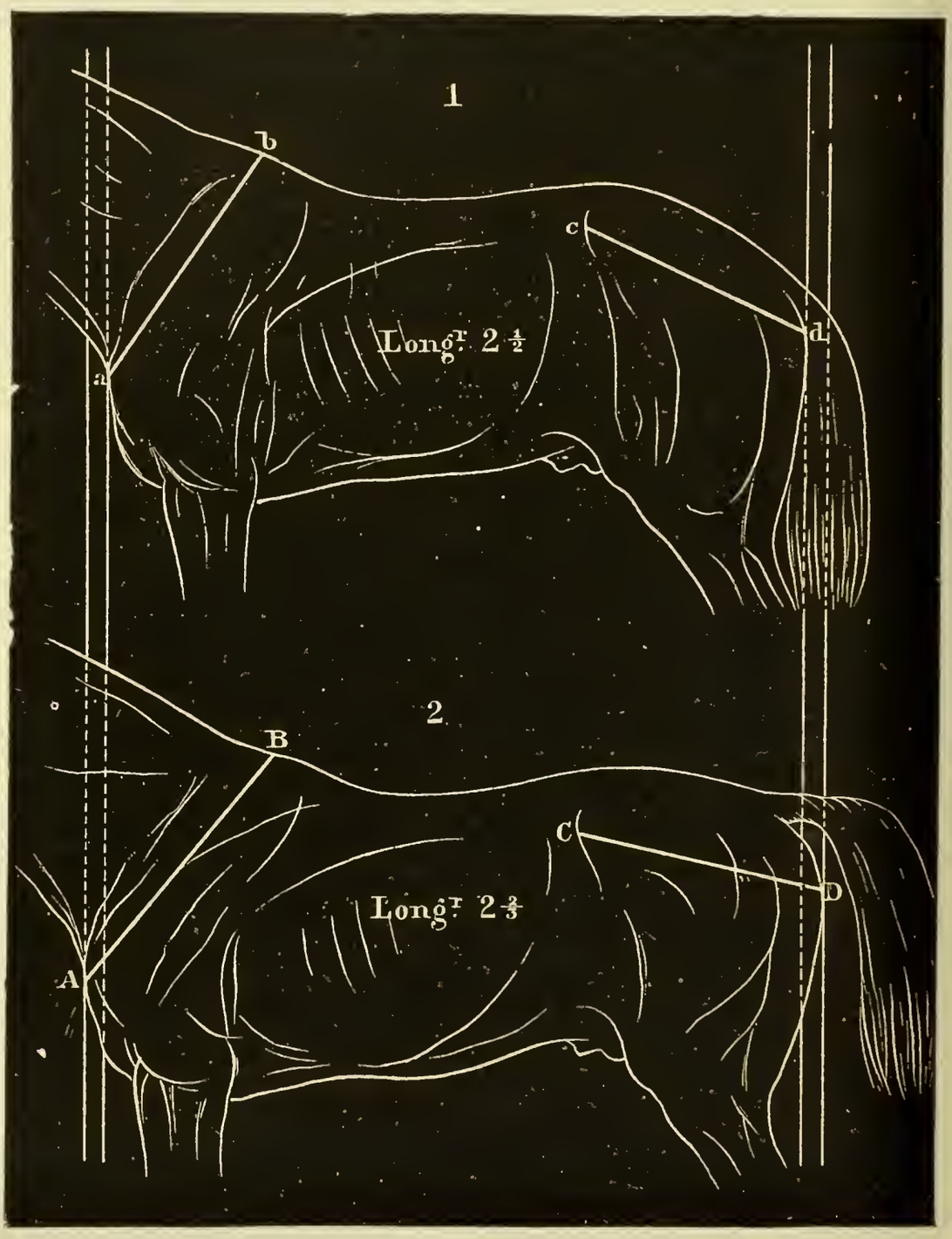


Fig. 143.

Why these differences of opinion? We hardly know. It seems, in this case, that observers have judged much more from their ideas than from their researches. Still, it will be acknowledged that it would have been easy to proceed differently. However this may be, let us see what are the consequences if height or length be increased separately beyond its normal limits.

Suppose, for a moment, that a well-formed horse be made taller without changing, in any respect, the relations existing between his different regions; in other words, let us vary only his height without modifying the relations previously existing between the body and the members. As Bourgelat has expressed it, we shall have determined a defect of proportion comparable to that which is observed when the animal is too short. The centre of gravity will have been raised without the base of support being enlarged; the trunk will have acquired greater weight without the columns of support becoming stronger; finally, the members will have become longer without increasing the speed, since the posterior members will not be able to move freely under the body without the risk of striking the anterior. We will have before us a locomotor unstable in its equilibrium, feeble in its parts, made taller so that he might go faster, but prevented from doing so by the imperfect adjustment of its mechanism. Our horse will be narrow, tall, liable to fall, to forge, to interfere, without power or speed,—a true string, according to the vulgar expression.

The results will not be better if we attempt the contrary experiment,—that is to say, if we diminish the height while allowing the other parts to remain in the condition in which they were previously. In such a case, the defect will be the same as if the subject were too long. We will have lowered the centre of gravity, rendered the base of support relatively wider, the equilibrium more stable, and the members shorter. These will not in any way be disturbed in their action, or liable to meet each other; but their movements will be wanting in extent and also in power. The motor will appear heavy, massive, and slow; he will not be able to display any speed with his shortened members, save by multiplying their movements, and that, be it well understood, to the prejudice of the muscular apparatus which moves them and the nervous system which commands their displacements.

Identical conclusions would be reached if, instead of varying the height, we changed the normal relations of length in relation to the height.

The excess of length, for example, would produce the same effect as if the body were too close to the ground. To this, however, would be superadded the complication that the vertebral column, being longer and more movable, would become feeble, vacillating, predisposed to become sway-backed, and more fatiguing to support. The subject would be unfit for the saddle, his movements would lose their precision; he would go cross-ways rather than walk straight.

As to the defect in length, would not the same inconveniences exist as if the horse were too tall? Over and above the fact that the animal would acquire a tendency to forge and interfere, his gait would be hard, unsightly, and high, for the spinal column, although more solid, would be shorter and less supple.

Such are the results to which extremes lead! Let us seek for the just mean by inspiring ourselves with beautiful nature. Beginning with the idea that in order to produce speed long members are necessary, and that these, to be properly developed, should act upon a long body, many persons imagine that fast horses, trotters or others, are longer than they are high, and they give to the length a quarter of a head, or even a third, more than to the height. What reply will they give us when we tell them that they have made a suggestion in direct opposition to the reality?

M. Duhousset[1] says that "out of fifty African horses, twenty-six were shorter than they were high; in fourteen the height and the length were equal; and in ten the excess was in length." Farther on, the same author records his observations on horses of fine breeding: Out of forty runners examined, there were twenty-eight in which the height was equal to the length, nine in which it was more considerable, finally, three in which it was less (Dick, Monarque, and Ralph).

It would be fastidious to insist further upon this point. Our measurements upon the handsomest running-horses, steeple-chasers, Orloff trotters, Anglo-Norman and Arabian, Barb, Andalusian, some Hungarian, and American horses enable us to affirm that the excess in length, scarcely amounting to 1, 2, 4, or 5 centimetres, is the exception, the *equality* or excess in height permitting variations of the same value being the *rule*.

For fast work, Bourgelat was right in considering the equality between height and length as the just mean to be sought. In this respect, again, he was not influenced by purely theoretical views; he had sought for and had actually seen what he had indicated.

For slow services this just mean remains, *a fortiori*, the same. Still, we hasten to affirm that horses of this class are very often longer than tall, very probably because their production has received less care. Hence, sway-backs are common among them. But let those be measured which have won the prizes in expositions and in competitions, those which the government or breeding associations recommend for that very reason to the public choice; we will find that they are

---

[1] E. Duhousset, Le Cheval, p. 67.

nearly in accord with the conditions stated by the founder of veterinary schools.

Width.—We designate by this term, **width, ampleness,** the transverse development of the body, particularly at the level of the chest, the breast, and the croup. It results in great part from the muscular development of the parts, and is best appreciated by viewing the horse in front or behind. We determine it also by an oblique inspection, either in front or behind, or, finally, by looking at the subject from above, when he is harnessed or mounted.

When the ampleness is considerable, the animal is vulgarly said to have bulk, to be stout, a state which is indicated by the width of the chest, the prominence of the shoulders, their muscularity, the roundness of the ribs, the width of the croup and the volume of its muscles. This conformation is characteristic of the heavy draught-horse, to which it communicates at the same time bulk and power. It is sought for also, although in a less degree, for some services of luxury, principally in the coach-horse.

For fast services, on the contrary, too great a width would be prejudicial. It would increase the weight of the body, already proportionately high, diminish the stability of the equilibrium without being of advantage for speed, and would soon wear out the members, which would be too weak as columns of support. A larger osseous skeleton, especially behind, a longer chest, muscles which are more dense and firm, are to be preferred. "From behind forward," De Curnieu[1] says, "the horse must be wedge-shaped,—that is to say, have a wide croup and narrow chest; he will all the better cleave the air before him, and if he is a little too high over the withers, the power of the hind-quarters will diminish this defect, which, besides, often facilitates the quickness and increases the force."

The lack of ampleness is a principal fault for all kinds of work, for it is the necessary consequence of the narrowness of the thorax and the insufficiency of the muscular apparatus. It may be characterized by qualifying the animal as being *étriqué, lanky.*

Body and Members.—The body and the members are the two elements which compose the height. But, as they do not bear the same proportions in all subjects, it is important to know in what conditions they vary through excess or deficiency, still giving to the whole a sum of height in harmony with the length.

In ordinary language, when the *body* is spoken of in opposition to

---

[1] De Curnieu, Leçons de science hippique générale, première partie, p. 278, Paris, 1855.

the *members*, reference is made, by the first of these expressions, to the height of the chest and the abdomen, whilst by the second is understood only the part of the members completely detached from the trunk,—that is to say, counting from the elbow or stifle. Taking this view, it will be understood how the body is also called the *upper part*, in relation with the members, which then assume the name the *lower part*, although these expressions are sometimes employed to designate the lines by which the trunk shows itself in profile above and below.

The relations existing between the body and the members vary according to the types considered, which, to simplify, we divide into two categories: the motors with a view to speed and the motors with a view to force. In a general way, it must be known, first, that in the former the lower part is always, equal size considered, much longer than in the latter, which are compact and near the earth. In this respect, the differences are all the greater as the services which they perform differ the more from each other.

The *body*, containing the organs which are most essential to life, such as the heart, the lungs, and the digestive apparatus, cannot be deficient from excess of development, since these organs are precisely those from which the animal machine draws its power and resistance. If disproportion seems to exist in the *upper part* compared to the *lower part*, then the latter is not properly constructed to support the former. But generally, although excess may not be objectionable, the same cannot be said of the deficiency of development. Our machine, having a weak chest, a small abdomen, will be without energy, without wind, capable of very little exertion. Such an animal will be a poor feeder and will not last long. All these are great imperfections if he is called upon to perform laborious service.

What, then, is the method of appreciating the beauty of the body? We already know it. In fact, we know that the xiphoid region (*pit of the stomach*) should descend several fingers'-breadth below the elbow, that the ribs should be round, the chest widened behind and a head wide in its middle part (ampleness), the abdomen full, quite cylindrical, and a head thick from its inferior line to the middle of the back.

As to the *members*, they cannot be too beautiful. As soon as such seems to be the case, the reason of it is that the upper part is not in proportion. Strong columns under too light a structure are not defective, they are simply useless. Large wheels moved by a strong crank are neither of advantage to a locomotive nor hinder it much if its *boiler* and its *piston* are unable to make use of them. But it is entirely different if the supports, the wheels of the motor, are

slender, weak, too long, ill adjusted, in a word, disproportionate in relation with the weight which they have to displace. In this case the most irreproachable body will be powerless; the machine will be without force, without solidity, without speed, and destined to wear out soon. How many horses are thus constructed, which are said to be *defective, wiry, mounted upon match-sticks, perched high,* which have fine breeding, vivacity, energy, courage, but which—*veritable straw-fires*—only last an instant, for want of ability to utilize the mechanism which they possess!

They will be recognized by the exaggerated length of their members, the narrowness and thinness of their forearms, their legs, their knees, their hocks, and their fetlocks, the slimness of their shanks, the weakness of their tendons, and the small volume of their muscles. One way to ascertain their disproportion consists in measuring the distance comprised between the passage of the girth and the pastern-joint. It is known that in a beautiful conformation this distance is equal to a head in horses of ordinary size, a little longer in large horses, and a little less in small ones. (See *Relations between the Dimensions of the Regions*, page 359.) At the same time we should not forget always to take into account the greater length of the locomotory columns in fast horses.

D.—Relations of the Organism with the Nervous System; the "Blood;" the Temperament.

Opinion of the Laity upon the "Blood."—Most horsemen still speak of the *blood*[1] as a kind of *immaterial principle* endowing the subject inheriting it with a combination of physical and moral qualities of a superior order. This principle, transmissible by heredity, would be the appanage of the *noble* races, the English thoroughbred and the Arabian; again, we are asked to believe that it has been preciously preserved in all its purity, without deterioration, through a number of centuries, thanks to the care which man has taken to preserve these races from all contamination with those called *common*, in which it cannot be observed.

"The pure blood [*sang*]," writes M. Eug. Gayot,[2] "a living, active,

---

[1] This is a somewhat ambiguous term. Among the partisans of the theory of crossing, the ancient idea is prevalent that the races of the horse are continually degenerating, and that the Aryan (Arabian) race is of *pure blood* (*pur sang*) and superior to all the others, which it regenerates by crossing. Hence the term "blood," as here used, indicates the degree of relationship with this race, as shown by certain qualities, both external and internal, possessed by the animals.

[2] L. Moll et Eug. Gayot, La connaissance générale du cheval, p. 313, Paris, 188—.

and conservative power, a force inherent to the species, should be considered apart from the animal which possesses it. The latter may vary and have very different external characters without the principle which animates him ceasing to be perfectly identical, because it possesses in this connection an admirable scope of adaptation; this is its property. In it are all the perfections; it is the source of all the special qualities. It is through this that it governs the species and is their prototype."

It is difficult to be more metaphysical and therefore less scientific! Physiologists exact more at the present time. This spiritualistic conception deserves mention only from simple curiosity; it is, in fact, more than a century behind modern ideas; there is therefore no reason to consider it.

Other horsemen, notably Magne,[1] consider the *blood* (*sang*) as a combination of *external characters* proper to better—*finer*—races, equally transmissible by heredity.

We are mistaken as to the very essence of the question itself if we believe that English or Arabian reproducers are capable of transmitting only their conformation to the exclusion of all other qualities. The *blood* is no more the conformation than it is the *immaterial principle* spoken of above.

A determined external form is of itself incapable of constituting the blood; it is only its *substratum*, its receptacle, and, for this reason, may become its *index*. Now, as a horse cannot inherit noble qualities without at the same time possessing the features which indicate them, we see how it is that some have taken the containing part instead of the thing contained, and misunderstood the true nature of *blood*.

Origin of the Word "Blood."—Whence does such an expression originate? Very probably from the ideas formerly entertained upon fecundation.

Hippocrates[2] (to go back no farther) was of the opinion that the male and female each extracted from their own humors, during copulation, *stronger parts*, a kind of particular production of the organs, which met each other in the genital female passage and constituted the seeds, in each of which were found male and female germs. The sexuality of the product depended upon the predominance of the one over the other. As the strong parts were produced by the agitation of the humors of the body, as these fluids were endowed with the

---

[1] J. H. Magne, Races chevalines, 3e éd., p. 351.
[2] Hippocrate, Traité de la génération.

quintessence of the faculties and aptitudes of the procreators, the laity were easily led to the firm belief that children were really the very *blood* of their parents.

At the beginning, the word *blood* could then be considered as almost synonymous with the word *heredity*. At the present time it is nothing more than a corruption of it, in this sense, that it is not applied indiscriminately to all hereditary characters, but only to a few of them, to those which refer especially to the moral qualities of the parents.

We understand, then, what is meant when a horse is said to have *blood*, to be *well bred*. The idea intended to be conveyed is that the horse has been more or less subjected to *métissage*, breeding animals of different races in earlier times. The animal of a high lineage, descended from a noble race, and whose ancestors were entirely free from all contamination, is qualified as being of *pure blood*. Lastly, the horse deprived of all the qualities inherent to *blood* is styled a *common* horse, while, *a fortiori*, one descended from parents that have never been mixed with pure-blooded animals is the low plebeian of the species.

But the aptitudes of the better races of the horse are not always a constant result of *direct* heredity,—that is to say, the immediate result of the sire's or dam's influence; sometimes they pass over one or more generations to reappear in the succeeding ones. Indeed, these aptitudes before being definitely established in the better races must have been developed slowly under the combined and incessant action of a thousand different causes; they must, therefore, have shown themselves at a given time in the individual before being transmissible to the descendants, and then constituting the appanage of a determined type.

On the other hand, subjects of the same family, whatever may be their resemblance, do not always possess identical qualities; the numerous and different attributes of the species are not uniformly inherited by them; the qualities which each one possesses at birth are neither the same in nature, nor equal in intensity, nor similar in value. In any case, it is, first of all, an ancestral inheritance, the special, unconscious accumulation of qualities resulting from the choice of the male and female for centuries. It may proceed, besides, from a more or less intelligent selection on the part of the breeder, who endeavors to work in the same manner as Nature, and in concert with her aids her by his practical knowledge. That is what constitutes *inbornness*, which is nothing else, as may be seen, than a kind of *indirect* heredity.

The organism, therefore, inherits from selective accumulation and the application of zootechnic methods by man, certain qualities which,

so to speak, establish its *individuality*, and which, in the species, also concur in endowing it with those faculties which constitute the *blood*.

Definition and Nature of the "Blood."—This being laid down, we are in a position of giving—having the same opinion upon this point as Messrs. Sanson[1] and Baron[2]—the anatomo-physiological interpretation of the metaphysical conception of the word *blood*, which until now had scarcely been understood but as the expression of a distinct force, an immaterial essence, isolated from and independent of the body which it governed.

If it can be said of man that he is an intelligence served by organs, with better reason may it be added of the horse that he is a nervous system served also by instruments, generators of force and of speed. Without the nervous organism the latter are nothing; without them it is reduced to the most utter powerlessness; with them it is everything. These two parts of the living being are indispensable to each other for action; the nervous system could not command if its servants did not obey and act. Now, every command, in order to be heeded and carried out, supposes an agreement and a previous understanding between those who are intrusted with its exercise. It supposes, moreover, a veritable correlation of action between the agents which command the action and those which execute it. In the same manner in the organism, if there is a harmonious concord between the different parts (the spinal cord and the brain) of the central nervous system which presides over the action of the organs (between the powers whose function it is to properly direct the machine),—if, besides, there is a correlation between the nervous system and the organs themselves upon which it depends (between the directing powers of the machine and its machinery),—there will result a kind of all-pervading and regulating harmony, a perfect equilibrium between those pieces of the economy and the forces which set them in action.

It is to this state of equilibrium—the result of a perfect nervous system, considered with regard to its functional activity or its dynamic intervention—that the name *blood* is given.

But in what especially does this perfection consist? In the intensity of the *reflex power*,—that is to say, in the property which the nerve-centres possess of transforming more or less quickly the impressions which they receive from the external world through the intervention of the senses into motor reactions.

---

[1] A. Sanson, Traité de zootechnie, 2e éd., t. iii. p. 197.

[2] R. Baron, La Dynamométrie biologique, in Archives vétérinaires, année 1877, p. 705.

It is evident that this reflective power in order to be utilized must be served by organs not only well conformed, but also well adapted to the special method of its manifestations. For example, an orchestra may possess instruments of excellent quality when considered separately; its performers may be artists of the first rank, and yet the combined effect of all these musical factors will be full of discord if he upon whom devolves the care of employing and directing them does not know how to manage them, or speaks in a language they do not understand. However removed from our subject this comparison may appear, it is none the less applicable here. The nervous system, whatever may be its value as a reflective power, and the organs, whatever may be their mechanical perfection as locomotory agents, are of little value without the harmonious relations of which we are speaking.

Whence is the "Blood" derived?—The blood is hereditary, as we have already seen; it is also inborn in certain subjects belonging to races which do not habitually possess it. And this innateness is the consequence of the great probability that the hereditary qualities of the species are unequally distributed to their descendants. This results from the slow and dearly-bought triumph of the organism over the surrounding medium. Even thus, the handful of wheat which is promiscuously cast upon a fertile soil, and the grains of which are not uniformly scattered on the soil, will produce in the future field places more or less rich in sheaves; so, also, the descendants of the species are led by chance to develop in climates and upon grounds where they will be able to preserve their qualities, acquire new ones, and transmit them to their offspring, while others will succumb to the unfavorable conditions of the medium.

Every individual, therefore, is born more or less endowed, and his very aptitudes vary in number and in development. He owes them to his own parents in the case of immediate heredity; to his ancestors in that of indirect heredity.

Finally, he may develop it in himself, for it is a fact equally demonstrated that *blood may be acquired.* Magne[1] says, "It being the direct product of food and air, it changes with the influences to which the animals are exposed."

It is increased by a special regimen and a particular education, as the Arabians have done from antiquity, as the English still do at the present day for their race-horses. The different and many methods

---

[1] J.-H. Magne, loc. cit., p. 351.

employed for training the hippodrome horse; the conditions of nourishment, stabling, and temperature to which he is submitted; the sweatings, the tests of all kinds which he undergoes; the dressing, the massage, the dry friction upon the members, which are given to him every day; is not all this preparation—so extensive and so careful—adapted to communicate to him, in the highest degree, the sanguino-nervous temperament and the brilliant qualities which characterize him? Is not the Arabian horse in reality trained in the same way? The different circumstances to which he is obliged to conform himself on account of the rough life of his master; the medium so propitious for the development of all the faculties inherent to his nature, —are they not essentially calculated to produce and to establish in him the highest aptitude of the species? Have not these aptitudes also germinated in several of the old French races, for example, the Navarrine, the Limousine, under the effect of the same influences? Do we not at the present time see them manifested in certain families, notably the large Boulonnais horse, which has never been subjected to *métissage* with the races called *pure-blooded?*

Artificial Transmissibility of the "Blood."—If, now that the production of the "blood" is recognized as being derived from the power of adaptation of some isolated specific units, we obtain their individuality, with the qualities, however poor they may be, by which this individuality is manifested, we will be able, by the judicious use of zootechnical methods, to condense and establish it in a family or race of which it will become in some way the *quid proprium.* This is the practice pursued by the Arabs and the English with their horses. The care which they have taken to preserve them from all contamination has made them animals of the richest blood; they have so thoroughly succeeded in becoming masters of this individuality, that they infuse it and transmit it with a rare facility to the varieties in which it was before absent.

This demonstrative experiment is of great interest from an economical point of view. From it we obtain the indication that this condensed individuality which is called the *blood* may be made use of to communicate the special feature or quality to other individuals or other races less well endowed, and in whom *selection* will act in the same way as it has done for the parent stock. The great difficulty of the problem is to know under what circumstances and to what extent the operation should be attempted; but, however great this difficulty may be, the principle we have just given is not the less perfectly true.

Index of the "Blood."—Finally, a last question presents

itself. How can we judge of the amount of good breeding possessed by a given horse?

Two sources of indications enable us to do so: one of them refers to characters drawn from the general conformation; the other to the external manifestations of the activity of the nervous system.

The first is founded upon this fact, that the English and the Arabian horses are constantly infusing better breeding into our common races. Whence it results that these agents of amelioration should transmit to their descendants the principal features of their conformation as well as their "blood."

The second results from this other consideration, that the "blood" and the temperament, consisting in the intensity of the reflective power, will be seen by the different external states of the organs of the senses,—sight, hearing, smell, taste, and touch. This last source of information is sometimes the only one,—for example, when it is a question of a common race, free from all mixed breeding, in which the "blood" sprang into existence under the influence of the external conditions only. Our own restrictions being made upon this point, and the cases in question being, moreover, rather infrequent, we would say that the qualities proper to the blood will be recognized by:

A slender body of a stature generally tall; a slender figure, long members, firm and long muscles, projecting, developed osseous prominences; a neat, light, square head; a wide forehead; movable ears and nostrils; quick, expressive eyes; thin lips; a long, straight, pyramidal neck; prominent withers; short back and loins; long and horizontal croup; well-attached tail; high and long chest; slightly-developed belly; long and oblique shoulder; thigh and buttock low; leg and forearm long; straight hock; short canon; clean and well-detached tendons; feet rather small; great nervous excitability; thin and sensitive skin; scarceness of all the hairy productions; the appearance of the superficial venous system under the influence of the least exercise; the facility of reacting before all external excitement, even the slightest; finally, a remarkable development of the intellectual faculties.

These are the attributes of subjects descended from noble races, and the proportion in which they will be observed in their *métises* (half-breeds) will also indicate the part which reverts to the ancestor in their production.

It may now be understood without difficulty what is meant when a horse is said to have *race, nobility* (elegance, grace, pride); *figure* (distinction with fine lines); *quality, breeding, fire, character* (density and compactness of the muscles, energy, vivacity, vigor); *heart* (ardor

and resistance to fatigue), etc. All these expressions serve to characterize such or such a feature of the conformation or the moral qualities of well-bred animals; they are frequently employed, and it is important to know them in order that they may be used and understood in the acceptation which custom has given them.

CHAPTER II.

ISOLATED EFFECTS OF BEAUTIFUL PROPORTIONS UPON THE ANIMAL MACHINE.

In the preceding chapter we have passed in review the four principal aspects under which it is important to study the proportions. We have analyzed, in a static state or repose, the details, the locomotory machinery, the machine as a whole, as well as the animating principle which regulates its action. Now, we have to study the same machine with regard to the individual effects which it is susceptible of producing, according to the particular combination of the elements which enters into its organization.

In this respect Professor Sanson[1] says, "The actual work which it accomplishes is utilized according to two general modes. The displacement of mass which performs this work is effected either at the slow gait of the walk or the fast gaits of the trot and the gallop. To abbreviate, we will name the first work *en mode de masse*, or *force*, and the second work *en mode de vitesse*, or *speed*. In the one as in the other of these two modes, the burden to be transported may be a mass disposed indifferently upon the back of the motor, or upon a vehicle to which this motor is attached and which he pulls."

We must therefore determine what characters of the external conformation should be sought for to choose in the best conditions the horse destined to work either in the mode of force or in the mode of speed, or in these two modes at the same time. We shall also have to say a few words concerning the manner in which the nervous force, the *excitability*, is distributed in each of these motors, and of its useful or harmful influence upon the final result, according to its degree of richness.

---

[1] A. Sanson, Traité de zootechnie, 2e éd., t. iii. p. 324.

A.—Conditions of the Motor en Mode de Masse, or of Force.

The subjects intended for this kind of work are vulgarly known by the names *heavy draught-horses, horses of force.* Their value is proportional to the burden which they are capable of displacing, at the slowest gait, by the contraction of their muscles. Let us see upon what depends the intensity of this contraction, and what external signs denote it.

A muscle is a particular group of red fibres, collected in bundles ordinarily parallel, decomposable by histological analysis into very fine fibres endowed with special irritability and *contractility.* In the physiological state this property acts under the influence of a stimulation proceeding from the nervous centres; it shows itself by a more or less marked, energetic, and rapid diminution of the length of the primitive fibrillæ. Connective tissue isolates and at the same time conjoins the elementary parts of the muscle; abundant vessels (arteries) carry to it materials for its nutrition and its activity; others (veins and lymphatics) carry away the wastes of its functional activity; finally, whitish cords (nerves), terminating in its mass by numerous filaments, veritable conductors, connect it with the nervous centres, and transmit to it the motor stimuli from the will. These last reach the organ in such a way that all its elements contract simultaneously, producing, by this very means, a total shortening of variable extent.

The weight susceptible of neutralizing the movement which results from this gives the measure of what is vulgarly called the contractile *force* of the muscle. Whence it follows that the *force of a horse,* in relation with a determined effort, would be also approximatively indicated by the total or the sum of the individual actions of the agents which accomplish this effort. In other words, it would be the weight which he is apt to move in conditions when the speed appears insignificant, although, rationally speaking, it is never thus.

In this case, we see, force is created at the expense of speed; in fact, we do not regard as important the quantity of the space passed over; it is sufficient for us that the animal moves the obstacle.

Now, the manifestation of this phenomenon obeys the two following conditions:

1st. The number of the contractile elements, and the particular nature of their incidences upon the locomotory levers.

2d. The intensity of the nervous stimulation.

All things being equal, it is plain that, of two muscles whose fibres have the same *force,* the one which has them in double quantity will be twice as strong as the other. It is none the less evident that if, by some mechanical disposition, one of these muscles is placed in a condition to act in a more perpendicular direction, it will do its work easily or will be able to overcome a greater resistance.

As to nerve stimulation, physiology teaches that it reaches the

contractile organ by fractional portions, at equal intervals, and in very close succession. But it is certain that the intensity of these portions and the rapidity of their succession have an influence upon the value of the effort to be produced. With regard to this, every one knows the preponderance of the will over the energy of physical exercise. We will see farther on, in speaking of *endurance*, that the individual differences bearing upon this influence are extremely variable. For the present, we will confine ourselves to proving the necessity of an intense nerve stimulation in those motors which have to work *en mode de masse*, or perform force labor.

This being said, how shall we appreciate the two preceding data in the examination of the external form? This is easily answered: by the mass of the muscles, or, if preferred, by the approximative estimation of the weight, which is generally proportional to the former; afterwards by the quantity of *blood* possessed by the animal examined. When speaking of the mass of the muscles, we mean the surface of their transversal section, which is the more extended as the number of elementary fibres is itself greater.

These are the two requisites which must first of all be found in the motor *en mode de masse.*

There are still others, which are, however, only the necessary consequence of the latter. Thus, we will seek more particularly an ample, short, cylindrical body, close to the ground, and with strong loins; solid, thick, and wide members; a base of support a little wide, to give more stability to the equilibrium; developed extensors, for it is by the extension of the locomotory columns, vigorously propped upon the ground, that the animal moves his burden; such are the cervical, dorso-lumbar, scapular, pectoral, olecranon, antibrachial, gluteal, crural, and tibial muscles. We must make sure of their compactness and their density, the width and the thickness of the articulations; the approximative length and force of all the osseous prominences: the trochiter, olecranon, trochanter, calcaneus, etc.; the perpendicularity of the muscular insertions, from a suitable inclination of the locomotory segments; the delicacy of the skin; the expression and vivacity of the physiognomy; finally, the ease, the energy, and the power with which the subject will accomplish his work, *will bear his collar*, as it is expressed in ordinary language.

B.—Conditions of the Motor en Mode de Vitesse, or of Velocity, Speed.

We include in the category of motors suited especially for speed all saddle-horses, carriage-horses, and light draught-horses, whose habitual gait is the trot or the gallop. Here the object to be accomplished consists in the distance which the animal, burdened with a slight weight, is capable of travelling during a unit of time. As to the quantity of movement, mv, it remains the same as in the case of working by the weight of the mass, only the factor m, mass, is reduced as much as possible, while the factor v, velocity, which we wish especially to utilize, is thereby correspondingly increased.

Now, the rapid moving of the centre of gravity over the surface of the soil is absolutely dependent upon the two following conditions:

1st. The length of the strides.

2d. The number of strides taken during a unit of time.

The extent of each step is itself the consequence of several secondary mechanical dispositions already known, and upon which it would be useless to insist. It is, primarily, the absolute length of the columns of locomotion which renders them more apt to span over much ground; it is, secondarily, the considerable length of the muscles belonging to the superior regions of these columns and commanding their displacements; finally, it is the particular orientation of the articular angles, permitting the osseous segments to pass more freely over the space in the direction of the movement without losing force in raising the body.

As to the number of steps, it depends exclusively upon the rapidity of the muscular contractions,—that is to say, upon the energy possessed by the animal, upon the intensity of his nervous stimulation, and upon the time during which he can renew them.

But one feature which it is important to take into consideration when speaking of the conformation of fast motors, is the light weight of the body. M. Sanson[1] says that "beyond a certain weight they can no longer be utilizable, since the strength which they dispose of is just sufficient to move their own mass about. . . . It is, then, no wonder that the heavy French cavalry horse has never been able to endure the hardships of a campaign if at all prolonged, and that even when in garrison their mortality is 50.57 per thousand, whilst that of the light cavalry horse is only 23.33. . . . The smaller and lighter saddle-

[1] A. Sanson, Traité de zootechnie, t. iii. p. 330, et suiv.

horses are the greater will be the ratio of their actual work. The light cavalry of Africa has for a long time furnished us with a practical proof of this. Cavalrymen, chasseurs, or spahis do not weigh, as a rule, less than the dragoons; a large number of them weigh as much as the cuirassiers. In all the campaigns in which they have taken a part with the dragoons and the cuirassiers, in the Crimea, Italy, and France, the chasseurs' horses have always borne the fatigues of warfare better than the others, whilst being employed in a longer and more severe service. . . . It is therefore very injudicious, in the selection of cavalry horses, not to lower the minimum of size now exacted to the limit of that which is necessary so that the horseman may retain his seat, even though the latter has to be raised by some such device as that practised by the Arabians, the Cossacks, the Hungarians, etc. The cavalry of these people has always been the most durable and the most indefatigable of all, precisely because it is composed of very small horses.

"The large and heavy saddle-horses, besides being so difficult to obtain sound and well formed, render the poorest service in the cavalry. They should be reserved as pleasure-horses, which have to perform but very little work. In such service they are well nourished and surrounded with the best care, and their principal function is to satisfy the self-pride of the wealthy who use them."

The race-horse (the English thoroughbred) has been, until the present time, the most successful variety which human industry has developed with reference to speed as the main quality. The principal characters of his conformation are useful to us in distinguishing our rapid motors from among all others. They should, in fact, have high chests and members; short and well-supported body and loins; neck, shoulder, croup, thigh, buttock, leg, and forearm long; without too much bulk to the body; strong, dry, and clean members; wide and thick articulations; they must be closed in their superior angles, open in their inferior; have a deep chest; a small abdomen; skin, hairs, and mane thin; an intelligent, expressive physiognomy; must be graceful, active, excitable (blood), energetic, impetuous, and of an inexhaustible endurance.

C.—Conditions of the Mixed Motor. (Combination of Force and Speed Realized.)

The improvement of roads, the construction of railroads, the facility of travelling, and the industrial and commercial activity of our epoch have rendered the use of draught-horses, capable of

moving at a certain rate of speed, more and more possible and necessary. It is rightly said, at the present day, that time is money. It is preferable to lessen the weight and multiply the number of animal motors to effect large transportations, and compensate, by the distance travelled over, the expense and maintenance of a larger number of animals. Heavy horses whose weight reaches 900 and 1000 kilogrammes will very soon be a rarity; they are reserved for hauling those heavy burdens which can be moved only at a walk; their high price, besides, bears witness to the difficulty of their production and to the competition carried on against them by the lighter varieties. Among the latter it has been attempted to establish a sort of happy medium by the combination of the principal elements of the heavy draught-horse with those of horses which possess considerable speed. The two factors of the quantity of movement, *mv*, supposing that they be comparable at all, have been practically calculated in such a manner that one of them should not, in the product, predominate over the other. This problem, so complicated in its material realization, has been resolved with much sagacity by our French breeders; we have as evidence those magnificent specimens of our Percheron race, of the Breton race along the coast, and even the Boulonnais horse, which large manufacturing concerns use so extensively all over the country.

The principal distinction between the mixed motor and the two preceding is a mass relatively large, supported by a strong and almost slender set of members; the former is the elements of strength (volume of muscles) acting upon the machinery of speed (length and direction of the bony segments). The body, less voluminous, less close to the ground than that of the slow, heavy draught-horse, is more powerful and more muscular than that of the race-horse; the members, longer and their bones more inclined than those of the first, are, on the contrary, shorter, less oblique than those of the second.

Strictly speaking, two types of conformation may be recognized in the category of mixed motors: the one, *light draught-horses*, finer, more energetic, and more active, especially resemble coach-horses; the other, *fast, heavy draught-horses*, which are more common, heavier, and slower, would, on the contrary, have more affinity with the slow draught-horse. In each of these cases the habitual gait is the ordinary trot, but the short trot of a speed almost below the mean for animals whose weight approaches 700 kilogrammes; it is a little more elongated for those whose weight is close to 500 kilogrammes.

We cannot indicate in a precise manner the conformation of the mixed motors on account of the numerous varieties which they present.

In the study of the regions, we have taken care to insist upon the disposition of the angular openings and upon the proportions of some of their parts, principally of the neck, the shoulder, the arm, the croup, and the thigh. We therefore refer the reader to them. But there is a danger against which we desire to warn him: it is in endeavoring to lighten and improve these animals by crossing injudiciously with races which are too distinguished, too fine; a certain number of subjects have been produced which are lanky, deficient, especially in the length of their loins, the slight amplitude of their chest, and the weakness of their members. Of course, this defect is not of a nature to cause them to be entirely rejected, since, for their intended utilization, they are not called upon to carry heavy loads. However, they none the less become sway-backed; as they are used on the paved streets of large cities, their locomotory apparatus will very quickly manifest its weakness by the appearance of numerous blemishes, and by an early ruin of their hocks and their fetlocks. For these reasons, the purchaser should give preference to those motors which are short, more compact, and closer to the ground; with the same speed as the others, they possess superior endurance, will do more work and at less expense.

D.—Excitability; Impressionability; Irritability.

The normal relations which exist between the living matter and its animating principle, between the *physical bulk* and the *blood*, as it is expressed in vulgar language, are not equally balanced in all subjects.

Excitability—that is to say, that faculty which the organism has of showing to the desired degree its activity under the influence of the internal stimulant, the nervous system—is of primary importance as the indispensable complement of its mechanism, however perfect it may be, for this faculty renders it eminently adapted to all the exigencies of the external world. The animal which possesses marked excitability can at once be recognized by his intelligent physiognomy; his affectionate character; his expressive head; his delicate, supple, and vascular skin; his hard hoof; his silky, not overabundant, mane; his slender, harmonious form; his powerful chest; his firm, dense, well-outlined muscles; his neat, clean, strong, solid members; his small, proportioned feet; his easy, lengthened, brilliant gaits. Gentle and quiet when at rest and during work; active, energetic, even impetuous, if necessary, always docile; of a robust constitution, well nourished, adapting himself without difficulty to the most diverse conditions of existence, he is prompt to begin his task, able to keep up, and ready to resume again on the morrow the work of the day before.

But nervous excitation is not constantly distributed throughout the living machine in such a way that its manifestations are in exact equilibrium with the resistance of its machinery. Two opposite defects, equally prejudicial to the proper action of the motor, result from this, for they both restrict the play of the means at its disposal.

If it is the *blood* which predominates over the common element; if, as it is also said, *the animal has too much blood*, the effect exceeds the aim; the physiological excitability is too intense, too active; it becomes *impressionability* to a more marked degree, *irritability*, or, in other words, an extreme susceptibility, an excessive reaction, sometimes dangerous in the presence of even the slightest external impressions. "This great nervous excitability," M. Sanson[1] says, "has none but practical disadvantages, contrary to the opinion entertained by horsemen, who, through their ignorance of physiology, believe too easily that courage can take the place of strength, or that the latter has its source in the nervous system. No doubt, for a short time, the manifestation of this courage is brilliant and may be seductive; but the brave animal wears himself out with it; he soon exhausts the true source, poorly sustained, of his strength and wears out his insufficient mechanism. It would be better for a useful employment of his power, for an economical utilization of the capital which he represents, that he should be saving of both,—be less courageous, and render less brilliant but more lasting services.

"Among horses descended directly or indirectly from race-stallions of thoroughbred blood, there are by far too many subjects of which it is said that the activity of the nervous system is too great for that of the body."

Vallon adds[2] that "in such a case the forms are angular; the members long and slender; the articulations narrow; the muscles well separated from each other, but sparingly developed; the tendons dense but of little volume; the horn dry and brittle; the skin delicate; the ribs flat; the head expressive, etc. When coming out of the stable the horse performs disorderly movements, jumps, skips, is all excitement. In the drill and in the parade he tries to pass his neighbors. He is of a delicate disposition, requires choice food, water of good quality, etc. For all these reasons the horse becomes quickly tired, exhausted. Often, after a day's march, where he has toiled a great deal, he is quite broken down, and should he be needed he can be of no use. After a day's work some of these animals lie

---

[1] A. Sanson, Traité de zootechnie, 2e éd., t. iii. p. 197.
[2] Vallon, Cours d'hippologie, t. i. p. 457.

down, refuse to partake of their ration, and for several days are not in a condition to resume their service." If, on the contrary, *the common element predominates over the blood*, there is a lack of physiological excitability. The setting-up of the machine may still be good, its substance of an excellent quality, its mechanical arrangement harmonious, but the stimulant is defective. Although endowed with a certain stamp of fineness and some appearance of energy and vigor, the subject, according to a vulgar expression, is a *good-looking swindler;* he is the *picture-horse* of the dealers. If he be more common still, his form, although regular, is heavy, fleshy; his muscles voluminous but flabby, containing a large quantity of connective tissue or fat; his skin is thick; his hoof soft; his temperament lymphatic; his gait indolent; his physiognomy without expression; his extremities are common; his hairs and mane abundant, stiff, coarse; his feet voluminous, badly conformed; he is without reaction, without ardor; at each moment he must be urged on by words, whip, or spur; finally, he endures fatigue and privations poorly; he is a wretched servant, eating much, often sick, and on the whole, renders a service, entirely unsatisfactory.

CHAPTER III.

RESULT OF BEAUTIFUL PROPORTIONS UPON THE ANIMAL MACHINE.

Resistance to fatigue: endurance. Every animated motor, from the action of its machinery and its organs, is capable of producing certain effects, developing force, speed, or both at the same time, and of manifesting its activity more or less easily according to the nature and arrangement of its principal parts. But it is important that its effects be combined in such a way that man may be able to employ them economically,—that is to say, in all their intensity and for the longest time possible. In a word, it is necessary that they terminate, through their reciprocal concordance, in a useful and durable mechanical *result:* to the latter has been given the name *endurance.*

Opinion of the Laity upon Endurance. — In ordinary language, endurance, like the temperament and the *blood*, is that, in a manner, mysterious, concealed, hidden faculty which one animal seems to have *in reserve*, and by the aid of which he resists fatigue better than another horse. This occult power arms him for the

fight, endows him with his most essential qualities, and manifests externally his power and his vital equilibrium; it is this accumulated, inappreciable quality of which we can judge only by the greatness of his abilities and the superiority of his attitudes. It is therefore constantly opposed to the form, even as fitness is contrasted with beauty, the contents with the container, the true with the false, the solid with the brilliant, certainty with illusion, talent with knowledge. Form and appearances are often deceptive; without endurance they are always so; the horse becomes tired all the sooner as he possesses less of it, and works all the better as he has more, precisely like the *day-laborer*, limited against his will in his enterprises, if he be compared to a *capitalist*, whose greater power of action is due to his possessing a greater number of available resources.

Such is the notion possessed by the mass of people upon this subject. It is reduced, as we see, to the pure and simple statement of a result without any attempt to examine its nature. We feel that the question is a difficult one, that its data are numerous, complex, delicate, and profound; but, through the ignorance existing at the present time, a primary cause has been substituted for the secondary ones, and, as in many other embarrassing questions, in default of being able to surmount the difficulty inherent to the determination even of this primary cause, we have been satisfied with a word in which truth, prejudice, errors, everything has been summed up: *endurance!* This word no more interprets the phenomena which it aims at conveying than the conception of the soul explains psychical facts; that of force, movement; that of life, living organisms; and no more than, within our own domain, the conception of *blood* explains energy and ardor. The time has, however, come for exacting more, and penetrating deeper, by a methodical analysis, into the very essence itself of things.

Work.—First, what is *work?*

To work is, essentially, to overcome a resistance, an action which is defined in two ways, either as a force acting over a certain space, Fs; or as mass moving at a certain velocity,

$$W = \frac{1}{2} mv^2.$$

In animal mechanics, the first of these two formulæ, Fs, is generally not very conveniently employed, because it is always very difficult to estimate practically one of the factors of this product, the force F, or muscular contraction.

The second formula, on the contrary, much more precise, shows us,

in fact, that work increases in *proportion to the mass*, whilst it augments as the *square of the velocity*. This is equivalent to saying that if the mass be increased 2, 3, 4, 5 times, the work is rendered 2, 3, 4, 5 times greater, whilst if the velocity be modified in the same degree, the motor would accomplish a work 4, 9, 16, and 25 times greater; an important idea, already foreshadowing the fact that an animal employed at speed will be able to endure the frequent repetition of the effort only during a relatively limited period of time.

Fatigue.—On the other hand, what is *fatigue?* Littré[1] defines it a painful sensation accompanied by a difficulty of exertion, and caused by excessive work. Now, as this feeling is manifested by a cessation of locomotory activity, which, as is known, is the immediate consequence of the contraction of the muscles, it follows that to obtain a correct conception of the nature of fatigue we must previously recall, in a few words, the physiological conditions of muscular contraction.

Muscular Contraction.—The fundamental property of a muscle, as we have seen, is the power of *contracting* under the influence of certain stimuli. In the organism, it is the nervous system which presides over every contraction; but its *rôle* is facilitated or retarded according to different conditions. Thus, it is proved that contractility is increased by an active circulation of the blood, by the presence of oxygen, a moderate temperature, a proper rest, etc. It is slackened or diminished by diametrically opposite causes, an arrest of circulation, carbonic acid, lactic acid, cold, prolonged inactivity, excessive functional activity, etc. During the physiological contraction the nervous impulses are communicated to a muscle interruptedly, but, at the same time, to all its elements, in such a manner that the organ is shortened proportionally to its length, and with a power which depends upon the number of its primitive fibres. But under the influence of fatigue the contraction becomes slower and less energetic. Similar effects are produced by cold and all interferences with a free circulation. Whilst the muscle is contracted it becomes acid, consumes oxygen, hydrocarbon principles, and, in default of these, albuminous substances; its circulation increases, and the venous blood is much darker. Its chemical composition is also very different from that of the inactive muscle. There are formed carbonic acid, lactic acid, urea, creatine, as well as other azotic and non-azotic waste products; all of them results either of oxidation, or of a particular fermentation, or, finally, of a pure and simple disassociation of the elements which the muscle had assimilated and which constitute the complete aliment.

However this may be, the products of respiration and muscular contraction have to be reabsorbed by the veins and the lymphatics, without which the organ becomes overloaded and loses its contractility.

Muscular contraction, to be produced, requires, then, a supply of blood and an excitation; to be continued, it implies a free, active circulation, and a sufficient amount of the exciting principle. As the proportion of waste is proportionate to the rapidity, the intensity, the duration, and the repetition of the con-

[1] Littré, Dictionnaire de la langue française.

traction; and as, on the other hand, the work of depurating the muscular system devolves upon the circulatory apparatus, the economy must be provided with the special organs through which the blood can eliminate with facility the products of tissue-change with which it is burdened.

These are the organs which Professor Baron[1] calls *automatic cleansers.* By their intervention the living machine is cleared, without its knowledge, of what its functional activity would *clog* it with. Such are the lungs, the external and internal tegumentary surface, the different cutaneous glands, and the kidneys.

From what has been said it results that prolonged exercise is always accompanied by an expenditure of food, of blood, and of nerve-tissue, by an increased circulation, by an acceleration of respiration, by a rise in temperature, and, finally, by a greater activity of the different emunctory surfaces, principally the sudorific glands and the kidneys.

Cessation of Locomotory Activity.—The above principle being admitted, it is plain that the cessation of locomotory activity will be due to the indirect influence of one of the two following causes: the animal will stop either from nervous exhaustion or from an excessive accumulation of waste products in the muscles (as was said above, by the *clogging* of his muscles).

Nervous exhaustion evidently varies according to the quality and the abundance of force-accumulation of the cerebro-spinal system and the way in which the nervous force is expended. All subjects, as we know, are not equally gifted in this respect; but, as to equality of *blood,* it is certain that the more the contraction is sudden, intense, prolonged, and repeated, the more will the exciting principle of the organism diminish and the quicker will it reach its last limit. As to muscular accumulation of waste products, it is caused by the insufficiency of the emunctories, the circulatory, respiratory, urinary, and sudorific apparatus. Sometimes the blood does not carry away the *excretions* as rapidly as they are formed; sometimes it is not thoroughly purified in the lungs, the kidneys, the sudorific glands; sometimes, finally, it is not rich enough in primary constituents. Then one of two things will occur: either it returns to the muscle still loaded with waste materials,—that is to say, with products which cause the latter to lose its contractility,—or it reaches it not properly provided with the substances (oxygen and other muscular aliments) without which this quality cannot be put into action. In each of these cases locomotory activity is diminished and prevented, even by the fact of the functional unfitness of the organs whose co-operation it necessarily requires.

---

[1] R. Baron, La Dynamométrie biologique, in Archives vétérinaires, année 1877, t. ii. p. 754.

Conditions of the Economical Production of Work.—Let us attempt now to determine what must be exacted from the motor, in order that he may produce, in the best conditions, the greatest amount of work with the least possible fatigue. In other words, let us see under what circumstances the work will be the least onerous for the animal, and therefore the most economical.

Professor Baron[1] has well explained this important question. In his opinion resistance to fatigue is more or less a *function* of the following conditions:

a. A powerful faculty of dynamic accumulation of the nervo-muscular system,—blood.

b. Innate or acquired ability of the muscular fibre to make use at once of the nervous or plastic elements (excitable, firm, dense muscles; rapid reflex action).

c. A good construction of the members and beautiful proportions (perfection of the mechanism rendering it fit to act with force, ease, precision).

d. Innate or acquired ability of the organism to rid itself quickly and thoroughly of the waste materials through its emunctories (spacious, active lungs; surface of the body relatively extensive).

e. Facility of the locomotory apparatus to execute easily certain movements (training of the horse; economy of force and time for the execution of a determined work).

f. The quality of the food and that of the tissues, both of which tend to lessen the formation of the waste matters or permit the organism to rid itself of them at shorter intervals (substantial food of little bulk; a good assimilation).

The horse which will answer best to all these conditions will also be able to perform the greatest work and resist for the longest time the fatigue which results from it.

Endurance in Different Kinds of Animal Motors.—Does endurance offer the same interest in horses of force as in those of speed? Incontestably it does not, and it is not difficult to understand this. In animals which are utilized only as force factors the muscular contractions are slow, inextensive, not frequent, and of an intensity rarely excessive. Their work increasing in proportion to the weight to be displaced, their speed is always very ordinary. Consequently, their expenditure is never very great in ordinary circumstances. When it becomes so,—for example, when they have to ascend an acclivity or

---

[1] R. Baron, loc. cit., p. 756.

to pull upon soft ground,—their muscles have time to depurate themselves and their lungs to oxygenate the blood which flows through them, without the difficulty of breathing being exaggerated. Hence it requires a long time to produce fatigue in them, and their work can continue for a considerable time,—ten, fifteen, and even eighteen hours a day,—provided they are properly nourished. Nervous exhaustion is almost the only thing that requires a certain amount of reparative rest; besides, the necessities of daily labor oblige both animals and people to interrupt their work at certain hours, principally during the night. Hence it is very seldom necessary to work the draught-horse to the utmost extent of his powers of endurance. However, this does not always imply, as De Curnieu humorously says,[1] that it is *foolishness* to speak of the inexhaustible endurance of horses which have no speed, or which go long distances at a slow pace. On the contrary, it is important to know exactly what these animals are capable of doing at a certain moment in view of unforeseen circumstances which may happen at any instant. Where is the teamster who has not become stuck in the mud after a rain-storm, brought to a stand-still by a slippery pavement, an accidental snow-storm, a frost, a rather steep and slippery slope? Which of them has never been left on the road, discouraged, obliged to go for additional horses, despairing of overcoming the obstacle with his own team? Who, finally, being confident of his team and convinced of their vigor, has not come out victoriously from the trial by suddenly imposing upon them an excessive labor? These facts are too common and too well known to dwell upon. Let us proceed.

But in the horse which is employed as a factor of speed endurance is of the greatest importance, for the work is more considerable, the expenditure of tissue, and therefore the fatigue, greater. The muscular contraction is always extensive, intense, sudden, and repeated; the muscles need much blood, exact a rapid absorption, are quickly exhausted; the lungs should double their activity in order to avoid congestion, effect their interchange with the air, eject their waste products, and absorb the oxygen in sufficient quantity. As to nerve force, when quickly exhausted, it very soon renders the mechanism unable to perform its work.

"*It is the pace that kills!*" say the English, those judicious connoisseurs, thus expressing the enormous losses which this kind of work causes. As the animal can sustain his gait only when endowed with,

---

[1] De Curnieu, Leçons de science hippique générale, 3e partie, p. 82.

so to speak, inexhaustible endurance, it is not astonishing to see this quality considered only in fast horses, since this is the *sine quâ non* condition of their utility, therefore of their value.

The External Form as an Index of Endurance.—We have studied the question under most of its aspects; let us now return to the external form and try to analyze it in so far as it is an indicator of endurance, in order to call the attention of the beginner to the features which will permit him at first sight to recognize that essential quality in the animals submitted to his examination.

We must first consider the muscles. Firm, dense, compact muscles will be sought for; clearly-defined outlines; deep interstices, not filled with fat or connective tissue. In draught-horses especially, care will be taken not to mistake for a genuine development of the muscular system at large that excessive corpulence which results from an aliment that is little nutritive, little exciting, or, again, from that especial preparation which precedes the sale. Small faith must be placed in those thick, clumsy, rounded forms which so often please inexperienced persons, and give rise to an idea of vigor, energy, and power. At the end of a few days all these beautiful appearances disappear, and then, but too late, the error committed is perceived.

Then the chest, in its length, its height, and its width, as well as the other parts of the respiratory apparatus, will be considered. The horse runs as much with his lungs as with his members, let it not be forgotten. Without good wind he is incapable of accomplishing the least laborious work, for his muscular system, although well disposed, will be quickly overloaded with effete material and soon rendered inert.

Then we must appreciate in what proportions the *blood* and the *coarse* elements exist in the animal,—that is to say, that part of the influence which is exerted by the nervous system, the condenser of that energy which the muscles discharge little by little. Thinness of the skin, the hair, and the mane; bright, expressive physiognomy; energetic countenance, mobility of the ears and the nostrils; general sensitiveness, docility, attention, intelligence, prompt and easy reactions: such are the principal characteristics of distinction, without which he cannot possess great power or endure severe trials.

Finally, the perfection of the mechanism from the point of view of the harmony of the details and of the whole must be ascertained. If the muscles, the lungs, and the blood are the active elements of power, they can manifest it externally only through the harmony and the *energy* of the machinery of locomotion; one of these elements is of no value without the others, and *vice versa*. Beautiful proportions

also furnish us with the degree of functional and reciprocal relation of the parts. By them we judge of the precision of action, the entire utilization of the force, and the longevity of the machine; they imply a *resultant* which, without them, all isolated effects could not attain.

Sometimes, however, everything seems to be well adjusted in the horse; vigor, good wind, and energy appear fortunately combined with the elements of form, grace, and elegance; the animal is brilliant, impetuous, all excitement when taken out; in his stepping, his movements, force, and speed he is second to none; and yet, we distinctly state, these fine qualities are only the vain appearances of a fictitious ardor, the eye-deceiver of an imaginary power of endurance.

Similar to a Leyden jar slightly charged, he differs in no way from the subject which possesses true endurance. He is no doubt deficient in something; only this lack is not seen externally, and, on that account, will lead the most skilful into error. He possesses all the materials of power; their fault consists in not being of a superior quality. The organism has not the fine composition indispensable for the constitution of dynamical or vital equilibrium; here it has too little, there too much, elsewhere none at all. In reality, the statical conditions are good; there is sufficient material, whilst there is an absence of certain properties. Levers, muscles, nerves, blood, and wind exist in sufficient quantity, but not with the necessary qualities. There is a harmony of forms, there is no harmony of forces, no free outlet for their manifestation. The muscle is irritable, but its contractility is perhaps too exacting; the temperament is sanguine, but is too poor in quality; its composition is wanting in something; the nervous system is well constructed, but it is not trained for long action; the lung is spacious, but its fundamental elements are poorly adapted for the interchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide, etc. We might go on with such suppositions almost *ad infinitum.*

Whatever interpretations there may be, no mystery, nothing extraordinary or occult, should be imagined to exist in this problem. All these effects have their causes, but all enter into the domain of infinitely small factors, as yet unknown to modern science, which judges of them, on the whole, only by their *manner of existence.*

To return to our first comparison. Let us again take our Leyden jar. If we touch it, it will be discharged. The moment afterwards it appears the same as it was before, and yet it no longer contains this imponderable electrical fluid, this particular vibratory movement which it is impossible for our senses to take cognizance of otherwise than by its effects. It is by a fresh electrical shock that we can now distinguish

it from another charged jar, and thus appreciate the difference of their internal condition; the simple examination of the external form will be no criterion to us.

The same conditions exist for endurance. Until now, we have considered it only as a total or a *product*. The study of the conformation may, of course, cause us to suspect its existence; *experiment* alone is capable of proving it. Now, among horses (pardon this metaphor) there are so many *empty* Leyden jars that one is of necessity compelled to touch and to *test* them, in order to avoid the inconveniences resulting from purchasing them.

Practical Determination of Endurance.—In what way shall we make a practical determination of endurance? Evidently, by suddenly increasing the expenditure and pushing the animal's work as much as possible. In the draught-horse, for example, it can be proved by making the animal pull a heavy load up a hill at a fast walk. In the fast horse, by obliging him to pull or carry a somewhat heavy weight at an unusually fast gait, the trot or the gallop.

It is well understood that these kinds of experiments should never be carried to the point of becoming prejudicial to the animals. Hence, in order to render the experiment less severe, without making it, on that account, less decisive, it is important to examine the condition of the respiration. What takes place in the muscles and, for still greater reason, the nervous centres cannot be seen; but, as the contraction supposes a proportionate excitation and circulation; as, besides, the blood before returning to the muscles is obliged to pass through the lungs and to absorb from them as much material as it gives off, the result of this is that the activity of the *thoracic bellows* is in close correlation with the amount of the work, the quantity of tissue-waste, and the degree of fatigue. It follows from this that *difficult breathing* shows to the observer the state of exhaustion, and gives him a knowledge of the reserve strength which the animal still has at his disposal. It is true, then, that the flank is to the horse as the manometer is to the steam-engine, since it indicates the tension of the functional activity of the horse, as the manometer indicates that of the steam.

As to the nerve conductibility, its feebleness or its disappearance is seen in unequivocal signs on the locomotory apparatus: the muscular contractions are weaker and slower; the efforts diminish in intensity and rapidity; the intervals between the steps are no longer equal and in co-ordination; the members meet and strike each other; the gait, at first uncertain, becomes tottering; the head hangs low; the subject becomes more and more insensible to the surroundings; soon he falls in a heap

and dies at his task. But, before reaching this point, his steps are less free, heavy, and uncertain; he *forges*. All these signs should be sufficient, and their appearance demands an immediate cessation of the experiment.

Performances or Examples of Endurance.—Veterinary annals are full of examples showing the feats accomplished by certain horses. It is interesting to become acquainted with some of them, so as to know about how much an animal is capable of accomplishing in certain exceptional circumstances.

We know that at a **walk** the work can be continued almost indefinitely without exhaustion; we have given the physiological reason for this. However, this gait is sometimes maintained with a remarkable velocity.

De Curnieu has seen, especially, two horses travel 8 kilometres in 64 minutes, and he considers the distance of two leagues in an hour as almost impossible.[1] This is also our opinion.

Still, Youatt[2] relates that in 1793 a hackney mare, named Sloven, travelled at a walk the distance of 22 miles (35 kilometres, 398 metres) in 3 hours and 52 seconds, which represents a speed of 11 kilometres per hour! In the face of such a case, we may well wonder whether the unsuspecting nature of this estimable author has not been imposed upon, or whether the gait employed was indeed truly the normal walk.

At the **trot,** De Curnieu considers that 4 kilometres in 7 minutes is the maximum distance which a horse can realize. He asserts that in France a trotter of the first rank alone is capable of travelling over a distance of 7 kilometres in 8 minutes.

We have noted several instances of speed superior to these. Verny, an Orloff trotter, of the Chambaudoin (Loiret) stud, has trotted in harness at the Bois de Boulogne a distance of 4 kilometres in 6 minutes and 14 seconds.

Bedouin, of the same stud, has trotted at Vincennes, October 10, 1881, a distance of 5500 metres in 8 minutes and 41 seconds.

De Curnieu says that "4 leagues per hour (16 kilometres, 10 miles) should be done quite easily, upon flat ground, by any horse of a certain value. . . . To travel 3 leagues an hour on smooth roads, and maintain this speed for 2, 3, or 4 consecutive hours, demands a very good, an excellent horse."[3]

In 1822, M. Bernard rode on a trot, with his mare, 9 miles (14 kilometres, 481 metres) in 27 minutes and 40 seconds. (Youatt.)

Some years previous, Phenomenon, twelve years old, trotted 16 miles (25 kilometres, 744 metres) in 53 minutes. (Youatt.)

---

[1] De Curnieu, loc. cit., 2e partie, p. 379.
[2] William Youatt, History of the Thoroughbred Horse.
[3] De Curnieu, loc. cit., 2e partie, p. 377.

In 1827, General Oudinot rode on a trot at Saumur, on his mare, 28 kilometres in 65 minutes. (De Curnieu.)

Two years later, Rattler, an American horse, was engaged to trot over a distance of 10 miles (16 kilometres, 90 metres), which he accomplished in 30 minutes and 40 seconds. (Youatt.)

Tom Thumb, harnessed to a sulky of 50 kilogrammes, with a driver weighing about 60 kilogrammes, trotted the distance of 100 miles (160 kilometres, 900 metres) in 10 hours and 3 minutes, which is more than 40 leagues! The time taken for feeding having been about 37 minutes, the 100 miles were actually travelled in 9½ hours. (Youatt.)

At the **gallop**, if the distance has reached 6 kilometres, and the speed is very great, the test may be considered one of distance, of endurance. Sometimes the trials are made successively with several horses, and then the distance is long; sometimes one horse accomplishes the whole distance alone, and this is the most common. Here are some remarkable examples:

In 1755, Bay-Malton ran 4 miles (6437 metres) in 7 minutes and 43 seconds. (Youatt.)

Flying-Childers, the fastest horse of his time, had a few years previous run 6761 metres in 7 minutes and 30 seconds. (Youatt.)

A similar speed was shown by Ten Broeck, an American horse, which ran in 1876, in Louisville, Kentucky, 4 miles (6437 metres) in 7 minutes and 15 seconds.

In 1847, Renard, 11 years old, and carrying 64.500 kilogrammes, ran over a distance of 9000 metres in 15 minutes and 35 seconds, at Arles.

In December, 1786, Hull's Quibler ran 23 miles, which is a little more than 37 kilometres, in 57 minutes and 10 seconds, upon the circular race-course at Newmarket. (Youatt.)

In 1771, Wilde, in Ireland, *with ten horses*, rode in the saddle the distance of 127 miles (207 kilometres, 743 metres) in 6 hours and 21 minutes. (Youatt.)

In 1745, Thornhill accomplished more than this: he rode with several horses 230 miles, more than 370 kilometres (92 leagues), in 6 hours and 21 minutes. (Youatt.)

In 1762, Shaftoe rode on ten horses, five of which were mounted twice, a distance of 50¼ miles (80 kilometres, 874 metres) in 1 hour and 49 minutes.

The following year, in 1763, he wagered to ride on horseback 100 miles a day (more than 160 kilometres) for 29 days, with twenty-nine horses of his own choice. He won this bet by using only fourteen horses, and one day he was obliged to ride 160 miles (more than 250 kilometres) on account of the exhaustion of his first horse. (Youatt.)

Exotic won at Peterborough a race of four successive trials of 4 miles each, or 16 miles in all (25.744 kilometres).

Finally, to end this enumeration, we will also mention a few more extraordinary feats performed by exceptional subjects, and in which the gait employed has been alternately the gallop, the trot, or the walk.

De Curnieu reports the case of a mare of three-quarters blood which travelled a distance of 24 kilometres per hour for 3½ hours.

The same author gives the account of Schaklari Amdan, an Arabian stallion, which came, it is said, to Alep, from a distance of 600 kilometres, in 40 hours,—27 hours of actual travelling.

One of the most severe performances that have ever, perhaps, been recorded conscientiously is that of Sharper, which may be read in volume iii. p. 151 of the English "Stud-Book." This horse had to travel at St. Petersburg, on August 4, 1825, a distance of 75 versts (80,100 metres), a little more than 20 leagues, against Cossack horses from the Don, the Black Sea, and the Ural. He alone finished the race in 2 hours and 48 minutes! And yet the horses he ran against were famous competitors.

Verny, a Russian trotter of which we have already spoken, won, in 1879, a famous race against an English horse; harnessed to a carriage, and mounted by two persons, he made the distance from Paris to Rouen, 128 kilometres, in 9 hours and 5 minutes. His competitor died on the road; he himself, from want of care, died the next day.

Youatt relates that a hackney-horse travelled the enormous distance from London to York—that is to say, 196 miles (more than 315 kilometres)—in 40 hours and 33 minutes.

He relates, also, that a man, in 1827, made a small Hungarian horse travel the distance of 95 miles (more than 152 kilometres) while keeping up with the Limerick stage.

Another man is said to have started at the same time as the Exeter mail-coach, upon a Galloway horse 1.40 metres high, and to have reached Exeter a quarter of an hour before the mail, having travelled 172 miles (more than 276 kilometres) at a rate of more than 7 miles (11 kilometres, 263 metres) an hour.

A Galloway horse also travelled, in 1754, 100 miles a day (160 kilometres, 900 metres) for three consecutive days. (Youatt.)

It was also a Galloway horse which accomplished, at Carlisle, the extraordinary feat of going 1000 miles (1609 kilometres, or 402 leagues) in 1000 hours (41 days and 16 hours). (Youatt.)

Finally, recently M. Prieur de la Comble, left Lunéville on the 3d of April, 1882, upon a Hungarian mare, the Mascotte, and reached Paris three days after, having gone over 388 kilometres, which is the distance between the two cities, in 72 hours. Our friend, M. Bizard, who knew this mare, assured us that her owner could certainly have made the distance in 50 hours if he had wished to do so, the Mascotte sustaining with the greatest ease periods of trotting of 30 to 40 kilometres.

These instances are sufficient to show what feats the horse is capable of performing when he is endowed with those incomparable qualities which constitute *endurance.* But, however marvellous these examples may be, they do not equal those which man, as a *pedestrian* by profession, has already given.

The weekly journal, *The Field,* which is published every Saturday at London, and which is an authority on such matters, has given us the three following facts:

1st. Mr. Robert Vint, of American origin, accomplished, in 1881, a journey of 578 miles and 605 yards (about 930 kilometres, 721 metres) in 144 consecutive hours,—that is to say, in 6 days.

2d. Another American, Mr. Fitzgerald, travelled 582 miles (about 936 kilometres, 612 metres) in the same time (144 hours).

3d. Finally, an Englishman, Mr. Hazael, established a new record, February 27, 1882, in New York, travelling the prodigious distance of 600 miles and one lap (about 965 kilometres, 580 metres) in 144 consecutive hours, which corresponds to a distance of more than 100 miles per day, continued during six days, at a medium speed of 6 kilometres, 706 metres per hour!

It is useless to detail any more instances to prove the superiority of the endurance of man. To formulate the problem otherwise: no horse could go, for example, from Amiens to Marseilles, passing through Paris and Dijon (or 994 kilometres) in the six consecutive days. This, however, is about the distance realized by Mr. Hazael; upon a tan-bark track, it is true, and under special circumstances, but this does not prevent it from being a very astonishing performance.

Its Aggregation acting as Mechanical Individuality.—Endurance of a Troop in Campaign.—Until now, we have examined endurance in a single individual. It would seem interesting to us to speak of this precious faculty as seen in a certain number of subjects, whose synergetic actions should result in a general determined movement. We will consider, in other words, its *aggregation* or its sum total, in a certain number of animals, acting as a mechanical individuality, to formulate the conditions which are the most unfavorable for the production of fatigue, and therefore the most advantageous for an economical achievement of the work of the mass.

This particular point of view finds its application in the question of knowing how to proceed in order to obtain from a troop in campaign the greatest amount of effort on the part of those which compose it.

General Bonie[1] has treated the subject practically, and with numerous experiments for its support. As most of his statements constitute very wise *general indications*, we consider it our duty to give a *résumé* of them.

This worthy officer estimates that the cavalry horse should move at a *walk* at the rate of 1 kilometre in 10 minutes, and can thus travel 48 kilometres in 10 hours, interrupted by 2 hours of rest.

The *trot* should be made at the moderate rate of a kilometre in about 4 minutes and 15 seconds, if the march is to be continued for a long time. All the horses follow in this manner, provided, nevertheless, that they be walked in ascending or descending steep hills, so as to avoid wounds and falls. But it is evident that this gait cannot be

---

[1] T. Bonie, Fond et vitesse d'une troupe de cavalerie en campagne, Paris, 1872, chez Amyot rue de la Paix.

prolonged beyond a certain limit, for all effective companies, more or less incongruous with regard to their composition, scarcely comprise more than one-fourth of good subjects.

It is important, then, to combine the walk and the trot in such a way that the animals may recover their breath.

Experience demonstrates, in this respect, that few horses forge before having travelled a distance of 1500 metres at a trot; if this pace is pushed farther, the number of those which make this noise will increase without cessation. The result will be that the walk must be resumed at this moment. Let us, then, examine the lungs; we will see that 5 minutes will be necessary for the respiration to become calm, normal, and again permit the horse to trot. A distance of 1500 metres, followed by a walk of 500 metres, alternately repeated, is, then, the combination which will furnish the most prudent pace.

The number of halts is also to be taken into very serious consideration. We know that their object is to rest the horse by unloading him of a part of the weight which he carries (the rider) and by the cessation of all work. They permit also a readjustment of the harness.

General Bonie says that in times of peace the horses should be walked at the first start 1500 to 2000 metres, in order to train the animal and prepare his organs for more rapid movements. Then a trot of 1 kilometre will be made. The walk will be resumed for 5 minutes, to be followed by a second kilometre at a trot. A five-minutes' walk will now re-establish the normal respiration. This will be the time for the first halt. At the end of 5 minutes, the walk will be resumed for from 500 to 600 metres, after which the trot will be used. If the ride does not exceed 28 kilometres, two halts will be sufficient: one at 5 or 6 kilometres from the place of starting, the other at 10 kilometres from the place of arrival. Above 28 kilometres and up to 50, almost the extreme limit of our rides between the two halts spoken of, a third one will be made midway, and the riders dismount for a quarter of an hour to allow the horses to rest. The horses should not be allowed to trot within 2 or 3 kilometres of their destination, in order that they may be calm and dry on their arrival. The velocity of the march will thus be 8 kilometres per hour, including the halts.

In times of war the distance travelled over should be:

12 kilometres	in	1 hour.		1 hour and 20 minutes of rest, divided into six halts.
22 "	"	2 hours.		
32 "	"	3 "		
40 "	"	4 "		
45 "	"	5 "		
54 "	"	6 "		
60 "	"	7 "		

Then a rest of 4 or 5 hours will be taken, after which a march of 60 kilometres could be completed in 10 hours, at a walk, with 50 minutes for five halts made every 12 kilometres.

Concerning the *gallop*, the troop being supposed to run upon smooth and firm ground, and not to have done any work on that day; under these circumstances, the following is what it is able to accomplish:

For a distance of 1000 metres and less, they can travel very fast from the starting-place. For longer distances, it will be indispensable that the charging gallop be run only in the following proportions:

For 1500 metres,	800	at the ordinary gallop;				700	at the charging gallop.		
" 2000	"	1500	"	"	"	500	"	"	"
" 2500	"	2200	"	"	"	300	"	"	"
" 3000	"	almost the whole distance at the ordinary gallop; the remainder at the charging gallop.							

For 3500 metres, an ordinary gallop for 2000 metres; the remainder at a gallop of 500 metres per minute. The rate cannot increase just before the arrival.

For 5000 metres, the gallop is slackened for the whole distance. No charge is possible upon the arrival.

"After 1000 metres of charging, it will be necessary to stop or resume the walk, because the lungs are engorged, but the muscles still have enough vigor to act. From 20 to 25 minutes will be required for the respiration to return to its normal state, but, after 10 minutes' rest the animals can start again and with still enough freedom of respiration to go a distance of 400 to 500 metres with great speed; or, if the ordinary gallop is sufficient, 1200 to 1500 metres, since the charge exacts a triple expenditure of strength. After 10 minutes' rest, a third charge may be made of from 300 to 400 metres.

"After a journey of 3500 metres at a gallop (medium speed 7 minutes), the muscles and the lungs are tired out. The animal is, however, very capable of galloping again, but he will feel it the following days. Fifteen minutes after this journey the animal is calm and in normal condition.[1]

"During a journey of 5000 metres at a gallop the maximum power of the horse has been called into activity. It is the work of a whole day. Nevertheless, whatever the fatigue, a cavalry troop can always continue to march at a walk. Twenty minutes after the arrival calm is restored.

"Such is the power of the cavalry horse when at a gallop. As may be seen, it is immense. But we must emphasize the fact that it is often necessary.

"In a campaign we seldom travel over ground which allows great speed, but the divisionary cavalry may be called upon to go long distances at a gallop. As a matter of fact, it should be sheltered as much as possible so long as its co-operation is not needed; it should be 500 or 600 metres from its infantry, which itself is 700 or 800 metres from the enemy.

"If the latter retreat, the interval increases from 300 to 400 metres. At this moment there will be 1700 or 1800 metres between the body of the cavalry and the troops who flee. But to produce a great effect, instead of approaching these troops in front, they should be attacked from behind, and a turn made from 500 to 600 metres at a gallop, making a total of 2500 metres, for two-thirds of the horses will not be able to follow at a trot. These 2500 metres will be gone over as much through the fields as the roads, which is equivalent to a gallop of 3500 metres upon level ground."

General Bonie estimates the power which still remains available upon the arrival of the troop, according to the distances travelled, in the following manner:

He considers that a company of cavalry can march *seven hours,*

without any rest other than the halts, at the rate of 8 kilometres, 600 metres per hour. He estimates, in round numbers, that each hour of work represents 7 kilometres at a *trot*, 1900 metres at a *gallop*, or 450 metres at a *charge*. One or other of these distances may be travelled, at the corresponding gait, as many times as there remain hours in which to perform the work. The following is therefore the available power at the end of each ride:

Distance.	Each representing		
	At the Trot.	At the Gallop.	At the Charge.
	Kilometres.	Metres.	Metres.
After 12 kilometres, travelled in 1 hour, a troop can travel 45 kilometres, walking and trotting combined, with five halts to rest the horses	7	1900	450
After 22 kilometres, travelled in 2 hours, a troop can travel 33 kilometres, walking and trotting combined, with four halts	7	1900	450
After 32 kilometres, travelled in 3 hours, a troop can travel 22 kilometres, walking and trotting combined, with two halts	7	1900	450
After 40 kilometres, travelled in 4 hours, a troop can travel 14 kilometres, walking and trotting combined, without halting	7	1900	450
After the one or the other of these last three distances, and having regained breath, it can repeat two-thirds of the same.			
After 45 kilometres, travelled in 5 hours, a troop can travel 12 kilometres, walking and trotting combined, with no halt	7	1900	450
After the one or the other of these last, take such repose as is necessary.			
After 54 kilometres, travelled in 6 hours, and 60 in 7 hours, a troop will scarcely be able to march, only at a walk. It will travel 2 or 3 kilometres at a trot, 200 or 300 metres at a gallop, but no charge is possible. Whatever may be its fatigue, a troop can always, as a demonstration, continue to march at a walk.			

Finally, the weight carried is extremely burdensome to the troop-horse. Under ordinary circumstances, the charge does not sensibly modify the speed, but it greatly augments the fatigue and, consequently, the waste of endurance. The proof of the latter is furnished by a study of the respiration. After trotting a certain number of kilometres, the respirations, in horses not on a charge, rise to a mean of 60 per minute; in the same subjects, when charging, they attain 74. Whence it follows that this time of trotting has winded these horses as much as the same distance would have done at a gallop.

General Bonie adds, "In the face of such a diminution of endurance, hesitation is no longer allowable, and the horses should at once be disburdened of their campaign traps. This question is so little appreciated that custom prescribes such a weight that, by considering the undressed rider as weighing 65 kilogrammes, which is certainly not an exaggeration, and adding the harness, clothing, arms, ammunition, and provisions, it aggregates 152 kilogrammes.

If the rain increases the weight 10 kilogrammes, an astonishing total of 162 kilogrammes is obtained. How can we make horses run that are loaded twice as heavily as the mules, which only walk? It seems impossible that this rule should not be revised.

"In foreign countries four wagons are assigned to each regiment, and one to each squadron of cavalry, to carry the accessories; why not follow this example? The objection will be made that the wagons cannot always follow; but whilst admitting that they do not immediately rejoin them, cannot the rider, sheltered by his cloak if the weather be inclement, be deprived for two or three days of this supplementary stock of clothing which crushes the horse?

"The increase of power which results from this diminution of weight is really prodigious. With the routine campaign burden a horse expends as much force as does one without such load and moving at a gallop. By relieving him of this difference of weight his power is tripled."[1]

Such are General Bonie's general indications. On the whole, in their *ensemble*, they are perfectly founded. To cite an example, we will say that we have seen, during the Franco-German war (1870–1871), the first squadron of the Eighth Hussars, mounted on Arabian horses, who were ordered into the environs of Châteaurenault, start in the morning at half-past six o'clock and return in the evening at half-past four, having accomplished in ten hours a distance of 95 kilometres without leaving behind a single horse. At the same time, the first platoon of the same squadron accomplished with like success a distance of about 106 kilometres, calculated as accurately as possible.

The preceding indications need not be taken *à la lettre* as an invariable line of conduct; they are only *nearly* so, nothing more. The commanding officer should especially adapt himself to circumstances in order to ward off the most pressing difficulties. We therefore give him this information only as a pocket-book jotting; it is his place to appreciate in what degree he may deviate from the statements which it contains, in one sense or the other, according to the nature of the ground, the state of the temperature, its dryness, its dampness, etc.

Endurance considered as an Innate, Acquired, or Lost Aptitude.—A final question presents itself, that of the endurance examined as an innate, acquired, or lost aptitude.

If we remember what has already been said above, we cannot at first deny that this aptitude is a *resultant* whose many effects proceed from three different sources: the first consists directly of ancestral heredity; the second is the consequence of training; the third comes from the external medium.

The horse inherits from his *ancestors* the temperament, the form,

---

[1] See, for further details, the work already cited.

the constitution, the mechanism, the primary material of the tissues, the blood, and the reflex power of the nervous system.

By *training* (functional gymnastics) he acquires the habit and the ability to work, to economize strength and use it with all its intensity.

Finally, from the *medium conditions* he borrows the nutriment for his activity and the repairing materials for his incessant losses, as well as that continual influence which blunts the too great susceptibility of his organism and permits him, already strong and adapted to resist external modifying causes, to struggle victoriously against fatigue and privations.

Endurance is composed, then, of two kinds of qualities: the one *innate*, more permanent, and stronger, is bequeathed by ancestors; the other *acquired*, less constant, and also less durable, is the result of that special gymnastics, training.

Now, the horse may lose this principal faculty. First, his own reserve stock will disappear, then will come the turn of what he has inherited from his ancestors. And even though the elements of the latter, less transitory, should still remain with him in substance, we may readily understand how the neglect of certain elementary precautions might depreciate them or deprive them entirely of their value, in the same manner as those objects of art which are allowed to spoil, or those monuments which are not preserved against the injuries of time.

This is why, through want of exercise and particular care, by an ill-regulated hygiene, the animal becomes weakened, the tissues lose their properties, the articulations their suppleness, the nerves their excitability, the muscles their vigor, and the chest its wind. The horse is now but the shadow of his former self; force, energy, endurance, ardor, nobility, distinction, all those brilliant faculties which he possessed at first, disappear, little by little, never more to return.

CHAPTER IV.

DEFINITIVE SYNTHESIS.

LITTLE remains to be said about the proportions of the horse. We have indicated in what they consist, and what their isolated or their combined effects upon the living machine are; we have analyzed with care the details and the whole, shown the importance of each fact in

particular, initiated the reader into the difficulties which he will meet with, and established the principles which it is indispensable to know. Now, we must complete this study by some general reflections upon the method to be pursued in order to properly utilize the ideas which we have presented in the preceding chapters.

Balance of the Good and of the Bad.—Whilst insisting, as we have done, upon a search for beauty, we did not mean to advise the beginner to pursue *absolute perfection, ideal beauty.* This would have been launching him upon a path without issue, and leading him into error from a practical point of view, for that kind of perfection is imaginary. In fact, there is no horse which combines all qualities, for the latter are, so to speak, infinite. But we meet subjects which have many of them, and are therefore relatively more perfect than others. And again, this superiority is a rarity which we must not delay too long in seeking; for we would often run the risk of not attaining it, which would mean a sheer loss of time and money. It is useful, however, to be acquainted with ideal beauty; he who has no knowledge of it allows to pass before his eyes some of the very features by which it shows itself, and this at his expense; since another person, better informed than he, may discover them.

In every horse we find some good qualities and some faults. In whatever proportion they are mixed, the animal is never worthless. He always has a value based upon the existence of the good qualities and upon the depreciation which the faults cause in him. It is necessary, from an economical point of view, to establish this value. By what means can we accomplish this? By weighing the good and the bad. This weighing must not consist in the pure and simple ascertaining of the one and of the other, but in a mechanical and physiological balancing of the two; it must be the result not of observation alone, but of a careful analysis, a judicious and thorough comparison.

The purchaser cannot be too deeply impressed with this principle, that the fitness of the whole is derived, above all else, from the degree of equilibrium of its details. If the latter does not exist, the motor is only capable of disconnected efforts; the greatest part of his force is lost, producing a result injurious to himself and prejudicial and burdensome to those who employ him; it means his more or less immediate ruin, and, in all cases, incompetency.

Compensations.—In order to appreciate the vital and dynamical equilibrium, it is not sufficient to make a simple subtraction, to reckon up separately the beauties on the one hand and the defects on the other, to see which total is in excess, and to judge by the amount of the

difference. It is necessary, on the contrary, to endeavor to ascertain whether the defects are not compensated by the good qualities, and if so, to what degree this compensation exists.

It is known that, in a locomotive, for example, the velocity depends upon the diameter of the wheels and the number of strokes of the piston in a given unit of time. Now, we can conceive a machine quite as fast, with smaller wheels, provided the latter are constructed in such a manner that the number of their revolutions redeems what they lose by the smallness of their circumference. It is known, also, that the diameter of the wheels diminishes the conditions of stability. Nevertheless, we can construct a locomotive quite as large and as stable by lessening this inconvenience by a device of some kind which will augment the bulk without rendering it excessive, or which will bring the centre of gravity nearer to the soil. The piston, whose force is in relation with the extent of its surface and the intensity of the pressure which is exerted upon it, will be of equal power, although smaller, provided we have a boiler in which the steam can be raised to a higher tension. In each of these circumstances we have compensations which render the mechanism, if not perfect from a theoretical point of view, at least very useful, economically speaking, since we have succeeded in adapting its wheels, somewhat defective, to the kind of service for which they were at first insufficient.

Likewise, in the horse, it frequently happens that a good quality annuls a defect, or that one defect may be counterbalanced by another whose influence is diametrically opposite. Let us explain this by some examples. For the sake of brevity, we will present them in tabular form, placing on one side the defects, on the other the principal corresponding compensations. The reader must now be sufficiently familiar with all these facts to spare us the necessity of entering into details which would lead us too far away. Besides, he always has the opportunity to refer to our descriptions of the regions, in case he should not be able readily to grasp the value of these compensations.

EXAMPLES OF COMPENSATIONS.

Defects.	Corresponding Compensations.
Too voluminous head	Neck rather short, well muscled.
Head too common	Ears well placed, eyes expressive, physiognomy bright.
Neck too short	Head light, well attached; withers prominent, shoulder beautiful.
Withers thick and fleshy	High in front, beautiful shoulder and good axes in front.
Withers low	Hind-quarters powerful, fore-quarters light, good equilibrium, members strong.

EXAMPLES OF COMPENSATIONS—*Continued.*

Defects.	Corresponding Compensations.
Back long and sway-backed	Croup strong, body muscular, loins short, well attached; abdomen small.
Back short and narrow	Chest high and long.
Loins long	Body well muscled; loins well attached; ribs very projecting behind; croup oblique; shoulder beautiful; hind-quarters powerful; fore-quarters light.
Chest narrow	Ribs long, very projecting backward; intercostal spaces wide.
Chest scarcely low enough	Chest wide and long.
Abdomen very voluminous	Body short and strong, well supported; flanks short, chest spacious, members strong.
Greyhound abdomen	Good condition, good appetite, firm, dense muscles, but not too nervous a temperament.
Breast rather narrow	Chest spacious, muscles dense, energetic; good anterior equilibrium.
Breast somewhat wide	Body of rather small volume, gaits easy, not rocking, strong members.
Shoulder short	High in front, withers prominent, neck long, shoulder oblique and muscular, arm long.
Shoulder straight	Body short, hind-quarters powerful, withers prolonged backward and high, neck long and straight.
Arm short and too straight	Shoulder long, oblique, muscular; beautiful neck and withers, good equilibrium.
Forearm a little short	Beautiful shoulder, arm long, humero-radial angle large, forearm muscular.
Forearm slender	Shoulder and arm muscular, canon short, tendons well detached, good anterior axes.
Canon long and slender, tendons weak	Forearm wide, thick, muscular; members solid, muscular, good axes; neck well carried, head light, high in front.
Croup a little short	Thigh rather low down, muscular, rather straight; loins short, supported, well attached, fore-quarters light, hocks good.
Croup a little oblique	Ischium straightened, thigh inclined, hocks good, axes regular, tail well attached, croup long.
Croup a little narrow	Croup long, with sides inclined, muscular; loins well attached.
Croup too horizontal	Thigh long, little inclined, muscular; leg long, good axes, body a little long to avoid forging.
Thigh too straight	Croup horizontal, leg long, inclined; good equilibrium.
Thigh thin and short	Croup and leg long, powerful; body short, well supported, fore-quarters light.
Leg short and too oblique	Thigh long, straight, muscular, hocks strong, good axes.
Leg too straight	Thigh oblique, hocks wide, good axes, body a little long to avoid forging.
Hock weak	Leg, thigh, and croup muscular; loins strong, well attached; fore-quarters light, a little low, but of good equilibrium.

EXAMPLES OF COMPENSATIONS—*Continued.*

Defects.	Corresponding Compensations.
Pastern long	Heels high, tendons well detached, good axes, fore-quarters light, withers high, fetlocks wide.
Pastern short	Heels low, axes regular, withers high, fore-quarters light.
Heels too low	Pastern straight, horn good, frog large, sole concave.
Body somewhat long	Chest deep, flank short, body well supported, croup and shoulders long, oblique, muscular.
Body rather short	Members short, locomotory angles convenient, gaits easy.
A little low in front	Head light, neck long, straight, well attached; withers prominent, shoulder oblique, arm straight, articulations wide, thick, tendons well detached, good axes, hind-quarters powerful.
Too low behind	Fore-quarters light, croup, thigh, and leg powerful; hocks strong, loins strong, good posterior axes.
Members too long	Body light, chest developed; tendons detached, muscular development good.
Horse under himself in front	Neck straight, well attached; shoulder oblique, fore-quarters powerful, and elevated in relation to the hind-quarters; articulations thick, wide, tendons well detached.
Horse knee-sprung	Powerful muscles of the shoulder, the arm, the forearm; neck straight, withers prominent, body well supported.
Horse under himself behind	Fore-quarters light, rather low than high; hind-quarters very muscular, loins powerful, hocks wide, thick, clean.
Shortened gaits	Energy, vigor, rather nervous temperament.

We could, without difficulty, have extended the list of these compensations. Nearly every defect may be ameliorated, either wholly or in part, by a better or inverse disposition of another region. There are, nevertheless, some which it is impossible to remedy, on account of their influence upon the very essence of the motor apparatus or upon the most essential qualities which it should possess. How can we make good, indeed, a defect of absolute development of the respiratory apparatus or the muscular system, a bad quality of the hoof, a want of endurance, energy, and vigor, too great excitability, certain vices of character, etc.? Can a horse breathe sufficiently, move, react, feed, obey, and work, if he is not provided with good lungs, good muscles, large blood-vessels, an excitable nervous system, a spacious digestive apparatus, a docile character, or a good temperament? Evidently not. There are fundamental conditions without which the animal is, so to speak, useless; and if they do not exist in him from the first, it is useless to attempt to find a compensation; we must pass on and reject him as improper for service.

By the side of these essential requirements there are secondary ones whose absence does not make the motor absolutely inefficient, but

simply diminishes his mechanical aptitudes, and, for this reason, his value. It is in the latter case that the system of compensations can be a valuable aid, for it enables us to appreciate accurately the degree of adaptation of the horse to the end for which he is destined.

Eye and Judgment.—But those who must decide upon the qualities or defects of the horse have not always the necessary qualifications for the solution of this problem. As a matter of fact, they must be endowed with certain natural aptitudes in order to perceive readily the relations of the parts and of the whole, and to discern and recognize them promptly; they needs must have the faculty to appreciate, without previous preparation, the good or the bad, the beauty or the ugliness of the form which strikes their eyes. This, in technical language, is called the *eye*. It results, more especially, from an innate, peculiar, exceptional acuteness of their senses, which enables them to see exactly that which others would require a much longer time to find, and perhaps would never distinguish.

The *eye* is not only a special gift of a delicate nature; it also results from education and experience, and on this account it may be acquired, like all other attributes of the kind. We would therefore suggest to those who desire to acquire a thorough knowledge of the horse, that they perfect their senses and exercise them by intelligent and patient observation, and examine the same types over and over again until the mind preserves a clear, perfect image of the very variable combinations which characterize them.

But the aptitude to see vividly the external conformation is in itself powerless, perfect as it may be, to constitute the true *connoisseur*. The latter must, besides, possess a keen and sure *judgment* in order to duly appreciate the degrees, the shades, to avoid the variations of too excitable a temperament, to weigh, in a suitable manner, without an unguarded impulse or without excessive reserve, the influence of the good qualities and of the defects. One is not born a *man of tact*, one becomes such; for the faculty of judging rightly and accurately, of expressing our mind upon the suitableness or the unsuitableness of things, implies comparison, attention, reflection, habit, intelligence, and a well-balanced mind.

Taste, Prejudice, Fashion.—Everybody does not judge of a horse in the same manner, and the opinions of some are neither as reliable nor as judicious as those of others. Whence arise differences, the principal reason of which depends upon the causes which influence the judgment. Among these we will cite more particularly taste, prejudice, and fashion.

Taste is the faculty which urges us to seek after the beautiful. The glance of the eye simply teaches us to perceive that which is right, good, better, beautiful, in preference to that which is ugly. "It is, in some manner," says J. J. Rousseau, exquisitely, "the *microscope* of our judgment; it places small details within the reach of judgment, and its work commences where that of the latter ends."[1] This is a very happy figure of speech, which explains well the *rôle* of taste in all the manifestations by which reason, tact, and intelligence are shown. As an infallible guide it enlightens them by placing them, so to speak, *right in the focus* of truth, in order that they may be preserved from error. For this very reason it must naturally precede them.

Taste not only implies an intense perception, it also requires an admiration for the beautiful, with a more or less clear consciousness of the qualities which must have been combined and of the difficulties which the breeder must have overcome in order to realize the beautiful materially. When we see a beautiful horse, it is not only his form, his gracefulness, his elegance, his vigor, etc., which arrest our attention; it is the scarcity of the model, the skilled labor of the man who produced it or found it. The connoisseur possesses this advantage over the layman, that he appreciates with greater competence the result both of natural aptitude and of study, the details, the technical points which make little or no impression upon the latter. Why? Because his taste has been better trained. Hence his judgment is more accurate and less liable to error. And this superiority is far from being always the result of solid theoretical studies. How many horsemen and horse-dealers surprise us by their good selections! Go into their stables, you will find none but good horses, and yet from what books have they learned, by what teachers have they been instructed? The truth is, they have good taste, they "take in" a horse and understand him at a glance; the surroundings amid which they have lived have developed their special aptitudes and corrected their mistakes; they have unknowingly acquired an idea of the beautiful, this *rara avis*, and have applied their efforts to discover and cultivate it.

A person's judgment may be misleading when his taste becomes depraved or is influenced by prejudice and fashion; it is as though it were guided by a wrong light, and then sees everything under a color which is not the true one. It is therefore of great importance to develop taste, to cultivate it by the ever-renewed spectacle of the beauties of nature. In this connection especially is the guidance of a

---

[1] J. J. Rousseau, La Nouvelle Héloïse, 12e lettre à Julie.

teacher useful, and frequent association with horsemen, whoever they may be, is likely to render signal service to the beginner.

"**Prejudice,**" says Littré, "is an opinion, a belief, acquired without examination."[1] In most cases it rests upon a pure coincidence or upon a simple probability, never upon a demonstrated truth, and varies according to persons, places, and times. The result of routine and ignorance, it encumbers the advancement of science, and should be regarded as the greatest obstacle to progress. "It wages war against any bold spirit that declines to bow before it, and men whose taste is most delicate and best trained are unable to shake off the tyranny of a preconceived idea."[2]

Prejudices abound in respect to the external form of the horse. What has not been said about the forms of the head, the withers, the shoulder, the croup, the tail, the chest, the flank, the blemishes, the dress, the white-foot, the horse-hairs, etc.? What an accumulation of errors, the more difficult to eradicate as they are based on the unknown, always so full of attraction for the laity!

Prejudice is the most redoubtable foe of reason. Hence we must battle against it to the last, but without allowing ourselves to be too deeply moved by the opposition of our contemporaries. "It is in reality," adds Eug. Véron, "only a question of a momentary disturbance, which is explained by the very effort necessary for any innovation we undertake in order to establish the general concordance of our ideas, exactly in the same way as a current of air passing over a stream is sufficient to make the water lose its transparency."[3]

Nevertheless, this does not mean that we must delude ourselves into the belief that all is prejudice. It would be wrong to reject an opinion point-blank under the pretence that it lacks probability or certainty, or for the sole satisfaction of creating something new, for this opinion may prove true as well as erroneous. Hence the advisability of verifying everything, of examining everything, in order to ascertain the worth of this opinion and profit by it, if we may.

Fashion is a transient custom prompted by fancy and caprice (Littré). It is the symptom of a sort of wandering of the imagination, this "madcap of the house," stimulated by vanity and *ennui* much more frequently than by the expression of a true æsthetic sentiment. Its characteristic, in truth, is to change for fear of monotony and not for the sake of discovering something better. Rarely are its innova-

---

[1] Littré, Dictionnaire de la langue française.
[2] Eug. Véron, L'esthétique, p. 73, Paris, 1878.
[3] Loc. cit., p. 74.

tions happy, and, should they be so, it would be imprudent to consider them even as accidental signs of beauty, for that beauty is not of the kind which satisfies the eye of the competent man, which indicates the perfect adaptation of the thing to the end for which it is intended.

And still, how many people become the victims of this fancy and sacrifice everything to pride and to appearance! It is in good style, for example, to have a team composed of horses of the same form and of the same color. You go to select them from a horse-dealer. He is ever so ready to satisfy your wishes, but especially the above, since you have begun by laying great stress upon them. What happens then? It happens that, in most instances, as it is almost impossible to find two subjects absolutely identical in other respects than the two you have mentioned, he will supply you with horses which will be a match neither in the gait nor vigor, energy, solidity, dressing, etc. And for the sake of being able to display a team exactly uniform in relation to color and size, you will have ignored defects, vices of character, or some other grave imperfection!

Very fortunately, it is the people of means, consequently the very small minority, who thus make themselves slaves to the fancies and whims of their period. Indeed, there is perhaps no great harm in their doing so; all horses must needs be utilized, and it is better, on the whole, that the bad ones should fall to the lot of those who only use them for public display.

Concerning horses, fashion, like prejudice, has tendencies which we must struggle against, for it only gives to the horse superficial qualities, of quite a transient kind, sought after to-day and condemned to-morrow, according to the arbitrary conventionalities of the moment. All such practices should be deprecated, were it but to save the horse from the senseless tastes of a few renowned ladies of the *demi-monde* or of pretentious and ignorant idlers!

SECTION FOURTH.

THE HORSE IN RELATION TO LOCOMOTION.

PART I.

ATTITUDES AND MOVEMENTS UPON PLACE.

CHAPTER I.

ATTITUDES.

In the exterior we designate under the name *attitudes* the diverse positions which the horse assumes when at rest, either standing or recumbent. They comprise, consequently, *standing up*, or *station*, and *lying down*, or *decubitus*.

A.—Station.

Definition; Divisions.—Station is the attitude of the animal standing almost motionless, and touching the ground with his four members or with three of them only.

It has been divided into *free* and *forced*, according to the number of the members which effectually support the body.

Free station is the attitude of the horse when left entirely to himself. The trunk is usually supported by three members; the fourth, which is always a posterior, remains semi-flexed, touches simply with its toe, and preserves this position until its congener, tired out, then assumes a semi-flexed position itself, thus performing the function which devolved upon it in propping up the body.

The posterior foot which is not in full contact with the ground is slightly displaced forward and inward. The haunch of this side is lower than that on the opposite side. The base of support, in such

cases, is reduced to a triangle, which renders the equilibrium less stable. Nevertheless, if the body remain immobile and the members change their relative positions alternately, it is possible for the horse to preserve this attitude for a long time, and even to sleep without being obliged to lie down.

The anterior members do not alternate with each other in their position. Nevertheless, if the fatigue be great, they are alternately lifted up and replaced in position by a sort of slow and regular stamping movement, which eases the muscles and gives intermittence to their contraction, that intermittence without which it could not continue.

As soon as a member becomes tired out, or is the seat of some pathological alteration, it will take longer and more frequent rests, and changes its ordinary direction. It is thus that the posterior limbs are displaced forward, with the foot generally flat upon the ground and the fetlock strongly projected forward, *knuckled*, as if the muscular system were powerless to maintain the osseous segments in their normal relations (see page 295). The fore-limbs, on their part, seek to deviate from the centre of gravity; they also incline forward, and sometimes a little outward, in a semi-flexed state, which is vulgarly expressed by saying that the horse *points, stands like a dancing-master.*

In **forced station,** on the contrary, the four members are obliged to support the body, and are symmetrically disposed in each biped in order to receive a proportional share of the body-weight. The base of support is no longer triangular; it becomes an elongated or shortened parallelogram, according to the direction of the locomotory column in relation to the vertical axis. The distance comprised between the anterior and posterior bipeds is, in this case, equal to three-fourths of the height of the horse.

As the separation of the two fore-feet is sensibly greater than that of the hind-feet, it follows from this that the polygon constituted by the base of support is, in reality, a trapezoid and not a rectangle, which M. Duhousset has demonstrated. This is a fortunate disposition, the effect of which is to maintain the equilibrium in front,—that is to say, at the place where the natural supports of the trunk are more burdened and more liable, on account of their proximity to the cervico-cephalic regions, to allow the line of gravitation to fall outside of the base of support.

Forced standing is always fatiguing, although the body may not execute any apparent movement, because this attitude implies that the muscular contraction is continued without the necessary intermissions.

Hence the animal, as soon as he is left to himself, will resume the attitude of free station in order to ease his muscles.

Three different conditions may present themselves:

1. Either the members approach the centre of gravity two by two, and thus converge more or less by their hoofs.

2. Or they deviate from this centre,—that is to say, are inclined in an inverse sense, converge above and diverge below.

3. Or, finally, their direct axis is parallel to the vertical line.

These three situations constitute the attitudes in which the horse has been said, respectively, to "rassembler," or gather up; to "camper," or stretch out; and to "placer," or stand right up. Let us rapidly pass them in review.

In the **rassembler** (Fig. 144), or "gathering up," the four feet are brought towards the centre of the base of support, whose length is

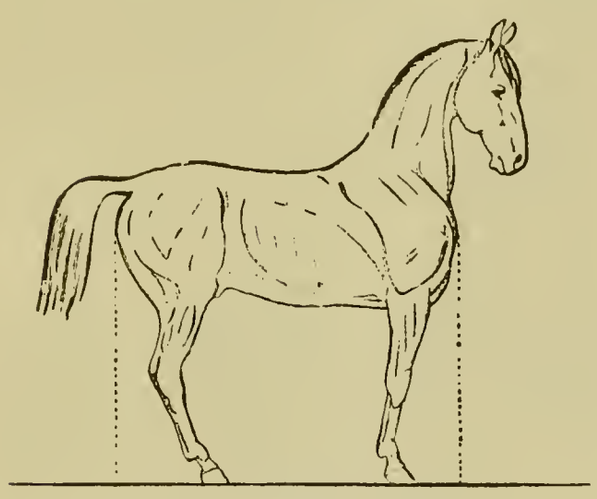


Fig. 144.—The rassembler.

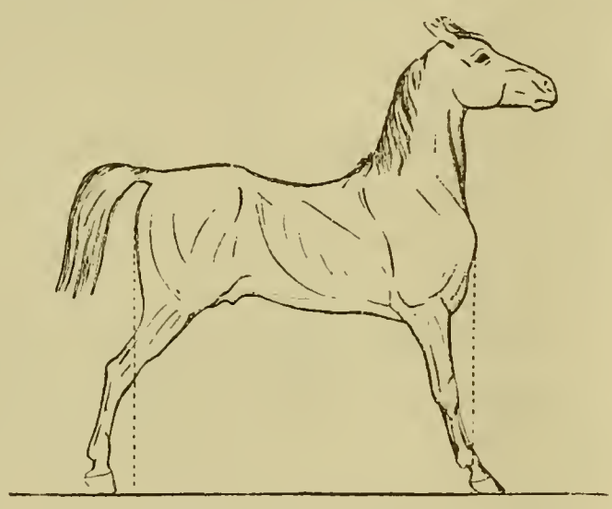


Fig. 145.—The camper.

less than three-fourths of the height of the horse. Hence there results a closing of most of the articular angles, as well as a lessened stability of the equilibrium: two causes of fatigue which soon oblige the animal to assume the attitude of free station. When thus "gathered up" he is ready to execute easily the principal movements,—jumping, moving to the right, to the left, forward, or backward. In the riding-school the animal is made to assume this attitude by combined actions of the hands and the legs.

In the **camper**, or "stretching out," on the contrary (Fig. 145), the members are respectively lengthened forward and backward from the body, which augments the extent of the base of support. The length of the latter then exceeds three-fourths of the height of the horse. The dorso-lumbar region, in this case, is concave, sway-backed, and progression becomes difficult. The posterior members are incapable of communicating to the trunk an efficacious impulse, because they

have almost reached their limit of extension. As to the anterior, they cannot take as long a step, being likewise in a state of extreme extension. In order to be able to walk, therefore, the horse must shorten his base of support, draw the feet towards one another, and return, to a certain degree, to the preceding attitude, the attitude really preparatory to all movements.

To recapitulate, the *camper*, very fatiguing to the back and the loins, is detrimental to the horse only in the eye of the acute observer, for it gives neither grace nor elegance to the subject. Still, dealers have brought this particular attitude into vogue either to show to the purchaser that the animal will thus cover much ground and should, consequently, take long strides, or to take the attention away from the defect of the axis, to mask some other vices, to give greater prominence to the obliquity of the shoulder, the horizontality of the croup, the strength of the loins, or, finally, to modify the appearance of a trunk which is not irreproachable. At first intended only as a simple preparation for the sale, this custom, which we have for a long time opposed,[1] is at present very fashionable in pleasure-horses,—the coach-horse, for example. The evil would not be great if its only consequence were to render the horse ungraceful; but what is of greater importance in this attitude is that it inflicts a useless torture upon the animal, even if it be not prejudicial to him.

The **placer** (Fig. 146), or "upright stand," is the station in which the *direct axis* of the members has a direction intermediary between the preceding two, and more or less approaches the vertical.

We will call the *direct axis*, or *line of direction of the member*, the line which joins the point of suspension of the trunk upon this member (centre of movement) to the middle of the foot. The angular displacement of this axis in front of the vertical, when the animal walks or trots, is equal to a half-step.

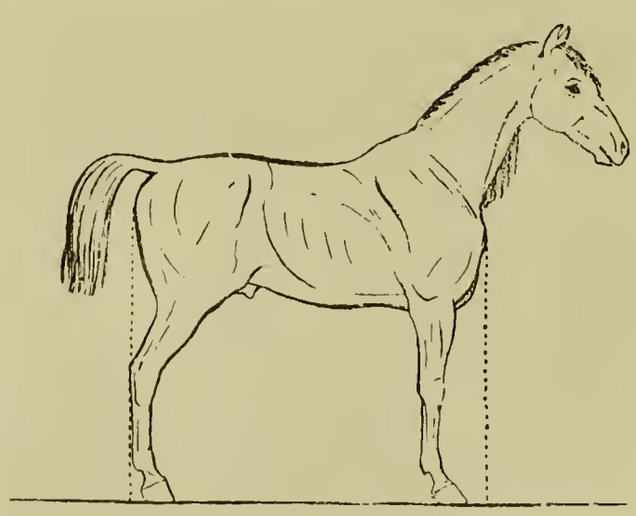


FIG. 146.—The placer.

We should endeavor to make the columns of support take this direction, which is more favorable to

[1] Arm. Goubaux, De l'enrênement des chevaux, in Bulletin de la Société protectrice des animaux, année 1872, p. 125.

the equal distribution of the weight, in order to judge of the soundness of the animal and his locomotory aptitudes. The part of the exterior which includes the study of the *axes* is therefore full of practical interest. We will treat of them in the following paragraphs.

Axes, Equilibrium.

The **axes** of a horse are nothing else than the direction of the axes of his members in relation to the ground.

It is necessary, in order to appreciate this direction, to *place* the subject previously,—that is to say, to make him stand in such a manner that the feet of each biped, anterior or posterior, are on a transverse line perpendicular to the axis of the body, and occupy the four angles of the trapezium represented by the base of support. Besides, the plane of the base of support should be perfectly horizontal.

The axes are called *regular* when the lines of direction of the members fall perpendicularly and oscillate in planes parallel to the median plane. "The trunk being a weight to be supported," says M. Sanson,[1] "it is a fact that the members will sustain this weight in a manner all the more efficacious and the more proportionate with the preservation of their integrity, as this same weight is always exerted upon them, in station, in the normal direction of its own gravitation,—that is to say, as the different pieces which compose the columns of support are arranged in such a manner that the diverse component forces will be resolved into a single resultant invariably parallel to the plumb-line."

The axes are styled *irregular*, on the contrary, when the lines of direction of the members deviate from the vertical and effect other displacements in the planes than those of which we have spoken.

The *line of axis of a member* is, theoretically, the vertical line which passes through the point of suspension,—that is, the centre of movement of the trunk upon this member. If this vertical line meet the opposite extremity of the locomotory column, here altogether comparable to an ordinary column, it may be supposed that the latter is well placed under the body to fulfil with efficacy its *rôle* of support.

On the other hand, it is evident that this condition is dependent upon two principal factors: the length of the osseous segments and the value of their articular angles. The points of origin and of termination of the ideal broken line which represents each member should,

---

[1] A. Sanson, Nouveau Dictionnaire de médecine, de chirurgie et d'hygiène vétérinaires, t. i. p. 669.

in fact, exist upon the same vertical line (the angles not varying) only on condition that the segments maintain certain determined lengths, or that the angles (the segments remaining the same) have an equally determined opening.

But, as the variations of the two factors of which we have spoken are always simultaneous and not independent, it follows that two horses provided with good axes are not necessarily identical in relation to the extent of the articular angles and the length of the bones, because deviations in the one are properly compensated by contrary modifications of the other.

a. Axes of the Anterior Members.

Axes viewed in Profile.—It is particularly difficult to locate the line of direction of the anterior member on account of the more or less diffuse points of attachment of this member. What is, indeed, the exact centre of the combined actions of the trapezius, the rhomboideus, the angularis, the great serratus, the pectorals, and the mastoido-humeralis, which fix the shoulder and the arm against the sides of the thorax, and almost make them integral parts of the trunk? While we know with sufficient precision the insertion of each of these muscles, and while we are able to determine in an approximate manner the directions in which they act, we are still ignorant of the *rôle* which each one plays in supporting the trunk. We are therefore obliged to depend alone in this respect upon empirical data.

Consequently, let us choose that horse which is recognized by universal practice as having beautiful axes (Fig. 147). Thus, as we have said above, it is to be supposed that the inferior extremity of his fore-members will be situated in the vertical line which passes through the corresponding centre of movement of the body. Through the middle, *b*, of the anterior foot let us draw this line. We will see that it meets the scapular segment at a point, *a*, which is often located at the same time with remarkable accuracy upon the horizontal line *ac*, which passes precisely through the coxo-femoral articulation, the known centre of movement of the posterior column upon the trunk.

It is therefore probable that the centre of movement, *a*, of the shoulder, whose situation otherwise varies according to the inclination of the latter, occupies, in a beautiful conformation, a *height equal* to that of the centre of movement of the haunch.

If such really be the case, the *plane of suspension* of the body upon the members will be a *horizontal* plane. We except, of course, those particular cases in which the withers are low and the fore part of the trunk larger or smaller than the hind part. We know that there is, in the latter cases, an irregular

distribution of the weight and an elevation of the plane of suspension, according to the nature of the given defect.

Since the appearance of our first edition, two distinguished veterinary surgeons, Messrs. Raabe and Bonnal,[1] have published their personal observations upon this special subject. According to these authors, we have placed the centre of scapular suspension too low; they fix it empirically at the *superior third of the shoulder*. If this determination is exact, the *plane of suspension* of the body will therefore be *slightly oblique from before to behind.*

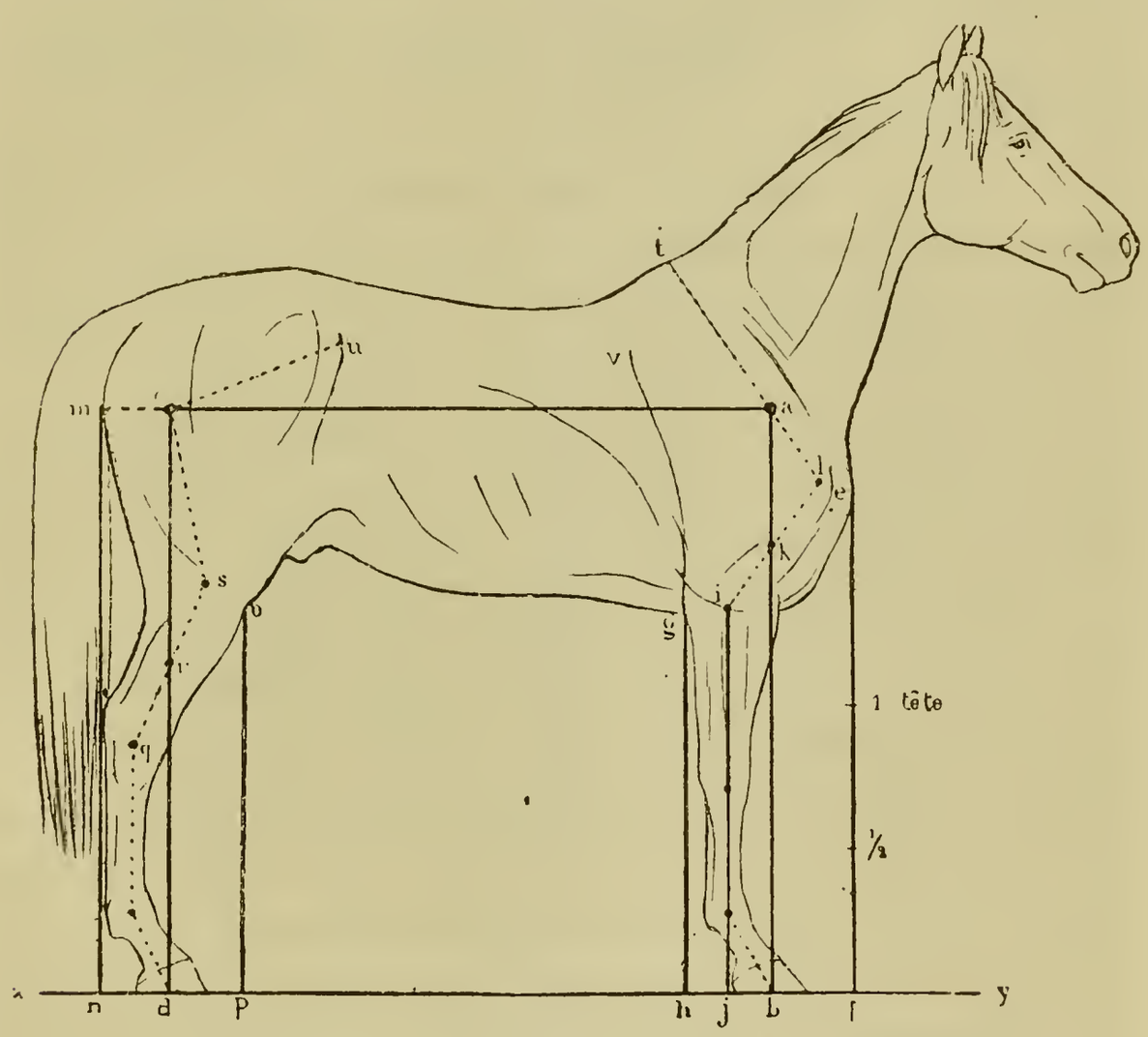


FIG. 147.—Lines of equilibrium of the horse viewed in profile.
(Reproduced from a photograph of M. Delton.)

All this is possible. It is very difficult to choose between these two opinions, because the centre of movement of the shoulder is not an anatomical point, but rather a surface which itself moves upon the thoracic parietes at the same time that the axis of the scapula rotates around it.

Besides, the direction of the plane of suspension of the body upon the members, whether it be horizontal or slightly oblique in a normal state, only offers interest from a point of view of its deviations in one sense or the other. As we have treated of these latter in connection with the centre of gravity, the withers, and the height of the fore-quarters, we will not return to them here.

---

[1] Raabe et Bonnal, Détermination des lignes de gravité du cheval, en station régulière monté et non monté; in Archives vétérinaires, 1883, p. 535.

The other deductions to be made from the vertical *ab* lead to results of more practical value:

This line is, in fact (Fig. 148), equidistant from the two perpendiculars to the ground, *ef*, *gh*, which can also be demonstrated by observations on animals selected as the types of good conformation. It is also equidistant from *rs* and *tu*, the thickness of the articulations at these points being equal.

It follows from this that *ab* intersects *eg* (the humerus) in its middle, as well as *rt*; for *eghf* and *rtus* are trapeziums in which *ab* is parallel to and equidistant from their bases.

It is also seen that if *gc* (radio-metacarpal segment) remain vertical, *fh* (a horizontal projection from the humerus) equals *fb* (projection of *ae*) plus *bh* (projection of *bc*). And as *bh* equals *fb*, it can be said that the horizontal projection from the humerus is double the horizontal projection of the phalangal segment.

Let us remark, finally, that all the conclusions drawn from these typical axes are always applicable, with the sole condition that the articular angles maintain their summits upon the lines *ef* and *gh*.

This proves that *any articular angles whatsoever can be compatible with good axes.* Here, also, the theory of General Morris, which has been advanced[1] as an excellent criterion to judge of the regularity of the axes, is evidently defective.

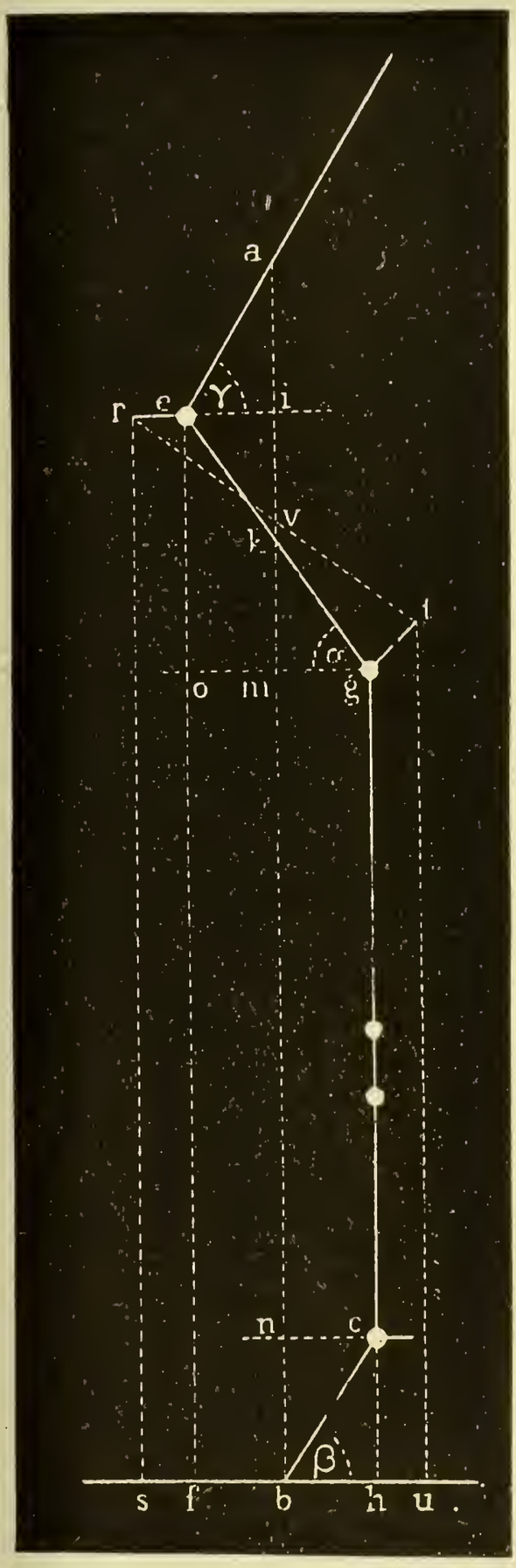


FIG. 148.

The knowledge of the fact that the vertical line *ab* divides the humerus as well as the distance *rt* into two equal parts already constitutes a factor which simplifies the appreciation of the mode of equilibrium of the fore part of the body; for instead of lowering, from the points *e* and *g* or *r* and *t*, two perpendic-

[1] A. Sanson, loc. cit., p. 685.

ulars, and observing if the point *b* (centre of the foot) is midway between *f* and *h* or *s* and *u*, it suffices to fix the point *k*, middle of the humerus, or the point *v*, middle of the distance comprised between the points of the shoulder and of the elbow, and then draw a vertical line which should fall upon the same foot.

Now that we have established the rational principles which indicate the location of the axes of the anterior members, we can formulate from them practieal rules in the following manner. Our lines differ somewhat from those of other authors, but in principle they are equally as simple, and have, besides, the advantage of being based upon positive facts.

1st. *A vertical line,* ab (Fig. 149 [1]), *lowered from the middle,* k, *of the arm, should pass, above, through the centre of anterior suspension,*

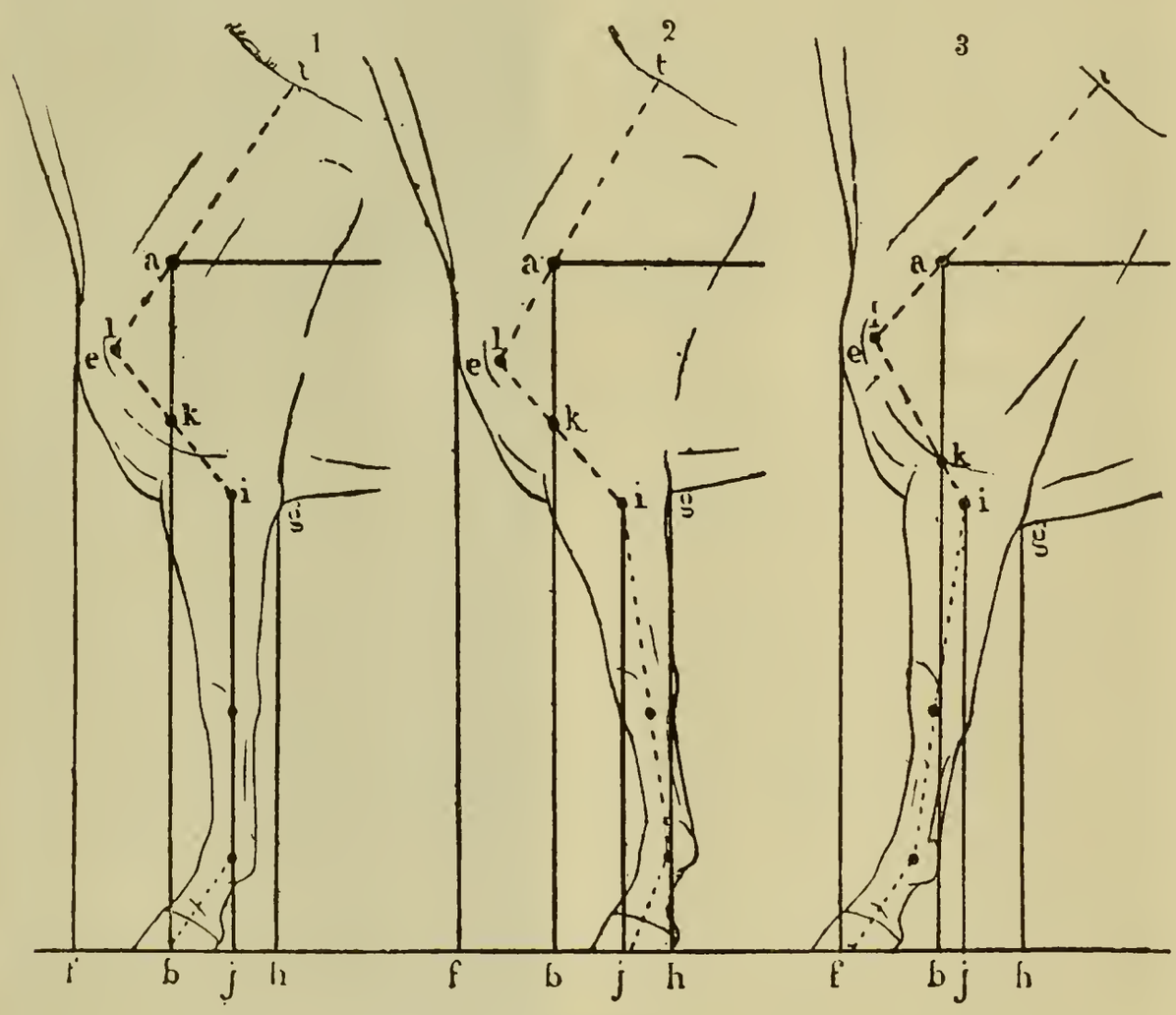


Fig. 149.

a, *intersect, below, the middle of the hoof,* b, *and be located equidistant from the verticals* ef, gh, *coming from the point of the shoulder and the summit of the elbow.*

If this line falls in front of the hoof, the horse is said to be *under himself in front* (Fig. 149 [2]).

If, on the contrary, this line falls behind, it is said that the horse is *camped in front* (Fig. 149 [3]).

Let us observe the inconveniences which follow from these two conformations.

The Horse Under Himself in Front.—The direct axis of the member, in this case too much inclined downward and backward, is too close to the centre of gravity, which diminishes the aptitudes of the column as a support. There results from this an evident overloading, tending to flex the segments one upon the other and to close the angle of the fetlock, two causes which compel the muscles to contract more strongly, and the tendons and the ligaments to sustain more violent tractions. Besides, the base of support being shortened, the hind-feet, during locomotion, have a tendency to meet the fore-feet, whence results *forging;* the equilibrium is less stable and the body continually tends to swing forward, another reason which explains why this defect of the axis renders the animal liable to fall upon his knees.

In addition, the locomotory movements are less extensive, not because the step is not capable of the same amplitude, but because the direction of the member at rest approaches more that direction which it assumes just before the limb is raised from the ground; this will more quickly overburden the member which is still on the ground, and precipitate the movement of the one in the air. If the speed be accelerated, the horse has not sufficient time to extend the member and move the different segments one upon the other to their normal limit, whatever may otherwise be the nature of his articular angles, the dimensions and energy of his muscles, the beauty of their insertion, and the length of their lever-arm. His steps are therefore low, close to the ground, and frequently repeated; he carries the toe close to the soil, stumbles on rough roads, and so much the more easily when he is used on an inclined plane and carries more weight on his back. Hence such a horse is unfit for saddle-work and likewise for the shafts, for, in descending slopes, he is not able to support his burden, the resistance exerted against the collar being here insufficient.

Thus, excessive wear and fatigue of the bones, the ligaments, and the tendons, rapid wearing out, diminution of speed, instability of equilibrium, insecurity of the foothold, and tendency towards falling, —such are the inherent defects of this vice of the axis.

This does not mean that we should, for this reason, if no better one can be found, discourage the purchase of such a horse. He can, without doubt, still be employed for light- or heavy-draught services; with many precautions, it is even possible to mount him. We should,

however, not forget that he has lost a notable part of his value, in consequence of the slight solidity of the members and the feebleness of their parts.

The Horse Camped in Front.—Here, the direct axis of the member is inclined forward and downward instead of being vertical. This is a defect which authors consider congenital or acquired, according to the point of view they take.

Some, including Bourgelat and Lecoq, refer the diseases of the foot which are observed in such cases to the primitively bad direction of the locomotory column; others, including M. Sanson, who has been the chief upholder of this opinion, think, on the contrary, that the lesions of the digital extremity exist first, and give origin little by little to the deviation of which we speak.

Which of these two hypotheses is the most rational? This it is not so easy to answer, for both are plausible and supported by facts. Yet neither the one nor the other is positively established. Nevertheless, the opinion of M. Sanson appears to us to be the one which verifies itself the more frequently. Rarely is the camper in front observed in young horses, while it is very common in adults, and particularly in those which are affected with some chronic disease of the foot. "In an instinctive manner, the object of which is so easily recognizable in the case of founder, for example, the horse imposes upon the posterior limbs a portion of the weight of the fore part of the body, and diminishes thus far the pressure supported by his fore-feet." [1]

Whatever may be the point of origin of *camping*, whether it is regarded as the cause or the effect of superficial or of deep alterations of the digital region, it is well known that animals thus formed are used every day. And as this defect does not render the horse unable to perform his work, it is interesting to point out to those who wish to purchase him the principal disadvantages which follow from such a conformation.

It is seen, first of all, that the foot is placed in advance of the vertical axes; but as these lines are nothing more than the isolated directions of the components of the weight,—that part which is supported by the anterior columns,—it follows that their resultant, which acts in the direction *ab*, will fall upon the posterior part of the hoof. The more the deviation is marked the greater will be the strain on the tendons.

Besides, the fore-members deviating from the line of gravitation,

---

[1] A. Sanson, loc. cit., p. 675.

the hind-members are overburdened by that portion of the weight of which the former are relieved. Hence we frequently see the fetlocks and the hocks of such horses prematurely blemished and unable to communicate sufficient impulsion to the body.

Finally, the anterior feet touching the ground principally by the heels, and not almost uniformly the whole extent of the plantar border of the wall, it follows that these feet, already surcharged behind from their defective situation, will also be more exposed to wounds and bruises of the heels.

The last and most important consequence of *camping* is the marked slowness which it gives to the gaits. It lengthens, in fact, the base of support, diminishes by so much the length of the lever-arm which is constituted by the neck in front of the centre of anterior suspension, renders the equilibrium more stable, and all this to the detriment of the speed. On the other hand, as the angular displacement of the member, dependent upon the length of its muscles, implies especially a limited position beyond which it would be very unfavorably directed in order to take its foothold on the ground, it follows from this that a member whose free extremity is already carried forward will be much closer to the point of extreme extension, less apt to utilize the long muscles, and more disposed to take small steps.

The most serious cause of slowness of the gait consists in the pain experienced in placing the foot upon the ground. Whether the lesions indicated above are primary or secondary, it is none the less true, as M. Sanson [1] said, that the violence of the concussion and the intensity of the pain are in direct ratio with the altered position of the member and the force of the impulsion. But, however feeble the morbid sensibility which is manifested in such a case be considered, the animal always endeavors to protect these parts in proportion to the suffering which he experiences; whence a hesitation in stepping and a shortening of the gait.

To recapitulate, fatigue of the anterior members, overloading of the posterior, premature ruin of their apparatus of impulsion and dispersion (hocks and fetlocks), bruising of the heels, painful and uncertain contact of the foot with the ground, slowness of the gait,—here are the principal inconveniences of horses *camped* in front. If the vice be acquired, it can be remedied by rational care and treatment of the anterior feet, but even this result is doubtful in many cases. However this may be, the subjects can only be utilized at a walk and upon

[1] A. Sanson, loc. cit., p. 675.

particular soil; they will be, on the contrary, absolutely unsuitable for the saddle or other service requiring speed.

2d. *A vertical line, lowered from the articulation of the elbow, should divide the knee, the canon, and the fetlock in their centre and fall a little posterior to the heels* (*ij*, Fig. 147, and Fig. 149 [1]).

This classical line, spoken of by all authors, shows the direction of the inferior part of the member, and bespeaks in some manner the axis of the knee and of the fetlock.

If the knee projects in front of this vertical line, the horse is said to be *knee-sprung, over in the knees* (Fig. 150).

If, on the contrary, the knee is carried backward, it is qualified *hollow, effaced,* or *sheep-like* (Fig. 151).

If, on the other hand, this line falls too far from the heels, the horse is *long-* or *low-jointed* (Fig. 153).

If, finally, it meets the heels or the anterior parts of the foot, he is called *short-* or *straight-jointed* (Fig. 152).

Knuckling is only a higher degree of the last deviation of the metacarpo-phalangal articulation. It is characterized by a more or less marked prominence of this articulation in front of the line of axis.

Fig. 150.

Fig. 151.

Fig. 152.

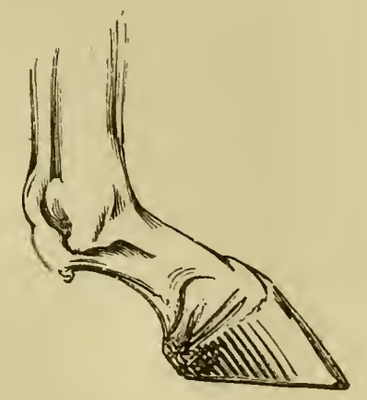


Fig. 153.

In the articles on the *knee, fetlock,* and *pastern* we have examined in detail all these vices of conformation and will not repeat them here.

Let us only say that the straightness of the anterior column, from the knee to the fetlock, is a condition of strength indispensable in all cases, especially in horses which are destined for saddle-work. Any other direction having for its effect the formation of a broken column of support which, in a physiological state, is disposed to act normally between two opposing forces that tend to incurvate it, is necessarily

defective, for such direction favors the influence of these forces instead of resisting them.

The muscles or the ligaments, according to the nature of the deviation, are therefore required, in such cases, to supply the insufficiency of the support given by the arrangement of the bones of the member; whence more fatigue and more chances of damaging the locomotory apparatus.

Let us recall, finally, that the prominence or the effacement of the angle of the fetlock leads to consequences of the same order, by throwing upon the supporting tendons or the bones a large portion of the weight of the body, which, in the case of regular axes, —that is to say, of a proper opening of the articular angle,—these agents of dispersion should distribute almost equally among themselves. We will say the same of the excess or deficiency of the length of the phalangal lever, so often accompanying long and low pasterns. The details, which we have already given in their proper place, allow us to dispense with any further remarks here.

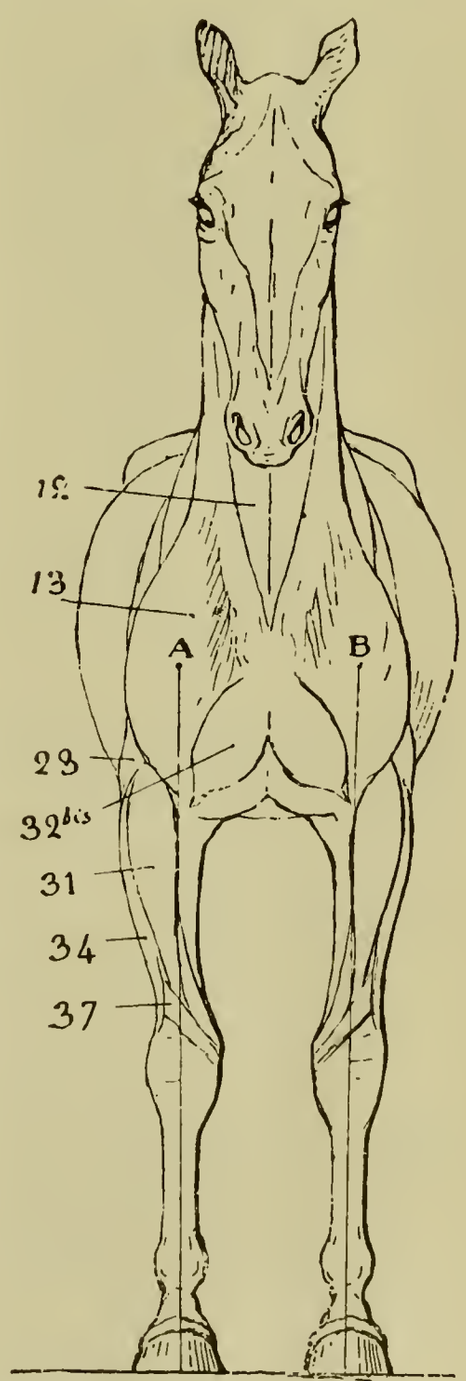


Fig. 154.

Axes viewed in Front.—In order that the horse may be regular in the axes of his anterior members, the directing axis of the latter must blend, as we have seen, with the vertical line which passes through each centre of anterior suspension. But to judge of this it is not sufficient to regard these members in profile, for we would be unable to perceive the outward or the inward deviations of this axis which might readily take place. Hence we should, by all means, complete our examination by the consideration of the animal upon his anterior face.

A single line suffices, in this position, to show the regularity of the axis:

A vertical line drawn down from the point of the shoulder should divide the knee, the canon, the fetlock, and the foot into two equal parts (Fig. 154).

Besides, it should answer to this other requisite, that the *interval comprised between the two feet be equal to the width of the hoof measured from one quarter to the other.*

It is easy to see that this line falls on the one which most authors draw from the narrowest portion of the anterior face of the forearm (Fig. 155).

Such is the reason why we have not adopted this latter.

When the member, as a whole, is outside of the vertical, or when

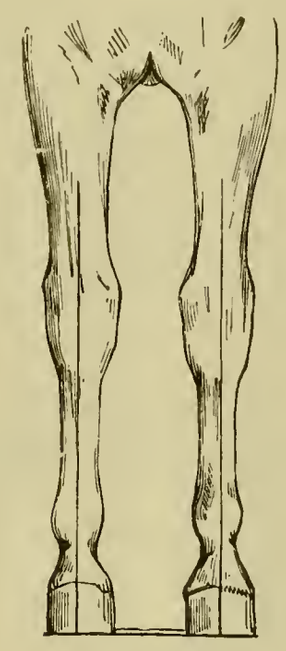


FIG. 155.

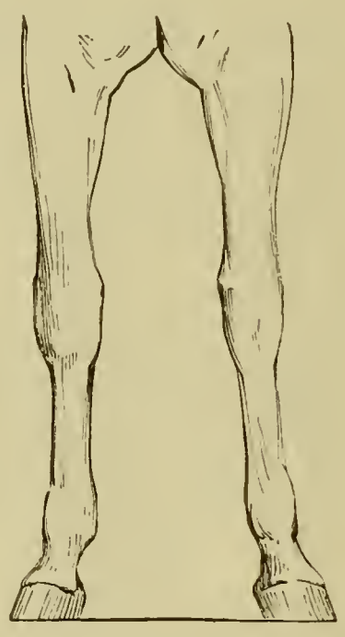


FIG. 156.

the interval between the hoofs is more considerable, the horse is said to be *too open in front.*

If it is the region of the knee alone which deviates, the horse is called *bow-legged.*

If it is the toe, the subject is *crooked-legged, outbow-footed.*

Reversely :

When the member, as a whole, is situated inwardly to the vertical, or when the interval between the two hoofs is too small, the animal is called *closed in front.*

If it is the region of the knee alone, the horse is *ox-kneed.*

Finally, if it is that of the toe, the animal becomes *parrot-toed, cross-footed in front.*

Horse too Open in Front.—This defect of the axis may depend upon two opposite causes. It should most ordinarily be attributed to the large development of the pectoral muscles, and it is observed more especially in heavy draught-horses. Here the interval comprised between the two hoofs is simply more considerable than is

usual, but the vertical line still crosses the middle of the knee, the canon, the fetlock, and the foot (Fig. 156).

In other cases this conformation is due, on the contrary, to the narrowness of the chest and the small volume of the pectoral muscles, two defects which diminish the separation of the points of the shoulders and render the members convergent towards their superior part, their opposite extremity being in reality normally placed, and appearing divergent only in consequence of the abnormal relation of the former.

It will be readily understood that when too large a space between the fore-members coexists with a large muscular development and great width of the thorax, the defect is of little import. If the transverse diameter of the base of support is increased, if the stability of the equilibrium augments, if the walk is heavy and likewise accompanied by a more or less marked rocking of the body, from the fact of this conformation, it is apparent that the animal will be unfit to display speed, but that he will be in good condition for the development of force. His aptitudes alone are changed. Hence he will lose scarcely any of his value for light-draught services, especially if his feet are good.

It is different, however, with the horse in which the separation of the fore-members depends upon narrowness of the chest and flatness of the ribs. Such a horse will always be without *wind* and without energy, and will not be more favorably disposed in relation to speed: first, on account of the smallness of his lungs and the weakness of his muscles; secondly, because the lateral displacement of his centre of gravity will occasion a loss of time and of force prejudicial to the velocity of the gaits. We may add that here, as in the preceding case, the two sides of the hoof will no longer bear their normal pressure. The internal quarter, already overburdened, will become the more so as the member deviates the more from its line of axis; whence the predisposition of the wall to crack and of the sole to become bruised, accidents that are so common in these subjects when they are used for fast work.

Knee arched Outward—Bow-legged Horse (Fig. 157).—This outward deviation of the member, somewhat rare, is associated in most instances with a convergence of the two hoofs, but does not always imply it. As we have seen (page 233), this mode of conformation of the anterior member produces an unequal contact of the foot with the ground, as well as a strain on the ligaments; it renders, besides, the horse ungraceful.

Horse Outbow-footed (Fig. 158).—This defect of axis, technically called *talipes valgus*, also *crooked-legged*, we have already exam-

ined. Let us recall that it is ordinarily accompanied by an inward deviation of the knee and of the elbow, but that it may also be due to a simple change in the direction of the foot alone. However it may be, the foot is not slow in becoming modified; the internal quarter, bearing more pressure, has a tendency to underlap the external and become contracted. The horse is, besides, liable to interfere with this quarter. Finally, during flexion of the knee, the metacarpus is thrown outward much more than in a normal state, which means a loss of time prejudicial to the speed, as well as the throwing outward of the foot, which detracts from the beauty of the gait.

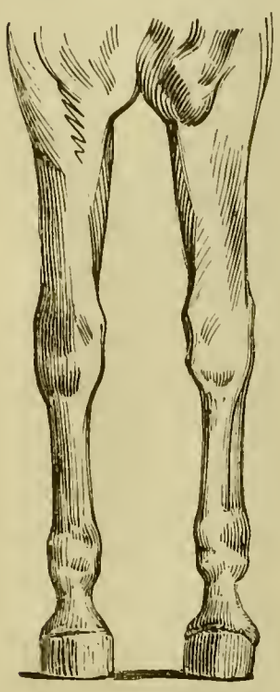


Fig. 157.

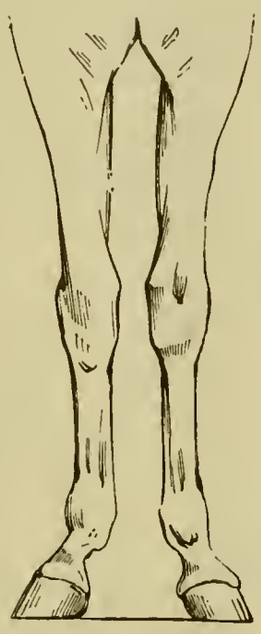


Fig. 158.

Horse Closed in Front (Fig. 159).—The closeness of the fore-members, as well as their too great separation, may result from two opposite causes: excess or deficiency in the width of the chest. This condition is vulgarly called *knock-kneed.*

The objections in the first case are less than in the second, for the divergence of the members towards their superior extremity is often due only to the development of the chest or to that of the pectoral muscles. Nevertheless, the approximation of their inferior extremities diminishes the stability of the equilibrium, on account of the narrowing of the base of support in front; it also exposes the animal to interfering, cutting, and to the other accidents which may result therefrom.

This vice of the axis is, however, much more grave when it depends upon a narrow chest and a feeble volume of the muscles. Besides the preceding faults, such a horse must also be regarded as being deficient in wind and without endurance, which renders him altogether incapable of performing the least laborious service.

Ox-Knee (Fig. 160).—The ox-knee, convex internally, is not compatible (see page 232) with a regular distribution of the body-weight upon the metacarpal bones. With the member on the ground, the external concavity tends to become greater, which makes more pressure upon the external side of the carpal bones and increases the tension on the internal lateral ligament of the articulation.

Finally, during flexion the horse displaces the canon outwardly, uses it in an ungraceful manner, and loses time in bringing it back

Fig. 159.

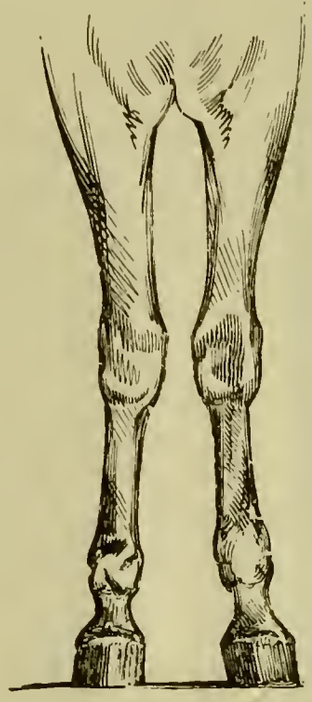


Fig. 160.

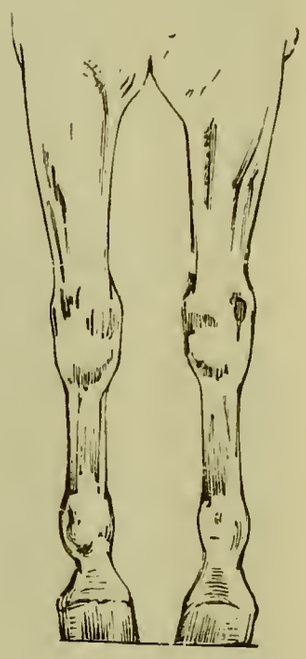


Fig. 161.

into its proper position. Let us add that this malformation ordinarily implies an outward deviation of the toe, another disadvantage which aggravates this vice of the axis and constitutes a more important cause of depreciation.

Horse Cross-footed in Front (Fig. 161).—This defective conformation, characterized (see page 332) by the convergence of the two hoofs, is due to too great a separation of the elbows, or to an outward arching of the knees or of the fetlocks. It is easy to understand the evil results from this conformation by the new relations which each half of the foot assumes with the line of gravitation of the member: the external mamma is closer to this line and the internal is more distant; whence an apparent overburdening of the outer side of the foot and a corresponding easing of the inner side.

The cross-footed or parrot-toed horse does not wear the inner side of the shoe, and interferes, in a manner inverse to that of the crooked-legged horse, with the internal mamma. The wounds which are thus produced, although often insignificant in appearance, constitute none the less, in the long run, some serious lesions by their continued repetition. Even when the farrier can remedy it, even when the inferior part of the member can be protected by means of special leather boots against the knocking of the hoofs, it is still troublesome to use the animal, by reason of the care which he requires and the expense which he necessitates. If he is destined for the saddle, his

employment is still more difficult, for, not having perfect freedom in the use of his fore-limbs, and being predisposed to stumble, he exposes his rider to falls which may prove serious on rough and uneven roads.

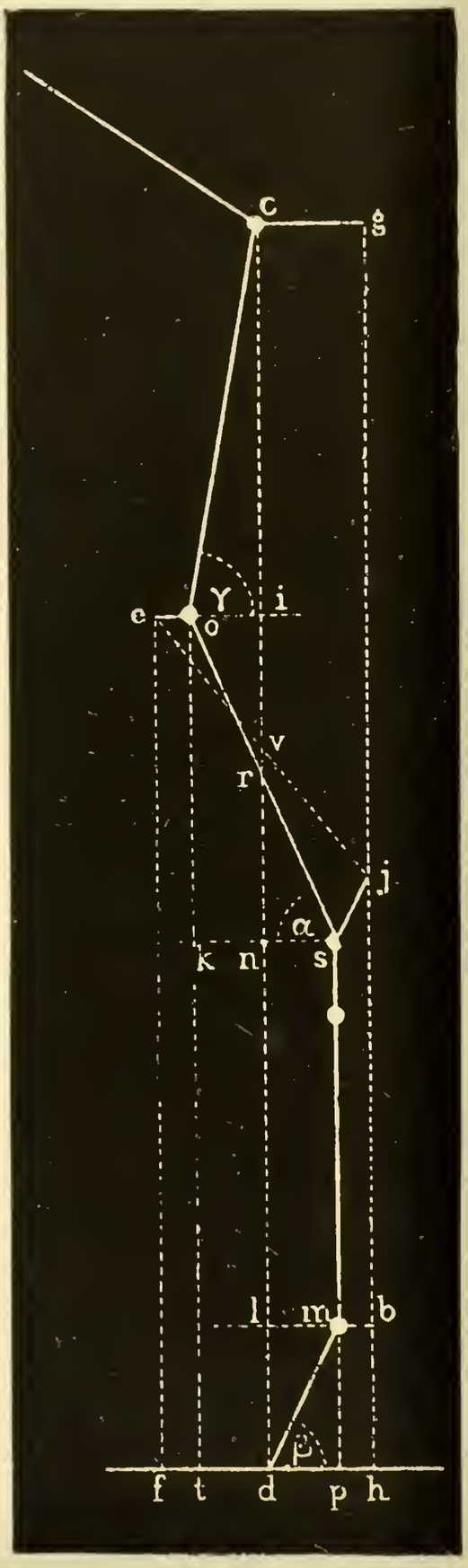


Fig. 162.

b. Axes of the Posterior Members.

Axes viewed in Profile.—The principle which we have employed to establish the axes of the anterior member admit of a much simpler application when referred to the posterior member. The centre of suspension of the latter upon the trunk is known to us with sufficient accuracy; it is the coxo-femoral articulation. We may therefore conclude that the direct axis of the posterior column will be in a good position if the digital extremity of this column is stationed at the bottom, *d* (Fig. 162), of the vertical line which passes through the articular centre, *c*. In fact, it is this which observation demonstrates in horses of good equilibrium of the posterior quarters; a plumb-line placed at the level of the joint in question divides the hoof into two equal parts.

As in the anterior member, and for the same reasons, the vertical line, *cd*, is also equidistant from the perpendiculars to the ground, *ot* and *sp*, or also *ef* and *jh*. It intersects the leg, *os*, as well as *ej*, at its middle. If the tarso-metatarsal segment remain vertical, the horizontal projection, *tp*, of the leg is double the horizontal projection, *dp*, of the phalangal segment. Finally, any degree of opening of the angles will be compatible with good axes, on condition that the articular angles maintain their summits upon the vertical lines *ot* and *sp*.

The axes of the hind-limbs are based, as is seen, upon the same principles as those of the fore-limbs. The four locomotory columns, in

station, fulfil a *rôle*, if not equal, at least identical,—that of supporting the body-weight; it is therefore but logical that they obey the same principles of equilibrium.

Let us pass in review, now, the vices of the axes of the posterior members.

A vertical line, cd (Fig. 163 [1]), *passing through the middle*, r, *of the leg, should pass, above, through the centre of posterior suspension*, c (coxo-femoral articulation), *intersect, below, the middle of the hoof*, d,

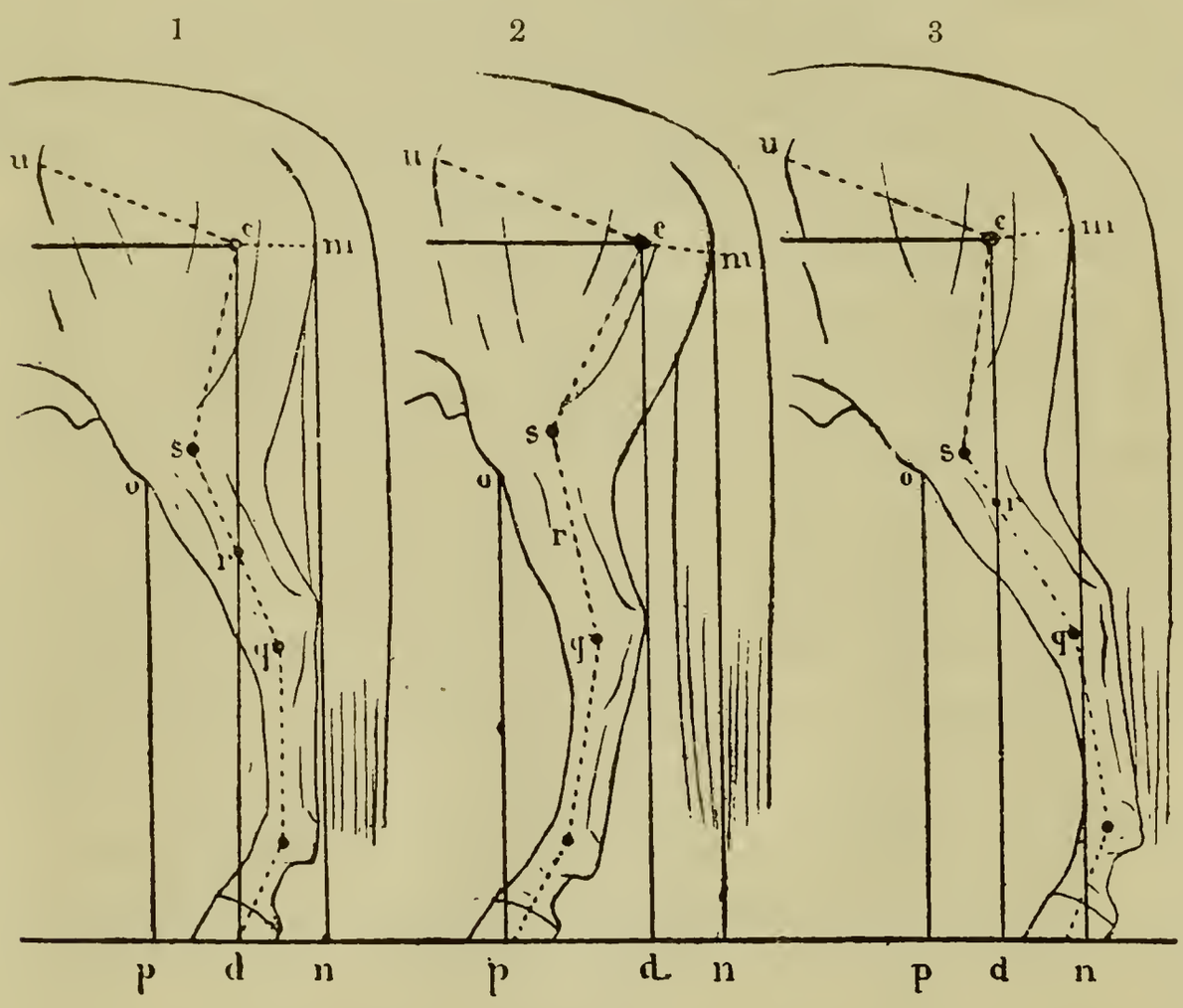


FIG. 163.

and remain equidistant from the vertical lines op, mn, *lowered from the patella and the angle of the buttock, the latter tangent to the point of the hock and to the fetlock.*

If the member, as a whole, is placed in front of this line *cd*, the horse is said to be *under himself behind* (Fig. 163 [2]).

If, on the contrary, it is situated behind, the horse is said to be *camped behind* (Fig. 163 [3]).

Finally, if the deviation only takes place from the fetlock down, the subject is called :

Long- and *low-jointed* when the middle of the foot, *d*, approaches the vertical line *op*.

Short- and *straight-jointed* when it approaches the vertical line *mn*.

Having studied the last two defects in connection with the *pastern*, we will not return to them here. We will speak only of the inconveniences which follow from the first two conformations.

Horse Under Himself Behind (Fig. 163 [2]).—The direct axis of the member in this case is oblique downward and forward, instead of being vertical. This disposition diminishes the aptitudes of the column as a support and favors its falling backward, borne down as it is by the force of the body-weight acting upon the point *c* in the direction *cd*. There follows from this a weakened equilibrium, causing the horse to slip forward, to be hesitating in his steps, and the bony segments to be flexed, two causes which increase the strain on the extensor muscles, the tendons, and the ligaments from greater efforts.

Besides, the metatarsus being situated obliquely under the tibia, the tibio-tarsal angle acquires a state of defective closing, characterized by the *angular, elbowed hock*, which renders this articulation liable, as we have seen (page 266), to show the effects of use the earlier and more seriously in proportion as the canon is more inclined under the body.

The foot also coming nearer to the centre of gravity, the base of support is shortened to the detriment of the stability, while the overburdened posterior limb has not the same freedom of movement, which augments its work and favors its chances of being blemished.

Finally, this vicious direction is also detrimental to the speed of the gaits, in consequence of the two following reasons:

The first is dependent on the shortness of the stride, because the member, advanced for a smaller distance than in the normal state of the extreme limit of its forward oscillation, is incapable of passing over much ground.

The second consists in the loss of time determined at each step by the vertical displacements of the croup, the member being able to communicate an efficacious impulsion only on condition of having attained that particular degree of extension which makes it underpropped against the trunk and not inclined inversely to the direction of movement.

We may add, in passing, a new cause of fatigue and wear for the hock and the fetlock, resulting from overburdening these agents of impulsion, which must here elevate the body before projecting it horizontally, the only propulsive line favorable to speed.

It follows from the preceding statements that a horse under himself is hardly capable of doing good service; but the objections vary

according to the nature of the work which he is called upon to perform. Still utilizable for light-draught work which, ordinarily, exacts but little effort and speed, he becomes, on the contrary, unsuitable for the saddle, the riding-school, the hunt, and the race-course, on account of the relative weakness of his hind-members and the early development of blemishes which the bad direction of the latter will soon cause. Even if he be employed for heavy-draught work, his hocks and his fetlocks will not long endure the great efforts which traction on uneven ground necessitates. Hence he will lose, from this vice of axis so prejudicial to the integrity of his locomotory columns, a great deal of his value, and he should be absolutely rejected when the deviation in his posterior quarters is altogether too well marked.

Horse Camped Behind (Fig. 163 [3]).—The evil consequences of this defect are far from being as serious for the posterior members as for the anterior.

Here the axis of the member is separated from the vertical and is the reverse of that in the preceding conformation. In other words, it is oblique downward and backward, which predisposes the animal to slip backward and carry a portion of the weight upon the anterior bipeds; whence greater exertion for the latter to fulfil their function during station as well as locomotion, especially if the weight of the rider is added to that of the fore-quarters, and if the subject, low in front, is obliged to go fast down-hill, an event which takes place daily.

The deviation of the posterior feet from the centre of gravity also leads to other effects upon the vertebral column; it imposes upon the latter a portion of the weight which the hind-limbs would support by their resistance were they properly directed under the trunk. Hence it will soon manifest the fatigue of the extensor muscles of the back by the latter becoming more or less decidedly *sway-backed*, which condition is opposed, as we have seen (page 117), to the integral transmission of the impulsion from behind.

The calcaneus of the camped horse is not, as M. Sanson[1] believes, necessarily less developed than in the case of a limb with a normal direction; it is simply more parallel with the tibia, which makes the hock appear less wide and diminishes the perpendicular incidence of the muscles which produce its extension. Also, as the vicious insertions of these muscles only become exaggerated during extreme extension of the canon, it follows from this that the latter will lose a

[1] A. Sanson, loc. cit., p. 682.

portion of that power of which it would be capable if the tibio-tarsal angle, less open, had placed the calcaneus in the best direction for the development of force.

Finally, the gaits will lack *action* and speed, because the abdominal supports of the trunk, nearer to their limit of extension than in their normal axis, will consequently rotate through a smaller space by their superior extremity, during which they propel the body, and possess less propulsive force. If they are well situated to pass over much ground, they are unable to profit from this advantage, since the impulsion really only becomes efficacious when the direct axis of the member has just passed the vertical to become oblique downward and backward. Now, this latter direction being precisely that in which the posterior column in this case arrives on the ground, it follows that this position will deprive the limb of all the angular distance which previously separates its direct axis from the normal.

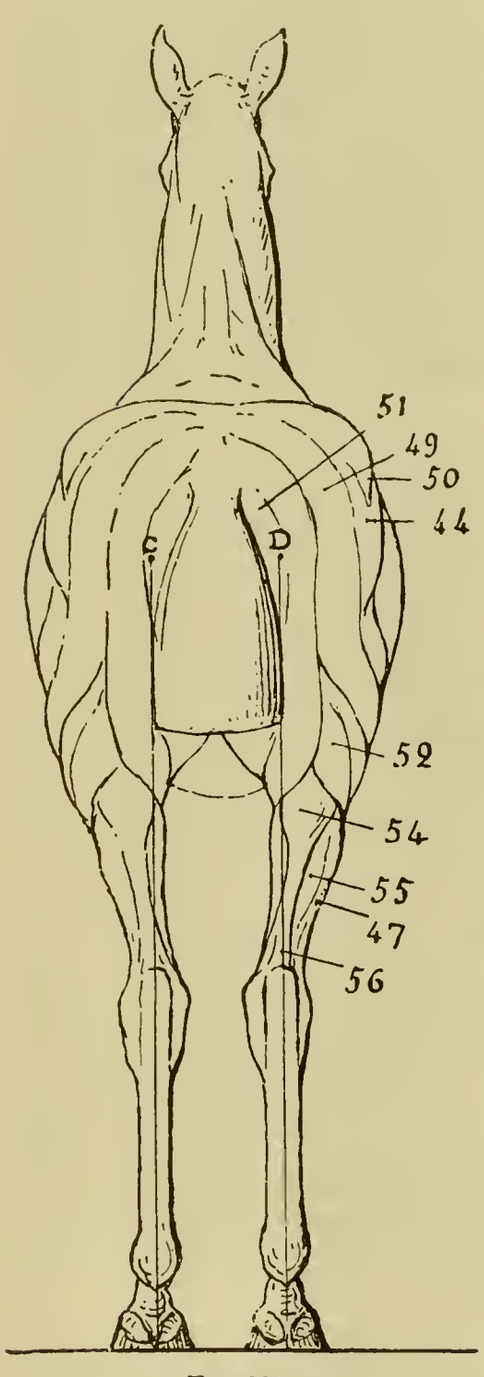


Fig. 164.

Axes viewed from Behind.—In order to determine whether the direct axes of the posterior members are well situated in the plane of the vertical line which passes through their centre of suspension, it is necessary to observe the animal from behind. In these conditions the following line suffices to show the regularity of the axis:

A vertical line drawn down from the point of the buttock should divide equally the inferior part of the member, from the point of the hock down, and leave between the hoofs an interval almost equal to the width of the fetlock (Fig. 164).

If the member, as a whole, is situated *outside* of this line, or if the separation of the hoofs alone be too great, the horse is said to be *too open* behind.

If this only involves the region of the hock, the subject is styled *bow-legged.*

If it is that of the toe, he becomes *crooked-legged* behind.

Conversely:

When the member, as a whole, is deviated *inward* from the vertical, or if the separation of the hoofs alone is too small, the animal is called *closed* behind.

If it is simply the hock, the latter is styled *close, close-hammed, cow-hocked.*

Finally, if it is the region of the toe, the horse becomes *cross-footed* behind.

Horse too Open Behind (Fig. 165). —Two different types of conformation may give rise to this defect, for the direct axes of the posterior members, in order to be properly situated under the body, should not only follow the vertical, but also maintain between them a proper degree of separation. In some horses the line of axis divides the hock, the canon, the fetlock, and the foot, as in the normal conformation; the interval comprised between the two hoofs is, alone, greater than the width of the fetlock. There are others, on the contrary, whose members are deviated to the outer side of the vertical line and in which the distance between the two hoofs is too great. It is this disposition which is represented in the figure.

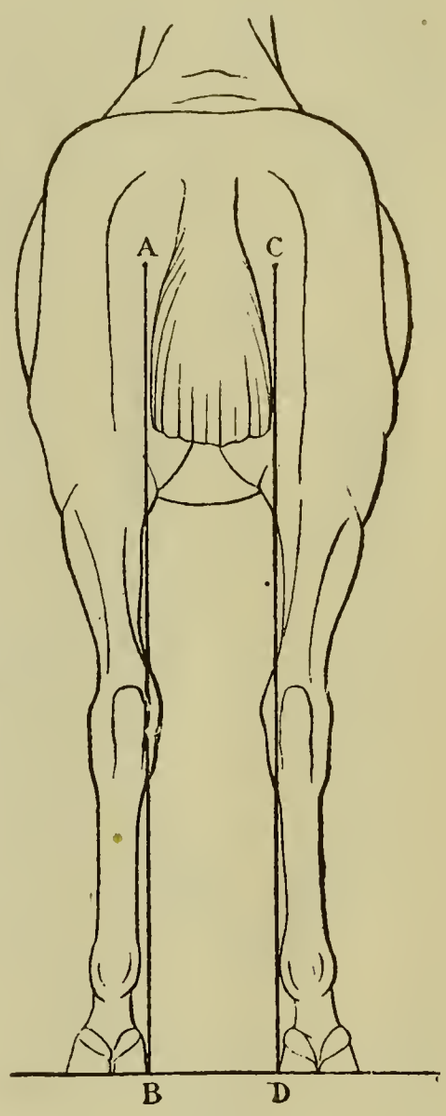


FIG. 165.

In the first case, the injurious effects are of little importance and only depreciate horses used for speed, by augmenting to excess the base of posterior support and producing a rocking motion behind, detrimental to the speed of the gait, but without any unfavorable influence upon the other services. The wide opening behind is due, ordinarily, to the width of the thorax and the croup, as well as to the development of the muscles. There is nothing very unfortunate in this, as Merche[1] has remarked, in heavy draught-horses and colts of the common races. It should, under the circumstances, even be considered as a point of beauty, if it can be demonstrated that it is compatible with the existence of a regular axis. And as the latter does not exclude it, this is

[1] Merche, Nouveau Traité des formes extérieures du cheval, p. 508, Paris, 1868.

our only reason for giving the preference to such a conformation as the one in question.

In the second case, the excessive separation of the members is very decidedly objectionable in the animal: first, because the members no longer support the weight in the direction capable of completely destroying its effects; secondly, because the inferior divergence depends too often upon a narrowness of the pelvis at the level of the cotyloid cavities and upon the mode of defective articulation of the posterior osseous segments. Besides the rocking, the lack of power, the diminished velocity of the gait, and the unpleasant aspect in locomotion, the animal is also predisposed to become affected prematurely with diseases of the hock, of the fetlock, and of the foot, whose internal parts are more overburdened than when in a normal state. It is for these reasons that he becomes less serviceable, a fact which of itself means a notable diminution in his value.

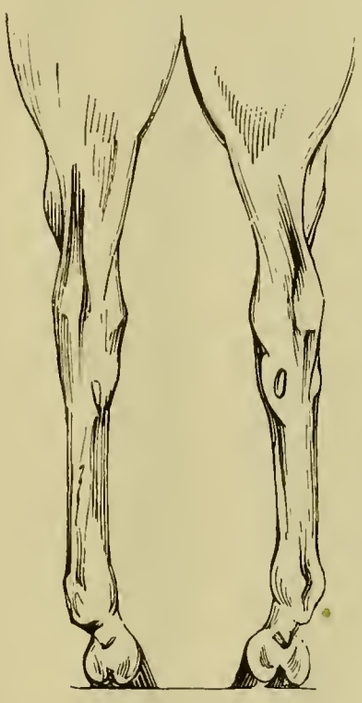


Fig. 166.

Hock arched Outward—Bow-legged Horse (Fig. 166).—This defect is characterized by a curvature of the region of the hock external to the line of axis, as well as by a considerable separation of the calcanea. It is sometimes found in horses too open behind, and is accompanied in most instances by a convergence of the hoofs in front, a conformation which renders the horse *cross-footed* as well as *bow-legged.* Hence the hock thus *arched* is defective in the first degree, on account of the numerous deviations which result from it and which deprive the posterior limb of a part of its aptitude to support the trunk. Besides, it is *rotating* when the foot is on the ground. (See *Defects of the Gaits.*) Finally, it renders the gait ungraceful and sometimes induces *rocking.*

Horse Crooked-legged, Outbow-footed Behind (Fig. 168).—We will not detail here this vicious direction of the foot, which exposes the inferior regions of the hind-members to the same accidents as those which we have indicated in the fore-members. Let us only recall that it is often the consequence of hocks too close together, which corresponds, as we know, to the *close* or *cow-hock.*

Horse Closed Behind (Fig. 167).—The closeness behind, like the same condition in front, presents two distinct cases, although differing little in relation to their gravity. In the one, the axis of the members remains normal, but it is too close to the median line.

In the other, the direct axis of the members deviates internally to the vertical, and the space between the two hoofs is too small. It is this which is represented in the figure.

Whatever may be its form, this defect of the axis is to be taken into very serious consideration. It is invariably observed in subjects with narrow chest, croup, and loins, with feeble muscular development, without action, without vigor, and without energy, lacking stability, disposed to interfering, awkward in locomotion, and, especially, unable to trot on uneven roads.

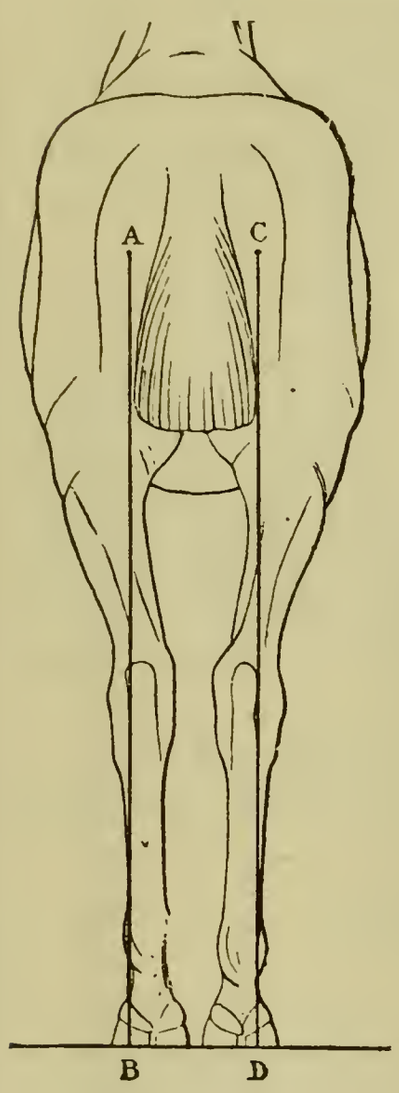


FIG. 167.

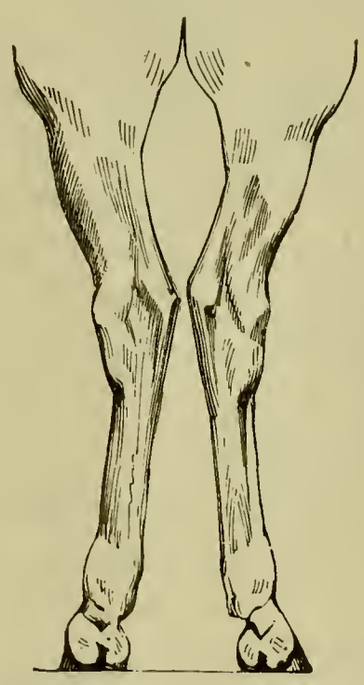


FIG. 168.

Hocks Close, or Hooked—Horse Cow-hocked (Fig. 168). —The greatest disadvantage of the *cow-hocked, close-hammed* horse, which, according to the vulgar expression, has the legs *en pieds de banc* (or is "bench-legged"), is his being ungraceful in his gaits, at the same time that he is outbow-footed behind. The normal movement of abduction of the canon is here exaggerated when this region is flexed. A sort of rocking is also produced from the fact of the too great separation of the posterior feet. Finally, the impulsion communicated by these members is less direct, less powerful, less rapid, than when the osseous levers move in a plane almost parallel to the median plane.

Vallon says, with reason,[1] that this conformation is common to

[1] Vallon, Cours d'hippologie, t. i. p. 475.

many of the horses in mountainous countries, especially remarkable for their aptitude for resisting fatigue and privations. It seems to exist likewise in the Barb horses and in those of Central France. If this remark is well founded, we should not, however, imagine that there is a relation of cause and effect between this disposition of the hock and the qualities to which allusion has been made. The robustness and the energy of which Vallon speaks pertain especially to the race, to the blood, to the conditions of existence, and to the manner of rearing. These qualities would not in any manner be less if the hock, instead of being hooked, were well directed.

Horse Cross-footed Behind (Fig. 166).—The convergence of the hoofs by their anterior part is usually the consequence of the deviation of the hock externally to the vertical line. It gives rise to the same accidents and disadvantages as in the fore-members. The contact of the foot with the ground is uneven; it takes place more especially upon the external mamma, and the animal, awkward in walking on uneven ground, frequently strikes himself with the internal mamma. His movements are ungraceful and lack the precision necessary to an energetic and rapid impulsion from behind.

Following the example of several authors, especially Vallon,[1] we will here give the synoptic table of the axes, their defects and their principal inconveniences.

ANTERIOR MEMBER.

Member viewed in Profile.

Regular Axes.	Irregular Axes.	Disadvantages.
A vertical line lowered from the middle of the arm should intersect the middle of the hoof and remain equidistant from the vertical lines drawn from the point of the shoulder and from the summit of the elbow.	If this line falls in front of the hoof, the horse is *under himself.*	Excessive wear and strain of the bones, the tendons, and the ligaments; slowness of the gaits; insecure foothold on the ground; tendency to fall; forging.
	If it falls behind the hoof, the horse is *camped.*	Bruising of the heels; excess of weight on and wear of the hocks and the posterior fetlocks; pain in the foot in standing and uncertainty of the fore-feet; slow gaits.
A vertical line drawn from the articulation of the elbow should pass through the middle of the knee, the canon, and the fetlock and fall a short distance behind the heels.	If the knee projects in front of this line, the horse is *arqué* or *knee-sprung.*	Index of use and weakness of the fore-members; fatigue; uncertain contact; predisposition to falls.
	If the knee is carried behind this line it is said to be *hollow, effaced,* a *sheep's knee.*	Strain of the lateral and posterior ligaments of the knee; premature blemishes of this region; lack of firmness of the anterior members.
	If the vertical line falls too far behind the heels, the subject is *long-* or *low-jointed.*	Strain of the ligaments of the fetlock and of the flexor tendons; predisposition to overreaching; easy reactions.
	If it meets the heels or the anterior parts of the foot, the horse is *short-* or *straight-jointed.*	Surcharging of the phalanges; predisposition to knuckling and contraction of the heels; reactions hard.

[1] Vallon, Cours d'hippologie, t. i. p. 475.

ANTERIOR MEMBER—*Continued.*

Member viewed in Front.

Regular Axes.	Irregular Axes.	Disadvantages.
A vertical line drawn from the point of the shoulder should divide equally the knee, the canon, and the foot, and leave between the two feet an interval equal to the width of the hoof, taken from one quarter to the other.	If the member, as a whole, is situated outside of this line, or if the interval between the hoofs is too great, the horse is *too open.*	Stability of equilibrium; slow and ungraceful gait; rocking; standing upon internal quarter. Sometimes, indicative of the volume of the muscles and of the width of the thorax; at other times, indicative of opposite characters.
	If the knee be deviated outward the horse is said to be *bow-legged.*	Strain upon the external ligaments of the knee; surcharging of the internal part; inward deviation of the hoof; ungraceful, slow gait, and insecure foothold.
	If it be the toe alone, the subject is *crooked-legged.*	Chest often narrow; elbows close to body; standing upon internal quarter; slow and ungraceful gait. The horse stumbles and interferes with the heel of the shoe.
	Conversely: When the member, as a whole, is situated inside of the vertical line, or when the interval between the two hoofs is too small, the horse is *close* or *narrow.*	Diminution of the base of support; instability of the equilibrium; predisposition to calking. Frequent indications of a want of endurance, defective development of the breast, narrowness of the chest, and feeble volume of the muscles.
	If it is the region of the knee alone, the latter is called an *ox's knee.*	Loss of firmness of the step and of speed; strain on the internal ligaments of the knee; overburdening and wear of the external parts; outward deviation of the foot; ungraceful gaits.
	Finally, if it is that of the toe, the horse becomes *cross-footed, parrot-toed.*	Standing upon the external quarter; elbows separated; overburdening of the phalanges and the external side of the articulations; ungraceful movements of the canon; slow gaits; the horse stumbles and interferes with the internal mamma.

POSTERIOR MEMBER.

Member viewed in Profile.

A vertical line intersecting the middle of the leg should pass, above, through the coxo-femoral articulation, cross, below, the middle of the hoof, and remain equidistant from the vertical lines drawn from the stifle and the angle of the buttock, the latter being tangent to the point of the hock and to the fetlock.	If the member, as a whole, is placed in advance of this line, the horse is *under himself.*	Shortening of the base of support; crooked hocks; predisposition to slipping forward; fatigue of the extensor muscles, the ligaments, and the tendons; surcharging of the posterior members; slow gaits; premature blemishes of the hocks and of the fetlocks; forging.
	If, on the contrary, it is placed behind this line, the animal is *camped.*	Lengthening of the base of support; tendency to slip backward; surcharging of the fore-limbs; strain on the back and loins; sway-back; feeble impulsion; slow gaits.
	If only the parts below the fetlock are deviated, so as to carry the middle of the foot in advance of this line, the horse is *long-* or *low-jointed.*	Same evil consequences as in the anterior member; predisposition to windgalls.
	If, in the same conditions, the middle of the hoof is placed behind this line, the horse is *short-* or *straight-jointed.*	Same, but less serious, consequences as in the anterior member.

POSTERIOR MEMBER—*Continued.*

Member viewed Behind.

Regular Axes.	Irregular Axes.	Disadvantages.
A vertical line drawn from the point of the buttock should pass through the median plane of the inferior part of the member from the point of the hock to the foot, and leave between the two hoofs an interval almost equal to the width of the fetlock, taken from one lateral face to the other.	If the member, as a whole, is situated on the outer side of this line, or if simply the separation of the hoofs is too great, the horse is *too open.*	Width of the base of support and stability of the equilibrium; frequently outward deviation of the hock and the heels; slow and ungraceful gaits in consequence of the rocking; standing on the internal quarter of the hoofs. Sometimes, indicative of the width of the chest, of the loins, of the croup, and of the development of the muscles; at other times, indicative of a narrow pelvis and feebly-developed muscles.
	If it concerns the region of the hock alone, the horse is *bow-legged.*	Strain of the external ligaments of the hock; overloading of the internal parts; inward deviation of the toe; standing upon the external quarter; gaits ungraceful; impulsion less direct.
	If it is that of the toe, the subject is *outbow-footed.*	Same evil consequences as in the anterior member.
	Conversely: When the member, as a whole, is situated inside of the vertical line, or when the separation between the two hoofs is too small, the animal is *close* or *narrow.*	Narrow base of support; unstable equilibrium; indications of narrowness of the chest, of the loins, and of the croup; feeble development of the muscular system; members unsteady; weakened foothold. The horse is disposed to interfere.
	If this is true of the hock alone, the latter is *close, cow-hocked,* and the subject is *close-hammed.*	Outward deviation of the foot; ungraceful flexion of the canon; impulsion less direct and less powerful; slow gaits.
	If it is the region of the toe, the horse is *cross-footed.*	Same disadvantages as in the anterior member.

B.—Lying Down or Decubitus.

These names are given to the attitude which the animal takes when he rests, and in which the trunk is placed directly in relation with the ground.

We often see horses sleep while standing, even when harnessed. They usually stand in such a manner that either one foot, or the two of the same diagonal biped, are rested, or bear less weight, and remain in this position until the supporting columns are replaced by those which previously supported the body.

In general, horses do not lie down much, unless they are very tired. Yet, we have known a mare with very flat feet which laid down before eating as soon as she entered the stable.

A certain preparation is necessary for the horse to execute the decubitus: It consists in drawing together the four feet under the body in such a manner as to diminish the extent of the base of support. Then the animal lowers the head, flexes the knees until they touch the ground, and gently allows himself to fall over upon the side, the right or the left.

The subject will now assume one or other of the two following positions:

Thus, in the *sterno-costal decubitus*, the body, leaning towards the right, for example, rests upon the sternum and the abdomen, while the four members, all semi-flexed, are directed towards the opposite side, the right being under the trunk. The head and the neck, being a counterpoise, are inclined towards the left, although elevated and supported by the resistance of the elastic nuchal ligament.

In the *lateral decubitus*, the head, the neck, the trunk, and the members of the corresponding side are stretched out on the ground. This variety of attitude, more rare than the former, is, in general, only observed in colts and in debilitated or diseased horses.

Concerning the *dorsal decubitus*, it is very difficult in the horse, on account of the narrowness of the neck, the withers, the back, the loins, and the croup. Nevertheless, it is seen in circus horses and in those which are especially dressed for it, but which are unable to maintain it for a long time. In all other circumstances, it should be considered that a horse which takes this position is suffering from serious colic,—principally from hernia.

After a more or less prolonged rest, the animal rises. To accomplish this, he extends the neck and the head for the purpose of extending and carrying forward his fore-members, first the upper and then that which lies under the body: this is a sort of preparatory action. By a new effort, these members place the body, as M. Colin[1] has clearly proved, in the position which a dog assumes when sitting upon his thighs. Finally, the abdominal members, in their turn, by their extension, raise the body.

Almost immediately the spine is extended and the hind-limbs *stretch themselves* one after the other; sometimes the animals gape, and everything then returns to its normal state.

It is not practicable to see the horse lie down at the time of purchase; nevertheless, important indications could be drawn from its examination. Certain horses have the vicious habit of lying down *like a cow*,—that is to say, of having too great a flexion of the feet upon the forearm, and thus contusing the inferior part of the elbows with the internal heel of the shoe. There results from this, after a time, the formation of tumors, to which we have already called the attention of the reader. (See page 221.)

---

[1] G. Colin, Physiologie comparée des animaux, 3e éd., t. i. p. 422.

CHAPTER II.

MOVEMENTS UPON PLACE.

A.—Rearing.

Rearing is an attitude in which the fore-part of the body, raised above the soil, is maintained in equilibrium upon the posterior members. It is perceived that, as a rule, it can be preserved only during a very

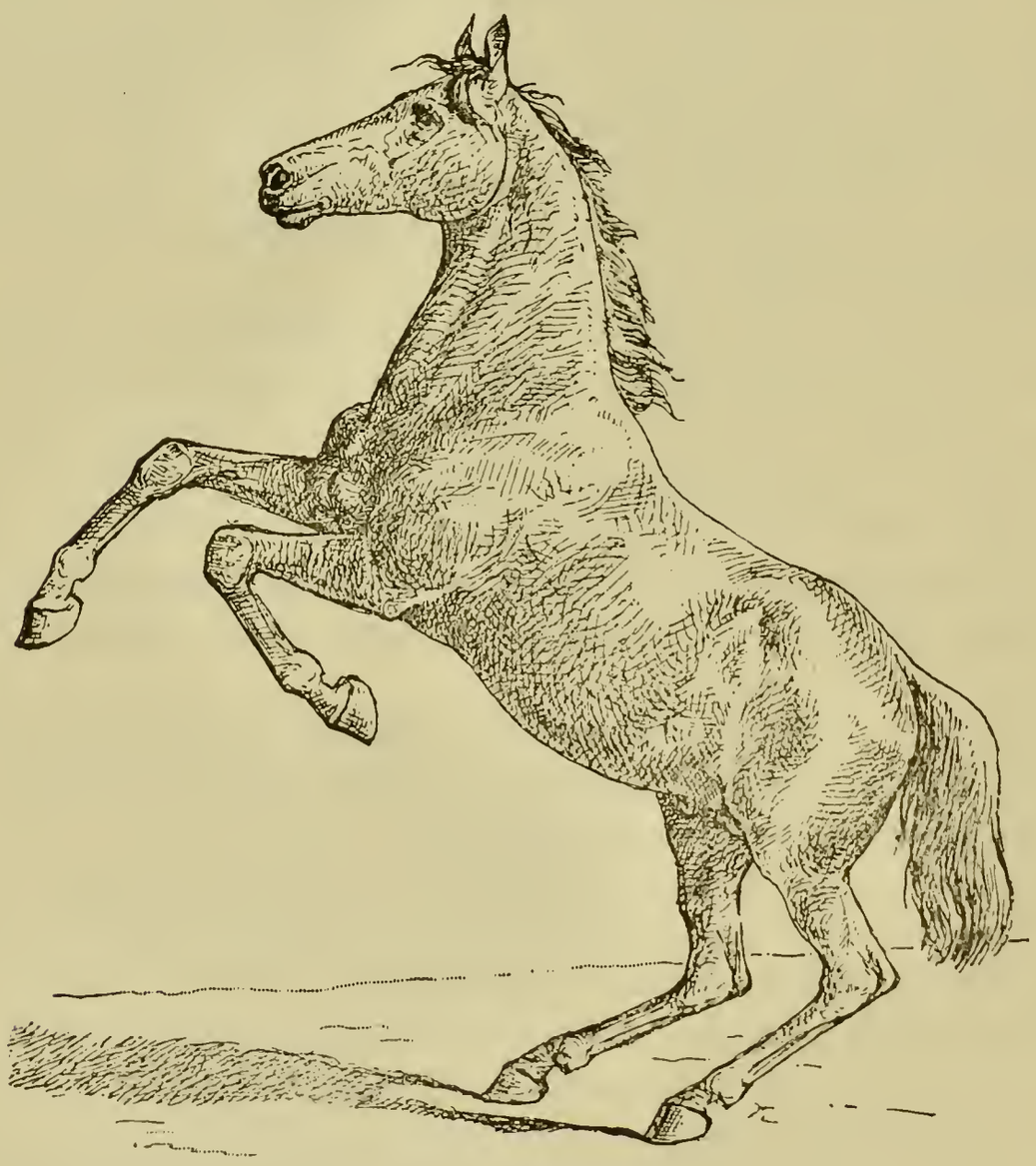


Fig. 169.—Rearing.

short space of time, on account of the small base of support represented by the contact of the two hind-feet with the ground (Fig. 169).

The horse rears under different circumstances, indicative of his

good spirits, of impatience to act, or of restiveness; to defend himself, attack, leap, or, finally, to mount the mare.

Its accomplishment is preceded by a very short *preparation*, during which the members are drawn together and the head quickly lowered, often several times repeated. Then the time of execution is manifested by the sudden and successive extension of the head, the neck, and the trunk, and, finally, by the energetic contraction of the extensor muscles of the fore-limbs, which are at first semi-flexed. The extensors of the head, of the spine, and of the anterior members, the gluteal and the ischio-tibial muscles, are the principal agents in this sort of rotation of the fore-quarters upon the hind-quarters.

As soon as rearing is effected, the foothold exists only on the posterior bipeds, whose segments, more or less flexed, are maintained in situation by the contraction of their extensors. We can thus see the amount of the resistance which the animal must overcome and the length of the lever upon which it acts; we can also easily understand the readiness with which the line of gravitation tends to fall outside of so narrow a base of support. All this explains the shortness of the duration of rearing. Soon after it is accomplished, the fore-part of the body is lowered and the fore-feet fall upon the ground.

Nevertheless, there are some very vigorous horses capable of maintaining this attitude for a much longer time than others. This is true on condition, as Borelli[1] says, that the base of support be frequently displaced. H. Bouley[2] adds, that it is due to another fact, that their hocks are wide, their lumbar, croupal, and ischio-tibial muscles well developed, and that the fore-part of the body may be relatively light. Those which are weak in the hock and in the loins only accomplish it by the energy of their will; but no sooner have they raised themselves upon their hind-limbs than they will recover the quadrupedal station or else fall over sideways or backward. The easy, natural rearing is, therefore, a sign of force and of energy. The English hunter and the Arabian horse execute it with great ease; if these animals had not this aptitude they would be incapable of launching themselves into space with the marvellous agility which is peculiar to them, and could not clear with so much ease the obstacles which they meet in the steeple-chases.

The facts mentioned above are not very rarely observed; the following are some examples:

A stallion, called *Le Commode*, some twenty years of age, and placed

---

[1] Borelli, De motu animalium, 1734. (See Proposition CLXVII., Tab. 13, Fig. 11).

[2] H. Bouley, Nouveau Dictionnaire de médecine, de chirurgie et d'hygiène vétérinaires, t. ii. p. 655.

at the school at Alfort for the stud in 1817, balanced himself upon his hocks as soon as he saw the mare on the ground, and walked to her in this bipedal position.[1]

Vallon[2] mentions that there was, at a certain period, a stallion, named Molok, which walked upon his hind-feet for almost a minute before mounting the mare. He has seen at Paris a horse, ridden by a woman, walk over quite a long space upon his posterior members.

Concerning our own experience, we have known a small stallion, of Spanish origin, which was exhibited at a circus in Paris, and which, having reared, walked across the ring, ascended a flight of stairs consisting of fourteen steps, described a circle upon a platform, descended the staircase, and walked across the ring without falling upon his fore-members.

A repetition of rearing is very fatiguing, especially to the loins, the hocks, and the fetlocks. It is also common to see in such horses, particularly stallions, sway-backedness as well as premature blemishes of the articulations of the hind-limbs.

The horses which rear without any purpose are the most dangerous; we will speak of this when treating of *vicious horses.*

B.—Kicking.

Kicking is an action opposite to that of rearing. The horse which kicks suddenly elevates his hind-quarters upon the fore-quarters, and forcibly throws the two posterior members backward for the purpose of attacking or defending himself, or of dismounting his rider, sometimes from simple impatience to act or from playfulness. It is allied to certain progressive movements, such as leaping, galloping, etc.

Kicking, like rearing, is executed in two periods: the preparation and the action (Fig. 170).

First Period.—There is first a very rapid drawing together of the bipeds with a view of shortening the base of support when the kick is to be low; a separation, on the contrary, by drawing the anterior members forward, if the animal intends to kick very high; without the latter precaution he will be liable to fall upon his knees in the latter act.

At the same time, the head and the neck are suddenly lowered in such a manner as to project the centre of gravity forward and carry a large portion of the weight of the trunk upon the anterior bipeds, in

---

[1] Girard, Anatomie vétérinaire, 4e éd., Paris, 1841, t. i. p. 435.

[2] Vallon, Cours d'hippologie, Saumur, 1863, t. i. p. 484.

order to free the hind-quarters and facilitate their movement of rotation upon the fore-quarters.

Second Period.—By the sudden impulsion from the posterior members and the contraction of the dorso-lumbar muscles, the elevation of the croup now takes place, which is a movement in some

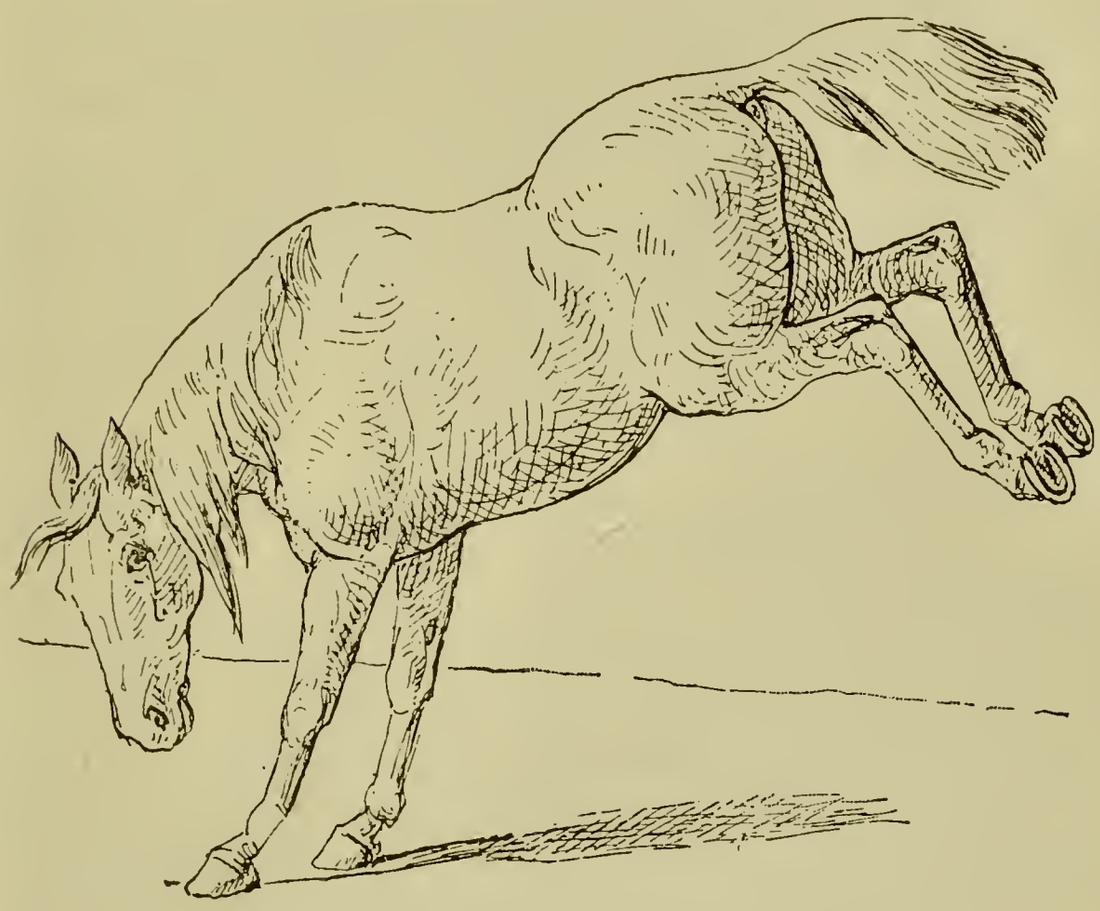


FIG. 170.—Kicking.

manner complemental to the previous lowering of the head and the neck. The extension of the thigh, of the leg, and of the canon follows almost immediately, and determines a vigorous retropulsion of the hind-feet, from the sudden and simultaneous contraction of the gluteal, the anterior femoral, and the gastrocnemius muscles.

The details into which we have entered when speaking of the *rôle* of the cord of the hock (see page 258) sufficiently explain the power of the hind-limbs, comparable, in this respect, to an elastic spring which recoils in an almost instantaneous manner, in consequence of the synergetic and sudden co-operation of the agents charged with the accomplishment of this action.

The kick has only a very short duration ; the posterior members return to the ground almost immediately. Certain horses can repeat it frequently and without great fatigue, like the ass ; they are short, wide, and powerful in the back and the loins, long in the croup, the

thigh, and the leg, strong and wide in the hocks, well muscled, but relatively light in the hind-quarters.

When we come to speak of *vicious horses*, we will complete the other details which it is necessary to know concerning *kicking*.

PART II.

MODE OF PROGRESSION, OR THE GAITS OF THE HORSE.

CHAPTER I.

GENERALITIES OF THE GAITS.

Definition.—The name **gaits** (*allures*, from the French *aller*, to go) is given to the diverse modes in which progression is accomplished by the play of the locomotory members.

Applied to the horse, their study is of great interest. It enables one to appreciate the force which the animal expends, the speed which he employs, and the regularity with which he executes these movements. Equestrianism draws from it rational principles for dressing the horse; the artist deduces important facts for the true representation of the attitudes and the movements; the horseman is taught to recognize his beauties and defects; the veterinarian, finally, from a thorough knowledge of their mechanism, their irregularities, and their pathological modifications, is assisted in his diagnosis, and can deduce from them important therapeutic indications.

Divisions.—The gaits are divided into:

Natural, when they are executed in a spontaneous and instinctive manner without any special education. Example, the walk, the trot, the gallop, at times the amble, and the running walk.

Acquired or *artificial*, when they result, on the contrary, from a special dressing. Example, the amble, broken amble, running walk, trot, and racing gallop.

Both may be either *marched* or *leaped*.

They are called *marched*, when the body does not cease to be in contact with the ground during their execution; *leaped*, when it leaves

the ground entirely at certain moments, either during the same step or between two successive steps.

The *styles of horsemanship* is a name given to a certain number of rhythmical movements, comparable to dancing as performed by man, and acquired by the same education, which develop in the horse harmony of figure and suppleness of body; they communicate to him elegance, grace, and a good physiognomy. The principal movements are termed by the French the *passage*, the *piaffer* (*pawing*), the *croupade*, the *ballottade*, and the *courbette*.

Their study belongs to the domain of the *high school*, a superior *equestrianism* which teaches how to *poise* (to place without fatigue) the mounted horse in all the attitudes which his conformation renders possible. The number of exercises of the high school belongs more strictly to a treatise on *riding* and *horsemanship*, and will be omitted here.

A mounted horse is called *poised* or *in equilibrium* when he is capable, through the dressing, of obeying the aids of the rider (hands and legs) without unnecessary efforts and with the absolute freedom of those muscular groups whose action is necessary to produce the desired effect. The animal, in such cases, preserves during his work what horsemen call *suppleness* of the movements; he becomes, then, from his free and easy motions, altogether comparable to the gymnast, master of his body.

Diverse Qualifications applicable to the Gaits.—According to the forms which they assume the gaits are called:

Diagonal, when the members, in executing them, move or succeed one another in diagonal bipeds. Example, the trot, the walk, the gallop.

Lateral, when they evolve themselves, on the contrary, by lateral bipeds. Example, ambling, racking.

Beautiful, when they are energetic, extended, regular, harmonious, elegant.

Defective, when they produce weakness and require great exertion. Example, racking.

Long, elongated, when their strides are as extensive as possible.

Small, short, in the opposite case.

Reacting, high, when they impress the centre of gravity with strong vertical displacements, which at each step very sensibly separate the body from the ground.

Low, when the distance of the displacements of the body from the soil is small.

High-strained, when the members are greatly flexed without passing over much distance.

Repeated, if the movements follow each other with excessive rapidity, with or without the production of speed.

Hard, when they fatigue the rider by the violence of their reactions.

Easy, in reverse conditions.

Light, if the percussion of the feet upon the soil produces little sound.

Heavy, if these percussions are violent and resounding.

Strong, rapid, when the locomotory action is quick, easy, energetic, high, extended, and rhythmical.

Free, when it is accomplished without undue effort.

Regular, when the evolution of the members and their mode of association obey, for each gait, the principles of scientific analysis or of experience.

Uniform, when the speed is uniform in consequence of the equal length of the steps.

General Considerations relative to the Play of the Members during the Gaits.—We recognize:

The **beat**, the sound produced by a foot or a biped when coming in contact with the soil.

The **time**, the period between two successive beats.

The **contact**, the time during which a member or a biped remains in contact with the soil. Example, first, second contact of the gallop.

The **imprint**, the trace left upon the ground after the contact by the foot which is rising.

The **track**, the succession of imprints indicating the character and direction of the gait of the horse.

The trail is *rectilinear*, if the progression takes place in a straight line; *curvilinear*, when it describes a curve; *transverse*, if the horse moves sideways to the right or to the left; *single* or *double*, according as the imprints of the hind-feet are or are not superposed upon those of the fore-feet.

When the imprints of the hind-feet are superposed on those of the fore-feet (*se juge*), which many horsemen, notably the school of Raabe, term the *normal* gait, the horse is said to "cover" his steps, to "check" his steps (*se juger, se couvrir*).[1] When the hind imprints fall short of the fore, which, according to this school, is an *unduly short gait*, he is said to "ill-check" or "ill-cover" himself (*se découvrir, se*

[1] E. Barroil, L'art équestre, p. 19, Paris, 1887.

déjuger). Lastly, when the hind are in front of the fore (a gait they style *unduly lengthened*), the animal is said to "overcheck," to "overcover" his steps (*se mécouvrir, se méjuger*).

They say also that the horse *trails himself* (*se piste*), when one of the posterior bipeds marks its imprint upon the same transverse line as the anterior foot which is diagonally opposite to it; again, the imprint of the posterior foot in question may be made in front or behind that of the diagonal anterior foot, and then the horse *mistrails himself* (*se dépiste*). These terms are only used for the gallop.

Since the time of Solleysel[1] there have been distinguished in the evolution of a member two principal phases or periods, the *contact* with the ground and the *elevation*, during which this member supports a part of the weight of the body or, on the contrary, is completely lifted from the ground. We have seen (page 195) that as soon as a member has passed successively through the two phases, the body has passed over a distance designated under the name of **complete step.** The two bipeds (anterior and posterior) are, in fact, conjointly concerned in its execution; and, even as an anterior member, for example, is incapable of taking two steps in succession without the intervention

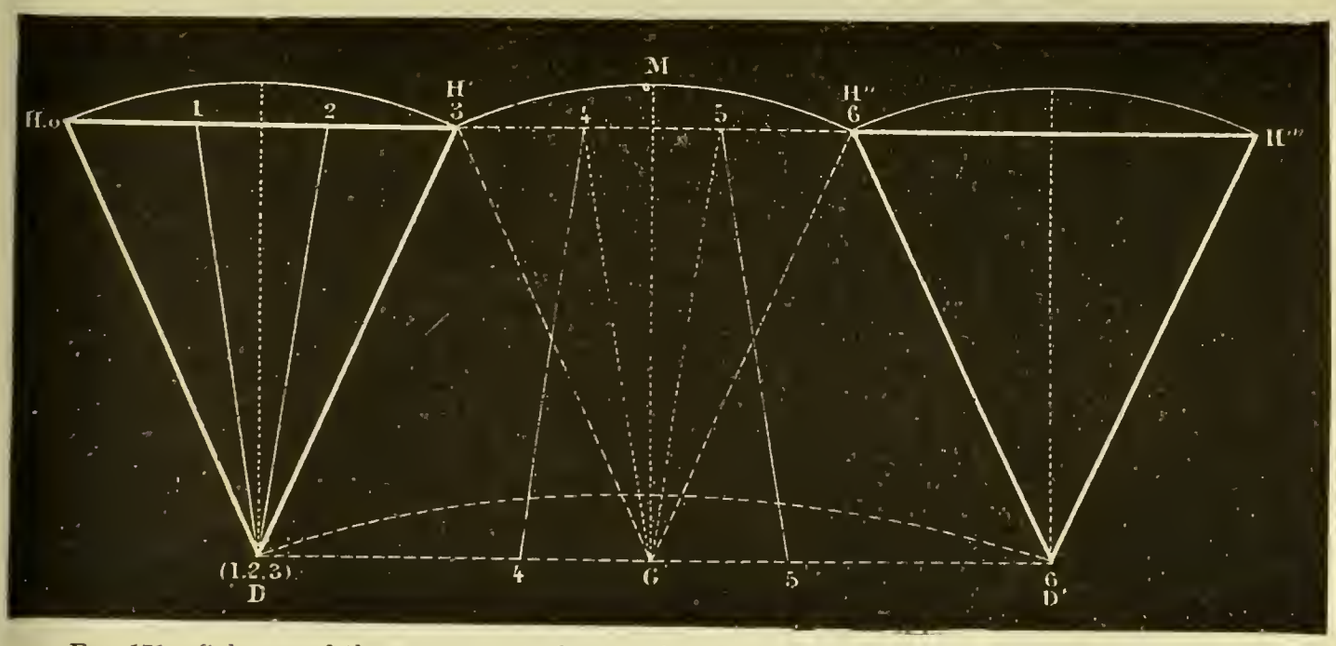


FIG. 171.—Scheme of the movement of a member during the phases of contact and elevation.

of its congener; even so, also, the anterior biped is unable to carry itself a certain distance in advance of its primitive position unless the posterior biped accomplishes exactly the same movement.[2]

On the other hand, it is known that during the evolution of any member (Fig. 171), the centre of movement, *H*, of this member, and, in consequence, the centre of gravity, progresses from H° to H'',—

[1] De Solleysel, Parfait mareschal, éd. de 1693, 2e partie, p. 66.
[2] C. Bourgelat, Traité de la conformation extérieure du cheval, p. 245.

that is to say, the distance DD', equal to the distance described by one of the feet, the distance comprised between two attitudes, $H^{\circ}D$ and $H''D'$, identical and successive in this member. (See *Generalities of the Members*, page 194.)

The **length of the step** is therefore measured by the distance separating the two points of contact, DD', successive of the same foot. If the axis is regular, the vertical line which passes through the centre of suspension or of oscillation of the member necessarily divides this intervening distance into two equal parts, each one equivalent to a *semi-step*.

Finally, we have also seen that the two principal phases, **contact** and **elevation**, insufficient for the needs of an exhaustive analysis, must be subdivided into equal secondary phases, called *periods*, six in number, as follows:

Phase of contact with soil.	1st period, from 0 to 1, commencement of the contact. 2d period, from 1 to 2, middle of the contact. 3d period, from 2 to 3, end of the contact.
Phase of elevation or advancement.	4th period, from 3 to 4, raising. 5th period, from 4 to 5, middle of elevation. 6th period, from 5 to 6, rest.

Periods of Exchange of Contact.—If, after the example of M. Lenoble du Teil, we study more attentively the evolution of the members of the same biped, anterior or posterior, *during the marched gaits*, we notice two moments when the weight of the body passes from one foot to the other, and *vice versa*.

Thus (Fig. 172), when the posterior right foot is placed on the ground, the left is not being lifted, as might be believed, but is really at the *end of its period of contact;* in the same way, it is only when the right foot *commences its contact* that its congener *rises*. In other words, in these gaits the *commencement* of the contact of one member does not wait until that of the other *has been completed;* it precedes the latter a short time. But for this the body would have no support during the interval between the successive movements. The consequence of this fact is that the duration of the contact of the foot with the ground is always longer than that of its elevation, contrary to the opinions of Vincent and Goiffon,

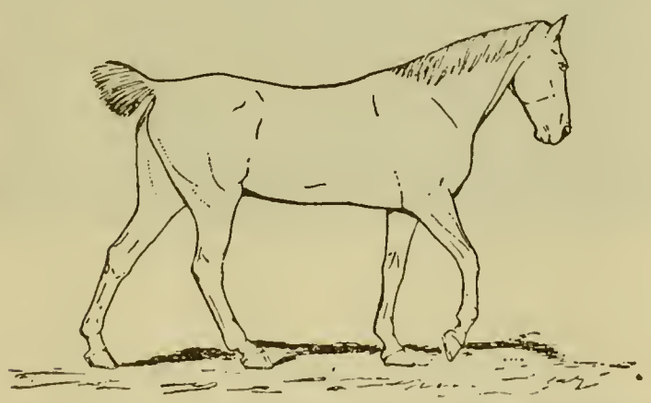


FIG. 172.—*Exchange of contact* upon the posterior bipeds in the *walk*.
(From an instantaneous photograph.)

Colin, and Raabe and his disciples, who admit the absolute equality of the two phases of contact and of elevation.

These two periods of the walk, well explained by M. Lenoble du Teil,[1] have been called by him *periods of exchange of the contact.* In the middle of each of them there evidently exists a moment during which the body is equally supported by the two members at the same time. This author has also had reason to make three groups of the preceding six periods of the complete step: two of *advancement*, two of *complete contact*, and two of *change of contact.*

It is easy to understand that the change of the contact with the soil, in the walk, for example, is all the longer and easier to ascertain as the gait is slower. As soon as the latter is accelerated so as to simulate *leaping*, it is then seen to diminish correspondingly. Finally, it disappears immediately as soon as *leaping* is manifested. We will explain the particular details of this in discussing the *gallop.*

It is therefore through error that Messrs. Marey and Pagès[2] claim to have discovered, in the marched gaits, the periods of *double contact*, the importance of which they have besides enhanced, by saying that their existence permits the step of these quadrupeds to assimilate completely that of man, in whom these periods are very evident.

The speed, V, of a gait is valued by the distance passed over during a unit of time; naturally, it is proportional to the length, L, and the number, N, of the steps. The predominance of one of these factors varies with the other in an inverse sense. Thus is deduced the empirical formula $V = LN$. With equal speed, if N augments (as in small horses), it follows necessarily that L diminishes, and *vice versa* (as in large horses).

In gaits in which the body is always in contact with the ground, the body and the feet are not advanced with the same velocity. This is due to the fact that the centre of gravity tends to move in a uniform manner. Hence it is necessary that the feet progress more rapidly than the body to recover the time which they have lost in contact with the ground. The longer their contact the greater will be their velocity compared to that of the body. This interesting fact has been well established, as early as 1873, by M. Lenoble du Teil, who has republished it

---

[1] Lenoble du Teil, Étude sur la locomotion de l'homme et des quadrupèdes en général, Paris, 1877, p. 14.

This expression has also been employed by M. Raabe in his work entitled Méthode de haute école d'équitation (p. 29 *et seq.*), edited at Marseilles in 1863. This author, however, appears not to have deduced the results which follow from it.

[2] Marey et Pagès, Mouvement du membre pelvien chez l'homme, l'éléphant et le cheval, in Comptes-Rendus de l'Académie des sciences, 18 Juillet, 1887.

since;[1] M. Raabe[2] attaches great importance to this and deduces from it this principle: "The *relative velocity of the feet* is proportional to the duration of their contact."

Time of Preparation.—The horse, before taking a step in any gait, first prepares himself by assuming an attitude which corresponds to the point of departure of this gait.

To use a familiar illustration, a man who, at the beginning of the walk, wishes to make the initial step with the left foot, must first carry the weight of his body on the right foot. This displacement of the centre of gravity varies with each particular gait; changing the situation of the head and a slight flexion of the members produce it, but these movements always have for their result the greatest possible disburdening of the member which is about to be carried forward. This principle is often applied in equestrianism. Bringing the head and neck of the horse to the right side, for example, facilitates the initial movement by the left.

Displacements of the Centre of Gravity.—The movements of the body over the ground implies displacements of the centre of gravity, and, consequently, a destruction of the initial equilibrium, which incessantly compels the members to form new bases of support. Hence the members, each in their turn, come and prop it in front according to the ingenious comparison of Richerand,[3] in the manner of the spokes of a wheel in relation to the weight of the hub which they sustain; the rapidity with which they succeed each other is so much more frequent as the imminence of a fall is greater. Here is the reason of the correctness of the expression, that the *instability of the equilibrium*, in these gaits, *gives the measure of the velocity.*

As Lecoq[4] has easily recognized, the displacements of the centre of gravity may take place either in a *transverse sense*, in consequence of the alternate support by the right and the left members, or in a *vertical sense*, from the successive degrees of the obliquity of the columns of support. The vertical displacements at times acquire a remarkable importance, as when the body is raised from the ground by the energetic impulsion of the hind-limb. The name of *period of suspension* is given to this phase of the leaping gaits.

The disciples of the school of Raabe[5] call the displacement *simple*

---

[1] Lenoble du Teil, Note communiquée, et loc. cit., p. 107.
[2] C. Raabe, Règles du mécanisme des allures du cheval, in Spectateur militaire, année 1883.
[3] Le Baron Richerand, Nouveaux éléments de physiologie, 10e éd., Paris, 1833, t. iii. p. 148.
[4] Lecoq, Extérieur du cheval, 5e éd., p. 346.
[5] E. Barroil, L'art équestre, p. 20, Paris, 1887.

when there is perfect *superposition* of the imprints of the fore- and hind-feet (normal trot), or when those of the diagonal bipeds are in the same transverse line (normal gallop); *projectile*, when the imprint of a posterior biped is in front of that of the corresponding (elongated trot) or the diagonal (fast gallop) anterior biped. The knowledge of the *upward* and the *lateral* oscillations of the centre of gravity permits us to understand how each particular gait gives to the rider as well as to his mount more or less fatigue and exertion than any other.

Reactions.—This term designates the more or less strong concussions or tossings which the horse in motion experiences or communicates to the rider. In a general manner, they are proportionate to the height of the displacement of the centre of gravity, and, consequently, to the energy of the propulsive force, the speed employed, and, all things being equal, also to the length of the step, since the latter augments the initial and final obliquity of the members in their contact with the soil.

A gait is sufficiently defined when in it can be recognized the following characters:

1st. The *number*, the *intervals*, and the *mode of association* of the *beats*.

2d. The *duration* of the contact and of the elevation.

3d. The *trajectory* of the *members* in the air.

4th. The *trail*.

5th. The *speed*.

6th. The *displacements* of the *centre of gravity*.

Let us see how each one of these diverse factors is deduced:

Analysis of the Gaits.

1st. **Direct Observation.**—We must not lose sight of the fact that it is by attentive, judicious, and patient observation of the horse in motion that the largest number of data concerning his gaits has been collected. The veterinarians and horsemen of the last century had already, without recourse to any instruments of precision, discovered most of the facts which the new methods have since only verified. They recognized, for each gait, the order of raising and resting the feet, the mode of association of the members, the number, succession, and rhythm of the beats, the form of the trails, the length of the step, and the nature, the extent, and the direction of the base of support. Some of them even had endeavored to establish a relation between the dimensions of the animal and the length of his strides.

Unfortunately, our external senses being unable to perceive phenomena of so short a duration as those which take place in the rapid gaits, the first observers were unluckily led to commit errors and to leave blanks, doubts, and obscurities in their writings, whence have originated some processes for more thorough investigations.

2d. **Graphic Method.**—It is to M. Marey, the learned professor of the Collége de France, that the merits of the greatest progress realized in this new direction must revert. In applying his method, called the **graphic**, to the study of the locomotion of the horse, he has determined in an almost definite manner most of the principles previously doubtful.[1]

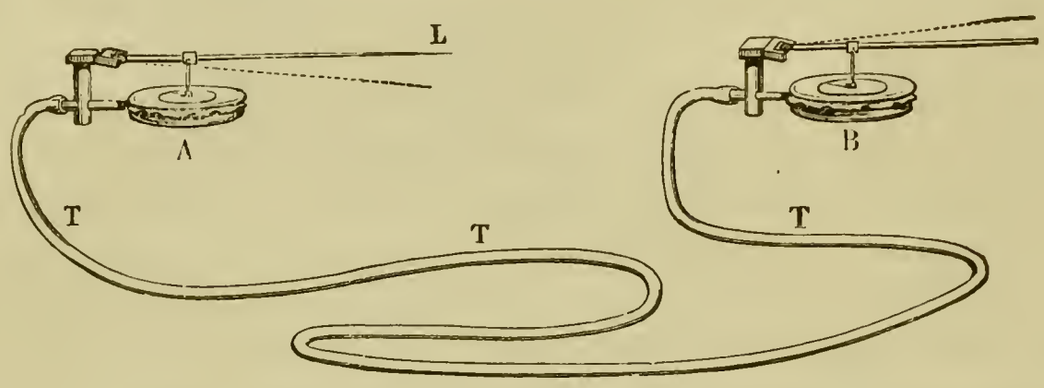


FIG. 173.—Two drums with a lever and tubing to carry the compressed air. (Marey.)

Process with Compressed Air.—Let us suppose two drums, *A* and *B* (Fig. 173), each one formed of a metallic case closed above by an India-rubber

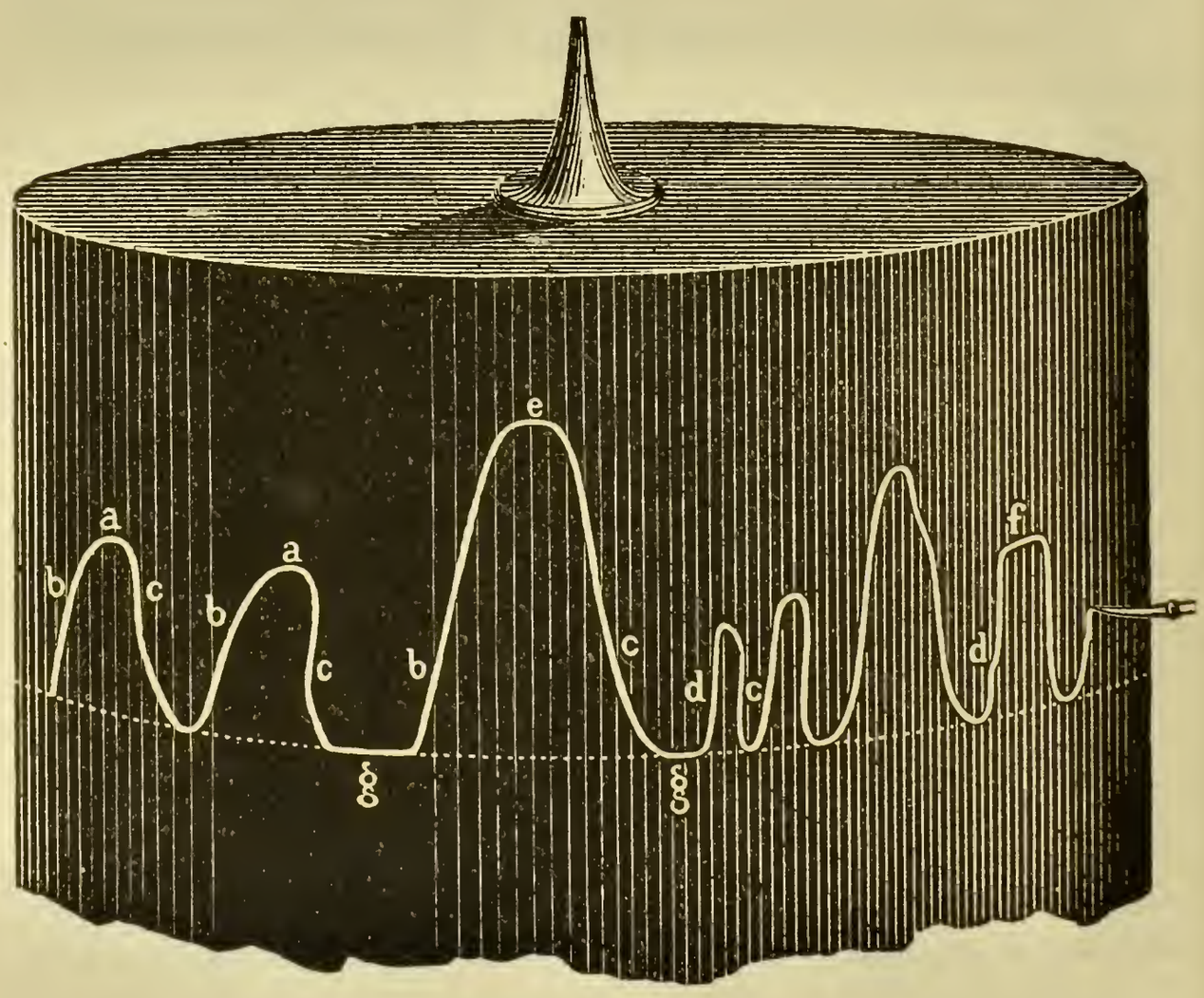


FIG. 174.

membrane. Upon this membrane is fixed an articulated lever, *L*, capable of executing to-and-fro vertical movements.

[1] Marey, La machine animale, p. 146, et suiv.

Finally, the two drums are connected with each other by means of a rubber tube, *T*, *T*, *T*. The apparatus being closed and full of air, it is apparent that all pressure exercised upon the drum *A*, for example, will force the air through the tube *TT* into the drum *B*, whose membrane, as well as its lever, it will elevate. As soon as the pressure ceases, the two levers will naturally return to their initial position. From this unity of action of the two drums any movement whatever can therefore be transmitted from a distance, and even amplify itself if the length of the lever be augmented.

Moreover, let us imagine a cylinder (Fig. 174) covered by a layer of smoked paper, turning circularly in a uniform movement, by a sort of clock-work, opposite to one of the levers transformed into a registering needle.

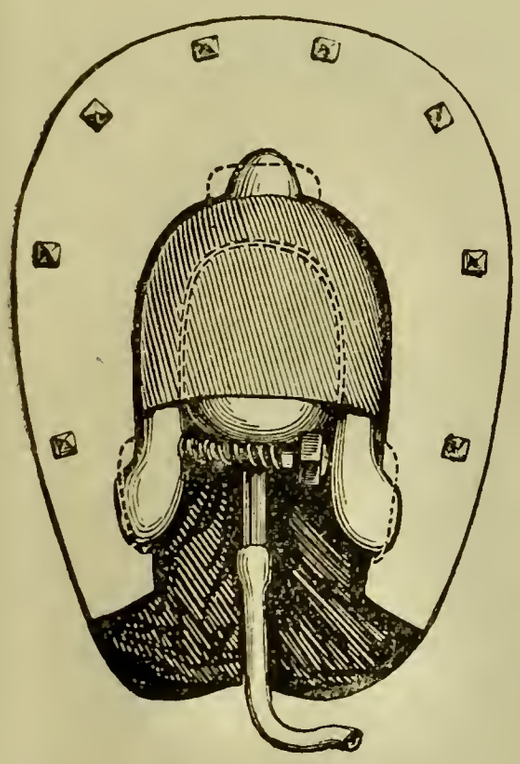


FIG. 175.—*Chaussure exploratrice*, or pneumatic foot-bulb of Marey, for the registration of the gaits by compressed air.

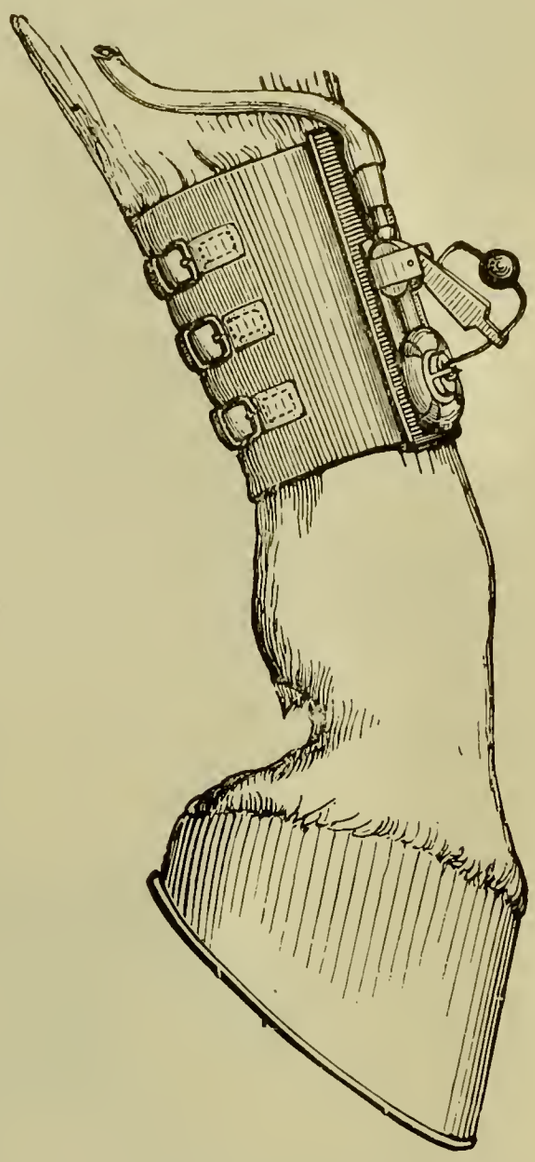


FIG. 176.—*Bracelet explorateur*, or pneumatic bracelet of Marey, for the registration of the gaits by compressed air.

It is easy to understand that the least displacement of the latter will leave its trace upon the paper. All pressure will produce a more or less marked deviation of the point of the needle; if there is no pressure the line traced will be straight from the point of its origin to its termination.

The figure of the *tracing* of a gait (Fig. 174) is therefore a curve offering a series of vertical undulations, *a*, *a*, which correspond to the pressure transmitted to the registering apparatus by the concussion and the contact of the hoofs upon the ground.

The tracing reads from left to right. The ascent, *b*, *b*, *b*, of each undulation indicates an increase of pressure, a *contact* of the member; the descent, *c*, *c*, *c*, signifies, on the contrary, a diminution, an *elevation* of the member. For the same velocity of the revolving cylinder, the more *vertical* the ascent is the more sudden the percussion with the soil has been; the higher it is, *e*, the stronger the percussion has been. When the curve, *f*, at the summit of the undulation becomes parallel to the horizontal, it is a sign that the pressure is uniform; when it is parallel

to the horizontal at the base of the undulation, *g*, *g*, it shows that the diminution of pressure remains stationary.

Four inscribing needles, corresponding to the four feet of the horse, and perpendicular to the axis of the cylinder, trace upon the latter the *contacts* and the *elevations* of the members.

Each foot is provided (Fig. 175) with a *pneumatic bulb* (*chaussure exploratrice*), composed of an India-rubber bulb stuffed with hairs and maintained under the hoof by three claws or catches which fasten it to the shoe. Each time the foot is placed on the ground, the bulb, strongly compressed, forces a portion of the air which it contains into the registering drum. When the foot is raised, it again becomes filled with the air which was expelled, and resumes its form.

This apparatus not being utilizable on the hard ground of ordinary roads, M. Marey has invented another very ingenious instrument which registers the movements of the feet on any kind of soil.

It consists (Fig. 176) of a sort of leather bracelet, attached by means of leather straps to the canon of the horse. In front, this bracelet carries a flat rubber bulb, communicating through the tube of transmission with the registering drum. Upon this bulb is laid a piece of copper inclined at about 45 degrees and articulated at its superior extremity. Finally, upon a rod parallel to the plate of copper glides a leaden ball whose variable position permits an augmentation or a diminution of the pressure which this articulated apparatus is capable of exercising upon the rubber bulb.

When the foot touches the ground, the ball tends to continue its course and suddenly compresses the bulb; when the foot is elevated, the inertia of the ball, in its turn, produces a new compression.

Tubes of transmission (Fig. 177), with a thick wall in order to resist twisting, and maintained along the members by bands of flannel, are connected with the registering drums, themselves

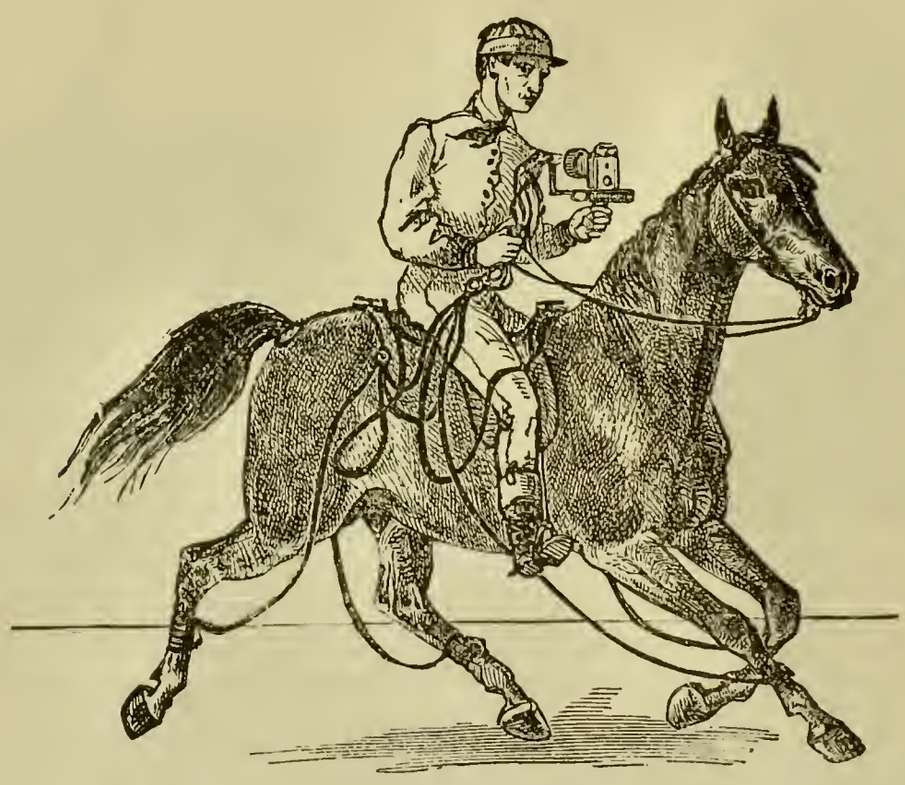


Fig. 177.—Registering apparatus of Marey applied upon the horse at the trot.

fixed to the cylinder which the rider holds. A ball of rubber, placed in one of his hands, enables him, when it is compressed, to bring the needles in contact with the paper. In this manner the tracing can commence or terminate at the will of the experimenter as soon as the gait of the horse has been regulated.

Process with the Electric Current.—Since his first publications, M. Marey, always in search of improvement, has written the following on this subject:[1]

[1] Marey, La méthode graphique dans les sciences expérimentales, et particulièrement en physiologie et en médecine, Paris, 1878, p. 160.

"If I were to commence again, at the present day, experiments of this nature, I would give up the compressed-air process and adopt the light *electrical needles*, like those of M. Marcel Deprez. Thin conducting wires would be more easily arranged along the members of the horse than the rubber tubes, and it would be more easy, I believe, to attach under the hoof an apparatus which closes and opens an electric current during the contacts and elevations of the foot than to apply the pneumatic foot-bulb. . . . The notation of the gait would thus be obtained directly, in a *more precise* and simpler manner than in my first experiments."

This registration of the gaits of the horse by means of electricity has just been achieved by one of us.[1]

Our apparatus is composed: 1st, of four *chaussures exploratrices;* 2d, four *dry piles* of chloride of silver carried by the rider or placed in the vehicle drawn by the horse; 3d, four *electrical needles* of Marcel Deprez; 4th, a portable registering cylinder revolving at a uniform and known velocity.

Thin conducting wires, all well isolated, place the piles in communication with the *chaussures exploratrices* and the latter with the needles of Marcel Deprez; they follow the tract of the members against which they are maintained.

Our exploratory shoe consists essentially (Figs. 178 and 179) of a pedal, *P*, movable around an axis, *V*, attached to the frame *G*, which is solidly fixed to the shoe by means of two screws, *E*. A spring, *R*, keeps the pedal separated whenever the foot is in the air. In front, the latter is prolonged by a piece, *P'*, which is slightly curved in front of the wall, while at its posterior extremity it is provided with a point of contact, *C*, which is placed in relation with another point of contact, well isolated, adapted to the frame, and united to the knob *B*. A second knob, *B'*, receives the other conducting wire. Finally, a rubber membrane, *M*, preserves the points of contact from mud or dust.

It can be seen that, in front and on the side, the pedal forms a box to prevent the entrance of foreign bodies between it and the frame, a disposition which assures the liberty of its movements.[2]

So long as the foot is in the air the two points of contact touch each other and complete the current; but as soon as the hoof touches the ground they are separated and interrupt it. At each raising and resting of the foot it is again closed and broken. The closing and breaking being instantaneous, and, moreover, the force of the spring and the projection of the pedal being capable of modification at will, it is easy to give to this apparatus great strength with all the precision and sensibility desirable.

Although we have not yet had the opportunity to employ it in our researches, its construction being but just completed, we have nevertheless been able to assure ourselves of its accuracy, in all the gaits, upon such a resisting surface as that of our macadamized roads. By its aid we expect to register with more accuracy than has heretofore been accomplished the periods of the change of contact, the rhythm of the beats, the number, the nature, and the diverse bases of support which may exist during the accomplishment of the complete step of any gait, normal or pathological.

Hydrostatic Method.—M. L. Hoffmann, of Berlin, has conceived the idea of applying to the analysis of the gaits of the horse the method called the *hydrostatic*, invented by H. Vierordt for the study of the gaits in man.[3]

---

[1] G. Barrier, Explorateur électrique pour l'enregistrement des allures du cheval, in Bulletin de la Société centrale de médecine vétérinaire; séance du 28 Mars, 1889.

[2] Since the construction of this figure, we have given to the posterior part of the pedal an analogous disposition, which dispenses with the rubber membrane, if needs be.

[3] L. Hoffmann, Das Exterieur des Pferdes, p. 308, *et seq.*, Berlin, 1887.

To this end, he places some thirty metres of white paper along the ground over which the horse is to travel. Besides, he attaches to the external side of each hoof a brass tube directed

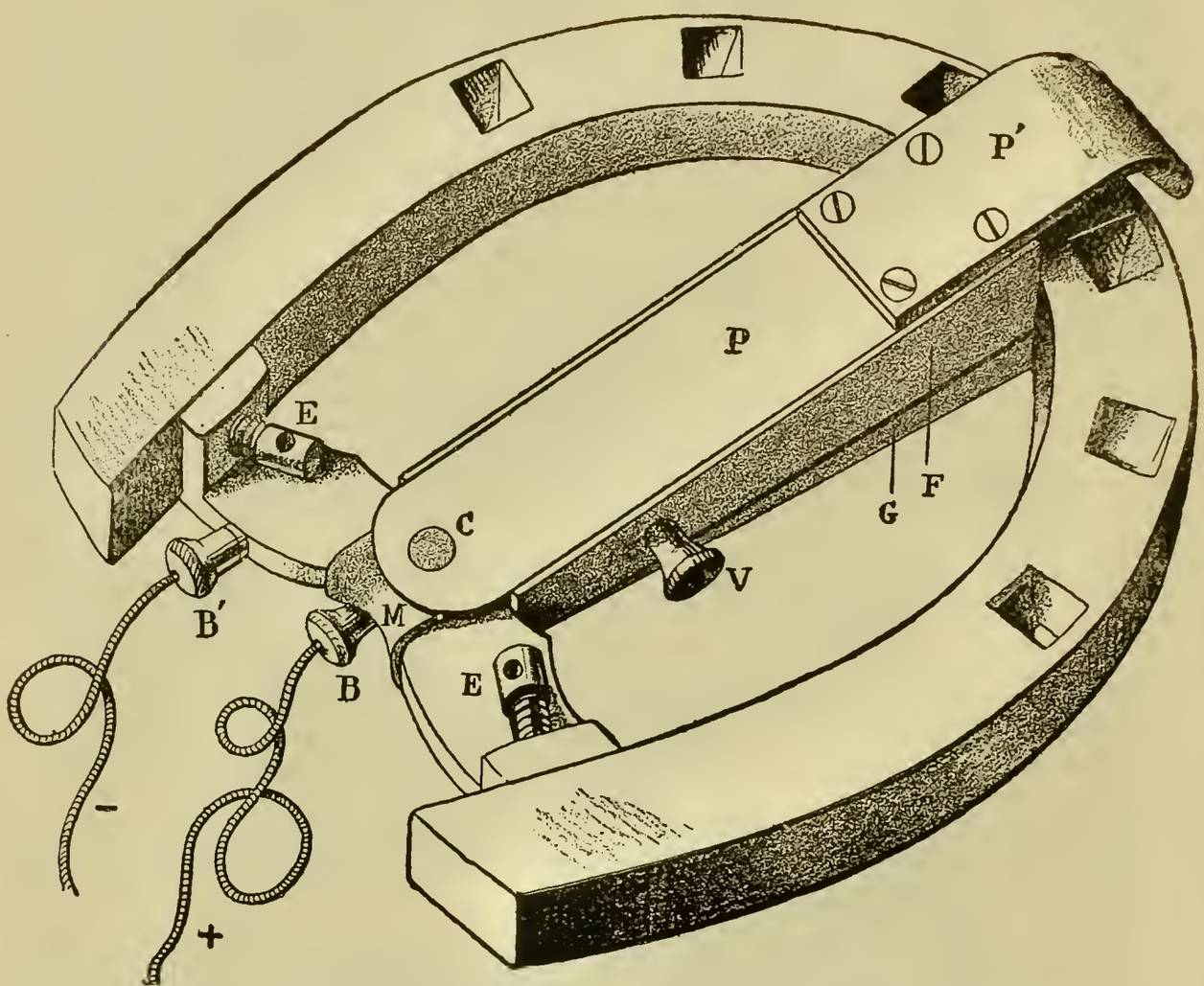


FIG. 178.—*Chaussure exploratrice* for registering the gaits by electricity.

PP', pedal with spring.
V, axis of the latter, unscrewing for cleaning.
G, frame for the pedal.
EE', screws fixing it to the shoe.
F, parietes of pedal forming a box.
C, one of the points of contact.
BB', knobs for attaching the conducting wires.
M, India-rubber membrane.

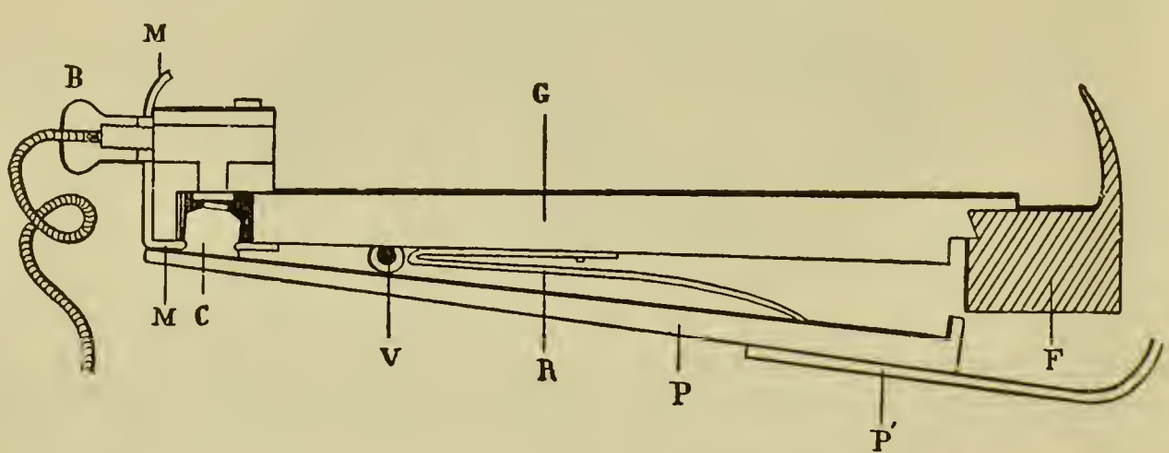


FIG. 179.—Longitudinal and median section of the *chaussure exploratrice.*
(Same letters as in Fig. 178, except *F*, which represents the section of the shoe at the toe.)

vertically and tapering at its extremity turned towards the ground. This tube, by its other extremity, is connected with a reservoir containing a colored liquid, by means of an India-rubber tube attached along the members. The reservoir destined to feed the tubes of the anterior feet is placed upon the withers; that for those of the posterior is lodged upon the croup behind the rider.

When all is in readiness, the animal is made to walk over the white paper, at the same time that the diversely-colored liquids of the receptacles are emitted through the pointed end of the brass tube. The points where the hoof touches the paper are indicated by small pools, while the elevations are marked lines of a variable configuration connecting the pools. These lines are regarded as representing the horizontal projection of the trajectories described by the feet in motion. This method is completed by the photographing of the animal in motion, to obtain the position of the members in the air.

The hydrostatic method, applied to the horse, does not seem likely to remain in use. The tracings which it furnishes are complicated, very difficult of interpretation, and often dissimilar even for the same gaits; they do not exactly reproduce the horizontal projection of the trajectory of the hoofs, from the fact that during the evolution of the members the liquid jets are not always perpendicular to the soil, the inferior face of the feet looking sometimes behind, sometimes inwardly, at other times forward. As to the trail, it is possible to note it directly in a much more simple and exact manner.

Data furnished by the Graphic Method.—The graphic notations, which can be obtained by the process of the air needles or that of the electrical needles, give us important results. They enable us to recognize:

1st. The precise moment of the elevation and the contact of each member.

2d. The duration of each of these phases, by the interval which exists between the instant of the resting and the raising of each foot.

3d. The rhythm of the beats,—that is to say, the measure of the cadence of the gait.

4th. The number of feet in the air and on the ground at a given moment, or the nature, the succession, and the number of the bases of support formed during the execution of a complete step.

5th. The duration of each period of suspension in the leaping gaits.

6th. Finally, the velocity of the feet in relation to that of the body. This velocity is proportional to the duration of their contact with the soil.

It is possible, by calculation, to deduce from this last principle the position of the feet in the air at any moment during the progression. This was known long ago to M. Lenoble du Teil,[1] M. Raabe,[2] and their disciples. But let there be no mistake here: if the situation or, better, the relative distances of the feet in space can be determined, it does not follow that the attitude of the members in movement is recognizable. Photography alone is capable of instructing us on this point, as we will soon see. The graphic method, registering only the duration of the contact, the rhythm of the beats, and the number of the feet which participate in supporting the body, is naturally powerless to teach us the amount of space passed over during the evolution of a complete step. It tells us the nature and the duration of the bases of support, but leaves us ignorant of the extent of these bases and their direction; it shows us in the leaping gaits a phase of suspension when the body altogether leaves the ground; but, at the moment when the contact is re-established, we do not know whether the body falls upon the same place or, on the contrary, has progressed while it was in the air.

Its indications, for example, will be identical for the trot and the trot upon place, for the ordinary gallop and the gallop upon place; it will be the same for

---

[1] Lenoble du Teil, loc. cit., 1877.

[2] E. Barroil, L'art équestre, p. 92, et suiv., Paris, 1887.

a man who walks and one who, without advancing, "marks the step" with the same cadence.

Finally, the graphic method tells us nothing as to the position of the members in space, an important omission for those whom the analysis of the play of the articular segments interests, either from a point of view of animal mechanics or of the artistic representation of the horse in motion.

3d. **Photography.**—Photography has filled up this omission. The extreme sensibility of the plates of gelatino-bromide of silver, the perfections of the objectives and of other modern improvements, have placed this process above all those difficulties which but lately retarded its use in the reproduction of bodies during locomotion. It is capable of representing, in fact, the vertical projection of all the attitudes taken by the animal which moves in front of the instrument, according to a plane perpendicular to the axis of the latter. As the moving object can move along a graduated scale situated below it, nothing is more easy than to ascertain the space it travels over during a unit of time,—that is to say, the velocity with which it is animated.

The photographic methods furnish two kinds of registrations:

a. They simply give the image of one or more successive attitudes effected by the animal in motion; or

b. They notate a series of successive attitudes with equal intervals of time.

This latter method, which registers simultaneously the time, the space described, as well as the diverse phases of the movement, is due also to the wonderful ingenuity of M. Marey, who has given to it the name of *chrono-photography.*

a. **Instantaneous Photography.**—In 1879, Mr. E. L. Muybridge, of San Francisco, effected a veritable revolution in the world of physiologists and artists by sending to Paris a collection of photographs taken instantaneously from horses moving at the walk, the trot, the gallop, and even from race-horses going at full speed.[1]

Mr. Muybridge, in order to arrive at this remarkable result, has arranged twenty-four photographic apparatus side by side, all provided with a system of peculiar clicks. Each apparatus was provided with a very fine thread, which stretched across the trail of the horse and was attached to a fixed point situated on the opposite side. The mounted horse, in this manner, successively met and broke each thread, producing thus the unlatching of the corresponding apparatus, which opened and closed almost instantaneously.

We can understand from this how Mr. Muybridge was able to obtain the truly surprising situations of the members, which it would have been impossible to acquire under ordinary conditions on account of the, at times, prodigious speed of the extremities in certain gaits. In the gallop, for example, contacts are here placed in evidence (Fig. 180) which would readily be doubted if we did not find exactly, by following the series of photographs in the order in which they have been taken, the principal periods of this gait, already known.

These photographs, however, instructive though they were, failed to be quite satisfactory on account of their small size. In spite of their subsequent

---

[1] These photographs have been reproduced in several publications, notably:
L'Illustration, no. du 22 Janvier, 1879.
La Nature, 1879, 1er semestre, p. 83.
Le Cheval, de E. Duhousset, p. 24.

FIG. 180.—Instantaneous photographs of the fast gallop, after Muybridge.

enlargement, they were always wanting in details and form, resembling more a Chinese chromo than a true portrait.

To-day the improvements made in the apparatus enable us to take larger photographs; many amateurs have produced excellent, well-formed, very distinct, and precise proofs for the scientific man as well as for the artist.

But these portraits, however well they may have been executed, only show the isolated attitudes, and not the succession of all the phases of the gait passed through by the animal.

In this respect the labors of Muybridge had not yet been surpassed, when, quite recently,[1] M. Ottomar Anschütz, of Lissa (Germany), announced new results. He sent to Paris, towards the end of the year 1888, a series of beautiful instantaneous photographs reproducing the fast walk, the trot, the slow gallop, the fast gallop, and leaping. Each of these gaits is here represented by twenty successive positions, taken at very short and probably equal intervals of time, although, according to the author, the intervals between the various photographs were not exactly measured. A scale, graduated in metres and decimetres, placed along the trail described by the animal, allows the appreciation of the length of the diverse bases of support, the separation and the position of the members in the air, the total length of the step, and, finally, the space embraced by each of the members.

The Lissa photographs, to which we will make numerous references in the course of this work, show a considerable improvement over those from San Francisco, although M. Anschütz has not yet divulged the secret of his process. We would find them absolutely irreproachable if the intervals between the photographs were known. Unfortunately, this important omission prevents the deduction from them of a certain number of interesting scientific facts. Nevertheless, such as they are, artists will consult them with advantage.

The instantaneous photographs, when multiplied and scattered abroad, will soon appear less fantastical; painters and sculptors will in the long run draw from them those ideas which will give their works that stamp of accuracy and truth which is but too often conspicuous by its absence. The attentive observation of animals in motion, now that we have been warned of those phenomena which the eye was at first unable to seize, will become incontestably more perfect. Little by little animal painters will abandon the fictitious and fantastic attitudes to which they have accustomed us, and will show us more and more animated Nature as she is, and not as the imagination or our inexperience leads us to conceive.

b. **Chrono-photographs.**—M. Marey has gone a step farther in this direction. By means of an extremely ingenious experimental process, he has been able to take upon the same immobile plate, and at *equal intervals of time*, a series of photographs representing the different positions which an animal in movement has occupied in space during a series of known instants.

"Let us suppose," says he,[2] "that an apparatus be turned towards the path of a man walking, and that we take a first image in a very short time. If the plate preserve its sensibility, we would be able at the end of an instant to take another image which would show the walker in a

---

[1] For more details see G. Barrier, Présentation de nouvelles photographies instantanées relatives aux allures du cheval, in Bulletin de la Société centrale de médecine vétérinaire, 14 Février, 1889.

[2] Marey, Comptes-Rendus de l'Académie des sciences, 3 Juillet, 1882. Id., Développement de la méthode graphique par l'emploi de la photographie, Paris, 1884.

different attitude and in another place of the space; this second image, compared to the first, would indicate exactly all the displacements which were effected at this second instant. By increasing thus the images at very short intervals of time, we would obtain, with perfect accuracy, the succession of the phases of locomotion. Now, in order to preserve in the photographic glass plate the

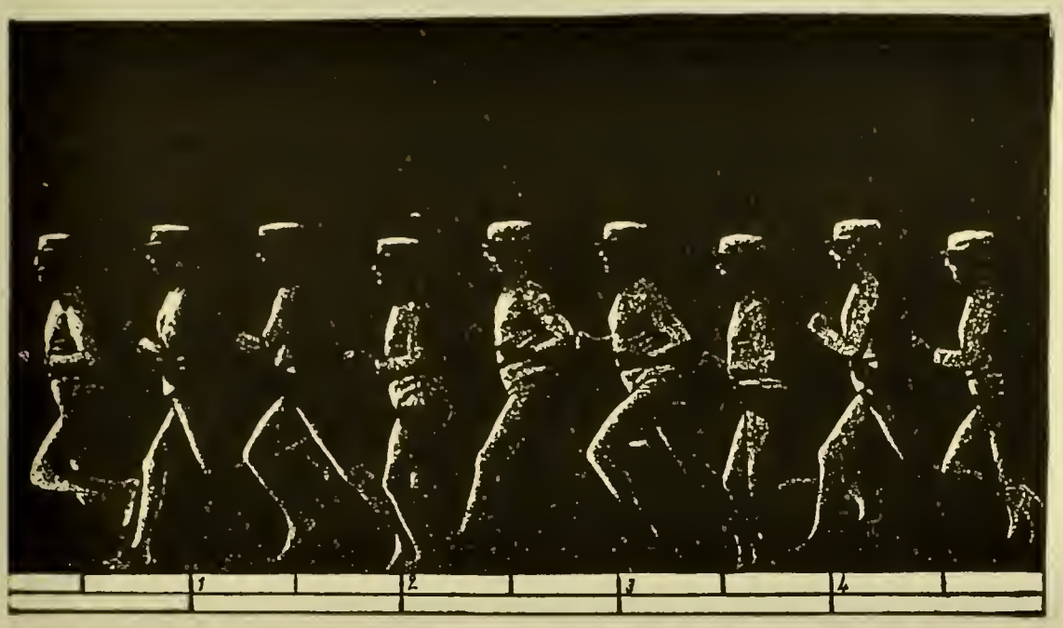


FIG. 181.—Chrono-photograph of the *walk* of a man. (M. Marey.)

sensibility necessary to receive the successive impressions, the space in front of the apparatus must be absolutely dark and the man or the animal passing before it must stand out in white upon a black ground.

FIG. 182.—Chrono-photograph of the *leap* of a man. (M. Marey.)

"My screen is a cavity whose walls are black. A man entirely clothed in white, with the light of the sun shining brightly upon him, passes, walking, running [Fig. 181], or leaping [Fig. 182], while the photographic apparatus, provided with an oval window rotating more or less rapidly, takes his image at more or less close intervals."

"This method can be applied to the study of the different types of locomotion; a white horse or a white bird will in the same manner give the series of their attitudes."

This process has been recently attempted upon the horse by Messrs. Marey and Pagès.[1]

[1] Marey et Pagès, Mouvement du membre pelvien chez l'homme, l'éléphant et le cheval, in Comptes-Rendus de l'Académie des sciences, 18 Juillet, 1887.

With the aid of distinguishing marks applied upon the body over the articular centres, and united afterwards on the proof by straight lines, they have succeeded in obtaining the images of the diverse positions of the locomotory segments during the evolution of the members, as well as the exact trajectory of the centres of movement (Fig. 183).

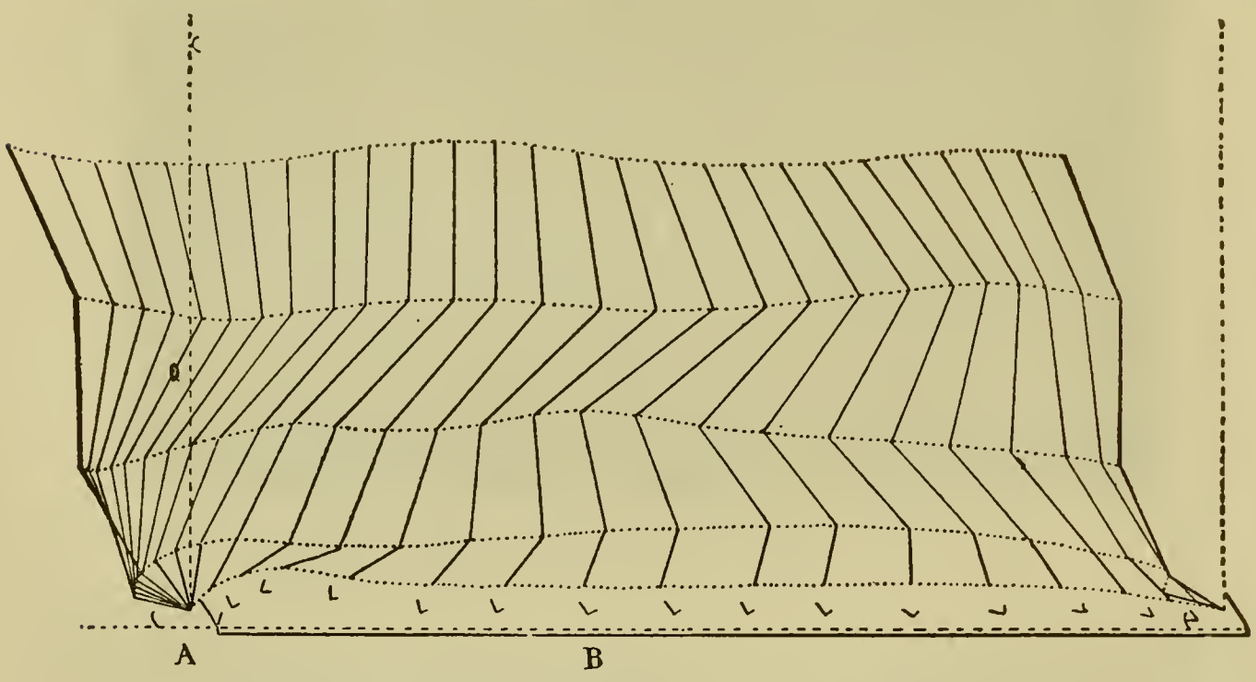


FIG. 183.—Movement of the anterior member of the horse.
(Obtained by means of chrono-photography.)
A. Phase of contact. | *B.* Phase of elevation.

This achievement is significant. It not only permits us to determine with great accuracy the *limitary positions* of flexion and extension and the *field of oscillation* of the osseous levers in the rapid motors, but it also opens the way to the discovery in the future of the scientific theory of locomotion, which has been so ably treated in the splendid works of the Weber brothers. All the investigations undertaken in this direction will be rich in facts of inestimable value to those who pursue the rational study of animal mechanics.

For ordinary requirements, however, chrono-photography can be greatly simplified, and thereby rendered intelligible and accessible to the greatest number of individuals. All that this method need do is to record, always at equal intervals of time, the principal attitudes characteristic of a given gait. The images, in this manner, being less numerous, the ultimate results will be less confused. Instead of remaining contented with the axes of movements of the bony segments, we shall be enabled to obtain true portraits, as true to nature as those of Anschütz, and quite as valuable to the scientific man as to the artist.

Systems of Notation of the Gaits.

In order to interpret in a clear and simple manner the indications, at times very complicated, furnished by the registering apparatus, we make use of conventional symbols which represent the rhythm of the beats, the duration of the contact with the ground, the mode of association of the members, etc. These symbols, altogether comparable to those which are employed in music to represent the sounds and their intervals, constitute, by their mode of combination, what is conventionally called the *notation*.

The systems of notation are not very numerous, nor are they equally satisfactory. Let us rapidly pass them in review.

1st. **Method of Lecoq.**—We will do no more than place it on record here, for it does not merit to be preserved.

Upon two series of vertical columns (Fig. 184) the *contacts* are indicated by black ovals and the *elevations* by blank ovals. Each series corresponds to a lateral biped; the contact of the anterior member is noted above, that of the posterior below. The number of columns in each series is equal to that of the *times* of the gait necessary to complete one step. Thus there must be four in the *walk* (of which the figure reproduces the notation), two only in the *trot*, etc., because the times in these gaits are of different numbers.

But as all these columns are of the same width,—that is to say, of the same value in relation to the duration of the phenomena which they are destined to indicate,—the method is inapplicable to the gaits whose times are of unequal lengths. The method, in such cases, is inadequate, and necessitates the addition of a number of columns or a width proportional to the duration which they represent. This complicates much the reading and the simplicity of the notation.

Fig. 184.

2d. **Hodochronometric Scale of Vincent and Goiffon.**[1]—Two former professors at the Alfort Veterinary School, Vincent and Goiffon, have conceived the ingenious idea of applying the musical notation to the schematic representation of the gaits of the horse.

They have invented for this purpose a scale called the *hodochronometric*,[2] which is nothing more than a stave of four horizontal lines, *AD*, *PG*, *AG*, *PD*, similar to those which carry the notes in music, and intersected at equal distances by vertical lines, *I*, *II*, *III*, *IV*, which mark the *time* like, we might say, so many *bars* in music. Each *time* or *bar* is again subdivided into three spaces, making altogether twelve spaces for the whole length of the stave.

This measure corresponds to a *complete step*. The *ordinary step*, for example, is executed by the horse in four bars, whose beginning is indicated by the *beats* of the feet; the latter are shown by means of four *notes*, which are: *AD*, the anterior right member; *PG*, the posterior left; *AG*, the anterior left; and *PD*, the posterior right.

Each one of these notes will be written on the corresponding line of the stave in the order in which it will be given out, it being understood that the phases of contact will be represented by *continuous lines*, and the phases of elevation or projection of the member by *dotted lines*. The length of these lines will be equivalent to the time during which each foot *keeps up its note* (rests upon the ground), or, on the contrary, *does not keep it* (is maintained in the air).

Let us now interpret some of the points of the *notation of the walk*, as reproduced in Fig. 185:

---

[1] Vincent et Goiffon, Mémoire artificielle des principes relatifs à la fidèle représentation des animaux. In-folio, Paris, 1779. t. i. p. 87.

[2] From Οδος, path; Χρόνος, time; and Μέτρον, measure. This word is improperly applied, for the scale in question does not measure the path described by the members. Moreover, it should be written *hodochronometric* and not *odochronometric*, as Vincent and Goiffon have stated.

1st. During the *first bar*, the first sound or beat is given by the anterior right member, *AD*, which commences its contact; the posterior right, *PD*, accomplishes the second half of its rest; the anterior left, *AG*, commences its elevation; the posterior left, *PG*, terminates the second half of its elevation.

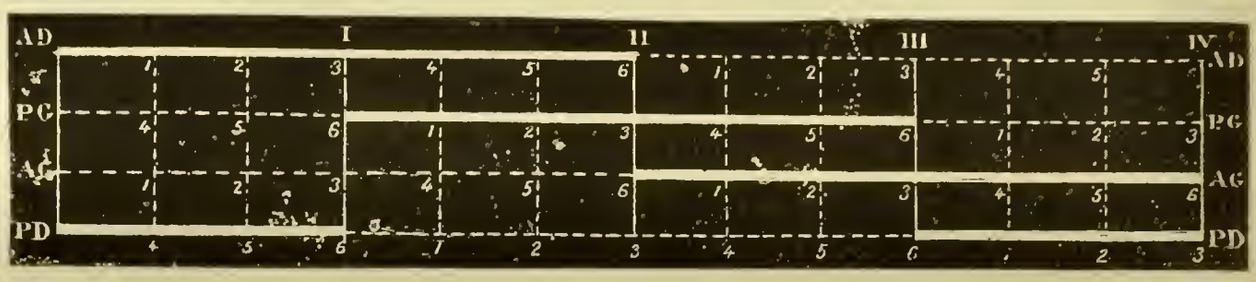


Fig. 185.

2d. During the *second bar*, the second beat is given by the posterior left, *PG*, which commences its contact; the anterior right, *AD*, finishes its contact; the posterior right, *PD*, commences its elevation; as to the anterior left, *AG*, it terminates its elevation.

3d. During the *third bar*, the third beat is given by the anterior left, *AG*, which commences its contact; the posterior left, *PG*, finishes its contact; the anterior right, *AD*, commences its elevation, while that of the posterior right, *PD*, is terminated.

Finally, during the *fourth bar*, the fourth beat is given by the posterior right, *PD*, which commences its contact, and that of the anterior left, *AG*, is terminated; the posterior left, *PG*, commences its rising, while the anterior right, *AD*, is reaching the end of this phase.

The step is completed; the *whole stave* is *played*. Each member has given its note, has *kept it up* during two bars, and has been *silent* during the other two.

During each bar, also, the body has rested on *two* members: upon the right lateral bipeds, *AD/PD* (the first bar); upon the right diagonal, *AD/PG* (the second bar); upon the left lateral bipeds, *AG/PG* (the third bar); upon the left diagonal, *AG/PD* (the fourth bar).

The beats or sounds of the members have succeeded each other in the following order: *AD*, *PG*, *AG*, *PD*,—that is to say, *diagonally*, etc.

All these characters are those of the *ordinary walk*. A glance over the scheme of its *notation* suffices to comprehend them.

Whatever may be the combinations of the rhythm of the beats, the duration of the relations and the elevations, the mode of association or succession of the members, this scale will at a glance indicate them in all their modifications, and in a manner clearer and more rapid than can be depicted in ordinary language or writing. In this consists the great superiority of this system over that of Lecoq.

3d. **Notation of M. Marey.**[1]—The method employed by Professor Marey is based upon the same principle as the preceding, although slightly modified in its details.

First, the notations of the anterior members are placed one below the other; those of the posterior members are treated in the same manner. This method allows an easier comparison of the bipedal locomotion of man with that of quadruped animals.

The contacts or periods of the foot touching the ground are represented by the wide lines: the *white* for the *right* members and the *gray* for the *left*. The phases of elevation, during which the body is entirely in the air, are, on the contrary, represented by simple intervals. Thus confusion is avoided and the reading and interpretation of the phenomena are much simplified.

Finally, whenever it is possible, the *tracings* obtained with the registering needles are annexed and superposed to the corresponding *notations*.

---

[1] Marey, La machine animale, p. 147.

Let us represent, for example, the *running* of a man by using the *tracing* of this gait, as it was obtained by M. Marey (Fig. 186).

The *continuous* line, *D*, corresponds to the curve furnished by the contacts of the *right* foot; the *interrupted* line, *G*, to that of the contacts of the *left* foot. The registering surface presents only two horizontal lines, 1 and 2, since here only two members are in question.

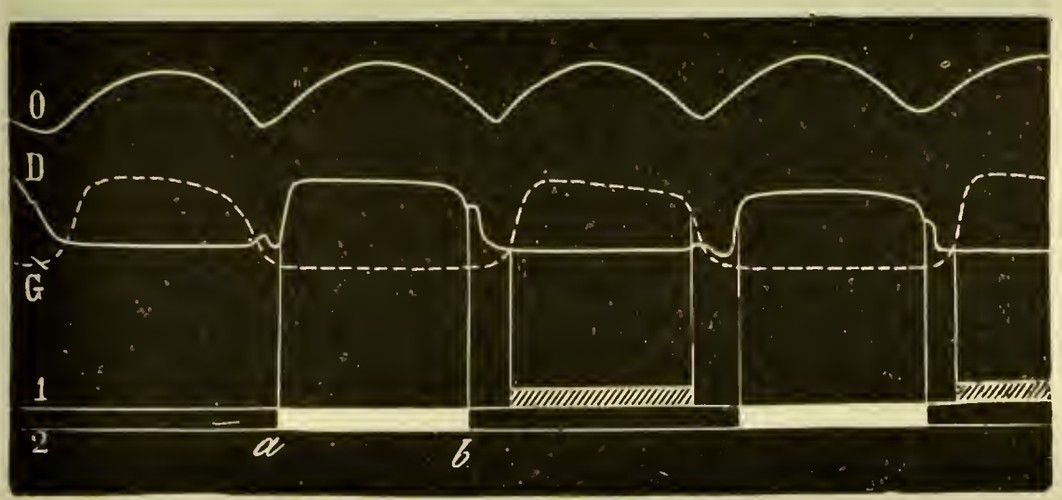


FIG. 186.

This being said, let us draw a perpendicular, *a*, upon the plane, beginning at the point where the curve of the right foot ascends; this indicates the commencement of the contact of this foot. Draw another perpendicular, *b*, from the point where this curve descends, which shows when the foot is raised from the ground. Now let us join the bases of the two perpendiculars by a heavy white line; this line, *ab*, will evidently have a length proportional to the duration of the contact of the right foot.

By making a similar diagram with the curve of the left foot, we will obtain the same rotation for its contacts. The same operation is practised upon succeeding curves of the right or the left foot.

The intervals between the white lines correspond to the duration of the elevations of the right foot; those between the gray indicate the elevations of the left.

As to the intervals comprised between the gray and the white lines, during which each member is raised, they represent the duration of the periods of *suspension* of the body.

This notation, applied to the horse, is equally simple. The only difference is that the registering plane contains four lines instead of two, because the phases of four members are to be noted.

Dugès[1] has very appropriately compared the walking quadruped to two men walking and placed one in front of the other: the one in front corresponds to the anterior biped, the one behind to the posterior. Hence the notation of the gaits of the quadruped should be similar to that which the two men furnish, if they walk with the same rhythm and make the same number of steps. In order to establish this, it will suffice to superpose the notations of the one in front to those of the one behind, keeping in view the proper rhythm and the relations which will exist between the movements of the one and the other.

Let us select, for example, the *amble*, a gait in which, says M. Marey,[2] the two pedestrians (anterior and posterior), going at a walk, both execute the same movements with perfect concordance. It is apparent that the notation will furnish us that in Fig. 187, whence it is proved that the beats of the right foot and those of the left foot, produced in the same time by the man in front and the one behind, are recorded by similar lines exactly superposed and of equal length.

---

[1] Dugès, Traité de physiologie comparée de l'homme et des animaux, t. ii. pp. 170 and 174, Montpellier, 1838.

[2] Marey, loc. cit., p. 146.

The notation of M. Marey, although almost identical with that of Vincent and Goiffon, has, nevertheless, the preference over the latter in being clearer and more explicit.

FIG. 187.

4th. **Notation of M. Lenoble du Teil.**[1]—The method of Professor Lenoble du Teil, of the School of the Stud of Pin, is without doubt the most perfect from a point of view of the intelligence which it imparts from mere ocular inspection. Its principle is always that of the musical notation invented by Vincent and Goiffon, but it adds a new idea: that of the *path described* by the feet. Hence the name of *hodochronometric scale* is much more applicable to it than to any other, and we would give to it the preference, had not its author designated it under that of *method of the planes of the ground surface.*

It consists as follows (Fig. 188):

Upon a sheet of paper are traced a certain number of vertical columns representing equal fractions of time. To the left of these columns is indicated the trail of the gait, by marking in a known scale the intervals which separate the imprints.

The line XY indicates the direction of movement.

We will suppose, for example, that the two feet of the anterior bipeds have left upon the ground the imprints DD' (for the right) and GG' (for the left).

Suppose, now, that this surface begins to glide from right to left at the moment when the foot G commences its contact; this foot, instead of leaving a simple imprint of its shoe upon the ground, will trace a line, Pl', so much longer as the contact is prolonged.

During this period of contact, what has the opposite foot done? We know that it was advanced after a short period of exchange of contact. As the surface, however, continues to glide during this action, the foot D, which should rest at D', will rest at P' at the instant of the end of the contact (l') of G.

Consequently, the horizontal projection of each of the points described by the foot D, through the air, instead of being a straight line parallel to the axis of the trail, will be an oblique line, lP'.

There a new transverse line, $P'l''$, will represent the duration of the contact of D' with the ground.

During the period of contact of D', the foot G, beginning at the point l', will execute its period of projection and touch at P'', the moment corresponding to the termination of the contact of D', etc.

It only remains now to trace through any point a vertical line, KL, to be immediately informed as to the respective positions of the two feet with the place where this line intersects the lines of contact and those of projection.

If to the notation of the anterior members alone were added that of the posterior, the phenomena would not be more complicated. Likewise the construction of the diagram would be quite as simple in cases in which the number of

[1] J. Lenoble du Teil, Locomotion quadrupède étudiée sur le cheval in Journal des Haras, année 1887, p. 224.

the feet was increased. It would be sufficient to have a larger surface for notation; this is always indispensable when it concerns the representation of the leaping or the elongated gaits, the obliquity and length of the notation augmenting with the amplitude of the steps and the projection of the feet.

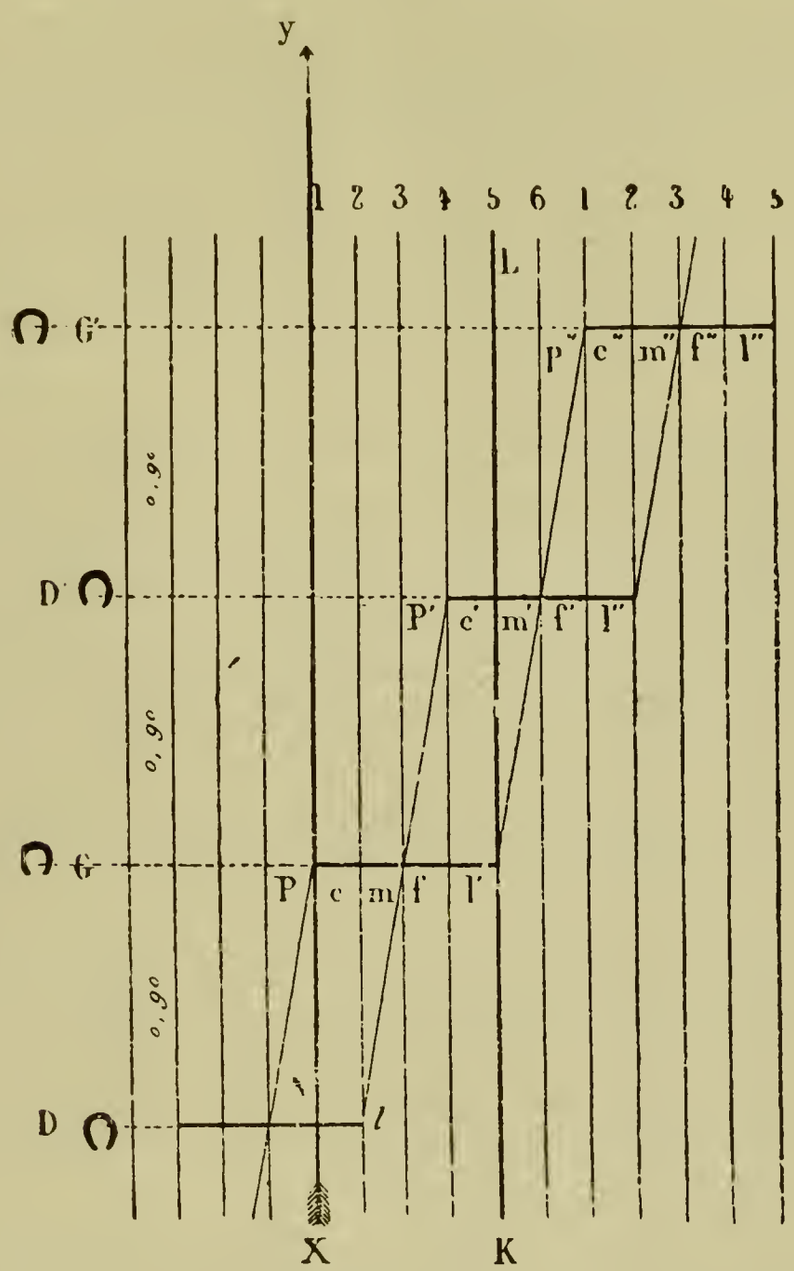


FIG. 188.

Such is the principle of the ingenious method of M. Lenoble du Teil. It has the advantage of recording all the data relative to the *duration* and the *space passed over* which the registering apparatus or chrono-photography can collect from a given gait. When the diagram is once constructed, all desirable information relative to a complete analysis of the phenomena can be obtained at a glance in a concise form and compared the one with the other, which is not to be overlooked.

Unfortunately, the scheme which it furnishes has the disadvantage of requiring a large area. Besides, the notations of the anterior members are intermingled with those of the posterior in the same manner as the imprints of the trail. The reading of it is also less clear than in the method of Marey, and it is less easy to compare, as in Dugès's method, the particular characters

of the walk of two bipeds, in order to determine the general relation which they maintain as a whole. Nevertheless, it is possible to ameliorate, in a great measure, these defects. Nothing prevents, for example, the representation of the contacts and the elevations of the *right* members by the continuous or the heavy lines, and those of the *left* by the dotted lines. In addition, it is easy to differentiate the notations of the fore- and the hind-bipeds by simply modifying the width of the tracings or lines which correspond to them. This is precisely the procedure which M. Marey has employed with success to facilitate the reading of the tracing of the mode of progression.

As to the smallness of the diagram, it cannot pass beyond certain limits without danger of resulting in confusion of the imprints of the trail, especially when those of the hind-foot are in front of or behind those of the fore-foot. This, however, is more a typographical defect, and of little importance as regards the correctness of the theory itself or its originators.

Synthetic Study of the Mode of Progression.

The generalization of the materials collected by the diverse analytical methods which we have passed in review, their reconstruction into a unit, their relations, and the reproduction of these facts into a material form in a manner to give to the mind, at first greatly confused, the actual reality,—such is the difficult problem which constitutes the synthesis of the modes of progression or the gaits.

Each analytical process offers its corresponding synthetical process.

To the results of direct observation are contrasted, first, the efforts made by artists to represent the horse by design, painting, and sculpture; also those whose object is to simulate experimentally the rhythm of the beats; finally, those which propose to retrace, with the eye, the imprints left upon the ground by the feet.

With the results furnished by instantaneous photographs are combined the diverse forms of *animators*, in which are placed the photographs themselves or simply the designs which are reproduced from them.

Finally, to the results given by the registering apparatus correspond special instruments, demonstrating the notations of the gaits or the series of transitions which show the passage from one to another.

Let us examine each of these processes in particular.

1st. **Artistic Processes: Design; Painting; Sculpture.**—It suffices to pass through museums and expositions to assure ourselves of the errors of ancient as well as modern artists in the exact representation of the movements of the horse. This animal is nearly always posed in false attitudes and in conditions of impossible equilibrium. If he is depicted moving at a walk, the members are placed in the position which they assume in the amble or the trot; if he is represented at the gallop, the artist only succeeds in producing a spurious attitude which is neither rearing nor leaping. If he is stopped on two members, the chances are it will be on two lateral bipeds, on which station cannot exist, rather than upon a diagonal biped, which is the more accurate. Finally, even when the general movement is correct, the fault in reality lies in the details: thus, one foot is so placed that it cannot be elevated in time; another is too slow in arriving on the ground; again, it is the axis of the body which conflicts with the direction of the members; finally, it is that of the neck or of the head. We should never come to the end if we passed in review the long series of errors of

painters and sculptors, among whom so few have abandoned the precedents inculcated by the classical routine. To this end, we owe tribute to Colonel Duhousset for the persevering efforts with which he led the new school to a more correct interpretation of animated nature. Little by little the cause of equine realism will triumph over the conventional art, which censures with disdain the *innovators* who assume the liberty of announcing its errors to the public.[1]

2d. **Reproduction of the Rhythm of the Beats.**—One of the most prominent of the phenomena in the gaits is the succession of the sounds which are audible. This succession does not deceive the trained ear, and permits it not only to judge of the variety of the gait which it hears, but also to recognize if this progression is accomplished with its normal characters.

With the purpose of demonstrating, in our course of lectures, the cadence of each particular gait without having recourse to the living animal, which might be, at times, not altogether free from danger to the hearers, we have conceived the idea of constructing the following small apparatus:

It is composed of a horizontal cylinder, turning upon its own axis in front of two pieces of resounding board, placed the one upon the other in such a manner as to form a spring, as is seen in the instrument called the *signal*, and employed by school-teachers to call their classes to silence. Small paddles or float-boards are fixed in succession in a vertical series upon the circumference of the cylinder, whose number and interval are calculated in such a manner that when passing by the signal they produce sounds according to the rhythm desired. To obtain the beats of a different gait, it suffices to slide the cylinder towards the right or the left, and fasten it by means of a cog on the surface of the axis of the crank. A new series of paddles can thus be passed over the signal, and so on.

With the aid of this instrument, the construction of which we have been obliged to postpone for pecuniary reasons, we should have been able to reproduce very distinctly the normal and the defective rhythms of the walk, the trot, the ordinary gallop, the fast gallop, the amble, the running walk, racking, etc.

It would have been capable of rendering efficient service in the study of this part of the exterior, for it is difficult to procure, on a given day, a horse capable of executing all the gaits. It, besides, would have enabled us to study the varieties of each gait and to make the ear distinguish the mode of transition from the one to the other. Our instrument, in this relation, would have partaken of some of the advantages of the *model for notation* of M. Marey, which we will examine farther on.

3d. **Artificial Representation of the Trails.**—By differentiating with care the imprints left upon the ground by the feet of a horse in motion, and transcribing these imprints upon paper in the required scale, we easily succeed in giving an exact idea of the manner of their succession.

But, in order to avoid the encumbrance resulting from the accumulation of a large number of plates, as well as the expense of their preparation, we have invented a species of vertical, portable table (Fig. 189), with the aid of which any trail whatsoever can be represented immediately by means of small shoes, which it suffices to hang at proper intervals. By changing the respective positions of the shoes, it also becomes easy to show the diverse transitions presented by the trails of such or such a normal or defective gait.

The apparatus is composed of a black-board about 2.50 m. in height, resting upon a pedestal provided with three drawers, *A*, *B*, *C*. In the left, *A*, are six nickel-plated shoes, three fore and three hind; in the right, *C*, are six similar shoes, but for the opposite side. The middle is

[1] For more details see E. Duhousset, Le cheval, chap. i., ix., and x.

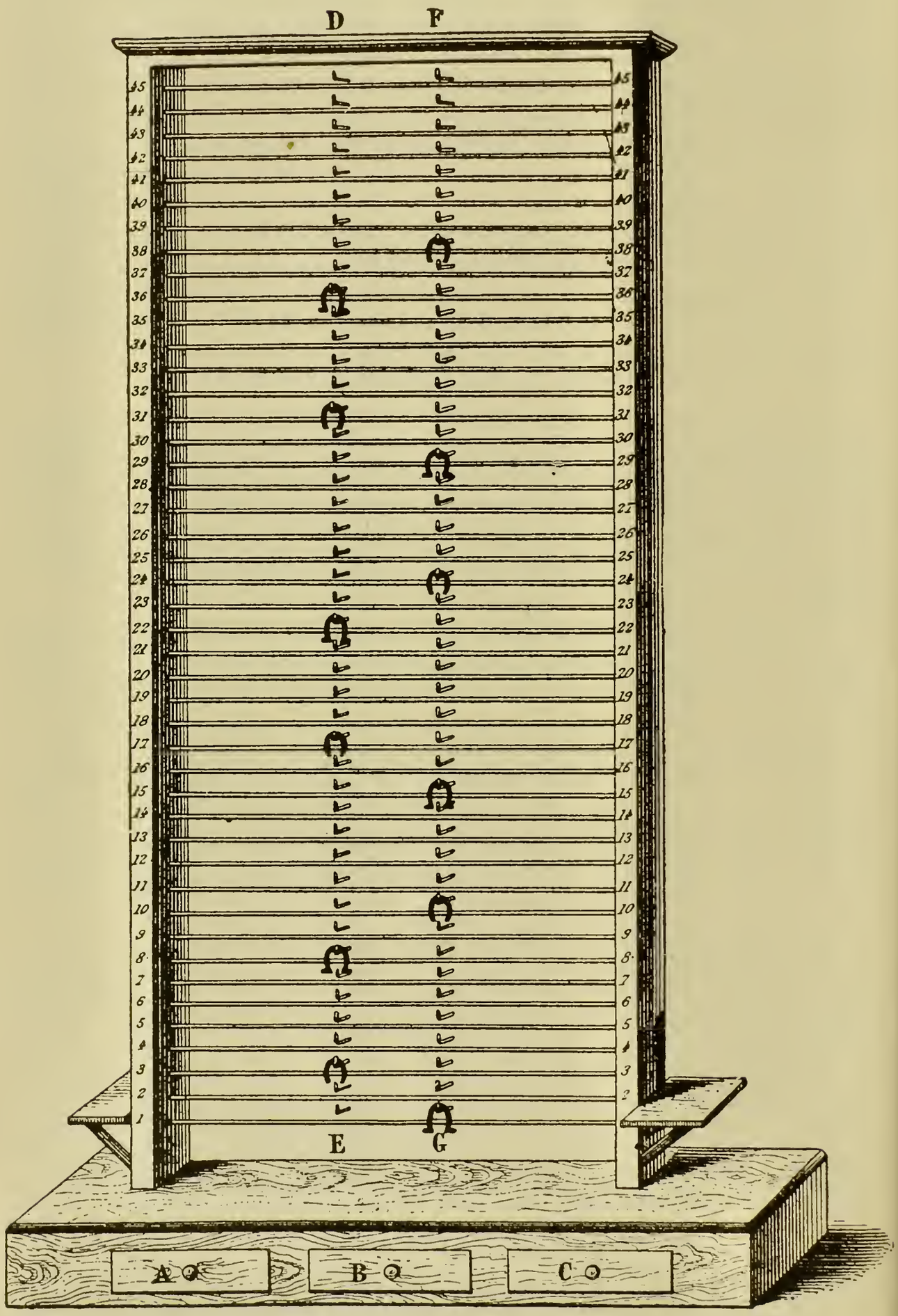


FIG. 189.

reserved for a certain number of cards, upon which are written all the indications for the rapid construction of the trail of each gait.

The anterior face of the board contains forty-five lines, indicated by numbers along the edges. Finally, upon the middle of this face also exist two vertical series of hooks, *DE*, *FG*, the one indicating the trail of the left feet, the other that of the right. The shoes, whose light color contrasts with the black ground of the board, are hung on these hooks. We will compose the trail of the amble, for example. From the middle drawer is selected the memorandum card of the gait upon which the necessary instructions are given, as follows:

ORDINARY AMBLE.

Shoes of Left Drawer.		Shoes of Right Drawer.	
Anterior Shoes.	Posterior Shoes.	Anterior Shoes.	Posterior Shoes.
Nos. 3, 17, 31.	Nos. 8, 22, 36.	Nos. 10, 24, 38.	Nos. 1, 15, 29.

It suffices to hang each shoe to the number indicated in order to obtain immediately the desired trail.

4th. **Artificial Reproduction of the Locomotory Movements; Animators for Instantaneous Photographs or Drawings taken from them.**—Physiology teaches that the impressions received by the retina last for some instants after the luminous body which has produced them has disappeared. It is thus that the rapid displacement of an incandescent coal appears to the eye in the form of a stream of fire; the descent of a rain-drop, under that of streaks passing from the clouds to the earth, etc.

Basing his observations upon this fact, Plateau, in 1832, constructed an apparatus, the *phénakistiscope*, in which are placed a series of pictures, each representing a special phase of a determined movement, the gallop of a horse, for example. A proper rotation being given to these images, there will be reproduced with surprising exactness the complete movements of which we have, in reality, only the different periods.

The *zootrope* is an instrument based upon the same principle. It is composed of a cylindrical box, in the interior of which is a strip of paper with the portraits of an animal in different positions of his gait. A certain number of vertical openings or windows expose the interior of the box and allow the observer to view the series of images on the inside. The whole pivots on a vertical axis and can be rotated at will more or less rapidly.

It is with the zootrope that we can demonstrate the absolute truth of the instantaneous photographs. It is even possible to render the movements resulting from the succession of these images tangible to a whole audience, as we have witnessed with M. Marey, by placing the animator in front of an apparatus on which the images are projected. The effect is then complete: the displacements of the neck, the head, the members, the tail, the inflection of the body,—all, even the movements of the jockey, give to the spectator the sense of reality.

5th. **Schematic Figures of M. Mathias Duval.**—Knowing, as we will verify farther on, that the differences existing between the gaits are associated with a more or less marked quickness of the movements of the posterior members in relation with those of the anterior, Professor Mathias Duval has conceived the idea of reproducing a gait in all its details, by constructing a series of designs capable of gliding one upon the other, and thus realizing the quickness in question.

All the *marched* gaits being related to the *amble*, M. Duval first designed sixteen horses (this number suffices) in the different phases of the latter. These reproductions are disposed in two superposed sheets of paper. The upper is fenestrated in such a manner that one-half of each horse is visible on this sheet and the other half on the lower. The hind-quarters, for example, being on the upper sheet, the fore-quarters are placed upon the lower, and are visible through the openings made in the latter. Suppose, now, that the superior sheet be moved so that an interval separates two figures of the horse, and we will have a series of images in which the anterior members are tardy in point of time upon the posterior, as takes place in the *broken amble*. If the gliding of the sheet be increased, we have the series of attitudes of the *walk;* a still further gliding will give those of the *trot*.[1]

6th. **Reproduction of the Notations.**—Estimating that the marched gaits of the horse can be classed in a natural series whose first term is the amble, and in which the difference between a given gait and the following consists in a quickness or a slowness of the posterior members, according as he accelerates or slackens his movement, M. Marey has invented a *model*, valuable both for artists and demonstrators, by means of which it is easy to construct the notation of such or such a variation of gait, even to reproduce voluntarily the forms of locomotion now unknown, which are perhaps employed by certain savage species whose mode of progression has not been analyzed.

The *model for notation of the gaits*[2] consists of a small black-board (Fig. 190) along which can glide four small flat reglets, alternately black and white or gray and black, and placed two by two.

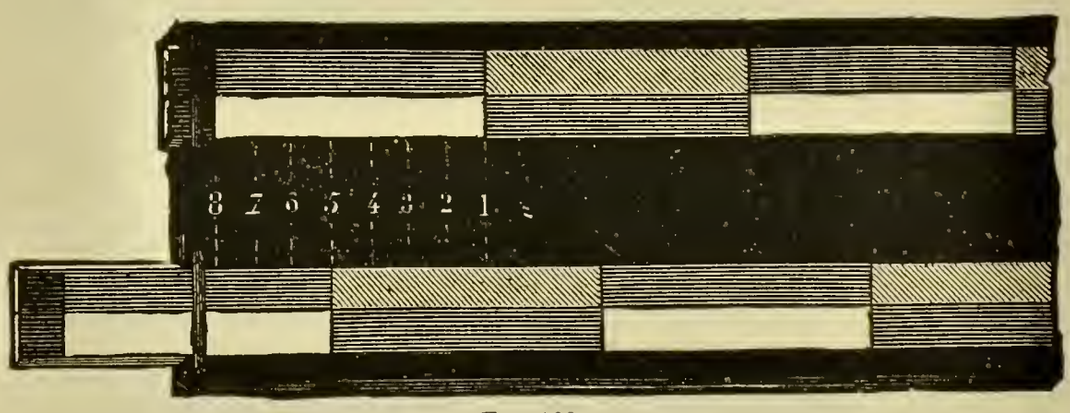


Fig. 190.

As each of these blocks is independent, it is easy to juxtaposit or alternate in several ways the white segments (contacts) and the dark segments (elevations). The notation of any *marched* gait whatever can thus be constructed very rapidly.

In Fig. 190, for example, have been arranged alternately the light blocks and the black blocks in both the superior and the inferior reglets. Then the latter have been moved towards the left without changing their relations. In this manner one variety of *walk* can be obtained. If the posterior left beat is produced opposite to the numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, etc., so many different varieties will thus be the result.

In Fig. 191 the blank blocks are semi-superposed in each series of reglets. The inferior series is so disposed as to make the beat of the anterior right coincide with the posterior left. The result is a notation corresponding to one variety of *gallop*.

But the *model*, thus constructed, is not applicable to the notations of the *leaping* gaits, in which intervene the phases of suspension during which no foot touches the ground.

---

[1] See Marey, loc. cit., p. 184.

[2] Marey, loc. cit.

With a view of remedying this defect, we have constructed a *model* slightly different from the preceding. The reglets are replaced by clear, independent blocks, but gliding freely in grooves with a black surface. It becomes easy, with this modification, to represent the notation of any gait whatever.

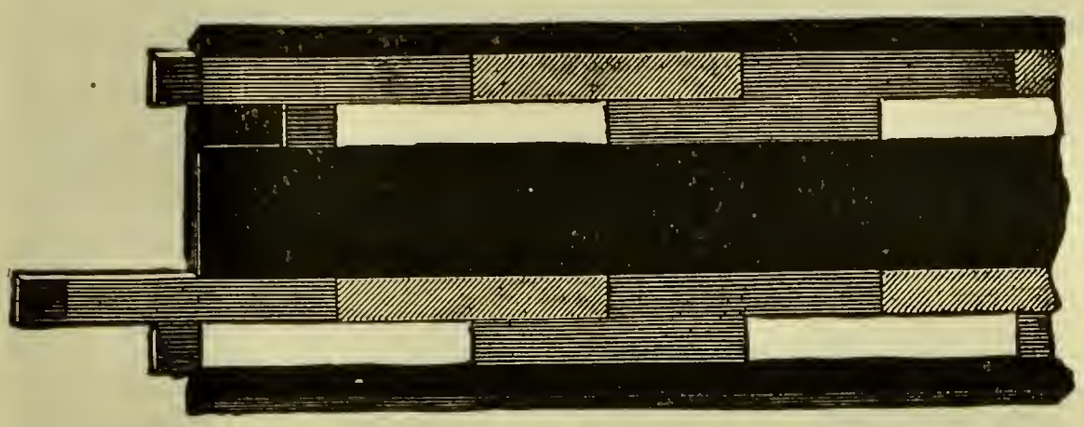


FIG. 191.

After these general considerations upon the gaits, we will resume their study in particular. Before doing so, it is indispensable to give (Fig. 192), in a table which we borrowed from M. Marey,[1] a synopsis of their notations, such as most authors admit. Except the amble and the trot, upon which all are in accord, all the others are defined in different manners.

"The variation," M. Marey very wisely remarks, "explains itself sufficiently: first, because the observation of these movements is very difficult, and, secondly, because, in nature, the *walk* may, according to circumstances, present the different forms which each author has arbitrarily taken as the type of the normal walk. Each man, in this case, allowed himself to be guided by theoretical conditions. Those who admit equal intervals between the four beats thought they saw more clearness in this kind of rhythm and a better-marked distinction between it and the amble and the trot.

"Others have sought, in the walk which served as their type, the realization of a certain ideal. For Raabe this ideal was the maximum stability which is obtained, according to theory, when the body rests longer upon the diagonal than on the lateral bipeds, hence his selection of the type represented by notation No. 6. Lecoq, thinking, on the contrary, that the best step is the swiftest, chose as his type that in which the body rests longer upon the lateral biped than upon the diagonal (notation No. 4)."

The reader will therefore not be surprised now that our own views differ from those of the authors who have preceded us. Let him not for an instant lose sight of the fact that the gaits, as a whole, constitute

[1] Marey, loc. cit., p. 153.

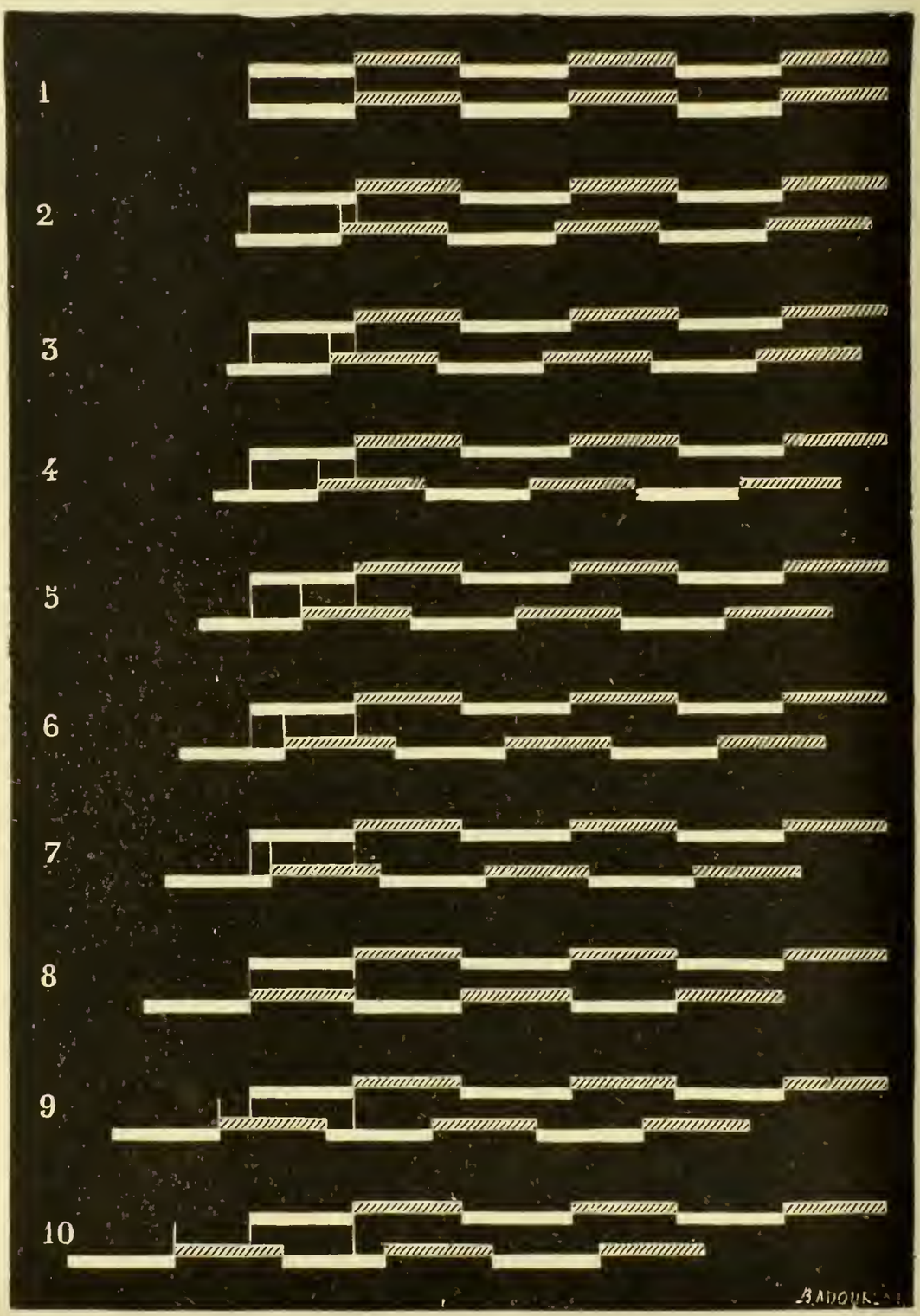


FIG. 192.—Synopsis of the notations of the gaits of the horse, after the authors.

No. 1. *Amble*, by all authors.

No. 2. { *Broken amble*, according to Merche, Vallon. *Running walk*, Bouley.

No. 3. { *Ordinary pace of gaited horse*, Mazure. *Broken amble*, Bouley. *Racking*, Bourgelat, Leeoq.

No. 4. *Normal walk*, Leeoq.

No. 5. { *Normal walk*, Solleysel, Bourgelat, Vincent and Goiffon, Colin, Bouley, Merche. *Running walk*, Vallon.

No. 6. { *Normal walk*, Raabe, Vallon, Lenoble du Teil.

No. 7. *Broken trot; racking.*

No. 8. { *Ordinary trot.* (The time of projection has not been noted.)

No. 9. { *Normandy gait*, Leeoq. *Racking*, Vallon.

No. 10. *Racking*, Merche.

a series (a_1 . . ., a_2 . . ., a_4 . . ., a_7 . . ., a_8 . . ., a_m) whose terms are not all named or even known; that these terms, nevertheless, exist and presumably constitute particular forms of adaptation of a gait to such or such service; finally, that their list can increase only by the employment of more delicate and more accurate processes of analysis than our senses are. It is with the aid of the *graphic method* and *chrono-photography*, which are never inaccurate in their results, that we should pursue the long and difficult researches yet to be made on this subject.

CHAPTER II.

THE GAITS IN PARTICULAR.

THE horse, strictly speaking, employs in a state of nature only four gaits, which are—the walk, the amble, the trot, and the gallop. Domestication has modified these primitive gaits, as it has changed his external form and his aptitudes; it has originated modes of progression which are, in reality, mere varieties of the preceding.

Their study being most difficult, we will commence with the simplest, and describe simultaneously their corresponding varieties.

First, we will establish two great categories according to the manner of association or succession of the members: the *lateral gaits* and the *diagonal gaits.*

Among the first we include:

1st. The **amble**, a fast gait, marched with two times, and characterized by the simultaneous raising and resting of the lateral bipeds.

The **broken amble**, a variety of the preceding, with four times, consisting in the disassociation of the lateral bipeds.

Among the second we class:

2d. The **trot**, a fast gait with two times, characterized by the simultaneous raising and resting of the diagonal bipeds.

Ordinarily it is *marched*, when the posterior imprints remain behind the anterior of the same side; *leaped*, when the posterior imprints cover or surpass the anterior.

The **broken trot** is a variety of the preceding, which consists in a disassociation of the diagonal beats. According to the length of the step, the posterior imprints surpass or fall short of the anterior; it may therefore be *leaped* or *marched.*

The **canter** is an unusual or defective gait, in which the heterochronous beats of one of the bipeds, anterior or posterior, effect a rhythm different from the isochronous beats of the opposite biped. It is said, in this case, that the horse gallops in front and trots behind, and *vice versa.* The canter can also be defined as a trot in which the beats *of one of the diagonal bipeds* is disassociated instead of remaining simultaneous.

The **running walk,** or *high step,* a gait establishing a transition between the marched broken trot and the walk, in which the diagonal beats follow in close succession and the posterior imprints are always but a short distance behind the anterior.

3d. The **walk,** a still slower gait, with four times, in which the members, associated in diagonal bipeds, are elevated and rested successively.

According as the beats are closer *laterally* or *diagonally,* it furnishes varieties which tend to simulate either the *amble* or the *trot.*

Backing, or the *walk* executed *backward.*

4th. The **gallop,** a fast gait, with three beats, and *leaped,* in which the *synchronous* beats of a diagonal biped are interposed between the *successive* beats of the opposite diagonal biped, which begins the step by its posterior member.

The simultaneous beats of the second contact with the ground (second biped) have the greatest tendency to become disassociated when the horse moves almost without advancing, when the equilibrium is bad, or when the speed is very great. In this case the ear can perceive four distinct beats.

On the race-course the gallop is an extremely fast gait in which this separation of the diagonal beats is driven to its utmost limits.

A.—The Amble, Pacing.

The **amble** is a natural or an acquired gait, in which the members of each lateral biped rise and reach the ground simultaneously (Fig. 193). Two beats only are therefore heard in the complete step of the *ambling horse.*

It is thought that these expressions are derived from the Latin *ambulare,* to go about, doubtless because horses which have this gait were formerly employed for quiet riding. De Curnieu says that this gait was in great vogue at the time when the horse and saddle were the only means of transport for travellers of all ages and all sexes.[1]

Many authors affirm that horses which amble naturally have better

[1] De Curnieu, loc. cit., t. i. p. 161.

qualities and are more sought after than those which have acquired this gait by education. The explanation for this preference, as Baron d'Eisemberg[1] expressed a long time ago, is that in the latter the members are raised higher from the ground, and thus the reactions of the

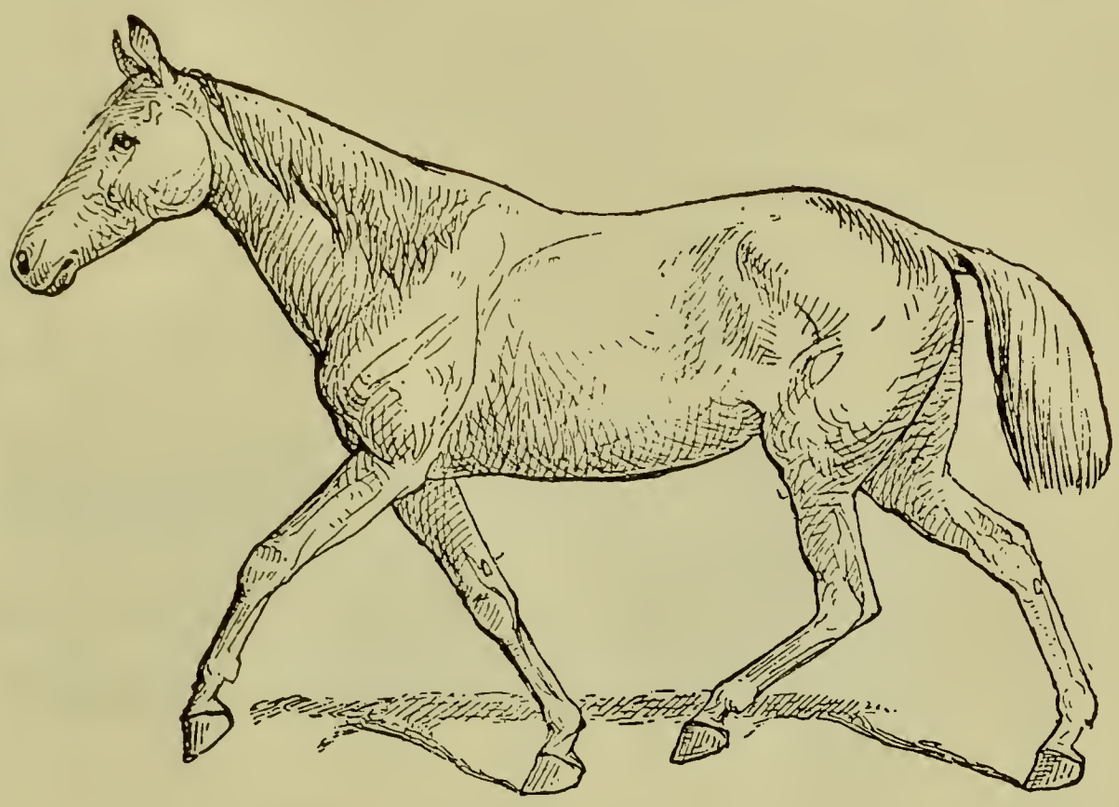


FIG. 193.—The *amble:* contact of right lateral biped.

body are less gentle. The former have, besides, the advantage of executing the gait from the fact of an innate aptitude, a circumstance which places them at once in better condition to profit by the benefits resulting from their training and dressing. Amblers or pacers are seldom found nowadays but in countries in which the bad state of the roads, the length of the journeys, the distance between the villages or public taverns, and the want of other means of transport, render their use necessary. They are excluded from the services of the army and from the riding-school on account of the difficulty they experience in passing from this gait into another.

The English called them *geldings*, or *guilledins*, and excelled in the art of dressing them. Baron d'Eisemberg[2] relates that he saw some which maintained their gait during a whole day with so much ease and speed that they were accompanied with difficulty by other horses at a gallop. The gelding was emasculated; he was dressed, it is said, by fastening together the members of the same side. This practice is still

[1] Baron d'Eisemberg, Art de monter à cheval, 1747, p. 13. (Quoted from De Curnieu, t. i. p, 161.)

[2] Baron d'Eisemberg, loc. cit., p. 12.

employed in Brittany and in Algeria. The movements of the members of each lateral biped are associated by means of a cord attached above the knee and the hock. This gelding does not exist in our day; the name remains simply to designate a castrated horse.

According to De Curnieu, Napoleon I. preferred amblers in a campaign for long and quick reconnoitrings.

Painters and sculptors have sometimes represented the amble instead of the walk, which is not extraordinary, considering the large number of horses which employed the former instead of the latter. As an example of this we may cite the equestrian statue of Louis XII., placed at the entrance to the palace of Blois.

Let us say, finally, that certain colts, at first amblers, will at a later period learn to trot. Reversely, some horses, primarily good trotters, amble towards the decline of life, through fatigue and usage.[1] But this gait is not peculiar to the horse; other animals, as the camel, dromedary, and giraffe, employ it naturally. We have also observed it in exceptional cases in the ox and the dog [it is common in the dog].

A complete step of the amble has two equal, successive *times*, during each of which the members of the same lateral biped are raised and reach the ground simultaneously. Lecoq was therefore quite right in comparing this succession and association of the members to the walk of two men, one placed a certain distance behind the other.[2]

If we represent, says M. Marey,[3] the movements of these two men by placing above the notations of those of the anterior and below the notations of those of the posterior, the following figure (Fig. 194) will

FIG. 194.

be obtained, in which the right feet correspond to the white lines and the left to the gray. It is seen here that the ear can hear only two beats to each step, the two members on the same side striking the soil at the same instant.

But is this gait *marched* or *leaped?* All authors are not in accord upon this point. Most of them, however, maintain the first view, and we coincide with them. There are *exceptions;* some amblers leave the

---

[1] H. Bouley, Nouveau dictionnaire de médecine, de chirurgie, et d'hygiène vétérinaires, t. i. p. 402.

[2] Lecoq, loc. cit., p. 416.

[3] Marey, Machine animale, p. 148.

soil at the end of each of the lateral contacts. M. Lenoble du Teil[1] has observed several examples.

It is none the less, however, a fact that if the amble is in the vast majority of cases a marched gait, there must be, between its two times, a very short period during which the four members remain on the ground. This occurs when the body is shifted from one lateral biped to the other. At this instant, difficult to perceive, so short is it, the period of exchange of contact is manifested. Hence the true notation of this gait should be like that represented in Fig. 195, and not like that which M. Marey has given, as reproduced above (Fig. 194).

FIG. 195.—Notation of the *marched amble.*

There are seen, in fact, short *quadrupedal bases*, 1, 3, 5 . . ., interposed between the fundamental bases 2, 4, 6 . . ., which were alone admitted hitherto, save by M. Lenoble du Teil, who was the first to observe and formulate the facts in question.[2] We expect to register these bases, as well as their duration, by the aid of our electric shoe (*chaussure exploratrice*).

The **trail** shows (Fig. 196) the imprints of the posterior feet always surpassing considerably those of the corresponding anterior, because the space embraced by each posterior member is about one-third longer than the length of the lateral base.

The *length of the step* of the ambling horse, according to M. Lenoble du Teil,[3] would be equal to that of the ordinary walk, say 1.80 m. for a horse of 1.60 m. at the withers.

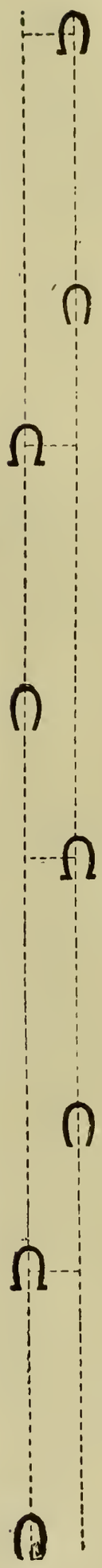


FIG. 196.—Trail of the amble, after Lenoble du Teil.

[1] Lenoble du Teil, note communiquée.

[2] Lenoble du Teil, Locomotion quadrupède étudiée sur le cheval; 2e éd., p. 53, pl. v., Paris, 1877.

[3] Lenoble du Teil, loc. cit., p. 58.

The **displacements of the centre of gravity** occur in a transverse and an antero-posterior sense.

1st. In the transverse displacement, this centre is carried, during each time, alternately from left to right and right to left, from *E, F, G*, upon the lines *AB, CD, A'B'*, etc. (Fig. 197), which unite the two

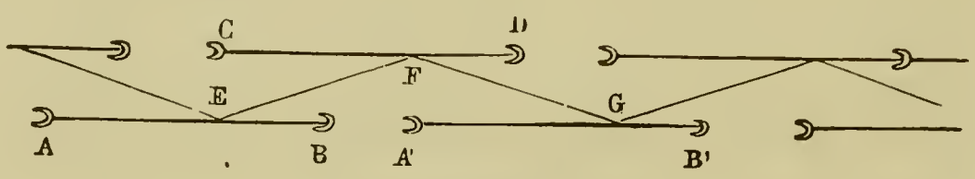


FIG. 197.

lateral bipeds on the ground. This movement produces a sort of rocking, which, when exaggerated, may occasion a fall sideways.

2d. The vertical displacements take place during each period of contact, and can be represented by the arcs *EF, FG* (Fig. 198), whose

FIG. 198.

height is always small, since the gait, being very unstable, is low and quick. This is the reason why the ambler is an easy and pleasant mount, so appreciated by persons who object to the stronger reactions of the gallop or the trot.

The great speed of this gait is explained by the *eccentric position* of the *base of support*, which increases the instability of the equilibrium, and, consequently, the **speed.**

According to M. Lenoble du Teil,[1] the velocity should be 2.40 m. per second, as in the ordinary walk, for a horse 1.60 m. high. The velocity of this gait, it is perceived, varies in a great measure according to the conformation, the energy, and the endurance of the animals. In 1844 and 1845, in concert with H. Bouley, we observed a mare, known in Paris by the name of *Américaine*, which several times, and with the same success on each occasion, ambled the whole distance from Paris to Fontainebleau against thoroughbred horses going at a gallop.

The amble, in this instance, was *leaped*, as, indeed, it appears to be whenever its speed attains that of the fast trot. According to M. Lenoble du Teil,[2] this particular form of ambling is well known to the Germans, who call it the *flying amble.*

---

[1] Lenoble du Teil, loc. cit., p. 57.

[2] Lenoble du Teil, note communiquée.

Disadvantages.—On the other hand, however, if the ambling horse is fast, his step lacks sureness and safety. Obliged to advance the members close to the ground, he is liable to knock against the inequalities of the soil; as a consequence, he frequently stumbles, and it requires the continual attention of the rider to select the road and to support him when he makes a false step.

Conformation.—A strong and muscular frame, a wide chest, short loins, strong articulations, irreproachable axes, and perfectness of action of the members will counterbalance the inconveniences accruing from the instability of his equilibrium and the lowness of his gait.

Broken Amble.

We will call, with Vallon and Merche, the **broken amble** that variety of the amble in which the members, still associated in lateral bipeds, reach the soil successively, the posterior a little before the anterior, producing thus four beats and leaving also four imprints on the ground. The only difference between this gait and the ordinary amble is that in the latter the lateral lifting and resting of the feet are simultaneous, while in the former they are effected separately with a short interval. It follows, then, that the posterior imprints, in position, surpass much less the anterior, since the hind-foot is arrested behind the point where it would go if it met the soil at the same time as the fore-foot.

Fig. 199 represents the trail of the broken amble, according to M. Lenoble du Teil,[1] who, in his classification, calls the latter *broken walk.*

The disassociation of the lateral beats, *AD*, *PD* and *AG*, *PG* (Fig. 200), gives origin to complex supplementary bases (2, 3, 4 and 6, 7, 8), which are interposed between the ordinary lateral bases (1, 5, 9 . . .), always of long duration. Instruments will probably demonstrate among these supplementary bases a diagonal base (3, 7 . . .) placed between two very short tripedal bases (2 and 4, 6 and 8). If the periods of exchange of contact (2, 4, 6, 8 . . .) are longer than we have supposed, the supplementary bases will simply be tripedal.

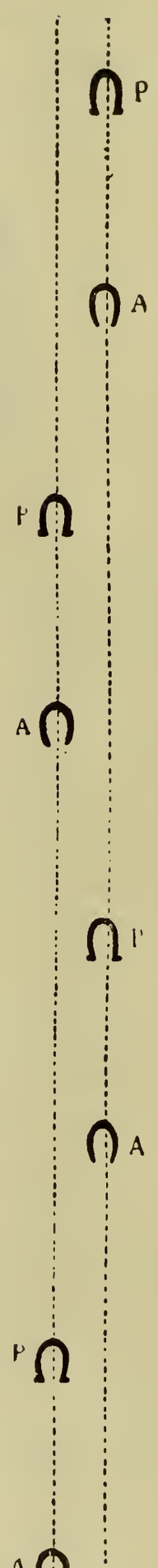


FIG. 199.—Trail of the *broken amble.*

[1] Lenoble du Teil, Étude sur la locomotion du cheval, etc.; atlas, pl. vii.

Be it as it may, it results from these facts that the variety under consideration is more stable than the normal amble; the horse can therefore take a longer step without increasing, for this reason, the rapidity of his movements. Hence the ambler breaks his gait only when an

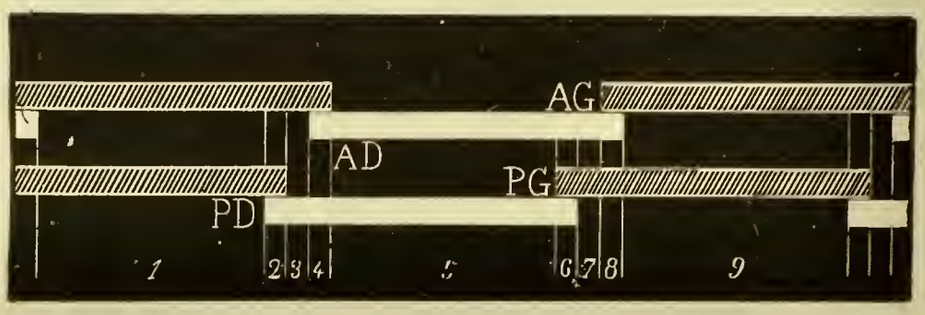


FIG. 200.—Notation of the *broken amble.*

increase of speed incompatible with the synchronous play of the anterior and posterior member is demanded of him. In this case the latter is obliged to precipitate its action, to anticipate that of the former and to respond to the required acceleration.

The interposition of the three supplementary bases between the two lateral successive bases explains also the smallness of the transverse displacements of the centre of gravity and, in consequence, the great ease of the reactions of the broken amble. If, however, such a horse is restrained from moving his members with sufficient rapidity, so as to advance them close to the ground without great reactions to the rider, he constitutes a mount hardly surer or more stable than the ordinary ambler. Like the latter, he *scrapes the ground*, stumbles, and even falls when he is ridden hard on rough roads.

The broken amble, says Vallon,[1] is usual to certain varieties of horses, such as the small horses of Normandy and those of the Hague. It is common in Algeria, and the Arabs produce it artificially by chaining, in the pastures, their horses in lateral bipeds; then, when mounted, they urge them with the spur or the angle of their wide stirrup. But as soon as the training ceases they reassume the normal amble or the walk, and the whole series of these training exercises must be recommenced. Properly-dressed Barb horses can easily travel two and one-half leagues per hour at this gait, completing thus twenty-five to thirty leagues per day.

B.—The Trot.

The **trot** is a natural gait, with two times, more or less fast, in which the members rise and reach the ground simultaneously in diagonal

[1] Vallon, Cours d'hippologie, t. i. p. 532.

bipeds. As in the amble, the complete step, therefore, emits two beats.

Trails and Varieties of the Trot.[1]—According to the relation of the imprints left by an animal which trots, three particular varieties can be observed: sometimes the posterior remain behind the anterior (Fig. 201); sometimes they are superposed upon each other (Fig. 202); sometimes, finally, the posterior surpass the anterior (Fig. 203).

In other words, the horse *se déjuge* (ill-checks his steps), *se juge* (checks them), or *se méjuge* (overchecks them), according to the length of his strides. (See page 474.)

The **ordinary** trot is that in which the superposition of the imprints exists, which is indicated in figures by means of a shoe provided with a single crampon. The trail is then *simple*, right and left.

The **short** trot is that in which the posterior imprints do not quite reach the anterior.

Finally, we call **long**

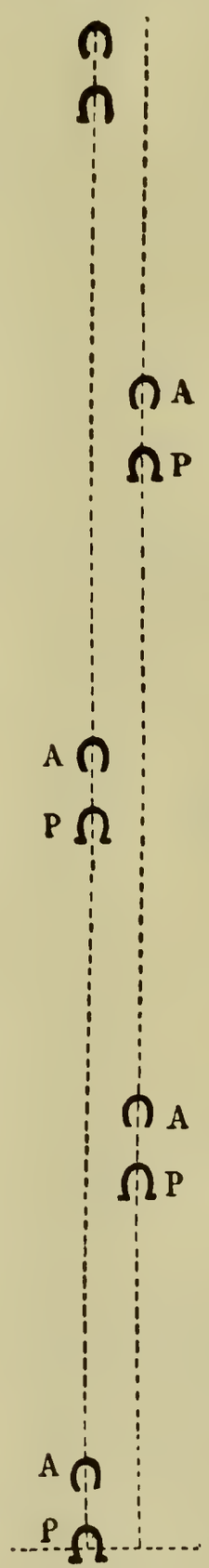


FIG. 201.—Trail of the *short trot.* (Lenoble du Teil.)

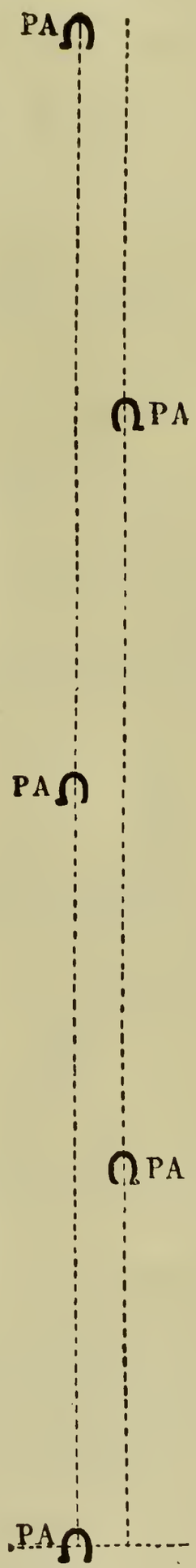


FIG. 202.—Trail of the *ordinary trot.* (Lenoble du Teil.)

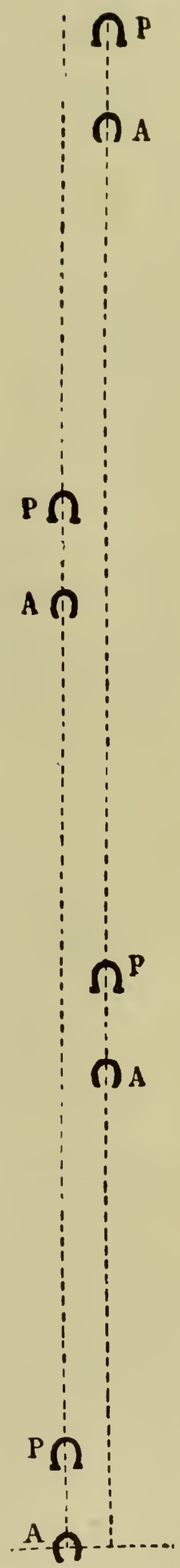


FIG. 203.—Trail of the *long trot.* (Lenoble du Teil.)

[1] All the trails of the trot are after the same scale, and therefore comparable to one another.

trot that in which the posterior imprints surpass the corresponding anterior.

In the last two cases the trail is *double* on both sides.

FIG. 204.—The *leaped trot;* left diagonal contact.

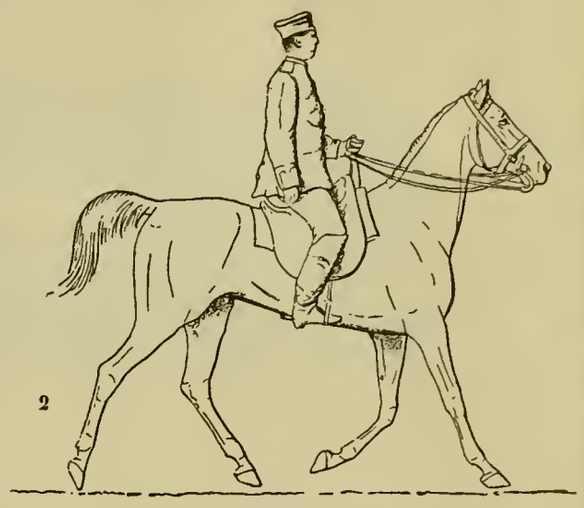


FIG. 205.—The *leaped trot;* projection.

The gait, however, assumes a peculiar disposition according as the body, in the course of the complete evolution of the step, remains in contact with the soil or is separated a little before each diagonal contact. It then takes the character of *marched* or *leaped.* In general, the *short* trot is *marched,* particularly when the animal is in harness. Nevertheless, it may be *leaped,* as when the horse, urged by the voice, the whip, or the legs, is prevented from producing the acceleration of speed thus indicated. It is often observed at the riding-school in horses held in the "gathered-up" attitude; also in very ardent and nervous draught-horses that are too fiery at starting and are held back.

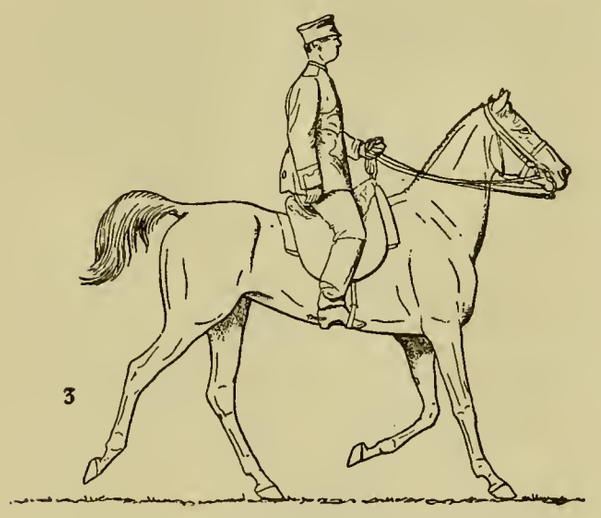


FIG. 206.—The *leaped trot;* right diagonal contact.

Figs. 204, 205, and 206 represent precisely the three principal phases of this modification of the short trot, from instantaneous photographs by M. Ottomar Anschütz, of Lissa.

The *ordinary* and the *long* trots are always *leaped.* This is due to the fact that the fore-foot must necessarily be raised before the corresponding hind-foot touches the ground, under penalty of wounds from the latter, and to permit the latter to cover or to pass over the imprints of the former. As at this moment the diagonal members are in the air, the body remains without contact for an instant.

The phase of suspension of these trots coincides with a more or less lengthy and elevated *projection* of the body, which gives to them varying aspects. It is greatest in the long trot, medium in the ordinary, and very little marked in the short. According to the height to which the body is raised, it renders the gait *high* or *low*. It is, in general, proportional to the speed employed and the vigor of the animal.

When the velocity of the trot is carried to the extreme, the synchronism of the diagonal beats is seen to disappear; the latter are slightly disassociated, and this all the more as the hind-foot reaches farther beyond the fore-foot of the same side. The amplitude of the steps then reaches its highest limits. This is the beginning of a new variety, the *broken trot, trot of the hippodrome* or the *race-course*, which the English, on account of its velocity, call the *flying trot*. We will study it presently.

Kinematic Analysis of the Play of the Members in the Trot.—1st. Anterior Member.—The period of dispersion of forces, 0 to 2, very marked, is manifested, above all, during the contact with the ground, as deduced

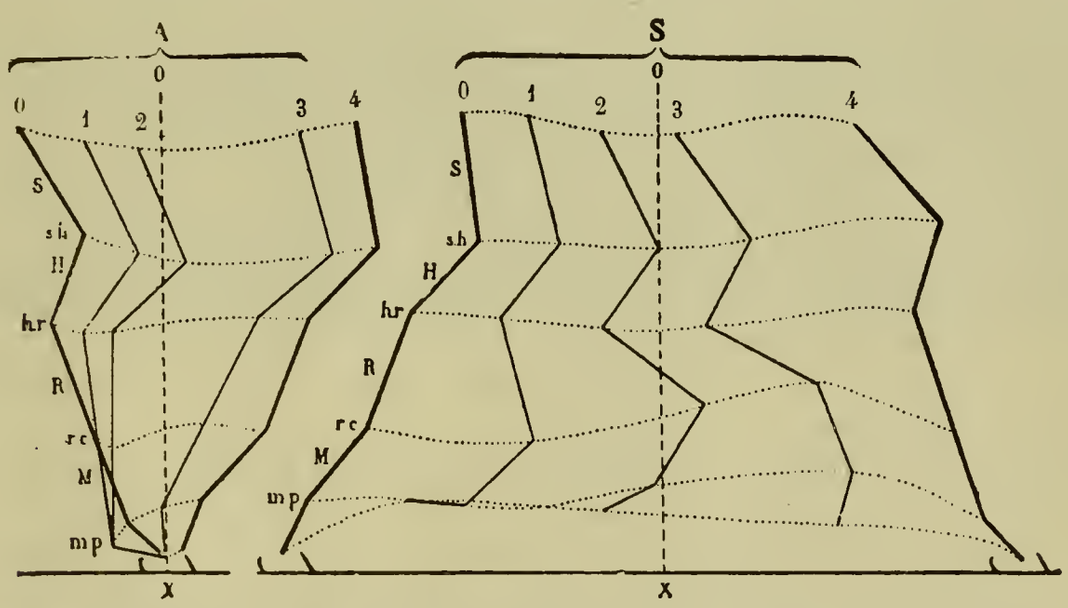


FIG. 207.—Kinematic analysis of the play of the anterior member in the *ordinary trot*. (Messrs. Marey and Pagès.)

A. Phase of contact. | *S*. Phase of elevation.

from the researches of Messrs. Marey and Pagès (Fig 207, *A*), by the sudden and forcible descent of the fetlock, which is also perceived by the carpus and the elbow, although less sensibly by the latter. The curve of the withers is greatly depressed in its middle, in consequence of the flexion of the angle of the shoulder.

During the elevation, S, the trajectory of the withers also offers a curve in its middle, a marked inflection, due to the shortening of the opposite member, now in its contact, which weakens, in its turn, the concussion of the body upon the ground.

The trajectories of the fetlock and the knee, sensibly parallel, forcibly

ascend (the fetlock first) during the shortening of the member, to descend simultaneously when the latter elongates and prepares to rest again.

As to the trajectory of the foot, inversely disposed, convex at the beginning of the elevation and oblique downward at the end, it crosses that of the fetlock under the effect of strong flexion of the pastern at the instant when the foot leaves the ground.

2d. **Posterior Member.**—*Phase of Contact, A* (Fig. 208).—In a general manner, all the articular trajectories are lowered during the period of disper-

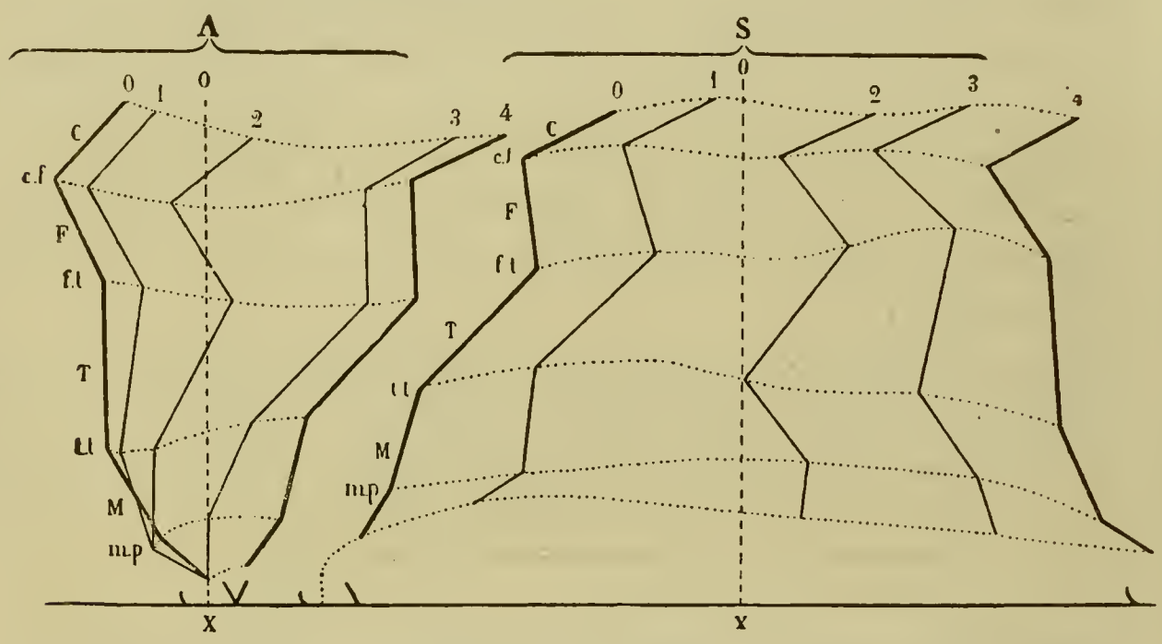


FIG. 208.—Kinematic analysis of the play of the posterior member in the *ordinary trot.* (Messrs. Marey and Pagès.)

A. Phase of contact. | *S.* Phase of elevation.

sion, the inferior much more than the superior. The curves then rise gradually, as in the anterior columns, during the period of extension. These trajectories are convex, save that of the stifle, which remains concave and low, from the forward notation of the tibia.

During the elevation, S, a depression exists in the middle of the trajectories, except upon those of the fetlock and the foot; it corresponds to the phase of dispersion, 0 to 2, of the opposite member. It is preceded and followed by a slight ascension, due to a greater or less raising of the body at the moment of the periods of suspension. The trajectories of the fetlock and the foot resemble those of the anterior member, only that of the foot approaches the former less, on account of the more feeble flexion of the pastern.

Rhythm of the Beats; Time of Projection; Tracing and Notation.—When the trot is regular, and its speed not excessive, only *two sounds,* or *two synchronous beats* of *equal intensity,* are heard. Tired and overdriven horses do not travel at this gait long without irregularities, which must be considered as defects. We will study these under the names *racking, saut de pie,* and *canter.*

The *duration of the time of projection*[1] has been differently appre-

[1] Let us recall that in the leaped trot there is a simple *suspension* when the lateral imprints are superposed, and a *projection* when the posterior imprints surpass the anterior.

ciated by most authors who only had recourse to direct observation. The means of investigation employed by M. Marey has enabled him to harmonize these views. Having established this divergence of opinion by citing H. Bouley,[1] according to whom the period of projection is shorter than that of the contact, contrary to Raabe,[2] who claims the reverse, this learned experimenter expressed himself in the following terms:[3]

"An old and very docile horse has furnished the tracing represented in Fig. 209. In this figure are indicated the tracings of the

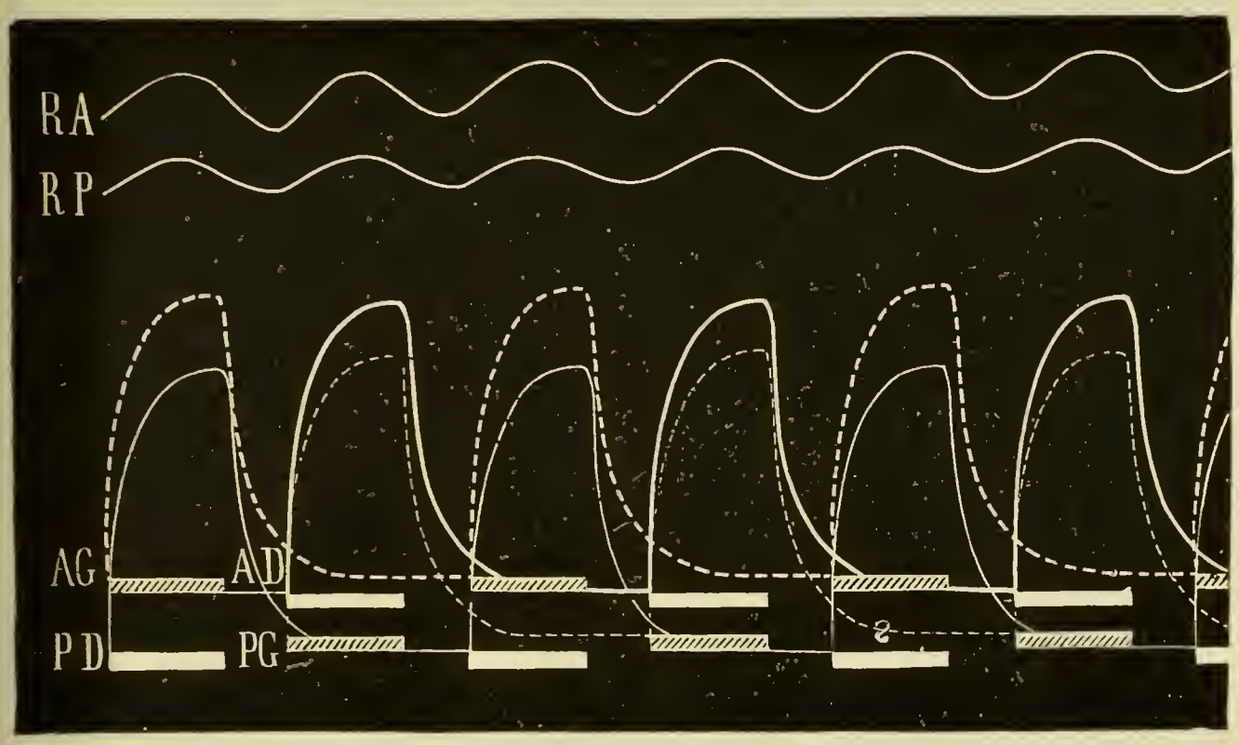


FIG. 209.—Tracing, notation, and reactions of the trot.

AG, beginning of the contact of the anterior left foot.
AD, beginning of the contact of the anterior right foot.
PD, beginning of the contact of the posterior right foot.
PG, beginning of the contact of the posterior left foot.

contact with the soil of the four members, with their notation, and, besides, the reactions given by this gait to the horse.

"Here it is observed that the curves of the contacts of the four feet reach two different levels: the higher are the curves of the anterior members; the lower, those of the posterior. In each of these series the curves of the left foot are represented by dotted lines; those of the right by the continuous lines.

"The ascent of each curve expresses the commencement of the contact of the foot upon the ground; the descent indicates the moment when the foot is raised.[4] It is seen, from these tracings, that the feet

[1] H. Bouley, loc. cit., t. i. p. 391.
[2] Raabe, Locomotion du cheval (Examen des allures), p. 39.
[3] Marey, La machine animale, p. 150.
[4] "The duration of the contact should be indicated by a horizontal line, but we have given to the tube a narrowness destined to weaken the sudden impulse impressed upon the registering

AG and *PD, anterior left* and *posterior right,* strike the ground at the same time. The simultaneous lowering of the curves of these two feet shows that their elevations are also made simultaneously. Below these curves is the notation which expresses the duration of the contact of the left diagonal biped.

"The second beat is produced by the feet *AD* and *PG,* right diagonal bipeds, and so on over the whole length of the tracing.

"It is seen in the *notation* of this tracing that the contacts (*full lines*) are double the length of the time during which the body is suspended above the ground (*intervals between the full lines*). This suspension therefore coincides with the theory of Bouley, and is contrary to that of Raabe; but it seems to us that there is a great variation in the relative duration of these two phenomena in the trot. Thus, certain horses, trotting in harness, have furnished tracings in which the phase of suspension was scarcely perceptible (Fig. 210), in such a

FIG. 210.—Notation of an ordinary trot in which the phase of suspension is not perceptible.

manner that this form of the trot here approaches the *low* gaits, but still preserving the perfect synchronism of the diagonal beats. We have not yet been able to study them in the fast trotters; in them, perhaps, there is an inverse tendency, the time of suspension increasing at the expense of the duration of the contact."

This is the result of our own observations also. When the movements are high and extended the body remains longer in the air than in contact with the soil; it seems as if the horse displaces himself by diagonal jumps. The strides, in this case, are very long. It may be the same in circumstances exactly the reverse, when, for example, the horse, taking small steps, *balances himself,* as it were, in the air during the *projection,* and carrying the feet low (Lenoble du Teil).

At other times the speed is still considerable, but the time of contact and elevation of the members appears sensibly equal; the projection is then not very extended. This is due to the fact that the movements are more rapid; the trail then shows the imprints in closer relation, the beats are more precipitated, and the body moves more closely to the ground.

---

needle; the effect of this narrowness is a slight deformity of the curve, which, however, does not interfere with the study of the rhythms."

Finally, when the trot is *marched*, as is seen most frequently in that which is termed *short*, the phase of simple suspension is entirely absent. The body never leaves the ground altogether, and the period of exchange of contact gives rise to short quadrupedal bases, 1, 3, 5 (Fig. 211), which are interposed between the principal bases, 2, 4, 6, formed by the diagonal feet.

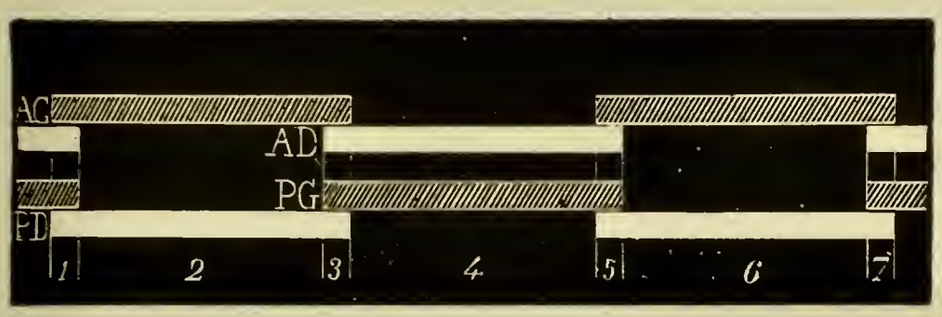


FIG. 211.—Notation of the *marched trot.*

Displacements of the Centre of Gravity and Reactions.—The centre of gravity, in the trot as in the amble, undergoes two sorts of **displacements**, from side to side and from behind to before. The latter give origin to reactions so much more forcible as the gait is higher and more elongated.

Concerning the *lateral* or *transverse displacements*, "since the body," as Lecoq[1] properly says, "is successively supported by the diagonal bipeds, the centre of gravity should always lie upon a point of the line

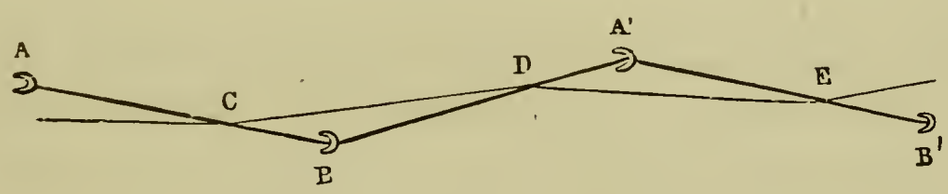


FIG. 212.

which unites the two members. If we suppose it to be at the point C (Fig. 212) of the diagonal AB, we will find it at D upon the diagonal BA', when the left diagonal biped is on the ground, and it will advance to E, upon the diagonal $A'B'$, when the right diagonal biped will have completed the step. We see, therefore, that in the complete step of the trot the line described by the centre of gravity, longer than in the amble, forms less acute angles and approaches less the borders of the rectangle of the members; and that, consequently, a more favorable condition for the equilibrium coincides with less energetic muscular effort for an equal distance, since the expenditure of

[1] Lecoq, loc. cit., p. 354.

the contraction is all the greater as the centre of gravity tends to deviate farther from the median line of the body.

"The *vertical* or *longitudinal* displacements cannot be represented," adds Lecoq, "by the two uniform curves which exist in the amble. As the body is elevated by the effort of the members and falls in consequence, the centre of gravity should of necessity describe two parabolic curves, such as *CD* and *DE* (Fig. 213), the body falling with

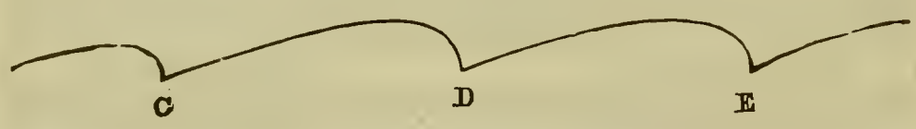


Fig. 213.

greater velocity than that with which it is raised, although the effort of propulsion may always be uniform."

Finally, M. Marey[1] has been able, with the aid of registering instruments, to note the reaction,—that is to say, the displacements of the withers and the croup at the period of contact of each of the members upon the ground. Thus he has obtained the curves *RA* and *RP*, seen in the upper part of Fig. 209. The reactions of the anterior members have given the line *RA;* those of the posterior, the line *RP*. "Here we see," says he, "that the moment in which the body reaches the lowest limits of its vertical oscillation coincides precisely with that in which the feet are not in contact with the ground. Thus, the period of suspension of the body is not due to the body of the horse being projected in the air, but to the flexion of all four members for a short period.[2] The maximum height of the rise of the body corresponds, on the contrary, to the termination of the contact of the members with the ground. It seems, from the tracings, that the rising of the body only commences a little after each double beat, and continues during the whole of the contact.

"Finally, we see, in the same figure, that the reactions of the anterior members are greater than those of the posterior. This fact has to us appeared constant; besides, the inequality of the reactions is more exaggerated in the walk, in which the instrument placed upon the withers nearly always shows appreciable reactions, while upon the croup it shows scarcely any."

Upon the instantaneous photographs from Lissa it is easy to prove

---

[1] Marey, La machine animale, p. 162.

[2] Some exceptions in this respect should be made. Instantaneous photographs have given different results, more in harmony with observation of the movements of the rider upon the saddle.

that the rider falls upon the saddle a little after each diagonal biped rests, when the axis of the members passes beyond its vertical direction. He is raised, on the contrary, at the moment when each diagonal biped leaves the ground, and remains in the air during the whole duration of the phase of suspension.

Length of the Step of the Trot.—It is extremely difficult to formulate, or even to determine approximately, the absolute facts on this point, for the experimental results obtained to elucidate this question are only comparable when the researches are made upon subjects *identical* and perfectly *uniform* in their gaits. When such is the ease, the successive steps are sensibly equal.

But are the height, on the one part, and the length of the base of support, on the other, in simple and constant relation with the length of the strides? In other words, is it the horse highest at the withers, or that one whose base of support is the most extensive, whieh takes the longest steps?

The man would be liable to eommit an error who would answer these questions *a priori*, because observation of the data in this respeet leads to results apparently eontradictory. The problem is, indeed, so complex, in consequence of its numerous factors, that its solution is necessarily false, if we base it only upon some phenomena without taking into aceount all the elements capable of influencing it.

The length of the space embraced at each step by the play of the members is related, above all, to the length of the locomotory eolumns, the degree of openness and mode of aetion of the artieular angles, the extent of the muscular contraction, the proper relations between the height of the body, its largeness and its width, to the particular development of certain regions, etc. All these points have already been treated *à propos* of the *regions*, the *proportions*, and the *axes*, to which the reader is referred.

But, to speak more definitely, let us state that the mean length of a step in the *ordinary trot* is about 2.40 m. for a horse 1.60 m. in height. The eavalry regulation of 1829 makes it only 2.20 m., which seems to us rather short.

Velocity of the Trot.—The mean veloeity of this gait is about 240 metres per minute, as it has been fixed by the cavalry regulation. This gives approximately a kilometre in a little more than four minutes, and 4 kilometres in a little less than seventeen minutes. The distance traversed at the trot in a given time varies according to several eonditions which must be recognized.

In comparative experiments made with horses of *unequal* height,

we have seen that, in the same time, they can accomplish *equal* distances. What is the explanation of this fact? Evidently that the smallest horse compensates the shortness of the steps by an augmentation in their number. One is therefore correct in the conclusion that, *all things being equal otherwise*, for the same course, the same surface, the same energy, the speed of the trot is, above all, subservient to two causes: *the length of the steps and the frequency of their repetition.*

To these must be added another important element, *training*, the effect of which is so well known.

Most observers have cited examples relative to the great speed employed in the trot; a certain number are given in the following table:[1]

No.	Names.	Sex.	Race.	Mode of Transport.	Distance.	Time.	Mean Speed per Second.	Observations.
							Metres.	
1		Mare.	English.	Harness.	160.930 k.	12 h.	3.725	
2	Verny	Horse.	Russian.	"	128.000 k.	9 h. 05 m.	3.914	A. M. Popoff.
3	Betty Bloss .	Mare.	English.	"	24.139 k.	1 h. 00 m.	6.705	Carried 88.886 k.
4	Spider	"	"	"	38.623 k.	1 h. 30 m.	7.152	
5	"	"	"	"	25.746 k.	58 m. 00 s.	7.398	Carried 25.746 k.
6	Phenomena .	"	"	Mounted.	27.358 k.	53 m. 00 s.	8.600	Carried 54.745 k.
7	Verny	Horse.	Russian.	Harness.	4.800 k.	8 m. 36 s.	9.302	A. M. Popoff.
8	Slava	Mare.	"	"	4.800 k.	8 m. 09¼ s.	9.812	
9	Volchebwitza	"	"	"	3.200 k.	5 m. 25 s.	9.846	
10	"	"	"	"	4.800 k.	8 m. 05 s.	9.896	
11	Polkantchik .	Horse.	"	"	4.838 k.	8 m. 07 s.	9.934	25 kil. under the saddle.
12	Loubezny . .	"	"	"	6.000 k.	10 m. 01 s.	9.983	
13	Polkantchik .	"	"	"	5.000 k.	8 m. 20 s.	10.000	25 kil. under the saddle.
14	Mashisty . .	"	"	"	4.267 k.	7 m. 06 s.	10.016	
15	Slava	Mare.	"	"	3.200 k.	5 m. 19¼ s.	10.031	
16	Mashisty . .	Horse.	"	"	3.200 k.	5 m. 16¾ s.	10.126	
17	Polkantchik .	"	"	"	4.800 k.	7 m. 52 s.	10.169	
18	Svet	"	"	"	3.200 k.	5 m. 14¾ s.	10.191	
19	Loubezny . .	"	"	"	6.400 k.	10 m. 28 s.	10.191	
20	Polkantchik .	"	"	"	3.200 k.	5 m. 13 s.	10.223	
21	Loubezny . .	"	"	"	3.200 k.	5 m. 12 s.	10.256	
22	Svet	"	"	"	4.800 k.	7 m. 45 s.	10.332	
23	Kasmack . .	"	"	"	4.830 k.	7 m. 49 s.	10.298	
24	Loubezny . .	"	"	"	4.800 k.	7 m. 44¾ s.	10.334	
25	Confidence .	Gelding.	English.	"	1.609 k.	2 m. 35 s.	10.382	
26	Dutchman . .	"	"	Mounted.	1.609 k.	2 m. 35 s.	10.382	
27	Ripton . . .	"	"	Harness.	3.218 k.	5 m. 07 s.	10.484	
28	Kasmack . .	Horse.	Russian.	"	3.200 k.	5 m. 04½ s.	10.509	
29	Bédouin . . .	"	"	"	5.500 k.	8 m. 41 s.	10.556	A. M. Popoff—15 kil. under the saddle.
30	Volcano . . .	"	English.	"	1.609 k.	2 m. 31 s.	10.655	
31	Verny	"	Russian.	"	4.000 k.	6 m. 14 s.	10.695	A. M. Popoff.
32	Archer . . .	"	English.	"	40.232 k.	1 h. 00 m.	11.175	Cited by J. Lawrence.
33	Santa Claus .	"	Americ'n trotter.	"	1.609 k.	2 m. 18 s.	11.659	*Journ. des haras* (November, 1881).

[1] For more details, see Charles du Hays, The Trotters (Brussels, Paris, and Leipsic, 8vo, without date). This book treats of the trotting races which had taken place in France from 1827 to 1863, and refers to the speed of the *flying trot*,—that is to say, the *broken trot*.

It is seen from this table, arranged according to the degree of speed, that the latter augments, in general, in an inverse ratio with the distance. This conclusion is, however, not applicable to all cases, because certain trotters occupy in this table a position different from that which they would have obtained had the severity of the task effected been considered.[1]

Beauties and Defects of the Trot.—The beauties of the gait of the trot consist in its regularity, gracefulness, height, and speed. It is extremely rare to meet all of these combined in the same subject.

Its *regularity* is indicated by the synchronism of the beats and the uniformity of the step.

Its *gracefulness* consists in its lightness, ease, and suppleness, as well as in the parallelism of the planes of oscillation of the members in relation to the median plane.

Its *height* is associated with the energy of propulsion and the length of the projection.

The *speed* depends, as we have seen, upon the length of the steps and the frequency of their repetition in a given time.

Observation can easily distinguish a *good trotter*.

We will summarize the principal features of his conformation, such as H. Bouley[2] has, in general, so accurately outlined:

Amplitude of the chest, expressed externally by long and well-arched ribs; abdominal development proportional to the mass of the body; back and loins straight, full, muscular, situated upon the same level as the croup, neither too long nor too short; croup long, muscular, not too horizontal, inclined 30 to 35 degrees; haunches wide and well detached; head light, supported by a neck long, straight, and pyramidal; withers high, neat, not too thin, and prolonged backward; shoulder long and oblique; arm little inclined; elbows separated; forearm long, wide antero-posteriorly, furnished with muscles large and well outlined under the skin; knee flat in front, salient behind, and, above all, articulated vertically; canons short, strong, wide, vertical; tendons voluminous, clean, well detached, parallel to the canon; fetlock wide; pasterns short, little inclined; thigh long, muscular,

---

[1] We have purposely not included in the preceding observations this passage from Cardini: "Jack, a celebrated trotting-horse which, in 1834, trotted two English miles in three minutes and seven seconds, is cited." This horse would therefore have travelled in the time indicated, 3 k., 218 metres. By making the calculation, it is found that the speed would have been 17.208 m. per second. We believe that there is an error in the correctness of the time, for the most remarkable trotters are too much below the speed attributed to Jack.

[2] H. Bouley, Nouveau Dictionnaire, etc., t. i. p. 394.

very mobile; stifle projecting outward; buttock and leg long, wide, muscular; hock fine, clean, wide, thick, well directed. Finally, regular axes; muscles dense, compact, prominent; skin fine and mane little abundant.

In France there are no equine races whereof the individuals are exclusively trotters, as in Russia, England, and America, for example.[1] But we meet, among our Anglo-Normans, many horses which, in races to harness and under the saddle, vie with the preceding.

All horses do not trot in the same manner. There are some in which the extension of the whole anterior member is carried to such an extreme that the contact of the foot with the ground, after a short time of arrest, almost seems to be effected upon the heels. The movements of the posterior members are equally very extended, whence an energetic effort of propulsion, much more *action*, as we are in the habit of saying.

Again, there are some, *light* trotters, which emit but faint beats when trotted upon a hard road or a pavement; others, on the contrary, emit *heavy* sounds under these circumstances. Some *rock themselves* from the fact of very great corpulence or a vicious axis of the members.

Some raise their members insufficiently from the ground, *scrape the floor;* others elevate them excessively, *trot from the knees*, which is so much loss of force.

Others, again, lack harmony between the movements of the fore- and those of the hind-limbs, or have some anatomical defect of certain regions which detracts from the grace and ease of the gait, and even exposes them to many accidents to be described farther on; such are horses which *forge*, have *string-halt, pegged shoulders, rotating hocks*, etc.

Finally, some *show their shoes*, from excessive flexion of the pastern upon the fetlock.

Most of these defects are not peculiar to the trot, but are common to all the other gaits. We will examine them in a special chapter.

Nevertheless, there are some defects whose study cannot be separated from that of the trot; they become manifest when the horse is overdriven, fatigued, or exhausted. We will immediately pass them in review.

The Broken Trot; Flying Trot; Racking.

All these expressions are synonymous in that they are applied to characterize the same phenomenon, modifying the rhythm of the trot

---

[1] This expression is scarcely correct, for the trotter does not constitute a race, but only a variety of a race. (Harger.)

and giving to it a peculiar appearance. We refer to the disassociation of the diagonal beats. The terms are, however, employed differently according to the conditions under which this disassociation manifests itself.

Sometimes the synchronism of the diagonal contacts disappears when the speed of the trot, already great, is carried to the extreme, as is observed in the *fast trot* or *flying trot.*

At other times this takes place if the ordinary trot be forced ever so little. It is in this event that the word *racking* is to-day employed. The latter, therefore, should express more especially a disunion of the trot, which may have as its causes fatigue, weakness, or wear and tear.[1]

Be that as it may, it will be found on serious consideration that it is an effort of an identical nature which induces the horse, whatever he may be, vigorous or exhausted, to *break, disunite, disconnect* his diagonal beats. He endeavors, in all cases, to accelerate his speed by longer strides without passing into the gallop; and he would surely pass into the latter if he were not held back, or if the urging with the voice, the whip, or the leg were continued. Hence, in our opinion, this variety of trot is a transition, a mode of changing from the normal trot to the gallop. As it accompanies a variable degree of velocity, it must be interpreted favorably or unfavorably according to circumstances.

Thus, it is not inadmissible in a trotting-horse, if it serves as a means of acceleration to excel his competitors; but this horse would be considered as being inferior to his rivals, if the disunion of the gait did not make him superior to them in point of speed. Likewise a horse which racks after a slower trot is much inferior to one which only changes to this gait after moving at greater speed.

It is seen that, in the presence of the broken trot, numerous distinctions must be made relative to the qualities of the animals. The important point is to determine at what rate of speed the change takes place, so as to ascertain whether it is or is not a sign of fatigue and exhaustion. Young horses which are little accustomed to work frequently rack, but training and exercise will usually cause the disappearance of this defect. It is, on the contrary, irremediable in those in which excessive labor or old age has deteriorated the forces and exhausted the mechanism.

The *flying trot* or *fast trot* is in most instances a broken trot, which

---

[1] It is impossible to formulate the general trail of *racking*, because it necessarily varies with the speed. It resembles ordinarily that of the broken trot.

the majority of horses employ either during the entire duration of a race or only when nearing the winning-post.

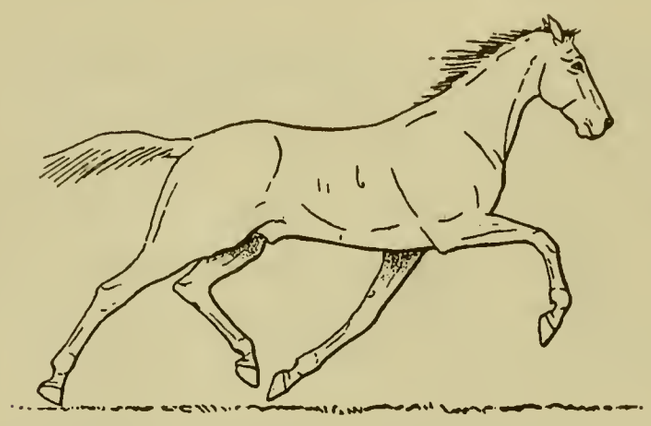


FIG. 214.—The *flying trot* of the horse Abe Edington: end of the left diagonal contact.

Exceptionally good subjects give way to it less frequently and for shorter periods of time than others; but, in the

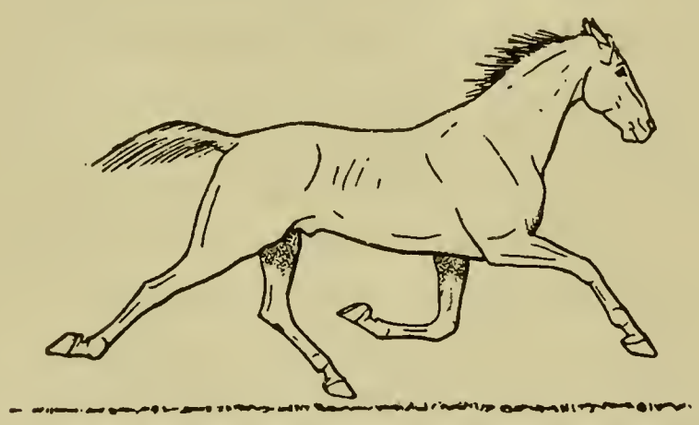


FIG. 215.—The *flying trot* of the horse Abe Edington: projection.

absence of more conclusive evidence, we may doubt if any horse exists that never indulges in the practice.

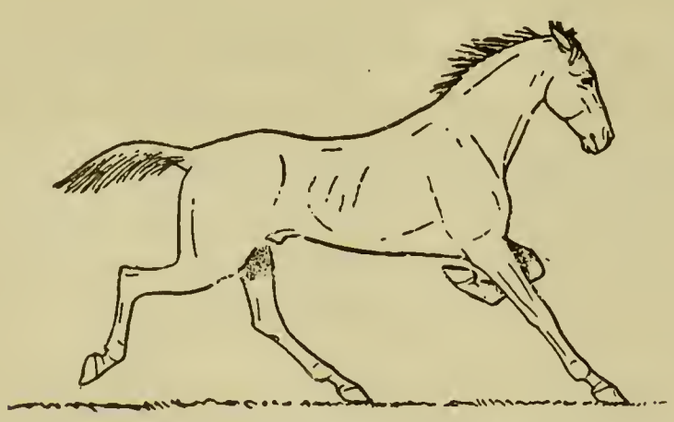


FIG. 216.—The *flying trot* of the horse Abe Edington: commencement of the right diagonal contact.

FIG. 217.—Trail of the *flying trot* of the horse Abe Edington.

This gait is the result of the excessive speed which they are made to display. Horsemen have been for many

years opposed to the tendency which certain trainers have of training their horses in this direction. According to M. Ephrem Houel,[1] it should even be strictly proscribed on all the race-courses. We are in accord with this opinion, and believe that, by the fatigue which it occasions, it exposes the members to premature ruin.

M. Lenoble du Teil has carefully studied the flying trot from the instantaneous photographs of M. Muybridge, published in the journal *La Nature*, in 1879. He has, at our request, formulated the trail and the notation of this gait furnished by the American horse Abe Edington, moving at the rate of 11.90 m. per second.

We have reproduced very accurately, in Figs. 214, 215, and 216, three successive phases of the trot of this horse, to give an idea of the attitude of the members and the very great length of the strides. These figures will explain themselves.

The trail (Fig. 217) shows that the posterior imprints are situated almost 2 metres in front of the corresponding anterior. This peculiarity is due to the distance of the projection. Here will be remarked, besides, the relative smallness of the diagonal base, which at times does not attain 1.20 m.,—that is to say, three-quarters of the height of the horse, as is observed in the ordinary trot. Hence there results less stability and, in consequence, more precipitated movements and greater velocity.

The stride, measured between the successive imprints of the anterior right foot, is 6.04 m.; it occupied about half a second. That of the posterior, measured from the left imprint, is a little longer; it, indeed, attains 6.23 m.

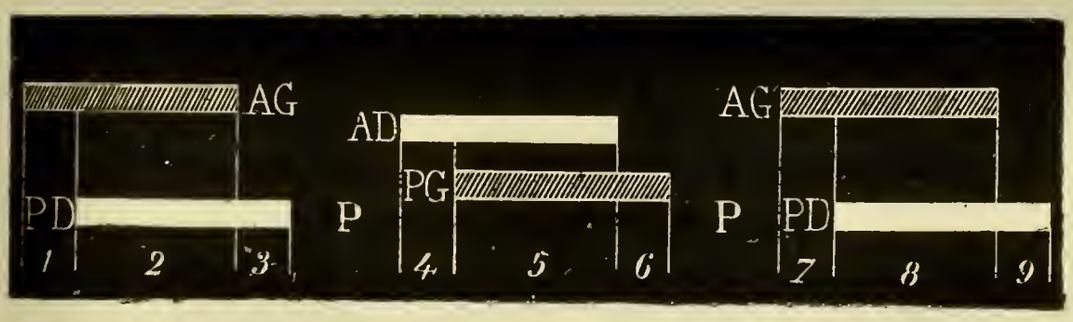


FIG. 218.—Notation of the *flying trot* furnished by the horse Abe Edington. (From instantaneous photographs of Muybridge.)

The notation is also most interesting. The disassociation of the diagonal beats is very evident (Fig. 218). The anterior member arrives first on the ground. It follows from this that the body is first supported by this member (1), then by a diagonal biped (2), finally by the poste-

[1] Ephrem Houel, Traité des courses au trot, p. 126, Paris, 1864.

rior member (3) belonging to this biped. After the posterior unipedal contact the body is raised from the soil, *P*, to touch it again and complete a half-step.

M. Lenoble du Teil has calculated that the duration of each foot on the soil lasted about fourteen-hundredths of a second, or three-elevenths of the total duration of the step, while the unipedal contacts, much shorter, equal each only one-ninth of the time of the contact of the feet. One understands then the impossibility of appreciating clearly this analysis of the diagonal beats under such velocity.

As to the phases of projection, they are equal to two-thirds of the duration of the contact,—that is to say, relatively long in relation to what they are in the perfectly synchronous trot.

In the absence of more numerous data, the preceding facts have only the value of a simple indication, upon which it would, no doubt, be premature to establish the definite theory of the fast trot. Nevertheless, they are a step in the course of its mechanism.

The conclusion which can be deduced from them is that, at certain moments, four times in the same step, the body is supported only by one member. The anterior limbs have individually to sustain the effect of the fall of the body at great speed, while the posterior are likewise by turns severally taxed with the communicating of the impulsion. The apparatus of impulsion of the latter and the apparatus of *amortissement* (dispersion of concussion) of the former are therefore frequently exposed to exertions from which they would be spared were not the synchronism of the diagonal beats more or less destroyed. Hence it is that the habitual employment of the flying trot contributes to the premature ruin of the fetlocks and the hocks, particularly in young horses.

But in the broken trot is it always an anterior member which arrives first in contact? Is it not sometimes a posterior? It is possible that these two modes of disassociation of the diagonal beats can exist, although science only possesses presumptions upon this point.

M. Lenoble du Teil[1] thinks that the hind-feet rest first whenever the diagonal base notably exceeds three-fourths of the height, and the head and neck of the horse, slightly elevated, displace the weight upon the posterior quarters. These conditions of equilibrium are realized when the jockey pulls the horse's head violently with the reins, in mediocre trotters, in young horses which have had no training, and in

[1] Lenoble du Teil, note communiquée.

full-grown animals whose strength has become exhausted from excessive exertion, or which have been overdriven.

Whatever may be the process of disassociation employed by the animal, and the accuracy of the interpretation which can be given to it, the fact remains that the disturbance of the isochronism of the diagonal beats results in the formation of unipedal bases, which increase the exertion of the extremities. Whether the broken trot is the *flying trot* of subjects endowed with great action, or *racking* of those fatigued and inapt, its consequences upon the locomotory apparatus remain the same: premature or positive ruin, according to circumstances.

On the other hand, trotting-horses which disassociate their diagonal beats by the initial rest of the posterior foot are less pleasant as saddle-horses than others, the rapidity of the pace being taken out of consideration. If they do not give very hard reactions to the rider, they communicate to him light and sudden shocks which displace his seat transversely, a kind of movement expressed by saying that they *roll upon their haunches.* With them one cannot ride *à l'Anglaise,* an inconvenience of a certain importance to persons who are in the habit of doing so and who wish to save themselves from the unnecessary fatigue of a long journey.

Saut de Pie (Skipping).

When the disunion of the trot becomes excessive, and when this gait is on the point of passing into the gallop, the horse, in order to preserve it, effects a sort of leap behind, to which is given the name of *saut de pie*[1] (foot-jerk).

This movement, of very short duration, and analogous to that of a pedestrian who endeavors to acquire the step of a companion whose speed is greater, has not yet been analyzed by chrono-photography or by the graphic method. (See *Canter.*) It is therefore impossible, in the actual state, to recognize the mechanism. Hence we will not dwell on this.

The Canter.

The **canter** is a gait of transition which the trotter assumes temporarily, and in which he gallops on one of his bipeds (anterior or posterior), while he continues to trot on the other.

It could be defined as a *semi-broken trot,*—that is to say, with diagonal beats synchronous in one moiety of the stride, disassociated in the other.

From a peculiar resemblance which is easily understood, although

---

[1] De Curnieu, loc. cit., 1er partie, p. 145.

it may not be altogether accurately founded, the laity have compared the ordinary walk of a man to the *walk* of the quadrupeds; his manner of running to the *trot*, and a certain variety of the latter, which children imitate in their plays, to the *gallop*. The only error in this comparison is that the quadrupedal locomotion resembles, as Dugès has described, that of two men following each other, and not that of one alone.

In the gallop of the infant, instead of emitting the sounds at equal intervals of time, the contacts of the feet are precipitated, one slightly preceding the other; the body is then projected to fall upon the foot which was first rested, and thus continued.

The anterior and posterior members of a galloping-horse behave themselves as those of the two men should who follow each other at the gallop. There is no difference in the rhythm in either case. The association of the feet of the two pedestrians may alone differ from the mode of combination of the two bipeds of the horse, but there is nothing to prevent it from being identical.

If the *fore* pedestrian now assumes this gait (Fig. 219) while the *hind* preserves the trot, we will have the defect known under the name

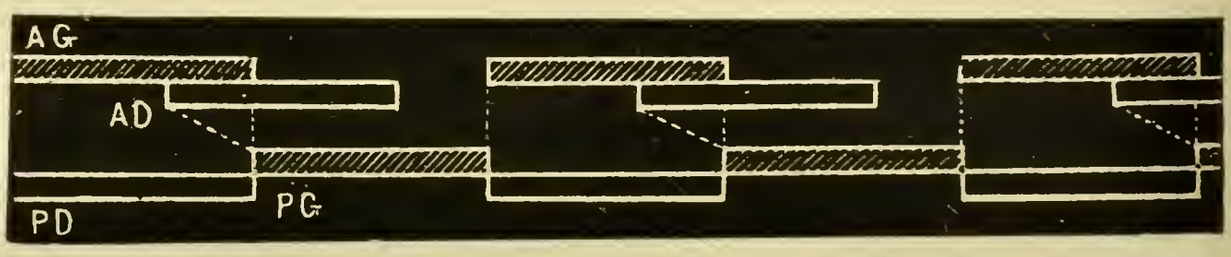


FIG. 219.—Notation of the *canter in front.*[1]

The irregular beats, *AG*, *AD*, of the anterior biped have a different rhythm from that of the isochronous beats of the posterior biped, *PD*, *PG*.

the *canter in front*. If, on the contrary, the hind pedestrian gallops while the other trots, we produce the *canter behind*. The *saut de pie*, still so obscure, is perhaps only a single stride of the latter.

Finally, let us advance further and suppose that the horse canters at the same time upon the two bipeds, and we will gradually realize the *normal gallop*.

This manner of regarding the canter as a form of transition between the trot and the gallop leads us to say that this gait is much less defective than was hitherto believed. Certain indolent, though perfectly sound, horses employ it with great facility, and would willingly preserve it if those who drive them did not choose to make them

[1] In order to simplify the figure, the periods of suspension, which exist here as in the ordinary trot, have not been regarded.

take the gallop by urging them on. Likewise, horses very ardent and of a good conformation are often seen to canter for some distance before passing into the gallop, despite the efforts of their riders to prevent them (Lenoble du Teil).

Nevertheless, the horse which canters ordinarily suffers in some region of the members of the cantering biped, most often the feet. Under other circumstances, it is an index of weakness, of indolence, or of exhaustion. Certainly we must suspect such conditions, as this gait alone may be able to betray; in itself, it is not defective, for, bordering on the gallop, it causes, like the latter, less fatigue and furnishes a little more speed than the trot.

Running Walk.

This gait, in our study, should be placed between the many varieties of the *trot* and those of the *walk*, because it establishes very well the transition or the passage from the one to the other.

It resembles the trot (Fig. 220) in that the members are successively moved in diagonal bipeds (*AG, PD—AD, PG*) and unites its beats in this order; *it simulates the walk*, on the contrary, by its slowness, its

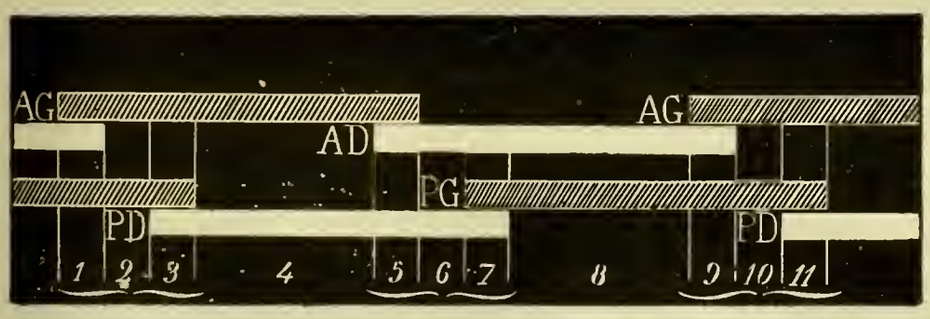


FIG. 220.—*Running walk:* notation and nature of the bases.

marched character, the mode of succession, and the number of the beats. It is, consequently, a short broken trot in the last degree, as well as a very accelerated walk in which the horse is at the point of passing into the trot.

The disassociation of the diagonal beats, like the *marched* character of this gait, gives rise to complex supplementary bases (1, 2, 3—5, 6, 7), which are interposed between the ordinary diagonal bases (4, 8 . . .), always of long duration. Among these supplementary bases is found one that is unilateral (2, 6, 10), placed between two very short tripedal bases (1 and 3, 5 and 7, 9 and 11).

It follows from this that the running walk is low, by no means leaped, and always very easy for the rider. Horses which move thus are supposed to *elevate* the members but little and *scrape the floor*. Nevertheless, this assertion has yet to be verified. These horses, called

Fig. 221.—Trail of the *running walk*, from Lenoble du Teil.

bidets d'allure or *de haut pas*, are at present somewhat scarce; but before the construction of railroads they were prized by horse-dealers, and, in general, by all persons who had to travel very long distances. They were sought for on account of their pleasant gait, the rapidity of which almost equalled that of the ordinary trot.

Mazure[1] has indicated their conformation, if indeed such a word is appropriate; for in truth a great muscular development, a somewhat large head, a powerful neck, rather horizontal than erect, loins short and strong, above all, a thigh thick, long, and descended, do not constitute a particular conformation allied to this special gait.

The trail (Fig. 221) shows, as in the case of the short trot, the posterior imprints placed behind the anterior; the difference resides entirely in the diminished length of the step.

This gait may be *natural* or *artificial;* in the latter case the horse is dressed by trammelling him in diagonal bipeds by means of a strap attached to the pasterns, and urging him as much as possible without passing into the trot, which is not without difficulty.

It would seem that all horses do not execute this gait in the same manner. According to Lecoq, there were some in Normandy which were called *skaters* (*patineurs*), and in which the beats, almost equally separated, differed only from those of the normal walk by their rapidity and a lesser elevation of the members. These animals fatigue the rider much more than those with the ordinary running walk, by the rocking which they occasion.

C.—The Walk.

Definition.—The **walk** is a slow, marched gait, in which the four members succeed each other diagonally, rise and touch the ground separately, and produce four equally-spaced beats.

Kinematic Analysis of the Play of the Members.—The body resting always upon the ground in the walk, there is not, *during the contact*, a period of dispersion as energetic as in

[1] Mazure, Mémoires de la Société vétérinaire des départements du Calvados et de la Manche, 1837, p. 134.

the trot. It is manifested, nevertheless, by a depression in the trajectories of the fetlock and the knee or the hock (Figs. 222 and 223, *A*).

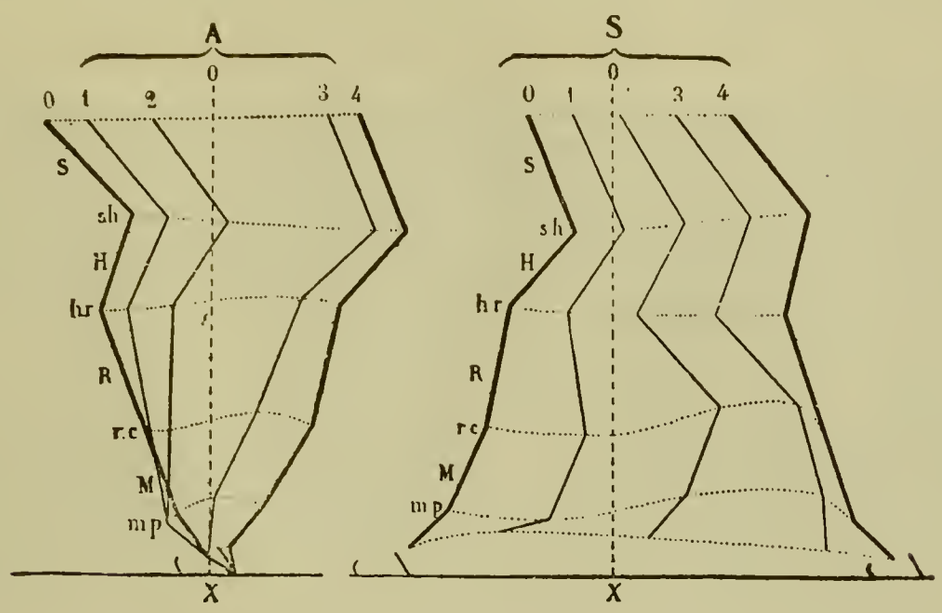


FIG. 222.—Kinematic analysis of the play of the anterior member in the *walk*. (From Messrs. Marey and Pagès.)

A. Phase of contact. | *S*. Phase of elevation.

During the phase of contact, the curves of the articulations of the fore-members become progressively convex, in consequence of the rotation of the phalangal lever which raises the articular centres, particularly the two inferior, fetlock

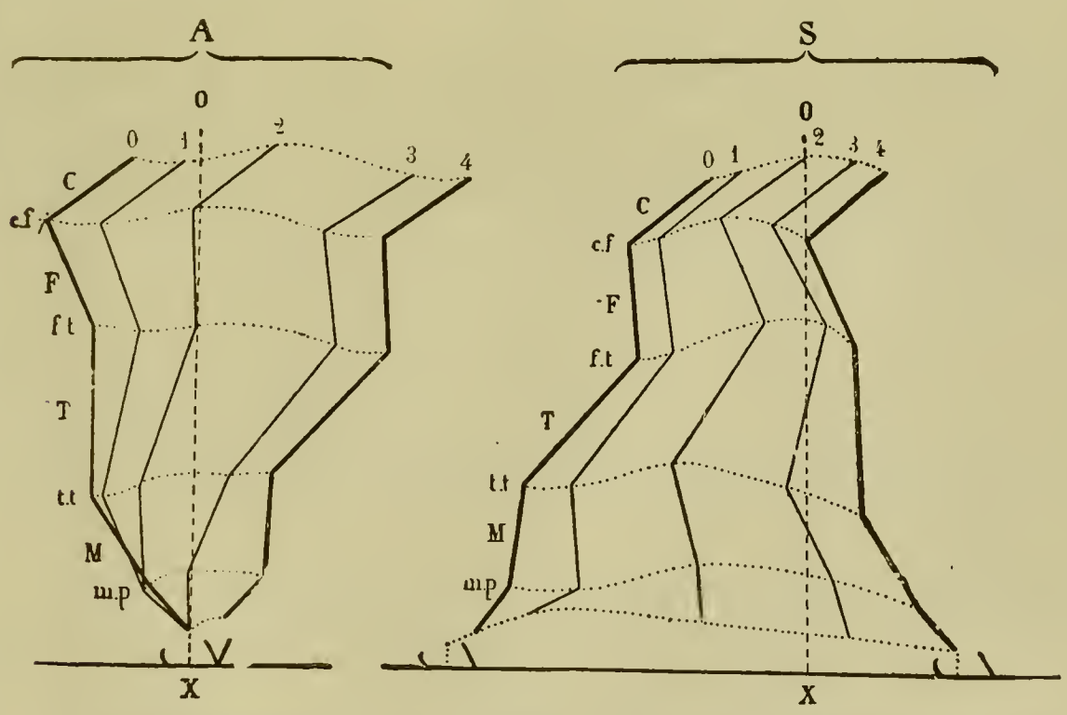


FIG. 223.—Kinematic analysis of the play of the posterior member in the *walk*. (From Messrs. Marey and Pagès.)

A. Phase of contact. | *S*. Phase of elevation.

and carpus. Towards its termination, the curves descend again under the influence of a slight flexion of the knee. In the posterior members, they undergo almost analogous modifications.

During the elevation, S, the trajectories are sensibly of the same nature as in the trot, although farther separated from one another on account of the less flexion of the articular angles. Yet those of the withers and the shoulder, and even that of the elbow, remain almost horizontal. In the posterior member, the coxo-femoral centre and the angle of the haunch describe a curve with the convexity superior corresponding to the extension of the member before leaving the soil. This is demonstrated by the chrono-photographs of Messrs. Marey and Pagès.

Order of the Beats.—It is most frequently the anterior member which commences the step. The beats in such a case follow each other in the following order, supposing the horse to step with the right foot:

Right Diagonal Biped.	Left Diagonal Biped.
1st *beat:* anterior right.	3d *beat:* anterior left.
2d *beat:* posterior left.	4th *beat:* posterior right.

When the animal leaves station in a position more or less *camped*, it is sometimes a hind-member which moves first. If it be the left, for example, the mode of succession of the beats remains the same, but the fore-foot of the same side is brought down to the ground immediately afterwards. The step is then completed, as we have just said; the extremities then strike the soil in the following manner: *left posterior, left anterior, right posterior, right anterior, left posterior*, etc., and so on, as long as the gait remains regular. Dugès[1] is consequently correct in stating that the "four legs of the horse may be represented to the mind as two lateral pairs, acting the one after the other, and in each of which the movement of the anterior member is always immediately preceded by that of the posterior."

Tracing and Notation.—These facts, observed by ancient investigators on equine matters, have been registered automatically by the apparatus of M. Marey.[2] We will reproduce (Fig. 224) the tracing which he has obtained and the notation which corresponds to it. The reader will in this figure find all the explanations necessary to comprehend its details.

The following principal conclusions can be deduced from it:

1st. The order of the beats, 1, 2, 3, 4, takes place after the mode indicated above.

2d. When one member is in the middle of its contact, that of the one which follows it commences.

3d. When one member is in the middle of its elevation, that of the one which follows it commences.

---

[1] Dugès, Traité de physiologie comparée, t. ii. p. 170.

[2] Marey, La machine animale, p. 166.

4th. In each biped, anterior or posterior, when one member is on the ground its congener is in the air, and *vice versa.*

5th. If vertical lines corresponding to each one of the beats be drawn downward, commencing with that of the anterior right foot, which bears the

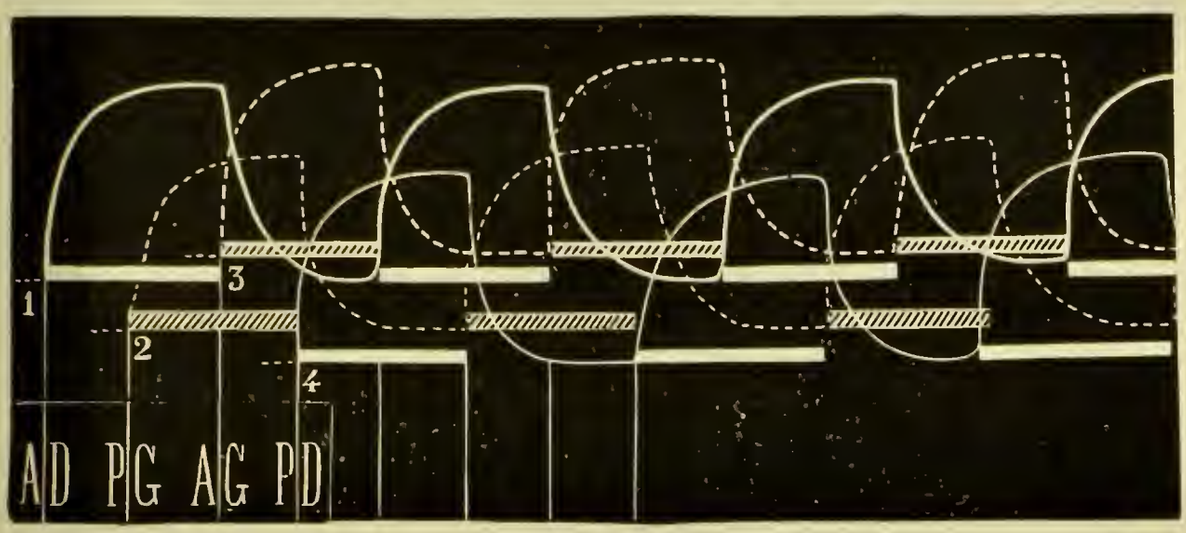


FIG. 224.—*Tracing and notation of the walk with equality of the lateral and diagonal contacts.*

AD, anterior right beat. | *AG*, anterior left beat.
PG, posterior left beat. | *PD*, posterior right beat.

1, 2, 3, 4, order of succession of the beats. *Full white lines*, curves given by the contact of the right feet; *dotted white lines*, curves of the contact of the left feet. The curves of the posterior feet are below those of the corresponding anterior. The *ascending part* of each curve corresponds to a *contact;* the *descending part* to an *elevation.* The *length of the lines* of the notation, situated below the tracing, indicates the *duration of the contact.* The *interval between two white lines* represents the *duration of the elevation* of a *right* member; the *interval between two gray lines* represents the *duration of the elevation* of a *left* member.

number 1, the figure will be divided into successive spaces, in which will be found in contact (with the soil) sometimes two members of the same side (lateral biped), sometimes two members situated diagonally. Thus, from 1 to 2 the horse would rest upon the right lateral biped; from 2 to 3, upon the right diagonal; from 3 to 4, upon the lateral left; from 4 to 5, upon the diagonal left; finally, from 5 to 6, he would rest, as at the beginning, upon the lateral right (Marey).

The contact of the body is therefore twice lateral and twice diagonal during the duration of the same step.

6th. When the animal rests upon a lateral biped, the members of the opposite biped are very close together, for the anterior is raised while the posterior arrives on the ground. It is under these conditions that the hind-foot can meet the fore-foot, if the latter be not raised quickly enough. (See instantaneous photographs.)

7th. When the animal rests upon a diagonal base, the members of the biped in contact are widely separated, since the anterior is about reaching the ground and the posterior is in the act of rising. Never will the horse, in this case, be exposed to forging or overreaching. (See instantaneous photographs.)

8th. The lateral base is always very long, the members which form it showing themselves, by turns, in a *camped* attitude. According to M. Lenoble du Teil, it should be 1.65 m. for a horse of 1.60 m.

9th. The diagonal base is always small, the members which form it being drawn towards each other. According to M. Lenoble du Teil, it should be 0.75 m. for a horse of 1.60 m.

The conclusions which we have just drawn from the *tracings* of M. Marey are in accord with the facts observed by all authors, ancient and modern. We must, however, confess that they are slightly erroneous in that which concerns the number of bases which support the body successively during the accomplishment of a complete step.

By viewing the horse obliquely in front or behind, when the gait is slow, it is not very difficult to ascertain for ourselves that the body is not exclusively sustained by diagonal or lateral bases.

At certain moments there appear *tripedal* supplementary bases, recognized by our distinguished colleague, M. Chénier,[1] and before him by M. Lenoble du Teil,[2] who described in the marched gaits the remarkable *periods of exchange of contact*, a statement identical to that recently made by Messrs. Marey and Pagès,[3] when they spoke of the period of *double contact* recognized by them in these same gaits.

A horse which ascends a hill, pulls a heavy load, or walks slowly, shows *tripedal* bases very plainly.

The instantaneous photographs, notably those of M. Ottomar Anschütz, of Lissa, attest this in a forcible manner. Figs. 225, 226,

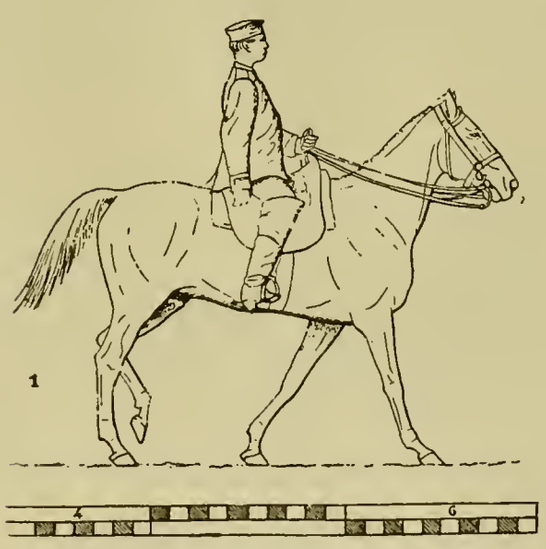


FIG. 225.—The *walk:* posterior right tripedal contact.
(From the instantaneous photographs of Lissa.)

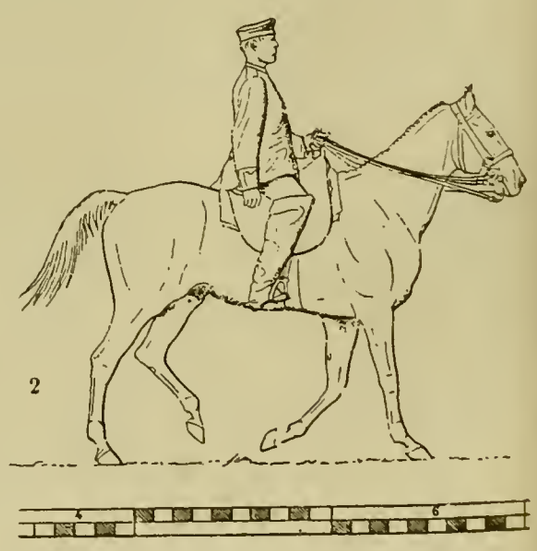


FIG. 226.—The *walk:* lateral right contact.
(From the instantaneous photographs of Lissa.)

227, and 228, reproduced from these photographs, explain the succession of the diverse bases which appear in the course of a semi-step, and which are repeated in the same order in the other moiety of the stride. The tripedal bases of support there are evident.

---

[1] G. Chénier, Analyse du présent ouvrage, in Écho des Sociétés et associations vétérinaires, année 1884.

[2] Lenoble du Teil, Étude sur la locomotion de l'homme et des quadrupèdes en général, p. 14, Paris, 1887

[3] Marey et Pagès, Comptes-Rendus de l'Académie des sciences, 18 Juillet, 1887.

It is also with absolute accuracy that M. Chénier advances that these *bases* alternate very regularly with the fundamental bases already known.

FIG. 227.—The *walk:* anterior right tripedal contact.
(From the instantaneous photographs of Lissa.)

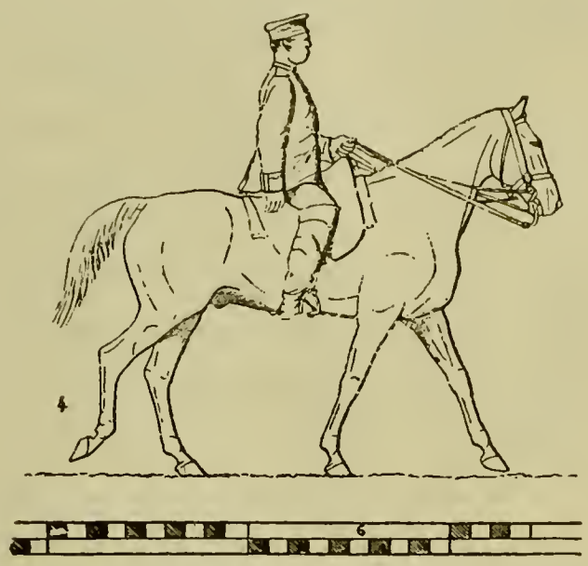


FIG. 228.—The *walk:* right diagonal contact.
(From the instantaneous photographs of Lissa.)

Fig. 229 is the exact notation of the walk with equidistant beats, which has been photographed by M. Anschütz.

FIG. 229.—Notation of the *ordinary* walk.
(From the instantaneous photographs of Lissa.)
1, 3, 5, 7, tripedal bases; 2, 6, lateral bases; 4, 8, diagonal bases.
The duration of the fundamental bases is twice that of the supplementary, which equals one-seventh of the total contact of each foot.

Evidently the periods of contact upon three members are so much shorter and less appreciable as the rhythm of the gait is more precipitated. They occur at the time of each change of contact, and, as there are four of these changes, two for each biped, anterior and posterior, there should also be four supplementary tripedal bases.[1]

If M. Marey's instruments, delicate as they are, have not registered them, it is because they occur at the instant of the raising and resting

[1] Like *markings* on the extremities, the tripedal bases are designated by the name of the *isolated* member (anterior or posterior) which contributes to form them. Example, the base *PG, PD—AG*, will be called *tripedal anterior left.*

of the hoofs or the canons, which are thus in an attitude ill suited to exercise sufficient pressure on the pneumatic foot-bulb. We expect to obtain them and appreciate their duration in all the varieties of the walk by means of our electrical shoe.

Varieties of the Rhythm.—The remarks which precede apply to a particular variety of the walk, that in which the four beats occur at equal distances from each other, a circumstance which implies a perfect equality between the diagonal and lateral contacts. All authors do not admit this special rhythm. Some, with Lecoq, say that the beats are drawn nearer in lateral bipeds; others, with Raabe, claim, on the contrary, that they are brought closer in diagonal bipeds.

It follows, then, that for the former the body should be supported longer upon the lateral than upon the diagonal base. If, in fact, the interval which exists between the beat of the posterior left, *PG* (Fig. 230),[1] and the anterior

FIG. 230.—*Walk*, with predominance of the lateral contacts.

beat of the same side, *AG*, is shorter than that which elapses between the latter, *AG*, and the posterior right, *PD*, it necessarily follows that the distances from *PG* to *AG* (diagonal base) will be less than that from *AG* to *PD* (lateral base).

Besides, if the inferior line of the notation be displaced to the left so as to bring *PD* nearer to *AG* and remove *PG* from *AG*, the opposite hypothesis will be represented, in which the lateral contacts will be shorter than the diagonal.

In the first case, the gait will approach the broken amble; in the second, it will be more analogous with the running walk.

How is this divergence of opinion explained? The answer is easy and, above all, conciliatory: All parties are right. As Merche properly remarked,[2] it is almost impossible to find two horses walking in an identical manner. Is the walk of the race-horse like that of the driving-horse or the trained saddle-horse? Is that of the heavy draught-horse the same as that of the light draught- or the coach-horse? Besides, cannot a multitude of conditions modify this gait? The hereditary influences of the animals, their service, the manner in which they are driven or ridden, their state of excitability, the weight which they

[1] In order to simplify the figure, the supplementary bases, due to the *exchange of contact*, have been ignored.

[2] Merche, Nouveau Traité des formes extérieures du cheval, p. 596.

carry, the nature and direction of the soil on which they move, and, finally, the speed which they have,—all these influences, in our opinion, explain the modifications of the rhythm which arise in each instance, and which should be considered as definite adaptations of the animals to such or such a requirement of their utilization.

That is the reason why we have, at the beginning of our study, assumed the *ordinary*, the *mean* walk, that in which all the fundamental bases are equal and the beats equidistant. The absolutely symmetrical *walk* does not tend towards the amble more than towards the trot, but it may lead to them by a series of modifications inherent to the mode of relation of the beats. Then its rhythm changes, its symmetry disappears, and, at the same time, one of the fundamental bases, the diagonal or the lateral, according as the gait inclines towards the trot or the amble.

Trails of the Walk and their Varieties.[1]—If the rhythm of the walk offers almost innumerable individual types, it is very evident that these should also convey their influence to the trail and give to the latter, according to the case, the forms which tend to bring them nearer the amble or the trot, two modes of progression whose tracings over the ground differ essentially, as we know. It must also be admitted that between the trail of the amble and that of the slow trot there are as many particular variations as between the two extremes of the rhythms of the walk.

Without entering into the special study of these differences, we will say that it is easy to relate them to one of the three forms of trails, as follows:

1. Sometimes, in fact, the posterior imprints are superposed upon the anterior of the same side (Fig. 231), which causes them to be styled *jugé* or *covered.*

2. Sometimes the posterior imprints are situated in front of the anterior for a variable distance (Fig. 232), and are then called *mejugés* or *over-covered.*

3. In other instances, finally, the reverse condition exists, the posterior being located behind the anterior (Fig. 233),[2] which may be designated as *déjugée* or *ill-covered.*

---

[1] Lenoble du Teil, Cours théorique d'équitation, de dressage et d'attelage, p. 51 et suiv., Paris, 1889, id. See, also, Revue des haras, Août 15, 1889.

[2] The expressions *elongated* walk, *ordinary* walk, and *shortened* walk, by which many authors characterize also the walk as represented respectively in Figs. 231, 232, and 233, should only be applied to the absolute length of the steps which the same subject can take when his pace is augmented or slackened, and not to the particular form of the trail.

For example, a horse which describes the trail in Fig. 231 can very easily, according to the manner in which he is led, take longer or shorter strides—that is to say, the *elongated* or the

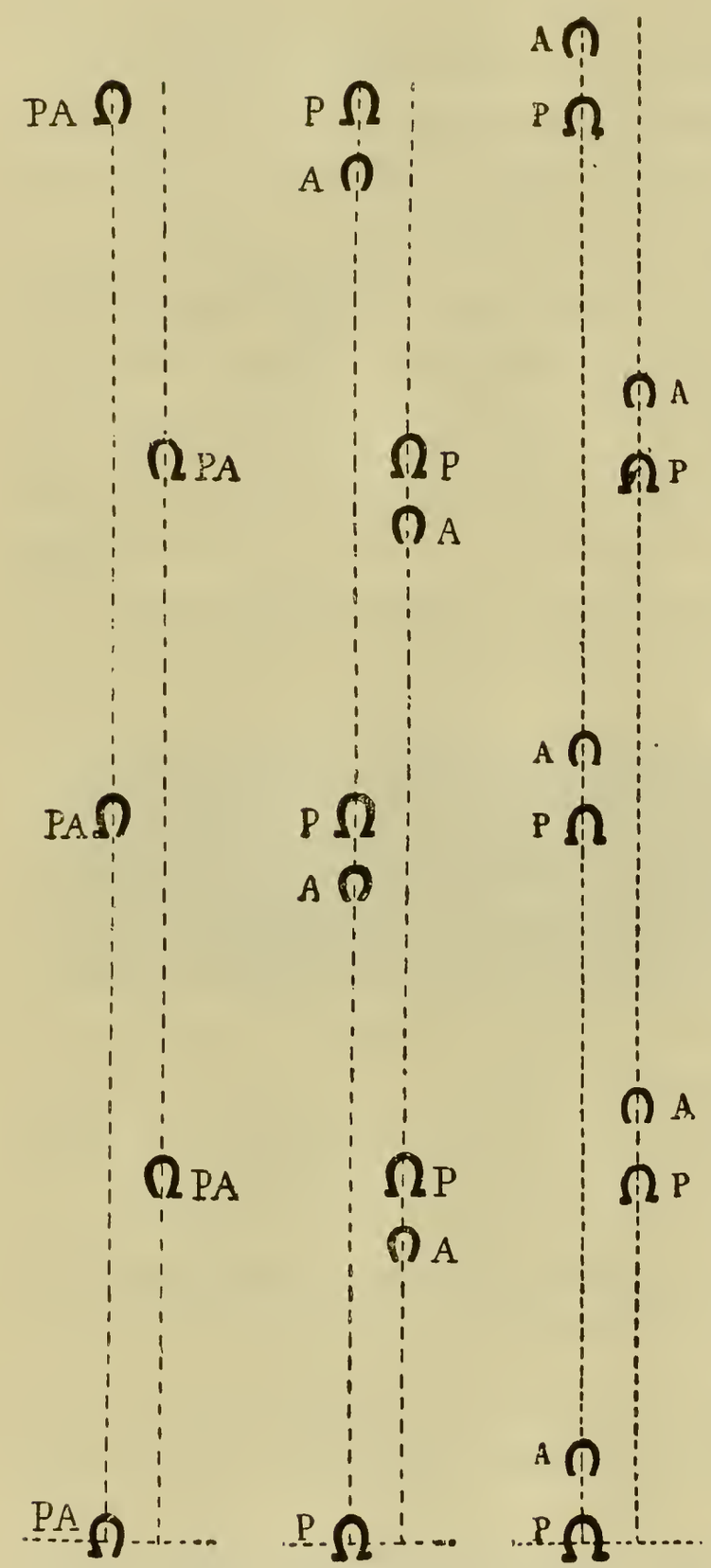


FIG. 231.—Trail of the *walk*, imprints superposed (*pas jugé*).

FIG. 232.—Trail of the *walk*, posterior imprints in front of the anterior (*pas méjugé*).

FIG. 233.—Trail of the *walk*, posterior imprints behind the anterior (*pas déjugé*).

Such, it can be seen, are the predominant phenomena which may be observed in respect to the relation of the imprints. The more the gait approaches the amble—that is to say, the synchronism of the lateral beats—the more the posterior imprints will be in front of the anterior; conversely, the more it tends towards the slow trot, in which the diagonal beats are synchronous, the more will the relation of the imprints be reversed (Fig. 233).

Observation teaches us that these modifications depend entirely upon the conditions in which the animal is placed, upon the natural or acquired preference of such or such a rhythm; in a word, upon the kind of equilibrium which he assumes spontaneously, or to which he is submitted by those who direct him. This is a point which M. Lenoble du Teil has clearly elucidated.[1] Let us give an example.

A horse walking in perfect freedom carries the neck relatively low, pro-

shortened walk—without the imprints ceasing to be superposed. All that is required for this is not to change his primitive state of equilibrium.

[1] Lenoble du Teil, Cours théorique d'équitation, de dressage et d'attelage, p. 51 et suiv., Paris, 1889, id. See, also, Revue des haras, Août 15, 1889.

duces isochronous beats, and more or less places the hind-imprints anterior to the fore-imprints; it is this which several authors have called the *ordinary* walk, because it is that of all horses walking at liberty. It is the same with the horse which is mounted, whose rider leaves the reins hang loose. In both cases the gait is slow.

If, however, the horse no longer has the free play of his neck; if the rider progressively raises the latter by the action of the reins, being careful to increase the traction regularly, this disposition of the lateral imprints will gradually diminish, then disappear at the moment when they are superposed; and, finally, their relation will be reversed if the raising of the neck be continued and the horse remain unexcited. The gait then takes the character of the slow, marched trot; besides, its rhythm becomes entirely different. The beats, at first equidistant, follow each other in rapid succession diagonally, and finally become confounded.

If the horse whose lateral imprints are superposed be forced to accelerate his speed by increasing his action and giving freedom to the movements of his neck, the walk does not pass indifferently into the diagonal form or the lateral form; in other words, into the trot or the amble. The subject always modifies the rhythm in the sense of his acquired or natural aptitudes. Thus, the trotter acquires a walk tending rather towards the slow trot, while the ambler precipitates his beats laterally to pass into the amble, and the trails are modified in consequence.

It is the relative position of the head and neck that are the essential but not exclusive agents in these modifications of the rhythms. In addition to the muscular action, the head and neck surcharge the anterior or the posterior members, and favor the particular movements of such or such a biped, either by hastening the action of the one or retarding that of the other. When the change of the rhythm is once produced, the gait is executed with a new cadence, and the respective distances of the members and the imprints of the trail remain the same until a new change is produced.

External influences over the horse may also occasion remarkable modifications of the rhythm, and, consequently, determine correlative variations in the trail.

If, for example, the horse ascends an inclined plane, the centre of gravity is displaced backward upon the posterior limbs and prevents their advancing far under the trunk; their imprints then remain behind those of the anterior.

A similar result is obtained if the animal is attached to a vehicle heavily loaded: the intensity of the resistance diminishes the amplitude

of the step, and permits each foot to leave the ground only after a well-balanced position of the one which has preceded in the action, the body being supported after each elevation by the other three members.[1]

In descending an inclined plane the centre of gravity, on the contrary, draws nearer to the fore-limbs and hinders their free displacement forward, while the posterior, less burdened, have a tendency to take longer steps. It happens, then, that the latter mark their imprints well in front of the former. If the load be heavy, however, the animal endeavors to fix himself to hold the burden, and the base remains constantly *tripedal*, to give more stability to the equilibrium. The steps, in this case, are short and the posterior imprints by no means cover the anterior.

Length.—The absolute **length** of the step cannot be indicated with precision, on account of the individual differences and also the numerous variations of this gait, according as it is slow, ordinary, or accelerated. Nevertheless, it oscillates within mean limits which it is proper to recognize.

According to Vincent and Goiffon, the length of the step should be equal to the height of the body measured from the withers to the ground. The cavalry regulation of 1829 places it at 1.66 m. Vallon, Messrs. Raabe and Barroil, and M. Lenoble du Teil estimate it at 1.80 m. for a horse 1.60 m. high, or one and a half times the length of the base of support. Finally, M. Duhousset considers it equal to the length of the body measured from the point of the arm to that of the buttock.

This difference of opinion is due to the fact that these authors have studied neither the same variety of the walk nor subjects of the same height, the same race, the same temperament, and the same conformation. Besides, the steps in the same animal are not absolutely equal. They vary, according to Professor Colin,[2] within the limits of 11 to 13 centimetres for the short walk, 17 for the ordinary walk, and 20 for the long walk ; the horses upon which our learned colleague has experimented had a mean height of 1.55 m. and a base of support of 1.20 m.

Speed.—The absolute **speed** of this gait is almost as difficult of appreciation, for analogous reasons. At the same time it is possible to adjust it to an almost uniform standard.

The cavalry regulation of 1829 relegates it to 100 metres per

---

[1] G. Colin, Physiologie comparée des animaux, 3e.éd., t. i. p. 471.
[2] G. Colin, loc. cit., 3e éd., t. i. p. 472.

minute, or 6 kilometres per hour. M. Raabe fixed it at 122 metres per minute for a horse of 1.60 m., or 6 kilometres, 720 metres per hour. Vallon made it 111 metres per minute for a horse of 1.60 m., or 6.600 k. per hour. Finally, M. Lenoble du Teil estimated it at 108.33 m. per minute for a horse of 1.60 m., which gives 6.500 k. per hour.

Displacements of the Centre of Gravity.—The *displacements of the centre of gravity* are never very extensive.

The support of the body upon the lateral bases constitutes the extreme limits of the *lateral* or *transverse displacements.* The line of gravitation, as in the amble, oscillates alternately from right to left and left to right. What contributes to make these displacements much less extensive than in the latter gait, is that a diagonal base and two tripedal bases are constantly interposed between two successive lateral bases. It is understood, then, that the lateral oscillations of the body will be the less marked as the animal remains the longer upon the diagonal bipeds. This is the variety of the walk which M. Raabe extolled as always having more speed and being more pleasant to the rider than that which Lecoq preferred.

The *longitudinal* or *vertical displacements* are scarcely apparent, since the body is never elevated above the soil.

Reactions.—The **reactions** of the anterior quarters alone are of any consequence. "It would seem," says M. Marey,[1] "from the extreme feebleness of the movements of the croup, that the action of the posterior members consists principally in a propulsion forward, with very little impulsion in the vertical sense."

Conformation.—A special conformation, strictly speaking, is not a necessary requirement for the proper execution of the walk. Nevertheless, all horses are far from progressing with the same elegance, the same regularity, the same velocity, the same ease, and the same vigor. The *beauties* of this gait will be recognized by the following characteristics :

The head and the neck will be carried rather high than low ; the anterior member will be extended freely and directly forward, without exaggerated elevation of the forearm and the knee ; viewed from behind, the bright surface of the shoe will be visible ; the posterior member will move in a plane parallel to that of the anterior ; its oscillation should have a large amplitude consequent upon the strong projection of the femur and the tibia ; the flexion of the hock will be moderate.

---

[1] Marey, Machine animale, p 168.

In both members the fetlocks will be flexed with suppleness, but without exaggeration; the contact of the feet will take place uniformly upon the plantar surface; when once rested, the hoof will remain immobile until it is raised, and will rotate neither outward nor inward. The beats will be equidistant, light, and of equal intensity; the posterior imprints will be located in front of the anterior of the same side, and hence, in this case, *forging* must be looked after; they will be of the same form as the feet, clean, entire, and marked from the toe to the heel externally and internally; their direction will be parallel to the axis of the trail; finally, the intervals between those of the left side will be equal to the same intervals between those of the right side, which will indicate that the movements of the members are of the same extent.

Backing.

Backing, properly speaking, is only walking backward, and it is erroneous on the part of most authors to classify it among the *movements upon place.* It is best to study it after the trot and the walk; the reason of this will be obvious presently.

Retrogression is difficult and fatiguing for the horse, in consequence of the inversion of the functions of the members which it implies; but some execute it better than others, and even with dangerous rapidity.

Backing may be effected by the horse in three different conditions: he may be *free, mounted,* or *harnessed to a vehicle.*

1st. Free or abandoned to himself (Fig. 234), he performs it in almost the same manner as when he is mounted, only his step is easier and more secure. The order in which the members succeed each other is similar to that which we have indicated in the walk, the great difference being that the initial movement is made by a hind-limb. If this be the posterior right, it will be followed by the anterior left, then the posterior left, and, finally, the anterior right.

If the horse were to back at a *trot,* the members would be displaced simultaneously, as in this gait, by diagonal bipeds in two successive times.

With a particular dressing, backing may be effected with the same regularity and the same speed as the trot forward. Count Lancosme de Brève publicly demonstrated this, and one of us was a witness of the performance in the riding-school in Paris of which he was director.

It is not indispensable, under these conditions, that the head and the neck be raised and drawn backward. These regions may remain in their ordinary situation and the horse back of his own accord.

As Lecoq[1] has remarked, the posterior member is carried backward before the posterior quarters can be surcharged by the displacement of the centre of gravity. The impulsion is then communicated to the

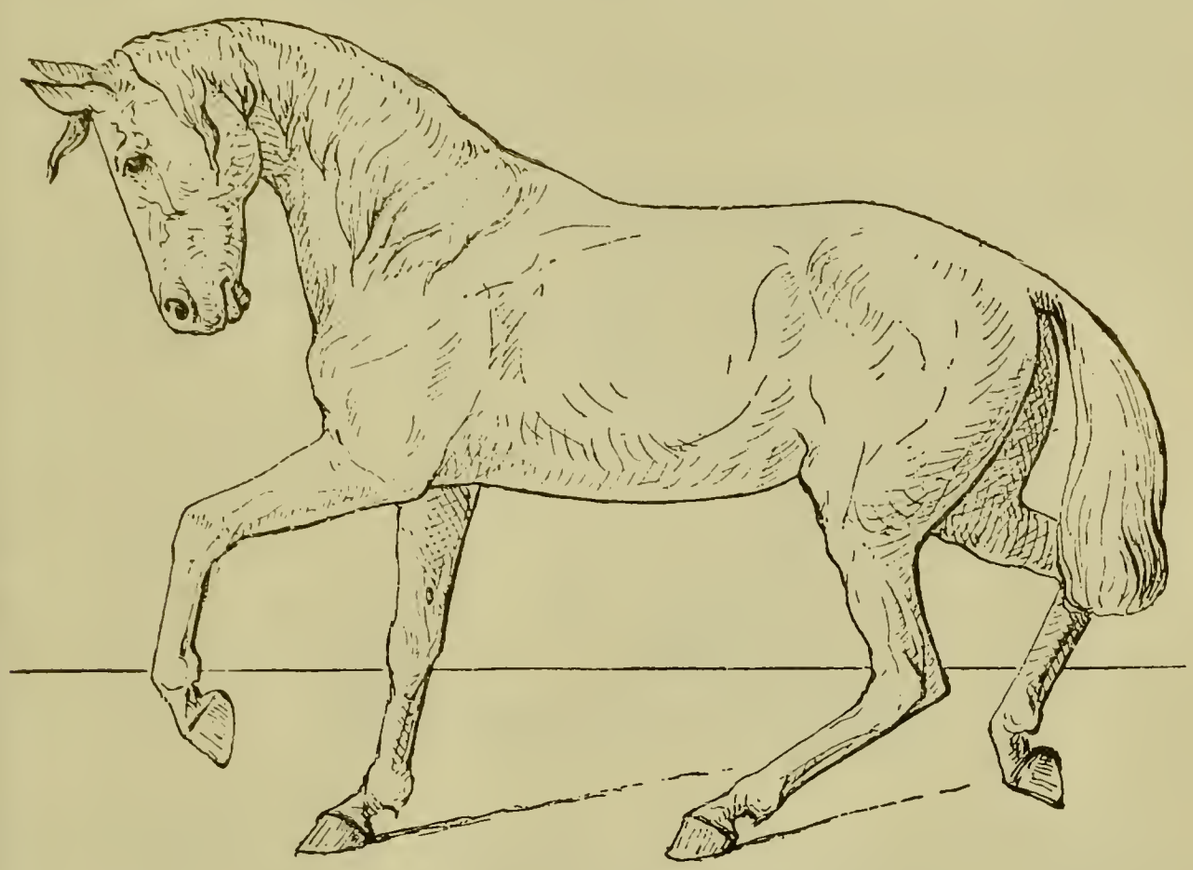


FIG. 234.—Backing.

trunk by the anterior members as well as by the posterior, whose obliquity downward and forward favors this action.

2d. The phenomena are different *when the horse is attached to a vehicle*, particularly if he moves a heavy load over soft or unequal ground. Not only is he, in this case, obliged to surmount the difficulties arising from the inability to place his members in a position inverse to the normal, but he has also to overcome the resistance formed, on the one part, by the weight of the load, and, on the other, by the nature of the soil. He then backs principally through the breeching of the harness, and only displaces the members slowly and with difficulty (Fig. 235).

It results therefrom, says Lecoq,[2] that the hind-foot supports, besides the weight of the posterior quarters, already augmented, all the resistance opposed by the burden, and the slipping forward, rendered so frequent by this double cause, deprives the horse of a large part of his force and exposes him to strains of the articulations.

---

[1] Lecoq, loc. cit., p. 342.

[2] Loc. cit., p. 342.

It is perceived at once that backing is very tiresome, particularly to the regions of the loins and the hocks. Nevertheless, all horses should be able to execute it, at least under ordinary conditions, and it is indispensable to assure ourselves of this at the time of their purchase.

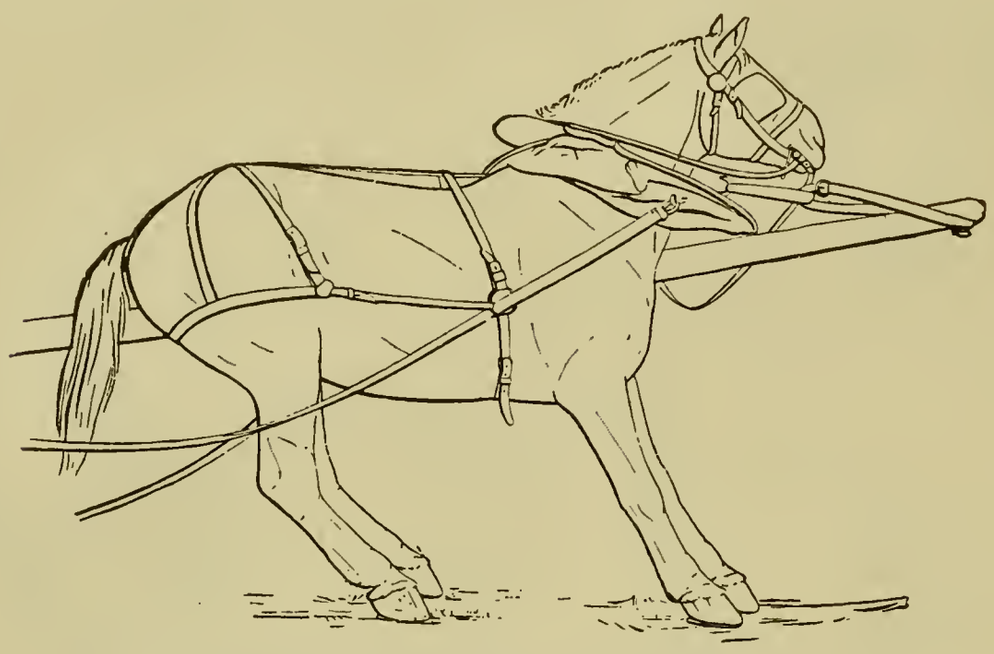


FIG. 235.—Backing, in the horse attached to a load.
(From an instantaneous photograph by the authors.)

In general, those which back badly have lesions of the bars, the dorso-lumbar vertebral column, or the hock. As to those which refuse entirely, they are affected with *immobility*, which is much more grave.

If, in such cases, continuous traction be exercised upon the reins, the horse leans to one side, elevates the head, arches the neck, holds the anterior members extended, and remains *in loco*. If more force be applied without jerking and without violence, he will twist from side to side, dig the feet into the ground, or, finally, rear and throw himself down, should the traction on the bridle be continued.

These facts which we have enumerated are sometimes more decided in the animal whose head has been turned towards the sun. Without tarrying here, we will say that *immobility* is a disease enumerated in Article II. of the law of August 2, 1884, concerning the redhibitory defects.

D.—The Gallop.

General Definition of this Gait.—It is necessary, in order to understand well the phenomena of this mode of progression, to recall the comparison of Dugès, and imagine two pedestrians following each other by combining and associating the placing of their feet on the ground according to a particular rhythm.

In the types of locomotion already studied, the canter excepted, the beats of each one of the pedestrians were always *isochronous*,—that is to say, separated by equal intervals of time, whether the gait was *marched* or *leaped*, lateral or diagonal. The member in contact fulfilled by itself the double *rôle* of dispersion and impulsion, although in a different degree according to its position in relation to the centre of gravity.

The rhythm in the *gallop* is entirely different. Each biped precipitates its falling on the ground in such a manner as to render the beats *irregular*, *heterochronous*, and then it rises to be projected forward, two phenomena which give to this mode of progression a *jerking* and *leaping* character which we have so far not met.

Here, the member in contact with the soil is far from having terminated this phase when its congener begins to assume the same phase. Hence there exists a somewhat long period in which both feet rest simultaneously, exerting this action against the centre of gravity, either to deaden the concussion or to propel the body forward. It will be understood that, in this case, the motor power is increased in considerable proportions, and that the animal becomes capable of taking longer strides and acquiring greater speed.

The Gallop to the Right and the Gallop to the Left.—A biped is said to gallop *upon the right foot* or *upon the left foot* according to the foot which strikes the ground last.

True Gallop and False Gallop.—It matters little, if the trail be *rectilinear*, whether the gallop is effected upon the one foot or upon the other. The members are even seen, from time to time, to reverse their order of succession, in order to rest themselves better. The member which reaches the soil first, being a destroyer of the reactions rather than a propeller, takes, at a certain moment, the place of its congener, which was principally the propeller. The *changing of the feet* relieves the biped by equalizing the work of its constituent parts.

It is quite different, however, when the trail is *curvilinear*. We know then that a centrifugal force is developed, which is so much stronger as the velocity of the gait is greater and the curve shorter. The animal is therefore obliged to incline himself towards the inner side of the trail to counteract this force, an attitude which consequently predisposes him to fall inside of the tract described. Hence, in view of a fall which is always imminent, he must steady his equilibrium on that side by the foothold of the corresponding propelling member, the right if the trail turn to the right, the left if it turn to the left.

The gallop is called *true* when it is effected upon the right foot, for

example, when the horse turns to the right. It is styled false in reverse conditions; falling upon the side is then to be feared.

Diagonal and Lateral Gallop.—In the large quadrupeds the movements of the posterior biped always precede those of the anterior

FIG. 236.—*Diagonal* or *united gallop.*
The two bipeds gallop upon the same foot.
A. Upon the left foot. | *B.* Upon the right foot.

in such a manner that the second beat of the former coincides with the first beat of the latter (Figs. 236 and 237).

It follows from this mode of association that instead of hearing four beats during the duration of a complete step, as if each foot was placed on the ground separately, only three are heard, in consequence of the synchronism of the beats of the second contact.

The anterior and the posterior members may combine their movements after two different types:

1st. When the anterior biped gallops in the same manner as the posterior (Fig. 236), the second period of contact is produced by the *simultaneous diagonal* beats which are interposed between the two other *diagonal disassociated* beats. We propose to designate this type, in order to distinguish it from the following, under the name of *diagonal*

FIG. 237.—*Lateral* or *disunited gallop.* (The horse is supposed to move towards the left.)
The two bipeds do not gallop upon the same foot.
A. In front. | *B.* Behind.

gallop. It is that which is natural to the horse and other large domestic quadrupeds.

2d. If, conversely, the anterior biped gallops in a manner inverse to that of the posterior (Fig. 237), there are two *lateral simultaneous* beats,

which form the second period of contact, and which are interposed between the other two *lateral disassociated* beats. In opposition to the preceding, we propose to call this gallop *lateral.* It has been for a long time known to veterinarians as the *disunited gallop.* The horse executes it rarely and with *difficulty,* for this quadruped uses especially diagonal gaits. Other animals, such as the dog, practise it rather frequently, and we should not be surprised if the dromedary and the giraffe, which take so easily the lateral type of locomotion, use it without difficulty under certain circumstances.

Be this as it may, the term *disunited* suits well for the lateral gallop, because it expresses the defect in the harmony of the movements of the two bipeds.

As long as the horse progresses at the lateral gallop upon a straight line, it is not necessary to employ a special expression to characterize his gait; the word *disunited* suffices. If, on the contrary, he describes a curvilinear trail, it is called *disunited in front* when, *moving towards the left,* for example, his anterior biped gallops *to the right* (Fig. 237, *A*), and *disunited behind* when his posterior biped does not gallop to the left (Fig. 237, *B*).

Definition of the Normal Gallop of the Horse.—We now possess all the elements necessary to an understanding of the definition of the normal (diagonal) gallop, the only one with which we will hereafter occupy ourselves.

It is a fast, leaped gait, with three times, in which the simultaneous beats of a diagonal biped occur between the two *successive* beats of the opposite diagonal biped which commences the stride with the corresponding posterior member.

Each stride is *separated* from the following by an interval of time called *projection,* during which the body is in the air.

Kinematic Analysis of the Play of the Members.—Messrs. Marey and Pagès[1] rightly attribute, in the gallop, a different *rôle* to the posterior members. The one which touches the ground first, receiving the entire body, constitutes a powerful *agent of dispersion* at the beginning of its contact, while the other fulfils the office of a *propelling agent.*

This remark being made, let us see the relative peculiarities of the articular trajectories.

1st. **Anterior Member** (Fig. 238).—*A. Phase of Contact.*—The articular trajectories are very analogous to those of the trot in the inflection of the curves during the period of dispersion, but their rising is more marked on account of the more intense fall of the body and the greater elongation of the member at the end of this phase.

---

[1] Marey et Pagès, Mouvement du membre postérieur, note communiquée.

S. Phase of Elevation.—It also much resembles that of the trot, but the convexities of the trajectories are more salient because the member, as a whole, is shortened more. The foot, as well as the knee, is well separated from the

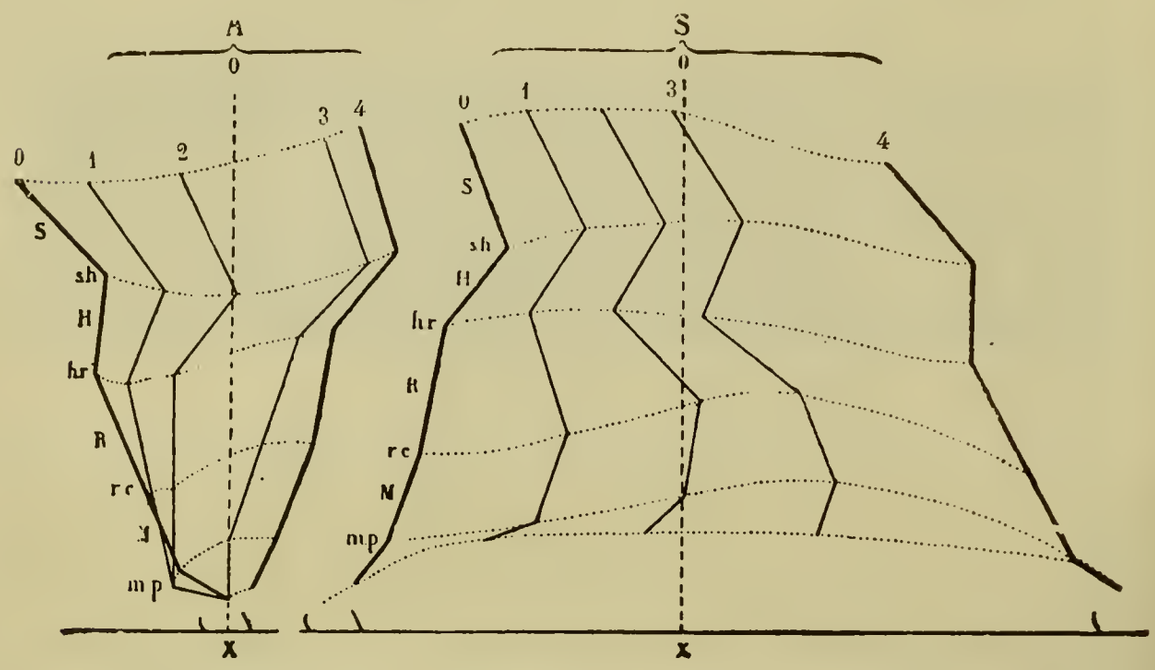


FIG. 238.—Kinematic analysis of the play of the anterior member in the *gallop*. (From Messrs. Marey and Pagès.)

A. Phase of contact. | *S.* Phase of elevation.

ground. The curves of the withers and of the shoulder-joint are not depressed in their middle as is seen in the trot.

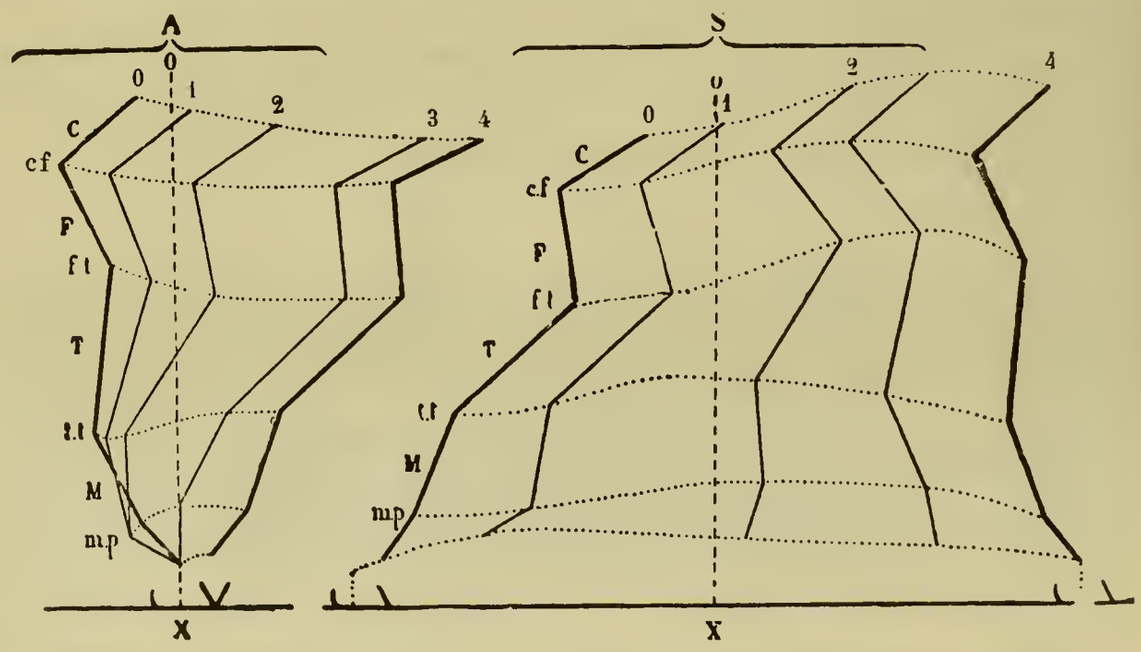


FIG. 239.—Kinematic analysis of the play of the posterior member in the *gallop*. (From Messrs. Marey and Pagès.)

A. Phase of contact. | *S.* Phase of elevation.

2d. **Posterior Member** (Fig. 239).—Nothing particular characterizes this member in the *phase of contact* excepting, as we have said at the commencement of the subject, that it is an agent of dispersion and propulsion. As to the trajec-

tories of the *phase of elevation*, they are equally comparable to those of the trot. Only, those of the coxo-femoral articulation and the angle of the haunch, at first concave, soon become greatly convex superiorly.

These two curves, considered during the two phases of contact and of elevation, are very incurvated in their middle in the gallop, while in the trot, on the contrary, they are more convex.

Number, Nature, Succession, and Duration of the Bases of Support; Duration of the Contacts of the Feet and of the Projection.—The members, in this gait, succeed each other with such rapidity that it is impossible, with the eye, to analyze their contacts with accuracy. Experiments making use of the graphic method, or chrono-photography alone, can give us definite information in this respect. Although the actual investigations are not numerous, never-

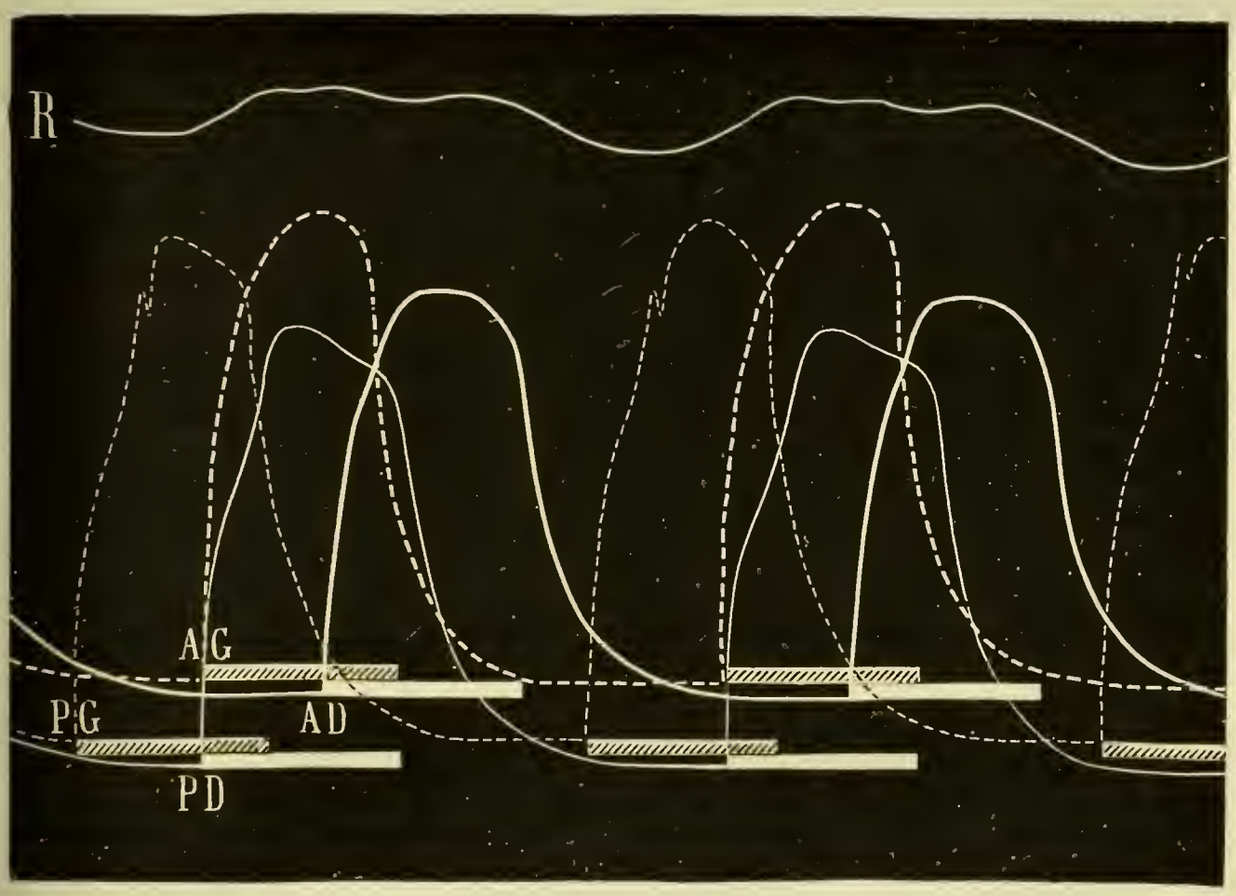


FIG. 240.—Tracings, notation, and reactions of the gallop of the trained horse. (From M. Marey.)

PG, curve and notation of the posterior left foot.
PD, curve and notation of the posterior right foot.
AG, curve and notation of the anterior left foot.
AD, curve and notation of the anterior right foot.
R, curve of the reactions of the withers.

theless they permit us to establish a certain number of facts, which we will present.

Fig. 240, which we borrow from M. Marey,[1] represents, by con-

[1] Marey, La machine animale, p. 172.

tinuous and dotted lines of different widths, the tracings furnished by the four members of a trained horse whose gait was regular and harmonious; below these curves are found the notation of the contacts.

At the beginning of the figure the horse is in the phase of projection; then comes the beat *PG*, which is produced by the contact of the posterior left foot.

Between this beat and that of the opposite diagonal member, *AD*, and almost in the middle of the interval which separates them, the simultaneous beats of the two feet, *AG*, *PD*, of the left diagonal biped take place, a synchronism which is rendered very evident by the superposition of the notations *AG*, *PD*.

Finally, between the third beat, *AD*, and the first of the following step reigns a *silence* of a duration almost equal to that of the three beats combined.

The **projection** is indicated in the notation by the interval which exists between the end of the contact of the anterior right member, *AD*, and the commencement of the contact of the posterior left, when the latter has commenced a new step. The duration of this projection, according to the tracings, equals almost one-ninth of the duration of the complete step. However, it evidently varies with each form of gallop. M. Lenoble du Teil[1] claims it to be longer, for he considers it as being equal, on the average, to one-fifth of that of the entire stride.

In this succession of movements the ear has therefore perceived three *sounds*, almost equidistant: the first produced by a hind-foot, the second by a diagonal biped, the third by a fore-foot (Fig. 241, *A*).

Fig. 241.—Notation of the gallop with three times.
(From M. Marey.)

A. Representation of the three times. *B*. Representation of the number of feet which form the contact of the body at each moment of the complete step.

If now the *successive bases* which support the body during each step are to be determined, it suffices to divide the notation (Fig. 241, *B*) by means of lowering perpendiculars tangent to the beginning and the termination of each contact. It is proved, then, that at the com-

[1] Lenoble du Teil, Étude sur le galop et la course, broch. in-8°, p. 15, Argentan, 1880.

mencement and the end of the step the body rests upon *one* foot only (1 and 1); that in its middle the base is *diagonal* (2), and during the intermediary periods, *tripedal* (3 and 3).

The *instantaneous photographs* of Lissa,[1] taken from a cavalry horse going at a *full gallop*, confirm in all respects the principal results obtained by M. Marey. As they are descriptive of a much greater speed of the gait, and as the horse which furnished them was less held in check and less trained than the preceding, they give rise to some differences worthy of note. We have recorded them with the greatest care in the notation of Fig. 242, which furnishes the necessary information.

FIG. 242.—Notation of the *full gallop*.
(From the instantaneous photographs of Lissa.)

The *duration of the stride* is divided into *twenty equal* periods: the unipedal contacts (1 and 7), as well as the projection (8), each equal *four;* the tripedal (3 and 5) and the diagonal (4) each equal *two;* as to the bipedal (posterior, 2, and anterior, 6), they each equal *one*.

Each foot remains *in contact* during *seven* periods, while its oscillation occupies *thirteen*.

The most prominent factor of this gallop, when it is compared to that which we have analyzed above, is that the beats *AG*, *PD* of the second contact are no longer synchronous; the posterior slightly precedes the anterior. In fact, the step is executed with *four* times. This disassociation, which we will again find much more perceptible on the *race-course*, and which presents a great analogy with that which is manifested in the *flying trot*, is the result of the acceleration of the speed as well as of new conditions of equilibrium. In the gallop of the specially-dressed horse, the head and neck are more raised; the general attitude is higher; the weight is thrown upon the posterior members. Here, on the contrary, the two bipeds have a tendency to share the weight of the body in an inverse manner, which horsemen express by saying that the horse is *upon his shoulders;*[2] a certain independence of action is established between the anterior and posterior bipeds, which seem to gallop each on its own accord, the hind increasing its propelling force, the fore serving for the reception of the weight.

---

[1] G. Barrier, in Bulletin de la Société centrale de médecine vétérinaire, séance du 14 Février, 1889.

[2] Lenoble du Teil, Revue des haras, Août 15, 1889.

The disassociation of the beats of the second contact gives rise to *very short tripedal bases*, a posterior (3) and an anterior (5). As to the augmentation of the speed, it is the consequence of a greater duration of the phase of projection.

Effort of the Members in the Gallop.—A glance of the eye upon the notations suffices to demonstrate the **inequality** of the **effort** of the members in this gait.

So far, we have found their work identical in the amble, the trot, and the walk, in consequence of the regular alternation of the members of each biped, anterior or posterior. The canter alone, a combination of the trot and the gallop, has presented an exception, in which this alternation is faulty in one of the bipeds.

In the gallop this is doubly marked, for it exists in both bipeds. In the fore as well as in the hind, one of its members is obliged to support the weight of the body alone for a longer or shorter time. It is easy to perceive that this augmentation of work relates only to the diagonal biped whose contacts are disassociated: the right when the horse gallops upon the right; the left in the contrary case.

Besides, each extremity of this biped does not overcome equal resistances; the posterior, on which the body falls, evidently has to sustain more than the anterior, which only supports it before the phase of projection.

It follows from these proofs that the gallop imposes a considerable increase of fatigue upon the diagonal biped whose beats are disassociated, and in particular upon the posterior member which is one of its constituent parts.

Hence a well-understood management of the horse at this gait demands that the rider take the precaution to alternate from time to time the play of the two bipeds in order to assist his mount in the equal distribution upon the members of the efforts which he must make.

Association of the Members and Attitudes of the Body during the Evolution of a Complete Step.—In Figs. 243 and the succeeding seven we will represent the eight successive phases of a stride of the *full gallop* indicated by the notation of Fig. 242. These diagrams are the true reproduction of eight instantaneous photographs chosen from the twenty proofs of the beautiful collection of M. Ottomar Anschütz. The order, succession, and nature of the beats, and the diverse bases of support, can be followed there by simply consulting the explanatory reading placed below each one.

What augments the importance of these figures, particularly for

the artist, is that they prove the falseness of the old classical doctrine, that *during the entire evolution of a stride of the gallop the members of one lateral biped are always in advance of those of the opposite lateral biped.* This assertion is no more correct of the inferior parts of the members than of the superior. Each shoulder remains, in its turn, in front of or behind its congener for a certain period of time, and the thighs behave likewise, the one in relation to the other. Despite the spasmodic rhythm in the gallop, when a member reaches the latter part of its evolution, its homologue must of necessity more or less approach the commencement of its transmission,—that is to say, be oblique in an inverse direction. When, for example, the horse, galloping upon the right, is shown detached from the soil (Fig. 250), his posterior left, upon which he will fall, is of necessity bound to pass in front of the posterior right, which will only touch the soil afterwards. For the same reason, the anterior right, whose contact occurs last, should also, at a given moment, be found not very far behind the anterior left, which will take its contact with the ground before the right.

M. Lenoble du Teil[1] was the first one to disprove clearly this theory of the advance of one lateral biped upon the other, which cannot be verified by an attentive observation of the facts, and which is flatly contradicted by all the instantaneous photographs, notably those of Lissa.

These true representations of the galloping-horse are precious also from another point of view. They show us, with great exactness, the changes of the *direction of the body* during the successive phases of the entire stride.

At the beginning (Fig. 243), at the time of the fall upon the posterior left, the withers are more elevated than the croup; the rider, who has just been projected, is seen still above the saddle and leans forward. The body then becomes horizontal when the left diagonal biped touches the ground (Fig. 246); the members of the right diagonal biped now attain their maximum separation, while the rider commences to fall back. The hind-quarters now give their impulsion, become raised and detached from the ground, while the fore-quarters, very low, touch the soil with the anterior right foot (Fig. 248). During this phase the rider bears heavily on the thighs, particularly the right; his seat is displaced backward. But the impulsion from behind immediately changes his position; he is pushed forward and raised from the saddle. His mount at this moment (Fig. 249) prepares to leave the

[1] Lenoble du Teil, Cours théorique d'équitation, de dressage et d'attelage, p. 207, Paris, 1889.

FIG. 243.—The *full gallop* (1st *beat;* posterior left unipedal base).

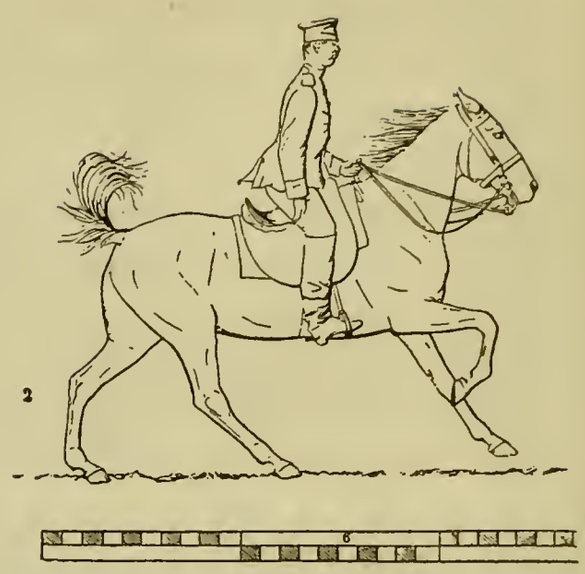


FIG. 244.—The *full gallop* (2d *beat;* posterior bipedal base).

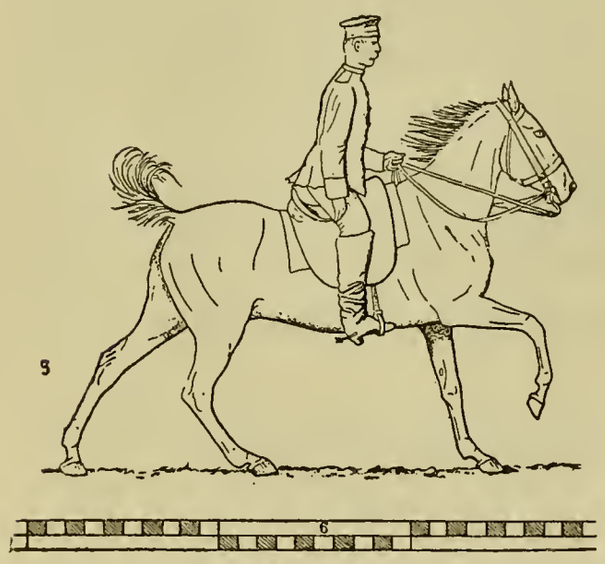


FIG. 245.—The *full gallop* (3d *beat;* anterior left tripedal base).

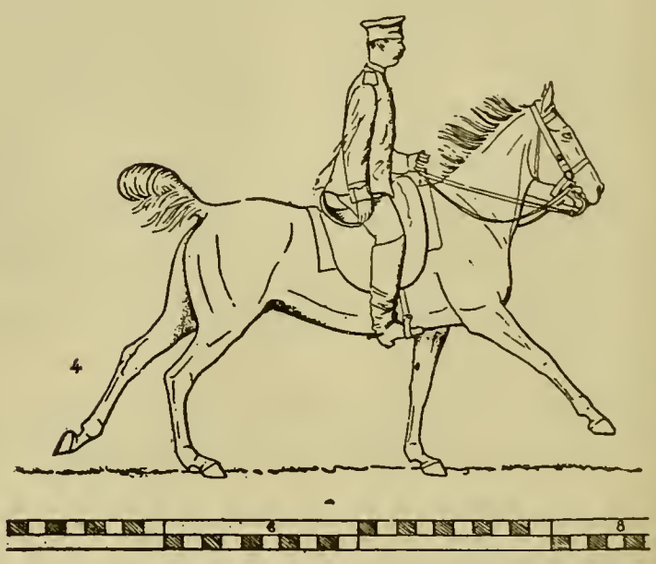


FIG. 246.—The *full gallop* (left diagonal base).

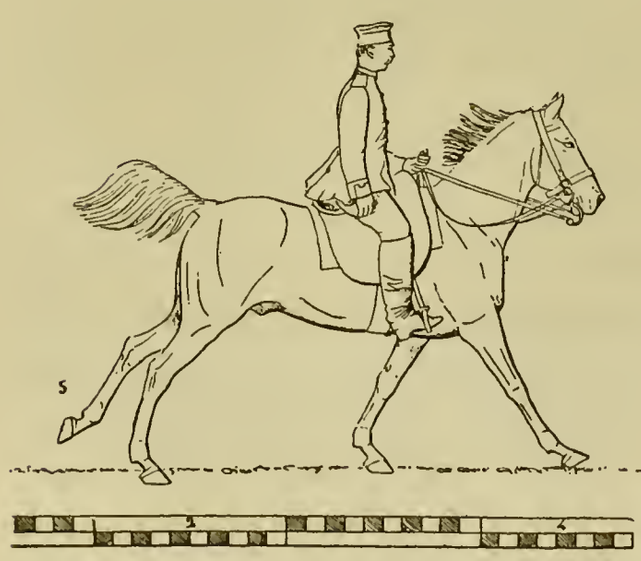


FIG. 247.—The *full gallop* (4th *beat; formation* of the posterior right tripedal base).

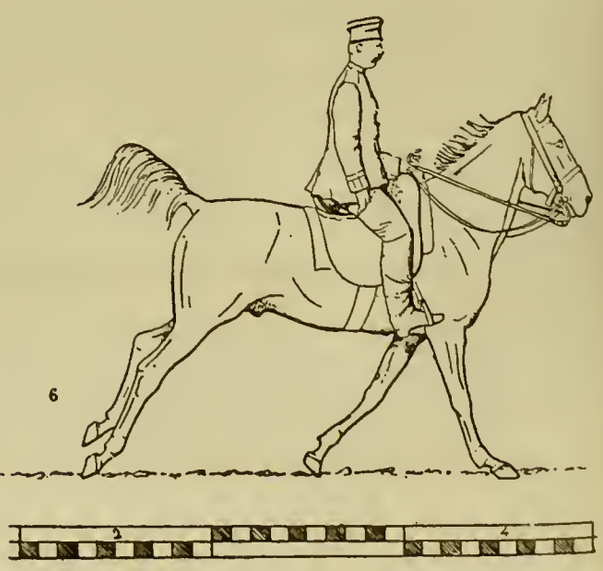


FIG. 248.—The *full gallop* (end of the posterior right tripedal base).

soil and to gather (*rassembler*) the members under the body, the left in front of the right (Fig. 250). It is then that the projection takes place; the horse and the rider alike feel the effects; both are more or less raised and projected forward.

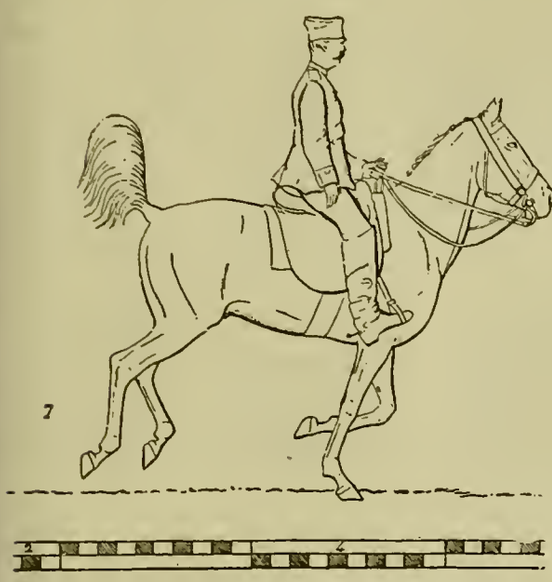


FIG. 249.—The *full gallop* (anterior right unipedal base).

FIG. 250.—The *full gallop* (projection).

During the total duration of the contacts on the ground of a complete step of the gallop, the body assumes, therefore, three successive and different attitudes: it is first oblique upward and forward, then almost horizontal, and, finally, oblique downward and forward.

Sudden Passage from Station, from the Walk, and from the Trot into the Gallop.—Inverse Order of Transition.—The facts recorded above enable us to comprehend the mechanism of these changes of gait.

FIG. 251.—Passage from *station* into the *gallop*, the horse being at liberty.

Passage from Station into the Gallop.—In order to elucidate this phenomenon, we have made a series of experiments in which the horses, previously *placed*, have been abandoned to themselves and then suddenly induced to start off at the gallop.

Below are our results (Fig. 251).

In order to start on the right foot, for example, the horse first elevates the right diagonal biped, and brings it almost instantly in contact again, at the same time disassociating the beats so as to allow the other biped to interpose simultaneously its beats in the following step, during the interval comprised between the first two.

If, instead of being at liberty, the animal were *mounted*, the phenomena would be different: the hind-members would be placed under the trunk, especially the left. After this preparation the other feet should be successively raised thus: 1st, anterior right; 2d, anterior left; 3d, posterior right. The posterior left, alone in contact, would commence to push the body forward (1st period); immediately the left diagonal would effect its contact (2d period); last of all would come the contact of the anterior right (3d period). The gallop should commence and continue as usual. (Lenoble du Teil.)

Passage from the Walk into the Gallop.[1]—This can be accomplished when the contact exists upon a right diagonal base: 1st, elevation of the anterior right and impulsion by the posterior left (1st period); 2d, the posterior right and the anterior left, already elevated, strike the ground simultaneously (2d period); 3d, extension and contact of the anterior right (3d period). (Lenoble du Teil.)

Passage from the Trot into the Gallop.—It is possible at the commencement of the contact or during the contact of the right diagonal: 1st, elevation of the anterior right and impulsion of the body by the posterior left (1st period); 2d, contact of the left diagonal; 3d, contact of the anterior right (2d and 3d periods). (Lenoble du Teil.)

Passage from the Gallop and the Trot into the Walk or Station.—It is when the horse rests upon a diagonal biped that he is capable of effecting these changes. (Lenoble du Teil.)

Varieties of the Normal Gallop and their Corresponding Trails.—The horse, in a state of nature, employs the gallop to reach with speed any spot to which he may be strongly attracted; he also uses it to flee from any danger which may threaten him. The straight line, or a direction similar to it, is preferred by him as producing less fatigue and offering more safety. The gait in these conditions is easy, sure, and generally fast. As to the imprints left upon the ground, they give rise to a trail more or less analogous to that of Fig. 252, *A*, in which are seen the traces associated in pairs (anterior and posterior), each pair being separated diagonally. Moreover, between two successive strides there always exists quite a long interval, indicating not only a prolonged suspension, but also an extensive projection, whose value augments with the speed, without, however, being absolutely proportional to it.

All the domestic horses which have not been influenced by training furnish a similar gallop and trails when they are induced to move at this gait. As they decidedly form the major portion of our equine

[1] In all these examples the gallop upon the right is considered.

population, it seems logical to consider this gallop as the ordinary type, since it is the most natural and the easiest to execute spontaneously by the largest number.

These animals, in this state, are little adapted to the service of the saddle, notably of the riding-school. They lack that *suppleness* which is sought for by horsemen, and without which a mount is unable to obey the rider's wishes; the different groups of muscles have not yet acquired the functional independence necessary to the required efforts; the distribution of the weight upon the anterior and posterior quarters exists in such proportions that the lateral displacements are difficult and at times dangerous.

Hence it is necessary to submit them to a particular dressing in order to modify their conditions of equilibrium. By educating them so as to diminish the base of support and displace the centre of gravity backward; by giving an elevated attitude to the neck; by drawing the head backward, we are enabled to endow them with ease and suppleness, and make them perform the most varied movements. When thus educated, they execute a very different gallop from the preceding, its primitive type being changed as to rhythm, cadence, and mode of association of the members. Even if the speed be less, this gallop possesses a very superior grace and elegance.

The trails, under these conditions, become at times very dissimilar; with a little attention, however, the characters of an evident uniformity of construction can be recognized, and, being given the common cause of their modification, it is easy to discover the transitions which unite the diverse terms of the series which the trails constitute.

It is the projection which first diminishes and renders its *distance* less, as well as the diagonal base (Fig. 252, *B* and *C*); finally, the posterior foot marking the first contact is less separated from its anterior diagonal, which makes the last beat.

Then the projection disappears and is replaced by a simple suspension. The *distance* of projection (*mépister*) is null (Fig. 252, *D*); the fore and hind imprints are arranged side by side; the posterior foot marking the first contact, falls upon the same transverse line as its diagonal anterior; the length of the step is exactly equal to the distance passed over during the three contacts.

If the animal be more restrained (Fig. 252, *E*), he falls behind the imprint of the anterior right foot, which marks the third contact; the trail shows a succession of steps which overlap each other in consequence of a more or less considerable separation (*dépister*); the step, in this case, is somewhat shorter than the space of ground covered.

In a still higher degree of restraint (Fig. 252, *F*), the posterior foot marking the first imprint is superposed upon the imprint of the corresponding anterior; the trail, double on one side, then becomes single on the other; the space covered exceeds much the length of the stride.

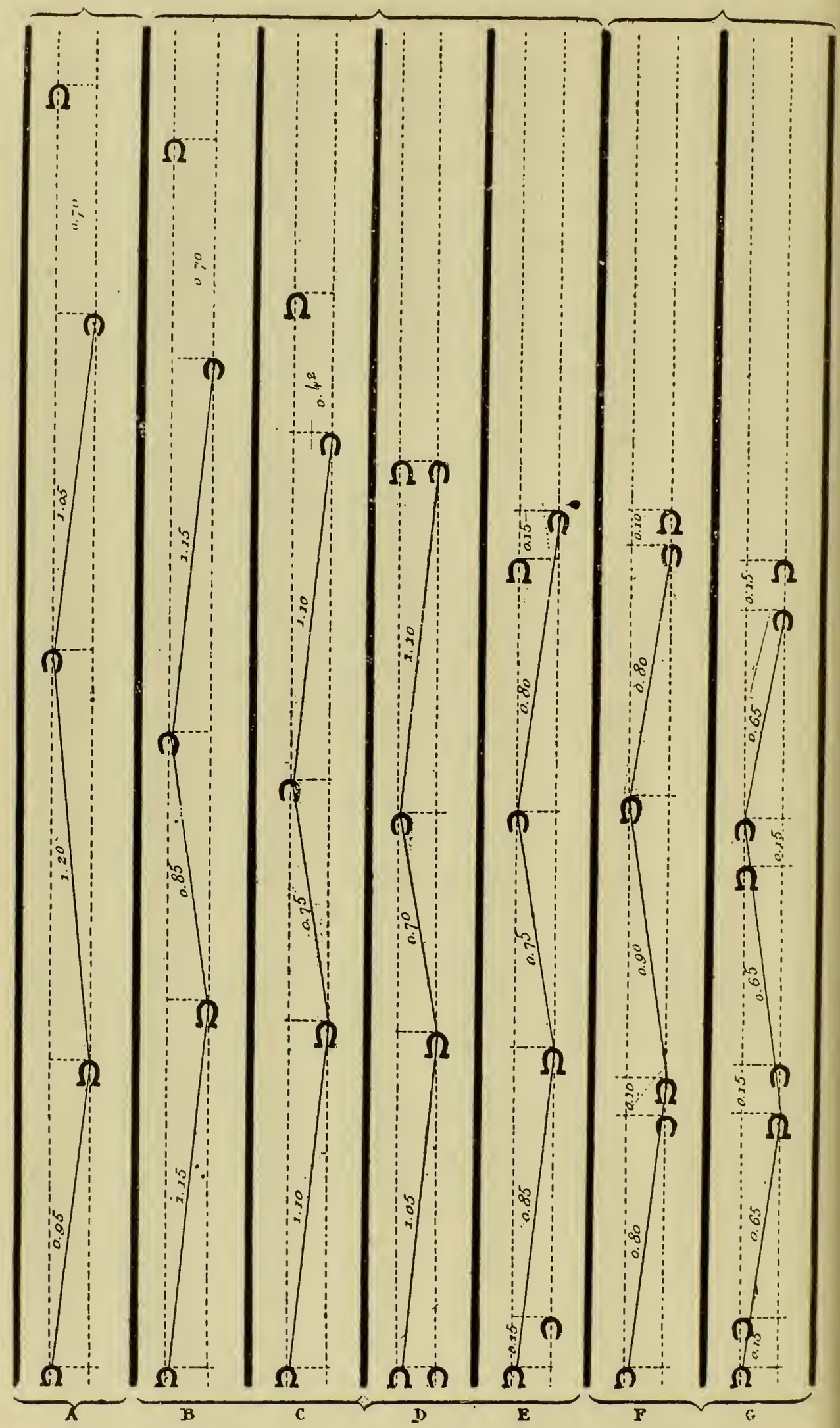


FIG. 252.—Principal trails of the gallop. (From Messrs. Barrier and Lenoble du Teil.)

A. The *full gallop*, from the instantaneous photographs of Lissa. *B, C, D, E. Series of gallops gradually shortened*, furnished by the same horse, progressively restrained. *F, G. Very short gallops*, furnished by another horse, well dressed and well balanced.

Finally, when the restraint is pushed to its utmost limits, the posterior foot marking the first imprint touches the ground behind the corresponding anterior; their separation (*dépister*) is so great (Fig. 252, *G*) and the stride is so short that the trail is double on both sides; the horse gallops almost upon place, and the stride is less than half the length of the space covered.

Between these principal types of the gallop there exist, it is perceived, numerous intermediary forms which the skilful horseman can realize by the manner in which his mount is dressed. Masters of riding-schools are nevertheless unable to understand, even at the present time, the indications which are best adapted for the production of this or that one; this is to be regretted, for language renders the explanation of the facts still less intelligible. We are not able to explain these differences and fix their terminology. Suffice it for us to recognize the most important varieties and the dominant part of education in their production.

Length of the Stride.—The absolute **length** of the stride of the gallop cannot be established, since it varies with the speed, the form of the horse, the length of his members, his dressing, the manner in which he is held by the rider, etc.

The trails of Fig. 252 suffice to give an idea of the differences which can be obtained with a horse 1.59 m. to 1.60 m. in height, by the sole influence of restraint, the position of the head, and the velocity of the gait, without the dressing being a very important factor, except in the last two:

In the trail	*A*	the stride is	3.90 m.	In the trail	*D*	the stride is	2.85 m.
"	*B*	"	3.85 m.	"	*E*	"	2.70 m.
"	*C*	"	3.37 m.	"	*F*	"	1.80 m.

In the trail *G* the stride is 1.60 m.

Nevertheless, if its length is not uniform, it oscillates around certain mean figures which should be recognized:

The cavalry regulation of 1829 fixed it at 3.25 m. According to Captain Raabe, it should be equal to three times that of the base of support, or 3.60 m. for a horse 1.60 m. at the withers.

Speed.—The **speed** of the gallop is quite as variable as the length of the stride. All things being equal, it depends upon the variety of the gait studied. It varies from 300 metres per minute, or 5 metres per second (cavalry regulation), to 362 metres per minute, or 5.44 m. per second (Raabe and Vallon).

Displacements of the Centre of Gravity.—As Lecoq [1] has

[1] Lecoq, Traité de l'extérieur du cheval, 5e éd., p. 372.

indicated, the *horizontal* or *transverse* displacements of the centre of gravity have not here, by reason of the irregularity of the play of the members, the regular rhythm which they give in the trot, the amble, and the walk.

The interposition of the tripedal bases (3 and 3) during the duration of the diagonal base of the second period (Fig. 241, *B*) is not, by any means, of a nature to ameliorate sensibly the lateral displacements.

At first supported by the posterior left member, *A*, for example (Fig. 253), the centre of gravity is displaced to *E* in the line *CB*, representing the left

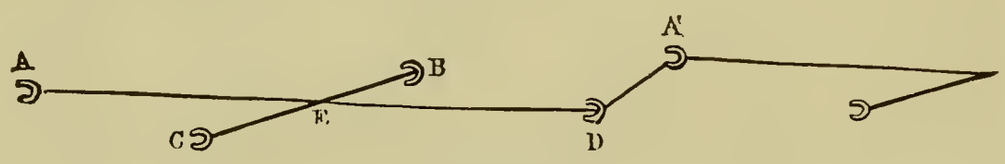


FIG. 253.

diagonal base, and thence to *D*, upon the anterior right member. During the period of projection, *DA'*, it is carried to *A'*, upon the posterior left member, and so on.

To recapitulate, these oscillations, very feeble in a lateral sense, do not render the gait tiresome for the rider. In addition, they are so much less extensive as the velocity is greater, the imprints of the right feet tending then to approach, on the median line, those of the left.

It is different with the *longitudinal* or *vertical* displacements. The direction of the body, primitively oblique forward and upward, now becomes, at the time of the descent upon the posterior left, oblique in an inverse sense,—that is to say, forward and downward at the end of the contact of the anterior right. There result from this upon the right diagonal biped, in galloping upon the right, alternate rotatory movements which are in direct ratio with the shortness of the gait.

When the gallop is *false*, the line of gravitation has a greater disposition to fall outside of the base of support, in consequence of the inclination of the body towards the centre of the curve described. It can be said that falls are then inevitable, if the turning be sudden and the speed great. The animal preserves his equilibrium only by modifying the direction of his axis in relation to that of the trail, so as to be oblique instead of parallel to the latter, as it should be. If the horse gallops upon the right in turning to the left, besides lessening his speed, he also places himself transversely to the trail and turns the haunches inward in order to draw the posterior left foot to the side on which the body is more liable to fall when a new stride is taken.

When the gallop is *true*, the line of gravitation, as Raabe[1] has truly observed, is always nearer to the concentric lateral biped than to the other, on account of the inclined position of the body. Hence this biped is more fatigued, because it must support during the whole time the excess of weight of which its congener is relieved. This fact becomes very apparent in ring-horses, which perform always in the same style in circuses in rings only 14 metres in diameter.

When the gallop is *broken*, the horizontal displacements of the centre of gravity are more extensive than under ordinary conditions. This follows from the fact that the members, in striking the ground, succeed each other alternately in lateral instead of diagonal bipeds. (See the notation of Fig. 237.) As to the longitudinal displacement, it is effected laterally,—that is to say, from a posterior member to the anterior of the same side. These two peculiarities render the gait more tiresome to the rider and destroy the stability of his position in the saddle.

Reactions.—It suffices to glance over Figs. 238 and 239 to ascertain that the pressure of the feet upon the ground must be much more energetic in the gallop than in the walk or the trot. The descent of the fetlock and the closing of the superior angles during each phase of dispersion of concussion is here much greater. As M. Marey[2] has observed, the horse is obliged not only to support the weight of his body, but also to propel himself by violent impulsions. The greatest effort seems to appertain to the first beat. The body, raised an instant, again falls, and one foot only sustains this shock.

The *reactions* which are produced at the withers are represented in Fig. 240 (upper line *R*) by an undulating curve, which continues during the whole of the contacts of the feet with the ground.

Marey considers that the minimum elevation of the curve corresponds to the moment when the feet are in the air, and therefore he concludes that the so-called phase of *projection* is in reality only a simple suspension, without any ascending movement of the body.

We regret to entertain a different opinion, for these statements are not in accord with the daily observations of all riders, or with those which can be made upon instantaneous photographs, notably those of Muybridge and Anschütz. From the latter, which remove all doubt, it is easy to prove that the distance of the back above the ground

---

[1] Raabe, Examen des allures, Paris, 1857, p. 53.
[2] Marey, loc. cit., p. 174.

attains its maximum when the body is entirely in the air. The phase of projection in the gallop is therefore quite real.

Conformation.—The horse which is destined to the service of the gallop should be easily guided by the hand; he should have a long and supple neck, short back and loins, muscular croup and thigh, high withers, long shoulders, muscular leg and forearm, wide and strong hocks and fetlocks, flexible pasterns, strong body and strong limbs, spacious chest, should be nimble, easy, and sure on the feet, docile, and well dressed.

Uses.—The gallop which we have examined, also called the *hunting gallop* (*galop de chasse*), is particularly adapted for the saddle, the riding-school, long journeys, races, cavalry manœuvres, etc.

The Slow Gallop with Four Times.

M. Lenoble du Teil[1] has clearly established the variations which are produced in the order of the contacts according to the conditions of the equilibrium of the galloping-horse. The beats of the second contact, primitively synchronous, become more or less separated, so as to emit four distinct sounds during a complete step.

This disunion, however, can manifest itself in two different ways:

A.—In horses characterized as being *upon their shoulders* (whose weight is thrown upon the anterior quarters), such as those of the race-course, the circus, and the trained saddle-horse, the anterior biped hastens its contacts. Their beats succeed each other as follows, supposing that they gallop upon the right:

1st *beat:* posterior left.	3d *beat:* posterior right.
2d *beat:* anterior left.	4th *beat:* anterior right.

The gait, in such cases, is but slow and quite rhythmical.

B.—In horses designated as being *upon their haunches*, closely gathered up in consequence of an exaggerated *rassembler* (members under the body), the order of placing the feet becomes, on the contrary, as follows:

1st *beat:* posterior left.	3d *beat:* anterior left.
2d *beat:* posterior right.	4th *beat:* anterior right.

This is the *gallop with four times* of ancient horsemanship, but completely rejected to-day. It implied one foot always on the ground,

[1] Lenoble du Teil, Le galop et la course, p. 12, Argentan, 1880. Id., Revue des haras, Août 15, 1889.

and was executed almost *upon place*, being more like a *riding-school parade* than a true gait.

Gallop of the Race-Course (Running Gallop).

As soon as the ordinary gallop exceeds a certain velocity the simultaneous beats of the second contact commence to be disassociated, and, at the same time, the diagonal base augments progressively in length.

This gait insensibly passes into a new one, which has received the name *running gallop*, and in which the members appear to act separately in pairs (anterior and posterior).

It is this very character of apparent independence between the anterior and the posterior members that led ancient horsemen to believe that this variety of gallop was effected wiih two times.

We know to-day that such is not the case. It is a gallop *with four times*, unequal and very rapid, which presents great analogies with that of the photographs from Lissa, of which Fig. 242 reproduces the notation.

The honor of having demonstrated in a positive manner the existence of the disassociation of the diagonal beats in this gait, in consequence of the reality of its four times, reverts to M. Marey.[1]

But here the violence of the pedal percussion in this gait is so great that the experimental apparatus had to be modified so as to become more durable. Unfortunately, there resulted from this modification less acute sensitiveness of the instrument, which makes the representation of the *order of the contacts* scarcely accurate. In this connection it is evident that great and numerous improvements have yet to be made in the graphic method.

The thorough analysis of the instantaneous photographs of M. Muybridge, taken from the American race-horse Sallie Gardner, which was moving at a velocity of 1142 metres per minute, has permitted M. Lenoble du Teil to make the verification of the facts more exact and more complete.[2]

Fig. 254 is a true reproduction of these photographs.

Upon the notation which corresponds to them (Fig. 255) it can be seen :

1st. That the contacts of the right members take place respectively at the commencement of the last third of the contacts of the corresponding left members.

2d. That in the disunited diagonal biped, *PD*, *AG*, the anterior left

---

[1] Marey La machine animale, p. 177.

[2] Lenoble du Teil, Le galop et la course, p. 9, et suiv., Argentan, 1880.

FIG. 254.—Instantaneous photographs of the *running gallop* of the American horse Sallie Gardner.
(From M. Muybridge.)

Speed 1142 metres per minute.—The vertical lines from the bottom separate spaces 0.582 m. in width. These serve to determine the velocity of the movement of the body, and measure the extent of the displacements of the members.

beat, *A G*, is heard at the end of the first third of the contact of the posterior right.

FIG. 255.—Notation of the *running gallop*, furnished by the instantaneous photographs of the American horse Sallie Gardner.
(From M. Lenoble du Teil.)

The result of this rhythm is to render the times unequal, for the beats *PD* and *A G* occur in more rapid succession than the others.

After the contact of the anterior right member follows the phase of *projection* (6), which M. Lenoble du Teil has valued at one-fifth of the total duration of the complete step; then a new stride is accomplished, and so on. As to the successive bases of support, they differ somewhat from those of the ordinary gallop. Excepting the first (1) and the last (5), which are unipedal, the other three are bipedal, and it is the diagonal upon which the body is sustained for the longest time.

Finally, as in the gallop with three times, it is the members of the diagonal biped, which cause the first and the fourth beat, that are the most fatigued.

The facts which we have just presented differ in a measure from those which M. Marey has observed. Although the differences concern principally the details, it is nevertheless necessary to collect more numerous data in order to remove all doubts as to the truth of these facts.

The *trail* of this gallop is characterized by the great length of the projection, as well as that of the diagonal base, which is always much in excess of three-fourths of the height of the horse. Fig. 256 reproduces from the estimates of M. Lenoble du Teil the distance between the imprints furnished by the instantaneous photographs of Sallie Gardner.

The *length of the step*, measured between the two successive imprints of the posterior left, is equal to 4.41 m.

FIG. 256.—Trail of the *running gallop*, furnished by Sallie Gardner.
(From M. Lenoble du Teil.)

Deducting from this quantity the distance of the projection (1.60 m.), it is proved that the space covered by the animal was 2.814 m., with a diagonal base of 1.92 m.

We will, nevertheless, remark, with M. Lenoble du Teil, that nothing is so variable as the step of this gallop. By comparing the different associations of the imprints left upon the ground by horses of an identical external appearance, one is surprised at the differences which exist among them. Not only have their trails but little analogy, but even two successive strides of the same subject appear completely dissimilar. It follows from this that, in order to understand how the trail of the race-horse is produced in its details, it becomes necessary to analyze the complete series of each one of his steps.

This is the reason that not even an approximate length of these steps can be given : they vary, in fact, from 4 to 7 metres, a very wide range.

Be this as it may, the posterior imprints are always considerably in front of the corresponding anterior. It is necessary, therefore, that the anterior members be raised very promptly to avoid their being struck by the posterior. Hence the race-horse, not considering his conformation, frequently overreaches when his speed is pushed to its extreme and when his training has been incomplete. The examination of the instantaneous photographs, for this purpose, verifies this statement.

Another important fact worthy of mention in this connection is that the imprints left upon the ground by a running-horse follow each other upon *the same straight line* as if made by the spokes of a wheel deprived of its felloe (Lenoble du Teil). This indicates a minimum size, in a transverse sense, of the base of support, and, consequently, great instability as well as enormous speed.

M. Lenoble du Teil estimated that the velocity of the trunk is equal to $\frac{7}{10}$ of that of the feet, and as Sallie Gardner, upon which he made his study, travelled about 19 metres per second, it can be inferred how difficult it is for the eye to analyze the phases of such a rapid movement.

It is, consequently, not astonishing that nearly all artists have represented the *ordinary gallop* and the *running gallop* incorrectly. The horse suspended in the air with the four members pointed in opposite directions, as is shown by all the classical reproductions, is in a false attitude, which is contradicted by the instantaneous photographs nowadays becoming more and more numerous. The members, during the *projection*, are not extended, but in reality flexed, gathered under the

trunk; it is at this moment that interfering takes place. Incapable as we are of perceiving clearly with the eye the silhouette of the running gallop, we might just as well reproduce it *truly*, as photographic apparatus take it; for, in truth, our eye does not see the members of a race-horse lengthened out any more than it sees them gathered in, and it would be more logical if we were to agree on substituting for a conventional attitude one which is (to be sure) equally undiscernible by our insufficiently-trained senses, but which is at least more real.

We have given in the following table some examples of speed displayed upon various French and foreign race-courses by some remarkable horses. Most of the data are drawn from the *Journal des haras* and from *Le Sport;* some concerning American horses have been communicated to us by our associate, Professor Huidekoper.

No.	Year.	Place of Course.	Name of Animal.	Sex.	Age.	Weight carried by the Animal.	Distance.	Time.	Speed per Second.	
					Yrs.	Kilog.	Metres.	M. S.	Met.	Mill.
1	1847	Arles.	Renard.	Horse.	11	64.5	9000	15 35	9	625
2	1842	Paris.	Tragédie.	Mare.	4	56.0	4000	4 58	13	422
3	1846	"	Fitz-Emilius.	Horse.	4	60.0	4000	4 55	13	559
4	1844	"	Cavatine.	Mare.	4	56.5	4000	4 49	13	840
5	1839	"	Roquencourt.	Horse.	3	51.5	2000	2 24	13	888
6	1842	"	Nautilus.	"	7	62.5	4000	4 47	13	937
7	1847	Nantes.	Philip Shah.	"	4	60.0	4000	4 47	13	937
8	1841	Chantilly.	Roquencourt.	"	5	59.5	4000	4 47	13	937
9	1848	Toulouse.	Eden.	"	5	62.5	4000	4 46	13	986
10	1846	Paris.	Le Chourineur	"	3	51.0	2000	2 22	14	084
11	1847	"	Wirtschofl.	Mare.	3	49.5	4000	4 44	14	084
12	1841	Versailles.	Oak Stick.	Horse.	6	60.5	3900	4 36	14	130
13	1845	Paris.	Fitz-Emilius.	"	3	51.0	2000	2 21	14	184
14	1846	"	Miss Waggs.	Mare.	3	49.5	2000	2 21	14	184
15	1847	"	Prédestinée.	"	5	61.0	4000	4 41	14	234
16	1845	"	Impasse.	"	3	34.5	2000	2 20	14	285
17	1840	"	Quoniam.	Horse.	3	54.0	2000	2 20	14	285
18	1842	"	Annette.	Mare.	3	52.0	2000	2 20	14	285
19	1845	"	Prédestinée.	"	3	47.5	2000	2 19	14	388
20	1840	Chantilly.	Jenny.	"	3	47.5	2000	2 19	14	388
21	1847	Tarbes.	Premier Août.	Horse.	4	64.5	2000	2 18	14	492
22	1840	Chantilly.	Fortunatus.	"	4	63.0	2000	2 18	14	492
23	1879	Paris.	Nubienne.	Mare.	3	53.5	3000	3 27	14	492
24	1868	"	The Earl.	Horse.	3	55.0	3000	3 27	14	492
25	1876	"	Kisber.	"	3	55.0	3000	3 26	14	563
26	1877	"	St. Christophe.	"	3	55.0	3000	3 24	14	705
27	1876	Louisville.	Ten Broeck.	"	3	55.0	6437	7 15¾	14	797
28	1847	Arles.	Goualense.	Mare.	4	62.5	3000	3 17	15	228
29	1840	Paris.	Nautilus.	Horse.	5	60.0	2500	2 43	15	337
30	1877	Louisville.	Ten Broeck.	"	4	60.0	1609	1 39¾	16	252

It follows from this table, in which the subjects have been arranged in the order of speed, that the velocity of the gait is inversely proportional to the distance travelled.

We refer the reader to what we have said concerning the conditions of the motor in relation to speed (page 408) for all that has reference to the conformation of the race-horse.

Transitions between the Different Gaits.

"It is very difficult," says M. Marey,[1] "for an observer to understand how the passage from one gait to another is accomplished. The graphic method furnishes a very easy means to follow these transitions; this will, perhaps, not be one of the least benefits derived from the application of this method to the study of the gaits of the horse.

Fig. 257.—Transition from the walk to the trot.

Fig. 258.—Transition from the trot to the walk.

"In order to comprehend well what takes place in the transitions, it is necessary to revert to the comparison of Dugès, and to conceive two pedestrians who follow each other at the walk, the trot, or the gallop. They present, in the continued gaits, a constant rhythm in the relation of their movements, while, in the transitions, the one behind or the one in front, according to the case, hastens or slackens his movements so as to change the rhythm of the beats. Some examples will render the explanation clearer.

"Fig. 257 is the notation of a *transition from the walk to the trot.*

"The dominant character of this transition, independently of the augmentation of the rapidity of the movements, consists in the fact that the movements of the posterior members gradually gain in speed upon those of the anterior, so that the posterior left beat, *PG*, for example, which, during the walk, took place in the middle of the duration of the contact of the anterior right member, *AD*, gradually approaches the beginning of the contact of *AD*, and finally coincides with this beat itself when the trot is produced.

"Fig. 258 indicates, on the contrary, the *transition from the trot to the walk.*

"It is seen, by inverse phenomena, that the diagonal beats, at first synchronous, disassociate themselves more and more. A dotted line which unites the left diagonal beats, is vertical at the commencement of the figure, in the part which corresponds to the trot; little by little this line becomes oblique, showing that the synchronism disappears.

[1] Marey, loc. cit., p. 179.

The direction of the obliquity of this line denotes that it is the anterior members which slacken in speed in the passage from the trot to the walk.

"The transition in the *passage from the trot to the gallop* is very peculiar; it is represented in the notation of Fig. 259. It is seen there, in the beginning of the figure, that the trot is slightly broken; the dotted line which unites the left diagonal beats, *AG* and *PD*, is already somewhat oblique and marks a slight tardiness of the posterior foot. This obliquity continues to augment, but in the left diagonal biped alone; the right diagonal biped, *AD*, *PG*, remains united, even after the establishment of the gallop. The transition from the trot to the gallop is made not only by the slowness of the movements of the posterior foot, but also by the advance of the anterior foot, so that the two diagonal beats, which in the trot were synchronous, are now separated by a long interval: this, in the *ordinary gallop*, constitutes the long silence.

"An inverse change produces the *transition from the gallop to the trot*, as can be seen in Fig. 260."

Fig. 259.—Transition from the trot to the gallop.

Fig. 260.—Transition from the gallop to the trot.

E.—Leaping.

Definition.—Leaping is a progressive movement in which the body is completely separated from the ground to be projected forward and upward by the sudden impulsion given by the four members. The latter act, according to the case, simultaneously, in pairs, or separately. This mode of progression, exacting a large amount of force, is not accomplished by all horses with equal facility. It takes part, at times, in some gaits, particularly the trot and the gallop, but is executed by the animal specially under many circumstances.

Divisions.—Leaping, properly so called, may be (Fig. 261) *ascending*, *longitudinal*, and, finally, *descending*. All other divisions

appear useless to us, for leaping is produced in the horse neither vertically nor in a retrograde manner, as it is seen in some other animals.

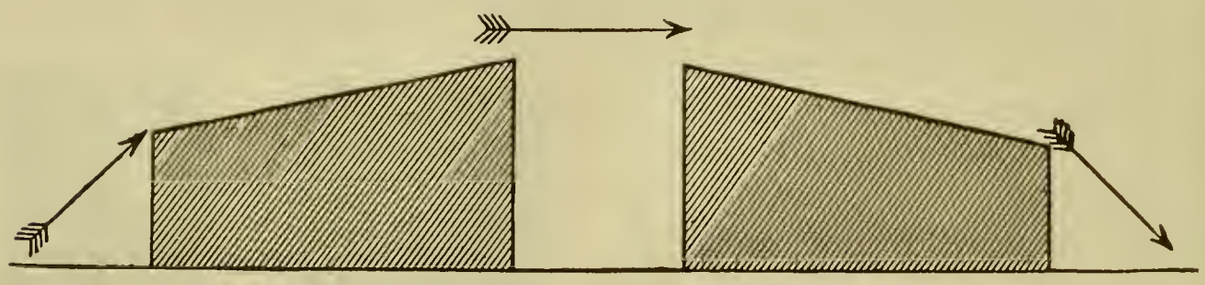


FIG. 261.—Scheme of the three principal varieties of *leaps*.

As to *leaping to one side*, it is only a variety of one of those which we have enumerated above ; it, therefore, need not occupy our attention.

1st. **The Ascending Leap, or the Leap over a Barrier.**—It is this variety which we will take for a type. Steeple-chasers and hunters, which have to clear ditches, fences, and walls, as in England and America in the popular fox-hunts, execute it most frequently, either without modifying their speed if the barrier is not too high, or, on the contrary, with a certain fixation of the feet during a momentary period of arrest, permitting them to recognize the nature and the height of the obstacle. In certain cases the body does not fall to the same level as that of its point of departure, when, for example, the horse, in traversing a meadow, leaps over ditches and embankments which lie along the route, and then continues his course upon this route.

However it may be, the action in all cases comprises three more or less rapid phases: one of *preparation*, one of *execution*, and one of *descent*.

M. Ottomar Anschütz has recorded all the successive attitudes by means of instantaneous photographs. We will reproduce, from his series of twenty portraits, the five principal positions which it appears useful to us to study[1] (Figs. 262 to 266).

The animal during the *first period* (preparation) approximates his four members under the trunk, suddenly elevates the head and the neck, and forcibly carries them backward. The anterior columns, at the same time, become rigid and straightened, and raise the anterior quarters (Fig. 262), as if the horse intended to rear.

During the *second period* (execution) the posterior members extend, in the manner of a bow in the act of unbending, and propel the body upward and forward (Fig. 263). The next instant the body is sent up

[1] For more details, see G. Barrier, Société centrale de médecine vétérinaire (séance du 14 Février, 1889).

FIG. 262.—The *leap*. (Preparation.)

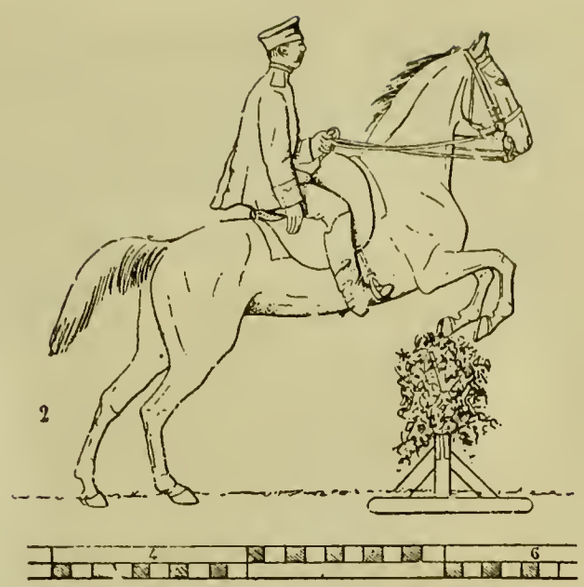


FIG. 263.—The *leap*. (Impulsion.)

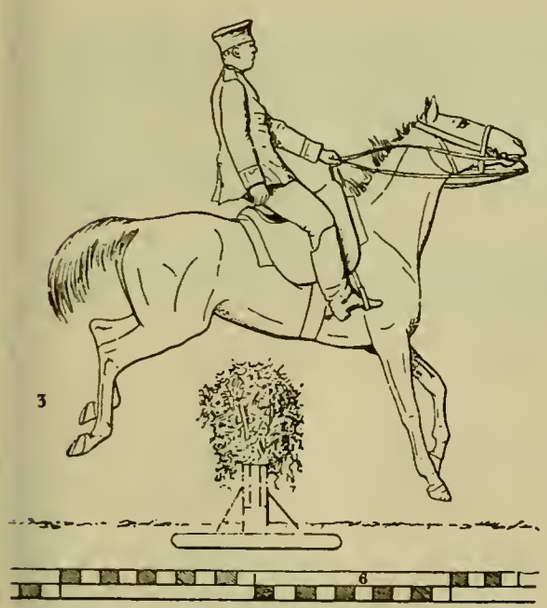


FIG. 264.—The *leap*. (Passing the obstacle.)

FIG. 265.—The *leap*. (Descent in front.)

altogether in the air (Fig. 264) with an energetic impulsion which will enable it to clear the obstacle placed before him.

Finally, the *descent* is effected first by that of the anterior biped (Fig. 265), followed by that of the posterior (Fig. 266).

FIG. 266.—The *leap*. (Descent behind.)

All authors are not in accord as to the manner in which the body alights on the ground after having cleared the obstacle. To solve this question, we have experimented upon steeple-chase horses in training at Vincennes.

Our observations are in absolute conformity with those of De

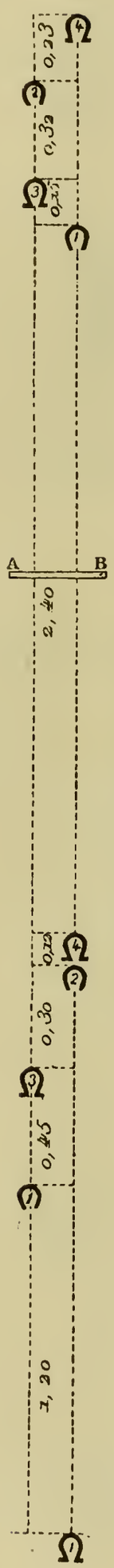


Fig. 267.—The *trail* of the *leap over a hedge.*
(From the instantaneous photographs from Lissa.)
AB, line of the hedge.—The numerals placed in the centre of each imprint indicate the order of the positions before and after passing the obstacle.

Curnieu[1] and of M. Duhousset,[2] as well as with the results deduced from the instantaneous photographs from Lissa.

The anterior members are the first to arrive on the ground, *almost simultaneously* and *very close* to each other (Fig. 265), which is also shown by the *trail* (Fig. 267). If, however, the horse, before leaping, should gallop upon the right, for example, it is the anterior right which touches the ground first, and *vice versa.* It is less frequent to see him continue the gallop upon the other foot, although this *disunion* in the first step after completing the leap is sometimes observed.

Scarcely has the anterior biped touched the ground, when it is immediately raised by a forcible effort, to allow space for the two hind-feet, which effect their contact in the same order as their congeners, marking their imprints a little in advance and very close to the latter (Fig. 267).

The descent being completed, the animal takes several strides of the gallop, after which he can stop or continue his gait.

Nevertheless, it is not always thus. Either because the impulsion has been too energetic or because the fore-limbs are poorly adapted for the reception of the body, from over-exertion, weakness, defective conformation, or improper training, a serious fall is sometimes produced. The horse, by virtue of the speed acquired flexing the knees, executes a complete somerset and dismounts his rider, who is thrown away several metres. Nor is it very rare in such a case to see one of the two unable to rise any more.

If the impulsion by the posterior members has been insufficient, the accidents assume a different character: sometimes the hind-members touch the superior part of the obstacle, which is a frequent cause of falls; sometimes the fore-members alone clear it, and the animal remains suspended upon the inferior face of the abdomen or the chest, without being able to disengage himself.

[1] De Curnieu, Leçons de science hippique, t. i. p. 166.
[2] Duhousset, Le cheval, p. 33.

Fig. 268 gives the *notation* of a leap over a hedge, after the photographs from Lissa; the annexed explanatory legend simplifies its comprehension. This notation enables us to follow the series of the phenomena as to their times, while the trail represents them to us as to their distance.

At the commencement of the figure, the horse, which was trotting, disassociates the elevations of *AG* and *PD*, during which he hastens the contact of the anterior right. In phase 4 he prepares to support himself immediately (5) upon the posterior member. The two hind-limbs, in contact with the ground, remain there during the whole duration of phase 6, and effect simultaneously an energetic impulsion; the body, under this influence, is projected upward and forward to clear the barrier (8); it then falls successively upon the anterior members, the right first.

FIG. 268.—Notation of the *leap over a hedge.*
(From the photographs from Lissa.)

At 4, the preparation; 5, elevation of the anterior part of the trunk; 6, the impulsion; 7, the body suspended; 8, passage over the obstacle; 9, descent; 10, clearing by the hind-limbs; 13, descent of the hind-limbs.

The anterior biped, however, is immediately raised (11), and, as the posterior has not yet come into contact with the ground, there results a new and very short suspension (12), after which the posterior members are rested. The leap is accomplished; the horse starts afresh in a *broken* gallop. (See above, page 571.)

It is not without interest to cite here some examples of remarkable leaps.

We have seen in the school at Alfort a horse that jumped out of a box-stall 3.80 m. in length, and enclosed by a railing 1.20 m. in height.

According to Youatt,[1] a horse, which had been cauterized in three members, was placed at liberty in a box closed by a door 1.80 m. high, above which was a space of 1 square metre; his height was 1.60 m. This animal, on hearing at a great distance the shouts of the hunters and the yells of the dogs, leaped with one bound over the door of his box, without showing under his chest, his neck, or his sides the least evidence of an abrasion or a wound.

De Curnieu[2] relates the following feats:

"In 1792, for a wager of 500 guineas, an Irish horse was brought into Hyde Park, to leap over the wall of Park Lane, 2.22 m. high on one side and only 2.08 m.

[1] Youatt, History of the English Thoroughbred.

[2] De Curnieu, Leçons de science hippique générale, Paris, 1857, t. ii. p. 413.

on the other. He cleared the lower side easily, but touched slightly on the opposite side. It appears that he was at liberty.

"Another Irish horse also leaped over the same wall.

"There are also some rare examples of horses leaping over walls 2 metres high for wagers.

"A hunter of Kent County, in endeavoring to follow a fox into a closed field, is reported to have leaped over a wall of 2 metres without difficulty.

"We rarely see a leap of 1 metre under a heavy man; one of 1.46 m. is not often witnessed, even in *hurdle-races*, because what I call a leap is the leap clear and free over a movable bar which falls from the least touch or over a wall which does not bend or give way. The hurdles of the race-courses are nearly always struck by the feet at 18 or 22 centimetres from their superior extremity.

"A leap of 1.46 m. is worth one's while to go 100 kilometres in order to see it, and a leap of 1.62 m. is seen but once or twice in the life of a sportsman."

2d. **The Longitudinal Leap.**—This is also called the *leap in width* by De Curnieu. It is that which a horse executes in jumping over a ditch or a stream of water, but it can be made in a vertical and a longitudinal sense at the same time.

Thus Flora, a celebrated hunting mare of the English thoroughbred variety, leaped over a hedge of 1.46 m. with a ditch of 7 metres close behind it.[1]

"The *Sporting Magazine*[2] speaks of a wager in which it was proposed to leap, with 66 kilogrammes, the canal of Mar Dyke, in Corez, at a place where it was 25 English feet wide."

The longitudinal leap is not always solitary; it is frequently associated with a progressive movement, the trot or the gallop, when the body of the horse is altogether in the air.

3d. **The Descending Leap.**—This form of progression must not be confounded with the fall, properly so called, nor again with the third period of the ascending leap,—that is to say, the descent. In each case the execution has as its principal agent the weight of the body, and, very secondarily, the fraction of the initial impulsion not yet exhausted, which counteracts a fall and lessens the concussion.

The horse, in the descending leap, is, on the contrary, not obliged to raise himself previous to clearing the obstacle; he must simply leave the ground in order to reach a point on the latter situated beyond and at a greater or less distance from the place where the surface changes its level. At this moment he collects the members under the body during a very short period, and then springs obliquely downward and forward, from the energetic extension of his hind-members.

The parabolic curve described by the body under such circumstances is produced by the weight of the body and the impulsive force from

---

[1] De Curnieu, loc. cit., t. ii. p. 139.

[2] Octobre, 1829. Citation de M. de Curnieu, loc. cit., t. ii. p. 414.

behind which is added integrally. It is appreciated from this how violent must be the reaction to the rider and to the horse. If the anterior members of the latter are not constructed strongly and solidly, if their vertical axes and equilibrium are defective and his training incomplete, a fall becomes inevitable.

The three varieties of leap of which we have spoken are sometimes combined on the hunting-field or the race-course. The *Irish banquette* is only an obstacle similar to the one of which Fig. 261 represents the scheme. Very variable in its disposition, it often has a trench in front of the ascent and a second one behind the descent, which render the leap still more dangerous.

Conformation of Leapers.—The horse which is destined to leap frequently, requires, of necessity, an irreproachable conformation, as well as energy, force, and vigor, in order to be able to withstand the great fatigue that results from this act.

A light head, long neck, beautiful withers, strong and compact body, powerful loins and croup, wide articulations, regular axes, and equilibrium of the anterior members, as well as energy, are the essential beauties to be desired in him.

Besides a strong muscular development, adds M. Sanson,[1] the horse must have an intelligence developed and improved by education and training. It is very disadvantageous not to have, in this kind of service, a horse that possesses the intellectual faculty which is called judgment, and which implies, on his part, close observation, appreciation, and, finally, decision, with which he measures his efforts by the severity of the task imposed upon him.

Bounding and Bucking.

The **bounding** or **skipping** is effected upon place, with two times, and consists of a complete elevation of the body above the ground by the successive and alternate raising of the anterior and posterior parts of the body. The movements of the posterior quarters, however, are ordinarily not that of kicking. This act can be repeated several times in succession. The horse most often practises it from mere playfulness in the parade or in the riding-school, but sometimes also for the purpose of dismounting his rider.

Bucking, or the **goat-leap**, is almost identical with the preceding. It only differs from the latter in that the animal appears to

---

[1] A. Sanson, Traité de zootechnie, 2e éd., 1874, t. i. p. 89.

elevate simultaneously the four members, and touches the ground again in the same manner.

There are some horses which are specially trained, in riding-schools, to buck and bound: these are the *leapers between posts*[1] and the *leapers at liberty*.[2] In general they are compact, close to the ground, wide over the back and loins, very muscular, powerfully constructed, and have wide and strong hocks. A similar conformation is required for kicking, a service which is sometimes exacted from them. They become, in some instances, breathless and covered with profuse perspiration. It is, at times, extremely difficult to mount them and to remain on their backs even after having mounted them. They should possess, besides these external characters, intelligence and good moral qualities; some are indocile, vicious, and dangerous; finally, they should be endowed with great energy, endurance, and good breeding.

CHAPTER III.

DEFECTS IN THE GAITS.

We will examine in this chapter the defects which, in a general manner, may manifest themselves more or less distinctly in all the gaits. To this end, we will arrange them under five different classes:

A. Defects existing in the anterior members alone.	1st. *Dragging the toe.* 2d. *Excessive knee-action.* 3d. *Immobilized, cold, pegged shoulders.*
B. Defects existing in the posterior members alone.	1st. *String-halt.* 2d. *Rotating hocks.*
C. Defects dependent upon the mode of association in raising the anterior feet and resting the posterior feet.	*Forging.*

---

[1] The *leaper between posts* is one that is attached, in the riding-school, between two pillars in order to oblige him to leap upon place and in a certain manner.

[2] The *leaper at liberty* is one which, mounted *at liberty*, describes a trail like any other horse, with this difference, that he executes the goat-leap or buck at the will of the horseman who gives the lesson.

D. Defects existing simultaneously or separately in the anterior quarters or in the posterior quarters.	1st. *Rocking.* 2d. *Strain of the loins.*
E. Defects existing indiscriminately in the four members.	1st. *Billarder.* 2d. *Interfering.* 3d. *Lameness.*

Having thus classified the defects, we will study each one in particular.

A.—Defects existing in the Anterior Members Alone.

When, during locomotion, the anterior members move too close along the ground or rise excessively; when their segments are not extended and flexed with the quickness and to the extent which their mode of association requires, the gaits assume some particular forms which render them ungraceful, slow, uncertain, and even dangerous to the animal, his driver, or his rider.

1st. **Dragging the Toe.**—It is said that the horse drags his toe, scrapes the floor, when his anterior feet are raised with difficulty during the evolution of the step. Horses which have pegged (*cold*) shoulders and stiffened members; those which are worn out or exhausted; finally, young animals (colts), during the first period of their life, present more especially this defect. It predisposes them to strike the roughnesses

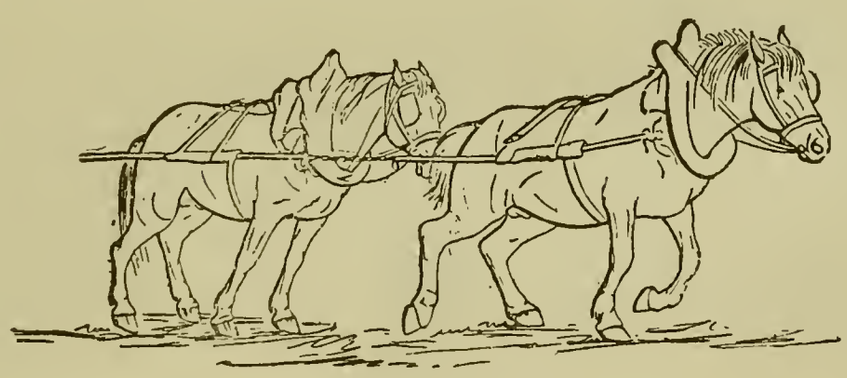


Fig. 269.—Instantaneous photograph of draught-horses moving a heavy load.

of the ground, and, consequently, to *stumble*, make *false steps*, or *fall*. It may be caused to disappear by proper dressing, but not, however, if it be the result of hard work.

It is particularly in the trot, the walk, the amble, and the broken amble that this defect is apparent. Horsemen, nevertheless, apply this expression to horses which gallop close to the ground. It seems that the same disadvantages result in all instances. This defect is ordinarily all the more grave as the gait in which it appears has

more speed. Certain conformations—that of the thoroughbred horse, for example, or, again, certain methods of training at great speed—seem to predispose to it. It is, on the contrary, much more rare in draught-horses, which always raise their feet high during work (Fig. 269).

2d. **Excessive Knee-Action.**—This action, also called *high knee-action*, is especially marked in the trot, and more particularly in German and Dutch horses. It is characterized by exaggerated flexion of the canon and the forearm. It is far from constituting a beauty, as many persons think, nor is it graceful either; it is not in favor at the present day. It is well known that this manner of progression involves a loss of time and force which are prejudicial to both the velocity of the gait and its duration.

According to some authors, it is more common in horses with arched necks and in those with angular (cow) hocks.[1]

We know of no means of remedying it.

Let us remark, in passing, that blind horses imitate this action considerably when they trot, endeavoring thus to avoid obstacles; but in this case the action is not identical, properly speaking, with the one under consideration.

3d. **Immobilized or Pegged Shoulders.**—When the shoulders, although normal in appearance, seem to be restrained from acting with entire freedom, and only shortened movements of the members are allowed, they are said to be *immobilized*, *cold*, or *pegged*.

These expressions are incorrect, for, as H. Bouley remarks,[2] it is less in the shoulder than in the inferior regions of the members that the impediment resides. The animal, in most instances, suffers in the feet, and shortens his steps to diminish the intensity of the percussion against the ground. As a proof that this is so, the destruction of the sensibility in the region of the surgical foot, by the operation of *neurotomy*, will, in most instances, restore the natural mobility to the shoulders.

The *immobility* of the shoulders is not always an index of a lesion of the members; it may depend simply upon a want of energy, the *coldness* and lymphatic type of the temperament, compatible sometimes with the most perfect regularity of form. The *picture-horse* of the dealers, a model to offer to artists, is a case in point. With an irre-

---

[1] Similar to string-halt, this action may be due to an excess of elastic fibres in the antibrachial aponeurosis and in the tendon which extends from the biceps muscle to the tendon of the extensor of the metacarpus. (Harger.)

[2] H. Bouley, Nouveau dictionnaire de médecine, de chirurgie et d'hygiène vétérinaires, t. vi. p. 155.

proachable conformation, the horse has neither gait nor energy, and *trots under himself*, because he lacks that qualification without which the best-arranged mechanism loses all its value,—the *breeding*, the *blood*.

Let us add, finally, that such restrained movements of the shoulders are sometimes only temporary; it is thus when the defect results from extreme youth, insufficient training, weakness from certain pathological alterations, etc. Under these circumstances, it is possible, with good hygiene, abundant alimentation, and daily exercise judiciously practised, to cause the disappearance of the defect.

B.—Defects existing in the Posterior Members Alone.

1st. **String-halt.**—**String-halt**, or *dry spavin*, is characterized by a sudden jerking and somewhat convulsive flexion of the canon upon the leg, to such a degree in some subjects that the anterior face of the fetlock touches the inferior face of the abdomen.

This sudden and exaggerated flexion of the hock affects sometimes only one and sometimes both members. If, in the latter case, the action of string-halt is very intense, locomotion, when the animal first starts off, is very singular.

The horse suffering from this affection presents absolutely no external lesion which will reveal its existence. It is only in the walk more especially and in the trot that this symptom manifests itself. More or less pronounced, and always more visible after a prolonged rest, it sometimes disappears altogether during and immediately after exercise. It may therefore be said to be of an intermittent nature, since it may appear and disappear according to circumstances. Hence H. Bouley has thought that this defect should be considered as *a variety of chronic intermittent lameness*, and for this reason *redhibitory*, according to the terms of Article II. of the law of August 2, 1884. We share this opinion, but we know of no legal opinion that has been given on the subject.

What is the cause of this affection?

"The true cause of this flexion of the hock, more frequent in well-bred horses than in those of the common races," says Lecoq,[1] "has not yet been recognized. To attribute it invariably to a disease of the hock is to forget that the osseous levers cannot be moved isolately, and that the spasmodic flexion of one articulation suffices to excite that of all the others. If the flexion of the hock is more apparent to the eyes than that of the superior articulations, is this a

[1] Lecoq., loc. cit., 5e éd., p. 388.

reason why the former should be the point of origin of the abnormal movement of the member?"

These remarks are not without reason and foundation, for the lesions of string-halt are not always located in the tibio-tarsal articulation. The facts which we will cite furnish evidence of this, and will also serve to direct investigators in their researches upon this subject.

1st. Rigot attributes the abrupt movements of perfect ginglymoid (hinge) articulations to the ulcerated lines which their articular surfaces present. According to him, alterations of this nature are found in the humero-radial articulation when the horse is *string-halty in front*, and in the tibio-tarsal when he is affected in the *hind*-limb.[1]

2d. Pastureau, veterinarian at Esclates (Lot-et-Garonne), has advanced the opinion, without any proof to support it, that string-halt is due to the accidental fastening or catching of the internal femoro-patellar ligament upon the superior extremity of the femoral trochlea.[2]

3d. M. Watrin, ex-army veterinarian, thinks, on the contrary, that it is produced by the complementary fibro-cartilages of the third phalanx, which, slightly modified in their structure and relations, press against the second phalanx (coronary bone) at the time of the raising of the member.

This hypothesis, revived by Messrs. Chénier and Weber, has induced M. E. Bizard to employ anæsthetic injections in the fold of the pastern to relieve the pain which horses affected with string-halt seem to experience. These injections have given negative results.[3]

4th. M. Orillard, veterinarian of Châtellerault, has also published several interesting facts. According to his views, the action of string-halt is due to muscular laceration in the posterior part of the tibial region and of the thigh, or to a partial rupture of the tendons and aponeuroses of the cord of the hock.[4]

Concerning our opinion, we will say that, like Rigot, we have seen horses which were *string-halty in the anterior members*, and which have presented at the autopsy ulcerated fissures of the humero-radial articulation; these subjects are, however, extremely rare.

As to those which are affected *behind*, they have shown very diverse lesions: sometimes they existed only in the femoro-tibial articulation, in the form of ulcerations, foreign bodies, simple or rheumatoid arthritis; sometimes they exist, with almost the same characters, in the femoro-patellar articulation only; sometimes in the tibio-astragaloid joint exclusively; at other times we have found all the articulations in the posterior member diseased except the coxo-femoral; finally, there were instances in which nothing abnormal could be perceived, no more in the bones and the cartilages than in the muscles, the tendons, the aponeuroses, the synovial membranes, the vessels, and the nerves.[5]

---

[1] Rigot, Traité complet de l'anatomie des principaux animaux domestiques. (Syndesmologie, p. 94.)

[2] Pastureau, Journal des vétérinaires du Midi, année 1849, p. 871: Quelques réflexions sur l'éparvin et la crampe.

[3] Bulletin de la Société centrale de médecine vétérinaire, séance du 25 Février, 1882, in Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, année 1882, p. 373.

[4] Orillard, Quelques renseignements sur la nature et l'étiologie de l'éparvin sec, in Archives vétérinaires, 6e année, 1881, p. 161.

[5] Arm. Goubaux, Comptes-Rendus de la Société de biologie, année 1853, pp. 19 et 92.

In two instances our attention was arrested by the degree of openness of the articular angles. Besides the various forms of chronic arthritis, we have, in other instances, found the tibio-tarsal angles so large that their branches, in their maximum state of separation, formed almost a straight line. This disposition has appeared to us to have for its effect the augmentation of the spring-like action of the hock. This action, seen in the freshly-dissected articulation, when it is flexed or extended, is the more intensified as the constituting bones of the articulation are closer to their limit of separation. As no definite lesion can be discovered in horses which are affected with dry spavin, it might be that the sudden and abrupt movement which accompanies, in such cases, flexion and extension of the metatarsus has its sole cause in the mode of coaptation and union of the bones of the leg and of the canon.[1]

It is also possible, as Pastureau has supposed, that the accidental suspension of the internal patellar ligament upon the femoral trochlea, whose internal lip is at times very salient, opposes at first a certain resistance to the movement of flexion of the member, and, as this obstruction suddenly disappears, the flexion is then spasmodically completed.[2]

These are, of course, only hypotheses, but the study of the nature and cause of this condition will receive ample reward and are well worth one's undertaking.

All these facts demonstrate that science does not know the exact cause of this remarkable symptom. Be this as it may, the horse which is so affected is not easily relieved;[3] he has, consequently, lost much of his value, although this does not render him unable to perform his work, even the most laborious kind.

2d. **Rotating Hocks.**—Horses of the heavy-draught or the lighter types quite frequently present this outward rotation of the hocks, for which there is no remedy; they are, as a rule, animals degenerated from hard labor.

During the walk, and more particularly when the foot is placed on the ground, the point of the hock describes a sort of rotation outward, making the toes converge forward and inward. It is said, in this case, that the horse has *rotating hocks.* He is not prevented from rendering

---

[1] G. Barrier, Bulletin de la Société centrale de médecine vétérinaire, in Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, année 1882, p. 372.

[2] Another very beautiful as well as plausible theory of the nature of string-halt is that of the *excessive elasticity* of the *tibial aponeurosis*, particularly of its triangular fasciculus, which extends from the anterior face of the hock-joint to be attached to the tendon of the anterior extensor of the phalanges. When the foot is on the ground, the aponeurosis is tensed; when the foot is raised, it will recoil, like a piece of India-rubber, and impart a sudden movement to the limb. This disposition is more common in well-bred horses, in which string-halt is, as we have remarked, more frequent. The treatment consists in section of the aponeurosis at the superior extremity of the canon, where this structure can be outlined from the exterior.

In the camel and the elephant this aponeurosis is composed almost exclusively of elastic fibres, and hence the sudden elevation of the members of these animals. (Harger.)

[3] Boccar has proposed to make section of the tendon of the lateral extensor muscle of the phalanges close to its termination upon that of the anterior extensor. (Journal vétérinaire et agricole de Belgique, année 1845, p. 273.) We have had occasion to perform this operation once, but without result.

good service, but his action is ungraceful and diminishes, in part, the firmness of the members.

C.—Defects Dependent upon the Mode of Association in raising the Anterior Feet and resting the Posterior.

Forging.—We sometimes observe horses which, in the walk or the trot, produce an abnormal sound, more or less loud and frequently repeated, which has been compared to that of the hammer upon the anvil. It is produced by striking the toe of the hind-foot against the fore-foot of the same side, in consequence of the want of harmony between the anterior elevations and the posterior contacts, whether through too great a rapidity of the movements of the hind-limbs or an exaggerated slowness of those of the fore-limbs. It is said, in ordinary language, that such horses *forge.* The points of striking, varying according to the degree of advance of the hind-foot in relation to the fore-foot, are marked on the shoe by the grooves or scratches which exist upon its *branches*, at the *heels* or at the *quarter.*

This fault of forging has serious inconveniences: first, its sound is disagreeable and tiresome; besides, the horse may pull his shoe, throw himself, break his knees, calk himself, contuse the heels, the phalanges, the tendons, or, finally, injure himself somewhat seriously, and suffer from diverse complications, such as overreaching and quitters.

The causes of this defect it is important to recognize. They are dependent upon the *general state of the subject* and the *faults of conformation.*

The *general causes* result in most cases from weakness, fatigue, excessive use, improper training, or some diseased state. Some of these are persistent and irremediable; others are only temporary, and for this very reason, under the influence of good hygiene, nutritious alimentation, judicious exercise, and proper attention, forging may disappear. Young horses which are worked too early, full-grown horses which are overdriven, finally, those which are not accustomed to work at speed, may be corrected of this fault if they are placed in proper conditions, while it is entirely different with those in which it becomes a symptom of weakness consequent upon old age.

The *faults of conformation* capable of producing forging are rather numerous. We will cite the principal:

1st. The volume and weight of the head.

2d. The shortness of the neck, its muscular development, as well as that of the shoulders.

3d. The vicious axis of the members, which renders the horse *under himself* and low in front.

4th. The excessive length of the posterior members in relation to that of the anterior.

5th. The deficient length of the body relative to its height.

6th. The excessive length of the back and loins, implying too great flexibility of the spinal column, and permitting the posterior members to reach the anterior more easily.

The action of all these it is easy to comprehend:

First, it must be noticed that, in the first three conditions, the surcharge of the anterior members determines a longer contact of the anterior feet with the ground, in consequence of an appreciable tardiness in being raised. As a consequence of this delay, if the gait be lengthened, the posterior feet, not finding the place free which they should occupy, strike against their corresponding homologues, whence the particular sound which announces that the horse forges. The same result is produced, and for identical reasons, if the rider, badly seated too far in front, surcharges the anterior limbs of his mount.

In other cases, it is because the forward displacement of the posterior member is greater than in ordinary conditions, or that its play cannot be entirely accomplished, from the insufficient extent of the field of oscillation under the body. It will then reach the anterior member at the end of its contact or the commencement of its elevation.

There are horses which, in the trot, forge almost at each step. We have known several which had to be put to another kind of work, and could only be employed at a walk. Fortunately, this extreme measure need not always be resorted to.

There are, in fact, some means of remedying this defect when it results from a bad conformation.

Thus, the elevation of the head and the neck, either directly, through proper intervention of the rider, or indirectly, by making the rein shorter, can relieve the anterior members and displace upon the posterior a portion of the weight which overburdened the former. This, however, is not the only remedy. Special shoeing, applied rationally, is often the most efficacious treatment. The principal object, as H. Bouley has so well expressed, will be to diminish as much as possible the volume of the parts concerned at the points where they strike each other. It will consist, in the hind-foot, in the diminution of its antero-posterior diameter at the expense of the toe, and, at times, in incrusting the shoe in the horn, which then projects in front; in the fore-foot, in shortening the branches of the shoe,

making them narrower, or even in applying a tip. Bourgelat, from purely theoretical considerations, had advised a method of shoeing different from that in question. H. Bouley opposed them, and demonstrated that they are not in accord with the facts of practice.[1]

D.—Defects existing Separately or Simultaneously in the Anterior or the Posterior Members.

1st. **Rocking.**—**Rocking** consists in a lateral balancing of the body, comparable to the to-and-fro movements of a cradle, which is apparent particularly in the trot or the walk.

The horse can rock in front, behind, or in both extremities at the same time. These lateral oscillations always consume a portion of the force destined for propulsion, and, as Lecoq has said, the more apparent they are the less the animal machine becomes adapted to the fast gaits.

This defect, sometimes due to weakness and exhaustion, is seen preferably in horses having an excessive width of the chest, of the croup, and of the base of support. It is observed, besides, in horses with crooked legs and bovine knees. Finally, let us add that, according to our observation, horses, at first very regular in their gait, will rock themselves when their obesity becomes excessive; conversely, we have seen the defect disappear under the influence of emaciation.

It can be understood, from the causes mentioned, that slow and weakened animals may be affected with this balancing only temporarily, for with age, moderate work, and sufficient nourishment they may acquire the energy and strength which they lack. As to those whose rocking is due to irregularities in the axes of the limbs, they can never be corrected, and there exist no means of palliation.

It is to be observed that certain trotters rock in the walk or the slow trot, but show nothing abnormal when their gait acquires a greater velocity.

Rocking never takes place in the gallop, on account of the great speed employed, the feebleness of the transverse displacements of the centre of gravity, and the narrowness of the base of support. We know that, in such cases, the imprints of the left members tend to approach those of the opposite side, and we have even seen that the trail in race-horses is represented only by a single line of imprints.

This defect is therefore more or less grave according to the nature of the work.

---

[1] For more details, see the excellent article by H. Bouley upon *forging*, in Nouveau Dictionnaire de médecine, de chirurgie et d'hygiène vétérinaires, t. vii. p. 214.

2d. **Strain of the Loins.**—**Strain of the loins,** a symptom of diverse diseases of the dorso-lumbar region, most frequently a strain of the vertebral column, is manifested by a want of rigidity of the spine, a defect of harmony between the movements of the anterior and posterior quarters, as well as lateral swinging and great weakness of the latter.

Saddle- and shaft-horses are most predisposed to it; at other times, the affection is a simple accident and has no relation with the work performed.

The animal affected with this alteration has no firmness in his posterior members, which maintain him in equilibrium with difficulty. It suffices to push against the haunches or pull on the tail to make him totter from side to side. He lies down, rises, and backs with great difficulty, and is incapable of carrying the least weight on his back. During locomotion he oscillates alternately from one side to the other. The plane of movement of the posterior members is not parallel to the axis of the body; the members are moved inward, outward, and knock against each other awkwardly; their contact is not firm, and their hoofs pivot upon themselves so as to make the toes converging; finally, their imprints are marked without symmetry, and their gait has lost its normal rhythm. All these facts are more exaggerated in turning and in trotting; falling upon the side is quite frequent.

It is evident that the horse in this state cannot render good service; when the symptoms are very severe, it is even impossible to employ him at any kind of work. Nevertheless, there are some inattentive buyers, notably contractors, who buy the horse under such conditions. He is presented for sale in the shafts of the cart, where he is more supported, and is constantly more or less excited by the application of the dealer's whip. They perceive the irregularities in the movement the following day, but it is too late, the defect not being redhibitory.

Strain of the loins, known also under the names *winding of the loins, dorso-lumbar* strain, is always grave, and results most frequently from a fall or from carrying too heavy a weight on the back. There is little encouragement for the cure of the animal, which has now lost the greater part of his value. At present he is abandoned to the slaughter-house or to the knacker to save the expense of treatment, in most instances ineffectual, which, from its duration, may exceed his intrinsic value.[1]

---

[1] For more details, see Arm. Goubaux, De l'entorse dorso-lombaire considérée chez le cheval, in Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, année 1851, pp. 414 et 498.

H. Bouley, Nouveau Dictionnaire, etc., t. v. p. 362.

E.—Defects existing Indiscriminately in the Four Members.

1st. **Billarder.**—**Billarder** (*rowing, paddling*) is the action of the horse in which, during locomotion, he throws his feet outside of the plane of movement of his members. Usually, all the regions from the canon to the foot participate in this deviation; at other times, only the regions from the fetlock down are involved. In either circumstance, this peculiarity of locomotion is observed in the *posterior* as well as in the *anterior* members, and it is incorrect, in our opinion, for authors to consider it as being exclusively confined to the latter.

As there exists no technical word to characterize this irregularity in the hind-limbs, we propose to designate it by the word *paddling* in both bipeds indiscriminately.

The animals which *paddle in front* are those whose axis of movement of the anterior members is deviated, at the level of the knee, outside of the vertical line, or whose feet are turned outward; such are horses with crooked legs or with ox-knees.

Horses which *paddle behind* are affected with an analogous vice of conformation. They include such as are close-hocked, bow-legged, and crooked-legged.

According to Lecoq,[1] "horses whose feet are wide and flat are more subject to this defect, because they are forced to separate their feet from each other to avoid interfering."

It is in the walk and in the trot that the defect is especially apparent. Besides rendering these gaits ungraceful, it occasions a waste of time and force, and is therefore a serious cause of fatigue and slowness of the gait. Horses thus formed and still capable of speed, owe the latter, if our observations are correct, only to the frequent repetition of their movements; but it is certain, all things being equal, that they waste more energy.

2d. **Interfering.**—**Interfering** is that irregularity in the horse's action in which one of the feet strikes the inferior part of one of the other members.

This defect, says H. Bouley,[2] has particular degrees and modes, which are designated by different expressions.

Relative to its degrees, it is said that the horse *brushes* when the faulty member simply touches the skin, always in the same place, and

---

[1] Lecoq, Traité de l'extérieur du cheval, etc., 5e éd., p. 383.
[2] H. Bouley, Nouveau Dictionnaire, etc., t. iv. p. 442.

leaves no other mark than the forward deviation of the hairs and a deposit of mud or dirt or of coloring matter with which the hoofs may have been coated.

If the defect be more severe and the contact of the moving member produces pain, but without abrading the epidermis, it is expressed by saying that the animal *touches himself.*

He *strikes* or *cuts himself* when the injury is so intense as to make a wound; finally, when each member of the same biped, during progression, alternately gives and receives a blow which is always upon the same place, we have the phenomena which essentially characterize the vice *interfering.* The blows may be inflicted sometimes in one place, sometimes in another, as happens in the race-horse during the projection; it is then said that the horse *overreaches.*

Horses interfere more often behind than in front; this is owing to the fact that the separation between the hind-feet is generally less marked than that between the fore-feet.

These contusions may be situated in various places: the coronet, the internal face of the fetlock or of the canon, and, more rarely, the internal face of the knee and the inferior extremity of the forearm, of which we have seen several instances.

The wounds do not always present the same characters. If recent, they are covered with blood; if they have existed for some days, they are covered by a scab. If, however, the contusions which produce these lesions are frequently repeated, the latter will be circumscribed by hard, thick, and indurated borders. Finally, they are situated, in certain cases, over osseous tumors; we have found this condition upon the two anterior members of a horse which interfered at the inferior extremity of both forearms.

Their gravity depends upon their depth, their seat, the frequency of their repetition, and the nature of the parts involved.

They are not accompanied by lameness, excepting sometimes, at the moment of their production; they always blemish the animal more or less, according to the various causes which occasion them, and which we will arrange into six principal classes:

1st. *Weakness*, resulting from old age, privation, fatigue, excessive work, and, in young horses, from poor nourishment and want of training. There is every hope, in the latter case, that the fault will disappear under the influence of a better regimen and more judicious care, which observation has demonstrated.

2d. *The faulty conformation* in horses *close behind*, with long members, too short a croup, wide and disproportionate feet, in those that

are parrot-toed or crooked-legged, and, in general, in those with defective axes of the members.

The extremities, under each of these conditions, approach each other inordinately, either in the anterior or in the posterior biped, or the hind-members do not find sufficient space under the body to move freely.

3d. *The irregular play of the articulations,* which prevents the bony levers from being flexed and extended in planes parallel to the median line, as is seen when the subject has excessive knee-action and the knees and the hocks are arched outward.

4th. *Enlargements of the inferior and internal parts of the members,* whatever may be their nature.

5th. *Improper shoeing,* when the foot is not level, has a defective axis, or the shoe and the hoof are too wide.

6th. Finally, *fatigue,* which has the same effect as weakness, and diminishes, in the horse, the facility of moving the members with the proper precision, regularity, extent, and direction. The defect, in this instance, disappears with rest and moderate exercise; it must therefore be considered as accidental and temporary.

All horses do not interfere with the same part of the shoe; it is sometimes the mamma and sometimes the quarter which strikes and wounds the member on the ground. It is important to ascertain this fact in order to apply intelligent treatment concerning the shoeing.

It would extend beyond our plan to enter more minutely into the details of this defect of the gaits; hence we refer the reader to works which deal specially with this condition.[1]

Concerning the treatment, we will limit ourselves simply to the following principal indications:

In weak and exhausted horses a good regimen, moderate work, and rational shoeing give, as a rule, satisfactory results. In those which have a bad conformation, as irregular axes of the members, it is entirely different, and the treatment is very often unsatisfactory. *Interfering-boots, shin-boots,* etc., are employed to protect the affected parts. Finally, a particular mode of shoeing is practised, especially that called the *Turkish.*

3d. **Lameness.**—This name is given, says H. Bouley,[2] "to an irregularity of the gait, determined by an inequality or a diminution of the action of one or several of the locomotory columns."

---

[1] H. Bouley, Nouveau Dictionnaire, etc., t. iv. p. 441.

[2] We borrow the details which follow from the excellent work on Lameness, which H. Bouley has published in the Nouveau Dictionnaire, etc., t. ii. p. 503.

This irregularity should always be considered as the symptom of a local or a general disease. The *diseased* member, in such cases, makes a less strong beat, and its contact is less prolonged than that of the sound member; its step, besides, is longer. It is then said that the horse is *lame*, that the horse *limps;* he is called *sound*, on the contrary, when the gait is normal.

Lameness, on account of its frequency and its variable gravity, may temporarily prevent the animal from working or diminish his services for an indefinite period and even permanently. We will limit ourselves in this study, and will only examine here the interesting points relative to the exterior.

Its degree of intensity is indicated by diverse symptoms: the horse is called *sore* when the irregularity in his gait is very slight; he *limps* when it is quite apparent; he *hobbles on all-fours* when he hardly leans at all on the diseased member; finally, he *hobbles on three members* when this member supports no weight at all.[1]

A lameness may affect one, two, three, and even the four members, but the last cases are rare, the services of a veterinarian being called in before this stage has been reached.

H. Bouley correctly states that the diagnosis of a lameness is a triple problem, which resolves itself thus: Recognition, 1st, of the affected member; 2d, the seat of the lameness; 3d, finally, the nature of the latter.

The first point alone interests us in relation to the *exterior;* the others, involving a special profound knowledge of diseases, belong to other treatises.

Recognition of the Lame Member.—To arrive at this result necessitates an examination of the subject at rest, in the walk, and in the trot. In each instance he must be led by the hand with a strap, or be mounted.

a. At rest, we notice if the position of the members is regular or irregular. Sometimes the diseased member is carried in advance of its vertical axis, which is expressed by saying that the horse *points;* sometimes it is placed under the centre of gravity, or, again, is abducted from its vertical axis. Sometimes it rests upon the ground with the toe, or is held altogether in the air. At other times it undergoes isochronous movements, being incessantly rested and elevated, especially if the pain is great; the litter is then pawed back and trampled into

---

[1] We say, in ordinary language, to *limp on three legs.* This is technically an improper expression, which results from confounding the *members* of the animal with his *legs* (tibial region). Quadrupeds have two legs and not four, but they have four members.

a heap; the corresponding shoe, in certain cases, presents a polish which is not seen in that of the other members.

b. It is necessary now to observe the horse *in action.* In this process he is led at a walk by the hand, with the precaution of not giving him too much liberty, and, at the same time, without furnishing any support to the movements of the head. The veterinarian stations himself in such a manner as to see the movements successively from in front, from behind, and in profile from the two sides. If the lameness is slight the walk is insufficient to show it, and the animal must be trotted.

The irregularity of locomotion, in the latter gait, is rendered more evident on account of the stronger concussion against the soil. It is for this reason that a lameness which was not visible in the walk becomes apparent in the trot.

Having seen the animal trot in a straight line, it is sometimes well to turn him around a circle, with a view of surcharging the particular lateral biped. Finally, he is rapidly turned from side to side, in such a manner as to see whether the elevation of the diseased member is more rapid and its contact with the ground more painful than that of the healthy member.[1]

c. The *choice of the surface* over which the horse is moved must be considered. A horse which appears *sound* may, at times, limp if he suddenly passes from a dirt road to a hard pavement. Likewise, it is not rare to see the lameness augment in intensity if the test takes place upon a ploughed field or some other soft surface. The horse, in this case, is obliged to use greater muscular efforts, which means more pain, in elevating his members and disengaging them from the soil into which the feet bury themselves.

The Manner of Manifestation of the Lameness.

1st. *Lameness in an Anterior Member.*—In the case of the anterior left member, for example, the contact will have a shorter duration than that of the anterior right; the beat will also be less strong. This is not all: at each step the head will be elevated and inclined to the right, to ease, in a certain proportion, the diseased member and render its concussion more feeble.

Concerning the sound member, its step will be shorter, the beat stronger and louder, and the contact, more prolonged, coincides with the lowering of the head.

2d. *Lameness in a Posterior Member.*—As in the preceding instance, the beat of the diseased member is less strong than that of its homologue; likewise, the duration of the contact is shorter and the step less long. There are, in the trot, other symptoms to which it is necessary to direct the attention. According to

[1] Lemichel, Le cheval et le mulet, p. 123, 2e éd., Versailles, 1872.

the judicious remark of H. Bouley, *the nodding of the head*, characteristic of lameness, takes place upon the side of the lame member in posterior lameness, while in anterior lameness this is the reverse.

The croup, like the head, also shows an unequal movement of equilibrium under the influence of the unequal action of the lame member; but, less marked than that of the head, it furnishes a less certain index. It consists ordinarily of an exaggerated lowering of this region at the moment when the healthy member, upon which the body takes its principal point of support, touches the ground, while it is almost imperceptible when the diseased member touches the ground.

An error rather frequent among laymen consists in believing that the animal is lame in the foot upon which he falls. This results from a false interpretation of the objective phenomena, which are so well known to practitioners that it is not necessary to give the proof of its illogical foundation; we merely mention it here because the veterinarian has frequently to argue this idea out of his client's mind.

3d. *Lameness in Two Members.*—There are cases in which the horse is lame in two members at one time,—in the anterior, the posterior, the lateral, or the diagonal biped.

"The symptoms proper to a lameness of the anterior or the posterior biped give rise to an irregularity or an impediment of action in general as intense in the right as in the left member. The movements of the biped are modified to the same degree on both sides, making thus a contrast with those of the other biped, which acts normally.

"As to lamenesses of the lateral bipeds they are characterized by the combined symptoms of anterior and posterior lameness, but much more increased on account of the greater difficulty of progression.

"Let us suppose, for example, a horse lame in the right diagonal biped; at each step the nodding of the head and the lowering of the croup will be very decided at the moment when the left diagonal pair touches the soil.

"At first sight there is a want of harmony in the movements which is not easily explained, but by directing one's attention exclusively to the anterior biped on the one part and the posterior on the other, the double cause which produces it is soon discerned.

"The irregularity in the progressive movements is still more decided when the animal is lame in a lateral biped. In this instance it is difficult for him to move in a straight line; if he limps on the left, for example, the centre of gravity being displaced upon the right, the body of the animal will be carried in this direction, and progression will be affected on that side."[1]

4th. *Lameness in Four Members.*—The irregularity of the locomotory function, here, is such that the lameness is very apparent to the eyes of the least experienced persons. It is therefore useless to dwell further on this point.

We must discuss two points more: the *duration* and the *type* of the lameness.

In relation to the first factor, a lameness is *acute*, *recent*, or *chronic*. This can be established from the history of the lame animal, and a

---

[1] H. Bouley, loc. cit.

logical inference based upon the symptoms and alterations which he presents. In spite of the interest bearing upon this question, we cannot go into details without passing beyond our domain.

As to the type, a lameness is *continued* or *intermittent*. The animal, in the first case, is lame at all times: after rest, during exercise, at the beginning as well as at the termination of the latter.

The characters of an *intermittent lameness* are entirely different. It becomes apparent only under special circumstances: sometimes only when leaving the stable, *cold lameness;* sometimes at the end of a certain period of exercise, *warm lameness*. This variety of lameness is included in the list of redhibitory vices and diseases, with nine days of warranty, which is mentioned in Article II. of the law of August 2, 1884, where they are designated under the generic name of *chronic intermittent lamenesses*.

Fraudulent Methods.—Unscrupulous horse-dealers sometimes attempt to deceive purchasers by knowingly offering for sale a horse which suffers from an intermittent lameness. For this purpose they intentionally make a wound which renders him lame from a simple and apparent cause and for a duration which always exceeds that of the guarantee according to law. We must be on our guard against such malpractice. In general, a lame horse should never be bought unless his price is notably reduced. It is especially in this particular case that it is necessary to consult the veterinarian, in order to be informed as to the gravity of the lesion and the cause of the lameness. If, however, it be determined to buy a lame horse having a recent wound, it is well to require *from the seller an appropriate bill of warranty*, as a matter of precaution in case, the wound having entirely healed, the characters of a chronic intermittent lameness should afterwards manifest themselves.

SECTION FIFTH.

AGE OF THE HORSE.

By the word *age* is generally understood, in speaking of the horse, *the time which has elapsed since his birth.* It must not be confounded with *ages*, or *periods*, a paronymous expression by means of which *the different periods of life* are designated.

Physiology teaches us, in fact, that the evolution of one same organism passes through *three very distinct periods of development:*

The first, during which it *increases, grows,* and acquires, little by little, possession of its functional activities.

The second, *stationary* or *adult period,* in which it has acquired its complete development, possesses all the attributes of its species, all its aptitudes, and remains *stationary.*

The third, finally, of *decline,* in which it manifests more and more the effects of organic deterioration and insensibly approaches decay and death.

These three periods of life, which characterize all beings whose evolution is normal and complete, are, as will be understood, intimately related to the time during which the organism has already lived.

From an industrial point of view, the *adult period* is by far the most important as it concerns our domestic animals. Characterized by the regular and harmonious development of all his parts, this is the time, says H. Bouley, in which the horse enjoys the fulness of all his functions and is in a position to furnish, *as a motor,* the largest share of useful services.[1]

It is of special interest to those who desire to reproduce and improve him, prepare him for the sale, and develop his aptitudes, to know exactly when he reaches or passes beyond this period in which he acquires his greatest value.

---

[1] H. Bouley, Nouveau Dictionnaire pratique de médecine, de chirurgie et d'hygiène vétérinaires, t. i. p. 200.

The general aspect of the body, the state of the organization, and his particular mode of functional activity furnish, in most instances, the indications that cannot deceive a practised eye, but they are not infallible in practice, and are subject to variation according to the *rational* or *abusive* employment which has been given to the animals.

It is necessary, therefore, to have recourse to other sources to establish the basis of a precise determination of the characters indicative of the age of the horse.

Now, of all the organs which receive and preserve with the greatest accuracy the marks of time, the teeth of solipeds are, without doubt, those which register them, so to speak, in ineffaceable signs. Admirably adapted to the needs of the organism, instruments constructed in view of the modé of alimentation, and presenting a series of landmarks whose successive disappearance marks the trace of the years, the teeth appear, develop, wear off, change their external form, are shed, and succeed each other with a regularity which veterinarians have learned to recognize and determine scientifically.

Hence we will commence the study of the age of the horse by a minute description of the dental apparatus, in order to place the reader in a situation to understand fully the characteristics upon which it is based.

PART I.

THE TEETH.

Definition; Number; Distribution.—"The teeth are mechanical instruments, harder than bone, placed, in vertebrate animals, at the entrance of the alimentary canal, to seize, cut, tear, and bruise the nutritive substances before their transmission from the mouth into the œsophagus. They can also serve the animal as weapons of defence and offence." [1]

In the adult animal of the equine species the teeth number from thirty-six to forty,[2] and are designated by names which recall their use (Fig. 270):

---

[1] G. Cuvier, Leçons d'anatomie comparée, t. iv., 1re partie, p. 197.

[2] This number should be considered as absolute, but we will call attention to some variations which it presents, according to the individual.

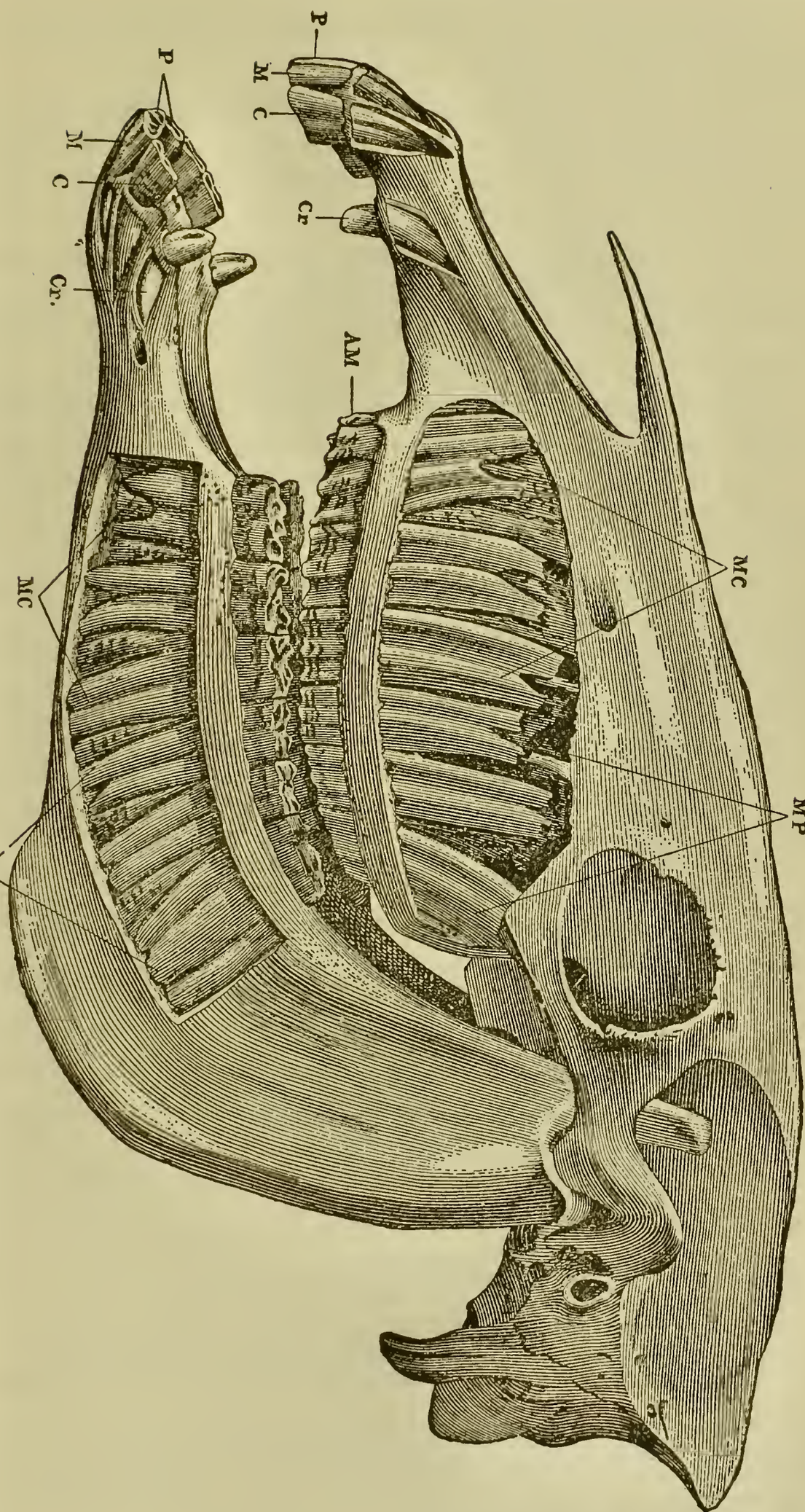


FIG. 270.—Dentition of the horse, as a whole.

P, pincers; *M*, intermediates; *C*, corners; *Cr*, canines; *AM*, supplementary premolars: *MC*, deciduous molars or premolars; *MP*, permanent molars.

The most anterior are called *incisors*, *P*, *M*, *C*, destined to seize, tear, and cut the aliment.

Then come the *tusks*, *canine teeth*, or *fangs*, *Cr*, whose *rôle* is to tear.

Finally, those which occupy the posterior part of the mouth are the *molars*, *MC*, *MP*, which serve to crush, in the manner of a millstone.

Concerning their disposition in the jaws, the teeth form a parabolic curve designated under the name *dental arcade*. The dental arcades, two in number and distinguished as superior and inferior, are composed of three parts: one anterior and two lateral.

The *incisors*, six in number in each jaw, occupy the anterior part, and describe, as a whole, a transverse semicircle convex in front.

The *molars*, situated behind and upon the lateral parts, are twelve in number in each jaw: six on the right side and six on the left side.

But immediately behind the incisive arcade, between it and the molars, exists on each jaw an asymmetrical interval called the *interdental space*, upon the course of which the *canines* or *tusks* are situated. The *bar*, as we already understand it, is the name given to the region of the interdental space situated behind the inferior canine tooth. In the mare, in which the canines are more or less aborted, the interdental space is commonly uninterrupted; the bar is consequently longer than in the male.

We count, consequently, in the *adult*, in each jaw and on each side, 3 incisors, 1 canine, and 6 molars, making in all 40 or 36 *permanent* teeth, according to the sex.

During the first period of life the teeth are not quite so numerous: only three molars exist on each side, in each jaw, and the tusks are usually wanting. The dentition of the colt, therefore, comprises 12 incisors and 12 molars, or a total of 24 teeth, whose duration is altogether *transient*.

Let us add that Daubenton, Lafosse, Tenon, and Girard[1] have said that the teeth are sometimes 44 in number; in this case there are *supernumerary* premolars; we will again revert to these.

---

[1] Daubenton, see Histoire naturelle générale et particulière avec la description du cabinet du Roi, par Buffon. Édition in-4o de l'imprimerie royale, t. iv., Paris, 1763, p. 334.

Lafosse, Cours d'hippiatrique ou traité complet de la médecine des chevaux, in-folio, Paris, 1772, p. 24.

Tenon, Second essai d'étude, par époques, des dents molaires du cheval. Read and deposited with the secretary of the Institute the 16th day of the fourth month in the fifth year (French calendar). This essay has been published in the Memoirs of the National Institute of Sciences and Arts for the fourth year of the Republic (Sciences mathématiques et physiques), p. 60.

J. Girard, Traité de l'âge du cheval, 3e éd., Paris, 1834, p. 35.

CHAPTER I.

THE INCISORS.

A.—Incisors of the First Dentition.

THESE teeth, also called *fœtal, milk, deciduous,* are twelve in number: six in each jaw, three on each side (Figs. 271 and 272).

They have received the particular names pincers, intermediates, and corners.

The **pincers** are placed almost on the median line, the one to the right, the other to the left; the **intermediates**, external to the pincers; finally, the **corners**, external to the intermediates.

Collectively they form a regular parabolic curve. By their free portion they present distinctive characters which depend upon their situation, their width, and their degree of curvature.

Compared with those of the second dentition, their width is much less, and there exists a well-marked constriction or *neck* between their free portion or *crown*, projecting above the gums, and their incased portion, *root*, embedded in the alveolus. The presence of the neck allows these teeth, in all cases, to be distinguished from the former at a glance (Fig. 273). Finally, their color is of a dull milky-, or yellowish-white; besides, they are curved in the direction of their length.

They present for study two faces, two borders, and two extremities.

Faces.—Each of the faces diminishes gradually from the free extremity to the end of the root.

The *anterior*, convex in every sense, shows longitudinal striæ more or less marked, which consist of small grooves separated from one another by small longitudinal lines in relief. As the animal grows older, this face becomes whiter and more polished under the influence of the friction; a semicircular enlargement of the gums shows its separation from the neck.

The *posterior*, concave longitudinally, is slightly convex transversely. It presents nothing of special importance, and the neck is here less apparent.

Borders.—The *internal* border is thicker than the *external.*

Extremities.—In the virgin tooth (one that does not show any use) the *free extremity* (Fig. 274) is flattened from before to behind, and limited by two borders: one anterior, *a*, the other posterior, *b*, and, finally, by two sides: one external, the other internal.

The two borders circumscribe a cavity, the *external dental cavity*, occupying nearly the whole of the free extremity of the tooth. The anterior, *a*, is the more elevated and longer from side to side. Sharp and convex transversely, it is the first to pierce the gums; the posterior, *b*, penetrates the gums later, and, from the effects of wear, comes on a level with the preceding.

The external dental cavity, *c*, which we will examine in detail farther on, diminishes in depth for the same reason, little by little, and finally disappears. The tooth is then levelled.

As these teeth must be replaced, at a certain epoch of life, by those of the

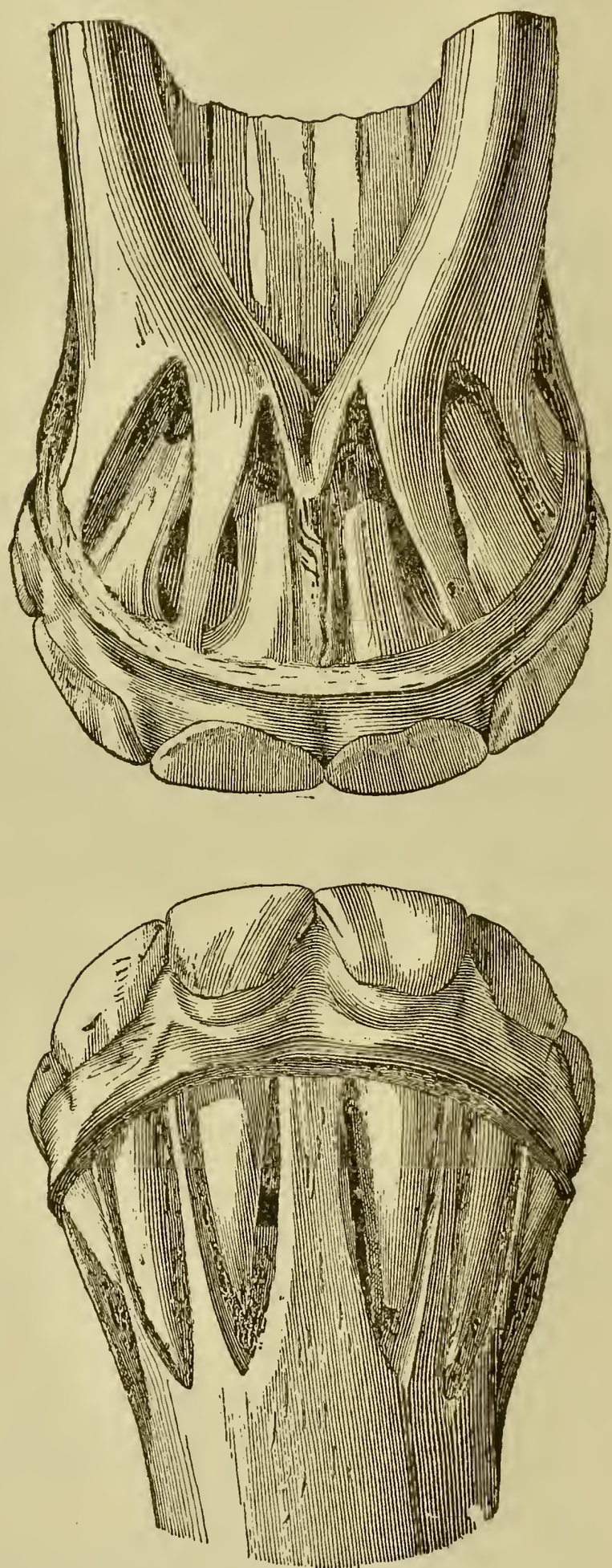


FIG. 271.—Deciduous incisors viewed on their anterior face.

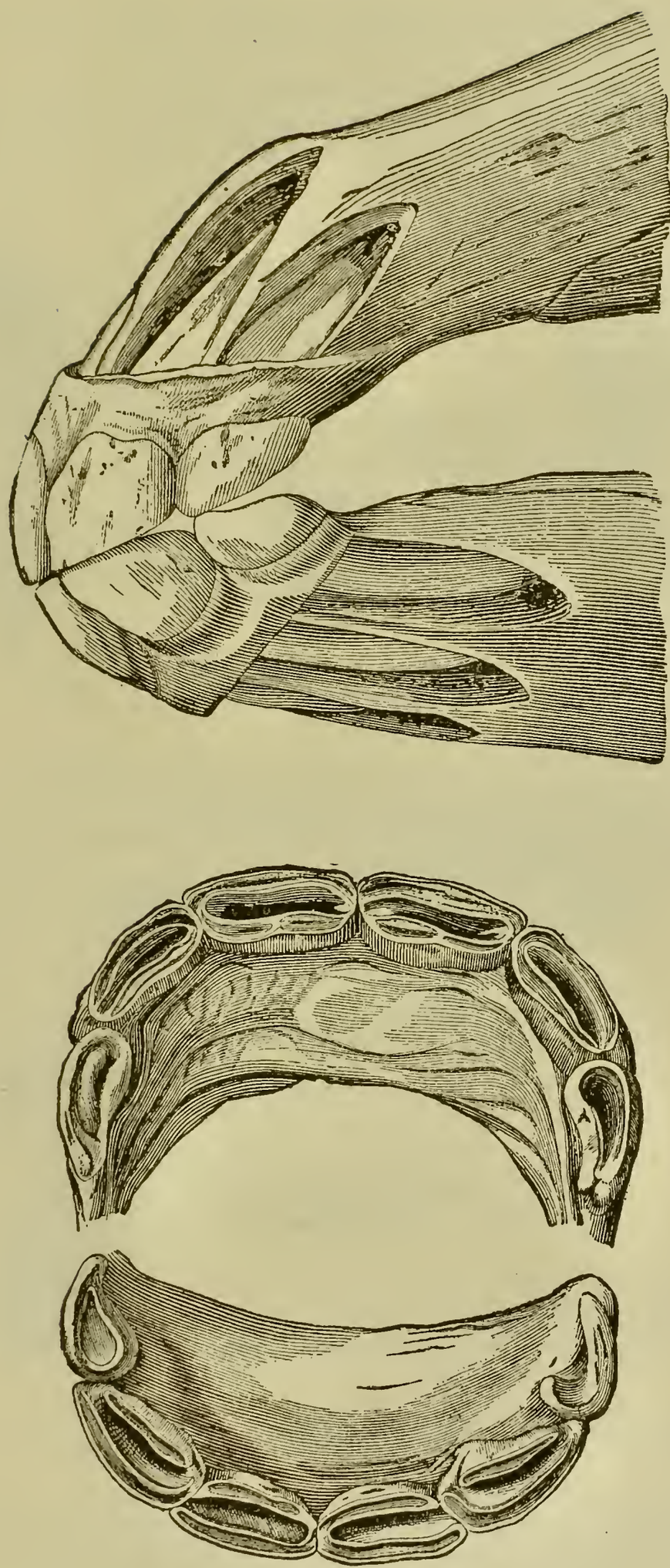


FIG. 272.—Deciduous incisors. (Profile and dental tables.)

second dentition, we will study with the latter the modifications in the dental table from wear.

As to the *embedded extremity*, it is provided with an opening, the orifice of the *internal dental* or *pulp cavity*, *d*, in which the *papilla* or pulp of the tooth is contained.

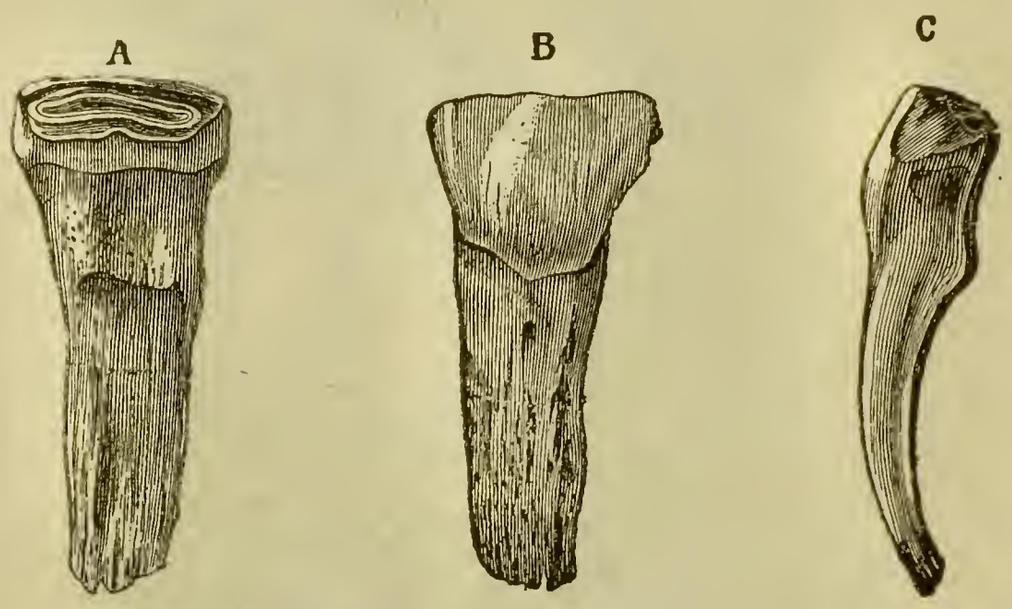


FIG. 273.—A deciduous pincer.
A. Posterior face. | *B*. Anterior face. | *C*. Profile.

But, as the young animal advances in age, the milk-teeth increase in length by growth at their roots, while their pulp cavities diminish in size in a great

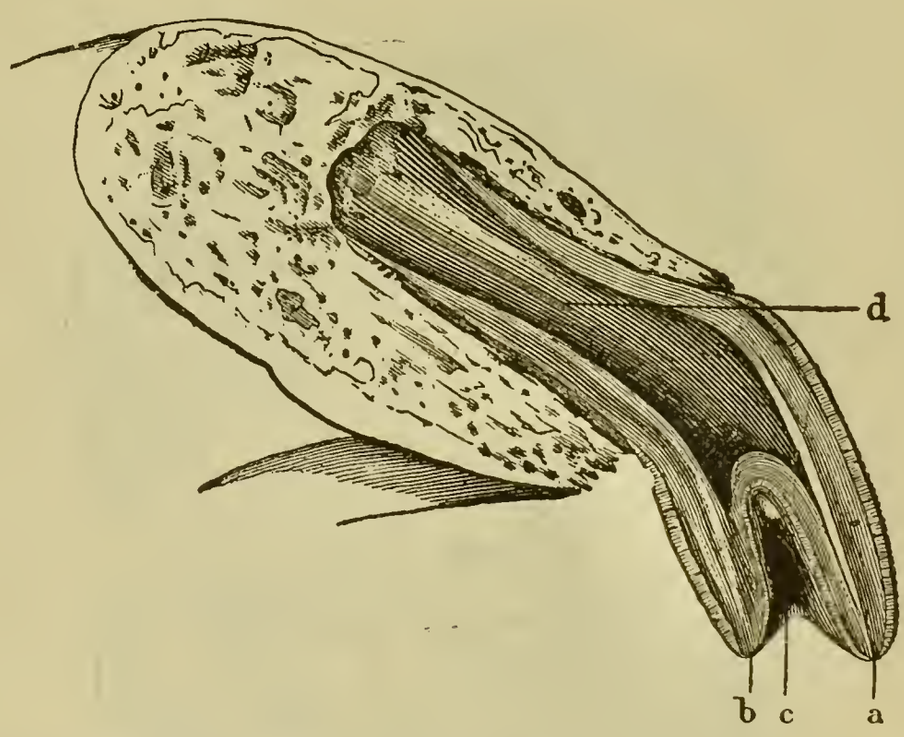


FIG. 274.—Magnified longitudinal section of a superior virgin pincer of the first dentition, seen in its alveolus.

measure. The maxillary bones at the same time become thicker and the permanent incisors are being formed in their thickness. The latter are situated behind and within the deciduous teeth, from which they are at first separated by the

alveolar partitions. These partitions then become absorbed in such a manner that at a given moment the two teeth are found to lie in contact (Fig. 275).

There results, in ordinary cases, from the relation which is established between the posterior face of the deciduous tooth and the crown of the replacing tooth, a direct compression of the one upon the other, the effect of which is a

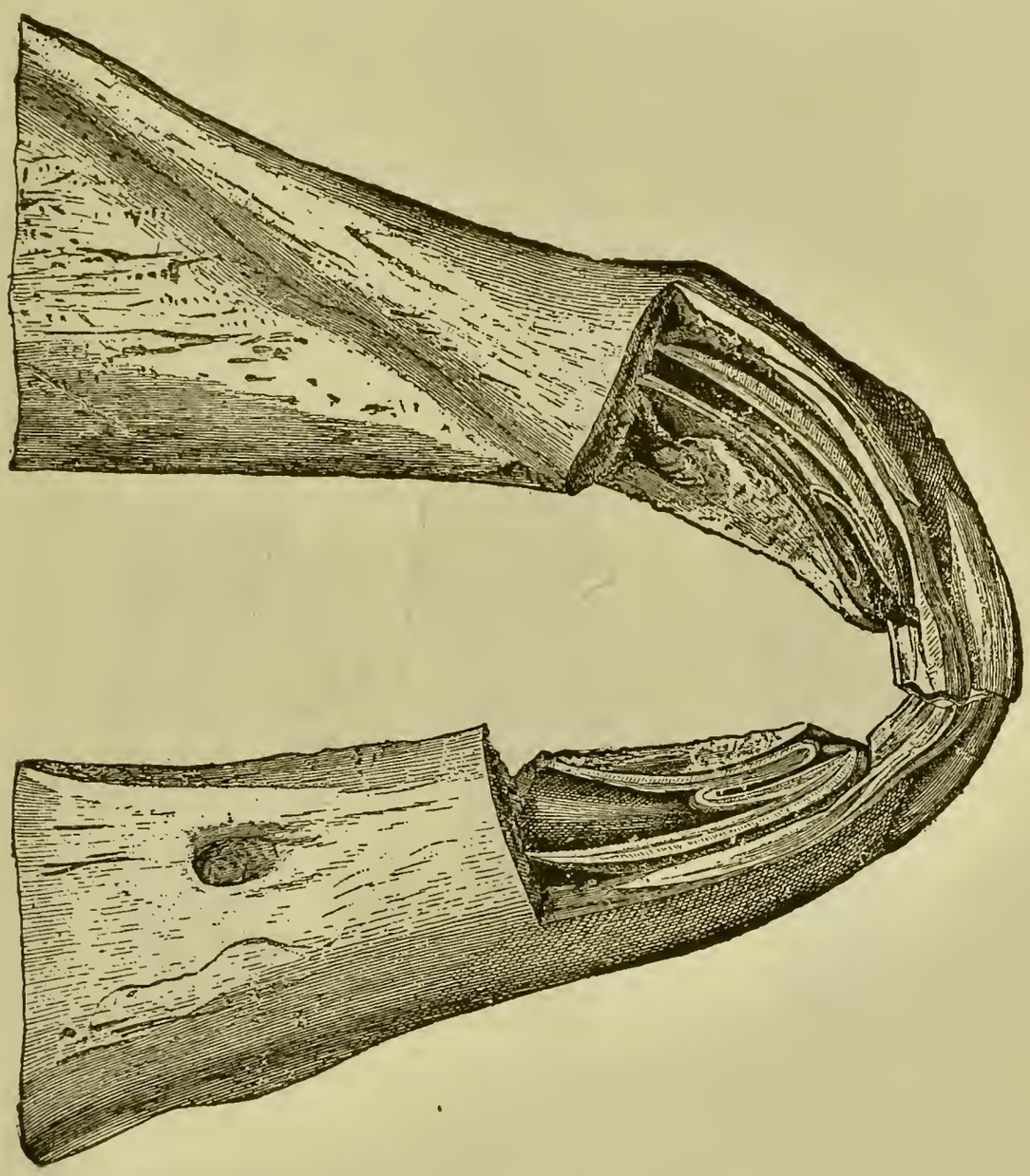


FIG. 275.—Longitudinal section of the jaws showing the relative situation of milk and permanent incisors.

flattening and atrophy of the root of the first dentition. The permanent teeth, nevertheless, are sometimes placed at the level of the others, without compressing or pushing from their sockets, but simply remain situated behind them.

B.—Incisors of the Second Dentition.

These teeth, known under the name *permanent* or *adult incisors, incisors of replacement,* number the same as the preceding, which they succeed. There are, therefore, in each jaw two pincers, two intermediates, and two corners.

They are distinguished particularly from the milk incisors in that they are

longer, larger, not so white, deprived of a neck between the root and the crown, and have a wide gutter on their anterior face.

Form.—Their general form, always more regular in the pincers than in the intermediates, and in the latter more so than in the corners, is that of an irregular cone, whose base, flattened from before to behind, corresponds to the free extremity of the tooth, while the summit, depressed from side to side, corresponds to the root.

This double flattening of the two extremities of the tooth necessarily implies an intermediary zone more or less trifacial.

The incisor tooth is, besides, curved in the direction of its length, which is most marked in the pincers and least in the corners; its long axis appears more or less twisted upon itself from side to side, particularly at the level of the root. This is most apparent in the intermediates and the corners. In order to facilitate the description we will recognize in each incisor (Fig. 276):

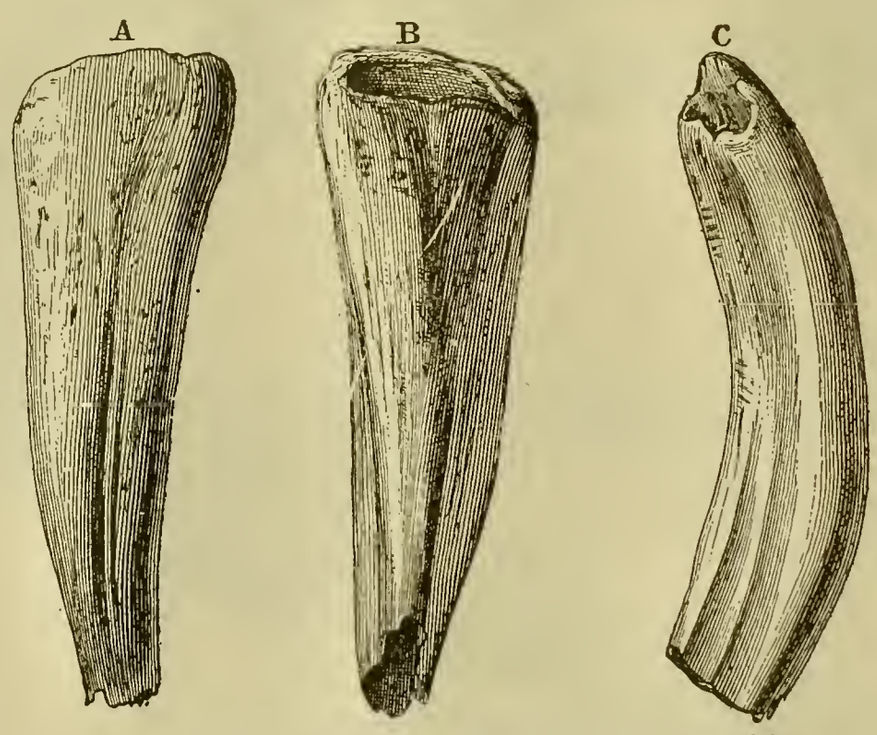


FIG. 276.—Unworn inferior pincer of the second dentition.
A. Posterior face. | *B.* Anterior face. | *C.* Profile.

Two faces: the one anterior, the other posterior.

Two borders: external and internal.

Finally, two extremities: the crown, or free portion, and the root, or incased portion.

1st. **Faces.**—The *anterior face,* wider at the crown than at the root, is almost flat transversely and convex in the direction of its length. It contains a longitudinal gutter, which is more marked on the crown than on the root.

The superior incisors (Fig. 277), always wider and more curved, sometimes have two grooves on the anterior face instead of one.

The *posterior face,* rounded transversely, is concave from the summit to the base; its width and its curvature are more pronounced in the superior incisors.

2d. **Borders.**—The *internal* border is thicker than the *external;* each of them, separating the two faces, augments in width from the base to the summit

of the tooth, in consequence of the double flattening of the latter. They are similar in the incisors of both jaws.

3d. **Extremities.**—The *free extremity* is opposed to the corresponding tooth of the other jaw, and should be examined first in the *virgin tooth.*

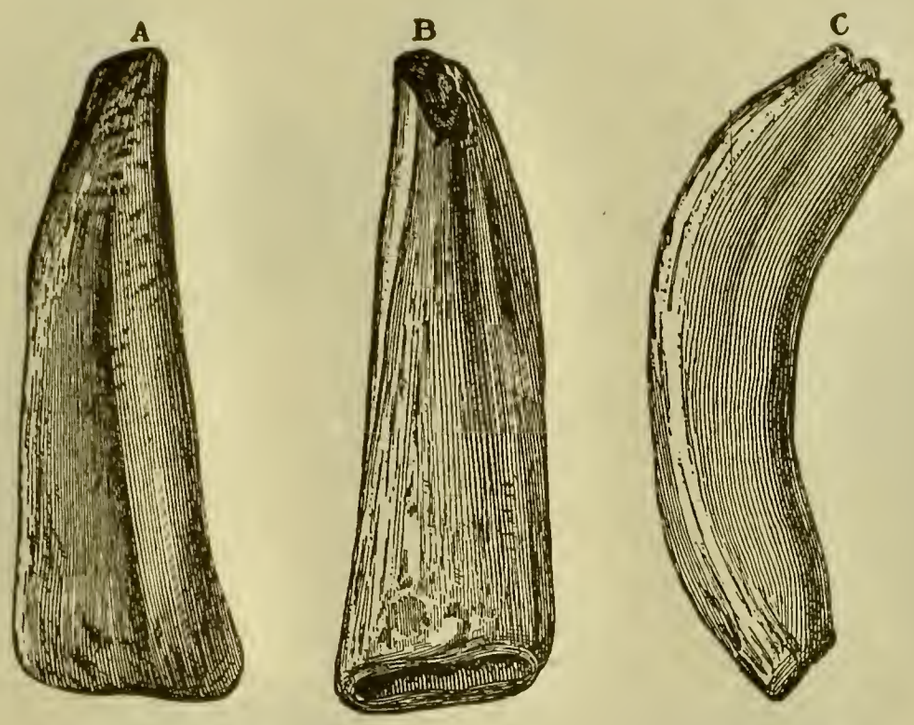


FIG. 277.—Superior virgin incisor of the second dentition (pincer).
A. Anterior face. | *B.* Posterior face. | *C.* Profile.

It is flattened from before to behind, and, consequently, elongated from side to side.

This extremity (Fig. 278) is occupied by a *cavity* called the *external dental cavity, c,* which separates two borders, an anterior and a posterior; two sides, an external and an internal.

These two borders are unequal. The anterior, *a,* is more prolonged and more salient than the posterior; it is thin, quite sharp, slightly convex transversely, and is the first to appear in the eruption of the tooth from its alveolus; its pressure causes absorption and perforation of the gums.

The posterior border, *b,* less salient than the anterior, sometimes has a notch in its middle part, which renders the external dental cavity much less regular.

As to the *sides,* they constitute the commissures of the two borders; the external is thinner than the internal and presents a small notch.

The *external dental cavity* or *infundibulum, c,* circumscribed by the *central enamel, d,* has an irregularly conic form. Wider at its entrance than at its bottom, and partially filled with *cement, e,* according to the subjects (see *Structure of the Teeth*), it is curved upon itself in its length, which draws its summit towards the posterior face of the tooth.

According to Girard, whose remarks we have consulted, in horses six years of age the external dental cavity of the inferior pincers has a depth of 0.016 to 0.018 m.; that of the intermediates, 0.020 m.; and that of the corners, 0.011 to 0.013 m. In the superior jaw its depth in the pincers is 0.025 to 0.027 m.; in the intermediates, 0.027 to 0.028 m.; in the corners, 0.018 to 0.020 m.

Whence it follows that the external dental cavity is deeper, all things being equal, in the superior incisors, and that, in each jaw, its depth is greatest in the intermediates. It may also be added, as a differential characteristic relative to this cavity, that this part of the tooth extends closer to the posterior face of the incisors of the inferior jaw.

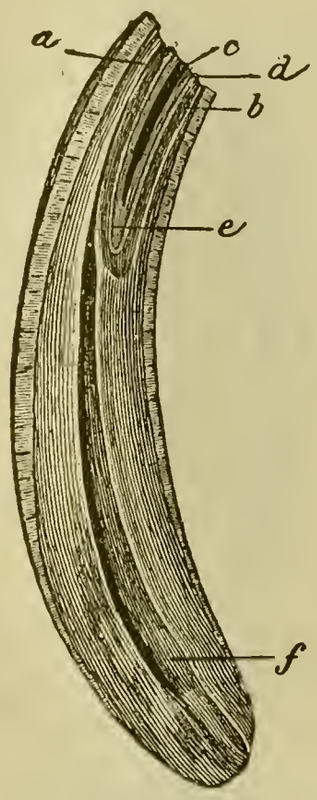


FIG. 278.—Longitudinal section of a permanent incisor that has been used.

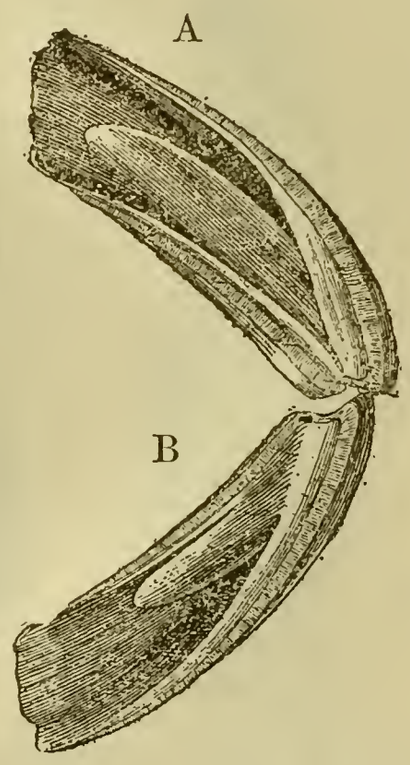


FIG. 279.—Eccentric and longitudinal section of the superior and inferior intermediates of the adult, showing the different characters of the external dental cavity.

The *incased extremity* or *root* presents a large opening which leads into a cavity in the interior of the tooth, in which the dental pulp is lodged. This is the *internal dental* or *pulp cavity.*

The preceding details apply in a general manner to all the incisor teeth. They nevertheless present some slight modifications if each individual tooth be examined in particular. Hence we have presented in Fig. 280 antero-posterior longitudinal sections of three superior and inferior incisors of the same side, obtained from the jaws of a five-year-old horse, in order that the reader may view for himself the modifications of which we speak.

Successive Forms of the Dental Table.—From the continual friction and rubbing against each other, the incisors progressively level their crowns, which gives to the extremity of the latter the aspect of a plane surface, known under the name of *dental table.* The form of this table, which changes more and more as we approach the root of the tooth, necessarily varies with the age of the animal. This can be proved by following, in the horse, its successive modifications during several years.

It is, however, more convenient and much less complicated to

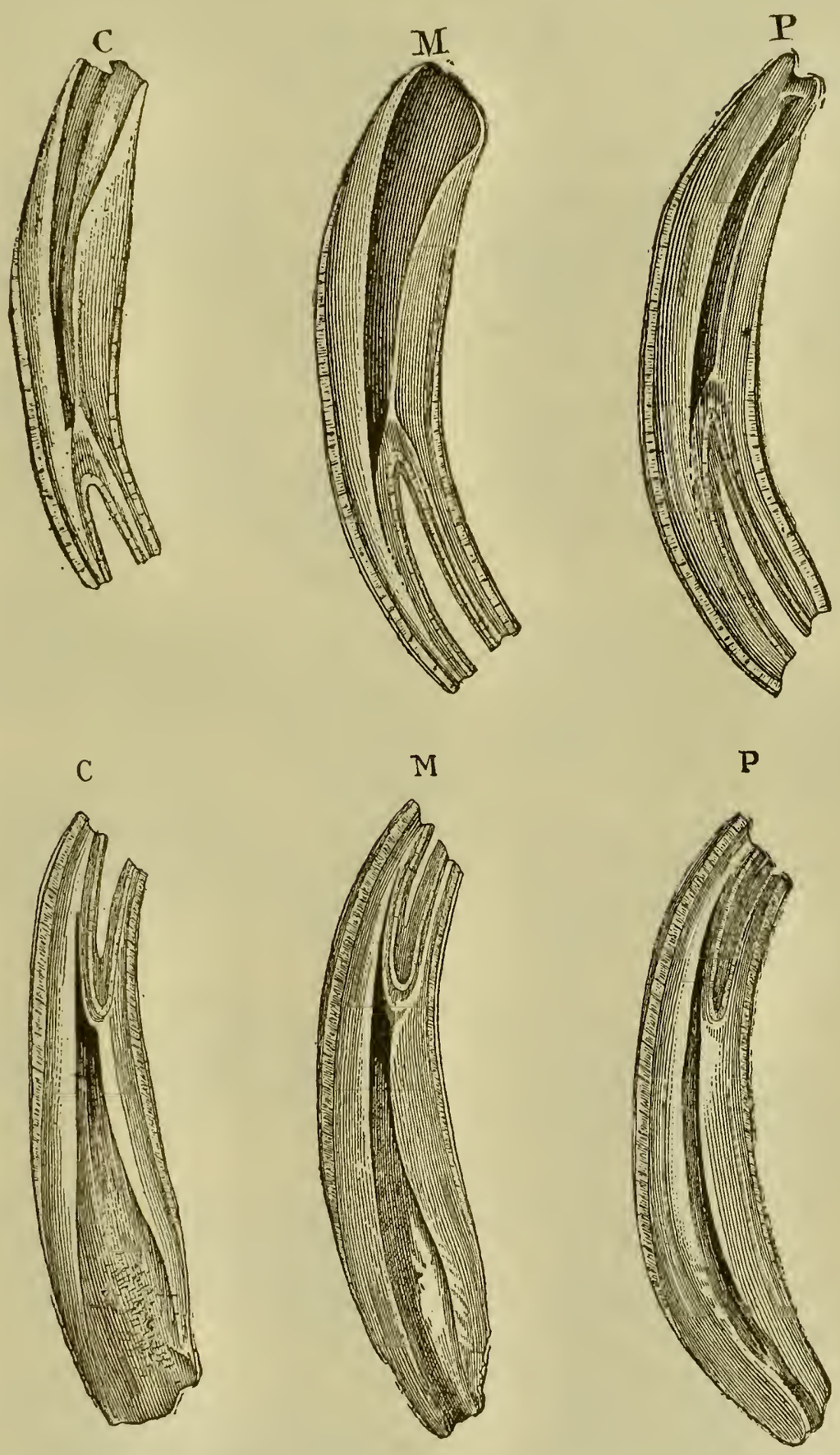


FIG. 280.—Longitudinal and median sections of the pincer, intermediate, and corner in each of the jaws.

P. Pincers. | *M.* Intermediates. | *C.* Corners.

arrive at the same results by making with a saw, upon a five-year-old

pincer, for example, a series of transverse sections three or four millimetres in thicknesss. We can, in this manner, obtain artificially the successive forms of all the tables which are furnished by the natural usage. The forms which are best defined may be arranged successively in the following manner (Fig. 281):

1st. The *dental table* is at first *flattened from before to behind*,—that is to say, its transverse diameter is more extensive than the antero-posterior (sections 1 and 2).

2d. The dental table becomes *oval;* here there is less difference between the extent of the two diameters, although the transverse is still greater than the antero-posterior (sections 3 to 5).

3d. It takes a *rounded* form, and its two diameters are almost equal (sections 6 and 7).

4th. It becomes *triangular*, and is limited by three borders, an anterior and two lateral. The summit of the triangle looks backward (sections 8 to 11).

5th. Finally, the wearing surface is *flattened from side to side* (sections 12 to 16). This last form characterizes old age, and persists, whatever may be the duration of the life of the animal. Girard designated it by the metaphoric expression, *biangular*.

These configurations of the dental table are much more regular in the pincers than in the intermediates, and in the latter more so than in the corners. They are almost identical in the incisors of the superior jaw, but, in general, the latter are not examined in this relation.

C.—Structure of the Incisors.

The study of the structure of the incisors furnishes important indications for the determination of the age. In conjunction with what we have already said, it enables us to understand fully the peculiarities which the tooth presents, according to the age, at its free extremity.

We will choose, as the type for description, an inferior incisor; the reader can easily apply the details into which we shall now enter to the superior incisors.

The *sac* or *follicle* in which all the incisors are developed presents for consideration two papillary prolongations or papillæ, one superior, *a*, the other inferior, *b* (Fig. 282), which penetrate each other mutually. The former, or *enamel germ*, conical in form, is lodged in the external dental cavity; the second, or *dentine germ*, bifid, cup-shaped at its summit, and flattened antero-posteriorly, fills the pulp cavity in the interior. The one is endowed with the formation of a substance called *enamel;* the other, secreting the *dentine* or *ivory*, alone persists, under the name of pulp, until a very advanced period of life, and it is from this structure that the tooth receives its nourishment. In the very old tooth it may become almost entirely absorbed.

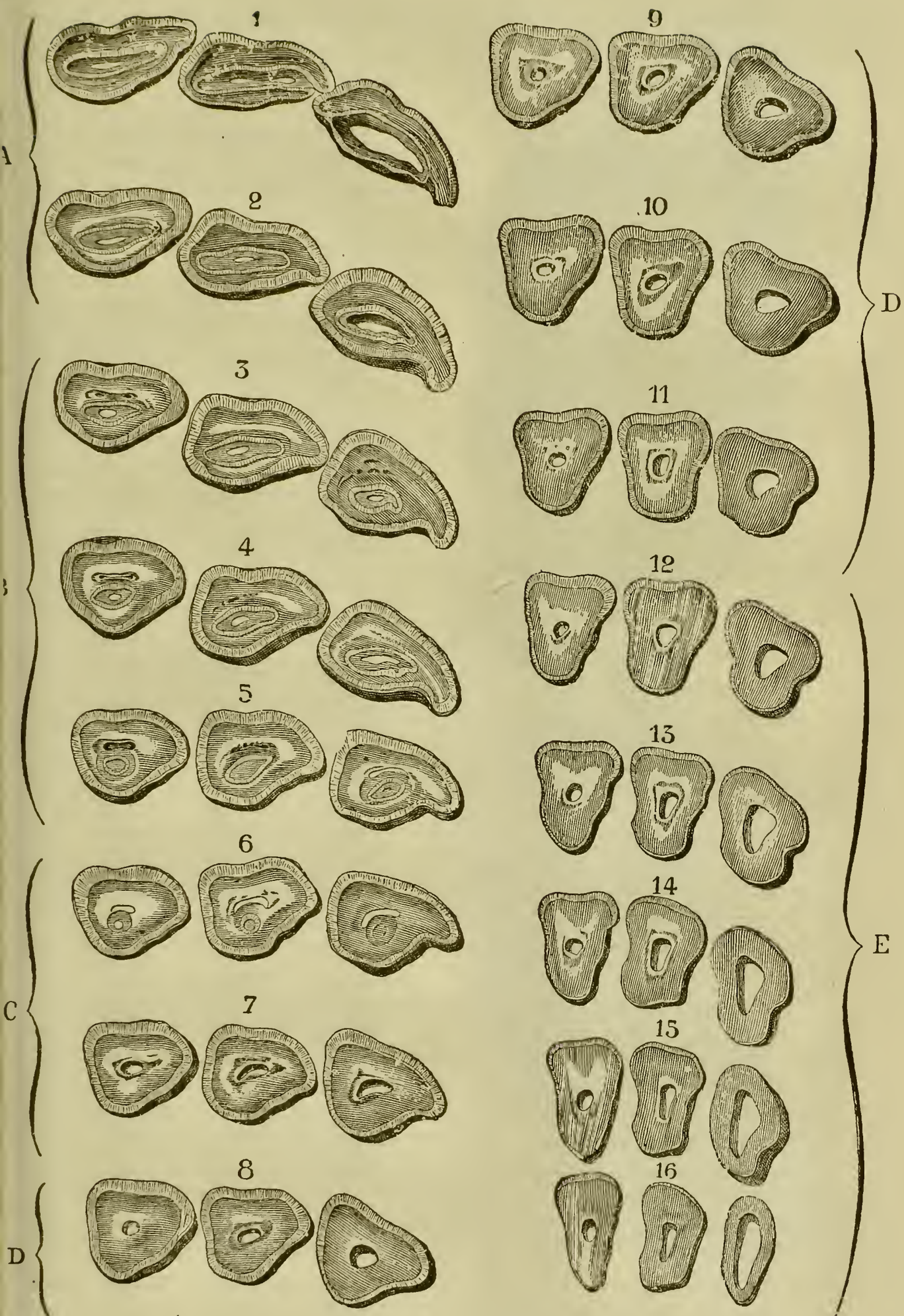


FIG. 281.—Series of longitudinal sections of the right inferior incisors of a five-year-old horse. *A*. Forms flattened from before to behind. *B*. Oval forms. *C*. Rounded forms. *D*. Triangular forms. *E*. Biangular forms.

It is between these two papillary systems that the constituent parts, *d*, of the tooth are deposited. They are represented at first by a thin lamella, hollowed internally and deeply depressed at the level of its free extremity. Later, the parietes of the dental follicle, *c*, are transformed into the alveolar periosteum. This much being said, let us view the incisor at a more advanced period of its development.

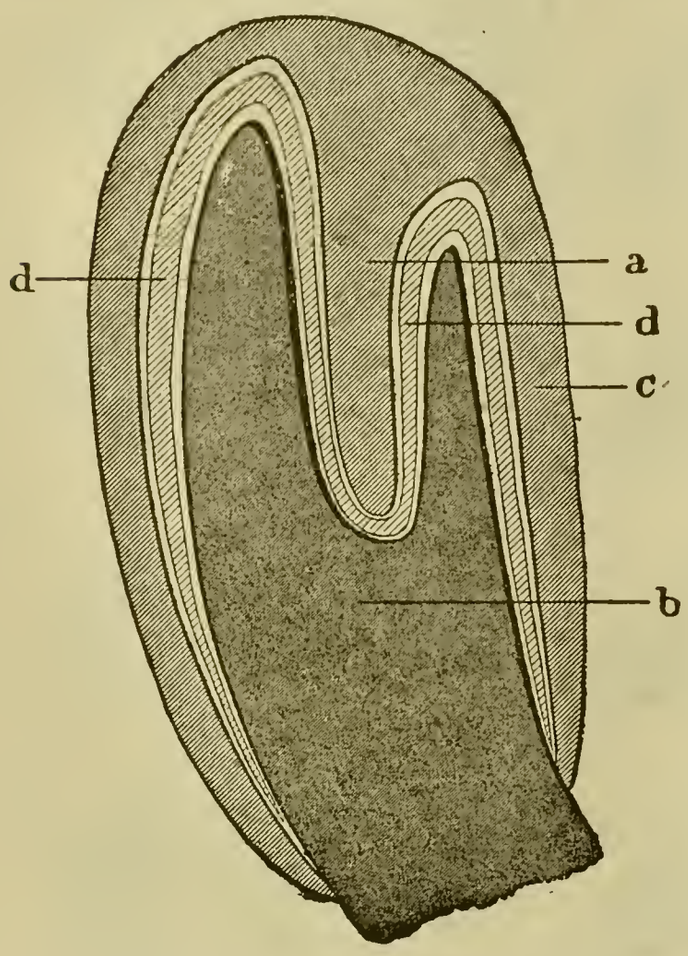


FIG. 282.—Schematic section of the dental follicle of an inferior incisor of a horse.

a, superior papilla, enamel germ; *b*, inferior papilla, dentine germ or dental pulp; *c*, parietes of follicle; *d*, dentine.

A longitudinal section of a tooth still enclosed in its alveolus shows us the relations which exist between the two cavities (Fig. 279). It is there seen that the point of the enamel sheath which surrounds the external dental cavity approaches the posterior face, but is not confounded with it. Whence it follows that the internal cavity is prolonged around the periphery of this sheath and leaves the latter absolutely free. The case is different in the aged tooth: the pulp cavity at a later period becomes filled up behind this projection and remains only in front, as is seen in Fig. 283.

Three substances enter into the construction of an incisor tooth: one *fundamental* and two *enveloping*. They differ in situation, thickness, position, hardness, and microscopical structure. Let us rapidly examine them.

Of the two enveloping substances, the most superficial has received the name *cement;* the other is the *enamel.*

1st. The **Cement**, *C*, (Fig. 283), forms a superficial coating directly applied upon the enamel. It envelops the entire periphery of the tooth and is reflected into the external dental cavity, at the bottom of which it forms a more or less thick nucleus, according to the subjects and the teeth which are examined. There are cases in which this layer is only 2 or 3 millimetres in thickness; in others it reaches 10, 15, and even 20 millimetres. Generally, it is less thick in the superior incisors. This fact has been determined, but it is not very long since that Messrs. Chauveau and Arloing,[1] in France, and Mr. Mayhew, in England,[2] have recognized its practical importance concerning the determination of the age, to whose works the reader is referred. It is perceived that the depth of the unfilled portion of

[1] Chauveau et Arloing, Traité d'anatomie comparée des animaux domestiques, 3e éd., Paris, 1879, p. 404.

[2] Mayhew, The Horse's Mouth, showing the Age by the Teeth, p. 32.

the external dental cavity depends, in a great measure, upon the thickness of the cementous deposit. It is much more rare to find it due to an exaggerated length of the enamel diverticulum, as most authors have written.

The cement, which gives bulk and strength to the teeth, does not offer, by a great deal, the same resistance to wear which the other substances possess. It is spread over the faces of the tooth in the form of a very thin layer, and gradually disappears by reason of the friction of the aliment, the lips, and the tongue. It persists, on the contrary, at the bottom of the external dental cavity, while the free portion of the latter exists upon the dental table, in the form of a blackish spot or "mark," more and more confined and surrounded by a round band of enamel.

The cement is very similar to bone, as its microscopic examination demonstrates. It is formed by the alveolar periosteum, principally at the limit between the root and the crown of the tooth, and is not the result, as Simonds has advanced, of the transformation of the dentine into bone. In very old teeth (Fig. 284) it exists in great abundance around the roots, and the following appears to us to be the mechanism of this new cementous formation. As the maxillary bones, little by little, push the greater part of the tooth from its alveolus as age advances, the root which then constitutes the wearing surface is no longer attached with sufficient solidity to resist the energetic actions of the jaws, particularly of the inferior, which rubs against the superior; it therefore becomes, little by little, dis-

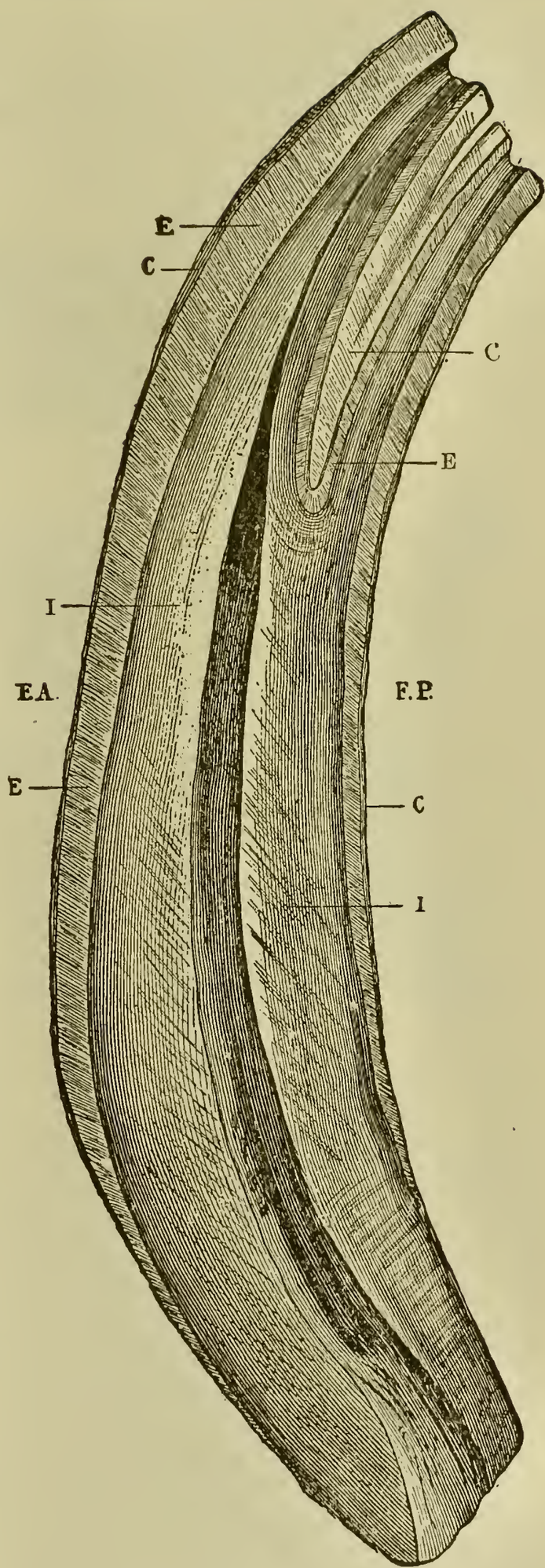


FIG. 283.—Longitudinal and median section of a permanent inferior pincer (enlarged).

FA, anterior face; *FP*, posterior face; *C*, cement; *E*, enamel; *I*, ivory.

turbed in its cavity of reception, and so much the more as the surface of friction is less extensive, for the animal is obliged to increase the frequency of the movements to compensate for the imperfections of its instruments of mastication.

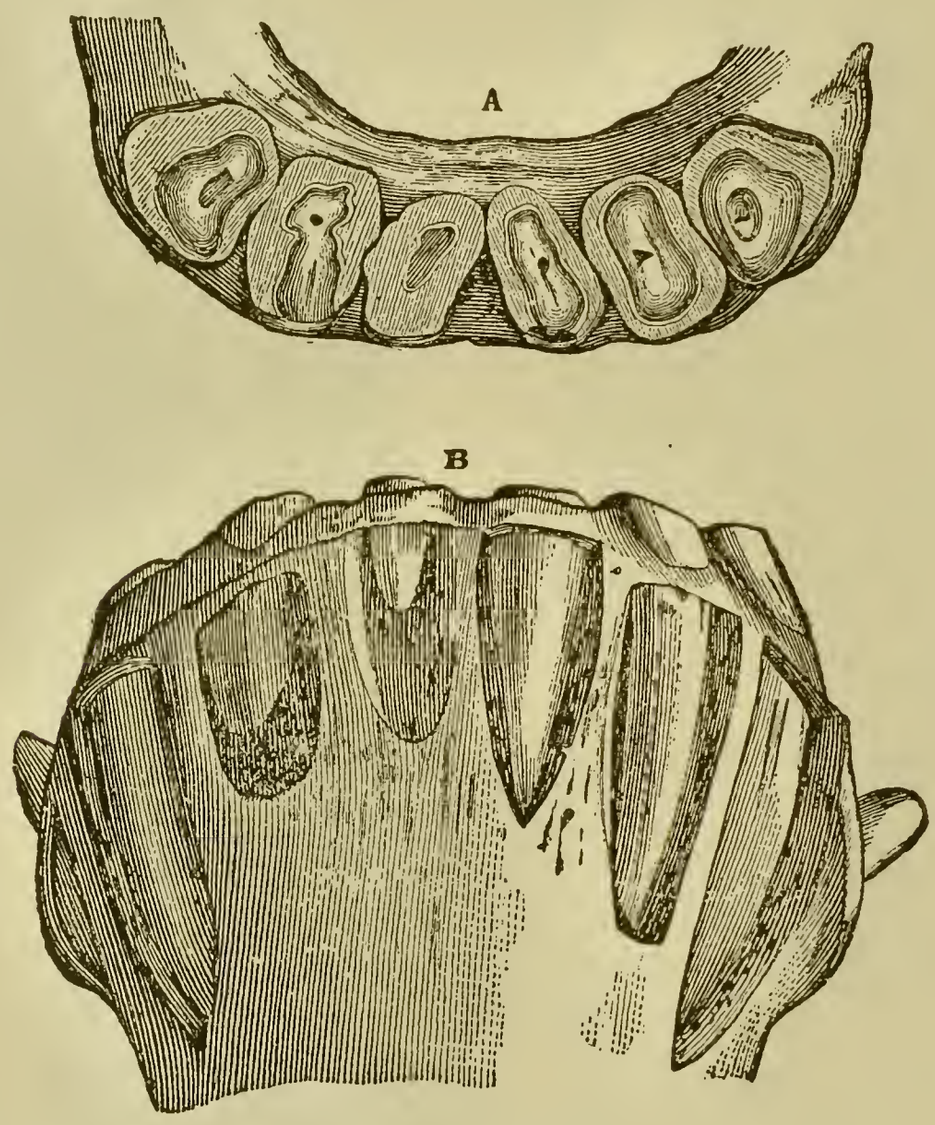


FIG. 284.—Radical cementation of the incisors of the horse.
A. Dental tables. | *B.* View of the same teeth in their alveoli.

These continual displacements to which the dental stumps are submitted stimulate the action of the alveolar periosteum, whose irritation is manifested by the production of very dense osseous layers which are deposited in proportion to the intensity of the dental displacements, and solidly seal the tooth in its alveolus at the same time that they increase the area of its surface of friction.

It is perceived that this cementation is the more active as the dental stump is shorter, narrower, and the aliment coarser; in a word, as it offers less resistance to the diverse causes tending to break its adherence with the living parts. Thus, in the horse, it is the teeth of the inferior jaw, those which occupy the centre of the incisor and molar arcades, which present the greatest thickness of *radical cement.* The violent and brutal tractions exercised upon the bit often lead to similar formations around the corner teeth. The same results are observed, finally, after surgical operations in which a tooth is accidentally disturbed or partially dislocated in its alveolar cavity.

It is easy to comprehend the utility, to the organism, of such a new formation. The nature of the aliment on which our large herbivora subsist would

render it impossible for the teeth to fulfil their functions, and would determine their early shedding, were it not for this fortunate restoration, in advanced age, to preserve their properties for a still long time.[1]

If, as Simonds[2] thinks, this radical cement be the consequence of the transformation of the ivory into bone, the teeth upon which it is deposited should not augment in volume in consequence of its appearance; in the centre of the dental table is always found, in such cases, an area of dentine the dimensions of which are exactly the same as those of the normal root. The peripheral cement is therefore superadded to the tooth, and is not formed at the expense of the latter.

2d. The **enamel**, *E*, is the true protective layer of the teeth. Situated underneath the cement, it represents a sort of polished coating covering the whole of the surface of the dentine and forming the parietes of the external dental cavity; it does not extend into the pulp cavity. As Lecoq has indicated, "its thickness is greater upon the anterior than upon the posterior face of the tooth, and it also extends lower down upon the former." It becomes quite thin towards the extremity of the root.

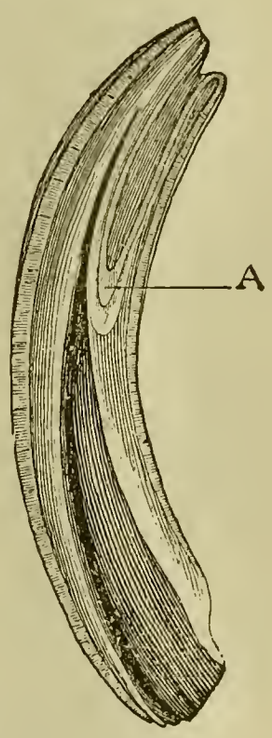


Fig. 285.—Longitudinal antero-posterior section of an inferior pincer, showing the enamel sheath, *A*, prolonged into the external dental cavity.

These facts, to which no importance has been attributed, nevertheless deserve to arrest our attention. It is well known that there exist, upon the dental table, a certain number of intermediary phases between the commencing triangular form and the lateral flattening, or that which Girard has called *biangular*. Nothing is more difficult, then, than to determine whether a certain triangular form is more recent than another which may differ but little in shape. This is, nevertheless, a problem which an attentive examination can solve, since we know that the enamel will disappear earlier upon the surface of friction behind than in front. It will suffice, then, to ascertain its relative thickness upon the periphery of the table; or, again, to prove its absence or its presence upon the posterior border of the tooth. The degree of wear of the latter can thus, with practice, be easily determined.

An error rather frequently committed in France, and which Messrs. Chauveau and Arloing have corrected, consists in believing that the layer of enamel which forms the wall of the external dental cavity (*central enamel*) is prolonged in the form of a cone or enamel horn well beyond the bottom of the external cavity properly so called. We have demonstrated[3] that the sections upon which such a disposition is observed are not made exactly according to the axis of the tooth, but pass to one side of the latter. There results thus a more or less oblique section of the parietes of this cone, which may deceive a superficial observer. Fig. 285, *A*, represents precisely such a section, and shows that similar ones can be obtained at

---

[1] Goubaux et Barrier, loc. cit.

[2] James Beart Simonds, The Age of the Ox, Sheep, and Pig, London, 1854, p. 34.

[3] Goubaux et Barrier, loc. cit.

will whenever the observation is made in the defective manner that we have indicated.

If, however, the section be made so as to divide the point of this cul-de-sac into two moieties absolutely equal, its disposition will be different; at its summit the layer of enamel does not present any thickening, and in certain cases it is even somewhat thinner than anywhere else.

These facts are demonstrated, besides, in the transverse sections (Fig. 281). After the external cavity has disappeared, the central cement, which fills its bottom, still persists in the form of a white spot bordered by a thin band of enamel. This spot then diminishes in size, approaches the posterior border of the dental table, and is finally effaced at the same time as the zone of enamel which surrounds it.

In relation to its hardness, the enamel is certainly the most remarkable layer of the teeth. When the latter are still enclosed by the gums in their alveoli, it can be easily cut by a sharp instrument, and its histological elements, disposed almost perpendicularly to the surface which it covers, disassociate themselves readily. But as soon as this substance has been submitted to the contact of the air it becomes hard, even to the extent of striking fire with steel. It is also much more resistant to wear than the dentine, and shows itself constantly in relief upon the surface of friction.

The enamel is a tissue of epithelial origin formed by the superior papilla of the primitive dental follicle. It is composed, microscopically, of an infinite number of small hexagonal prisms (*enamel prisms*), solidly united and directed obliquely in relation to the subjacent surfaces; it is, by its deep surface, applied upon the peripheral lacunar spaces of the dentine.

It does not cover the extremity of the root of very old teeth; but, as soon as it has disappeared on their table, it is replaced by the cement in the manner which we have already described. (See the longitudinal sections of Fig. 286.)

Of a milky-white color more or less clear according to the lustre of the tooth, but always very brilliant and slightly striated longitudinally, the enamel preserves the same thickness when once it is formed, and does not repair its losses.

3d. The **fundamental substance**, the **eburnated substance**, the **dentine** or the **ivory**, *I* (Fig. 283), constitutes the greater portion of the tooth. Produced by the inferior papilla of the dental follicle, and strongly depressed at its superior extremity for the reception of the central enamel, it is everywhere covered by the enamel. It forms the parietes of the pulp-cavity and surrounds the point of the central enamel, at first projecting into its interior.

Primitively not abundant, it does not delay to fill the cavity which it contains in its interior by the addition of new layers which are deposited on the surface of the old ones. This leads to a progressive atrophy of the pulp, which extends gradually from the crown to the root.

The more recent layers have a deeper coloration; the tint of the obliterated parts also allows, in transverse and longitudinal sections, the recognition of the outlines of the internal cavity at the beginning. This cavity is obliterated at first behind the central enamel, the distance which separates the latter from the posterior face being less considerable than that which separates it from the anterior. Then the obliteration takes place in front. It is these layers of this new

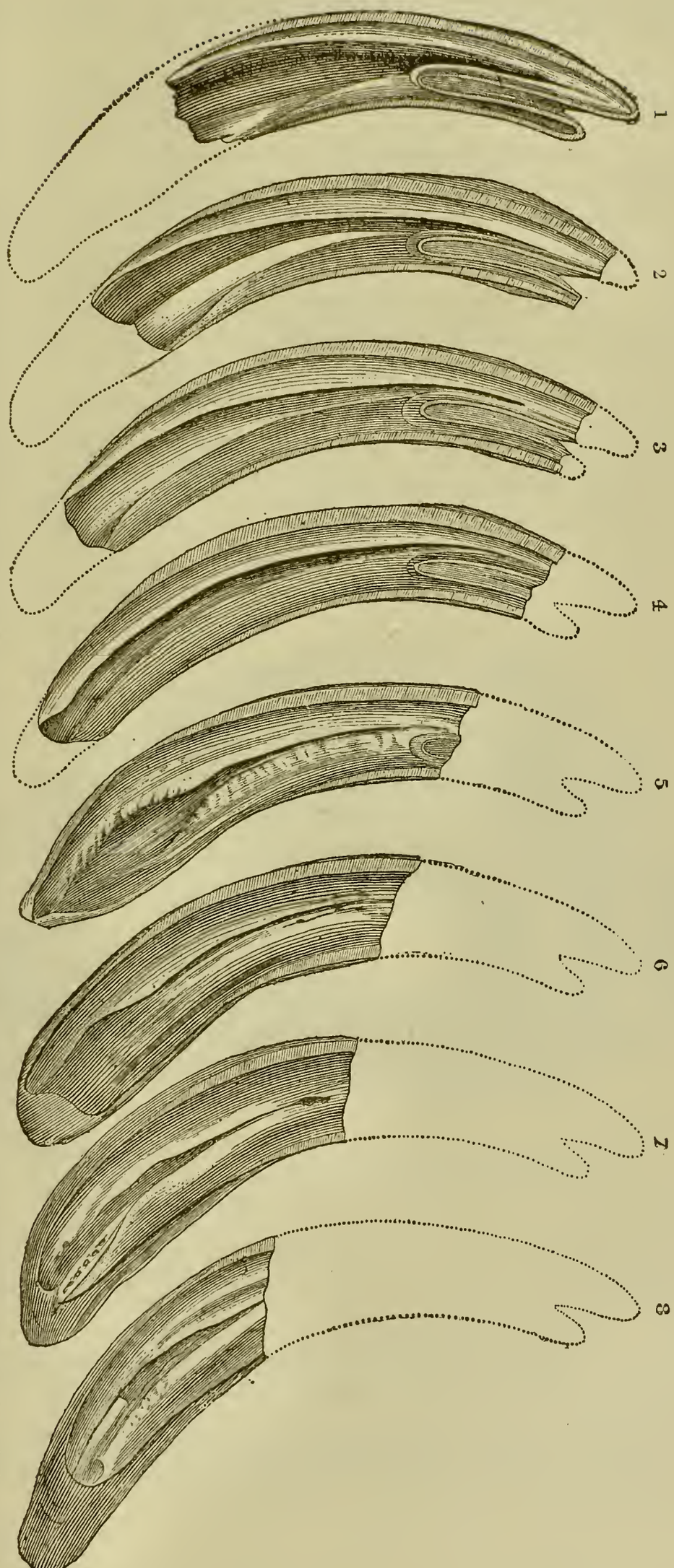


FIG. 286.—1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, median longitudinal sections of pincers from horses 3, 5, 7, 9, 15, 20, and 25 years of age, showing: 1st, the growth of the teeth at their roots; 2d, the progressive wear of their tables; 3d, their length and obliquity according to the age; 4th, obliteration of their pulp cavities; 5th, finally, their radical cementation.

formation which, appearing upon the table at a given period in the form of a transverse yellowish band in front of and behind the central enamel, constitute what is called the *dental star*.

To speak accurately, there are two of these dental stars, but the posterior, always less distinct, most frequently passes unperceived. Nevertheless, in certain teeth it is seen quite plainly.

Fig. 286 represents the median longitudinal sections of pincers from horses of different ages, which show the gradual diminution of the internal dental cavity. It will be seen, too, in the very old teeth, that the extremity of the root is covered by an abundant formation of radical cement directly applied upon the surface of the ivory, from the fact of the disappearance of the enamel. On that account these teeth, when the wear has reached this level, never display the whiteness which they did primitively.

The dentine is a substance less hard than the enamel, but much more resistant to wear than the bone or the cement. A microscopic examination of desiccated or macerated teeth shows that it is penetrated by a multitude of extremely fine *canaliculi*, which extend in a radiating manner from the internal cavity of the pulp to terminate, after anastomosing with one another, under the deep surface of the enamel in the lacunar spaces, called the *interglobular spaces of Czermak*.

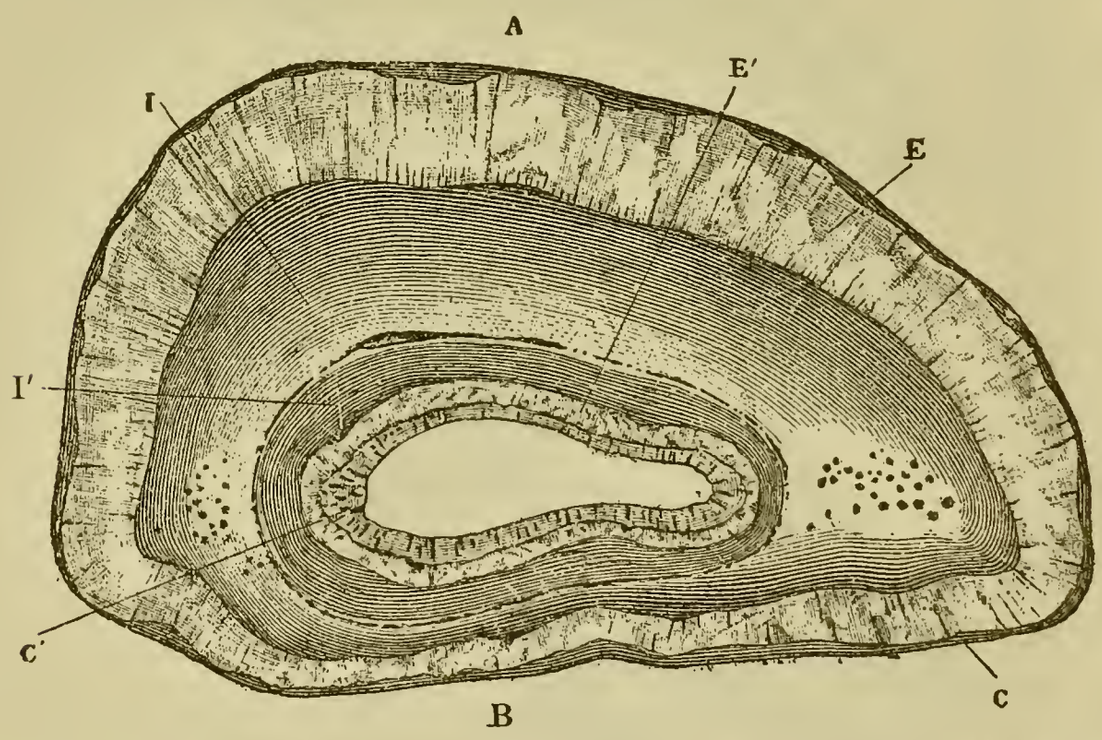


FIG. 287.—Transverse section of an inferior right pincer, showing the different layers constituting the tooth, with their relative thickness. (Magnified five diameters.)

A, anterior face.
B, posterior face.
C, peripheral cement.
C', central cement.
E, peripheral enamel.
E', central enamel.
I, ivory (external layers); *I'*, ivory darker in color surrounding the central enamel (internal layers).

Such are the principal details which it is essential to understand before proceeding farther. They may also be examined in transverse sections analogous to those of Fig. 287.

Let us now see what modifications the free extremity of the permanent incisors undergo under the influence of wear and tear.

D.—Details of the Dental Table according to the Age.

These details are dependent, in an intimate manner, upon the form and the structure of the incisors. We will study them from the period of the eruption of the teeth until very advanced age.

1st. Primitively the free extremity is occupied by the *external dental cavity, circumscribed by the central enamel,* almost conical in form, oblique from before to behind, terminating in a cul-de-sac, and containing the central cement, which, however, does not completely fill it.

The border which limits it anteriorly is higher than the posterior.

2d. At the end of a certain time the two borders of the central enamel are placed on a level with each other from the effects of wear. The external cavity, less deep, no longer occupies, as it did before, the whole of the free extremity; it appears more removed from the anterior border on account of the direction of its great axis, which is oblique backward.

The layers of enamel, in consequence of this modification, present a new disposition, for the enamel now forms two distinct parts (Fig. 287): the one, *E*, which always circumscribes the external surface of the tooth, receives the name *peripheral enamel;* the other, *E′*, which surrounds what remains of the external cavity, is called *central enamel.* The latter is the less thick of the two; it, as well as the peripheral enamel, stands in relief above the dentine and in relation with the cement which fills the external dental cavity.

3d. When this cavity has entirely disappeared, there only remains a small "island" of cement, limited by the central enamel. But the configuration and location of this island do not remain invariable. It diminishes little by little in area, tends to become round, and approaches more and more the posterior border of the table, in consequence of the disposition, the direction, and the length of this cone of enamel.

A *levelled* incisor tooth is characterized by the disappearance of its external cavity.

All are agreed in this respect. However, after what has been said concerning the structure, when the wear has reached this point, there still exists a more or less considerable part of the external enamel cup, whose bottom, filled with cement, does not present, as is believed, a solid point prolonged far beyond into the thickness of the dentine. (See Fig. 285.) The presence of the central enamel, after the tooth is levelled, furnishes an important indication for the determination of the age.

About the same time a spot of a deeper yellow appears in the middle of the dentine, between the anterior border of the table and the

central enamel; it has been called the *dental star* by Girard, who was the first to observe it. We know that a second one exists close to the posterior border of the dental table, but it is so little marked that it does not concern us.

The dental star is at first narrow and elongated transversely; afterwards its situation, dimensions, and form change in a notable degree, in proportion to the age of the animal. It progressively gains the central part of the dental table, diminishes in length transversely and increases in thickness antero-posteriorly, and, finally, becomes triangular and round. It never stands in relief above the surface of friction, and can therefore never be confounded with the central enamel. It is constituted by the dentine of more recent formation, which is deposited by successive layers in the internal cavity of the tooth.

4th. Save a few modifications, the preceding details are maintained during many years; then the central enamel disappears, and with it the nucleus of cement which it enclosed.

From this period until extreme old age nothing but the dental star and the dentine are found upon the surface of friction. The peripheral enamel diminishes in thickness; it is effaced very late, at first behind, and afterwards in front; finally, there appears, upon many teeth, the *radical cementation* of which we have already spoken when on the subject of the structure.

E.—Direction of the Incisors.

The incisors must be viewed in two principal directions: the one, relative to the plane of meeting of the arcades, is judged by inspecting the jaws in profile; the other, relative to the median plane, is appreciated by viewing the latter from in front. Both furnish important data for the determination of the age.

1st. **Direction in Relation to the Plane of Meeting of the Jaws.**—If the teeth of a young horse be exposed by removing the bone with a chisel (Fig. 288), it will be found that they are greatly convex upon the anterior face. It follows therefrom that, viewed in profile, they project in the manner of a vertical arc, at first almost regularly semicircular. At this moment each of the moieties of this arc is therefore opposed to the other, like two semi-circumferences that are placed in contact by their diameter in such a manner that a tangent to the point of contact of the jaws will be perpendicular to their plane of apposition. But as the table of friction, in consequence of the progress of wear, approaches more and more the region of the root, the aforesaid semicircle becomes altered and resembles an ogive

more and more acute in proportion as the plane of meeting of the jaws, which is being displaced above and below parallel to itself, is gradually separated from the primitive diameter. Consequently, the

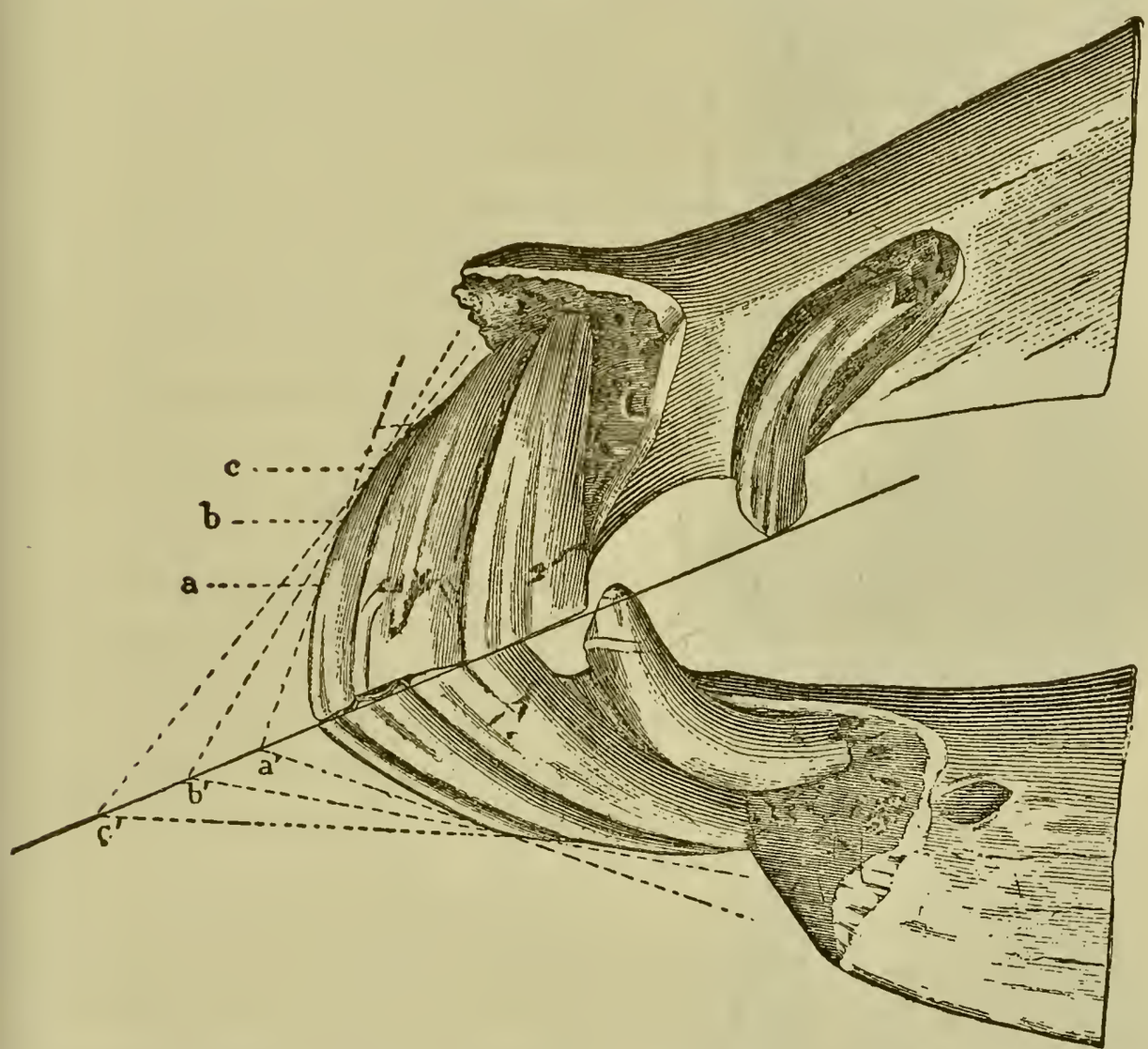
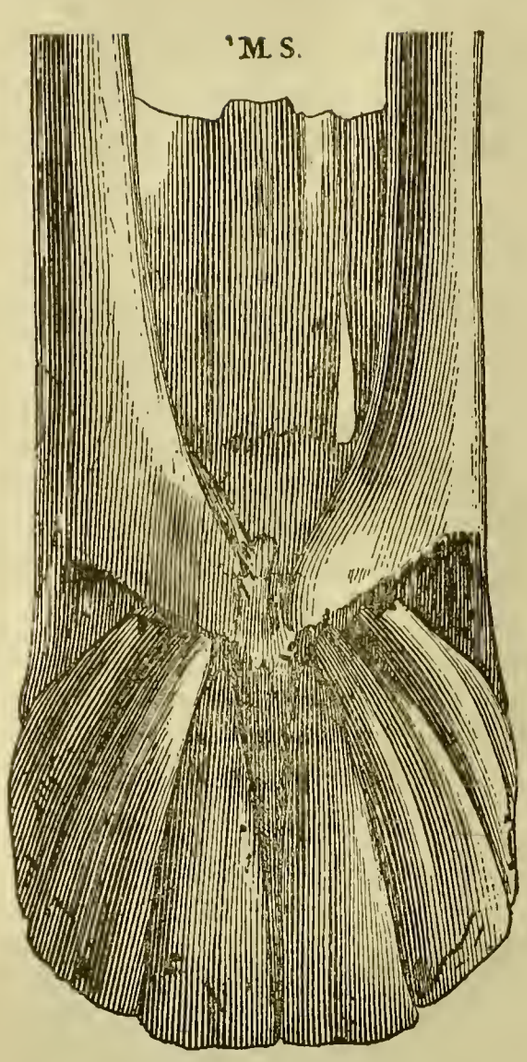


FIG. 288.—Incisive arcades exposed to show the progressive inclination of the teeth in relation to the plane of meeting of the jaws.

tangents *aa'*, *bb'*, *cc'*, drawn through the new points, *a*, *b*, *c*, of contact of the arcades, will no longer be perpendicular to this plane, but will tend, on the contrary, to be more and more parallel to it.

This permits the conclusion that the incidence of the incisors augments in obliquity with age, and that the horizontality of the arcades indicates fairly the age, save, of course, in certain exceptional cases which are sometimes met.

Consequent on this change of direction there are certain modifications which appear at the inferior extremity of the head. The latter, voluminous and rounded in young animals, becomes thin and pointed in the old, whose teeth, often very long, project so much that the lips can scarcely meet and occlude the buccal opening.



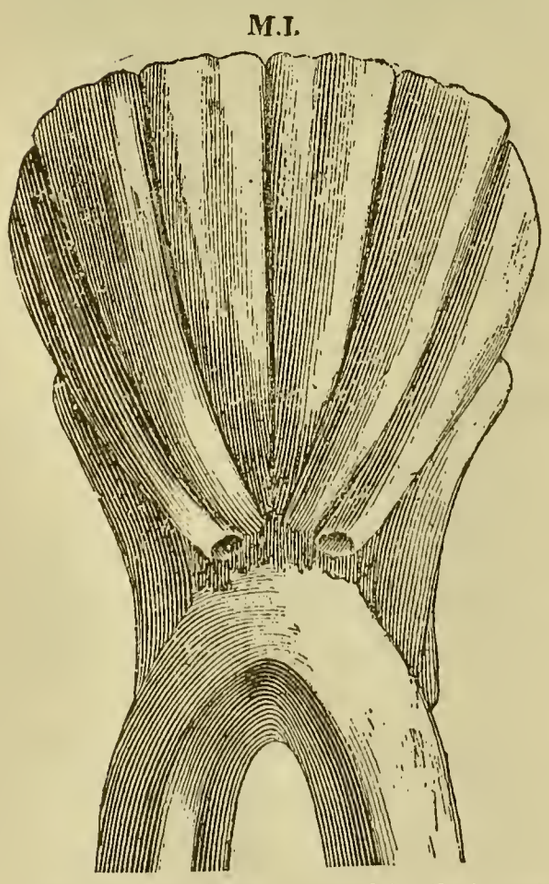


Fig. 289.—Incisors exposed by their anterior face to show their relative inclination towards the median line.

2d. **Direction in Relation to the Median Plane.**—In the young animal (Fig. 289), in consequence of the greater extent of the arcades formed by the surfaces of friction elongated transversely, and also on account of the lateral flattening of the roots, the incisors all appear to be convergent at the level of their roots. They, however, do not remain so. With the progress of age the crown of the tooth is little by little worn off, at the same time that the maxillary bones push them out farther and farther from their alveolar cavities. Under the combined influence of these two causes the roots, which at first were almost contiguous, are gradually separated from each other, and draw towards the entrance of the alveolus, while the tables diminish in width transversely.

The evolution of these facts has for its result a modification of the primitive direction of the incisors: their axis is slowly separated from the median line, so much so that at a given moment it becomes altogether parallel to it (Fig. 284).

Finally, the phenomenon of the gradual expulsion of the teeth from their alveoli continuing to manifest itself in concert with the transverse narrowing of the arcade, there comes a time when the teeth are found converging by their free extremity and diverging by their opposite extremity,—that is to say, inversely disposed in relation to the axis of the jaws. In this case, the intervals separating the pincers from the in-

termediates, and the latter from the corners, are well marked, and enable us to ascertain with the greatest ease the changes which have taken place. To observe this, it suffices to separate the lips of the animal and to examine the mouth from in front.

The following facts result from the preceding phenomenon, concerning the general direction of the teeth :

1st. That the incidence of the arcades increases in obliquity with the age.

2d. That their curvature and their transverse diameter diminish.

3d. Finally, that the roots, at first converging, become parallel, then diverging, while the free extremities approach each other and leave between themselves, at their base, a triangular space occupied by the gum, so much the more exaggerated as the animal increases in age.

The Tusks or Canine Teeth.

Four in number in the adult horse, and situated between the incisors and the molars, the tusks are absent or but little developed in the mare, as a rule. Formerly, those which were provided with canines, called *bréhaignes*, were wrongly considered as being sterile.

Does each one of the two dentitions present canines ?

It is rather difficult to answer this question with precise accuracy. Girard mentions that Rigot and Forthomme have observed deciduous canines. The latter showed him jaws which, independently of these deciduous teeth, presented behind the latter their two replacing teeth stripped of their alveolus. Rigot said that this fact was not rare, and that he had seen it not infrequently in colts three or four years old. As to Girard, he had never witnessed it.

If the teeth of colts be examined, there is constantly found in the two sexes, in the place of the canines, very small teeth which are exceedingly thin and needle-like. Are these the deciduous canines ? This is probable ; but it is certain that if these teeth simulate them in position, they do not at all possess their particular form. The facts of Rigot and Forthomme should therefore be regarded as very exceptional. In the absence of a detailed description, it is not out of place to ask if these were not abnormal instances of double canines. We are rather inclined to adopt this latter opinion, having witnessed a case of this kind in an old ass, of which we will represent the inferior jaw (Fig. 290).

A short time after their eruption the canines have the general form of a cone, and are curved upon themselves in the direction of their length. There is no well-defined limit between the crown and the

root. Almost similar in the two jaws, the inferior are, nevertheless, a little longer and more porous and roughened at the level of their free

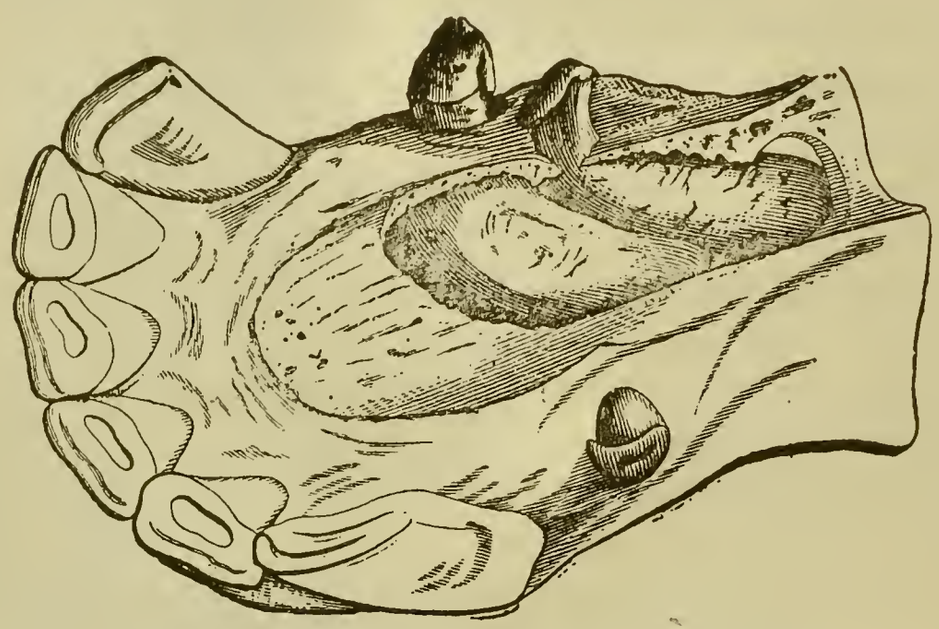


FIG. 290.—Double inferior right canine tooth in the ass.

part. They present for study two faces, two borders, and two extremities.

Faces.—The *external* or *labial* face (Fig. 291, *A*) is convex in both its diameters,—that is to say, from above to below and from before to behind. Its free portion shows very fine striæ, which eventually disappear under the effects of friction.

The *internal* or *lingual* face (Fig. 291, *B*) is less convex than the preceding. It presents, on the crown, two well-marked grooves, the one anterior, the other posterior, which follow the corresponding borders of the tooth. Between the two is found a triangular eminence whose base is confounded with the remainder of the same face.

Borders.—The *anterior* border is convex, the *posterior* concave; both augment in thickness from the free extremity towards the incased extremity.

Extremities.—The *free* extremity or crown of the virgin canine tooth (Fig. 292) terminates in a blunt point, flattened transversely, while the *embedded* extremity, much more voluminous, is occupied by a round opening, which leads into a cavity in the interior of the tooth, terminating in a cul-de-sac. This cavity, of a conical form, contains the pulp. At first spacious, it is gradually obliterated, until it is constituted only by a short and narrow canal. The tusk elongates from its root, which becomes pointed, while the opposite end becomes rounded and blunt from the effects of wear.

But as the canines are not placed in definite relation to each other

at any period of life, the inferior being always more anterior than the superior,[1] this wear is caused by the lips, the tongue, and the aliment.

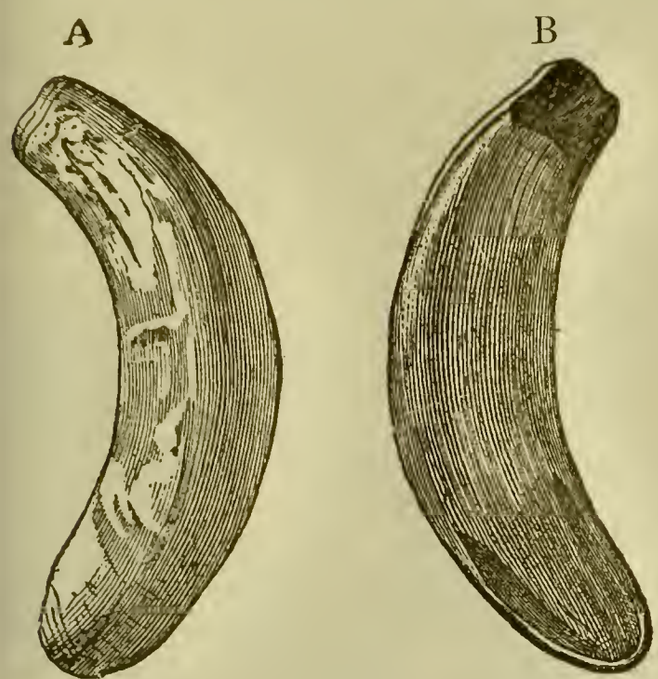


FIG. 291.—Superior right canine tooth.

A. External face. | *B.* Internal face.

FIG. 292.—Longitudinal and median section of the canines.

CS. Superior canine. | *CI.* Inferior canine.

The dental table ultimately shows, in its central portion, a *dental star* having the form of a round spot. The configuration of the internal face likewise becomes effaced.

In proportion as these modifications are produced, the free part diminishes ordinarily in length; sometimes, however, it remains very salient above the gums, even in very old horses.

CHAPTER II.

THE MOLARS.

1. Supplementary Premolars.

THESE teeth (Fig. 270), first recognized by Daubenton,[2] do not exist always. They are present more frequently in the superior than in the inferior jaw, and rarely do they exist in both simultaneously. Girard says that they appear at about the age of ten months, and that their shedding is usually simultaneous

[1] It is very rare to observe these teeth rubbing against each other, but we have, nevertheless, witnessed an example.

[2] Daubenton, Histoire naturelle générale et particulière, avec la description du Cabinet du roi, édition in-4o de l'Imprimerie royale, t. iv. p. 344.

with the eruption of the first permanent molars. Their alveoli are, in fact, placed immediately in front of these teeth; we have, nevertheless, seen examples in the inferior jaw in which the supplementary teeth and the first permanent molars were separated by a space of three centimetres. Finally, they persist sometimes in very aged horses.

Their presence renders the dental formula somewhat variable.

Elongated and slightly curved upon itself in the direction of its length, the supplementary premolar resembles, by the form of its free part, the incisor of a carnivorous animal. It is for this reason that certain authors have given it the name *wolf tooth.* Its incased extremity is unicuspid. One of these teeth, measured in a horse six years old, had a length of 0.025 m.

As to the *posterior supplementary molars,* which Girard has simply mentioned, we have never seen them; it is probable that he has mistaken certain anomalies for such teeth. We will further refer to these anomalies.

2. The Molars Proper.

They form the lateral parts of the dental arcades, and are distinguished, like the incisors, according to their epoch of eruption, into molars of the first and of the second dentition.

We will commence our study with the former.

A.—Molars of the First Dentition.

There are twelve *deciduous milk molars,* or molars of the first dentition: six in each jaw and three on each side. It was believed for a long time, upon the authority of Ruini,[1] that they were only eight in number; Tenon has demonstrated that this is an error.[2]

These teeth, strong and short, have the general form of a quadrangular prism, save the first, which has only three faces.

They present four faces and two extremities.

Faces.—The *anterior* and *posterior* faces, almost plane, show nothing remarkable; but in the first tooth, above as well as below, the anterior face is replaced by a border of no great thickness; it is the same for the posterior face of the third inferior molar.

In the *superior jaw,* the external face, *FE,* has three grooves in the first and two in the second and third (Fig. 293).

The internal face, *FI,* irregular, very slightly concave in the direction of its length, presents gutters much less distinct.

In the *inferior jaw* (Fig. 294), the external face, *FE,* shows, in the middle of its length, a groove which augments in depth and diminishes in width from the first to the third molar.

The internal face, *FI,* almost plane, is irregularly grooved.

Each of the deciduous molars is provided, at the level of its root, with a constriction or *neck* rather well marked and completely encircling the tooth.

Extremities.—1st. *Incased Extremity.*—The inferior molars have two roots, the one anterior, the other posterior. They are strong, convex externally, and

---

[1] Anatomia del Cavallo, by Carlo Ruini, Venice, 1598.

[2] Tenon, loc. cit., p. 60.

concave internally. Each is penetrated by an opening which leads into the interior of the tooth. These roots, sometimes divided into several somewhat narrow points, when they are examined at a period approaching that when they are shed, leave between themselves a mammillated surface which is moulded upon the corresponding extremity of the replacing tooth.

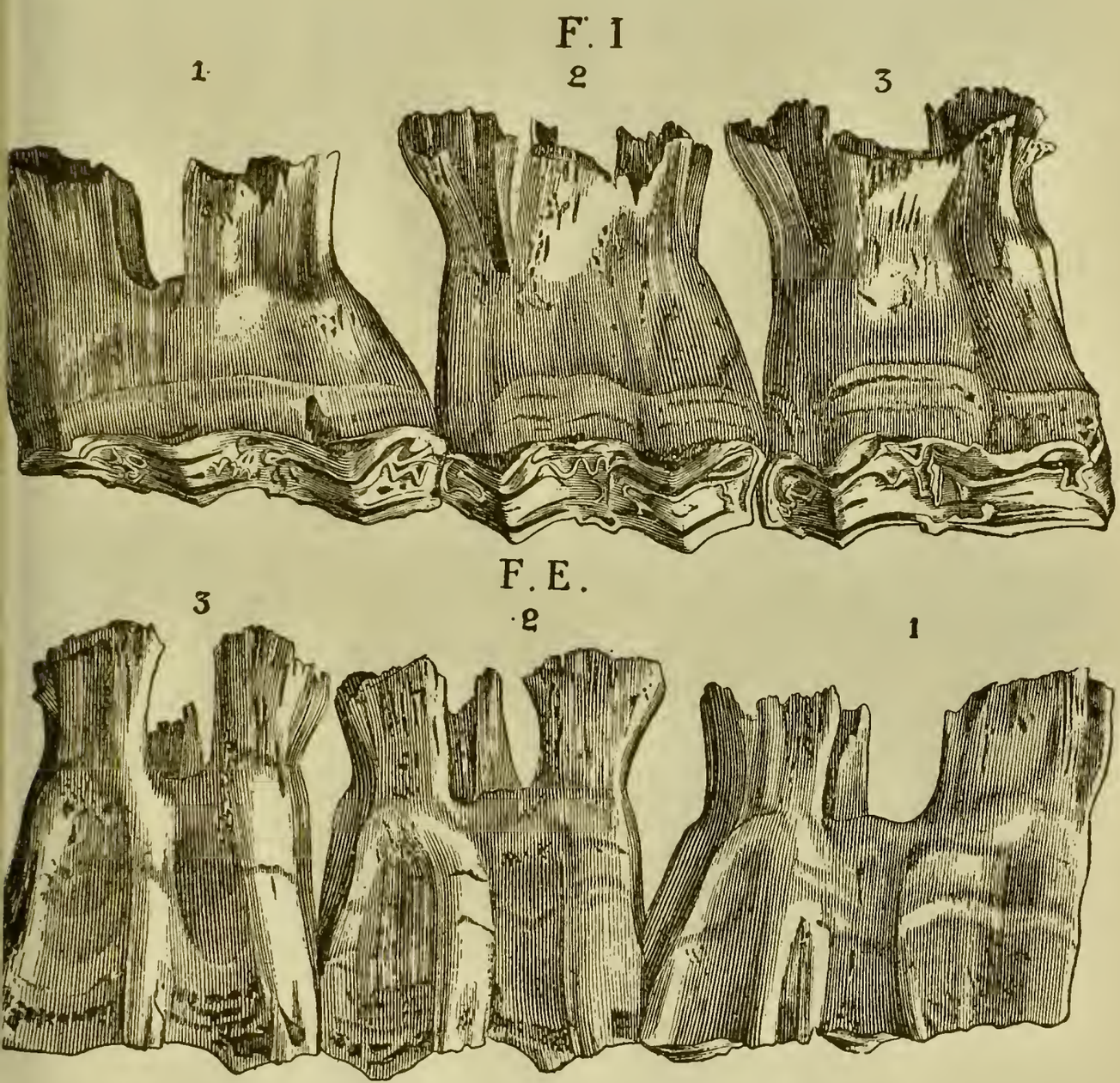


FIG. 293.—The three superior deciduous molars (right side).
FI. Internal face. | *FE.* External face.

All the molars of the superior jaw have three roots: one anterior and two posterior in the first; two external and one internal in the last two. These roots are slightly diverging in such a manner that the tooth occupies more space in the direction of this extremity than in the other.

2d. *Free Extremity.*—The *free extremity*, in the virgin teeth of both jaws, is irregular, covered with eminences and hollow cavities; but the external border is always more salient than the internal in the superior, while it is the contrary in the inferior.

This extremity changes its aspect under the influence of the friction, and ultimately constitutes a surface formed of planes alternately oblique in different

directions, and upon which are outlined in relief the zones of enamel of which we have spoken in connection with the structure of the teeth.

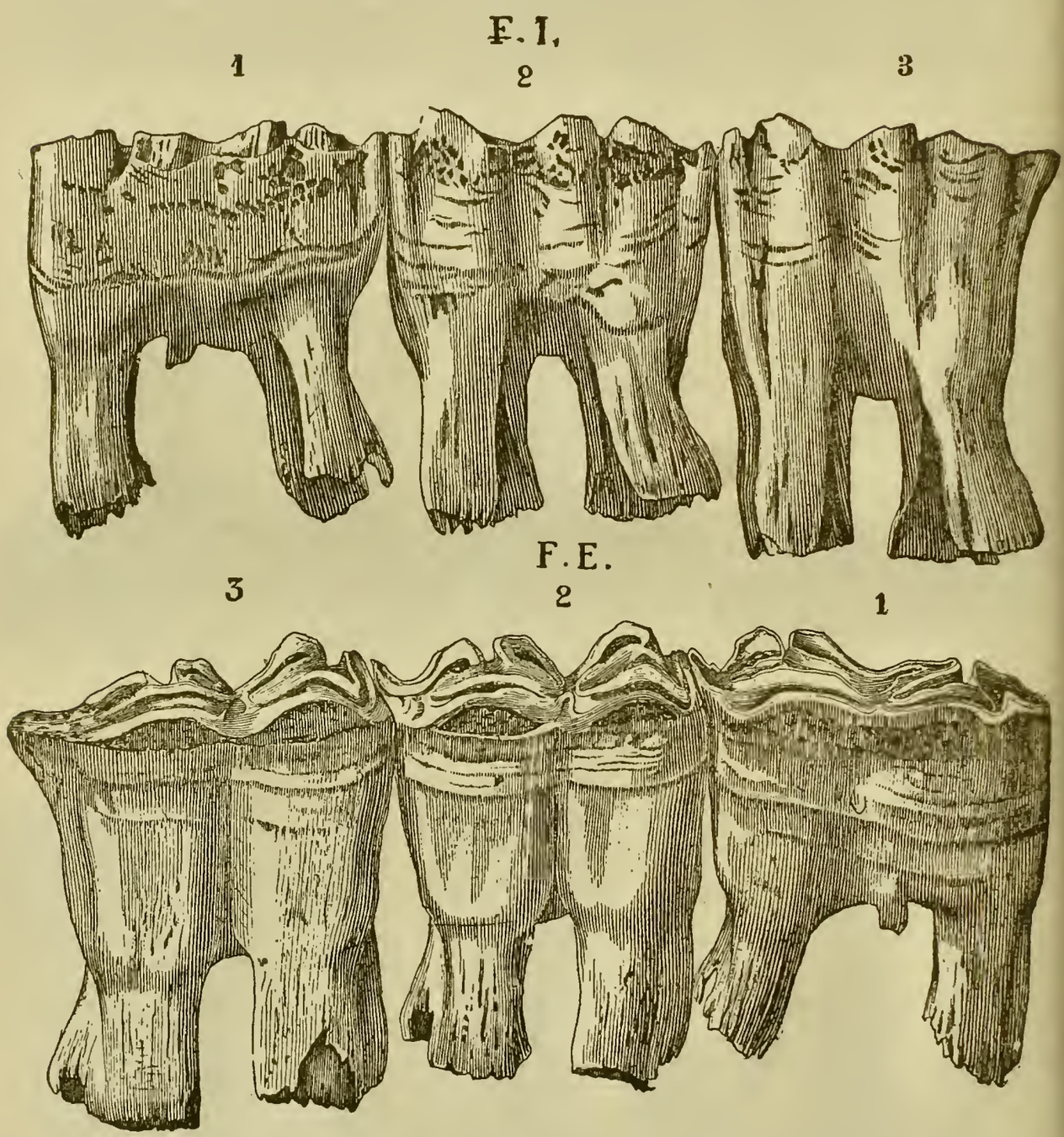


FIG. 294.—The three inferior deciduous molars (right side).
FI. Internal face. | *FE.* External face.

The following are the dimensions of the molars of the first dentition:[1]

(*a*) Thickness from without to within, measured in the middle portion:

	Inferior.	Superior.
1st	0.009 m.	0.021 m.
2d	0.010 m.	0.020 m.
3d	0.012 m.	0.022 m.

(*b*) Length from before to behind:

	Inferior.	Superior.
1st	0.035 m.	0.043 m.
2d	0.032 m.	0.033 m.
3d	0.039 m.	0.035 m.

[1] We only cite these dimensions to give a general idea of them. It is evident that they are subject to variation; but as all our figures are taken from the same animal, it will be known what relations exist among the teeth themselves.

(c) Total length from above to below, measured through the centre:

	Inferior.	Superior.
1st	0.020 m.	0.027 m.
2d	0.021 m.	0.021 m.
3d	0.026 m.	0.026 m.

(d) Length of the roots:

Inferior molars	0.012 to 0.015 m.
Superior molars	0.010 to 0.013 m.

FIG. 295.

A. Transverse section of the inferior jaw, showing the third molar of the first dentition and its replacing one, with the relations which they affect in the alveolus at the moment of eruption.
B. Third inferior molar of the second dentition covered by its milk-tooth.

The free part of the molars, in proportion as the animal advances in age, diminishes in length until finally it becomes a small shell or plate which is moulded exactly upon the extremity of the replacing tooth; the latter is thus, as it were, crowned. The deciduous molars are always expelled regularly at the period of eruption of the permanent molars.

B.—Molars of the Second Dentition.

The **permanent molars**, twenty-four in number (twelve in each jaw and six on each side), are designated numerically, proceeding from before to behind, under the names *first*, *second*, etc. The first three, called *premolars*, always suc-

ceed the milk molars; the last three are also called *hind-molars*, or *persisting molars.*

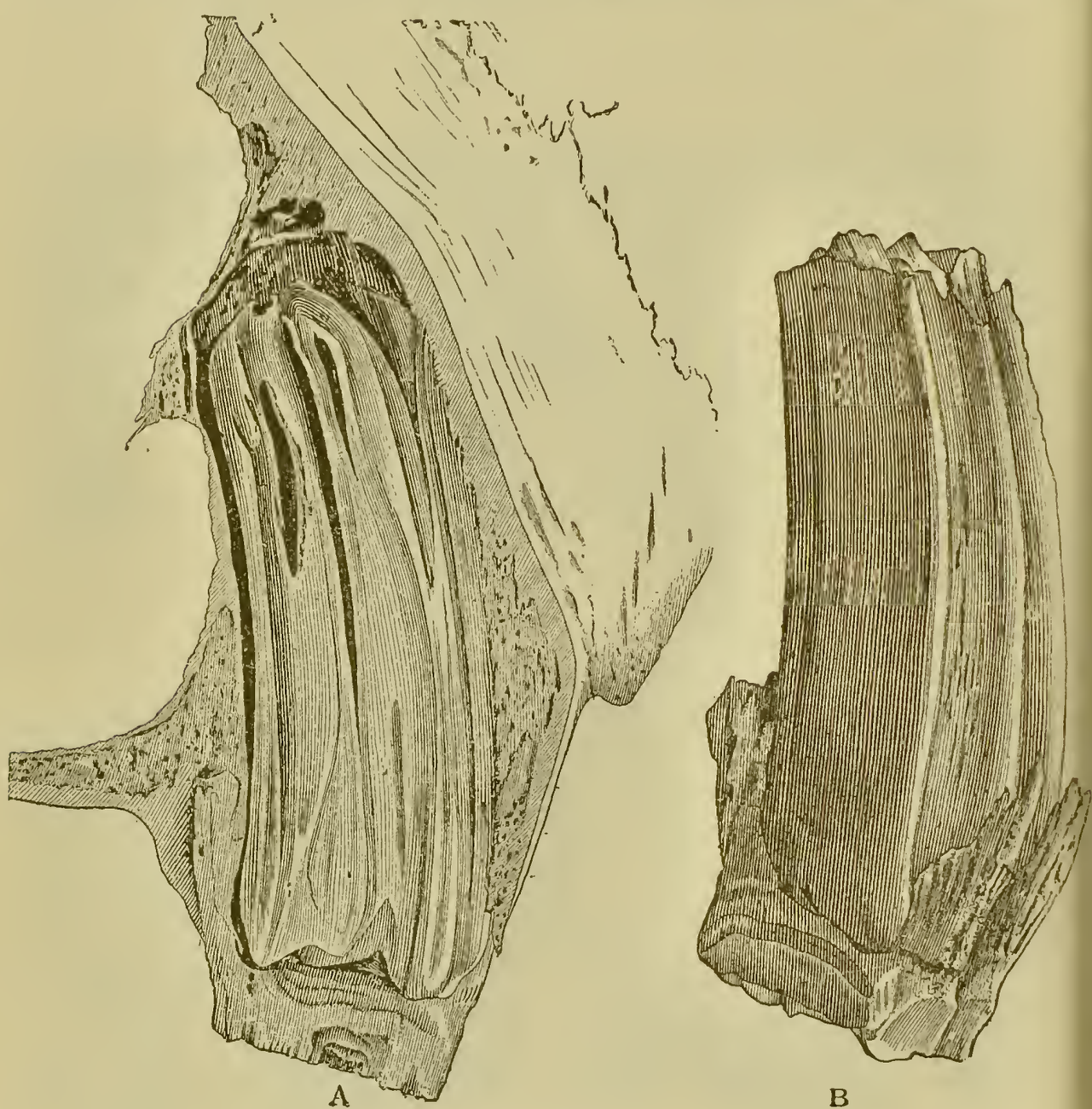


FIG. 296.

A. Transverse section of the superior jaw, showing the third molar of the first dentition and its replacing one, with the relations which they affect in the alveolus at the moment of eruption.
B. Third superior molar of the second dentition covered by its milk-tooth.

This set forms the branches of the dental arcade, which describe a line slightly convex externally in the superior jaw, but straight in the inferior. The superior molar arcade, a little wider than the inferior, surpasses the sides of the latter.

General Characters.—A molar of the second dentition resembles, in general, a quadrangular prism flattened from within to without, save the first and the sixth, which have only three sides. We can recognize four faces and two extremities.

It presents, *in situ*, a free part or crown and an incased part or root: the former projects above the level of the gums; the second is deeply implanted in the alveolus. As there is no line of demarcation between these two parts, it is useless to describe them separately.

a. Superior Jaw.

Faces.—Each of the molars has its *posterior face* almost plane.

In the sixth, however, the face is constituted by a thick border, concave above and behind.

The *anterior face* presents the same general configuration, excepting in the first molar, in which it is constituted by an almost rectilinear border, extending from one extremity of the tooth to the other.

The *external face, E* (Fig. 297), has two deep longitudinal grooves, separated

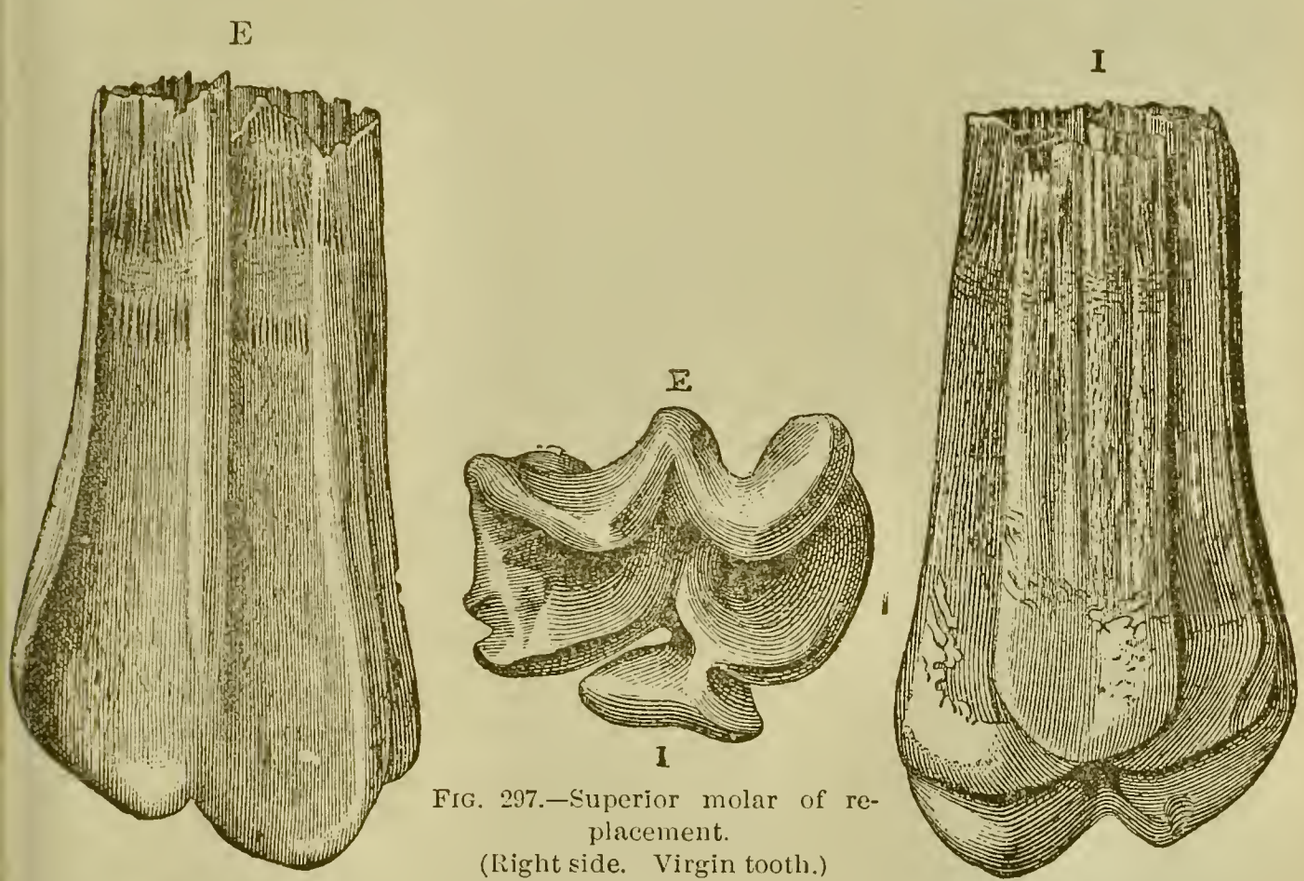


FIG. 297.—Superior molar of replacement.
(Right side. Virgin tooth.)

E. External face. | *I.* Internal face. | *E, I.* Surface of friction.

from each other by a salient ridge. That of the first molar has three of these grooves, separated by two intermediary ridges.

The *internal face, I,* is traversed by two grooves on the first molar and only one for all the others. In the last five this groove is nearer to the posterior face of the tooth.

Extremities.—Of the two extremities, the one is free, the other incased. The latter corresponds, properly speaking, to the roots of the teeth.

The *free extremity,* or *crown, EI,* quadrilateral in general, is triangular in the first and the sixth molars. It does not show the same disposition at all periods of life.

If the *unworn* tooth be first considered, there is seen an irregular surface, somewhat resembling a Gothic 𝔅, whose "branches," turned inward, would circumscribe two deep cavities, more or less filled with cement, according to the subject. To the anterior of these branches is found annexed a secondary loop, which is attached to it by a narrow pedicle. The external border of this surface of friction, always more salient than the internal, is soon worn off, and the primitive

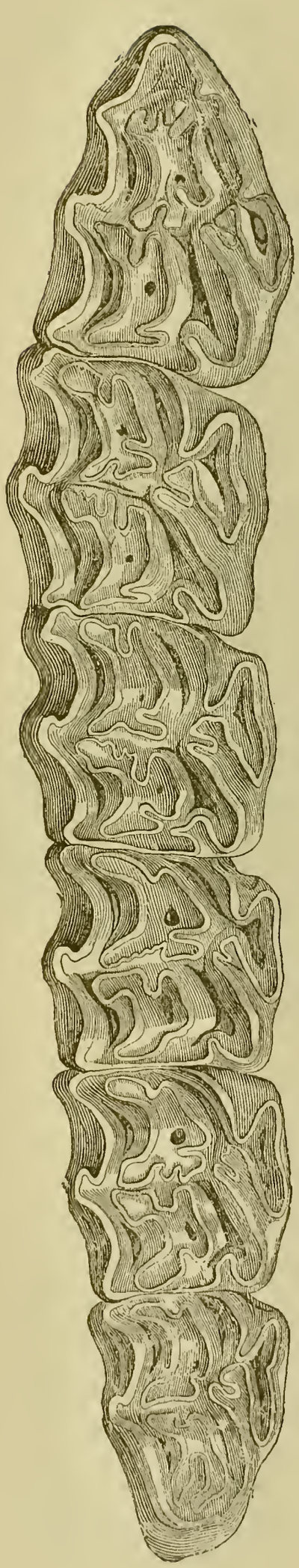


Fig. 298.—Superior molar arcade of the right side of a horse six years old past (the first molar occupies the top of the figure).

cavities also disappear. It is then that a veritable dental table manifests itself; but, far from remaining plane, it soon presents in relief, upon the middle part of the branches of the 𝔅, two transverse crests, sometimes feebly marked, which determine there certain planes, alternately oblique in opposite directions, and render it much more adapted to crush the alimentary substances.

The *incased extremity*, or *root*, is primitively provided with several openings leading into cavities in the interior of the tooth, and containing the pulp, rich in blood-vessels and nerves. Later, a variable number of prolongations develop at this extremity; at this period said extremity is composed of three roots in the first and last molars, and four in all the others. According to Girard, these divisions of this extremity begin to develop at the age of five years, and become more strongly characterized with the advance of age.

Antero-posterior Diameter of the Tables.—If the six molars occupy, for example, a length of 0.166 m., in an antero-posterior sense, it should not be believed that all the teeth share equally in its production. This diameter diminishes, on the contrary, gradually from the first to the sixth, inclusive. In fact, below are the figures which we have obtained from the superior arcade of a horse six or seven years old, whose teeth have been measured in the middle part of their surface of friction (Fig. 298):

1st	0.036 m.	0.166 m.
2d	0.028 m.	
3d	0.027 m.	
4th	0.026 m.	
5th	0.025 m.	
6th	0.024 m.	

Transverse Diameter of the Tables.—The teeth, in this respect, are thicker as they are examined more towards the middle of the arcade to which they belong.

Separation of the Two Branches of the Superior Molar Arcade.—It suffices, in order to give an idea of it, to measure this separation at three points: at the middle and at each extremity.

1st. In front: from the anterior border of the first molar to the corresponding part of the opposite tooth, 0.064 m.

2d. At the middle: from the median emi-

nence on the third molar to the corresponding part of the opposite tooth, 0.108 m.

3d. Finally, behind: from the middle of the posterior border of the sixth molar to the corresponding part of the opposite tooth, 0.097 m.

Direction.—All the superior molars have not the same direction. (See Fig. 270.) If the head be placed horizontally, the first is almost vertical, while the others are curved from below upward and from before to behind in a degree which varies somewhat according to the subjects. However it may be, this direction is always more pronounced in the last than in those which precede it.

Relations.—The superior molars are implanted in their alveoli of a quadrangular form, moulded exactly upon the former, and separated from each other by thin osseous septa, whose thickness augments from below upward. The bottoms of the last three alveoli alone project into the maxillary sinus;[1] those of the first three are, on the contrary, placed in the thickness of the bone. It is for the above reasons that diseases of these teeth sometimes extend to the mucous membrane which lines these sinuses; that the face, upon its lateral planes, appears convex in young horses and concave in old, whose molars are much shorter; finally, that perforation of the superficial table of the superior maxillary bone is produced in the young by the roots of one or other of the first three molars.

Length.—The following table shows the data which we have obtained in this respect from the head of a horse over six years old, whose teeth have been measured from the middle of their external border to the notch which separates the two roots on this side, roots that are sensibly of the same dimensions:

1st	0.054 m.,	plus the	antero-external	root,	= 0.018 m.	= 0.072 m.
2d	0.068 m.,	"	"	"	= 0.012 m.	= 0.080 m.
3d	0.079 m.,	"	"	"	= 0.008 m.	= 0.087 m.
4th	0.065 m.,	"	"	"	= 0.014 m.	= 0.079 m.
5th	0.072 m.,	"	"	"	= 0.008 m.	= 0 080 m.
6th, which presents no roots, has a total length of						0.072 m.

It might almost be said, from the results of these measurements, that the length of the superior molars augments gradually from the first to the third, and then diminishes from the latter to the sixth. This conclusion is, nevertheless, not altogether accurate, for, as the table will show, the fifth is slightly longer than the fourth.

b. Inferior Jaw.

In order to avoid repetitions, the descriptions of the inferior molars will be as concise as possible. These teeth, as we already know, of the same number as in the superior jaw, are also designated by numbers.

They have the same general form, but are less voluminous and, particularly, less thick in their transverse diameter.

Faces.—The *anterior* and *posterior* faces, almost plane, present nothing particular. The anterior face of the first and the posterior face of the sixth are replaced by a slightly-thickened border.

The *external* face, *E* (Fig. 299), is traversed by a longitudinal groove in the first five; the sixth has two grooves on this face. All are limited in front and behind by a more or less rounded ridge.

---

[1] In old horses we have seen the inferior maxillary sinus extend beyond the root of the second molar.

On the *internal* face, *I*, the grooves are more numerous: in the first and sixth three are observed; in the other molars several grooves of variable length and depth are seen.

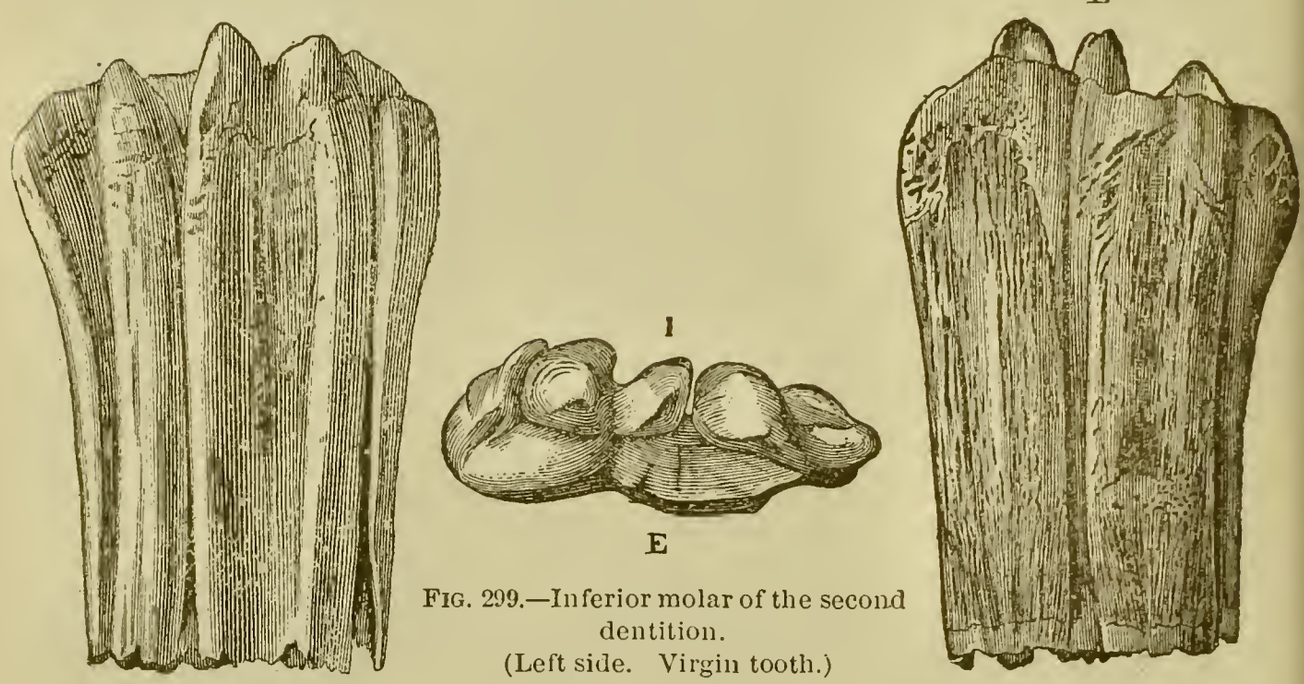


FIG. 299.—Inferior molar of the second dentition.
(Left side. Virgin tooth.)

E. External face. | *I.* Internal face. | *E, I.* Surface of friction.

Extremities.—The *free extremity*, *EI*, triangular in the first and sixth, and quadrilateral in all the others, is less extensive transversely than from before to behind. Irregularly mammillated, elevated at some points and hollow at others, it is always bevelled obliquely from within to without. The branches of the Gothic 𝔅 are turned outward.

The *incased extremity*, bicuspid in the first five, is unicuspid in the sixth. The divisions of the root are divergent, and each contains an opening which penetrates the interior of the tooth where the dental pulp is lodged.

Length.—The length increases from the first to the third, and diminishes from the latter to the sixth. Below are the measurements which we have obtained from the teeth of the head previously mentioned:

1st	0.044 m.,	plus the	posterior	root,	= 0.018 m.	= 0.062 m.
2d	0.063 m.,	"	"	"	= 0.015 m.	= 0.078 m.
3d	0.078 m.,	"	"	"	= 0.009 m.	= 0.087 m.
4th	0.063 m.,	"	"	"	= 0.017 m.	= 0.080 m.
5th	0.067 m.,	"	"	"	= 0.009 m.	= 0.076 m.
6th, which is deprived of roots, has a total length of						0.066 m.

Direction.—After removing the external table of the inferior maxilla in order to expose the teeth, it is easy to recognize that all have not the same direction. Placing the head upon a horizontal plane, the first and sixth are vertical, while the others are more oblique, particularly in the incased extremity, as they are examined more posteriorly.

Relations.—The alveoli, which contain the teeth, have a corresponding form, and are separated from each other by osseous septa (interalveolar septa), quite thick, which become thinner towards the entrance of these cavities.

Their bottoms, as well as the dental canal, are at first in close proximity with the inferior border of the maxillary bones; but as the teeth are shortened and pushed from their sockets by the progress of age, the alveoli diminish in depth and the aforesaid canal is elevated in almost the same proportion. This fact is particularly observable in the first three or four molars. It can be understood, from this, that the border of the inferior maxillary bone will be thicker as the animal is younger, or as the teeth are more deeply implanted in their cavities of reception, and, conversely, thinner as the animal grows older.

Separation of the Two Inferior Molar Arcades.—The inferior molar arcades, considered as a whole, are rectilinear and divergent behind. The following measurements can be easily compared with those which have already been given for the superior arcades of the same horse:

1st. The separation of the anterior border of the first molar from the corresponding border of the opposite tooth was 0.043 m.

2d. The separation on a level with the middle part of the third molar (measured from the outside) was found to be 0.072 m.

3d. Finally, at the level of the posterior border of the last molar it measured 0.077 m.

Extent of the Table of the Six Inferior Molars in the Antero-Posterior Sense.—The total length of the arcade, in the horse in question, was 0.164 m., which was shared by each tooth in particular, as follows:

1st	0.029 m.	0.164 m.
2d	0.027 m.	
3d	0.027 m.	
4th	0.025 m.	
5th	0.025 m.	
6th	0.031 m.	

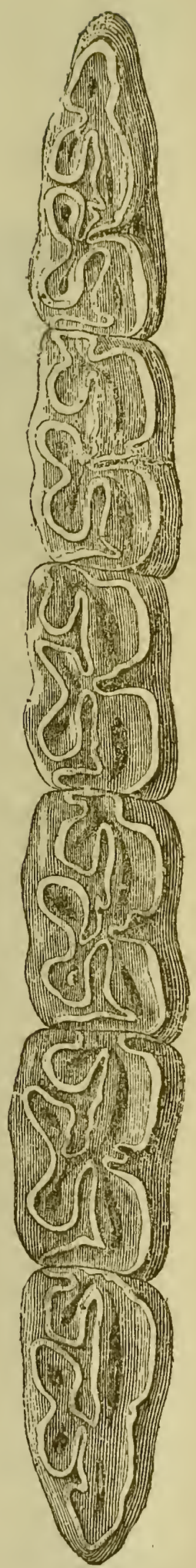


Fig. 300.—Inferior molar arcade of the left side of a horse six years old past (the first molar is at the top of the figure).

C.—Development and Structure of the Molars.

These teeth have the same general organization as the incisors, but the substances constituting them have a very complex arrangement, which must be examined in the molars of both jaws.

1. Development.

Superior Molars.—If a superior molar be viewed in the interior of the sac in which it appears, it is observed that prominent papillæ, two in number, penetrate the thickness of its free extremity, while at the incased extremity only one is found, but which is much more com-

plicated. Besides, the dental sac sends forth into the grooves or notches of the faces, as prolongations, longitudinal folds which continue without interruption with the external papillary system (Fig. 301).

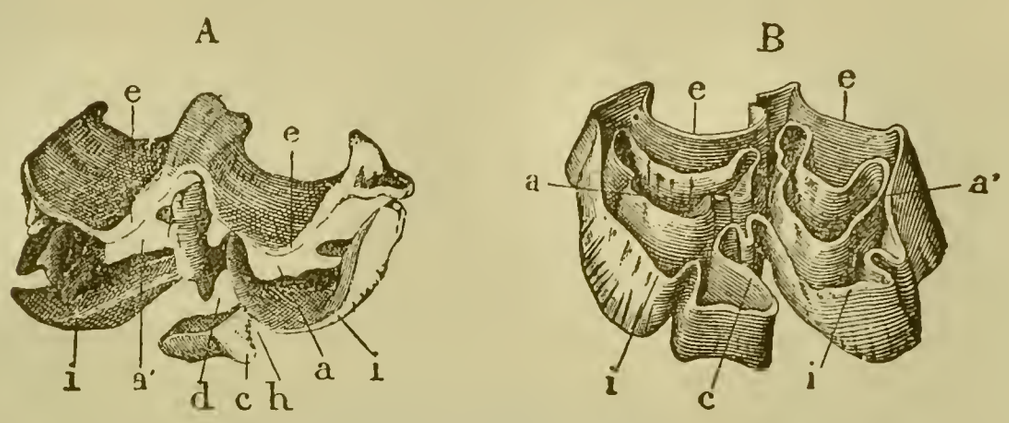


FIG. 301.—Superior right molar removed from its dental follicle.

A. Viewed by its free part:
a, anterior infundibulum.
a', posterior infundibulum.
e, external border of the infundibula.
i, internal border of the infundibula.
c, accessory column of the anterior infundibulum.
B. Viewed by its incased extremity (same letters).

Each external papilla penetrates, from below upward, into the thickness of the tooth, in the same manner as that which forms the central enamel of an incisor tooth. It fills thus a cavity, a veritable infundibulum, at first open at its bottom, and afterwards terminating in a cul-de-sac, when it is completely developed (Fig. 301, *A*: *a*, *a'*).

There are two infundibula on the table: an anterior, *a*, and a posterior, *a'*, absolutely distinct from each other. The cavity of each, almost elliptical, wider from before to behind, is limited by two borders, *e*, *i*, of which the external is the more salient. The internal, *i*, presents, as a singular peculiarity, a sort of column, *c*, flattened or depressed, but rather thick, situated towards the middle part of this border, and annexed to the anterior infundibulum. This column is limited by two grooves, *d*, *h*; the posterior, *d*, forms a sort of re-entering angle forward, and is deeper than the anterior.

The incased extremity (Fig. 301, *B*) does not resemble that which we have described. It presents a number of folds whose disposition appears at first sight complicated, and which have been compared with much correctness, by Bracy Clark, to a Gothic 𝔅.[1]

On careful examination, there can be clearly distinguished: first, the bottom of the infundibula, *a*, *a'*, which we mentioned above, and, around these, an irregular cavity folded upon itself. The latter opens at the incased extremity, but, terminating in a cul-de-sac towards the free extremity, is continued into the accessory column, *c*, of the anterior infundibulum, *a*. A superficial observer might be led to believe in the presence of five cavities,—namely, two close to the external border, *e*, *e*, two close to the internal border, *i*, *i*, and, finally, one for the accessory column, *c*, on the internal face. This would be an error; in fact, there

[1] Bracy Clark, On the Knowledge of the Age of the Horse by his Teeth, 4to, London, 1826. (See Fig. 8.)

is only a single cavity, very diverticulated, in the interior of which the dental pulp is contained.

It will be understood from this that the infundibula of the free extremity correspond to two somewhat conical reflections which are situated one in front of the other and surrounded, outwardly as well as inwardly, by the internal cavity.

Inferior Molars.—The development of the inferior molars is much more simple. In fact, if the free extremity be first examined (Fig. 302, *A*), it is seen

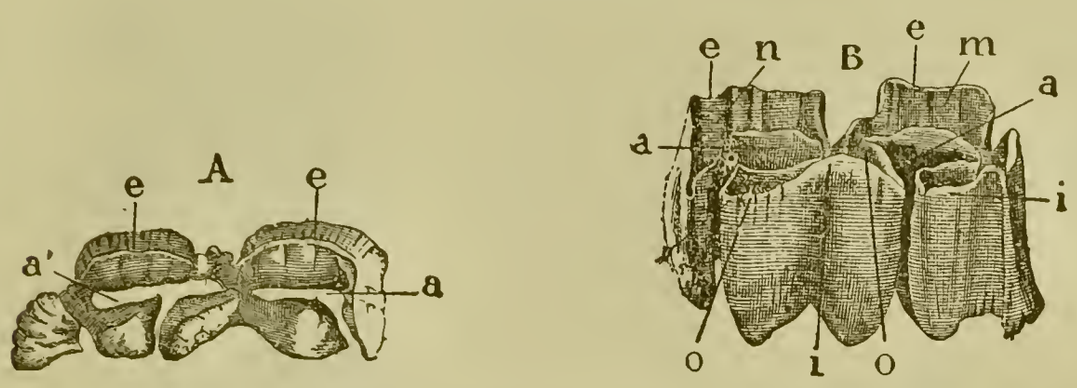


FIG. 302.—Inferior left molar removed from its dental follicle.

A. Viewed by its free extremity:
a, anterior infundibulum.
a', posterior infundibulum.
e, external border of the infundibula.
i, internal border of the infundibula.
B. Viewed by its incased extremity:
m, *n*, *o*, pulp cavity. Other letters same as in *A*.

that the infundibula, *a* and *a'*, are produced by two reflections of the enamel from the internal face towards the centre of the tooth. They are also cleft outwardly throughout their whole length. The cleft of the posterior infundibulum, *a'*, occupies the middle part of this cavity, while that of the anterior, *a*, is situated much more in front. An inferior left molar can thus at a glance be recognized from its homologue of the right side.

The mode of formation of the infundibula of the inferior molars is therefore different from that of the superior. Both result from the penetration of the papillæ, but, in the former, it is through one of its lateral faces that a longitudinal papilla enters the tooth; in the latter, on the contrary, a conical papilla enters through the summit.

Concerning the opposite extremity of the inferior molar (Fig. 302, *B*), there is found a spacious cavity, *m*, *n*, *o*, very much diverticulated, surrounding the periphery of the infundibula, *a* and *a'*, isolating the one from the other, and separating them from the external face, *m*, *n*. The three diverticula, *m*, *n*, *o*, of this cavity, communicating with one another, lodge three prolongations of the internal papilla or the pulp; all terminate in cul-de-sacs at the free extremity of the tooth.

2. Structure.

The molars, like the incisors, are composed of a fundamental substance and two protecting envelopes.

a. The **enamel** constitutes the only element in the tooth when the latter is first developed. Having formed the four faces, it is reflected upon the free extremity (superior molars) to circumscribe the infundibula.

If the table of a superior molar which has already been used be examined, the enamel presents itself in the form of more or less sinuous lines, which have not everywhere the same thickness (Fig. 303, *SG*). These bands are

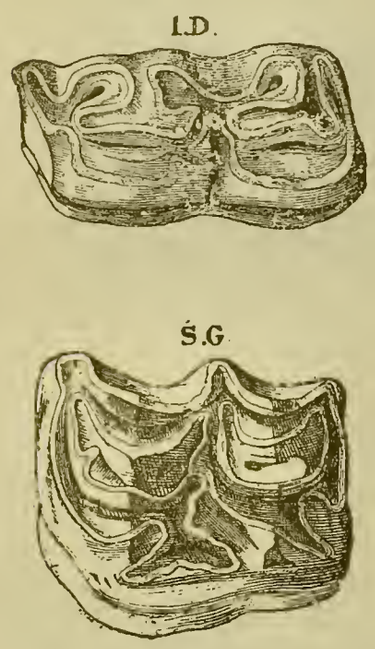


FIG. 303.—*ID*. Table of inferior right molar. *SG*. Table of friction of a superior left molar.

thicker in the tract of two transverse lines which pass through the middle part of the branches of the ℨ, and it is at the points corresponding to these that they stand slightly in relief above the other points. In the inferior molars, it is the parietes of the infundibula which possesses the least thickness (Fig. 303, *ID*).

However it may be, the enamel layer is always relatively rather thin, and undergoes no modifications under the influence of age when once the teeth have acquired their full development.

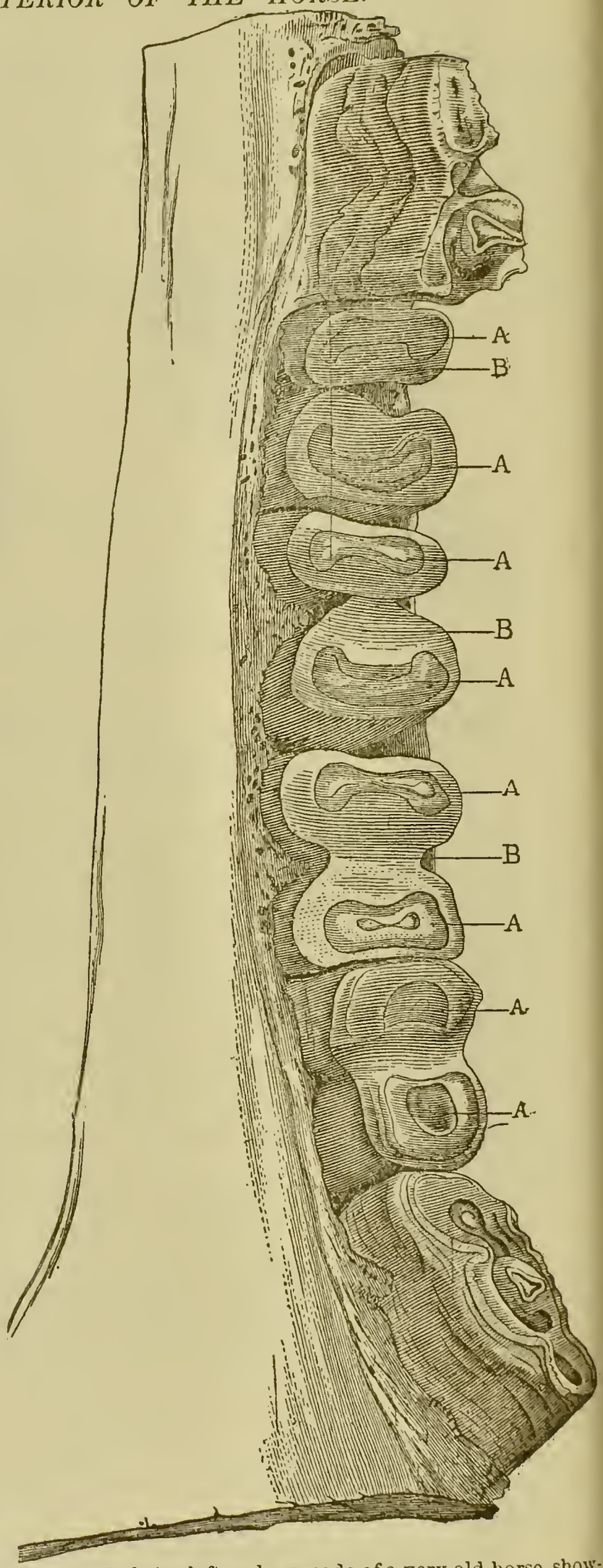


FIG. 304.—Inferior left molar arcade of a very old horse, showing the radical cementation of the middle teeth.

A, *A*, *A*, vestiges of the roots; *B*, *B*, *B*, radical cement. The enamel has disappeared.

b. The **ivory** or **dentine** is deposited little by little upon the internal face of the enamel, and soon fills, from the crown to the roots, the diverticula of the pulp cavity. At first covered by the enamel, it soon becomes, under the influence of wear, an integral part of the dental table. It is seen, in the superior molars, to surround the periphery of the two infundibula and to constitute the basis of the ℬ which their table resembles; upon many of these teeth this comparison is so exact that it is outlined by brown lines, sometimes very dark. In the inferior molars, the dentine is found, so to speak, only upon the outer side of the infundibula; its central parts also have a brown coloration in a large number of subjects.

c. The **cement** is extremely abundant upon the molars. It is this which is directly applied upon the enamel, covers the faces, penetrates the notches, and fills the infundibula. The tooth seems to become covered with it in proportion as it is expelled from its socket, and at the level of its free extremity particularly, for the radicular extremity only carries a thin layer; but when the latter becomes the surface of friction, in very old horses, it excites an abundant secretion of radical cement, which consolidates it into its cavity of reception and considerably augments the area of the dental table, as we have already seen *à propos* of the structure of the incisors (Fig. 304).

It is easy to account for the relations of the different layers which enter into the composition of a molar, by making transverse sections of the latter parallel

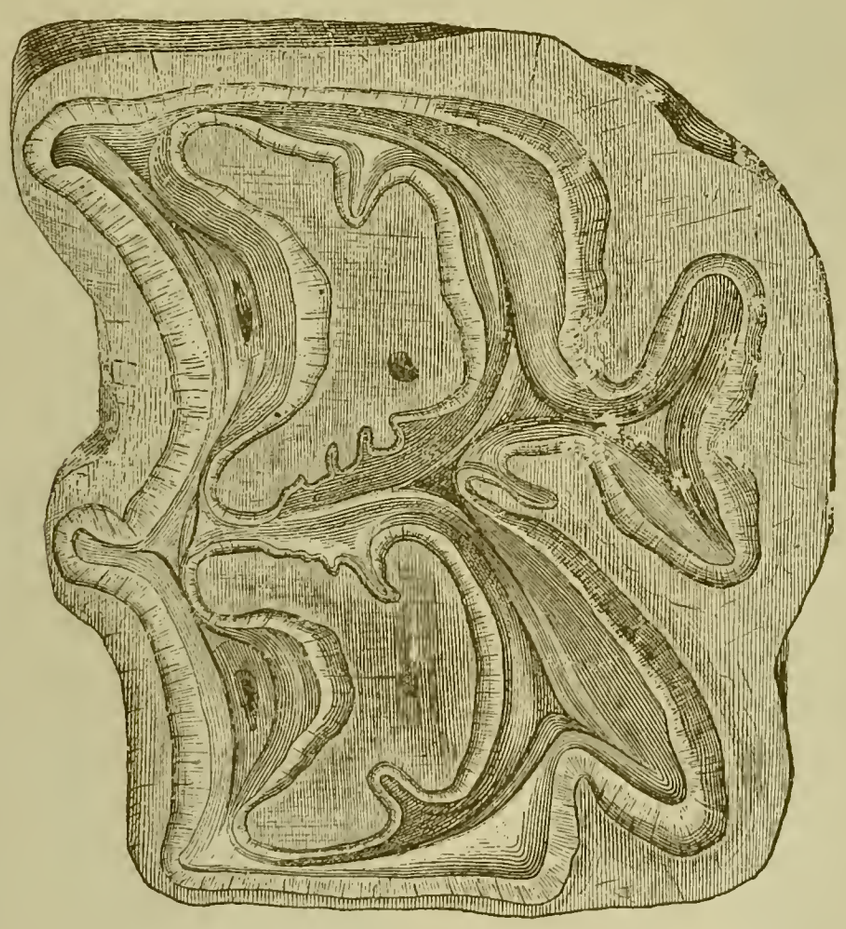


FIG. 305.—Transverse section of a superior left molar (enlarged).

to the surface of friction. The enamel is there outlined by porcelain-white, sometimes vitreous, bands, the cement by very clear coffee-and-milk color, the dentine, finally, by darker coffee-and-milk color, always veined with darker lines.

The accessory branch or loop, in the *superior molars* (Fig. 298), is always

attached to the anterior branch of the 𝔅 by a narrow pedicle of ivory. In this respect there is no exception in the horse. In the *hipparion*, on the contrary, which some evolutionists consider as the ancestor of the preceding, this loop is constantly isolated on the dental table (Fig. 306).

Numerous differences concerning the disposition of the folding of the enamel are also found. They form at times, in certain animals, remarkable wavy or sinuous folds, analogous to those on the tooth of the hipparion. Some anatomists have considered these characteristics as sufficient reasons for the establishment, among equine fossils, of an intermediary species between the hipparion and our actual horse, the *Equus plicidens* (plio-hippus). Whether this distinction is justified or not, the truth is that these enamel plications still exist in many horses of to-day.

In the *inferior molars*, the configuration of the surface of friction differs slightly from that of the superior; Fig. 307 gives a sufficiently accurate idea of this.

Let us recall, in conclusion, that the three substances, enamel, dentine, and cement, are not equally

Fig. 306.—Superior left molar arcade of the hipparion.

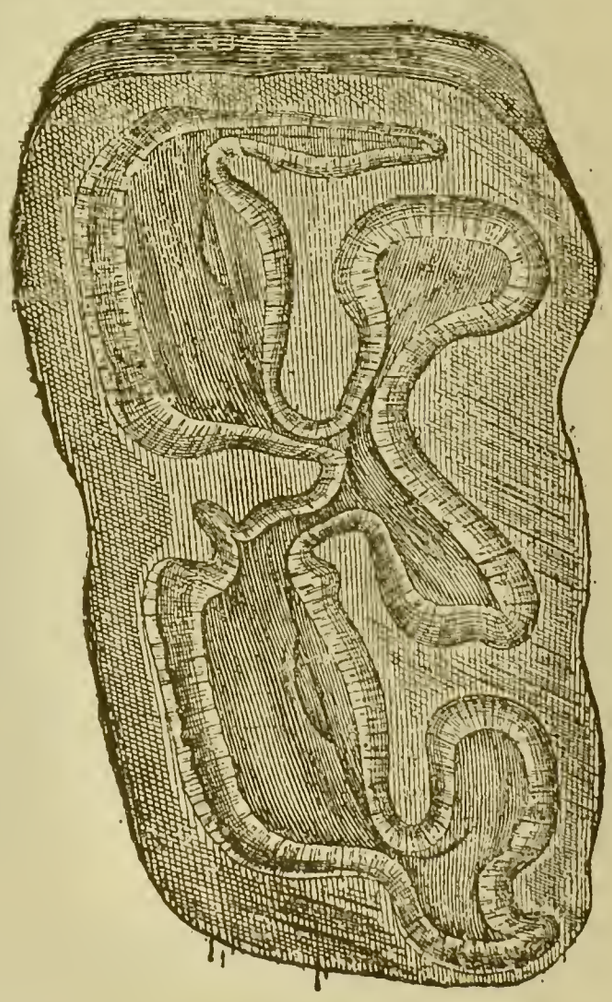


Fig. 307.—Transverse section of an inferior right molar (enlarged).

resistant to wear. Hence the first is always in relief above the second, and the latter above the third. In consideration of this fact, Cuvier rightly said that the molars of the horse were comparable to millstones, which incessantly rub against each other. These asperities of the surface of friction, in fact, render the crushing of the alimentary substances much more complete. In old horses, when the enamel bands have disappeared, these substances can without doubt be bruised or broken, but no longer crushed as before. It is for this reason that digestion is less perfect, and that many of the cereal grains, having resisted the action of the teeth and the digestive juices, still preserve all their germinating properties after having traversed the entire length of the alimentary canal.

CHAPTER III.

ERUPTION OF THE TEETH.

A.—Eruption of the Incisors.

THE eruption of the milk incisors determines, in general, no particular phenomenon susceptible of attracting the attention of persons who care for the young animal, though it is probable that it sometimes occasions depression and inappetency. For this reason these teeth will not especially concern us here.

In proportion as the colt approaches the period in which the second dentition begins to appear, certain peculiarities, which it is important to recognize, take place. Thus the head augments in volume and becomes more prominent upon the sides of the region of the face. This aspect of the face is due to the development of the molars, which are enclosed in the alveoli of the superior maxillary bones.

The effects of this dentition generally seem to pervade the whole organism; the first attacks of periodic fluxion, strangles, and other diseases manifest themselves at this epoch, as Professor Dupuy and other authors have stated. But if these facts are frequent, it does not follow that they can be extended to the generality of young horses.

When the colt arrives at the age at which the adult incisors should make their eruption, it is observed that the milk-teeth have already been shed, leaving vacant the place for the permanent teeth, or they may still remain in place. Let us examine the two cases:

1st. *The Milk-Teeth being shed.*—The spaces which they occupied then present a swelling, tumefaction, and redness, having an exaggerated sensibility, which goes so far as to be painful when the

gum is touched. Soon after, the anterior border of the replacing tooth, which has compressed, thinned, worn out, so to speak, the gum from its deep to its superficial face, gradually appears and perforates the latter by commencing at its internal moiety. This border is not always directed transversely to the median line; it is sometimes oblique from before to behind and from within to without. Little by little the tooth disengages itself from the alveolus, arrives on a level with its neighbors, and, finally, opposes itself to that of the other jaw.

2d. *The Milk-Teeth still in Place.*—The phenomena in this case are less visible. It is not sufficient to make an examination of the incisive arcades by their anterior faces; it is also necessary to separate the two jaws to see if there is any particular evidence showing that the eruption of the permanent teeth is about to take place. It happens, even, in certain cases, that this has already been accomplished for the pincers, as we have observed in the English horse Vade-Mecum. After separating the lips of the horse, only the milk-teeth were perceived, but on opening the mouth, the superior permanent pincers, well developed, and even slightly used, were discovered, while the inferior still remained covered by the gums.

We will remark, in conclusion, that *nearly always* the eruption of the superior incisors is earlier than that of the inferior. In both jaws it takes place by pairs, commencing with the pincers and terminating with the corners.

Causes which may hasten or retard the Eruption of the Incisors of the Second Dentition.—We cannot take under consideration here the extraction of the deciduous teeth, a fraudulent practice which we will, however, study separately; but will speak only of the physiological causes which may hasten or retard the eruption of the permanent teeth.

According to Girard,[1] the precocity of the *race*, the vigor of the *temperament*, and abundant *assimilation* are capable of hastening the eruption of the incisors of the second dentition, and of *advancing* it three or four months.

According to Traeger,[2] *pregnancy* can *retard* this eruption for a year, notably that of the corners:

All the pregnant mares, born in 1841, were no more advanced in relation to the dentition than the unimpregnated ones which were foaled in 1842; while other mares, also born in 1841, but which were

---

[1] Girard, loc. cit., p. 58.

[2] Traeger, Magazin für die gesammte Thierheilkunde, 1846, in Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, 1849, p. 136.

not impregnated, presented, without exception, the teeth of a five-year-old.

One of our *confrères* in the army, M. Bizard, has communicated to us an observation of the same nature: a half-bred mare, foaled on the 26th of May, 1875, and served on the 8th of May, 1880, when five years of age, was still provided with her four corner milk-teeth; the latter were only shed from the 18th to the 30th of July, 1881, —that is to say, at the age of six years and two months.

Facts of this nature are undoubtedly more frequent than is believed, in consequence of the difficulty which is experienced in obtaining exact information as to the age of the subjects. If these facts were to be made a criterion in this connection they would tend to increase rather than diminish the age of pregnant mares.

Girard[1] has equally noticed the action of the *climate.* The horses of *Southern* France, raised in their native country, are more precocious than those of the *North;* in them the eruption of the permanent teeth takes place sometimes in the early part of September, and most often at the beginning of October; they are always entirely through the gums by the middle of December.

In the cold climates of the North, in Normandy, for example, it takes place normally only at the beginning of January, February, March, and even April. In the Limousin district, it is rarely terminated before the month of January. These variations depend so much upon the climate that the transportation of colts from cold into warm countries hastens the eruption; it is retarded in a contrary case, and this so much the more as the difference in the temperature is greater.

Finally, Bernard,[2] Magne,[3] and M. Sanson[4] have advanced the opinion that the *race-horse,* always very strongly nourished, constitutes an exception to the principles of Girard. Our noted colleague, M. Toussaint,[5] has furnished the proof that the thoroughbred horse is, in this respect, not different from the common draught-horse. Our observations fully confirm his.

That there are subjects presenting exceptions to these general

---

[1] Girard, loc. cit., p. 60.

[2] Bernard, Guide des acheteurs et des vendeurs d'animaux domestiques, Toulouse, 1845, p. 175.

[3] Magne, Mémoire sur l'allaitement et le sevrage des jeunes animaux. See Bulletin de l'Académie de médecine, année 1876, p. 965.

[4] A. Sanson, Le cheval de Solutré; memoir read at the Soc. anthropologique, dans sa séance du 15 Octobre, 1878.

[5] Toussaint, De l'âge de chevaux de course, au point de vue de la doctrine de la précocité. See Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, année 1872, p. 992.

laws, that the eruption of the incisors of the adult is premature in some and slow in others, we will willingly admit. Nevertheless, this does not appear to us to be exclusively the result of the fact that they belong to such or such a race, possess such or such a temperament, or, finally, that they are abundantly or poorly nourished. We will cite, in this connection, the example which Jules Goubaux, veterinarian at the depot of stallions at Blois, showed us in 1857: it was a small horse of a *common race*, which had placed all the incisors of the second dentition in the course of the same year. This early eruption, extremely rare in the horse, occurs less seldom in the bovine and in the ovine species. It must depend upon very diverse causes, which, in our opinion, still remain to be determined.

B.—Eruption of the Canines.

The eruption of the canine teeth is of little utility in the determination of the age: first, because it is very variable; secondly, because these are absent in the majority of mares.

The eruption of the tusks is preceded, accompanied, and followed by the same inflammatory phenomena as those which concern the incisors. According to Girard, there is nothing regular about it. Sometimes these teeth exist at three years; at other times they only appear at six; in general they appear at four years. The indications which can be drawn from their state are therefore very uncertain.

C.—Eruption of the Molars.

In proportion as the animal advances in age the molars of the first dentition, as a result of wear, become shorter and shorter, reduced somewhat to the state of small, loosened plates, which envelop, as we have seen, the corresponding extremity of those of the second dentition, and are held only very imperfectly in their alveoli. Their asperities, wounding the internal face of the cheek, sometimes cause abnormal movements of the jaws. The animal does not eat in the ordinary manner: this is what attracts the attention and leads to an examination of the interior of the mouth.

It is good practice, under such circumstances, to extract these teeth so as to favor the eruption of the replacing ones; an easy operation, and one which veterinarians in breeding districts practise very often.

The last three molars of each jaw, or the hind-molars, also appear one after the other; but, situated very deeply in the interior of the mouth, it is difficult to observe well their eruption.

Eruption of the Molars in Particular.—We knew already that the opinions of Girard concerning the period of this eruption were contested by those veterinarians who had had occasion to examine them; hence we applied to one of our collaborators, Lecellier the elder, veterinarian at Yvetot. This distinguished practitioner, who for a long time has directed his attention to the dental apparatus of the horse, has succeeded in ascertaining some facts of great importance.

1st. *Molars of the First Dentition.*—According to Girard, the first two deciduous molars have generally pierced the gums at birth, or, at the latest, from three to four days after; as to the third, it should always appear at the end of the first month.

Lecellier[1] and Mayhew[2] assert, on the contrary, that these teeth all exist at birth, and that they can serve for mastication at the end of thirty or forty days.

2d. *Molars of Replacement and Persistent Molars.*—The observations of Girard, Lecellier, and Mayhew are not in accord upon this point; they differ especially as to the period of eruption of the sixth molar. We have presented them in the following table:

Designation of the Teeth.	Period of Eruption.		Designation of the Teeth.		Period of Eruption, after Lecellier.
	After Girard.	After Mayhew.	Inferior Molars.	Superior Molars.	
4th.	10 months.	12 months.	4th.	4th.	10 to 12 months.
5th.	20 "	18 to 24 months.	5th.	5th.	20 to 24 "
1st.	30 to 32 months.	"	1st and 2d.	1st.	30 to 36 "
1st and 2d.	"	36 months.	6th.	6th.	32 to 36 "
2d and 3d.	36 months.	"	3d.	2d.	40 to 42 "
6th.	4 to 6 years.	"	3d	3d.	44 to 48 "
6th and 3d.	"	60 months.			

According to Lecellier, the inferior deciduous molars are constantly shed before the superior, while the eruption of the permanent molars takes place in both jaws at the same time.

[1] Lecellier père, note communiquée.
[2] Mayhew, loc. cit., pp. 69, 70, 71, 72, and 82.

PART II.

DETERMINATION OF THE AGE.

CHAPTER I.

DURATION OF LIFE IN THE HORSE.

According to Buffon,[1] "the duration of the life of horses is, as in all the other species of domestic animals, proportional to the duration of their period of growth or increase. A man, in whom this period is fourteen years, can live six or seven times this space of time,—that is to say, ninety or a hundred years; the horse, whose period of increase continues throughout four years, can live six or seven times as long,—that is to say, twenty-five or thirty years."

According to Bourgelat,[2] "one can suppose the ordinary life of a horse to continue eighteen or twenty years, the number of those which surpass this time being very small. Aristotle observed that horses kept in stables live a much shorter time than those which run at large; the state of stabulation and domestication are well calculated to produce some differences. Athenæus and Pliny claimed that horses have been known to live sixty-five and even seventy years. Augustus Nipheus also speaks of the horse of Ferdinand I. as a septuagenarian horse, but these last observations are only exceptions, similar in the equine species to those which sometimes take place in the human species. . . ."

"The life of mares," says Hartmann,[3] "is ordinarily longer than that of the males. This observation, already made by Aristotle (Hist. Animal., vol. v.), corresponds to that made at different periods upon the human species, in which the females generally live longer than the males.

"It is an indubitable sign that a stud-horse is of a good race, or at

---

[1] Buffon, Histoire naturelle générale et particulière, t. iv. p. 226.
[2] Bourgelat, Traité de la conformation extérieure du cheval, 2e éd., Paris, 1775, p. 286.
[3] Hartmann, Traité des haras, etc., translated from the German, Paris, 1788, p. 32.

least that he is healthy, if he be slow in attaining his maturity. One that only ceases to grow at six or seven years of age will, barring particular accidents, be of good service for twenty years or more, and can even live forty years and longer. On the contrary, one which reaches full growth in four years, will live at most only twenty or twenty-five. Heavy and lymphatic horses, which attain their full growth in still less time, are also shorter lived, and are already old at the age of six or seven years.

"Instances of an age of thirty or forty years would not be so rare among these animals if the brutality of men did not shorten their lives, if they were less abused, and if they were better cared for. Commonly, one has not the least regard for a horse after he has attained a certain age; one endeavors to dispose of him in order to save the expense of his keep; and his ordinary recompense, after having rendered the best services for a fair length of time, is to be worked to a cart and reserved for the most severe labor, or to be sent to the knacker."

This passage, written in Germany, is equally applicable in France: it proves that men act everywhere the same towards the animals, auxiliaries in their work.

Among the principal causes which modify the longevity we will cite the slowness of the development, the size, the service, and the care.

We believe that there are precocious *individuals* and not precocious *races*. Nevertheless, agreeing with the opinion of some authors, we will admit that certain races live longer, and that the duration of life is in proportion to the time which the animal requires to reach his maturity, although until the present no one has furnished proof of it.

However it may be, H. Bouley has endeavored to demonstrate the foundation of this opinion. "There are," says he, "tardy races and precocious races. In the latter, the precocity results from the combined action of heredity and of the alimentary regimen, so that the organic formation is effected in a hurried manner, so to speak, in the subjects which compose them, which causes an earlier maturity; whence it follows that the duration of the first period is shortened, and, as a fatal consequence, that of their life, for the more rapid processes of growth impressed upon their organism have no other effect, in view of the industry which produces them, than to hasten the moment of their death." [1]

---

[1] See Nouveau Dictionnaire pratique de médecine, de chirurgie et d'hygiène vétérinaires, t. i., année 1856, art. "Ages," p. 189.

Concerning the *size*, it appears to us that the life of small horses is longer than that of large ones, but it would be very perplexing to give the explanation of this fact.

The *service* produces its principal effects through the more or less intense fatigue and wear which it occasions. Certain subjects have such a quiet existence and such good hygienic surroundings that they often attain a very advanced age. Those which inhabit the large industrial centres live under entirely different conditions. There, more than anywhere else, the services at a fast gait, which exact frequently-repeated violent efforts, the prolonged duration of the daily work, the inclemencies of the weather, etc., exhaust the vitality, predispose the system to diseases, and cause premature death. Hence, for opposite reasons, horses kept in the country attain a more advanced age than those in cities.

The *care* received from man has likewise a great influence. Bad treatment, privation of nourishment, insufficiency of the latter and its poor quality, do not permit the necessary reparation of the incessant losses due to the work, and shorten the duration of the services.

To recapitulate, it will be understood that this question cannot be determined in a very precise manner: the causes which tend to complicate the subject are too numerous, and yet it is necessary to take cognizance of them. One horse is old, worn out, at the age of twelve years; another still performs his work at twenty or twenty-two.

Be this as it may, the following are some remarkable examples of longevity:

One of our friends, M. Laurent, has sent us the jaws obtained from horses which had lived *forty-two*, *forty-three*, and *forty-nine* years. We have known several which had passed *thirty-five* years. Finally, we have seen, in 1845, at the Petite-Villette, a horse which had served in a regiment of cuirassiers during the Russian campaign in 1813. If, at the beginning of the campaign, this animal was six years of age, he must, therefore, have been *thirty-eight* at the time when we saw him.

It is rare to observe such advanced age, because owners generally dispose of the subjects whose work becomes insufficient. Rather than deliver them to the slaughter-house, the proprietor sells them ordinarily for a low price, and it is then that they enter upon the most pitiable existence which can be imagined. Financial interest and sentiment are not always in accord!

CHAPTER II.

THE PARTS TO BE EXAMINED FOR THE DETERMINATION OF THE AGE.

However little one may be accustomed to the handling of horses, it is not difficult to distinguish the young from the old. In the very aged white hairs appear upon the region of the temples, around the eyes, the nostrils, etc., when the robe is dark-colored; the inferior extremity of the head is more pointed; the lateral parietes of the face are depressed. Besides, a roach-back, alterations of the axes of the members, and blemishes of the members also denote a variable degree of wear, often in a certain relation with the duration of this degenerated existence. Every one is able to observe these facts; but there are persons who flatter themselves that they are able to estimate the age of the horse by the sole examination of the jaws, or by other procedures of equally trifling importance. It is upon these pretended means that our attention will be arrested for an instant, to dispose of them once for all, and warn the reader against those individuals who put them in practice.

1. **Examination of the Jaws.**—We know that the teeth are so much the more deeply incased in their alveoli as the animals are younger. The teeth, in fact, are little by little pushed from their sockets in order to compensate for the losses occasioned by the friction of mastication, at the same time that the two tables of the maxillary bone are drawn towards each other. It results from this that the free border of the jaws becomes thinner with the progress of age. Nevertheless, the recognition of this fact is incapable of furnishing the least precise indication. With prolonged practice, we can thus distinguish young horses from old horses, but we doubt whether such an examination does not ordinarily expose one to error.

2. **Raising of the Skin of the Forehead or of the Cheek.**—"One of the signs by which a horse that is old can be recognized consists in pinching, between the index finger and the thumb, the skin of the forehead, raising it with the fingers from the parts below, and then suddenly letting go; if this skin then quickly returns to its place and presents a very smooth surface, as it did before, the animal will be very good to serve as a stallion, etc."[1]

---

[1] Ibn-el-Awamm, Le livre de l'Agriculture, translated from the Arabian by J. J. Clément Mullet, Paris, 1867, t. ii., 2e partie, pp. 27 et 58. (This book appears to have been written in the twelfth century of the Christian era.)

Aristotle recommended this same procedure, but he preferred the skin of the lips to that of the forehead.[1] "If," says he, "in raising the skin from the lips, it is promptly retracted, the animal is young; if it remains wrinkled for a long time, he is old."

3. **Examination of the Nodes of the Tail.**—The practice of this ancient procedure, upon which Minot, one of our associates, has particularly insisted, is no more positive than the preceding.

What Minot[2] called *nodes* or *knots* are nothing more than the prominences formed upon the lateral surface of this appendage by the transverse processes of the first coccygeal vertebræ. The first of these nodes should appear between thirteen and fourteen years, should be altogether distinct at fourteen and one-half years, and should show a depression behind at fifteen years. The second should be distinct between seventeen and eighteen years, and the third at twenty-one years.

These lateral projections of the coccygeal vertebræ are, perhaps, most marked in very emaciated subjects, but their prominence only appears to indicate this to us. We likewise consider the caudal examination as being useless.

4. **Examination of the Teeth.**—This is the only positive examination. It comprises two steps:

1st. The examination of the incisors upon their anterior surface.

2d. That of their tables, of the tusks, and of the molars.

First Step.—The observer stations himself on the left side; the two lips, seized with the open hand, are separated from each other. If the animal offer any resistance, the right foot is raised without being given a point of support, and, if necessary, he is subdued by the application of a twitch to the ear.

It is then easy to recognize:

a. If the incisive arcade is composed of teeth of the first or of the second dentition, or of those belonging to both.

b. If the teeth are normal in number.

c. If they have the normal situation, direction, and dimensions.

d. If they correspond with one another reciprocally.

e. If their anterior face and their free border are intact.

f. If, finally, they have not been subjected to fraudulent practices.

---

[1] Aristotle, Hist. anim., t. i. p. 401.

[2] J. Minot, Appréciation des chevaux d'après les caractères du pouls et l'examen des formes extérieures, Paris, 1850, p. 244.

The existence of these facts having been ascertained, the observer releases the lips and prepares for the second step.

Second Step.—The left hand is applied upon the nose to prevent the horse from advancing; the right is introduced into the mouth and seizes the tongue in the manner already indicated (Fig. 25). This procedure must be executed with gentleness, as before stated, for the brutal tractions exercised upon this organ are painful and often incite resistance from the animal.

It suffices, in most instances, to insert the index and middle fingers into the interdental space and separate these two digits in order to cause the animal to open his mouth; the inferior lip is lowered with the thumb; as to the left hand, it is kept in position upon the nose.

The observer must then fix his attention:

Upon the incisors of the two jaws.

Upon the canines.

Upon the molars.

Relatively to the incisors he will observe:

a. Their form and the details of their dental table.

b. Their direction and their length.

c. The state of freshness of the corners.

Concerning the canines, he will examine:

a. Their freshness.

b. Their degree of wear.

c. Their direction and their length.

Finally, the examination of the molars must be made upon the two sides, the tongue being grasped by the left hand and the right hand successively, to expose the corresponding arcades. With the hand which remains free one or other commissure will be separated outwardly. If the horse offers any resistance, he should be backed into a corner and the head kept in an elevated attitude by an assistant.

This examination is important, for an abnormal condition of the molars prevents the animal from masticating properly, which diminishes his vitality and his resistance to fatigue. It will reveal, therefore:

1st. The number of the molars and the dentition to which they pertain.

2d. The state of their surface of friction.

3d. Their length and their direction.

4th. Finally, the integrity of their substance, the state of the gums and of the cheeks.

CHAPTER III.

THE CHARACTERS FURNISHED BY THE TEETH.

At the point at which we have now arrived, is not the reader justified in asking why we have led him into the details of so minute an anatomical description? Would it not be better, after a summary exposition of the construction of a tooth, to enter immediately upon what we appropriately call the *characters of the age?* Evidently not, as he will hereafter comprehend.

The effects of the friction, pertaining to the dental apparatus, are *slow, insensible,* and *variable,* three factors which render the wear difficult of appreciation. Incessantly cleansed, rubbed, polished, worn, and displaced by the action of the saliva, the lips, the cheeks, the tongue, the aliment, and the muscles of mastication, the teeth, which always seem to the eyes of the superficial observer to have the same appearance, nevertheless modify their form at every movement. It is for this reason that we have thoroughly studied the configuration, the structure, the mode of eruption, and, in a word, the manner of existence. The wear resulting from these diverse influences is so feeble, when we endeavor to trace it during a short interval, that it necessarily implies, in order to be intelligently recognized, a profound anatomical knowledge. The theoretical details, which have been the theme of the preceding chapters, are consequently justified.

Restrictions to be made.—Does this mean that we shall necessarily obtain invariable indications for the determination of the age? By no means, for the variety of the conditions of existence of the animal is an influence which the tissues, apparently the most unchangeable, obey like the organism itself. If, for example, the alimentary substances are different in nature, texture, origin, and physico-chemical properties, the functional activity of the tooth will be proportionally increased or diminished, and its resistance to the deteriorating agents will be more considerable or more feeble. Besides, identical results will manifest themselves if the tooth does not possess, in all subjects, the same configuration, hardness, inclination, volume, and dimensions. Moreover, the horses of the North do not *mark* their teeth like those of the South, East, and West; those of the mountainous countries like those of the plains; those of the finer races like those of the common races, etc. As these two sorts of variations, in fact, always exist face

to face, it follows that the *characters of the age can never be formulated upon absolute principles.* To endeavor to establish, upon this point, some invariable principles would be systematizing beyond all rational bounds and in defiance of the most elementary observation.

We will therefore give the reader nothing more than altogether general indications, and he will have to interpret them, saying to himself that the *wear of the dental apparatus is manifested rather in this manner than otherwise.* His theoretical knowledge and his practical sense, his perception, and his good judgment will do the rest. Called upon to exercise his judgment in certain localities in purchasing for himself or for others horses differing as to their intended service, it will be his duty to examine, at the beginning, some particular types of jaws; thus he will be enabled, at the end of a relatively short time, to recognize the age with an accuracy sometimes surprising. Passing into other localities, he will be obliged to complete his technical education and adapt himself to new mouths and to new types of wear.

In the remarks which follow, we will first review the actual state of the science, and add thereto our own views and observations; then we will present for the consideration of the reader a series of plates, chosen from the numerous *authentic* mouths of our collection, and as to which we will furnish some explanatory information.

In France, all foals, save those which are thoroughbred, are supposed to be born in spring-time,[1]—that is to say, in the season of the year when pasturage is abundant and affords a convenient nourishment for the young animals. There are, nevertheless, some exceptions in this respect, and it is on account of the variable periods of the dressing and the sale of the animals that it is necessary to employ certain variations in the terminology by the use of the following expressions:

It is said that a horse is *coming* or *rising* to a certain age when his mouth is at the point of presenting the classical characters of the age to which reference is made; for example, a *rising six-year-old.* He has a certain *age* when all these characters really exist. Finally, he is *past* a certain *age* when these characters, more marked, commence to disappear, to be replaced by those of the age which immediately follows that which was previously indicated; for example, a *six-year-old past.*

The knowledge of the age of horses is based upon the observations

---

[1] It is not the same in England, at least for thoroughbred horses, whose age is always estimated from the 1st of January.

as a whole, which it is necessary to classify methodically, in order to render its study more simple. We should mention once for all that this knowledge does not include that of the canines or the molars: the former, because they do not exist in all subjects, and because their wear is too irregular; the latter, because they are practically not very accessible in the examination, and because they have already been discussed.

A division which naturally presents itself consists in distinguishing, on the one part, the phenomena that pertain to the milk-teeth, and, on the other, those which relate to the permanent teeth; but the following subdivisions must also be made:

1st. *The period of eruption of the incisors of the first dentition.*

2d. *The period of their levelling, their progressive wear, and their expulsion from the alveolus.*

3d. *The period of shedding of the deciduous incisors and their replacement by those of the second dentition.*

4th. *The period of levelling of the latter.*

5th. *The period of the successive forms which their table of friction presents, and the details that are observed there.*

Whence it follows that there are five principal periods from birth to extreme old age.

First Period.—Eruption of the Incisors of the First Dentition.—At the moment of *birth* none of the incisors have penetrated through the gums; the anterior border of the pincers alone is outlined underneath the mucous membrane, which is red and congested in both jaws. (Plate I.)

About One Week.—The pincers generally appear in from six to eight days, and the eruption of the superior precedes that of the inferior. (Plate II.)

It is of very little importance to examine the teeth at this epoch of life, for the general aspect of the foal,—its gait, which is not yet defined, the state of the hairs and of the mane,—all, in a word, indicate at a glance that the animal is still young.

About One Month.—The intermediates emerge through the gums in from thirty to forty days, and the anterior border of the pincers shows the effects of wear. (Plate III.)

About Three Months.—The jaws now present four teeth above and below, which have emerged through the gums; the pincers commence to wear on their posterior border. (Plate IV.)

About Four Months.—The incisive arcade is wider transversely; the inferior intermediates have emerged still more through

the gums; their anterior border commences to wear, but only on its internal part, which alone comes in contact with the corresponding superior teeth. (Plate V.)

About Five Months.—The eruption of the pincers is complete; the intermediates touch by the whole extent of their anterior border; the mucous membrane behind these teeth is sometimes sensitive, in consequence of the presence of the corner tooth, which is at the point of piercing the gums. (Plate VI.)

About Six Months.—The intermediates are more prominent; their posterior border commences to wear. The mucous membrane, in the region of the corner, is tumefied and vascular; sometimes, even, the anterior border of this tooth has pierced it very close to and behind the intermediate.

Eight to Ten Months.—The corner is ordinarily visible by its anterior border only, but more or less slowly according to the subjects. As to the intermediates, they are well emerged from the gums, which are at the level of their necks. The inferior incisive arcade forms an almost regular semicircle. (Plate VII.)

It is impossible to pass, with precision, deeper into the details, diverse causes being susceptible of influencing the eruption of the teeth and their wear. Some subjects are strong and vigorous, others are delicate. The nourishment also may have been more or less abundant. Finally, it is certain, although it may not always be possible to appreciate the reason, that, all things being equal, there are some animals more precocious than others.

At the commencement of the first period of life the foal is nourished by the milk of its mother; the wear of its teeth, but little marked, is due only to their simple apposition,—to their contact with the superiors; it is only at a later period that the animal commences to consume the fibrous and resisting aliments, and that its incisors become more blunt. However this may be, the wear will be more pronounced upon the pincers, whose eruption took place first. It will be the same, in each tooth, with the anterior border as compared with the posterior.

Besides, after the supposed epoch of birth, it is not very difficult to judge, almost exactly, the age of the young subject, which, in most instances, is still suckling its mother. It is at the end of this time, which continues eight, nine, or ten months, that the animal, in certain localities, is sold, as we have seen in Brittany, and taken into districts where the food is more abundant, and where, especially, he is reared with a view of utilizing him for work and preparing him for sale.

Second Period.—Levelling and Progressive Wear of the Incisors of the First Dentition.—About One Year.—The corners are well emerged through the gums, but the inferiors have not yet come in contact with the superiors. The inferior pincers, if not *levelled*, are much worn upon their two borders; the incisive arcade commences to be slightly depressed at their level. The superior pincers and the intermediates are scarcely worn through upon their posterior border. (Plate VIII.)

About Sixteen Months.—The superior corners are in apposition with the inferior, and have commenced to wear, in both jaws, by their anterior border which touches the intermediates; their necks are quite visible above the gums. The inferior pincers are often, at this time, completely levelled, but in the intermediates this is much more rare. In the upper jaw the table of the two sorts of teeth is completely formed; the depression of the incisive arch is present. (Plate IX.)

About Twenty Months.—The inferior corners are much worn over the whole extent of their anterior border; the superior corners show the wear a little less. The inferior pincers become more constricted at their base and are completely levelled; the intermediates are often levelled. Ordinarily, the incisive arch is still less convex. (Plate X.)

About Two Years.—The inferior dental arcade is completely worn down to the level of the pincers and the intermediate teeth; the superior arcade is less worn. The neck of the superior pincers is above the level of the gums. Pressure on the palatine arch posterior to these teeth shows a sensitiveness of the gums, and reveals the presence of the permanent incisor underneath the mucous membrane. The intermediate teeth commence to show their necks, above and below. Finally, the incisive arcade becomes wider transversely, and is much flattened in its central portion. (Plate XI.)

It can be seen from the preceding characters that the levelling of the milk-teeth does not furnish as precise an index as Girard would seem to indicate. According to this author, in fact, "the pincers should always be levelled at ten months, the intermediate teeth at one year, and the corners at from fifteen to twenty-four months." Unfortunately, there are too many allowances to be made in this respect, for these changes follow each other with much less regularity. Some variations result, as we know, from the thickness of the nucleus of cement which occupies the bottom of the external dental cavity; they depend also upon the character of the food and the manner of existence of the animals.

It is especially at the end of this period that the observer must exercise his perception and judgment in giving to all the variations of the wear their proper value, particularly that of the corners and the superior incisors. He will see, little by little, the free portion of the pincers diminishing in length, their necks insensibly protruding above the gums, and their color assuming a brownish hue. As they are pushed out they become loose, movable, break off in fragments, and naturally fall out, preparatory to being replaced by the permanent teeth. This falling out will mark the third period of the life of the horse.

Third Period.—Eruption of the Permanent or Adult Incisors.—The eruption of these teeth commences at the age of two and one-half years and terminates at that of five years.

About Two and One-half Years.—The successive shedding of the milk pincers, the tumefaction of the gums at their level, and the appearance of the anterior border of the one or the other permanent pincers usually begin in the superior jaw; in six weeks or two months their evolution is completed.

Rising Three Years.—This expression indicates that the colt has not yet attained its third year, but that it is closely approaching this age.

In the superior jaw the adult pincers have perforated the gums and are at the point of reaching the level of the milk intermediates; in the inferior jaw their borders and sometimes a variable portion of the crown emerge from the gums. In all cases these teeth are unworn. The milk intermediates appear constricted at their base and much worn off; as to the corners, the wear involves their external border. (Plate XII.)

Three Years.—The animal has now completed his third year, and his jaws present four permanent pincers well emerged through the gums, whose surface of friction is found at the same level as that of the neighboring teeth. By carefully examining the mouth, the presence of the incisors of the second dentition can now be immediately recognized. By their greater volume, their slightly-square form, their deeper color, and the groove on their anterior face they can be clearly differentiated from the others, always constricted at their base, smaller, more convex, whiter, and not grooved in front. We must also take cognizance of the time of the year and the race in fixing the age of *three years.* Thoroughbred colts attain it in the month of January, while those of the common races, whose birth takes place later,—"in the spring-time, in the grass," as it is called,—will reach this age only in the months of March, April, or May.

Three Years Past.—The colt has passed his third year by two, three, or four months. The four permanent pincers show wear on their two borders (anterior and posterior), which are on the same level, but the external dental cavity is not yet circumscribed by the circle of central enamel. The milk intermediates are much worn and pushed out, so as to show their bases, and are more or less broken; one of them is sometimes almost ready to fall out; the table of the corners is sensibly enlarged and prolonged towards its external border. (Plate XIII.)

Rising Four Years.—Eruption of the adult intermediates and progressive falling out of the milk intermediates. The latter are at times replaced in the two jaws. The newly-erupted teeth are altogether virgin and have not attained the level of the corners; they show no trace of wear. The central enamel, in the pincers, circumscribes the external dental cavity, flattened from before to behind, and already greatly diminished. The milk corners appear much pushed out from the gums and bare at their bases. (Plate XIV.)

Four Years.—Each jaw shows four permanent teeth whose tables have all reached the same level. The intermediates are worn upon both of their borders (anterior and posterior), but the central enamel is not yet completely separated from the peripheral enamel. Often the inferior pincers are levelled, especially in thoroughbred horses. Finally, the corners of the first dentition are constricted at their bases, pushed out, and much levelled. (Plate XV.)

Four Years Past.—Loosening and successive shedding of the deciduous corners, which look like stumps barely able to retain their places. Sometimes one of the superior falls out, and leaves the permanent incisor in its place, ready to penetrate through the gums; at other times the superior jaw already presents, on one side, the free part of the corner of the second dentition. Pronounced wear of the pincers and the intermediates, anomalies in the eruption, also frequently takes place at this period. It is not rare, in fact, to see the eruption of the intermediates and the corners occurring at the same time. The animal is then only four and one-half years old, sometimes only four, although the teeth may actually mark five.[1] (Plate XVI.)

Rising Five Years.—The four milk corners have fallen out and are replaced by those of the adult teeth. The latter, not having reached the same level as the intermediates, do not show the least trace of wear. The pincers show considerable wear; their central enamel, elongated transversely, is separated from the anterior border of the dental table.

---

[1] Yvon, vétérinaire à Bayeux, note communiquée.

The surface of friction of the intermediates is completely formed. (Plate XVII.)

Five Years.—The mouth is *made, full;* the incisive arch is a regular semicircle. All the permanent teeth have reached the same level in both jaws. The anterior border of the corners touches and begins to wear; the posterior is not worn. (Plate XVIII.)

Five Years Past.—The preceding characters on the pincers and the intermediates are more marked. It is especially from the full development and the freshness of the corners that this age is determined. The posterior border of these teeth in the superior incisive arcade is only commencing to wear. The jaws form a regular semicircle, convex in front and from above to below, when examined in profile from the side.

Fourth Period.—Levelling of the Permanent Incisors.—The signs furnished during this period by the dental apparatus already become more difficult to recognize. The determination of the age also now becomes more uncertain than in the preceding period. The principal points to be examined are the *degree of wear of the corners*, the *form* and *transverse diameter* of the incisor teeth, and the *form* and *situation of the central enamel* in relation to the posterior border of the tables of friction. Finally, too much stress should not be laid upon the indications, often fallacious, of the *levelling* of the teeth, the disappearance of the so-called "mark," which is nothing more than the external portion of the external dental cavity colored black, and filled sometimes with alimentary matter.

Six Years.—Very marked levelling of the pincers, whose table tends to assume the oval form. Wearing of the posterior border of the corners, and the formation of a complete circle of central enamel around the external dental cavity. The latter, in the intermediates, is almost worn away to its bottom, and sometimes even these teeth are completely levelled. The cement is now commencing to disappear from the anterior face of the pincers, especially towards the anterior border, which makes them appear whiter than at five years. (Plate XIX.) [The corner incisor is very often a *shell* tooth, its posterior border being entirely absent. In such a case, a six-year-old can be recognized by the fact that not only the anterior border but also its external extremity are decidedly worn.]

Seven Years.—The layer of cement which covers the anterior face of the incisors is worn off, so as to show the pearly tint of the enamel. The inferior corner, narrower from in front to behind than the superior, wears off the table of the latter, so as to form on it a notch towards its posterior part, more or less visible according to the

subject. This notch may sometimes be absent, and, in some cases, is rasped off with fraudulent intent before selling the horse. [This notch commences to form at six years.] The table of the inferior intermediates is ordinarily levelled, or at the point of becoming so, and begins to assume the oval form. The central enamel, in the pincers, is smaller, and becomes convex behind. Viewed in profile, the jaws form a semicircle which is less regular than at six years. (Plate XX.)

Eight Years.—The incisors have a yellowish tint; all the lower ones are levelled; their arcade, quite regular, is narrower transversely than at five years. The pincers are becoming round; the intermediates are oval; the corners are becoming oval. The *dental star* is shown upon the tables in the form of a yellowish transverse line; it is most marked in the pincers, and often indistinct in the remaining incisors. The central enamel, still less extensive in the pincers, is more angular behind and nearer to their posterior border. According to Mayhew,[1] the base of the corner is cut squarely by the gums, which gives to the free part of this tooth a square form. Besides, the mucous membrane is harder, less delicate, and the mouth now seems to have acquired its full strength. The inferior border of the maxillary bone is comparatively thinner; the cheeks are flat. Viewed in profile, the opposed superior and inferior dental arcades no longer form a regular semicircle. Their arc seems to be broken at the level of the place where the tables meet, and it acquires little by little the curve of an ogive. This results, as we know, from the change in the direction of the teeth, which are now opposed obliquely instead of perpendicularly, as at five years. (Plate XXI.)

Fifth Period.—Disappearance of the Central Enamel and the Successive Forms of the Dental Tables.—This period, in which it is said by laymen that the horse is *old*, or *marks no more*, extends from nine years to extreme old age, and is based upon characters less and less reliable. The greater the number of years, says Mayhew,[2] with good practical judgment, the more difficult it is to arrive at an exact determination of the age. After the twelfth year there is but little probability of judging it accurately; after the sixteenth all is confusion, for there are no positive signs that will enable us to give a definite opinion upon this point, and it is better now to be cautious or remain silent.

Certain indications are, without doubt, capable of giving rise to the

---

[1] Edw. Mayhew, The Horse's Mouth showing the Age by the Teeth, London, 3d edition, p. 104.

[2] Mayhew, loc. cit., p. 107.

opinion that the horse is over fifteen or sixteen years. We concede that such an opinion from an experienced and sagacious man may at times become a certainty. Nevertheless, we do not think that any one is justified in saying positively how much older than sixteen years the animal is. Those who make this pretension have perhaps succeeded in a few isolated cases; but, if it were possible to know each time their absolute reasons and their success, their numerous errors would prove that in most instances they are not guided by any positive principle: it is the absence of proof which saves them. *In a case of advanced age, prudence will prompt the observer or the expert to do no more than hazard conjectures.* All those who, like ourselves, undertake the task of studying the age from authentic mouths of the horse, will soon be convinced of the necessity of caution in making their estimates. We have seen some jaws thirty-five, forty, forty-two, and forty-seven years of age which evidently presented the definite signs of old age. But by examination it was impossible to tell at what age the subjects from which they had been obtained had arrived.

The characters of this period are:

1. The successive forms of the free extremity of the incisors.
2. The disposition of the cul-de-sac of the central enamel in the two jaws.
3. The form and situation of the dental star upon the tables of friction.
4. The obliquity or the degree of incidence of the incisive arcades.
5. The convergence of the teeth by their free part, and the small transverse diameter of the same arcades.
6. The degree of thickness of the peripheral enamel bordering the dental table in front and behind.
7. The appearance of the radical cement.
8. The external state of the tooth.

Nine Years.—The pincers are round; their central enamel takes a triangular form, and their dental star, narrower but more marked, occupies almost the middle of their tables. The intermediates are becoming round, and the corners are oval. The superior pincers are often levelled. The notch of the superior corners sometimes disappears at this age. In profile, the jaws form an ogive, more marked than at eight years. (Plate XXII.)

Ten Years.—The pincers are still more round; their central enamel is smaller, distinctly triangular, and approaches more towards their posterior border.

The intermediates are round, and the corners tend to assume this form. The dental star, more apparent in all the teeth, is situated rather in the middle of their tables. The incidence in profile is still more oblique. (Plate XXIII.)

Eleven Years.—Roundness of the corners and of the intermediates. The central enamel forms a more or less small island, placed very close to the posterior border of the teeth. The dental star, narrower transversely, is found on the middle of the surface of friction. The inferior corners, viewed in profile, are more narrow and almost as wide at their base as at their free extremity ; the gum extends squarely across their base. The superior corners, more oblique, show a new notch ; they are levelled or at the point of becoming so. (Plate XXIV.)

Twelve Years.—All the teeth are round, and at times the central enamel has disappeared. Frequently, however, a slight trace of the latter still exists in some of them. The tables in which this enamel does not exist present in their centre a yellowish spot, rather small, which is the dental star. In the superior corners the central enamel is very small. The two incisive arcades are much narrower from side to side, and less convex on their anterior face. The tongue projects beyond the bars ; the inferior border of the maxillary bone is becoming sharp ; the cheeks are flattened and the face hollowed upon its lateral surfaces. The incidence of the incisive arcade has augmented in inclination, especially when the teeth have acquired considerable length. (Plate XXV.)

Thirteen Years.—The signs of the preceding age are more marked. The superior corners are ordinarily completely levelled or at the point of becoming so ; they have a well-defined notch when examined in profile. The central enamel is absent in the inferior incisors ; in the superior pincers it has a rounded form. (Plate XXVI.)

Fourteen Years.—The pincers tend to assume the triangular form. The incisive arcade appears greatly depressed in profile and narrowed transversely.

Fifteen Years.—Triangular form of the pincers ; this is only beginning in the intermediates. The dental star is very distinct and round in all the lower incisors. The central enamel on the superior pincers is much smaller. (Plate XXVII.)

Sixteen Years.—The characters of the preceding age more marked. Triangular form of the intermediates.

Seventeen Years.—All the inferior incisors are triangular ; their dental star is round ; the central enamel of the superior pincers has

almost disappeared; the inferior incisive arcade is narrow and but slightly convex; an interspace now forms between these teeth. The tongue overhangs the bars more, and the saliva runs from the mouth when the jaws are separated. Viewed in profile, the latter form an ogive more or less acute. The obliquity of the corners is more marked than that of the intermediates. Viewed in front, the teeth of each arcade are very convergent by their crown. (Plate XXVIII.)

Eighteen Years.—The dental tables become elongated from before to behind. The central enamel of the superior pincers is absent.

Nineteen Years.—The tables of the pincers and the intermediates are longer from before to behind than transversely,—*biangular;* besides, these tables, by their lateral borders, converge behind and diverge in front. Central enamel absent in the superior intermediates. Viewing the jaws in front, the convergence of the corners is very decided. The teeth are more horizontal, *often too long.* (Plate XXIX.)

Twenty-one Years.—In profile, the two arcades meet each other at a very acute incidence. The superior teeth are convergent in front, and conceal the greater part of the inferior. The inferior incisive arcade is, so to speak, no longer convex, and the teeth here become more separated from each other; their tables are becoming flattened from side to side; finally, their posterior border is covered by a layer of enamel which gradually becomes thinner. A layer of radical cement often surrounds the base of the teeth. (Plate XXX.)

Thirty Years.—Beyond twenty years of age the horse is considered as having reached the limit of his life. The characters of the mouth are then those of extreme old age. Sometimes the teeth are *too long* and *too horizontal;* at other times, on the contrary, they are altogether *too short and worn down to a level with the gums.* In all cases, only a small portion of the root remains in the alveolar cavity. When the lips are separated, the maxillary bones, at the level of the palatine arch and the symphysis of the inferior jawbone, are very thin. Viewed in profile, the dental arcades scarcely show more than the corners and the intermediates; the pincers remain hidden by the latter. Viewed in front, the teeth are so straight and prominent that, in order to see the inferior incisors, the head must be raised. The superior converge towards the median line by their free extremity, whilst they are very divergent at their base; wide triangular interspaces, into which pointed prolongations of the mucous membrane as well as brownish alimentary matter are prolonged, separate the pincers from the intermediates and the latter from the corners.

The tables of friction become more and more flattened upon their

lateral surfaces; the dental star shows itself here by a white spot, or in some very old horses by a small cavity, which occupies their centre; the incisive arcades are almost effaced, rectilinear, and very narrow in the transverse sense.

The peripheral enamel is incomplete; it is often wanting behind; at other times no traces of it are found in front. When it has totally disappeared, the radical cementation takes its place (Fig. 286), surrounds and consolidates the incisive stumps into their cavities, at the same time that it increases the surface of the dental tables. As this layer of enamel wears off, there are seen through its thickness the striæ of the subjacent dentine, provided always that there is no superficial cementous formation.

The canines, either the superior or the inferior alone, or both simultaneously, are always very much worn. As to the molars, they are ordinarily very irregular.

Finally, the tongue protrudes beyond the bars; the narrowness of the lingual canal causes a flow of saliva when the jaws are separated; the mucous membrane is wrinkled, less vascular, and adherent to the bone; the inferior border of the maxillary bone is altogether sharp and the lateral sides of the face hollowed.

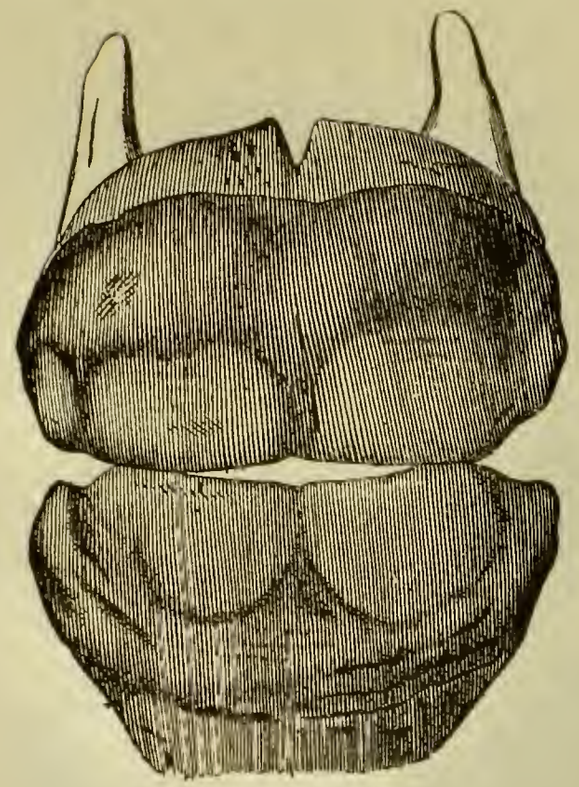
The general aspect of the horse also furnishes other signs: the temples and the supra-orbital arches are gray; the hairs of the mane and the tail have fallen out; the head and the body are emaciated; the axes of the members lose their regularity, the articulations their neatness and their mobility, the movements their ease; in a word, the practised observer recognizes quite easily upon the organism which he views the signs of degeneration, fatigue, and wear. It is by an intelligent deliberation and comparison of these numerous characters that one can form an opinion relatively near the truth.

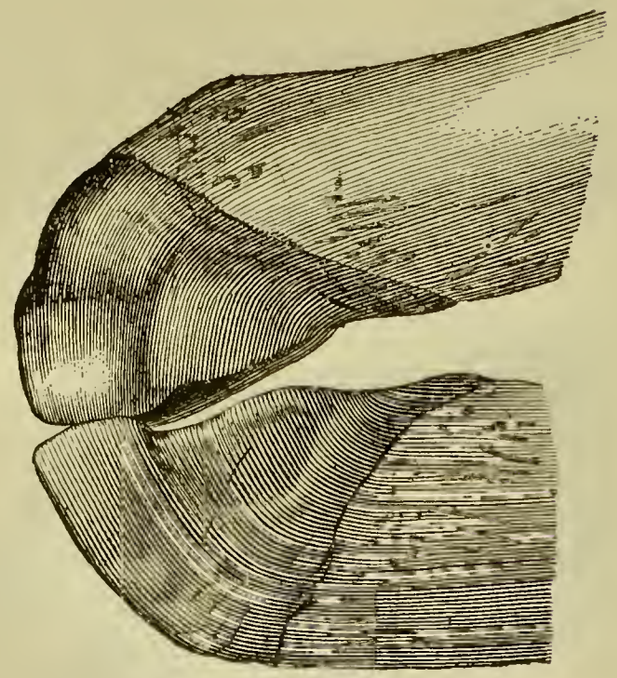
The fact remains, without contradiction, that numerous researches have yet to be made upon all questions which pertain to a more exact determination of the age of the horse. Those of our professional brethren who are able to conduct them will have deserved well of science if they are willing to publish their results.

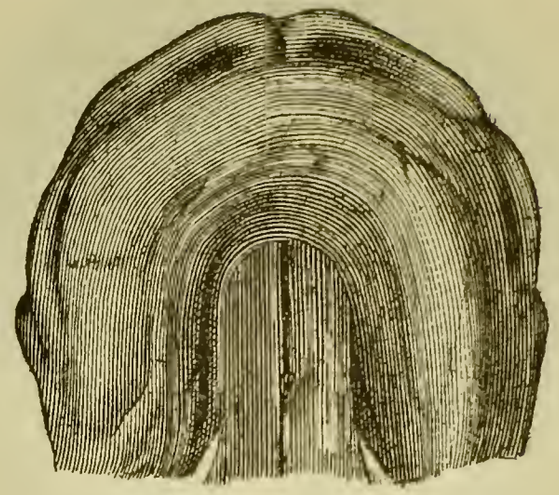
Before passing on to the study of the irregularities of the dental system, we will request the reader to read the explanatory legends of the plates to which we have referred him in this chapter, and which, by reason of their dimensions, we have not been able to insert completely into the text. If he familiarizes himself thoroughly with the characters which he should recognize, it will be more easy afterwards for him to apply them upon the living animal.

PLATES.

BIRTH.







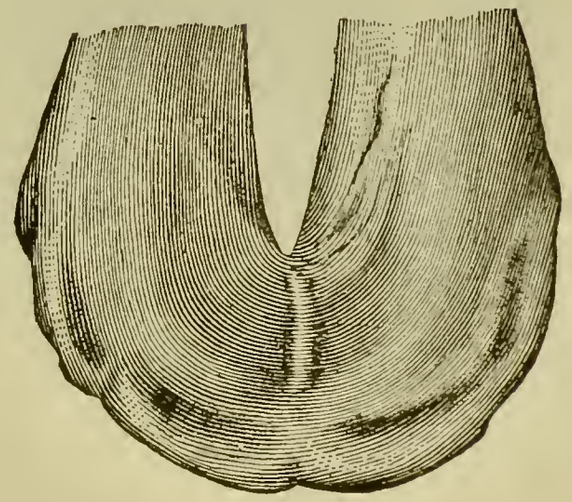
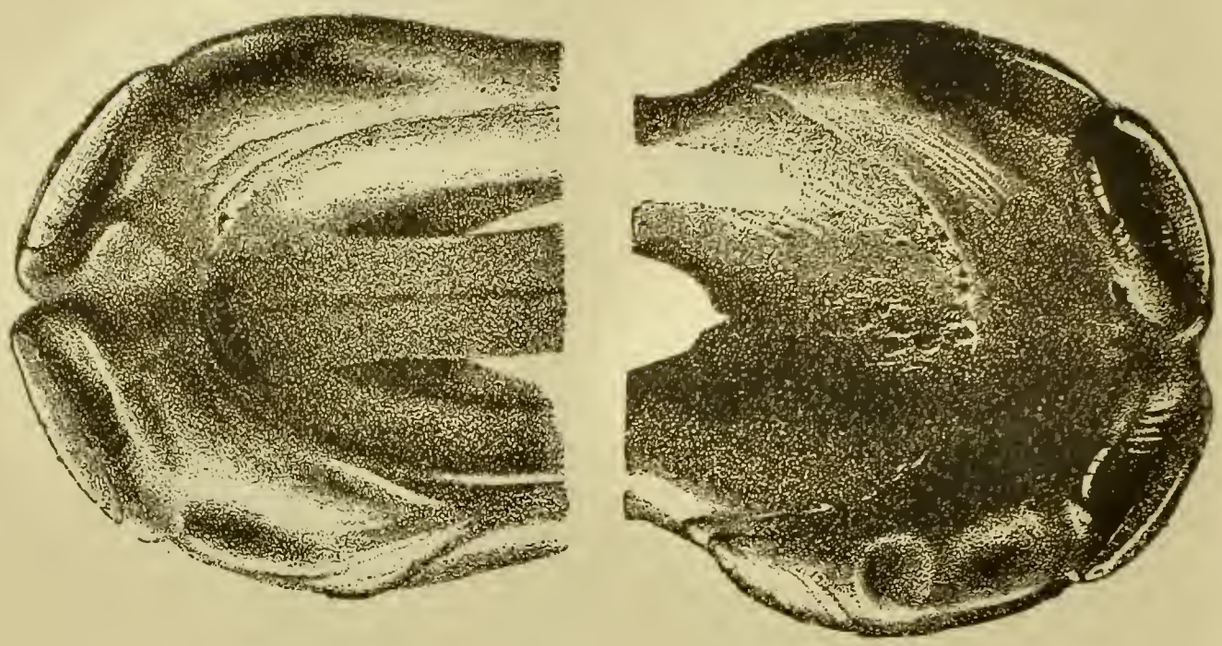


PLATE I.

Birth.—None of the incisor teeth has penetrated the gums. The buccal mucous membrane still covers those which are to appear first. In *front*, under the gums, the two pincers are perceived above and below. In *profile*, we distinguish the intermediates, less developed than the pincers. The jaws are very round at their extremity and but little separated from each other. The *dental tables* show, on each side of the median line, the prominence formed by the anterior border of the pincers and, external to these, but less developed, the borders of the intermediates. The internal side of these teeth is the more prominent, and it is this side which will first pierce the mucous membrane.

ABOUT ONE WEEK.



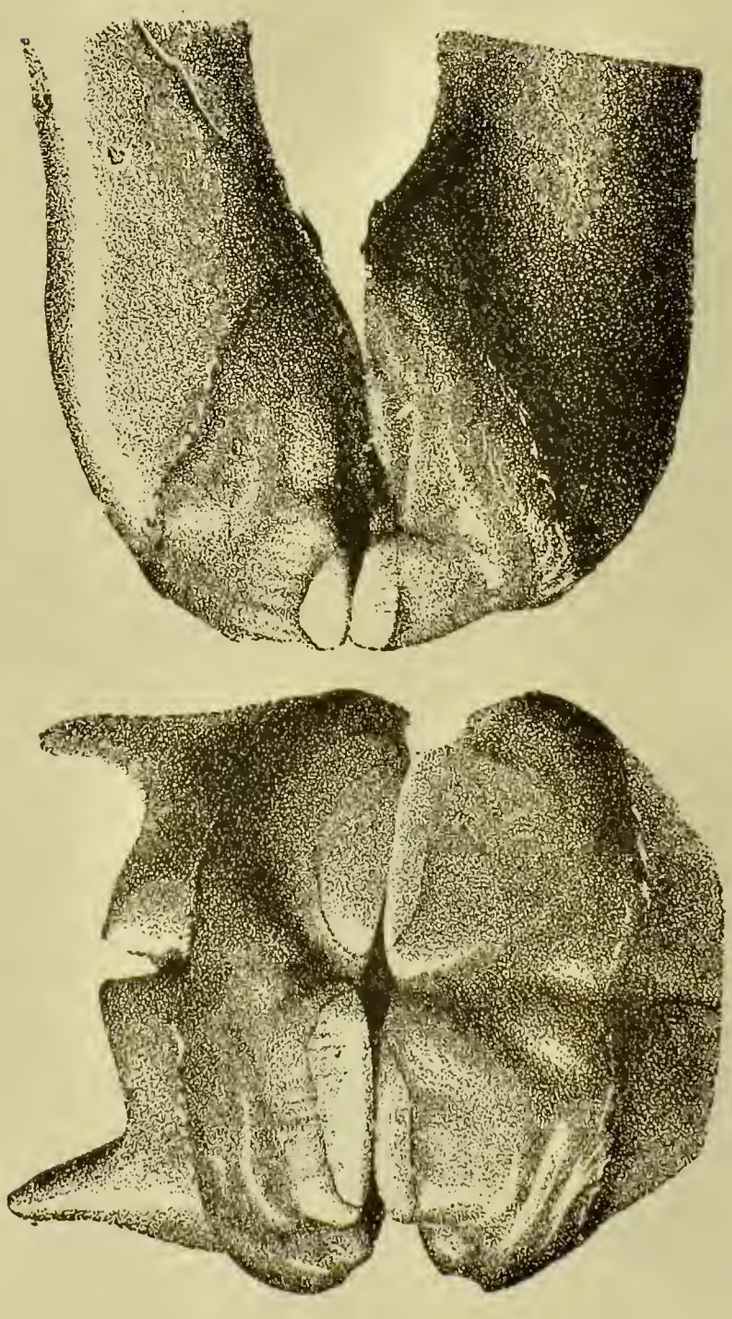
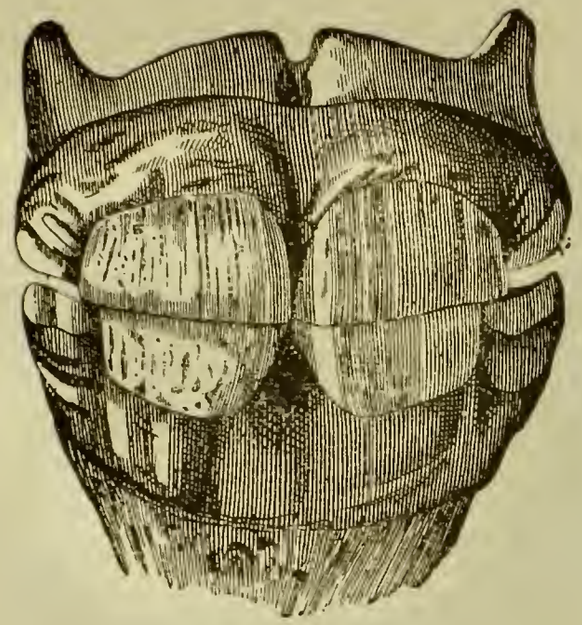
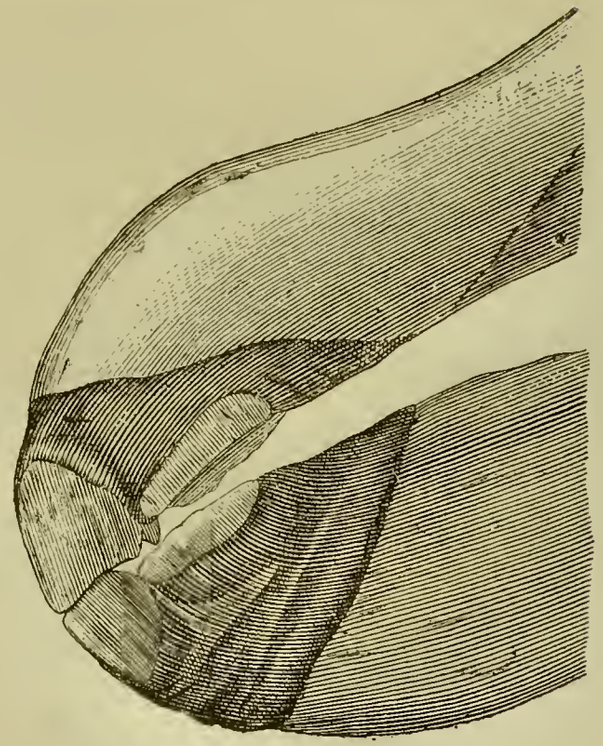


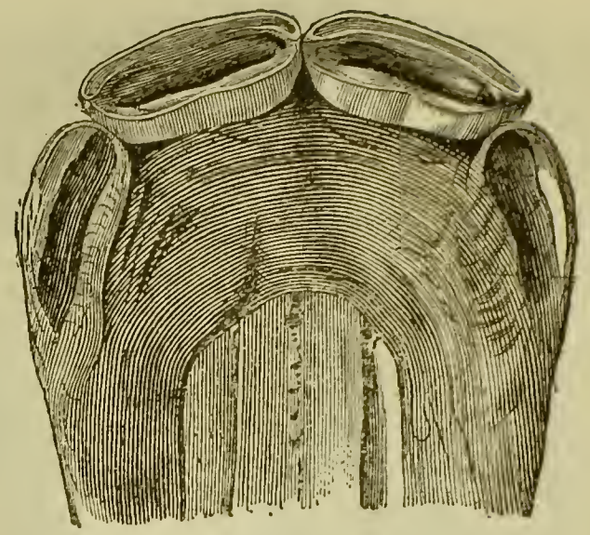
PLATE II.

About One Week.—Eruption of the first two teeth; the gum covers the others. In *front*, there is seen the anterior border of the pincers coming through, in both jaws. In *profile*, the mucous membrane is thinner over the intermediates. The *dental tables* show a deep depression at the level of the pincers, which is less distinct upon the intermediates; the anterior border of the pincers alone is coming through the gums. This subject was of large size.

ONE MONTH.







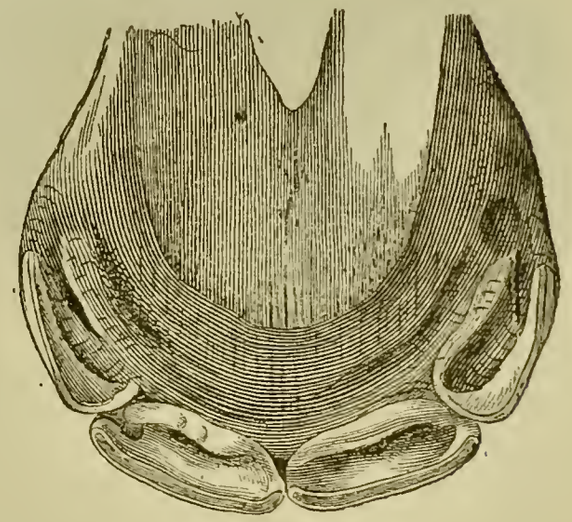
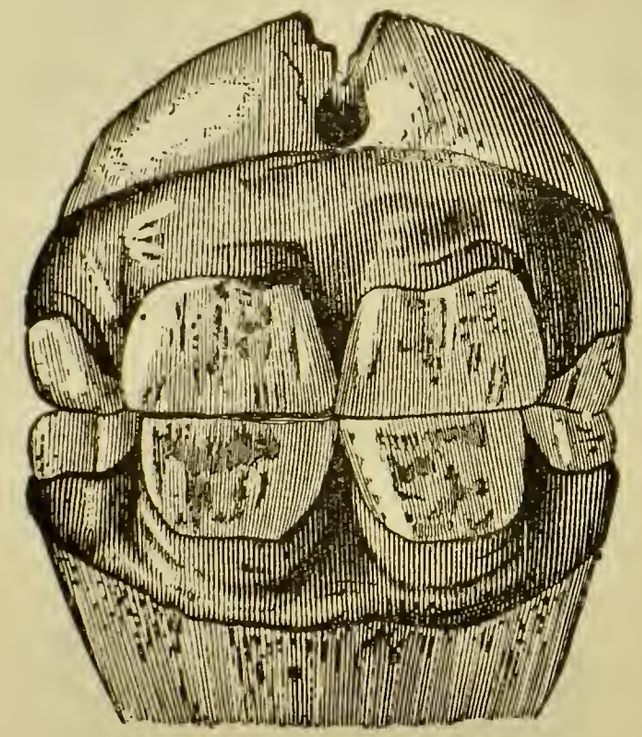
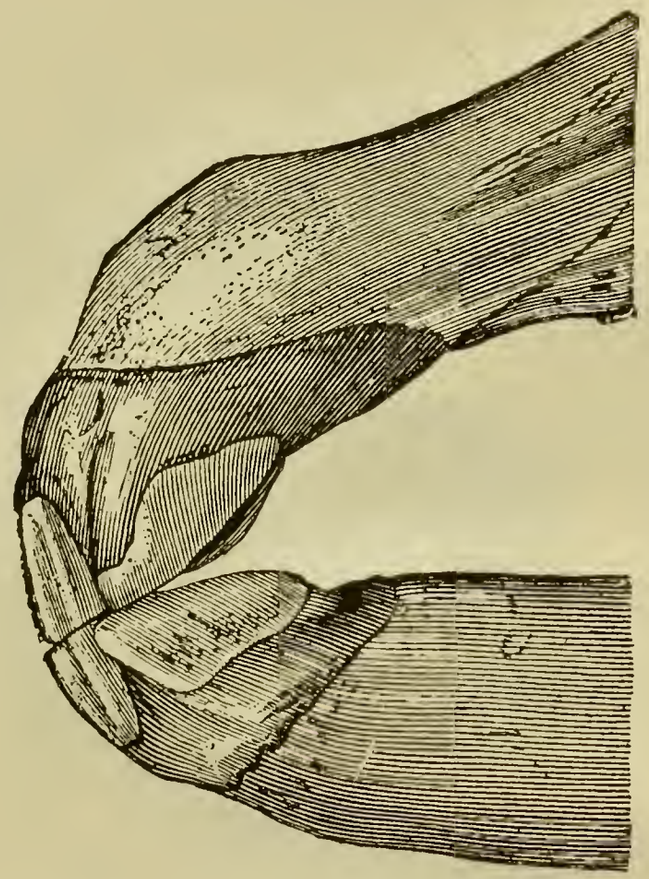


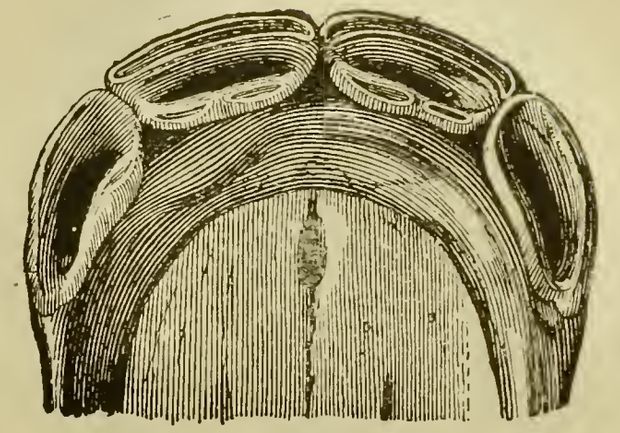
PLATE III.

One Month.—Viewed in *front*, the pincers, emerged through the gums since the first week, have alone come in contact, the superior with the inferior; their anterior face is delicately striated. To each side the anterior border of the intermediates is perceived. In *profile*, the jaws appear very thick; the gum still covers a small portion of the anterior border of the intermediates. The *dental tables* in the pincers are free; above, both of the borders are slightly worn; below, the anterior border alone shows any sign of wear; the posterior is virgin. The mucous membrane covers the posterior border of the intermediates and a portion of the external dental cavity.

THREE MONTHS.







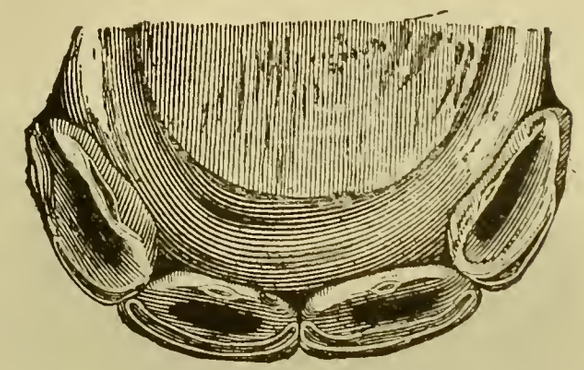


PLATE IV.

Three Months.—Viewed in *front*, the pincers are a little more through the gums, which still cover the base of their free part. The intermediates, superior and inferior, are in contact by the internal part of their anterior border; their posterior borders are separated for some distance. In *profile*, the two jaws are more separated, stronger, and less bulging. The intermediates are not completely free from the gums upon their anterior face. The *dental tables* show slight wear in all the teeth. The anterior and posterior borders of the intermediates are slightly worn towards the side of the pincers. The incisive arch augments in its transverse diameter.

FOUR MONTHS.

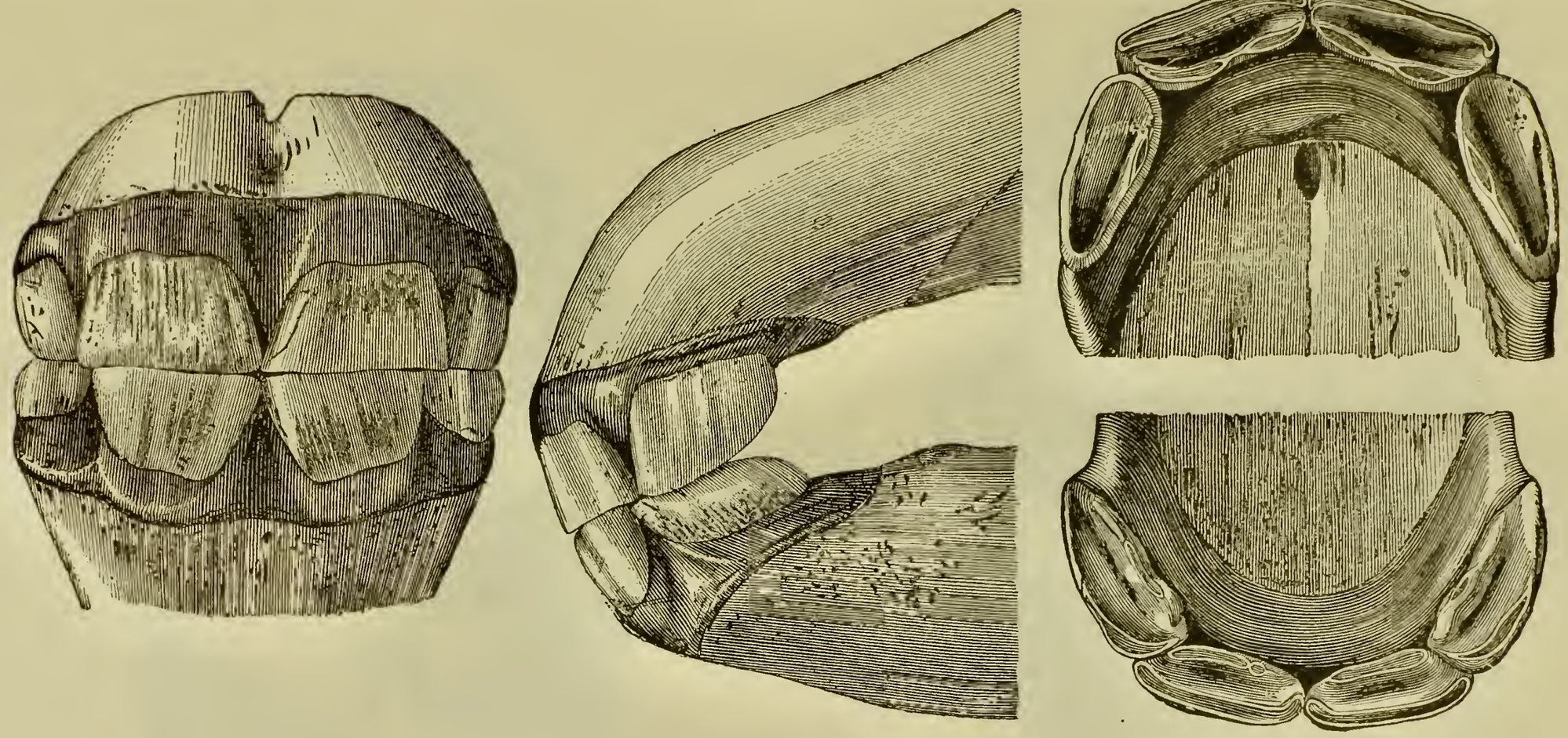
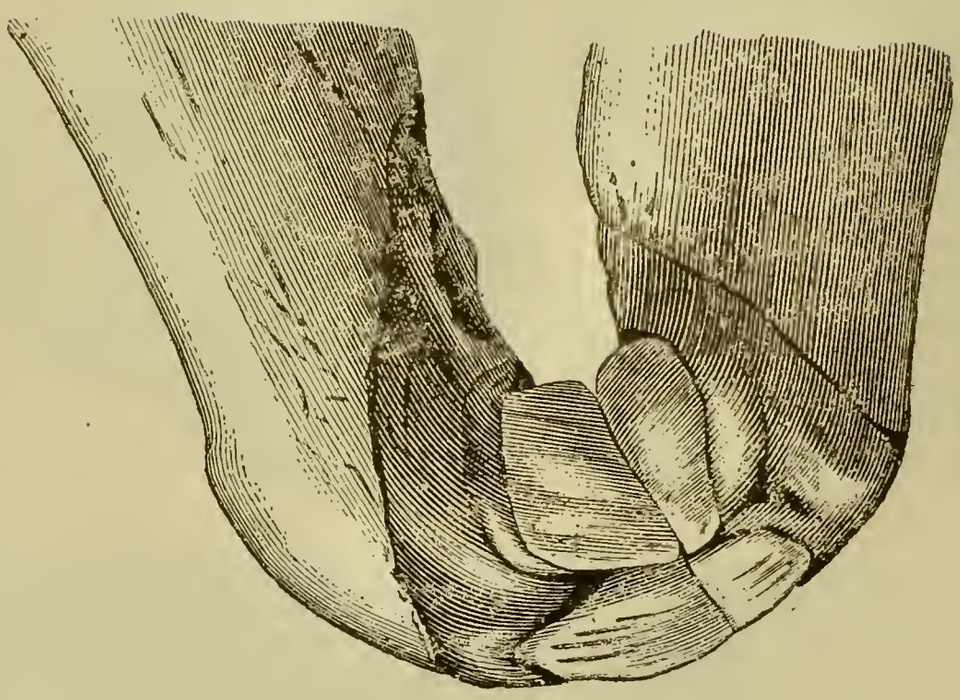
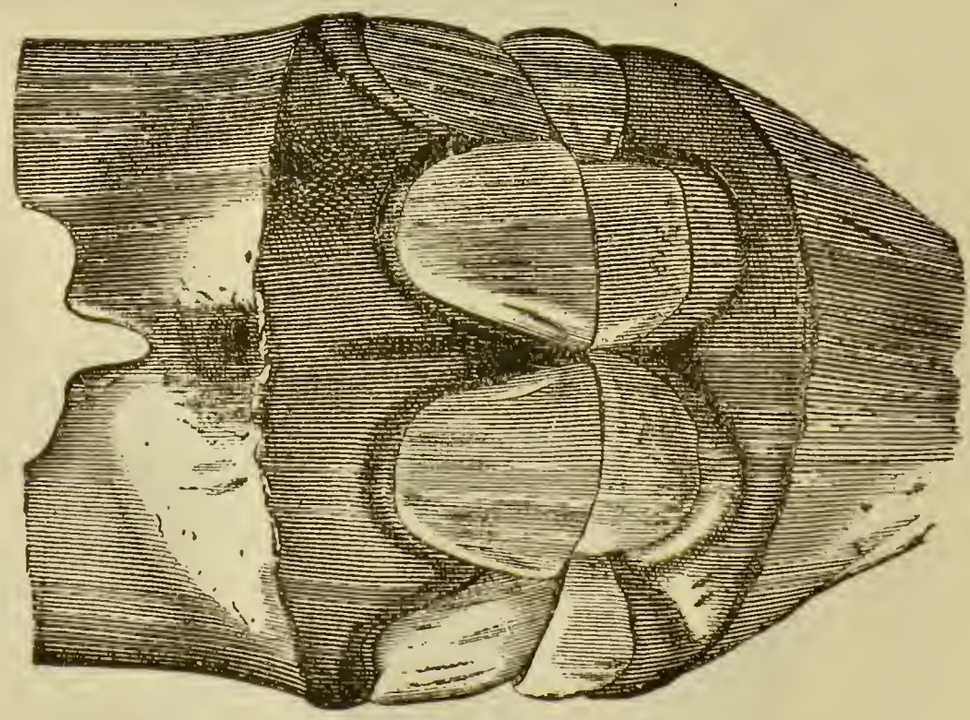


PLATE V.

Four Months.—Viewed in *front*, the transverse diameter of the jaws augments; the intermediates are more developed, and the pincers are well circumscribed at their base by the mucous membrane. In *profile*, the most apparent sign consists in the intermediates being more pushed out from the gums and in their closer apposition, the superior with the inferior. The *dental tables* indicate an almost complete wearing through of the anterior border of the pincers and only a partial wearing of the posterior border. The inferior intermediates are likewise more worn than at the preceding age. If the superior intermediates have their anterior border still virgin, this results, as can be proved in profile, from the fact that this border feebly overlaps the corresponding border of the inferior.



FIVE MONTHS.



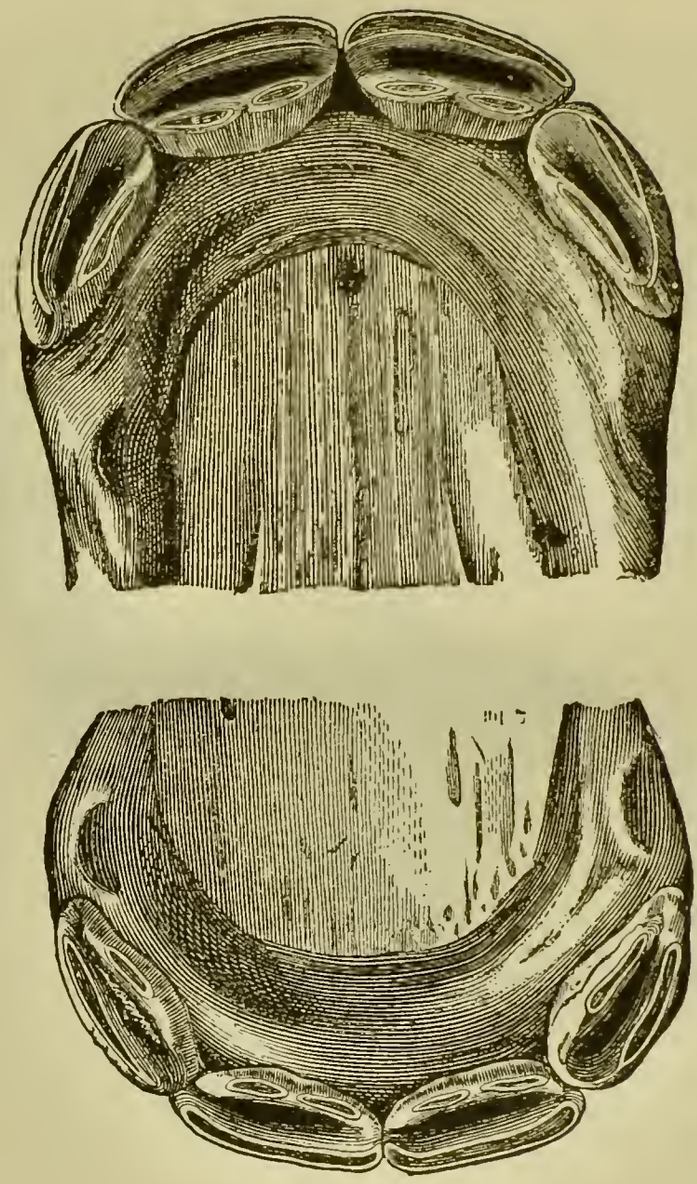
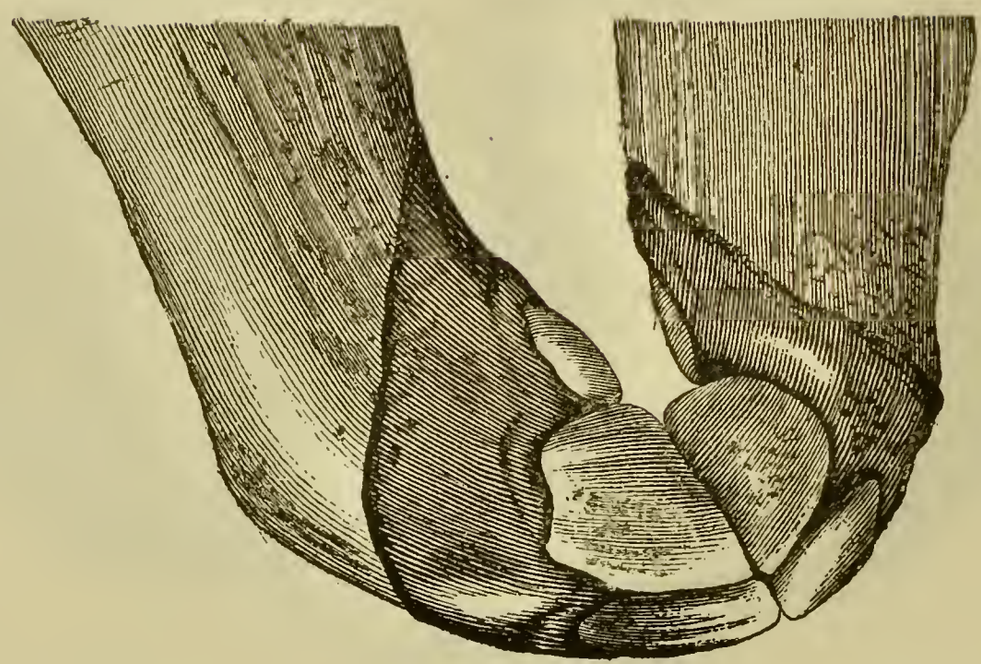


PLATE VI.

Five Months.—The jaws are stronger and the incisive arcades wider transversely. Viewed in *front*, the intermediates are quite prominent. In *profile*, these teeth touch each other by the whole extent of their anterior border. The *tables* of the pincers show more wear, especially above. In both jaws the anterior border of the intermediate is worn along almost its whole length; the posterior shows more wear than at the preceding age. In the lower jaw we see the internal part of the corner ready to penetrate through the gums; it forms a small elevation under the mucous membrane, situated immediately behind the external border of the corresponding intermediate.

The colt whose jaw is here seen was a little precocious.



TEN MONTHS.

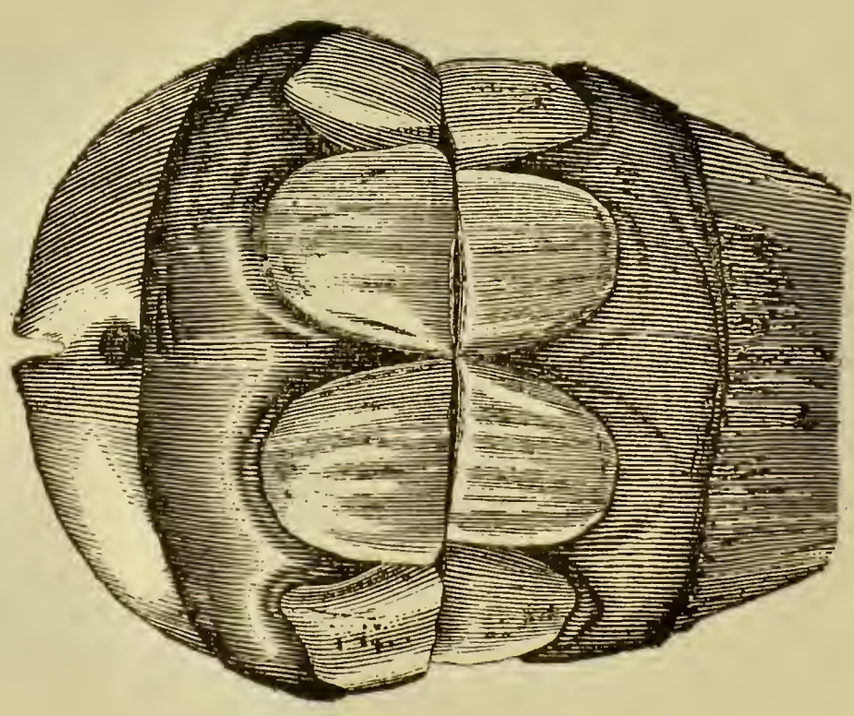
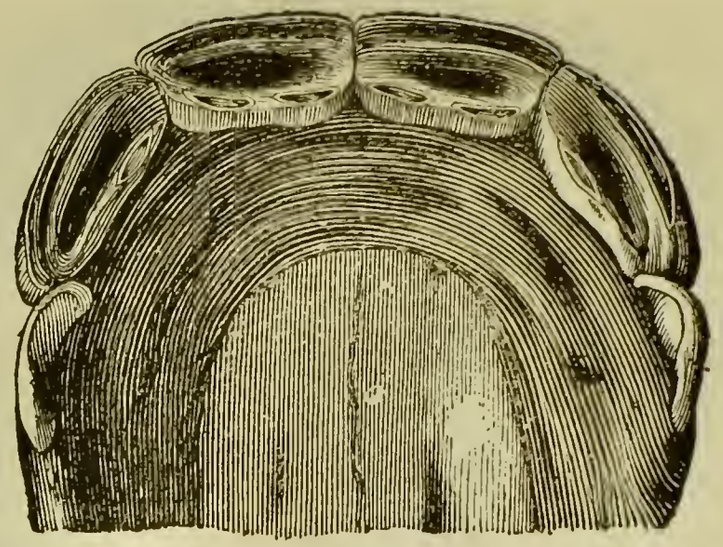
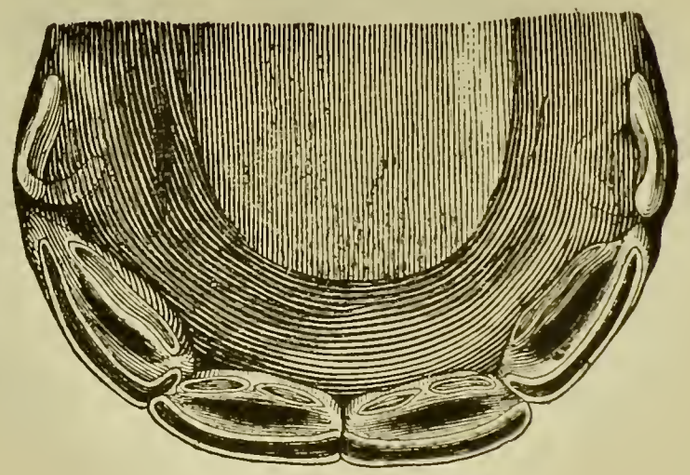
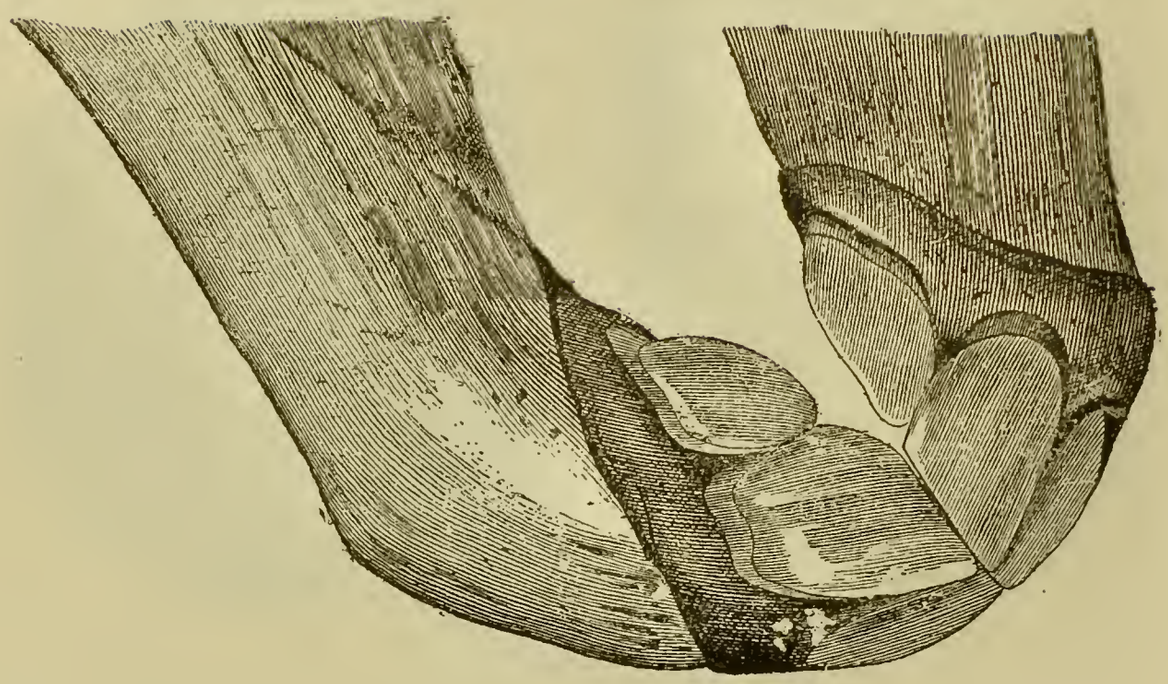


PLATE VII.

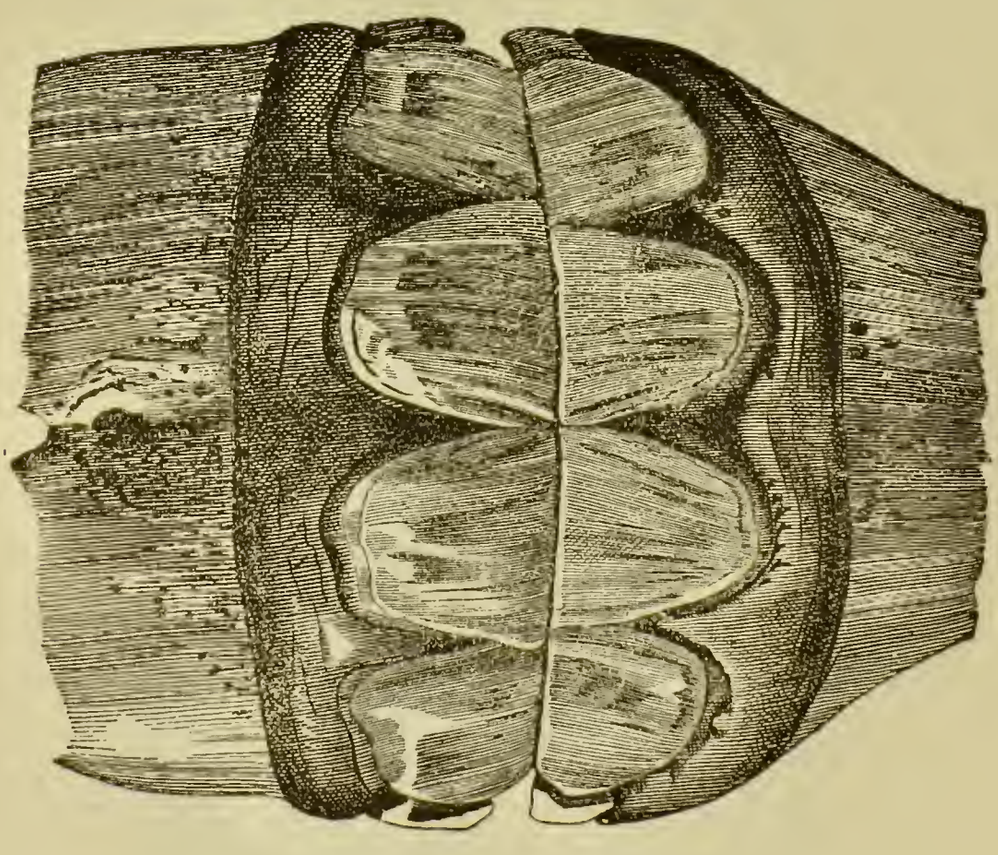
Ten Months.—These jaws were obtained from a small colt but little advanced in his development, which was rather tardy. Nevertheless, they are very useful for familiarizing the beginner with the diverse characters which they present. The pincers and the intermediates are quite free from the gums at their base; the anterior face of these teeth is more polished; the striæ are less visible. The intermediates have been in contact with each other by both borders for some months, and show the effects of wear on these borders very decidedly. Finally, the corners commence to protrude through the gums, but they are still separated from each other for some distance. The wear of the pincers, if it be compared to that of the intermediates, should be more marked, since their eruption took place much earlier. This is one of a series of irregularities which are so often met in practice, and whose cause is not well understood. This subject has perhaps very lately been fed on coarse fibrous food (?). However it may be, an examination of the teeth whose eruption took place last furnishes the most positive signs of the age.

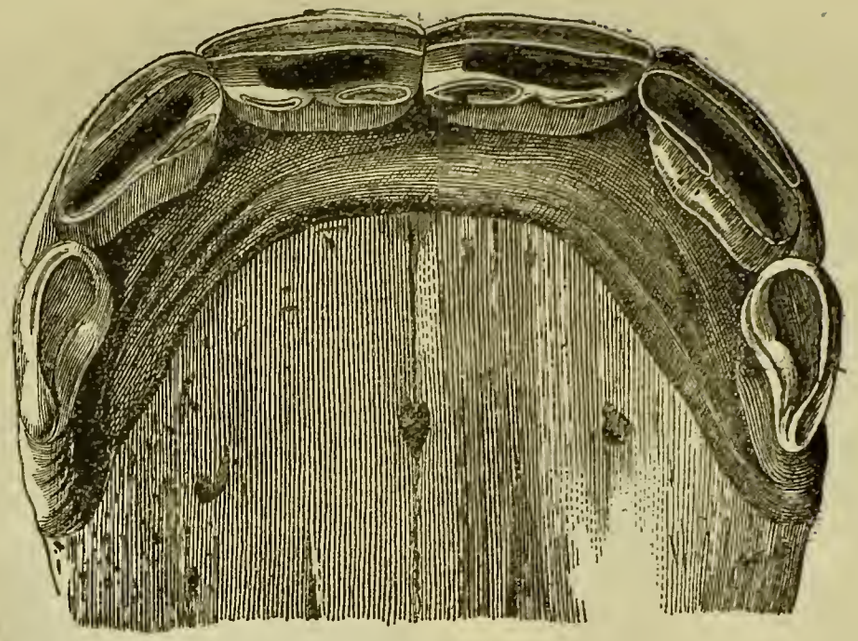






ONE YEAR.





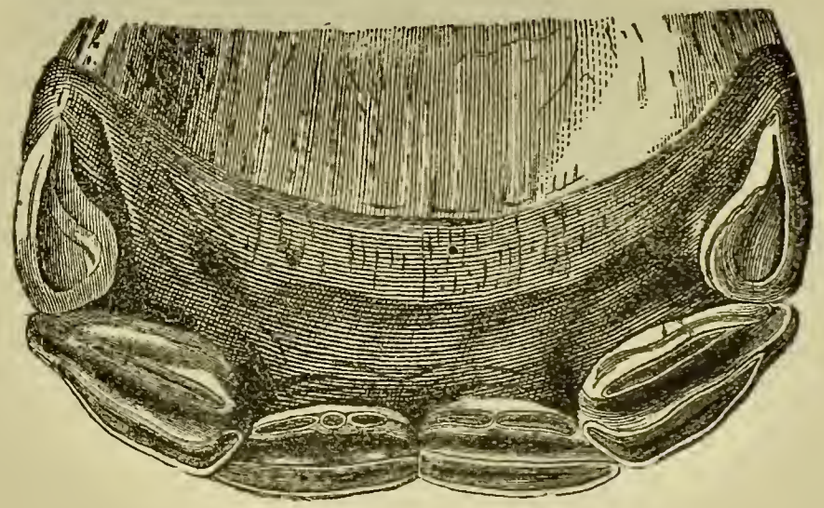
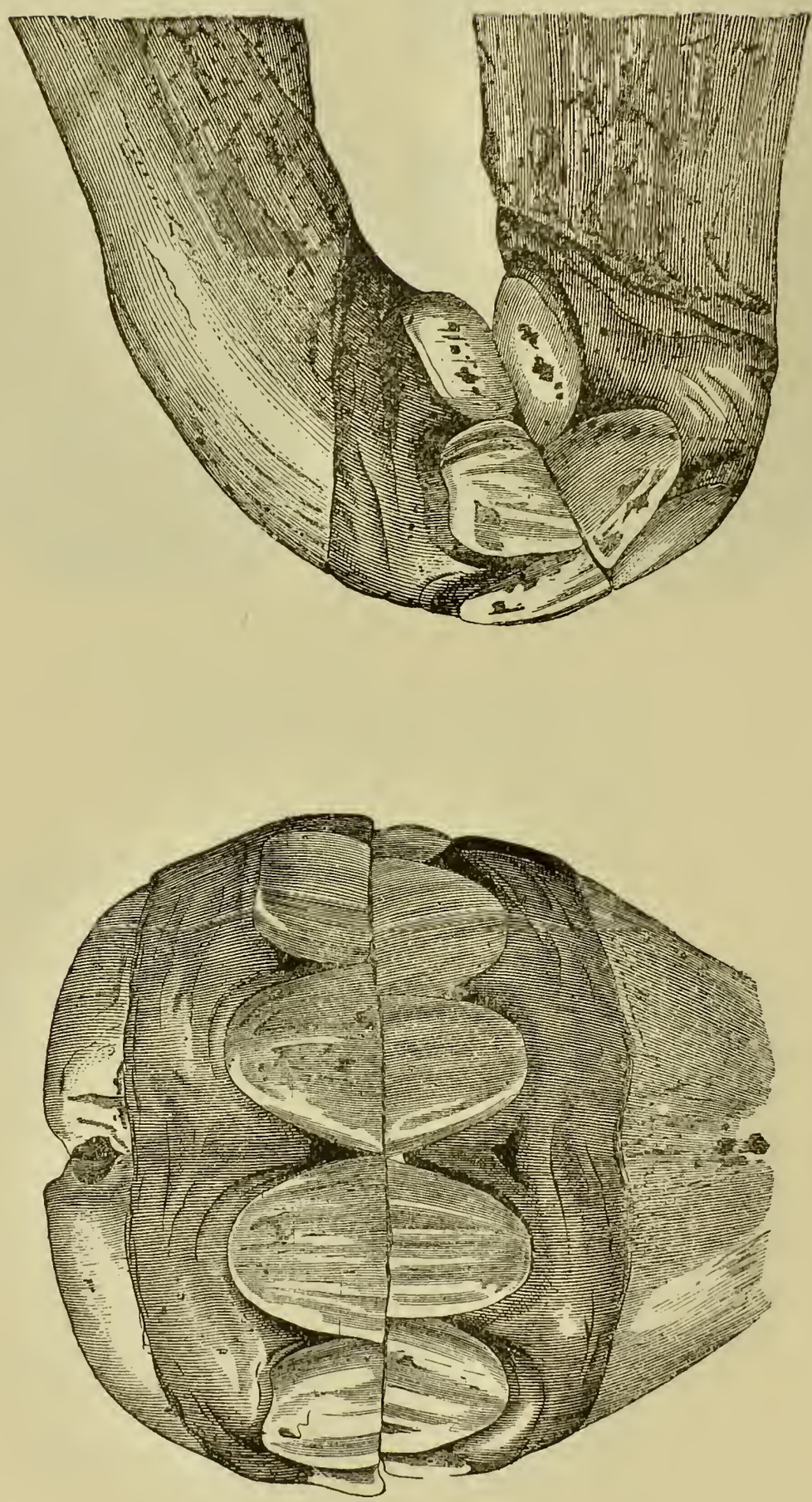
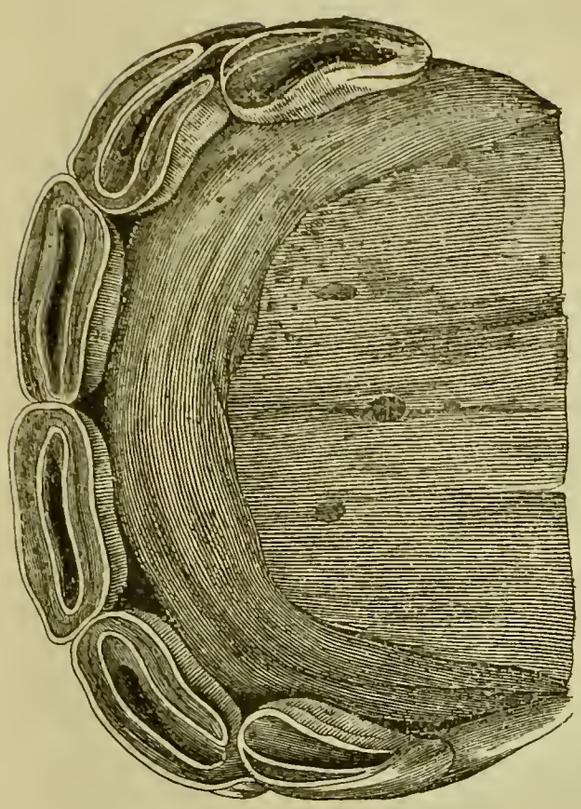


PLATE VIII.

One Year.—Viewed in *front*, all the milk incisors are visible; the pincers and the intermediates are well penetrated through the gums. In *profile*, the superior corners are not yet in contact with the inferior. The *tables* show that the posterior border of the pincers and the intermediates is worn more. Nevertheless, this character is liable to vary, from the fact of the unequal height of this border according to the mouths which are examined. However, it will be easy to avoid too great errors by recognizing the degree of wear of the anterior border. The latter presents, ordinarily, at this period, a yellow line, elongated transversely, which is surrounded by the remainder of the dentine; this is the dental star. Besides, we must compare the degree of wear of the pincers and the intermediates. If the latter are the most worn off, it will tend to make the young animal older rather than younger. The corners are still virgin. The incisive arcades are wider transversely and less round in their middle.

SIXTEEN MONTHS.





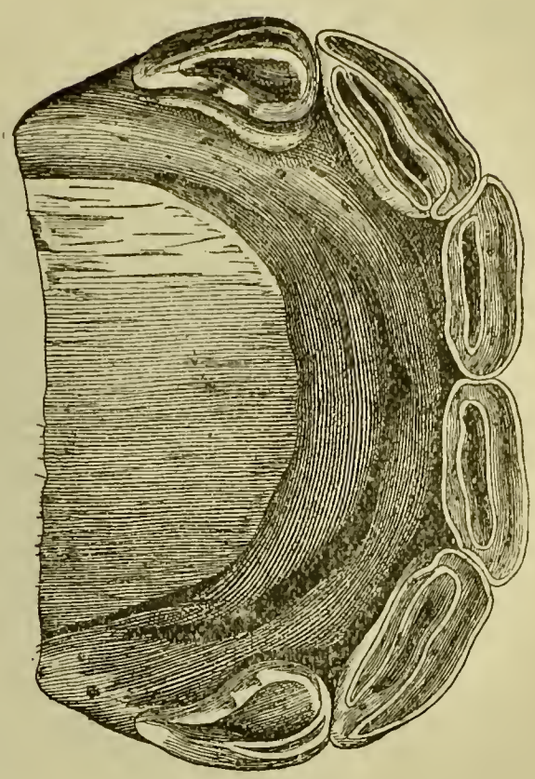
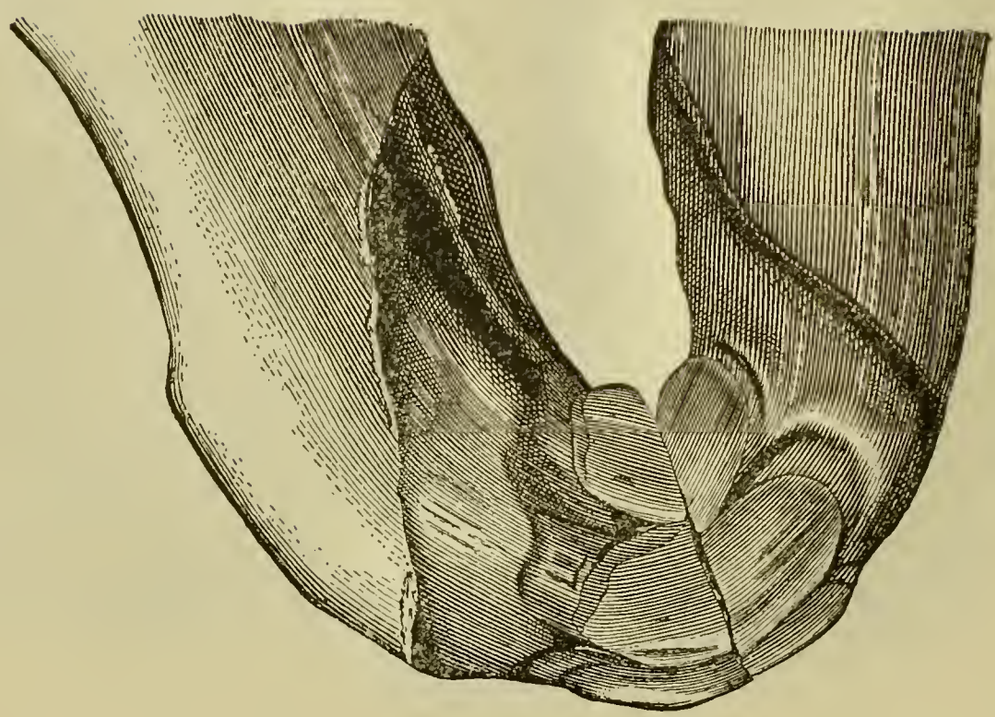
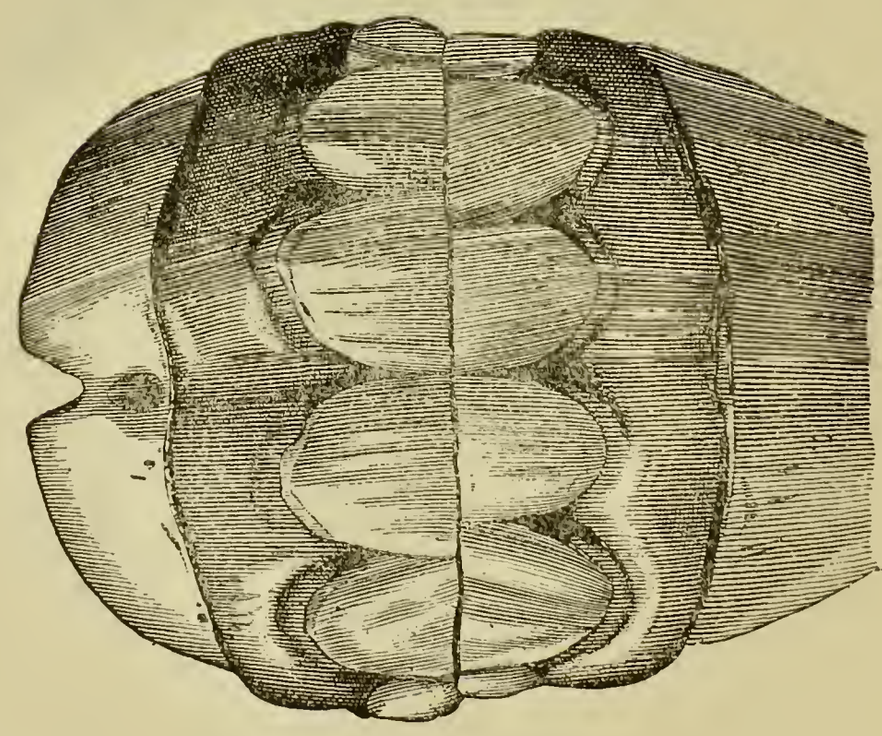


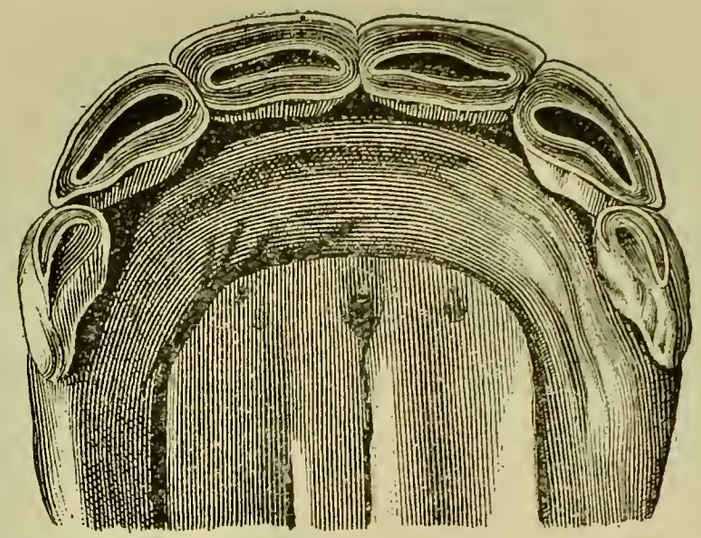
PLATE IX.

Sixteen Months.—All the inferior teeth are in contact with the superior. The central and the peripheral enamel, in the pincers, are separated from each other in the form of two concentric circles. Sometimes these teeth are bevelled. It is well not to attach too much importance to this latter characteristic, on account of the greater or lesser abundance of the cement at the bottom of the infundibulum or external dental cavity. As to the corners, they are no longer virgin; the internal part of their anterior border is already cut through from use. Finally, the incisive arcades continue depressed in their middle.



TWENTY MONTHS.





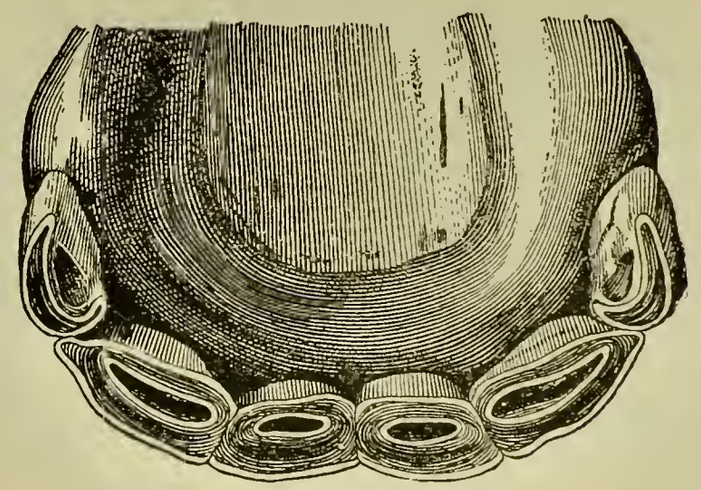
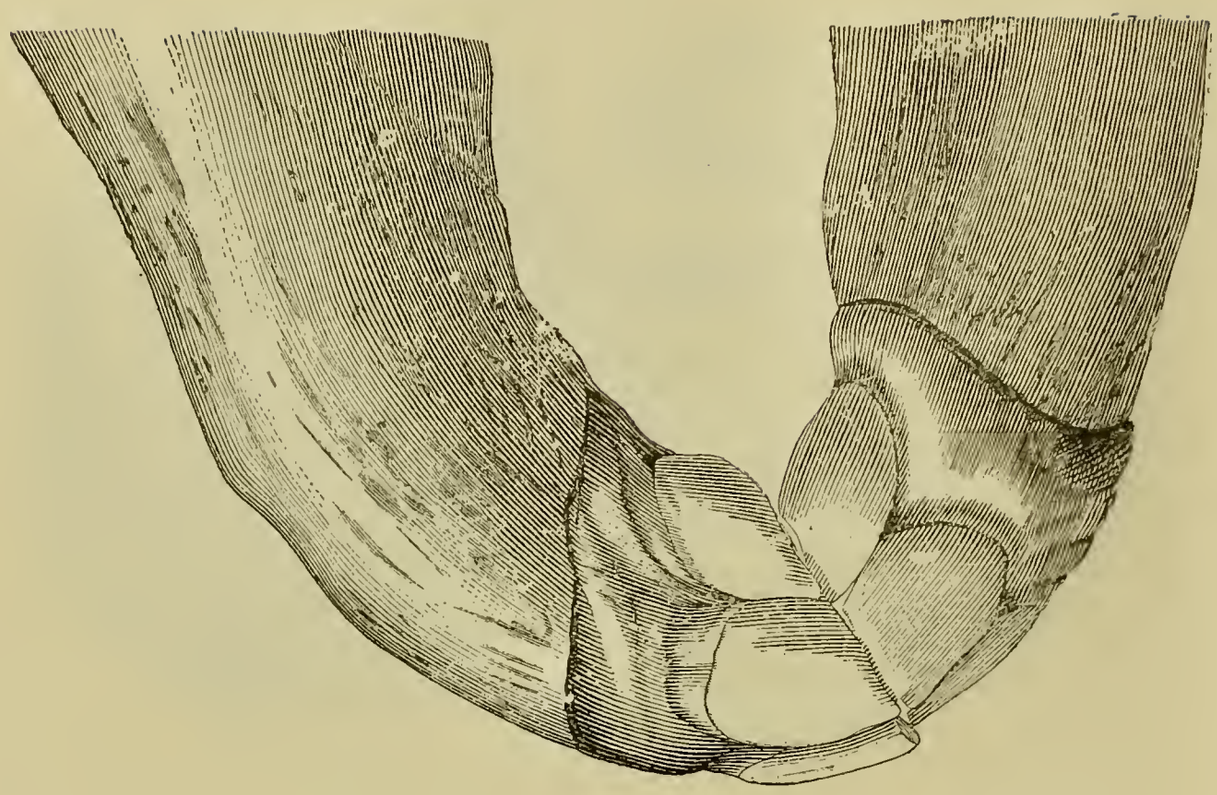


PLATE X.

Twenty Months.—These jaws were taken from a thoroughbred horse which had been fed on oats very early. They seem to *mark* much more than the real age. It is also proper, in the presence of a fact of this kind, to inform ourselves concerning the nature of the alimentation, and to examine with care the external aspect of the colt. The sole consideration of the dental tables would tend to make this animal at least two years old, because the pincers and the intermediates are greatly worn down. Nevertheless, the corners do not show much more wear than at the preceding age; the incisive arcades have a convexity of the same degree; they have not the transverse diameter which they present at two years, even in small thoroughbred horses; finally, the teeth are still well surrounded at their base by the gums. All these are characters which should arrest the attention of the observer, and lead him to consider the animal younger rather than older.



TWO YEARS.

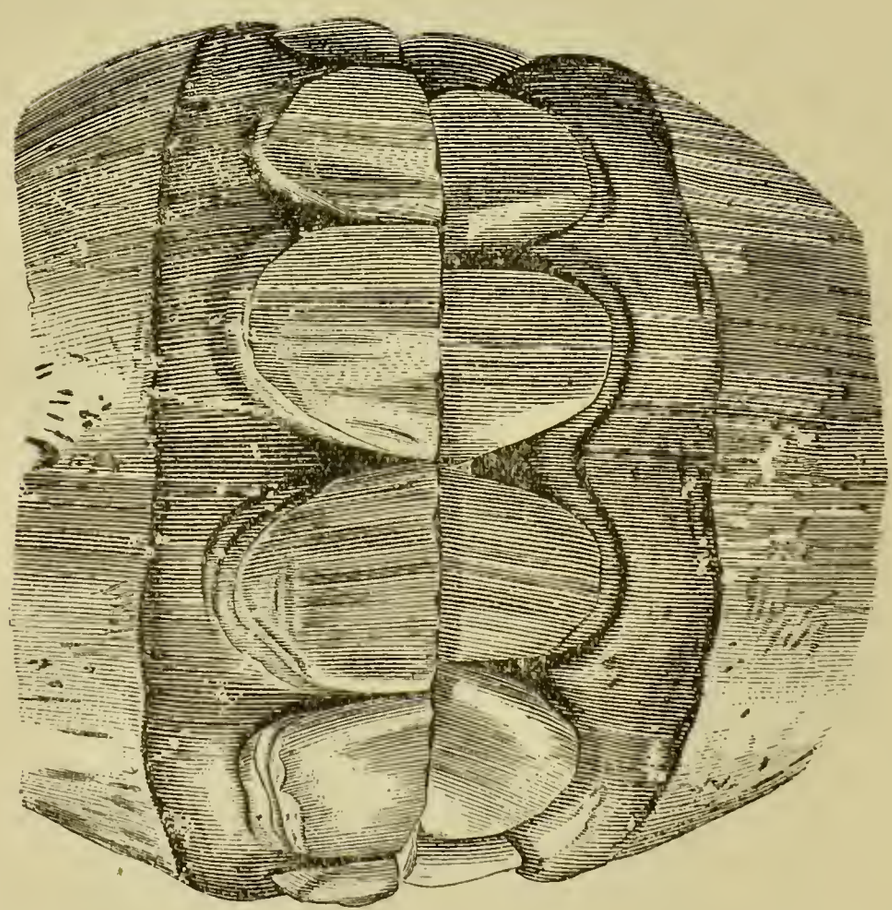
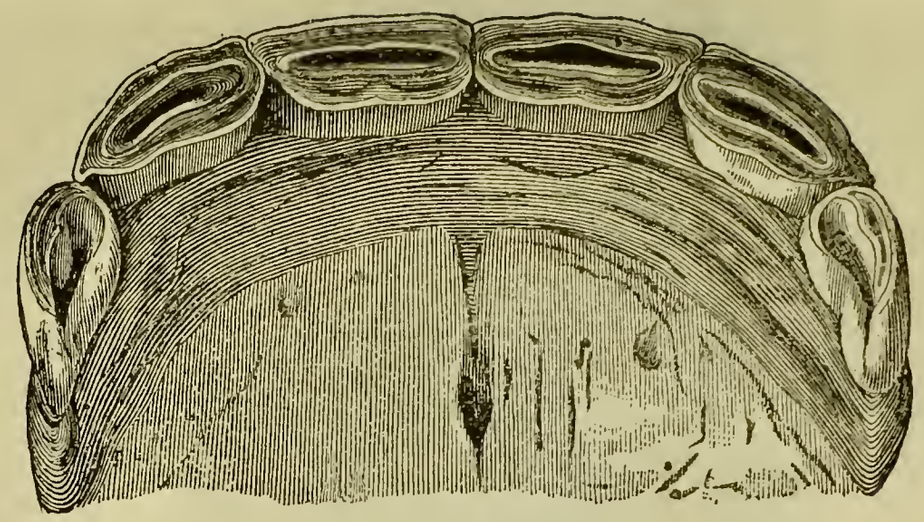
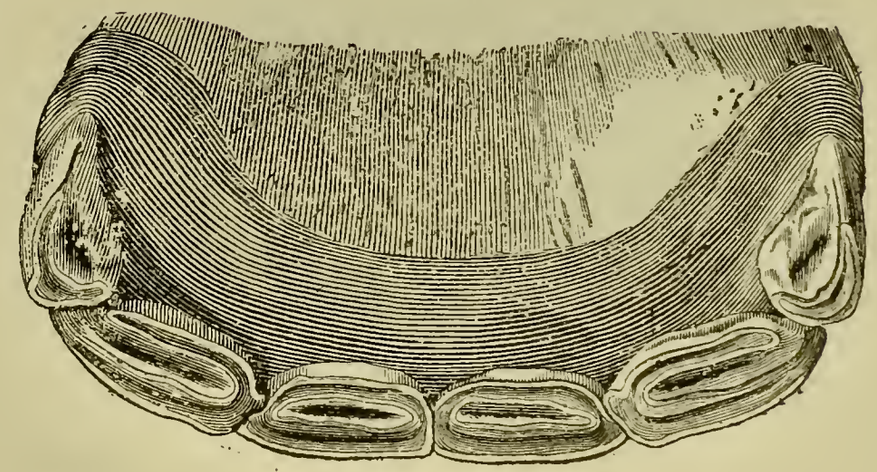
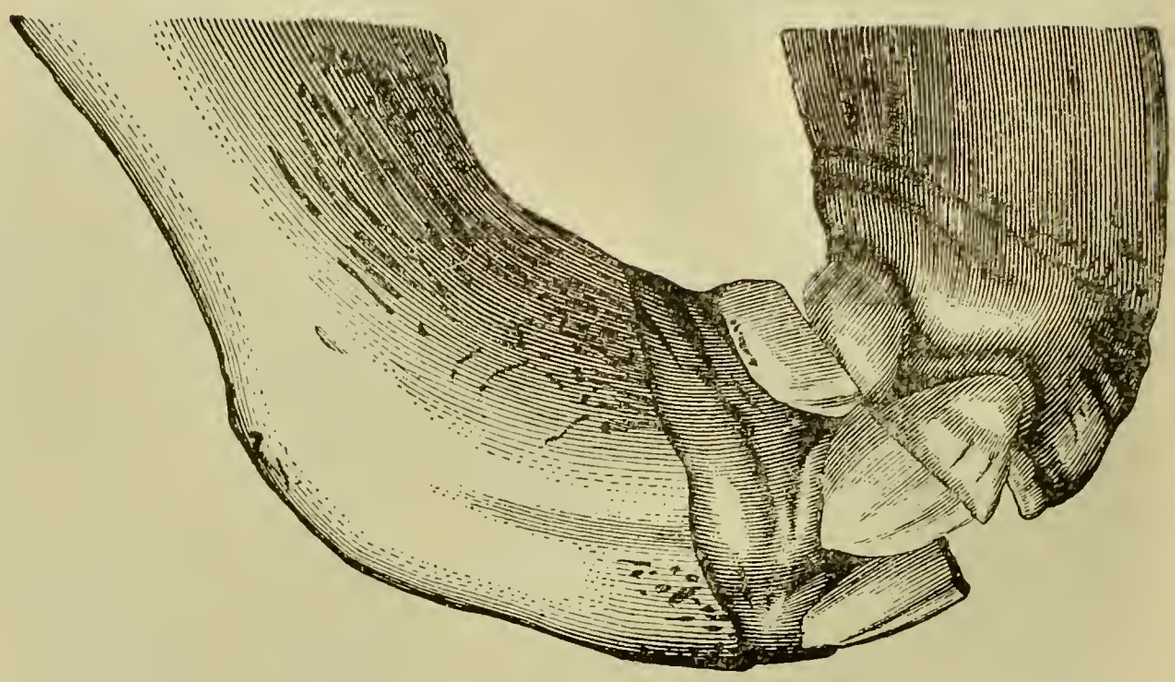


PLATE XI.

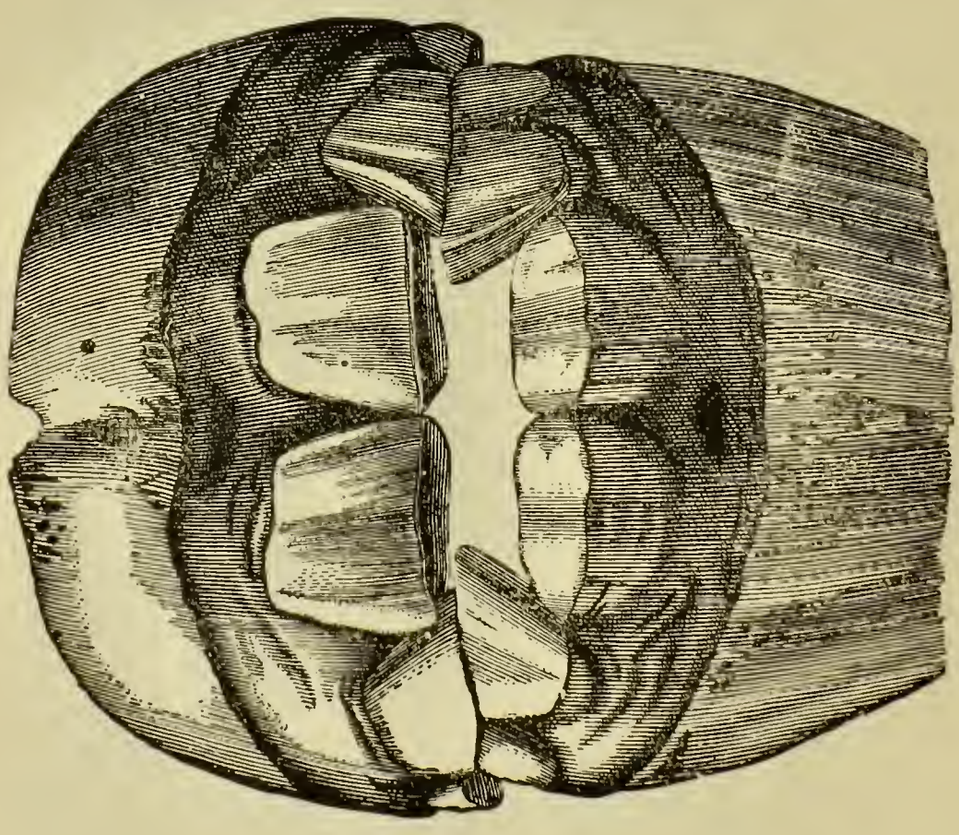
Two Years.—Contrary to the preceding, these jaws belonged to a colt of a lymphatic race, having, since the period of his weaning, been fed almost entirely on forage. Also, to judge of the age from the pure and simple state of the dental tables would be to make this animal only about twenty months old. The subject, nevertheless, was two years and twenty-six days old. The mouth, however, presents some special characters which tend to modify the inferences that would be formed at first sight. Viewed in *front*, the pincers and the intermediates are quite free from the gums at their base, the superior pincers especially. This fact indicates that the permanent teeth should have accomplished their eruption in seven or eight months. In *profile*, the neck of the corners is visible. The *tables* of the latter show decided wear; the dental star is distinctly visible in these teeth, and the wear slightly involves their external border. The central enamel of the superior intermediates forms a complete circle. Finally, the incisive arcades, much elongated transversely, are greatly depressed in the region of the pincers and the intermediates. If to these signs be added the information obtained from the nature of the aliment, the period of the year, the general development, etc., one will be able to arrive easily at an accurate determination.

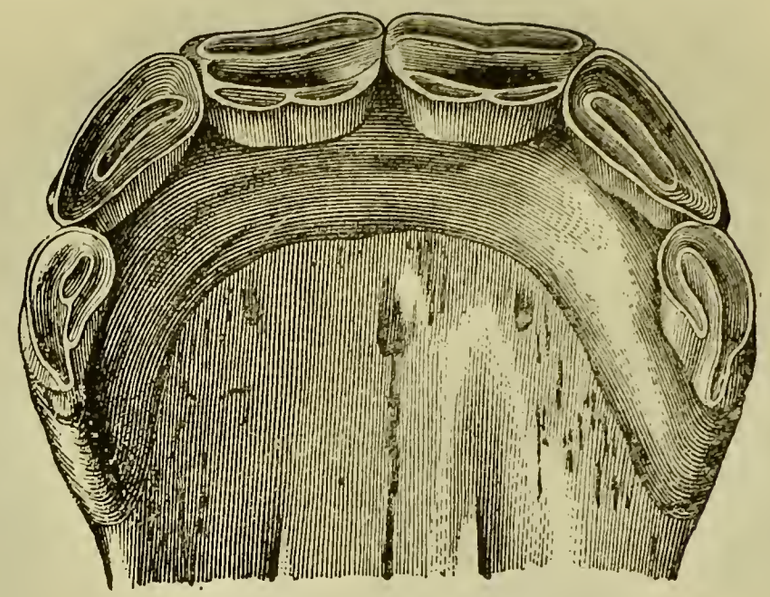






RISING THREE YEARS.





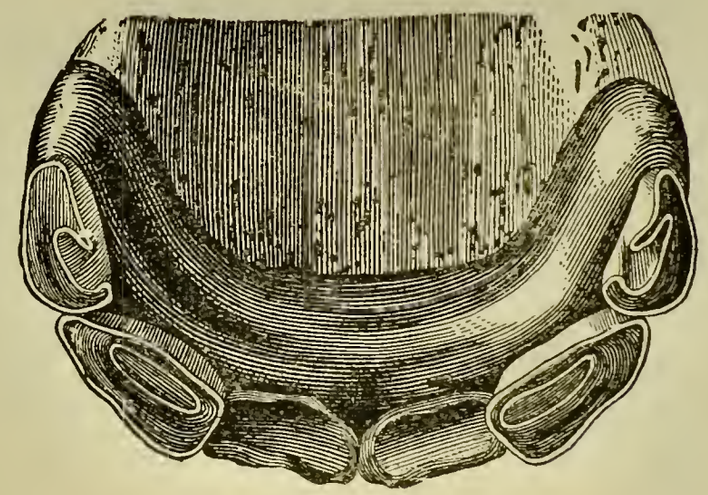
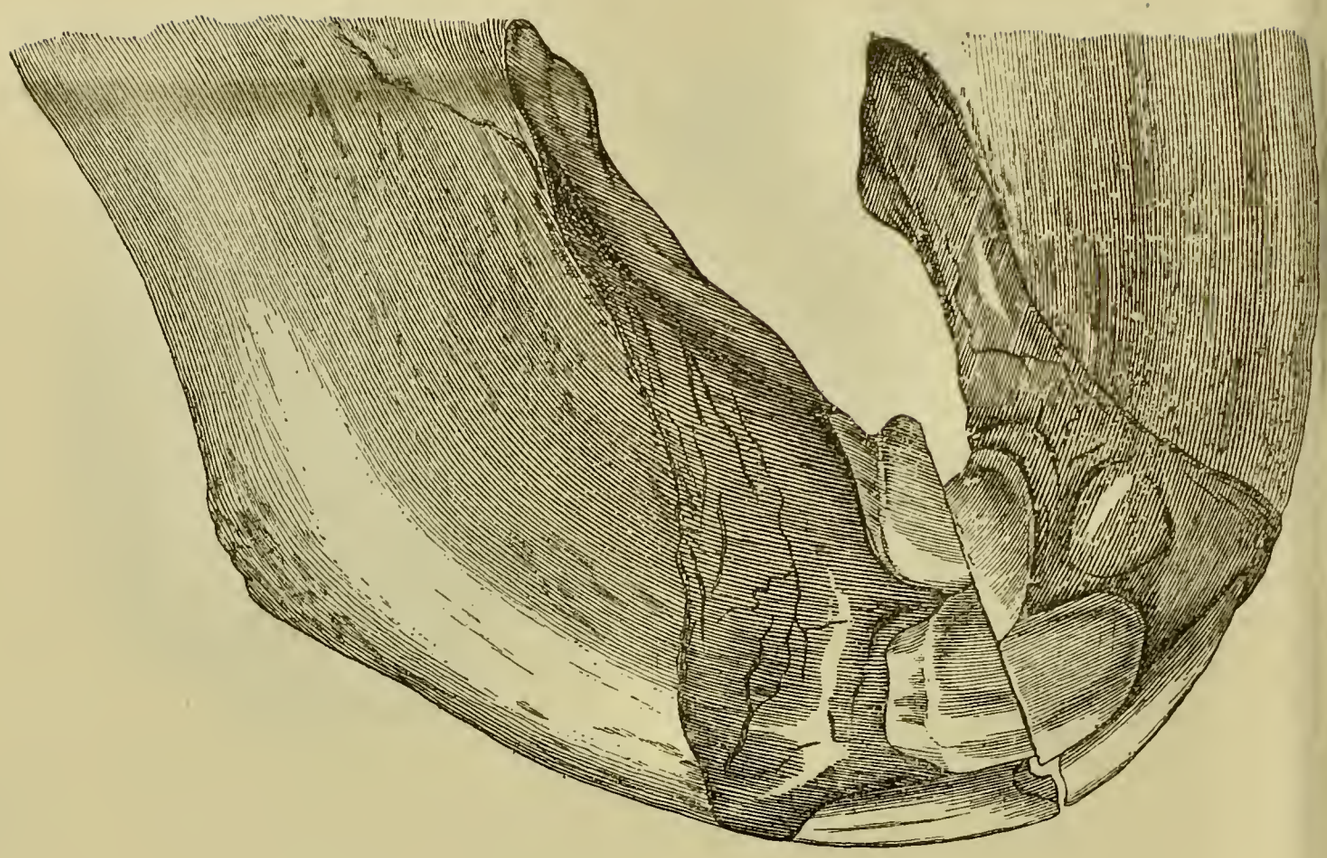


PLATE XII.

Rising Three Years.—Viewed in *front*, the two permanent pincers are seen above; they have not yet reached the level of the intermediates of the first dentition. Below, the adult pincers are just coming through the gums; the mucous membrane still covers the greater part of their anterior face. In *profile*, the intermediates are constricted at their base, and much worn; the free portion of the corners is shorter. The *dental tables* of the superior pincers already show wear, especially upon their anterior border. This is due to the fact that these teeth make their eruption before the shedding of the inferior milk pincers, against which they rub for some months before the latter fall out. Levelling of the intermediates and much wearing of the corners.



THREE YEARS PAST.

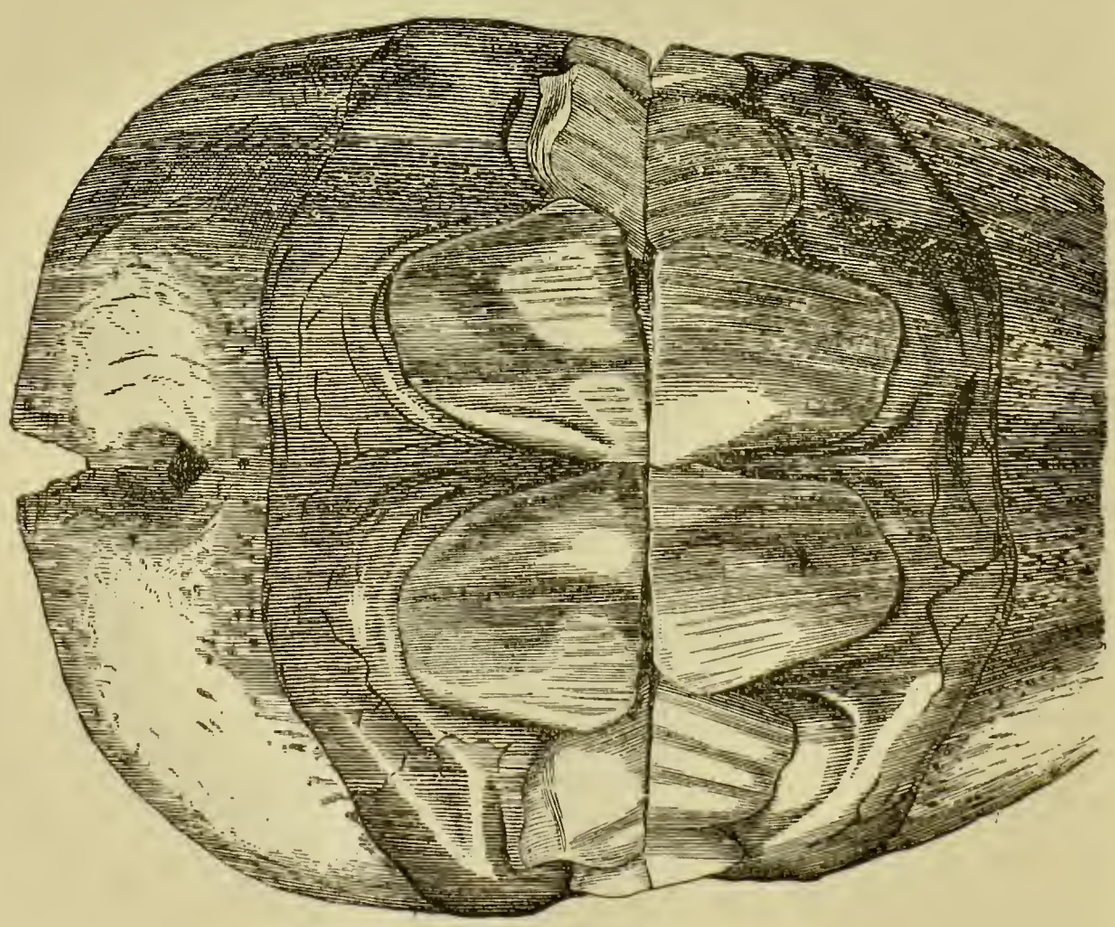
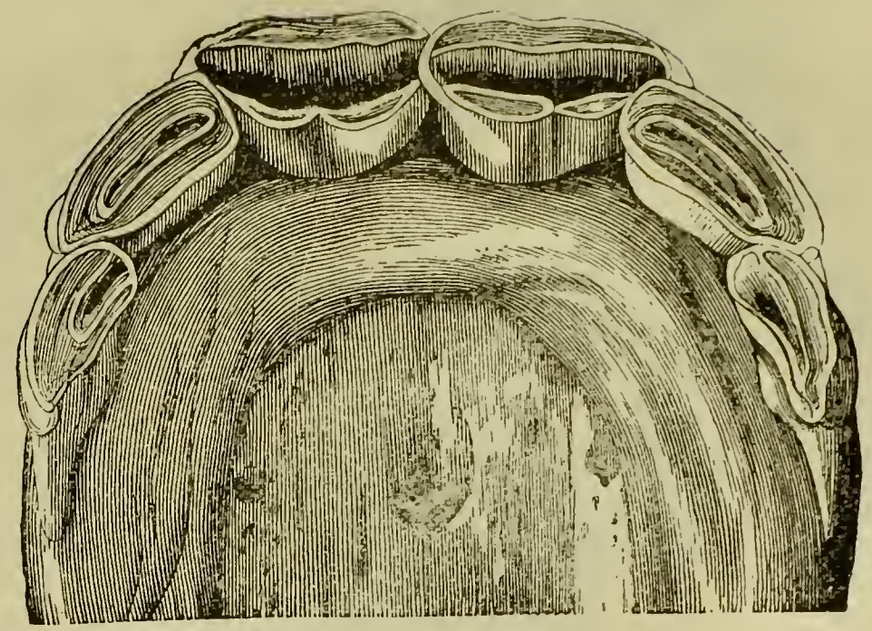
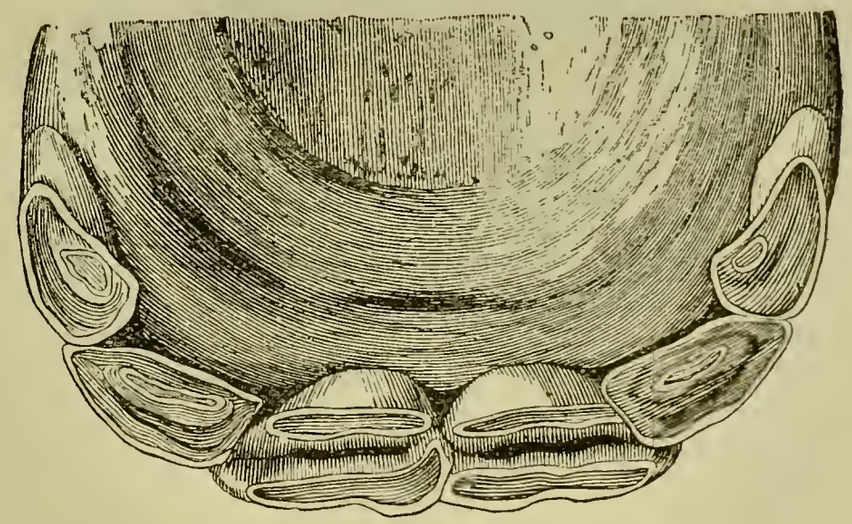
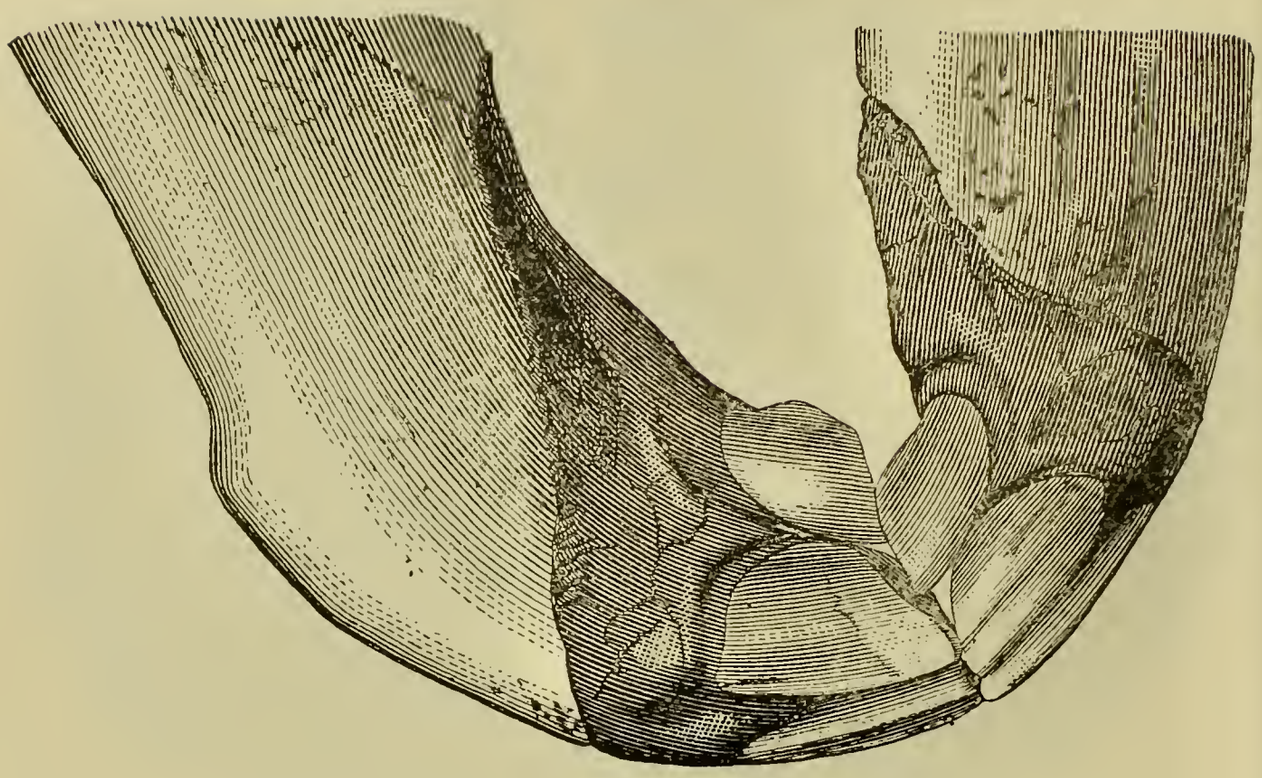


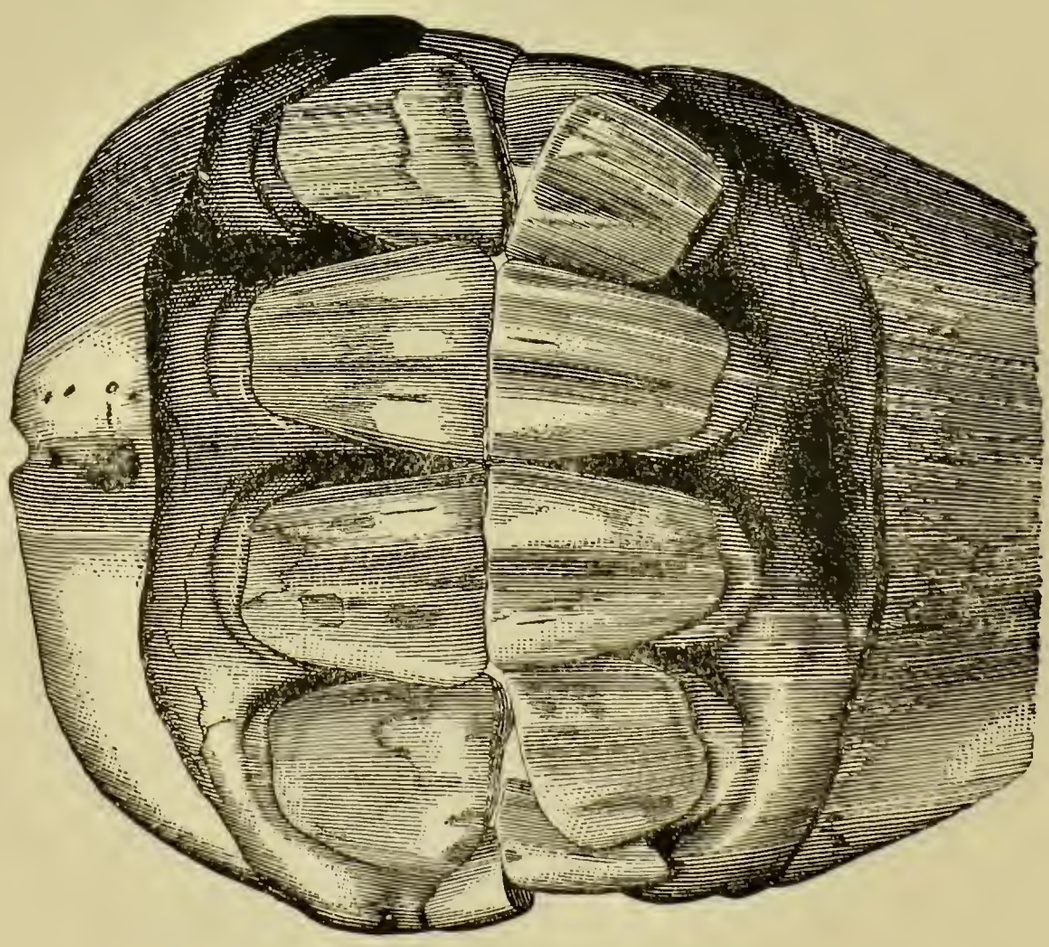
PLATE XIII.

Three Years Past.—Viewed in *front*, the four permanent pincers are seen, much wider and larger than the neighboring teeth. The anterior border of the superior pincers is slightly oblique; as a result, its external part is not in contact with the corresponding border of the inferior. In *profile*, the milk intermediates are much pushed out and very short; the corners are constricted at their base and shortened; their table is worn off squarely. Between the corner and the intermediate, on the left, is found a prominence due to the protrusion, under the gums, of the permanent intermediate, whose eruption is about to take place. The *dental tables* of the inferior intermediates are very much worn; above, they are somewhat less so. The inferior corners are almost destitute of the central enamel. As to the *permanent teeth*, the wear is not the same in both jaws; the inferior are the more worn, because they come out before the superior.









RISING FOUR YEARS.

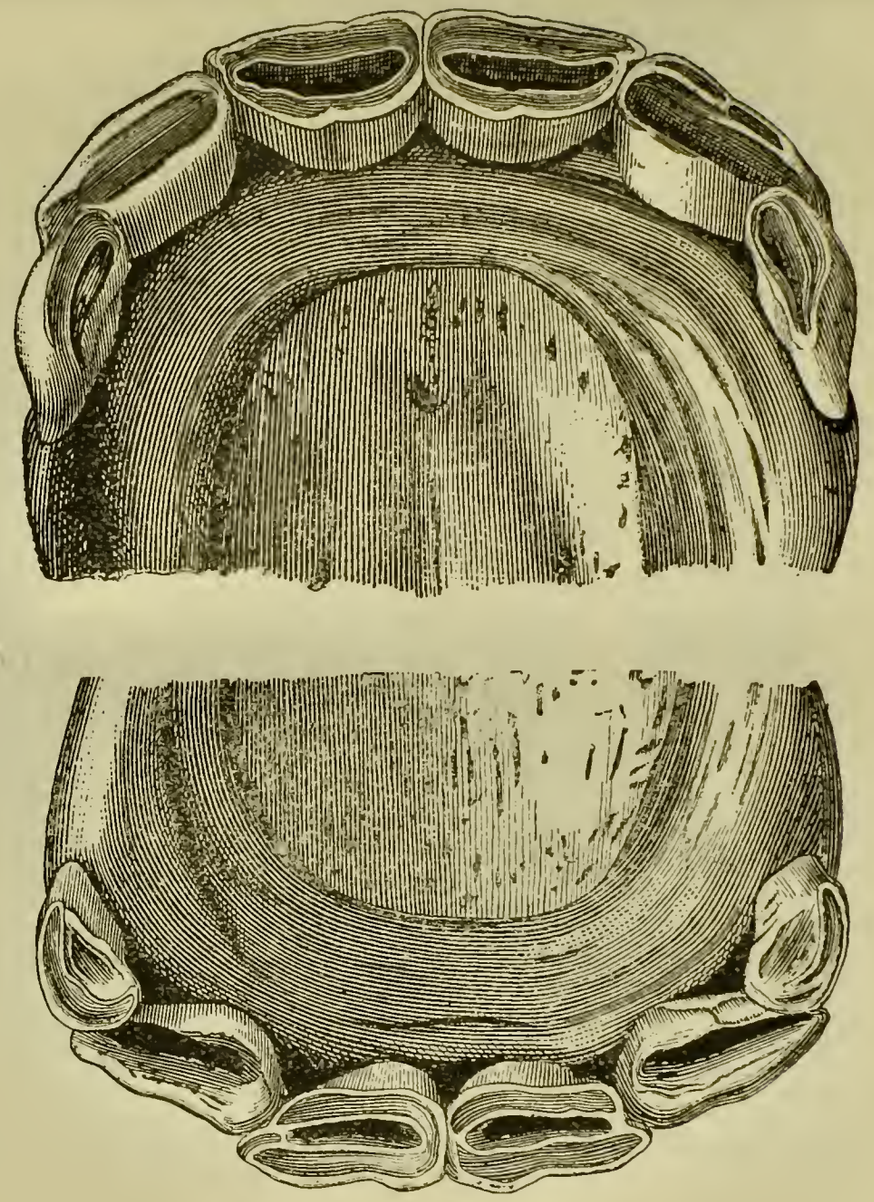
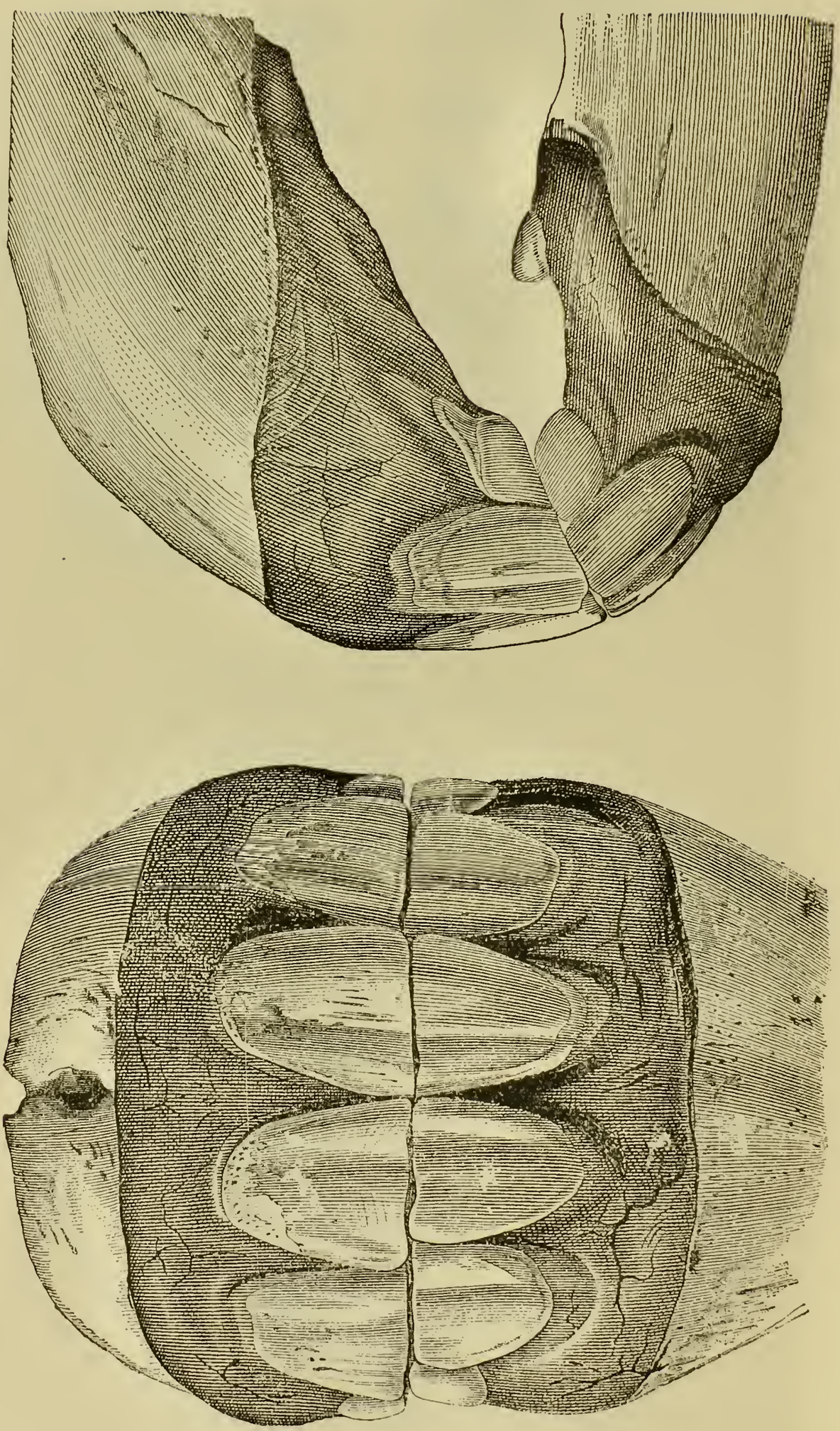
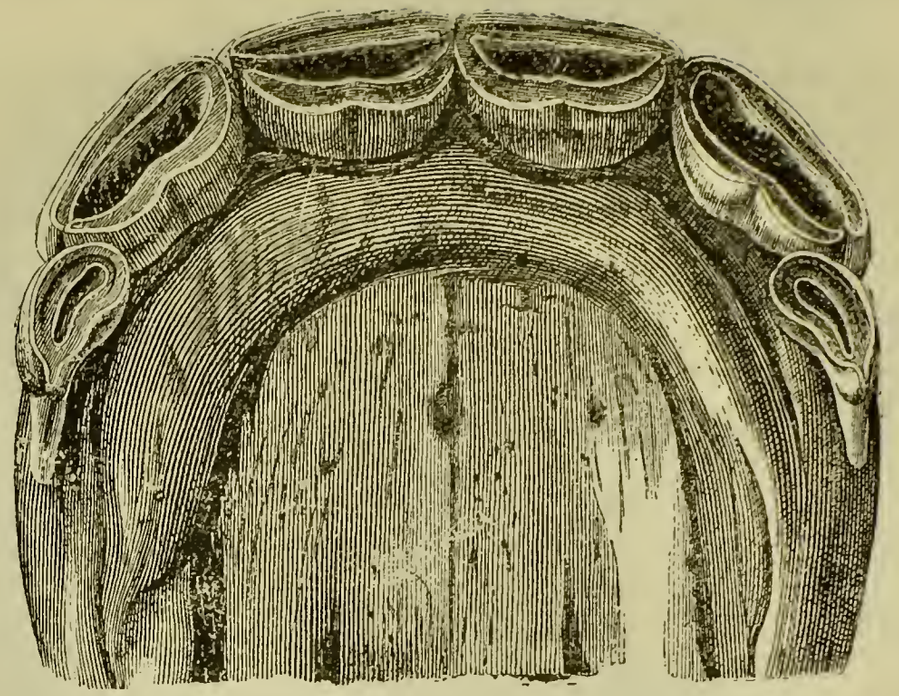


PLATE XIV

Rising Four Years.—Viewed in *front*, there are seen, in each jaw, four permanent incisors: two pincers, in contact with each other, the superior with the inferior, and two intermediates which are not yet on a level with the pincers. In *profile*, this fact is shown by an interval between the superior and inferior intermediates. In the corners, the tables appear little worn. This is due to the fact that the animal, during its first dentition, was nourished upon soft aliment. The pincers are very much worn in both jaws; their central enamel is separated from the peripheral, especially in the superior incisors, because it is in this jaw that the eruption of these teeth commences. Finally, the intermediates, still virgin, almost touch, and consequently are at the point of being used. All these characters sufficiently correct the aberrant state of the corners, whose wear is not in harmony with that of the other incisors.



FOUR YEARS.



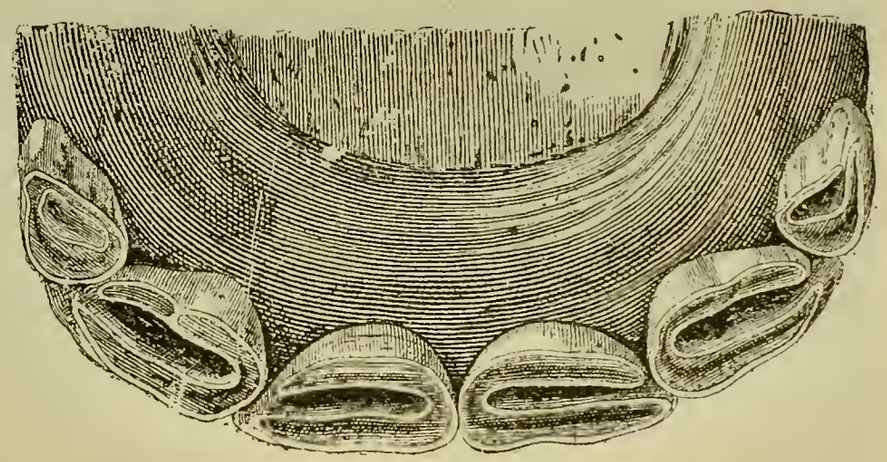
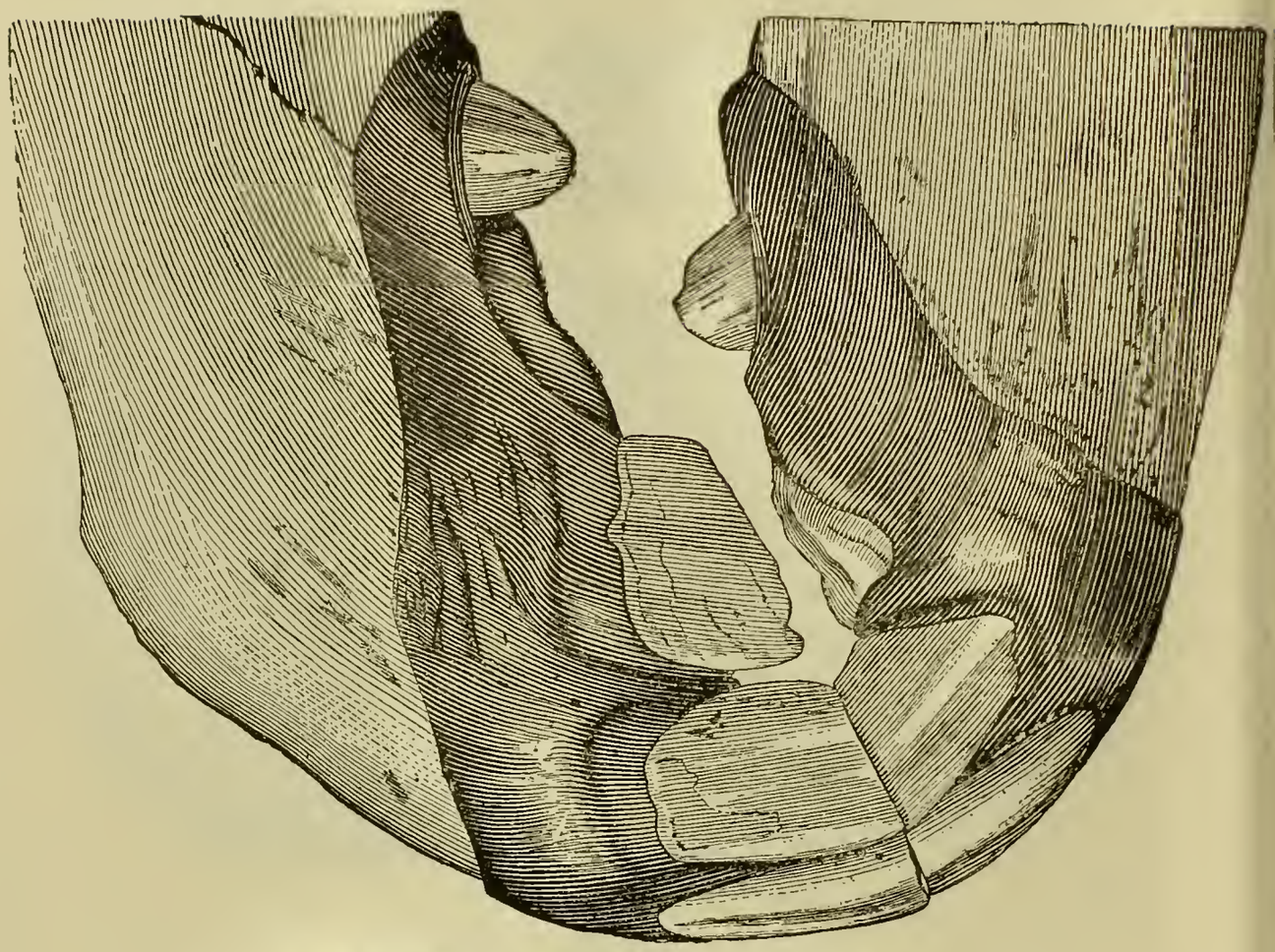
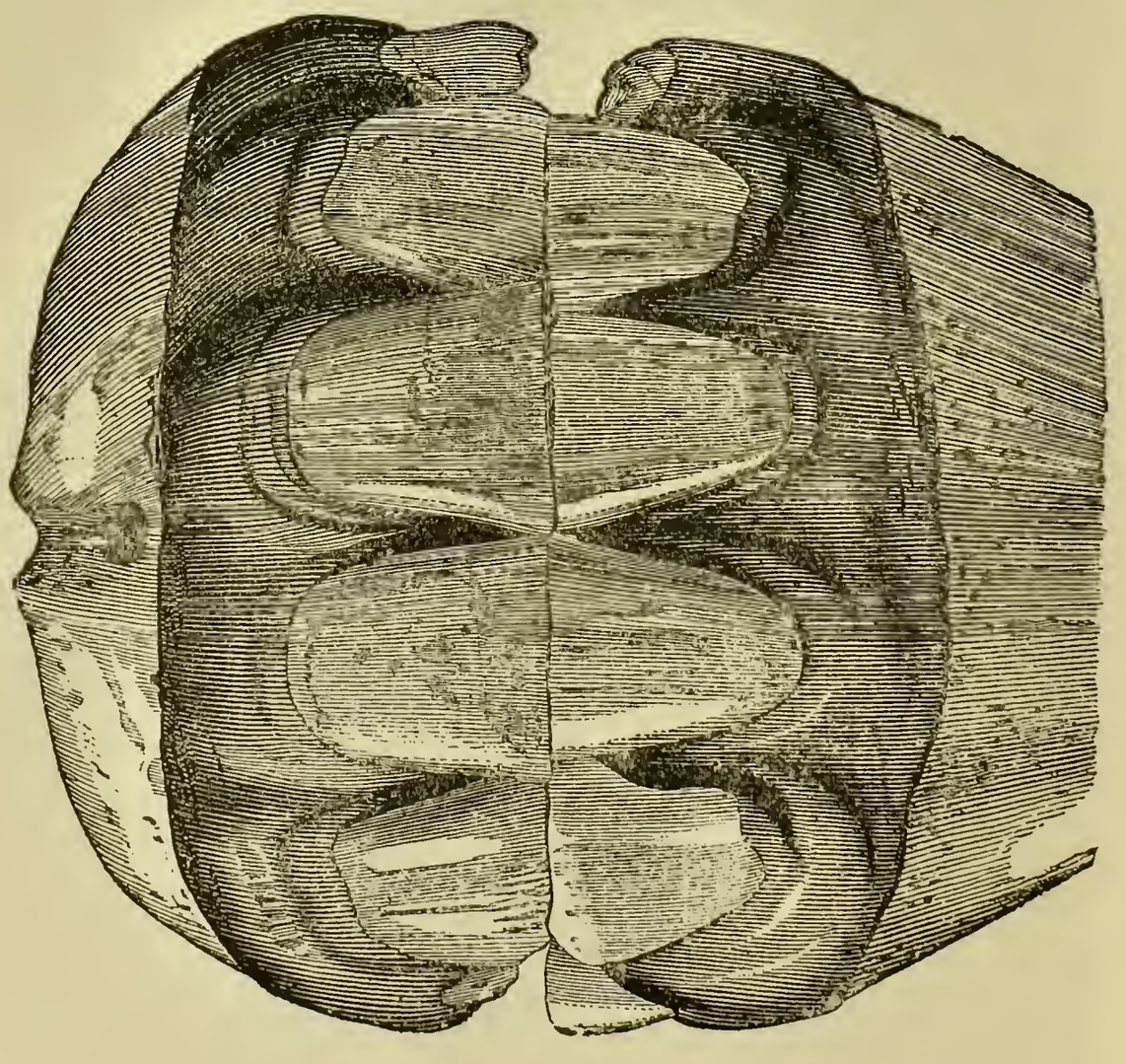


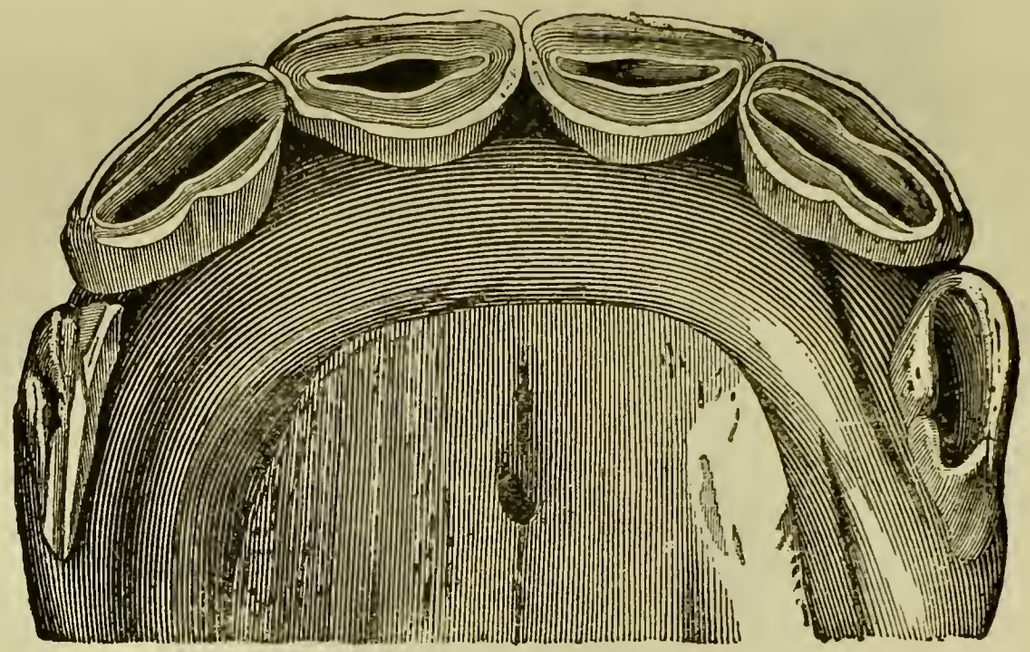
PLATE XV.

Four Years.—Viewed in *front*, all the permanent superior teeth are in contact with the inferior; the jaws, in the part which corresponds to the pincers and the intermediates, have acquired so much width, from one side to the other, that the deciduous corners can scarcely be seen. In *profile*, the latter appear very small; the superior commence to be pushed from their sockets; behind the inferior is seen the extremity of the canine tooth. The *tables* of the intermediates are much worn, especially of the superior, which came out first. The central enamel, in the pincers, forms a distinct oval only in the superior incisors; if this character be absent in the others, it is due to the fact that the external dental cavity is more or less fissured in the vicinity of its external border. The inferior corners are almost levelled; the superior are more so; besides, they are stripped around their base; a portion of their root is seen.





FOUR YEARS PAST.



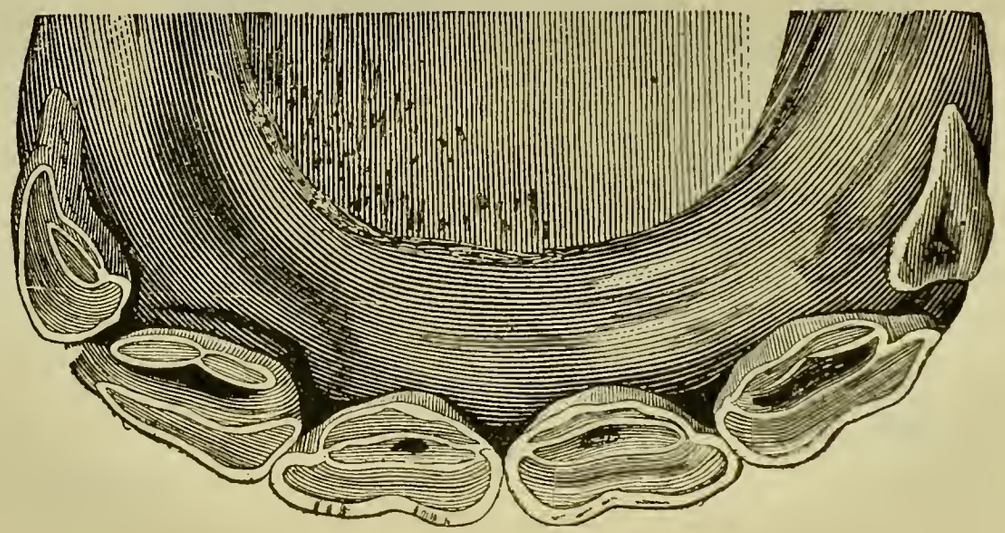
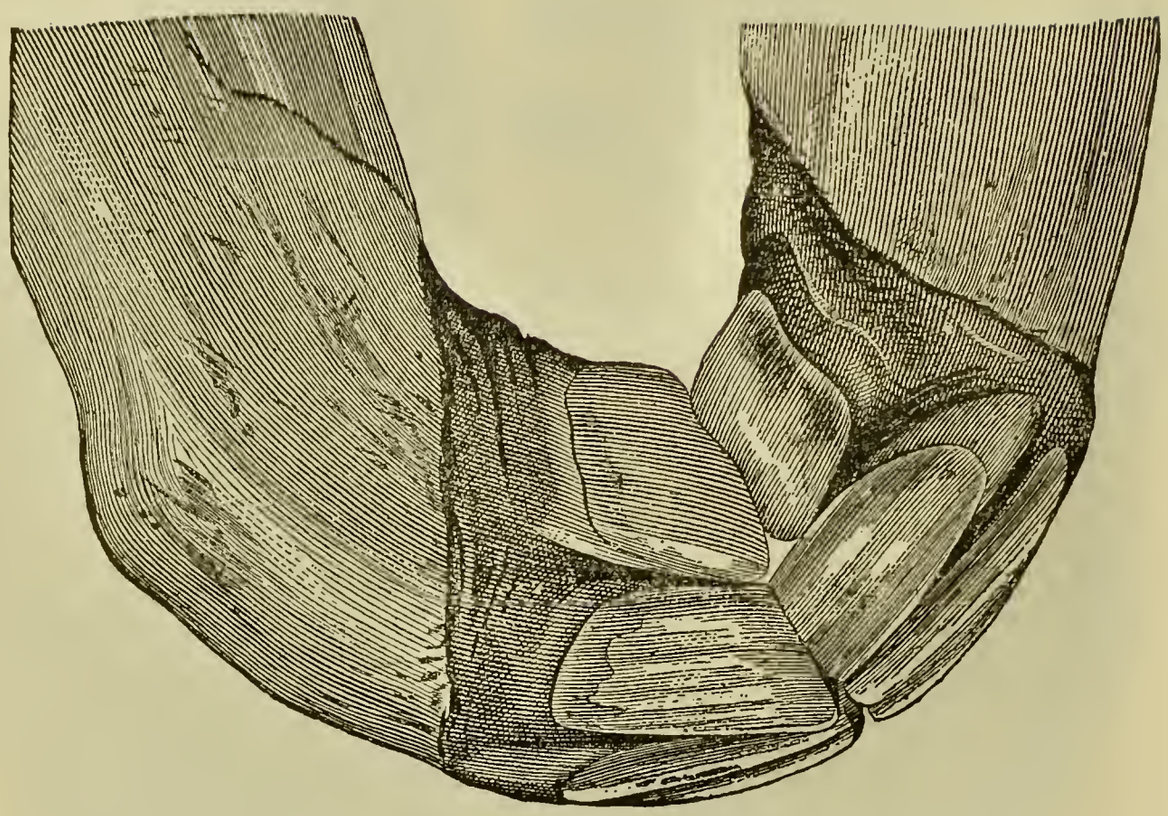
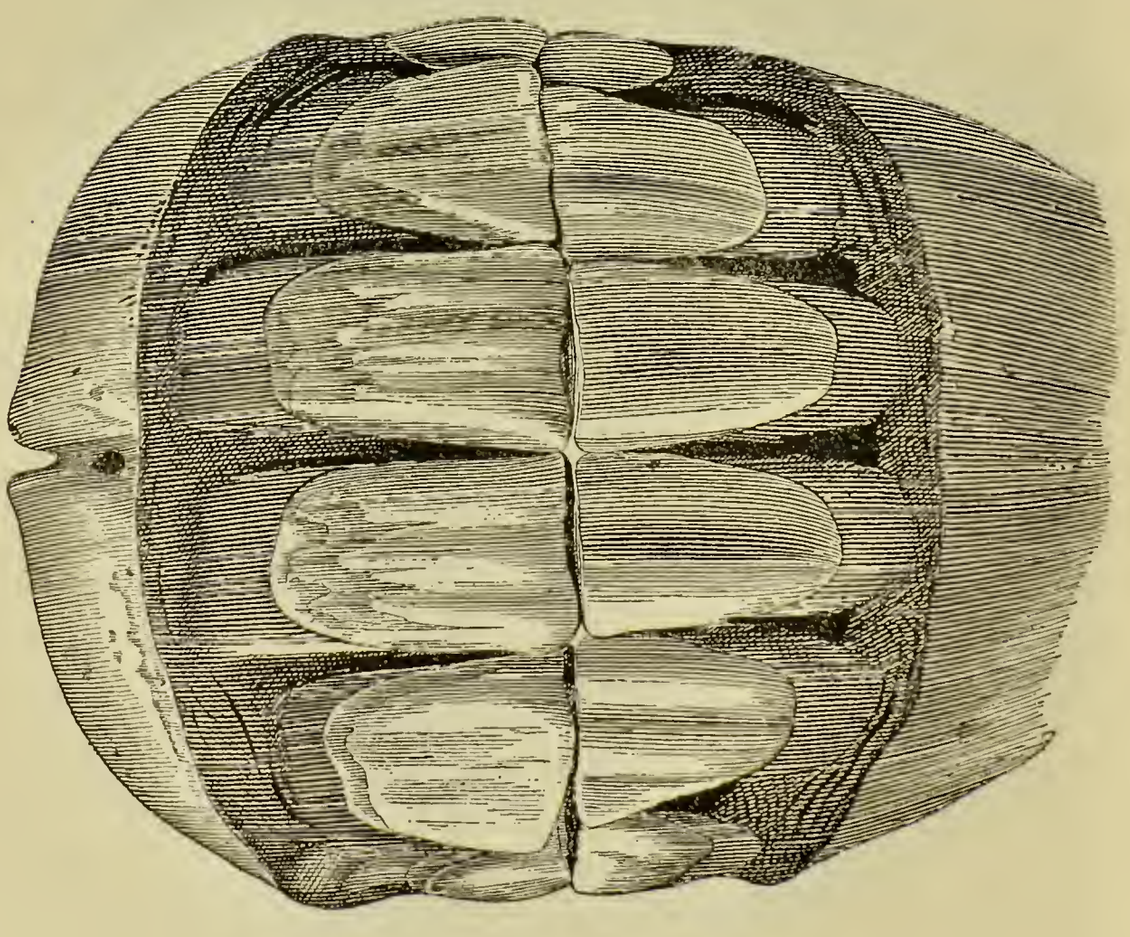


PLATE XVI.

Four Years Past.—Viewed in *front*, the superior permanent intermediates are in contact with the inferior intermediates, and on the same level as the pincers. The superior and inferior corners are permanent incisors. In *profile*, it is easy to see that the eruption of the latter teeth is not yet completed, especially that of the inferior, which just pierces the gum. Upon the *tables*, the right superior corner is ready to fall out; nothing but its root remains. The inferior corner of the same side is levelled, but is still firm. The superior left corner tooth is permanent and still virgin; its posterior border has just come through the gum. As to the inferior left, it commences to show itself. The superior intermediates, coming out before the inferior, show more marked wear upon their posterior border. The central enamel, in the inferior pincers, is distinct from the peripheral; in the superior pincers this already exists.



RISING FIVE YEARS.



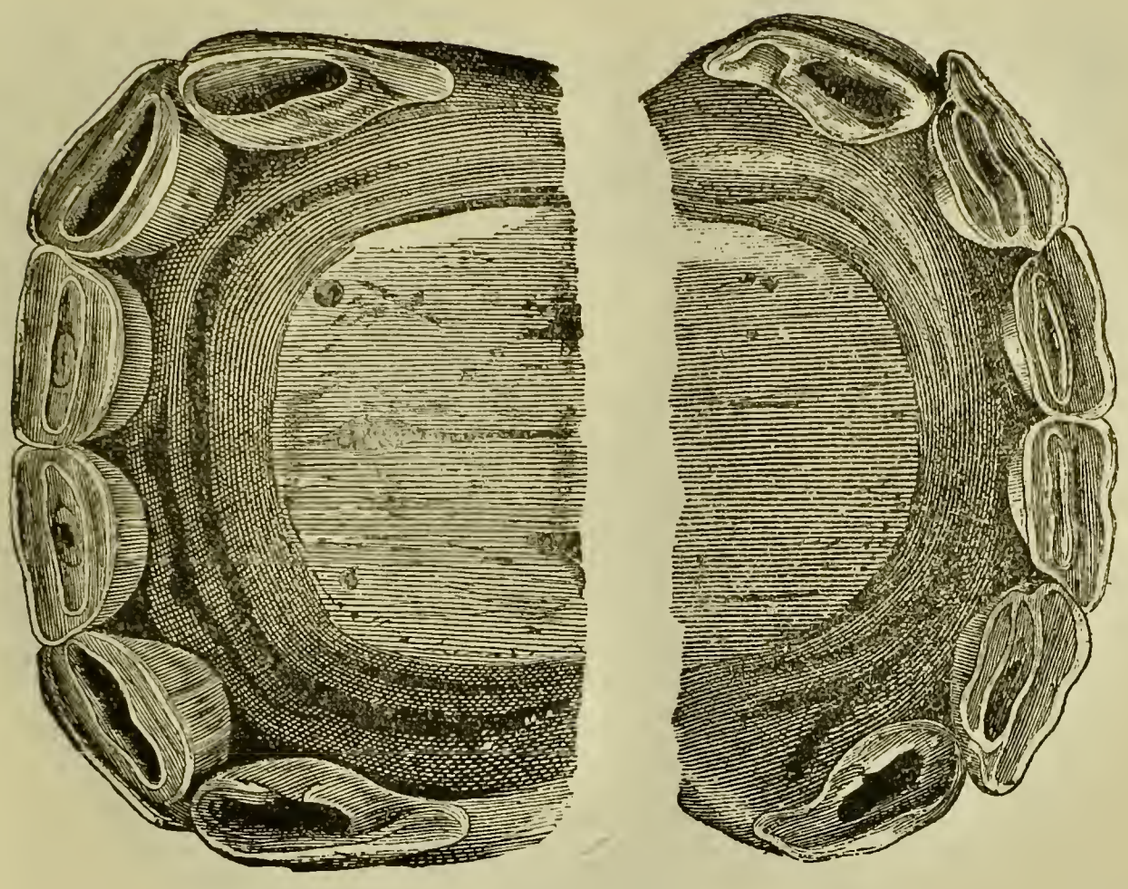
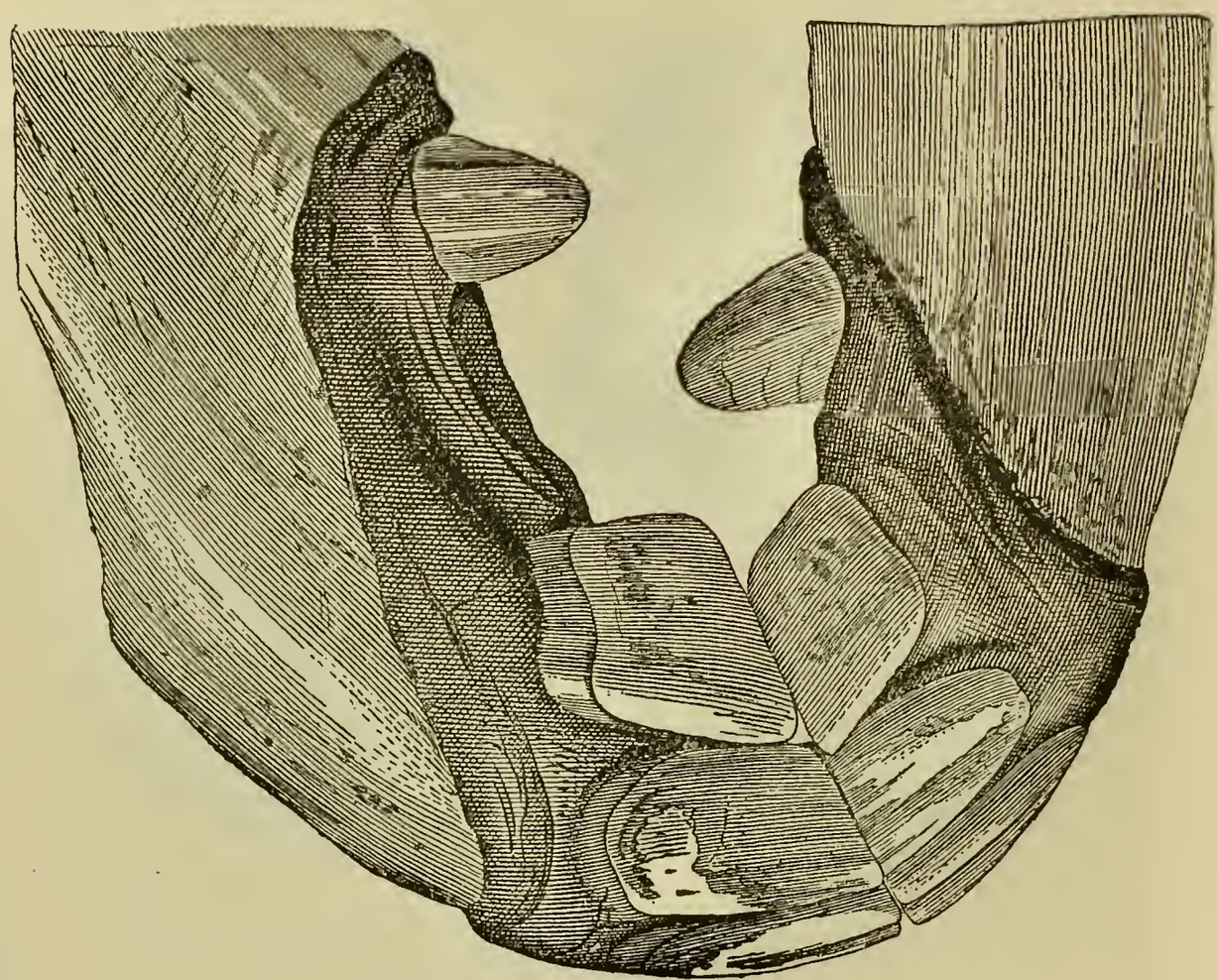


PLATE XVII.

Rising Five Years.—The four milk corners have fallen out and are replaced by those of the second dentition; the latter, not being on a level yet with the intermediates, are absolutely virgin. The *tables* of the other teeth show more wear than at the preceding age. In the superior incisors, the central enamel is well circumscribed in the pincers and the intermediates. Below, it is at the point of becoming so in the intermediates.

FIVE YEARS.



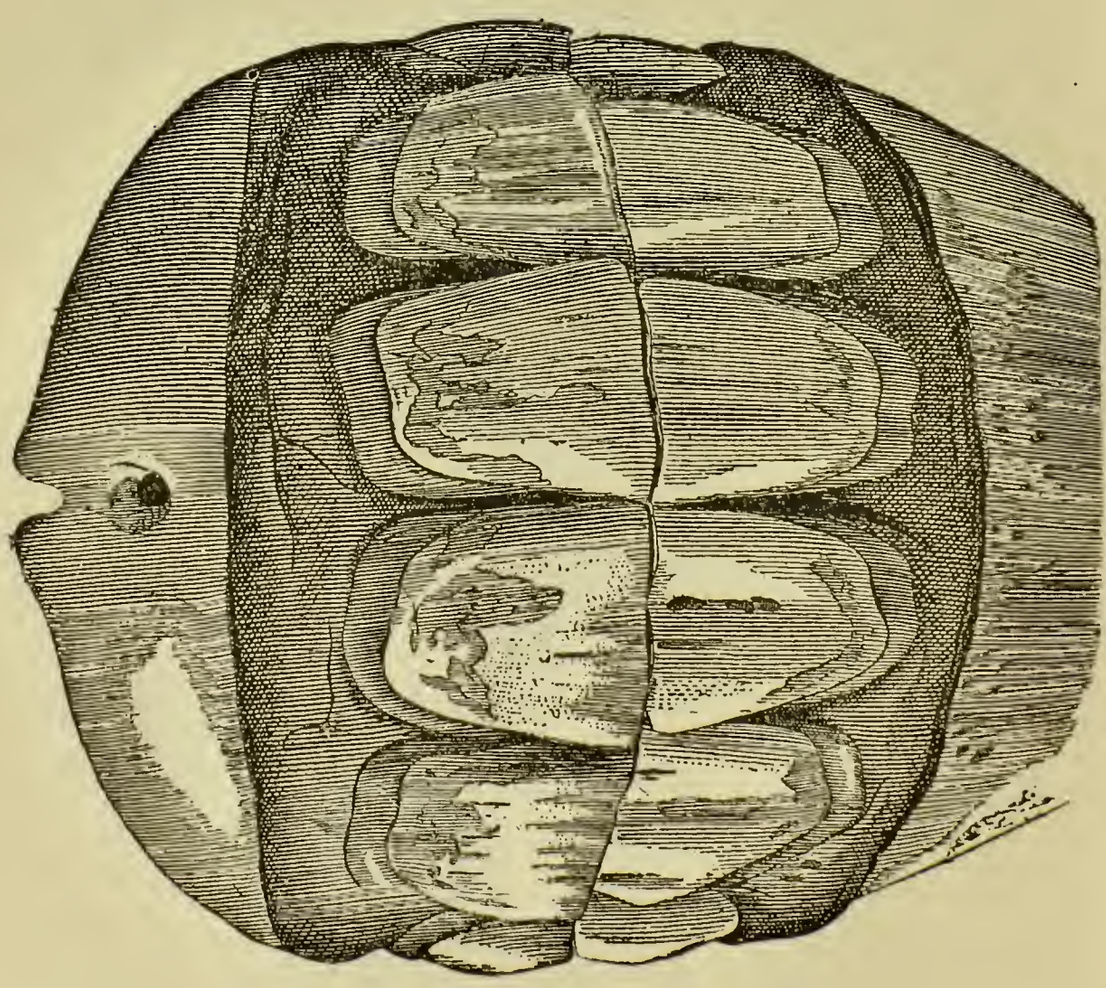
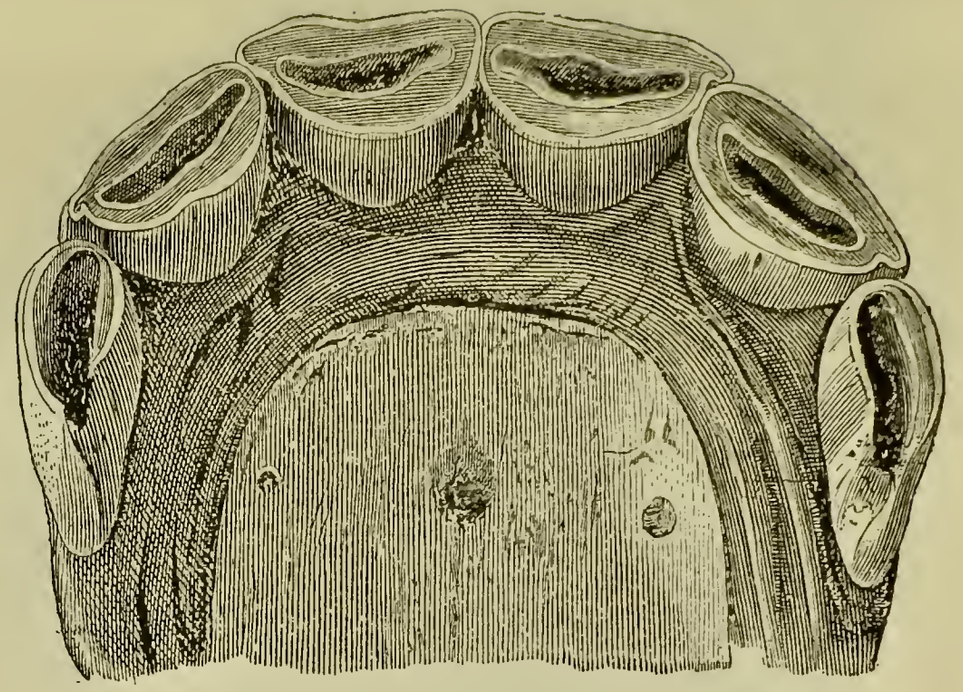
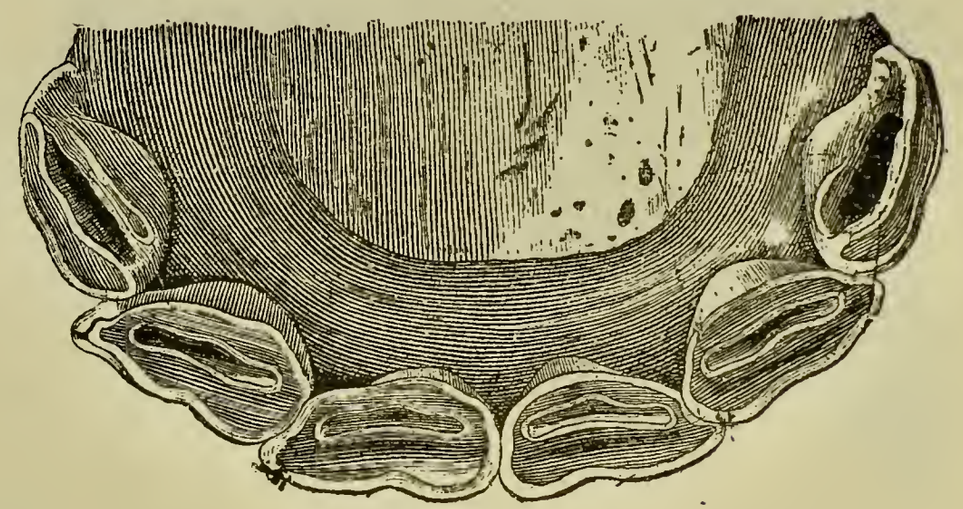
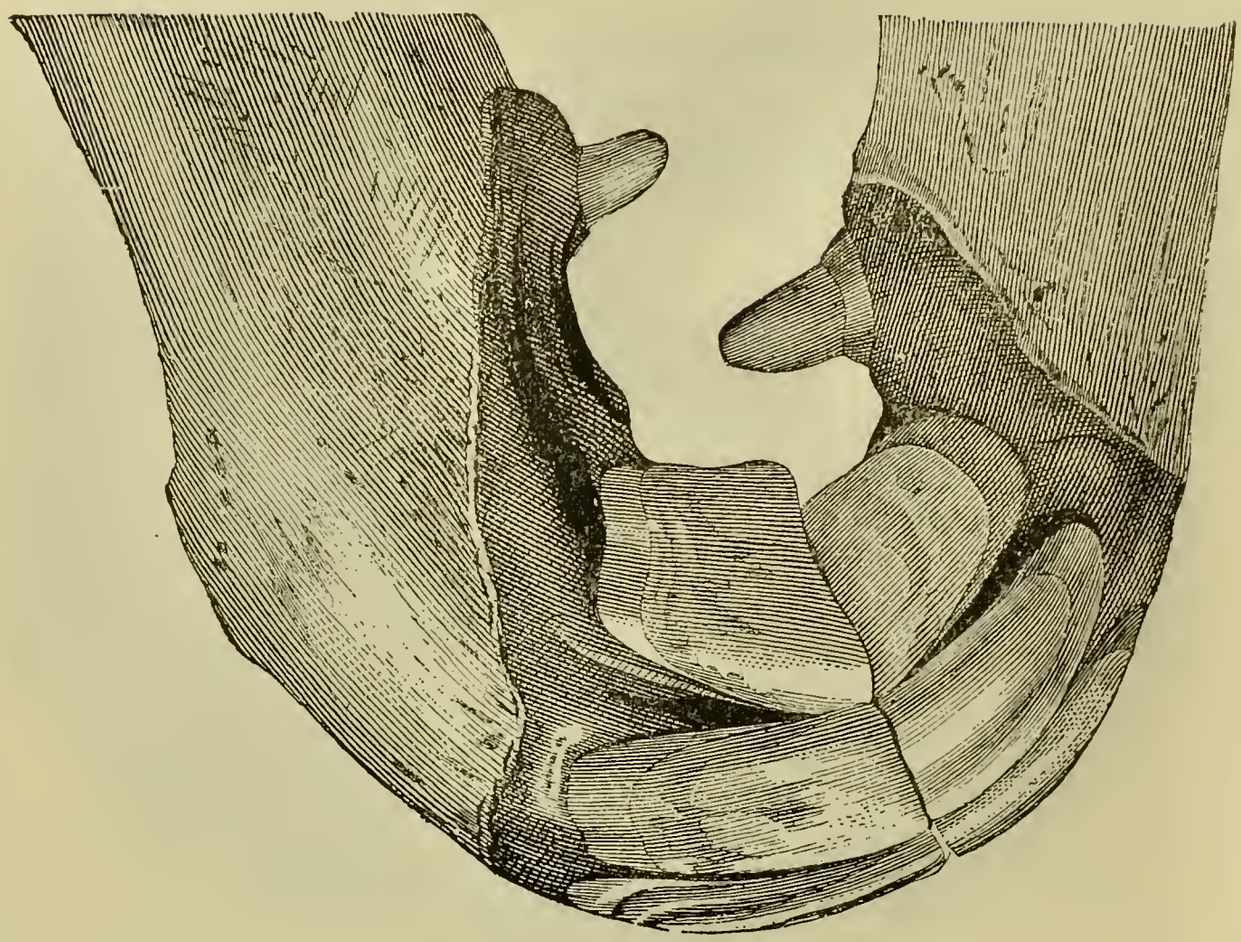


PLATE XVIII.

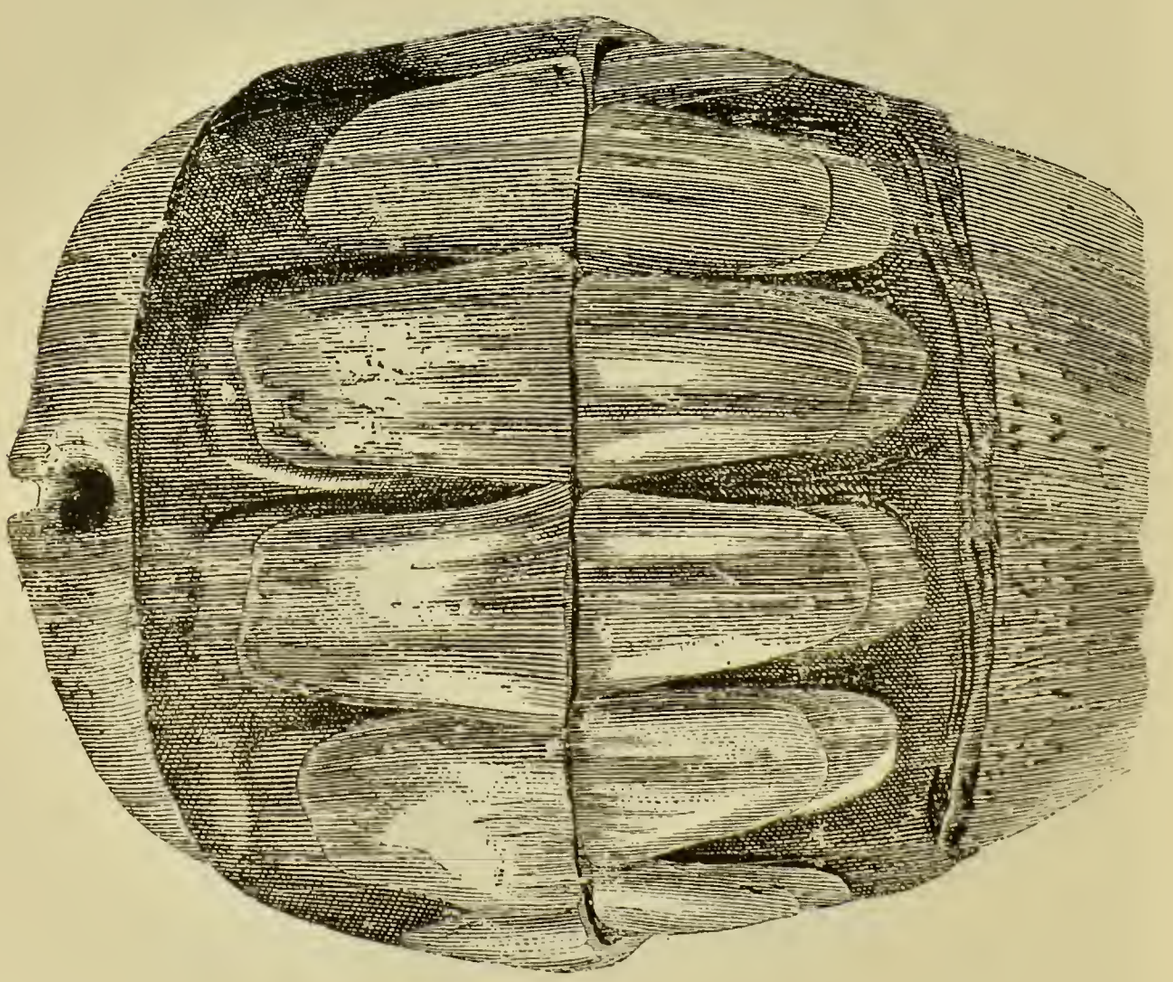
Five Years.—The mouth is entirely *made*. All the permanent teeth are on the same level in their respective jaws. Viewed in *front*, the jaws appear very convex in both directions. In *profile*, they have a similar disposition; the canines are completely out. Upon the *tables*, it is seen that the corners are already commencing to wear at their anterior border. The pincers are almost levelled, but the infundibulum or cup is still very elongated transversely, and narrow from before to behind; it is closer to their posterior border. This form of the infundibulum indicates that the external dental cavity was not very deep, in consequence of the abundance of the central cement; these teeth are also soon levelled. Almost the same disposition, as regards the external dental cavity, exists in the inferior intermediates. In order, therefore, not to make a misinterpretation of the signification of the levelling, it is necessary to take into consideration the form and dimensions of the central enamel. In this way alone can the degree of wear of the tooth be inferred. The incisive arcades form an almost regular semicircle in each jaw.







SIX YEARS.



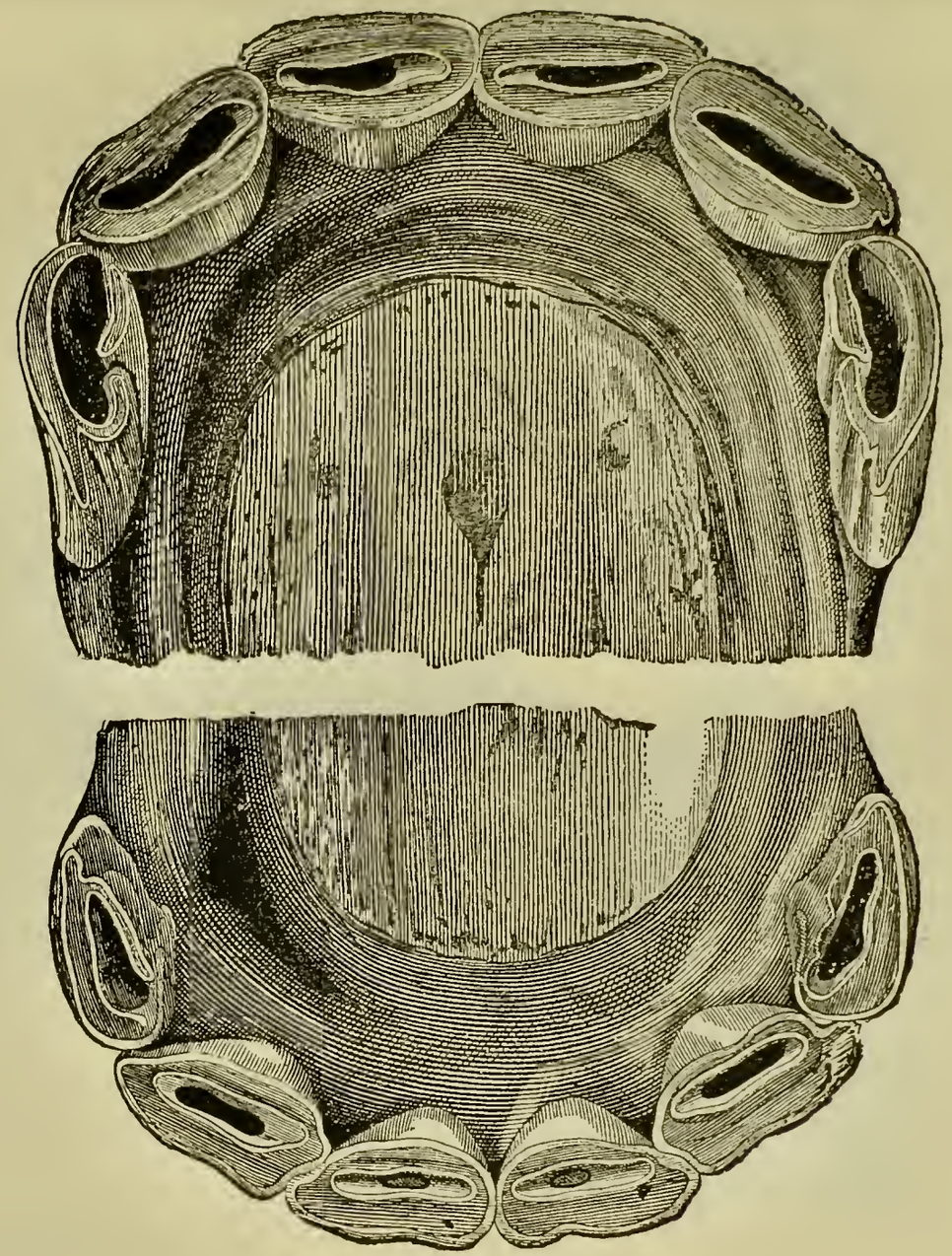
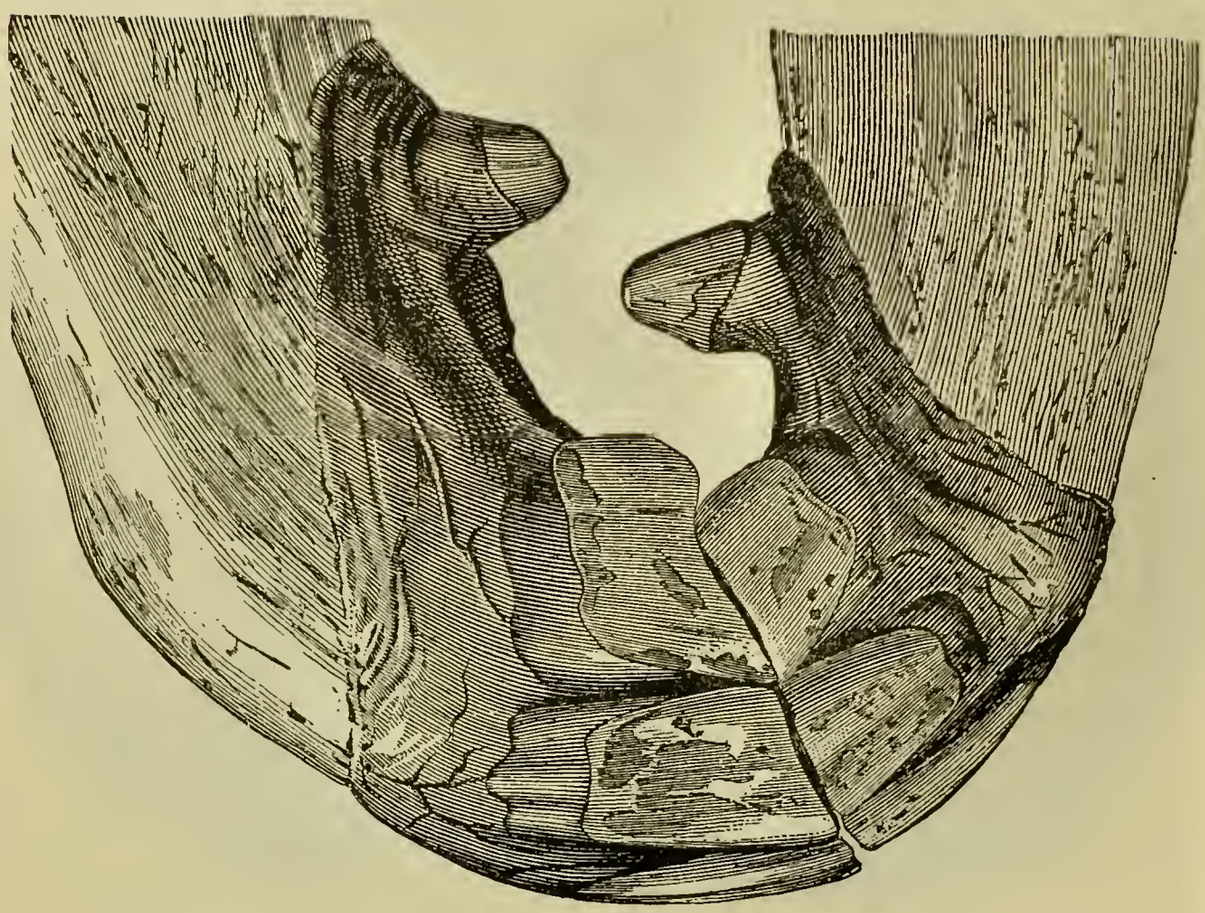


PLATE XIX.

Six Years.—Viewed in *front*, the jaws present almost the same characters as at five years. In *profile*, we see here a retarded eruption of the canines; these teeth have not yet reached their full length; they are therefore incapable of giving any exact information as to the age. The *tables* furnish by far the best indications. The posterior border of the inferior and superior corners is notably worn. The pincers are ordinarily levelled, and the table tends to take an oval form. In the figure, the levelling of the inferior pincers is not altogether complete. Nevertheless, the central enamel is wider from before to behind, and narrower from one side to the other, than at five years; it is also closer to the posterior border of the table. The same remarks apply to the intermediates. It will be noticed that the external dental cavity is fissured upon its posterior face in the two superior corners. This irregularity of form, somewhat common, amounts to little in the determination of the age.

SEVEN YEARS.



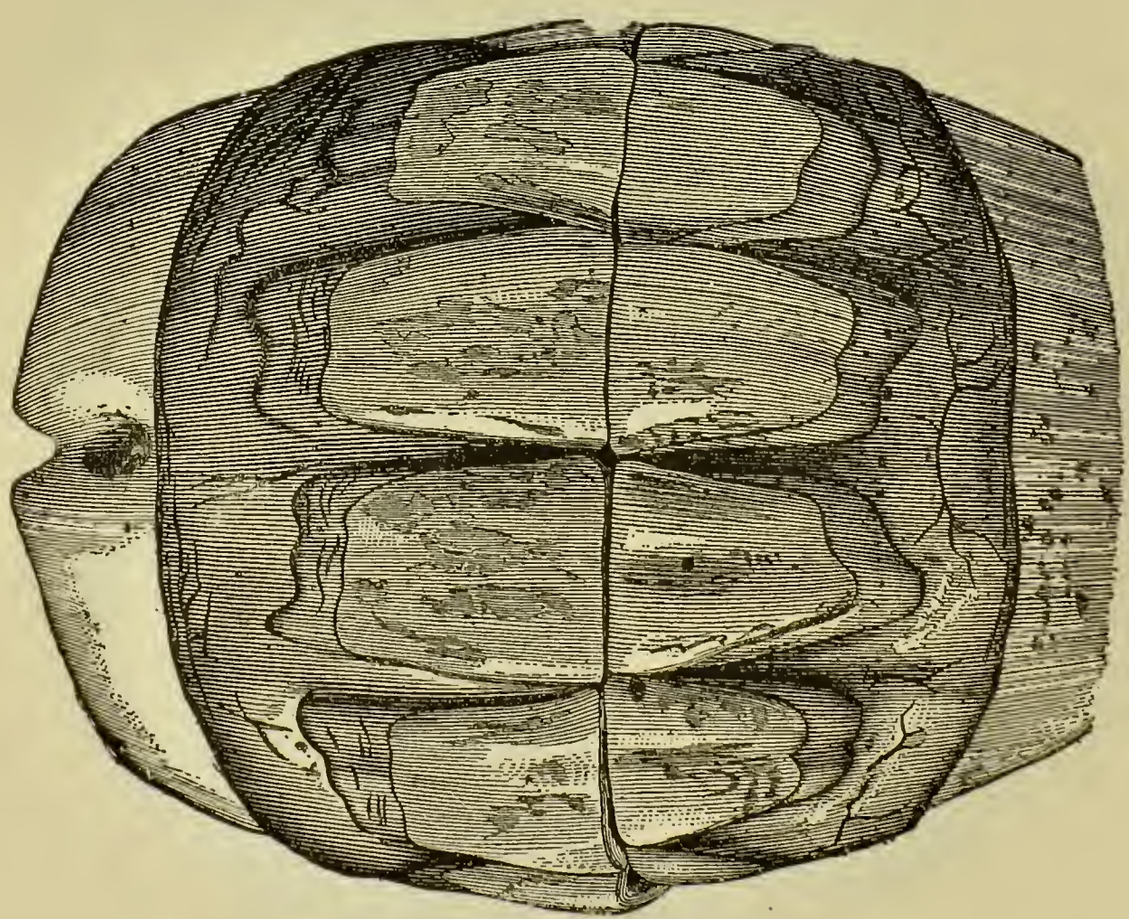
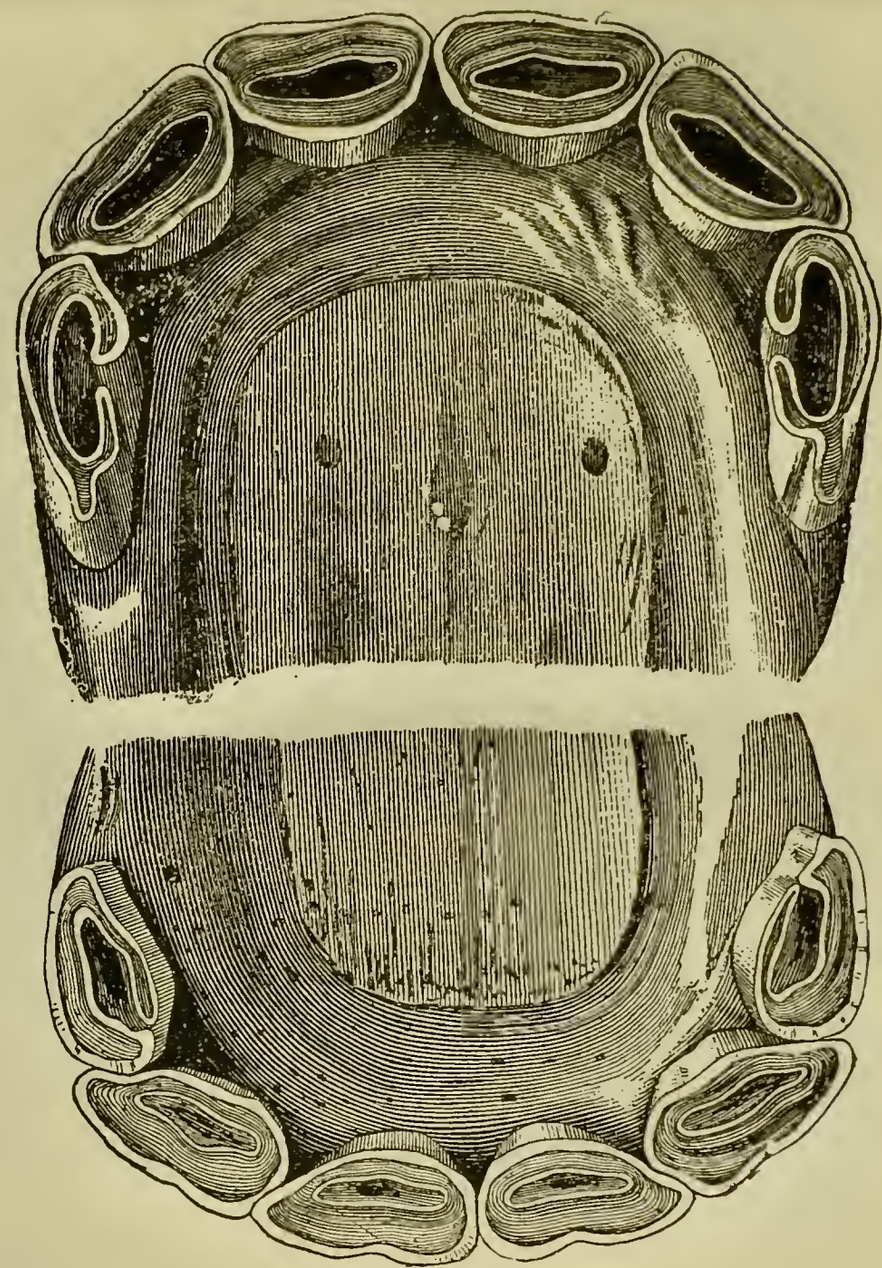
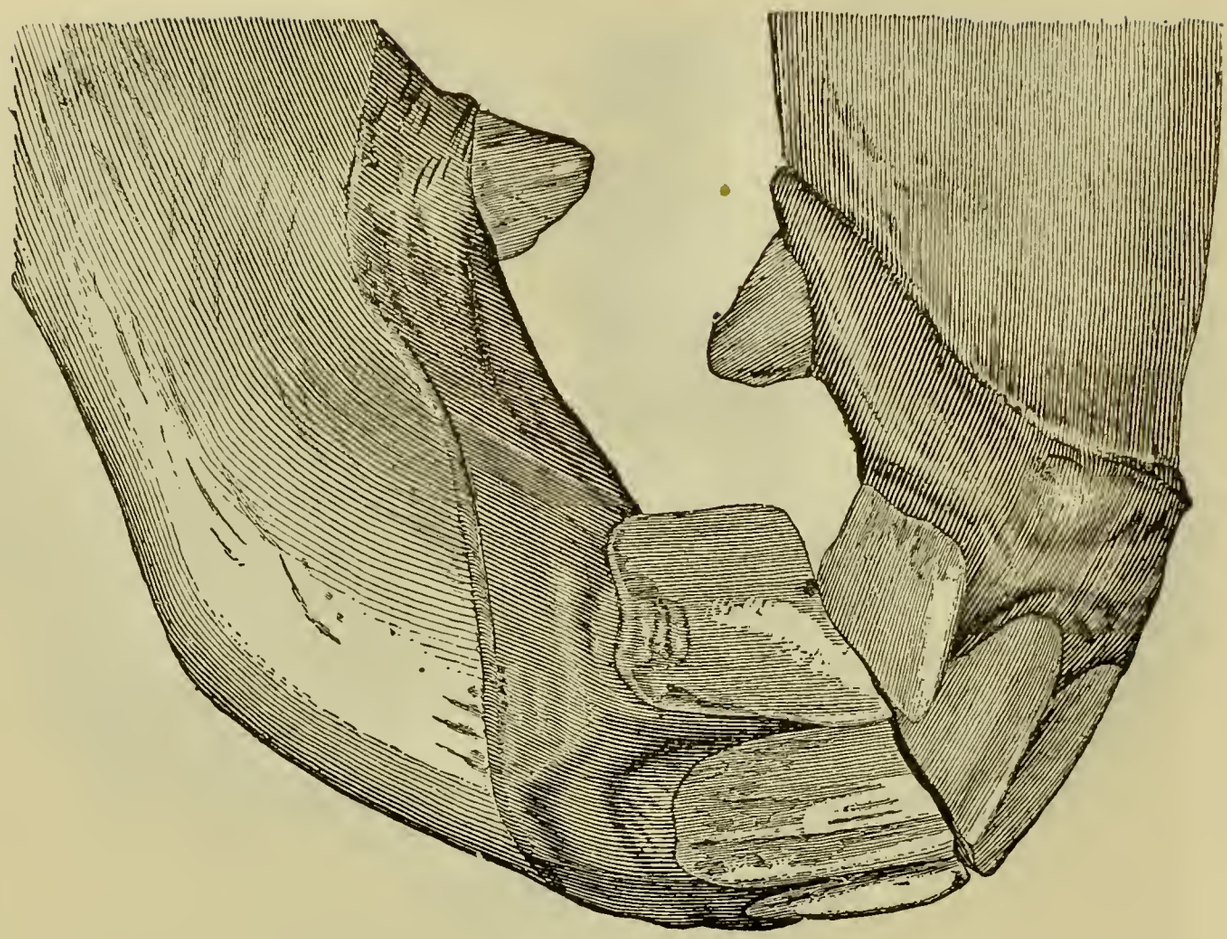


PLATE XX.

Seven Years.—Nothing special is shown by the jaws viewed in *front*, excepting that the teeth appear whiter. This is due to the fact that the layer of cement, which at first covered their anterior face, is worn off. In *profile*, it is found that the table of the inferior corners is narrower from side to side than that of the superior; this results in the formation of a notch upon the latter. The incidence of the incisive arcades is always less perpendicular than at six years. As to the *tables*, they are levelled upon the pincers and upon the intermediates; the ring of central enamel is wider antero-posteriorly and shorter from side to side. The surface of friction in the corners is larger; sometimes the central enamel forms a complete ring, and sometimes it is incomplete. These differences often result from an irregular form of these teeth. In some subjects, their posterior border is almost absent. It then requires a longer time for the table to be completed behind. The pincers are oval; the intermediates tend to become so. The superior corners are fissured at their posterior border.



EIGHT YEARS.



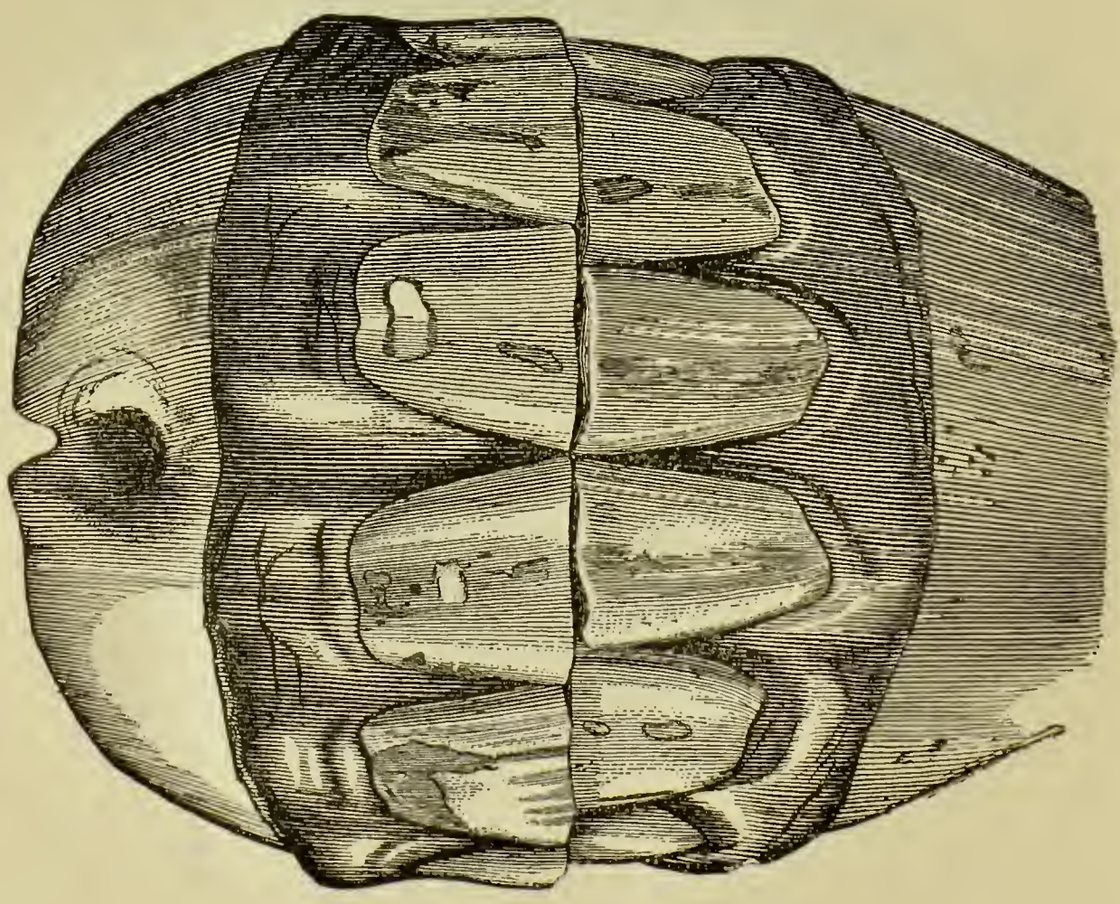
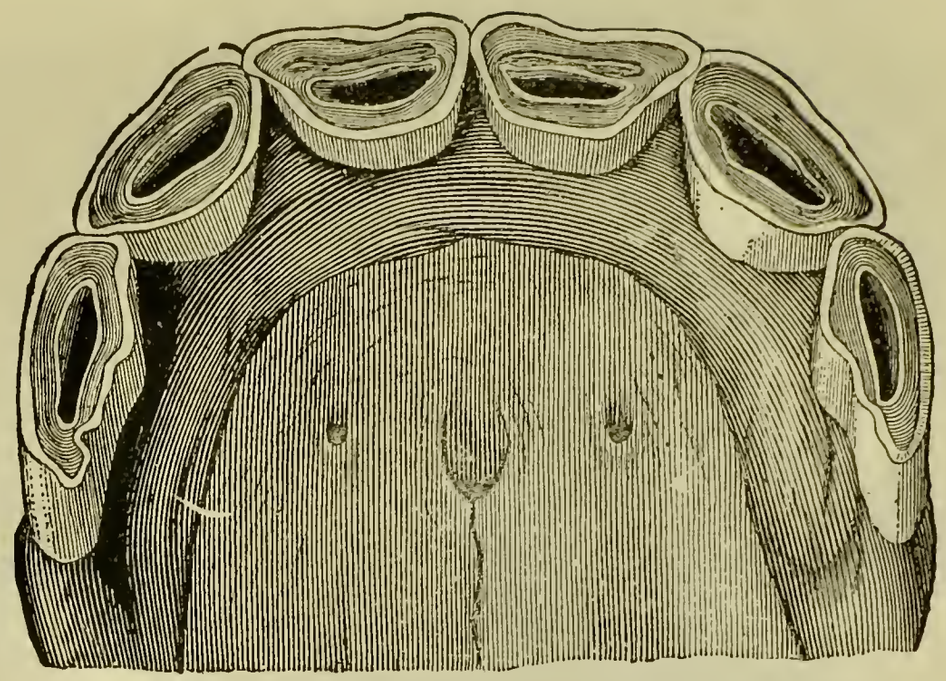
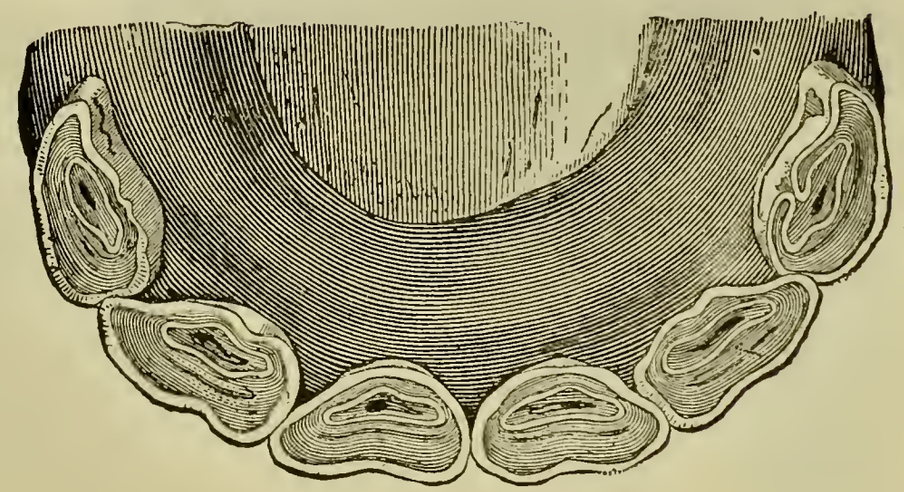
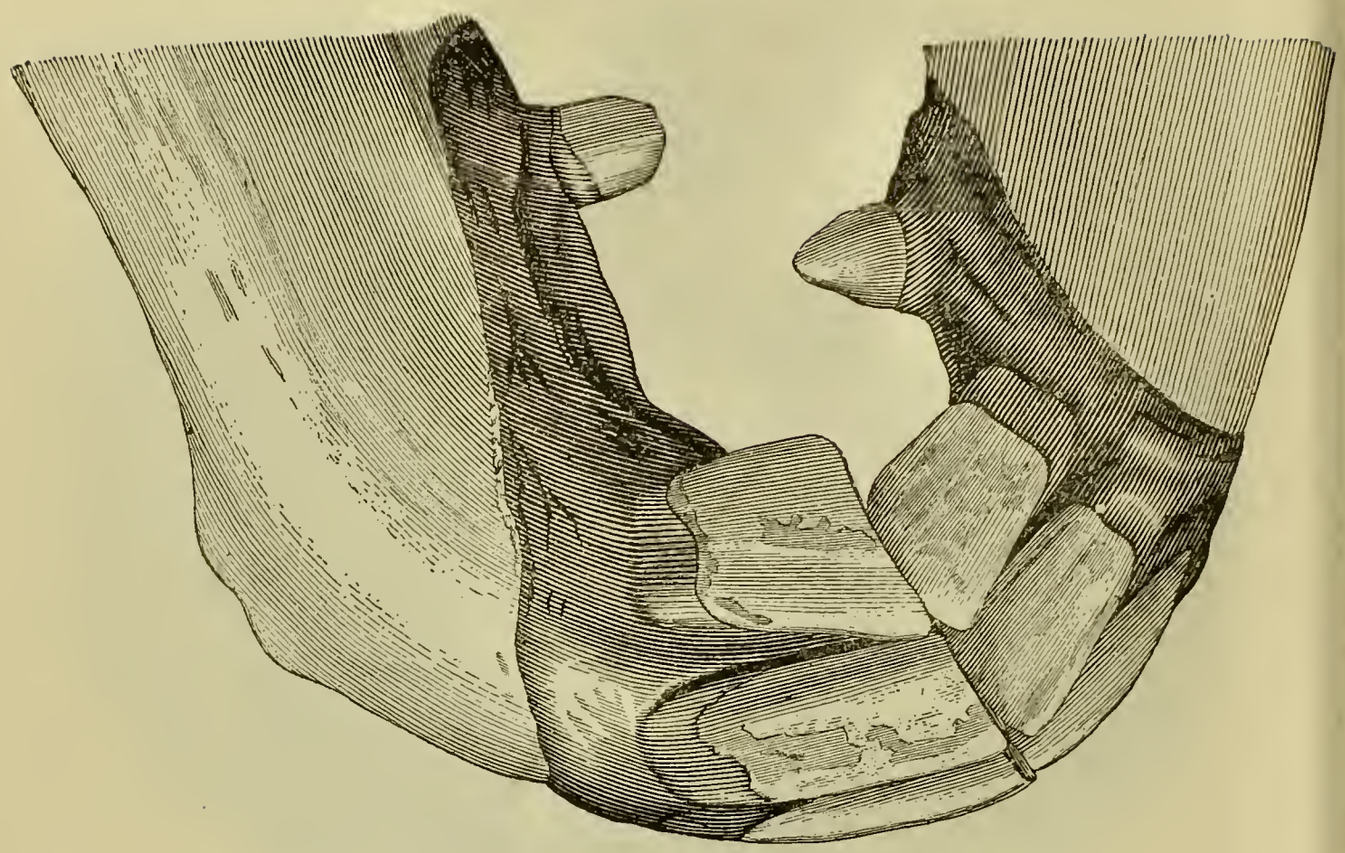


PLATE XXI.

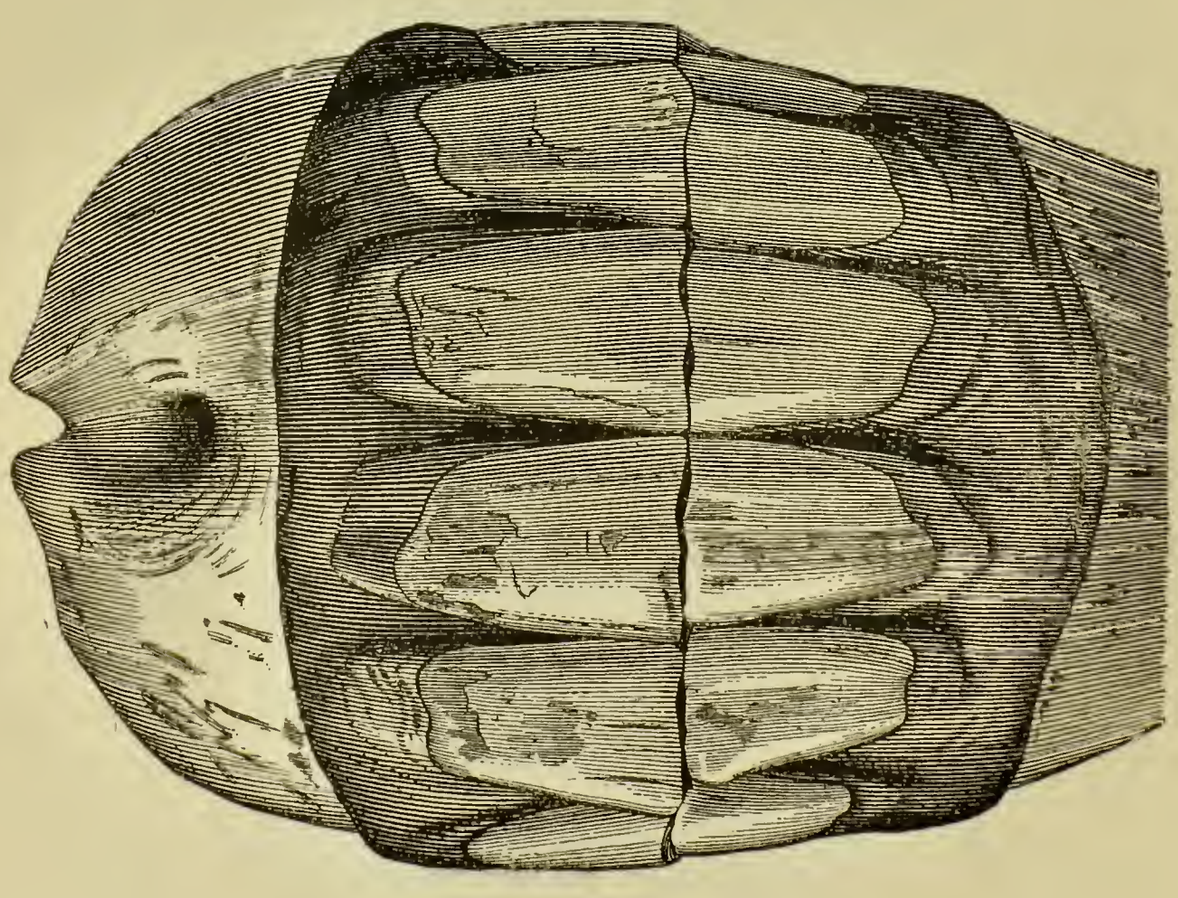
Eight Years.—The direction of the incisors is notably changed; the superior and inferior teeth are opposed obliquely. Hence, viewed in *front*, the jaws project at the level of their line of meeting. In *profile*, this fact is more apparent, for the anterior face of the incisive arcades has no longer the form of a regular semicircle, as at five years. Their arc appears broken at the place where the tables of the superior and inferior incisors meet, and it acquires more and more the curve of an ogive. The base of the corner is cut squarely by the gum. The incisive arcades are still regular, but narrower than at five years; the surfaces of friction represent, in fact, sections closer to the summit of the cones constituted by the teeth. All the inferior teeth are levelled. The pincers and intermediates are oval; the corners are becoming oval. Finally, the *dental star* appears upon the pincers and intermediates, between the anterior border of the table and the corresponding border of the central enamel.







NINE YEARS.



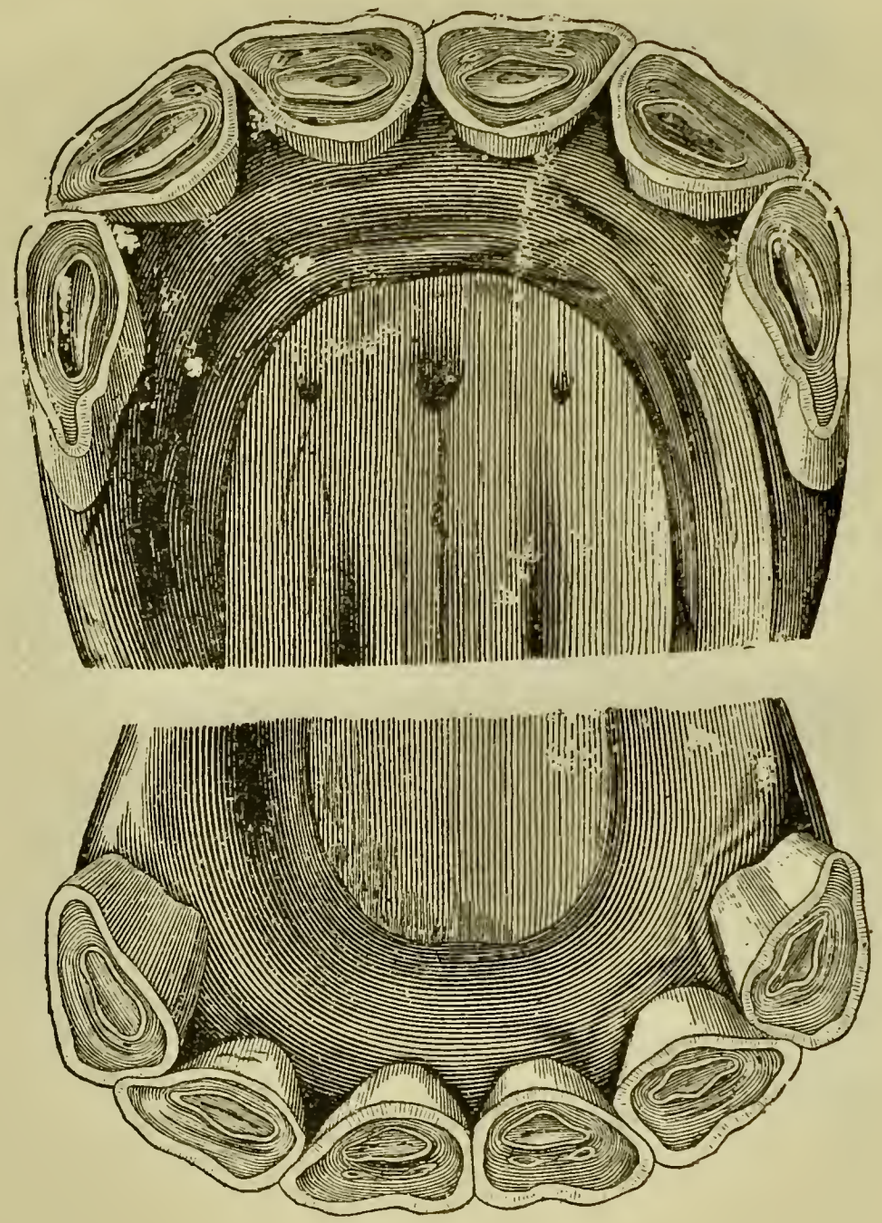
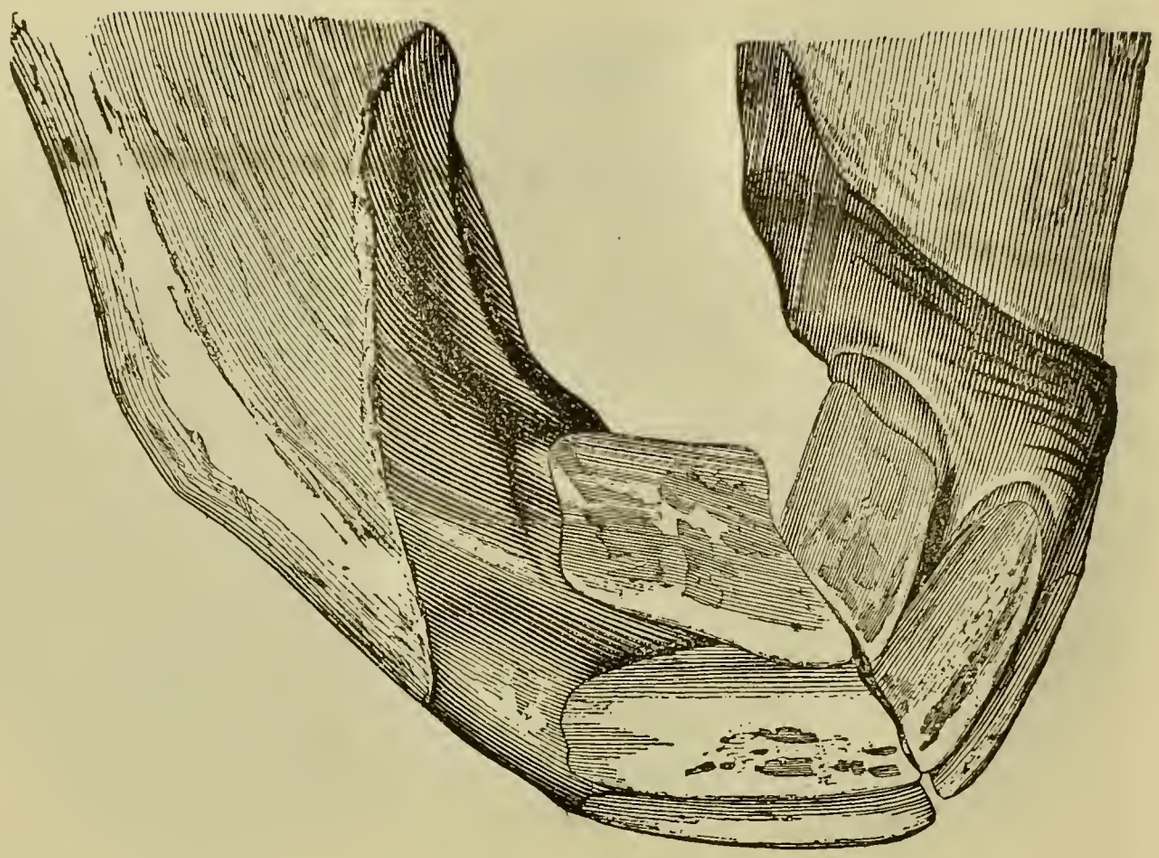


PLATE XXII.

Nine Years.—Nothing special is to be seen upon the jaws viewed in *front* or in *profile*. The teeth are ordinarily more oblique and less fresh-looking than at eight years of age. The notch on the superior corner has often disappeared. The characters furnished by the *tables* are more positive. The pincers are round; their central enamel has a triangular form; their dental star is narrower but more distinct, and occupies almost the middle of the dental table. The intermediate teeth are becoming round, and the corner teeth are oval. At this age, the superior pincer teeth are levelled in most jaws. The inferior incisive arcade is narrower transversely and depressed in the centre.



TEN YEARS.

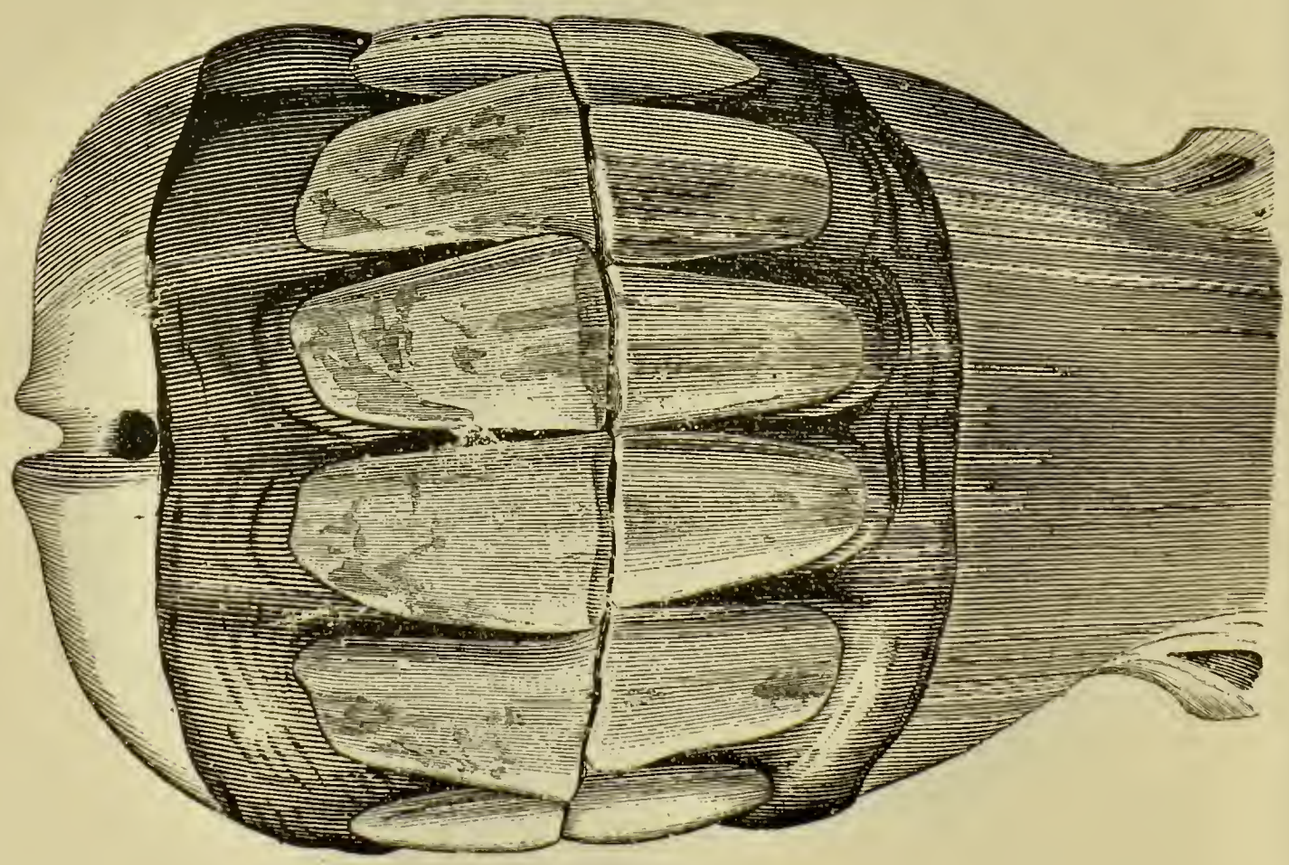
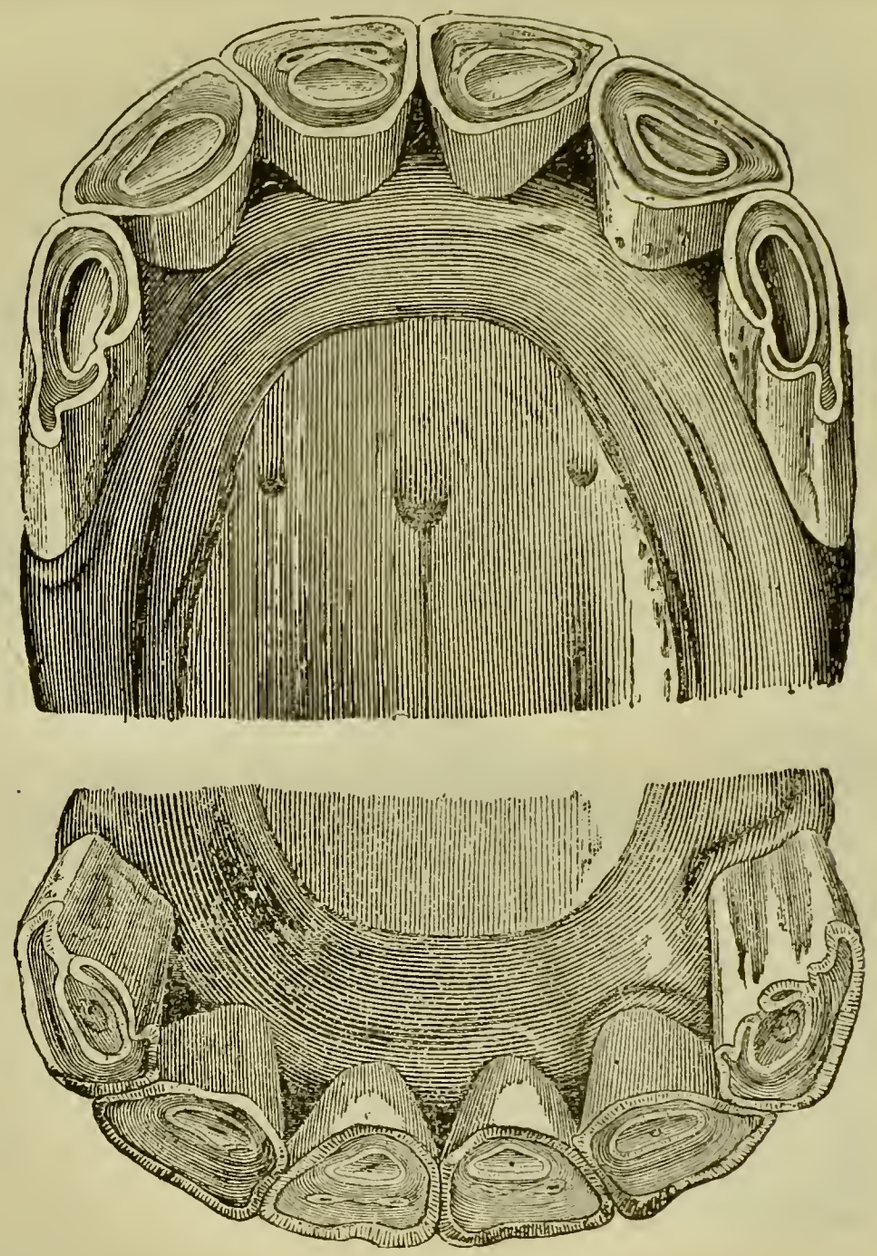
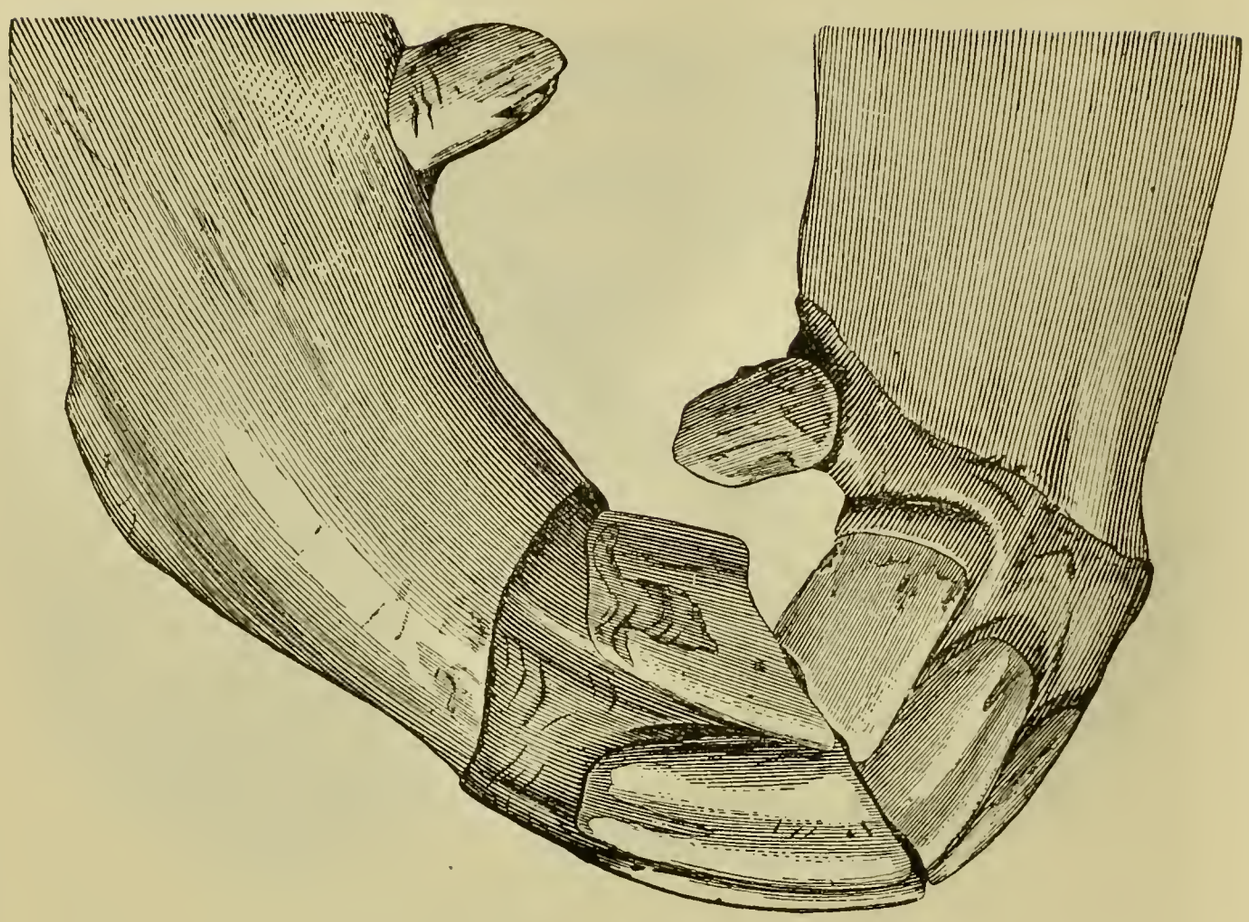


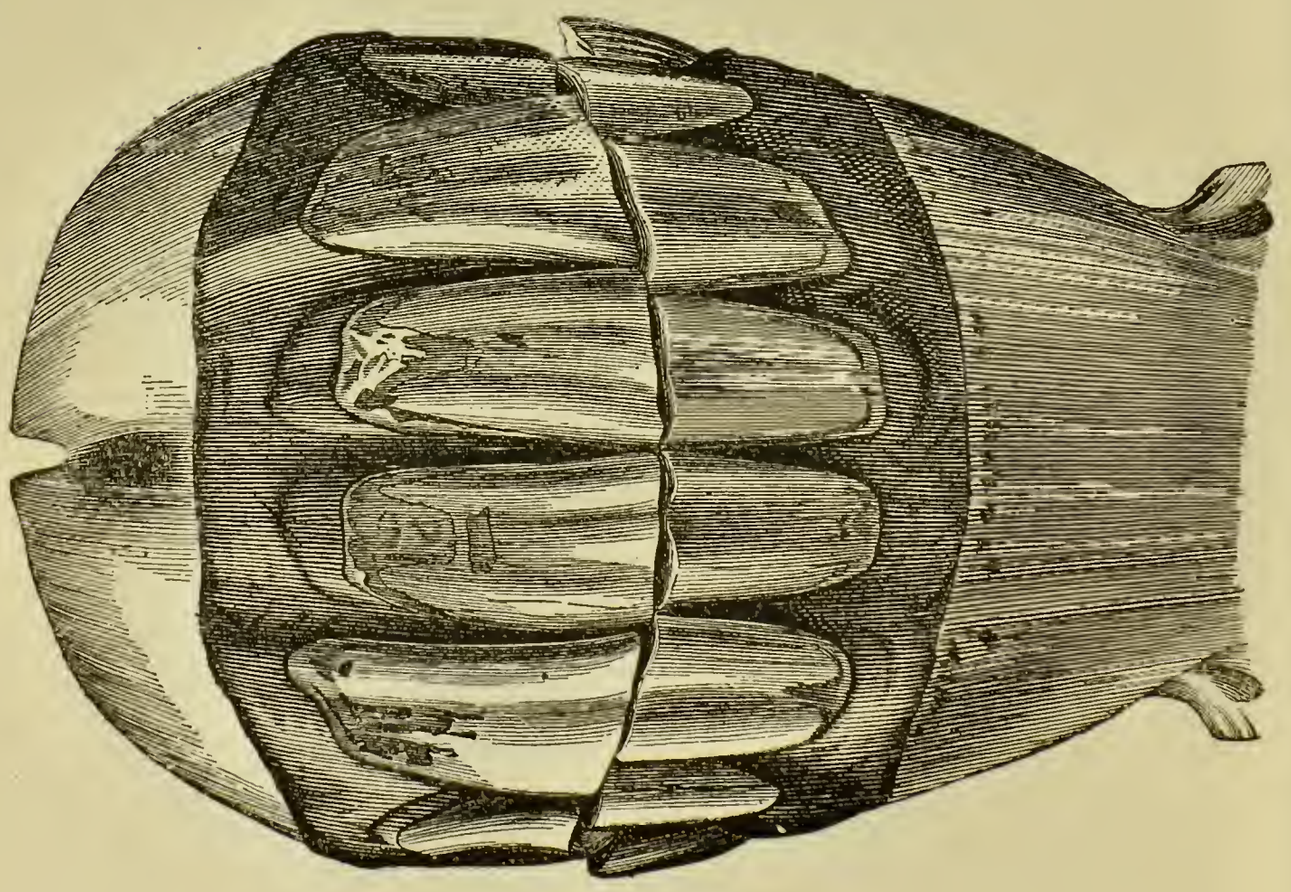
PLATE XXIII.

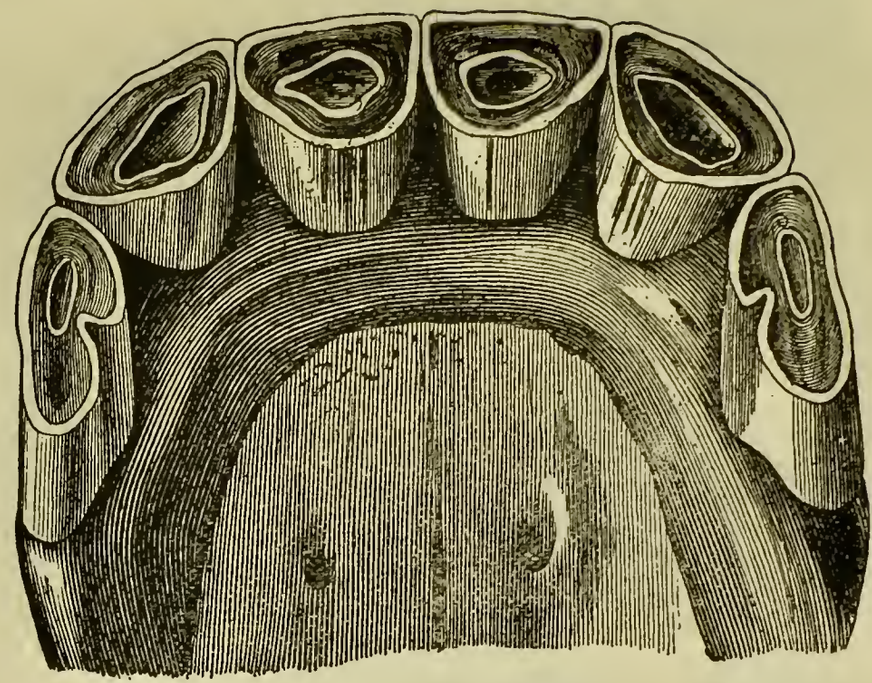
Ten Years.—In consequence of the more marked obliquity of the teeth, the jaws become prominent in front, when they are examined from this point, and it is necessary to raise the head of the horse higher in order to have a good view of the inferior incisors. In *profile*, this character is still more apparent; the ogive formed by the contact of the two arcades is smaller; the inclination of the corners augments, and the interspace which separates them from the intermediates is larger. Upon the *tables*, the inferior pincers are still more round; their central enamel is smaller, distinctly triangular, and also closer to their posterior border. Finally, their dental star, more visible, encroaches upon the middle of their surface of friction. The intermediates are round, and the corners tend to assume this form. In the plate, the latter have an irregular table, because they as well as the superior corners are fissured on their posterior border; this border has been checked in its development, and hence it is but slightly prominent. The inferior incisive arc is more depressed in its middle.





ELEVEN YEARS.





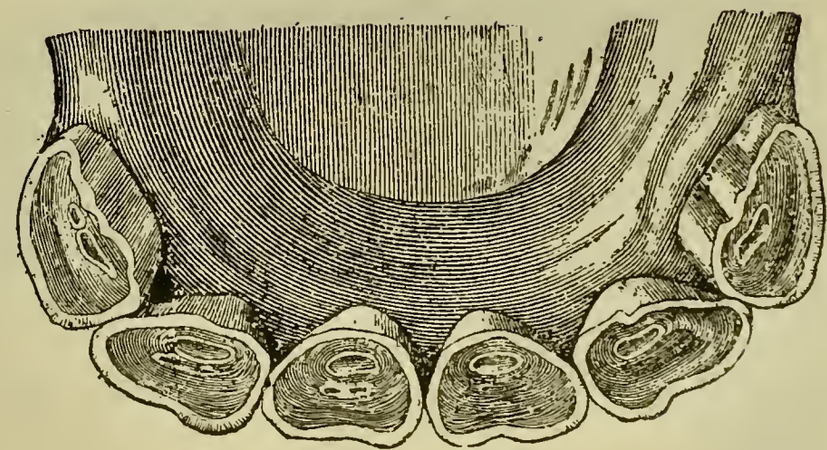
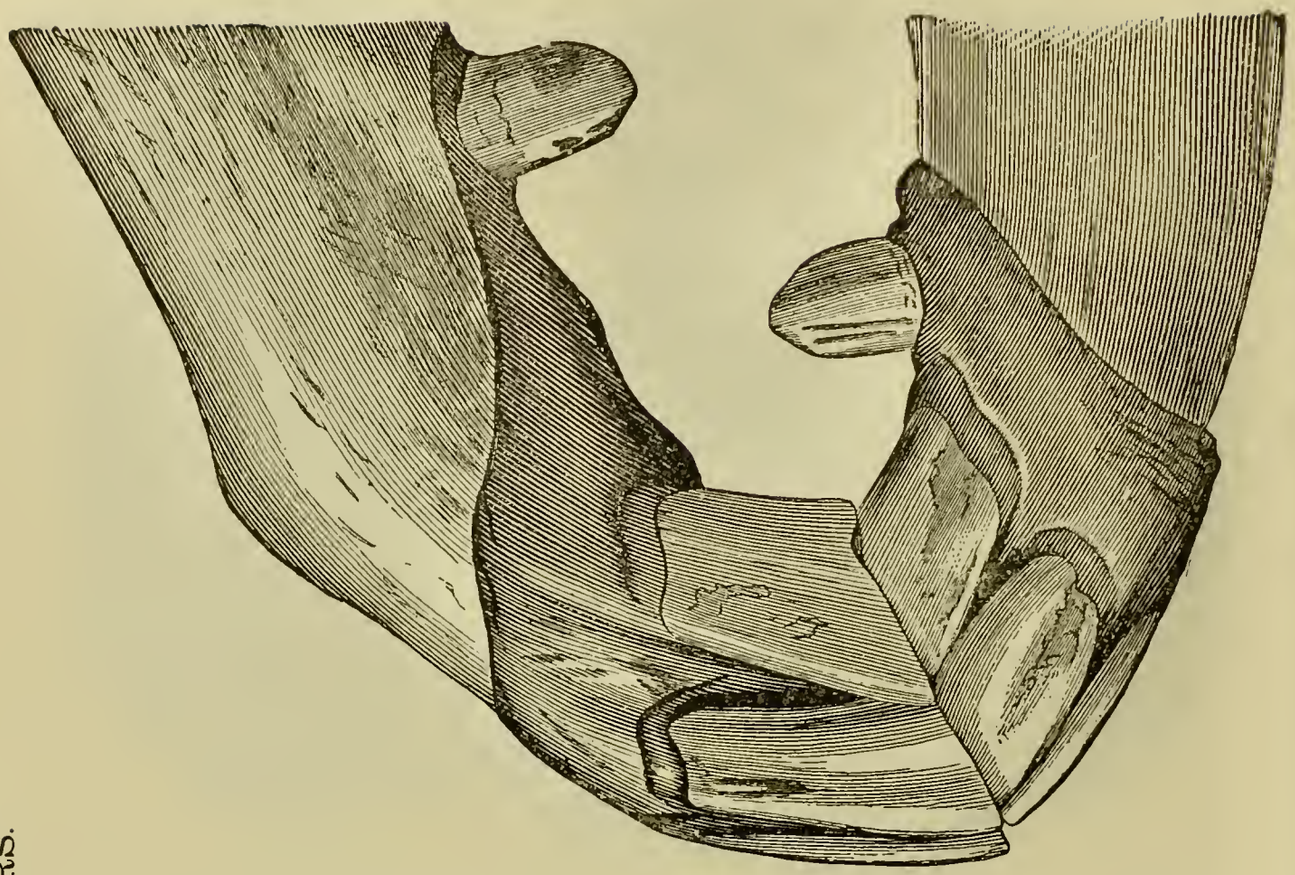
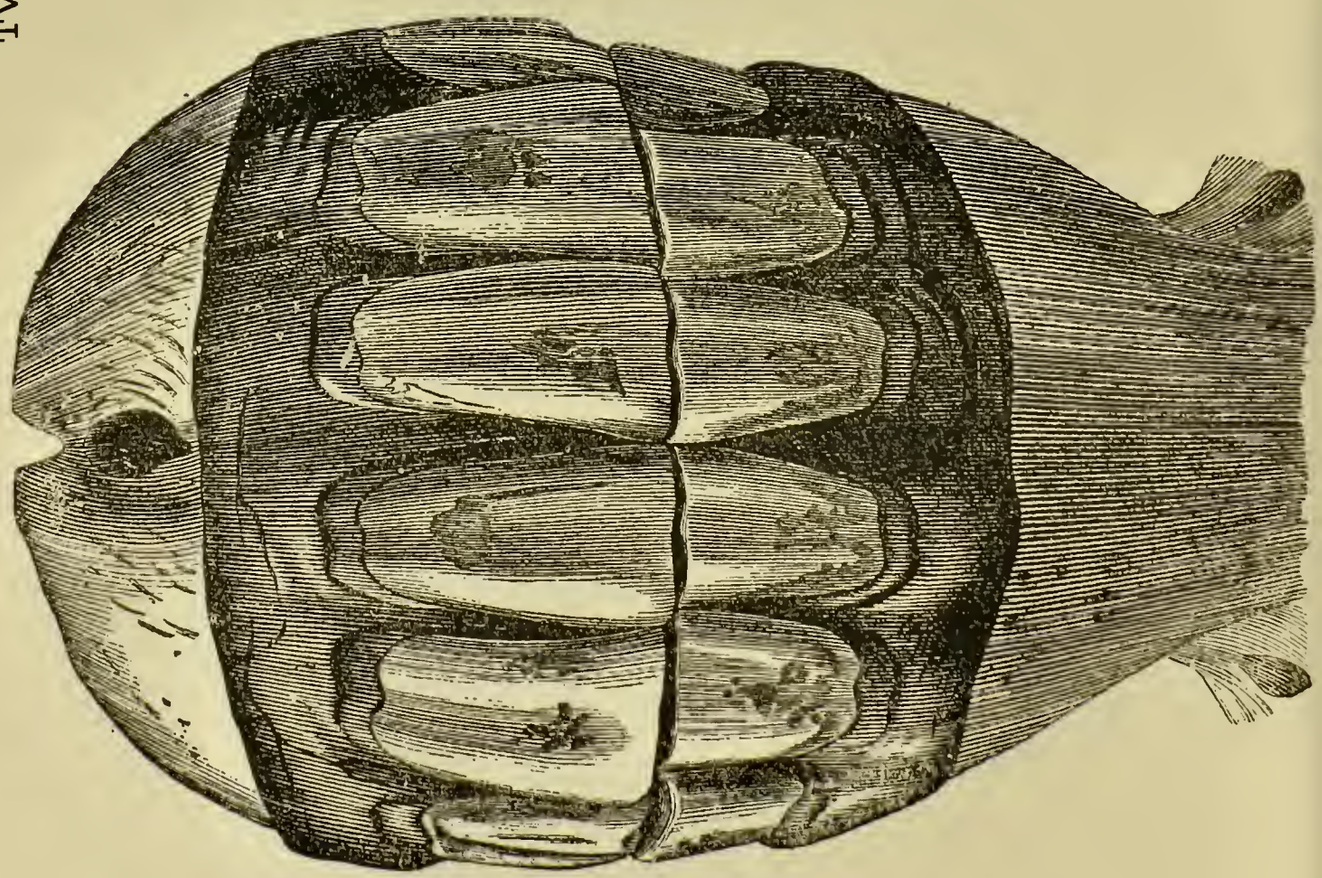


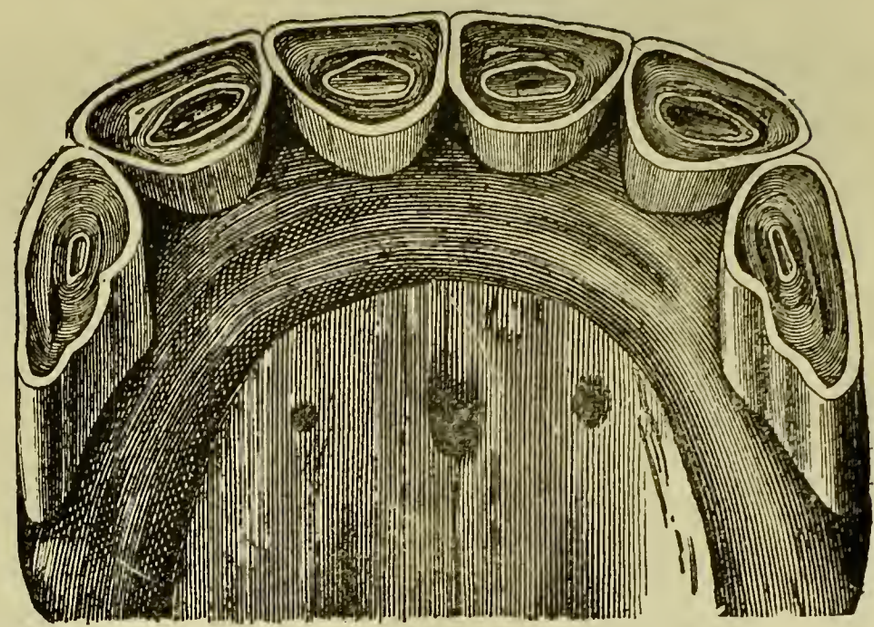
PLATE XXIV.

Eleven Years.—The incidence of the jaws augments in obliquity in such a manner that, in order to see the teeth in *front*, it is necessary to raise the horse's head. In *profile*, the superior corner shows a greater obliquity than the intermediates; the inferior is almost as wide at its free extremity as at its base, which, besides, is cut squarely by the gum. The inferior *tables* are round in the intermediates and in the corners. In all the teeth of the same arcade, the central enamel forms a small ring only, very close to the posterior border of the surface of friction, while the dental star becomes narrower transversely, and also approaches this border. In the superior incisors, the central enamel becomes elliptical in the corners and tends to disappear from their table.



TWELVE YEARS.





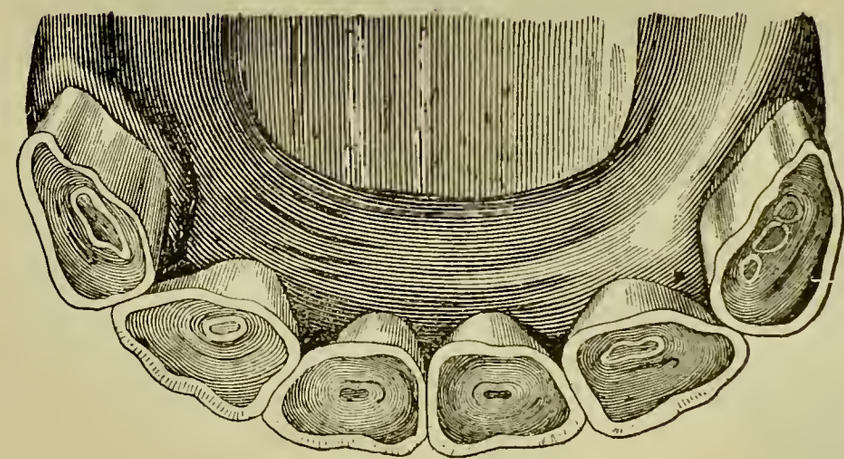
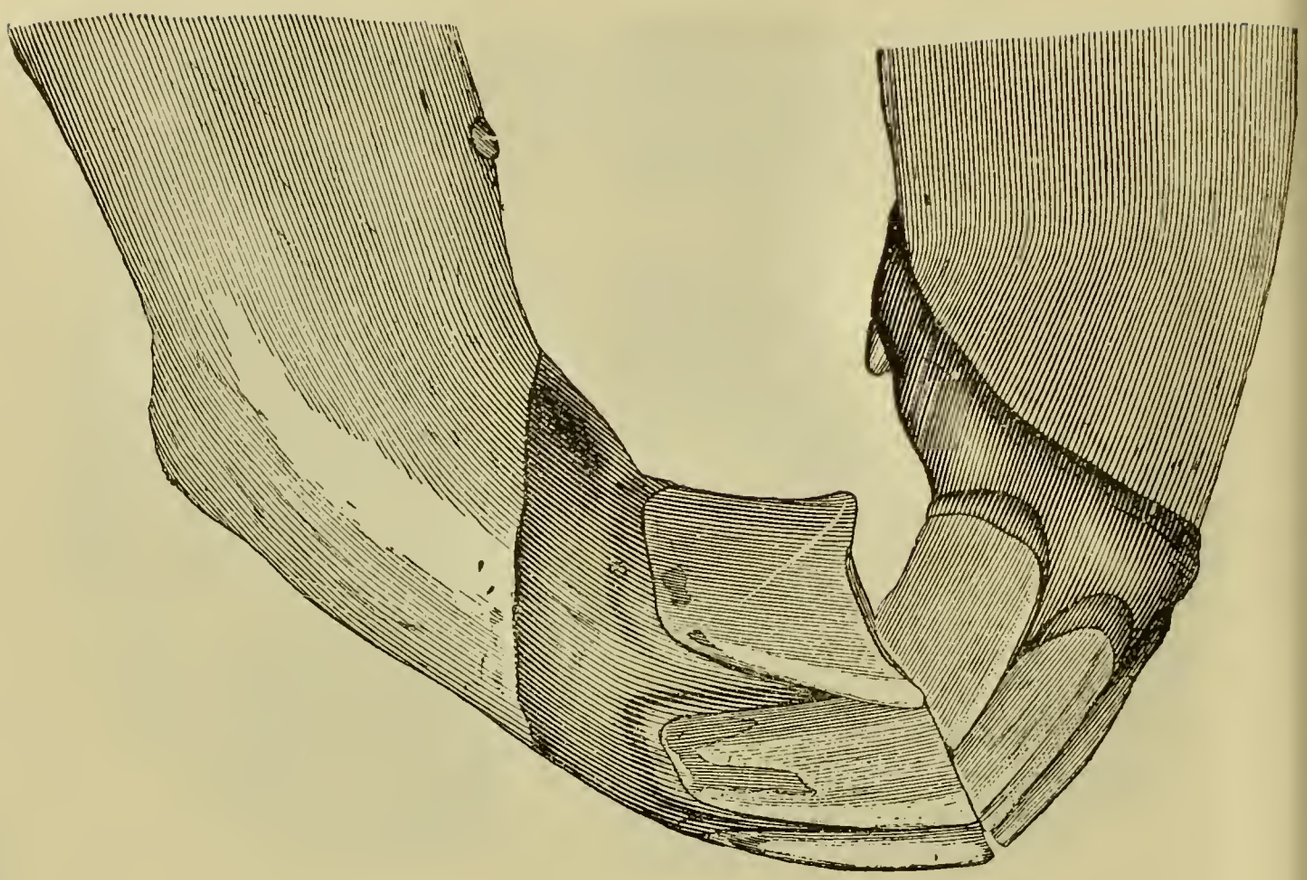
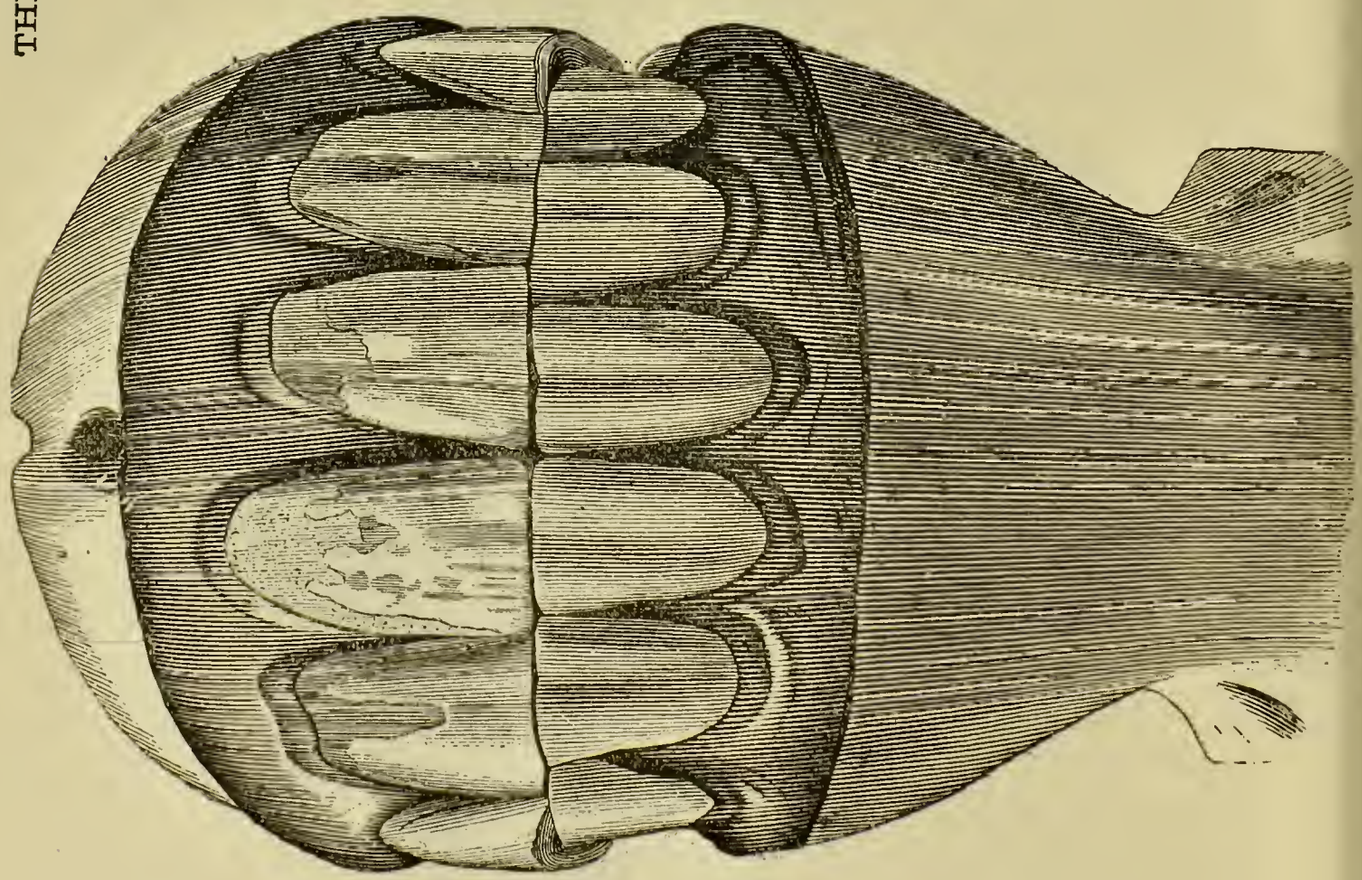


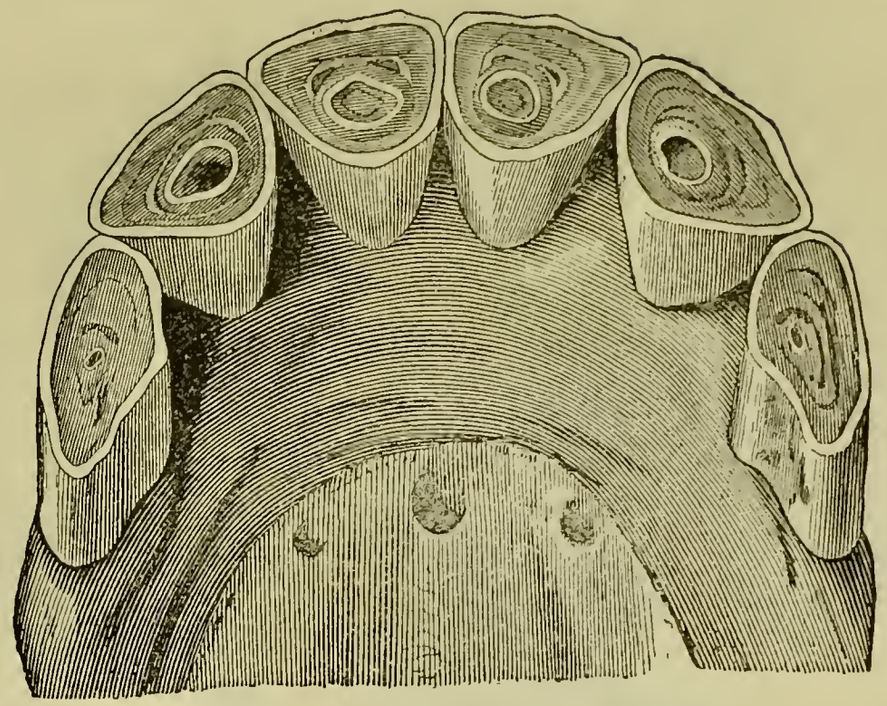
PLATE XXV.

Twelve Years.—The incidence of the jaws is more oblique than at the preceding age. In *profile*, the obliquity of the superior corner is increased; it carries a notch behind, and the interspace which separates it from the intermediate is more marked. All the inferior *tables* are round, and sometimes the central enamel has disappeared. Some, however, often still present traces of the enamel; those in which it is absent present, in their centre, a small yellowish spot, which is the dental star. In the superior corners the central enamel is about to disappear. Finally, the incisive arcades are much narrower and less convex than at eight years.



THIRTEEN YEARS.





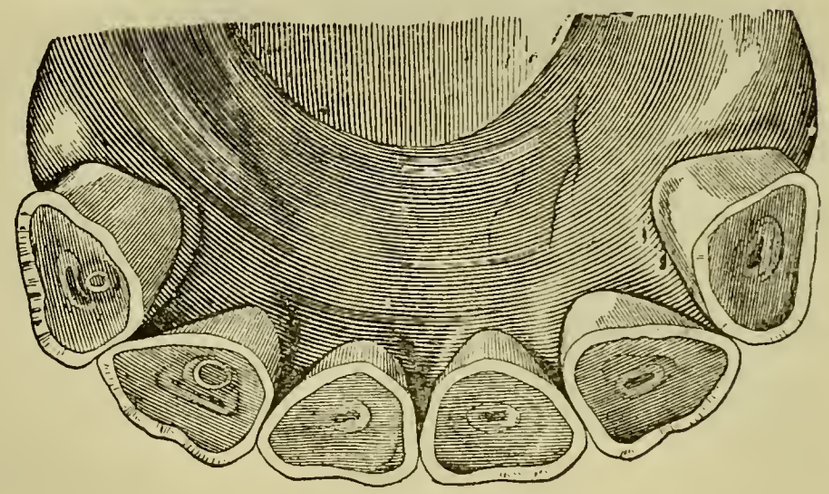
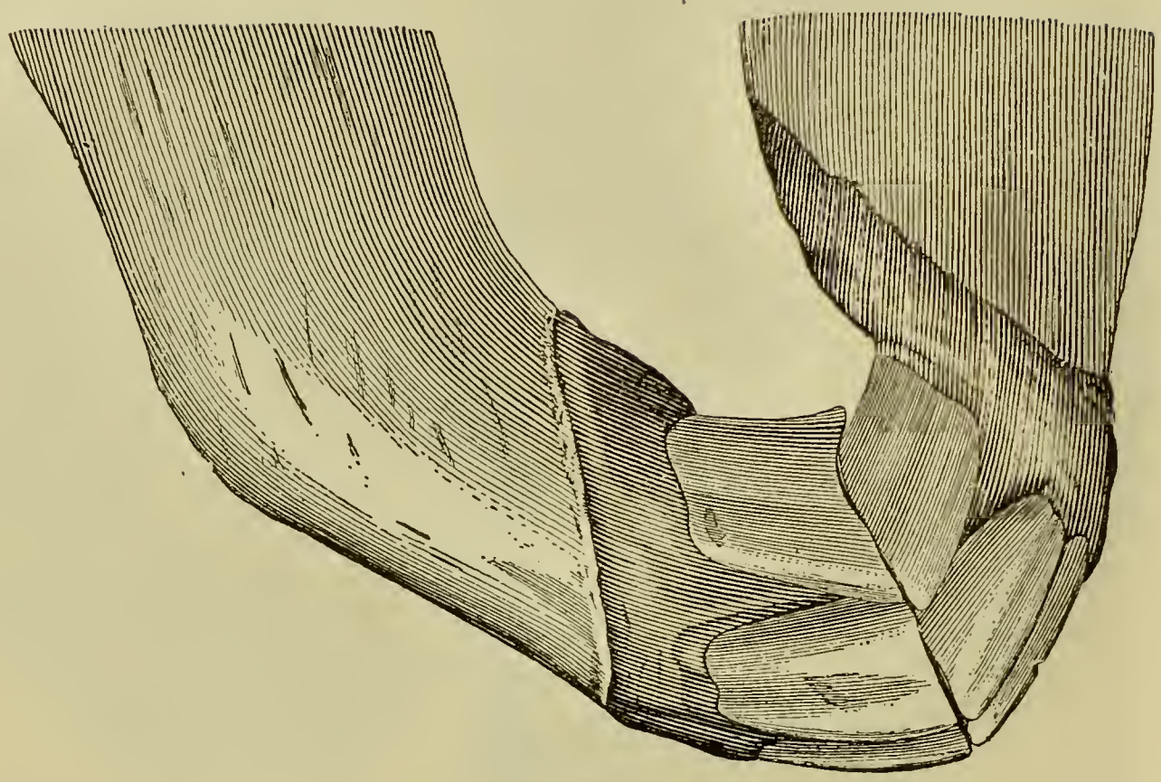
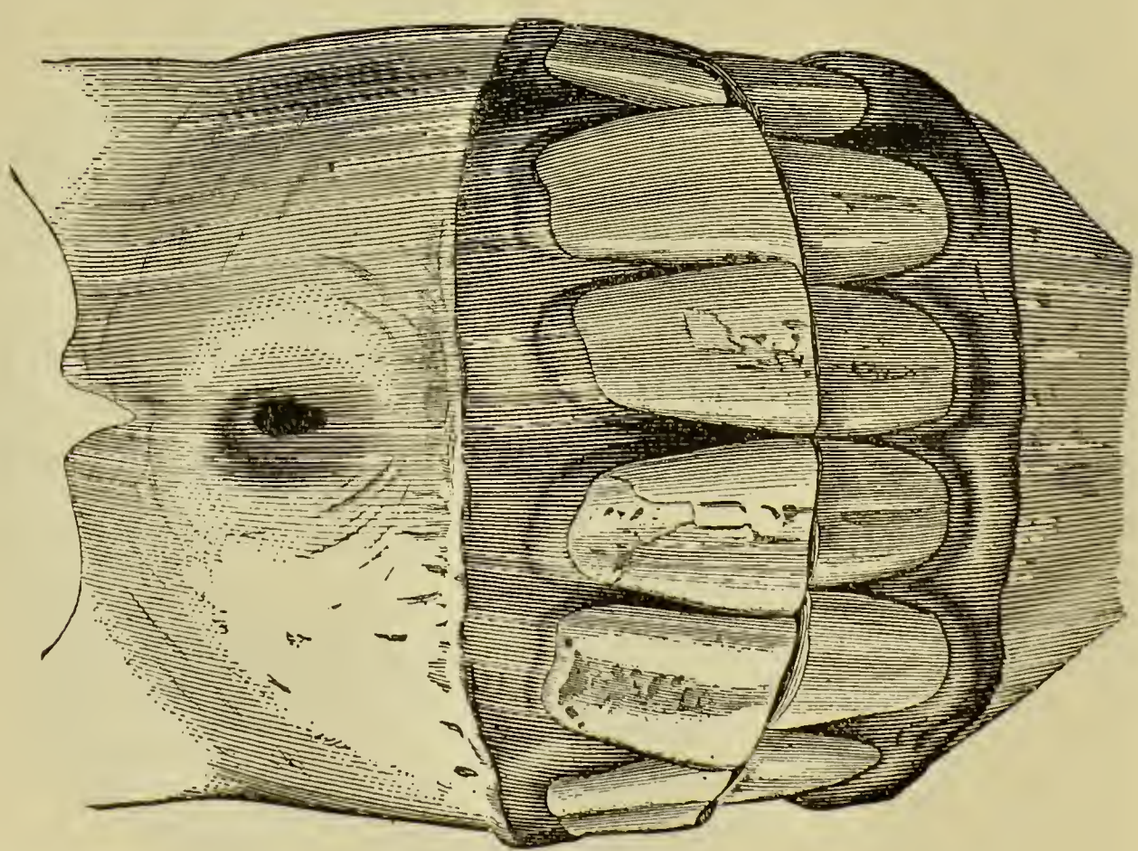


PLATE XXVI.

Thirteen Years.—Viewed in *front*, the jaws have almost the same aspect as at twelve years of age. In *profile*, the notch of the superior corner is more marked; the inferior corner is limited in front and behind by two lines almost parallel and but slightly separated. In the plate, rudimentary canines are visible in both jaws, because this specimen was obtained from a mare. The inferior *tables* are still rounded; in most cases the central enamel has disappeared; the latter also takes place in the superior corners at this age. In the superior pincers the central enamel assumes a rounded form.



FIFTEEN YEARS.



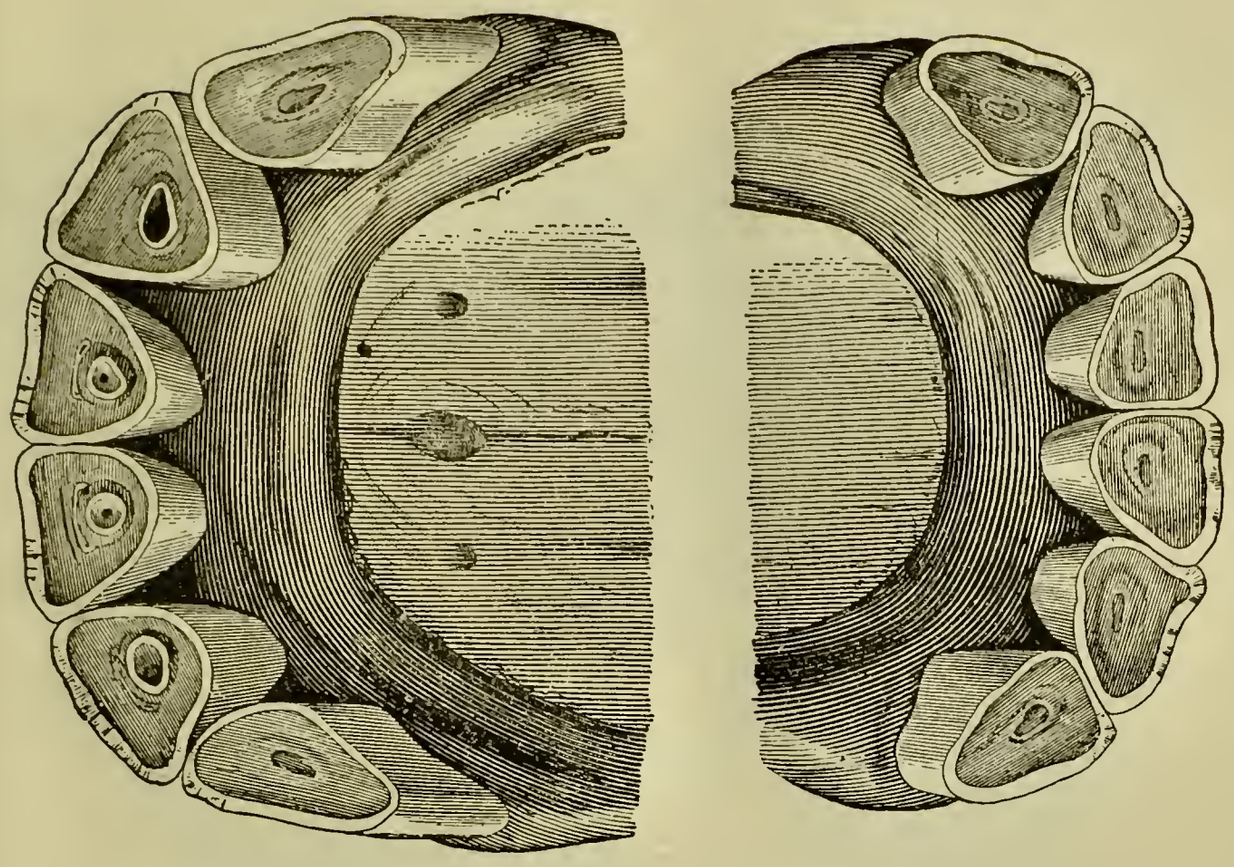
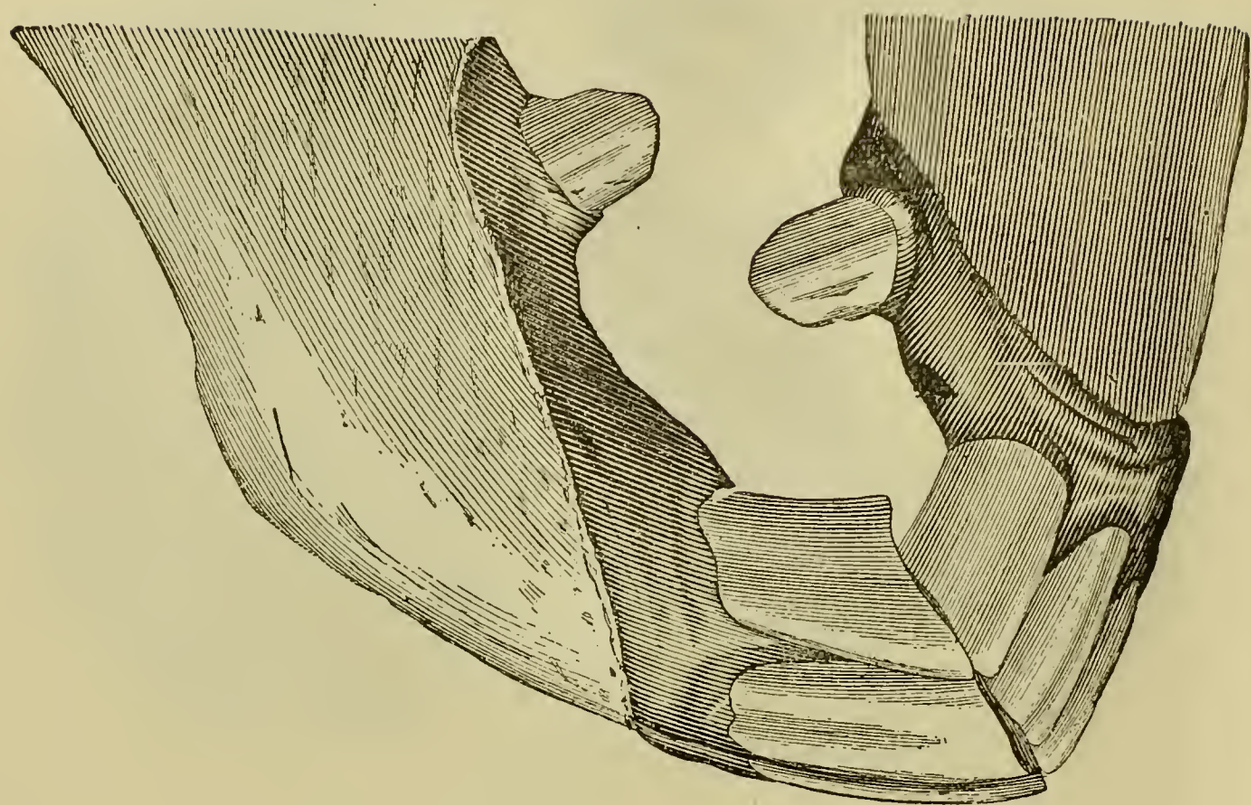
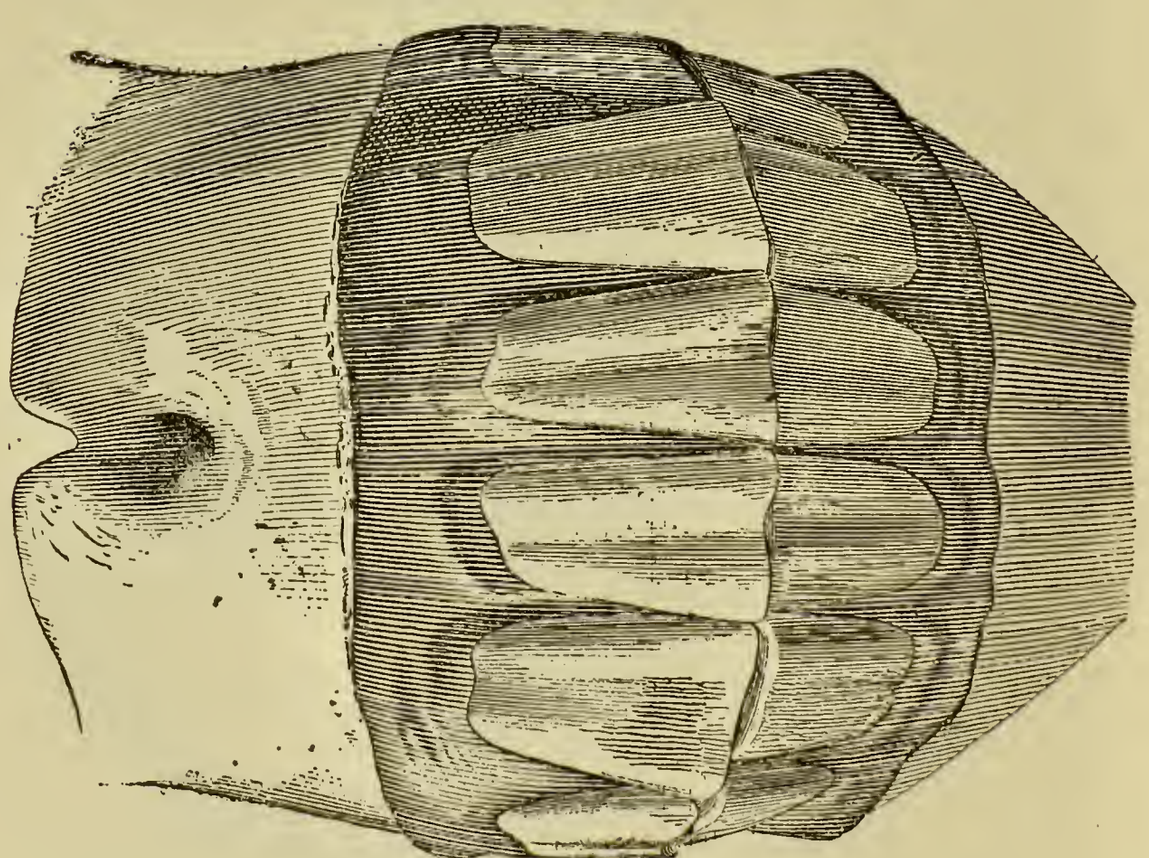


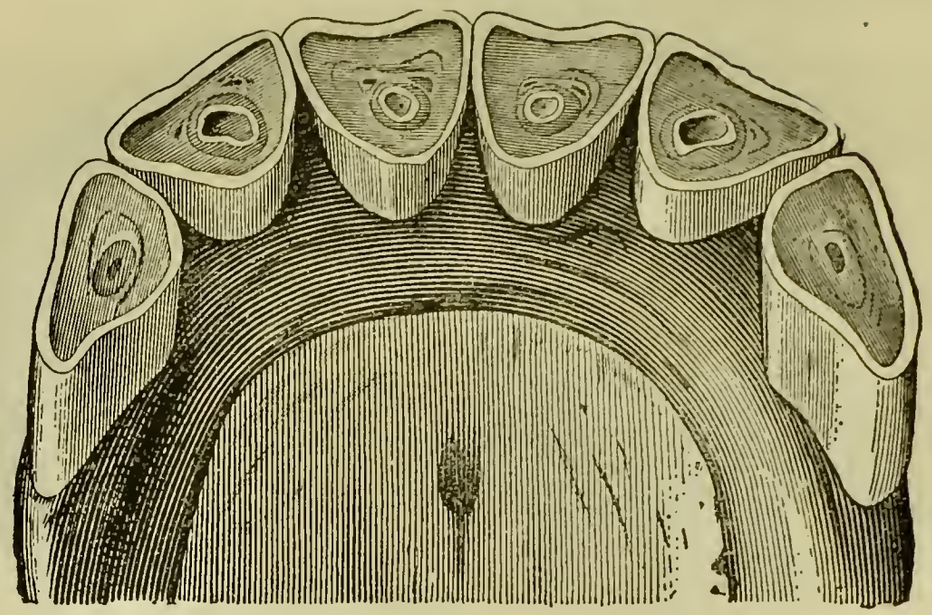
PLATE XXVII.

Fifteen Years.—Viewed in *front*, the inferior teeth appear shorter than the superior; this is due to the fact that the jaws are viewed without being elevated. In *profile*, the incisors are found to be almost of the same length. The notch in the superior corner always exists. The inferior *tables* all present in their centre a rounded and very distinct dental star. The pincers are almost triangular; the intermediates are becoming so. The central enamel, in the superior pincers, is much smaller than at thirteen years. The incisive arcade is greatly depressed in front and narrow transversely.

SEVENTEEN YEARS.







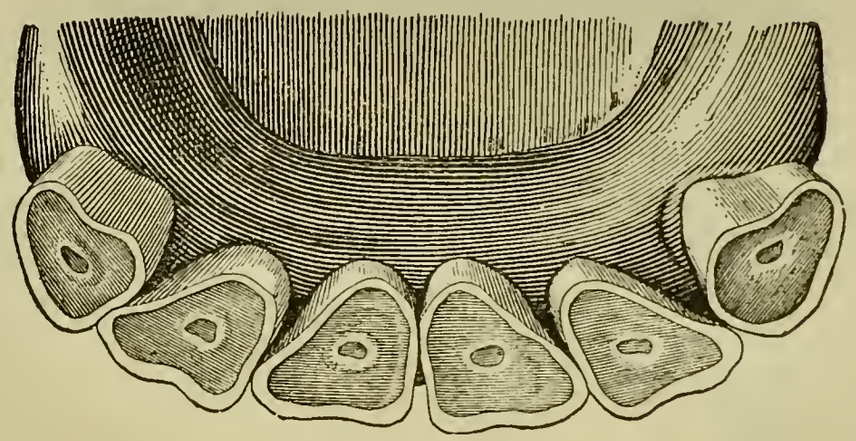
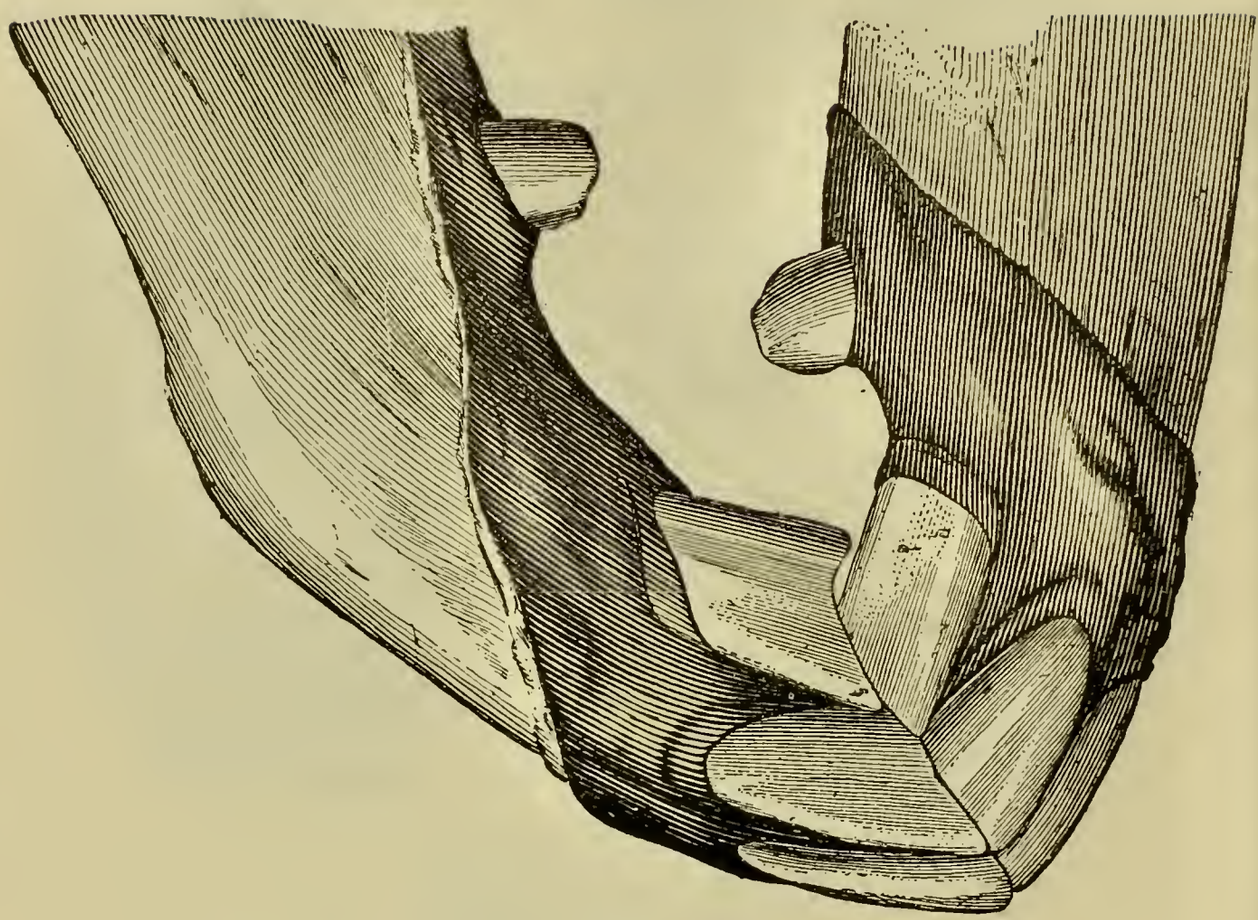
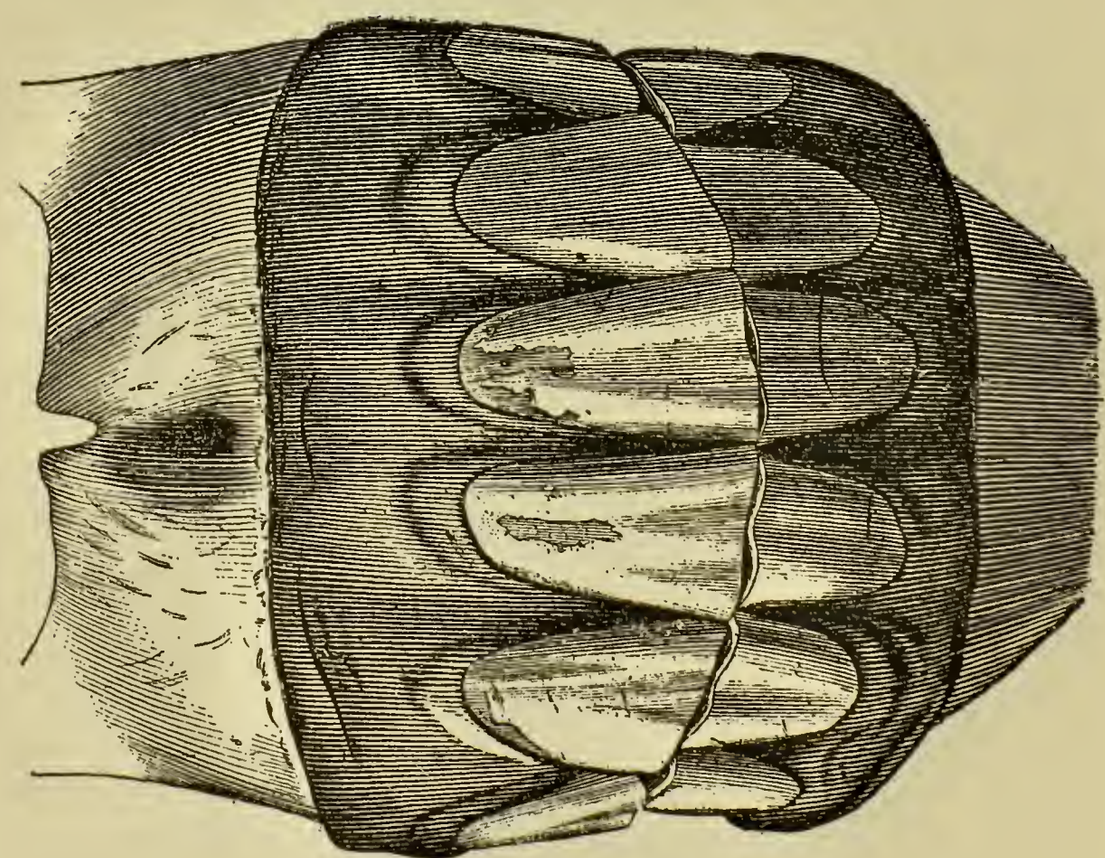


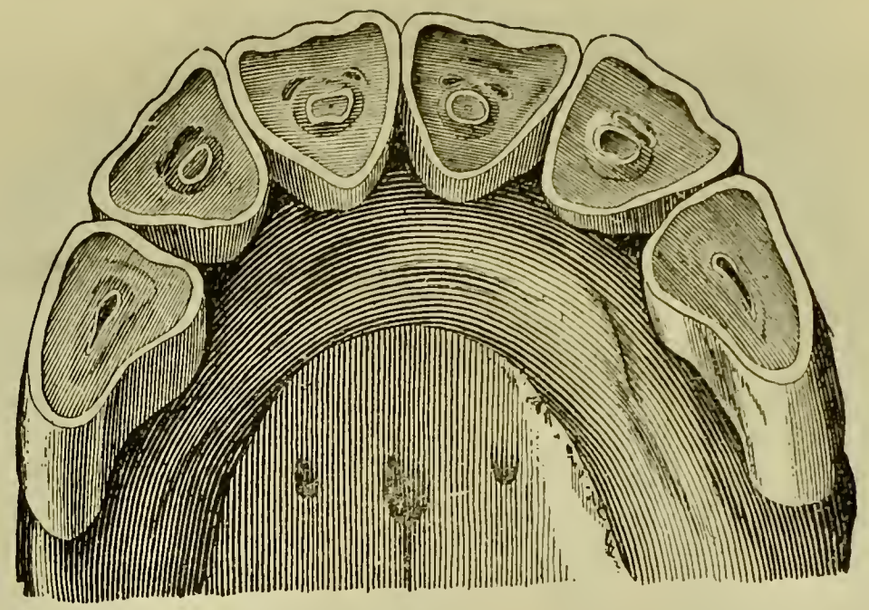
PLATE XXVIII.

Seventeen Years.—Viewed in *front*, the superior corners seem to converge inward; the plane of contact of the jaws is very oblique to the horizon. In order to see the inferior teeth well, it is necessary to raise the head of the horse considerably. The inferior *tables* are all triangular; their dental star is distinct, round, and occupies their centre. The inferior incisive arcade is narrow, but slightly convex, and the teeth appear less close together than at the preceding age; the pincers, especially, are separated by an interspace on the median line. The superior tables are triangular in the pincers and the intermediates; in the former the central enamel only forms a very small circle.





NINETEEN YEARS.



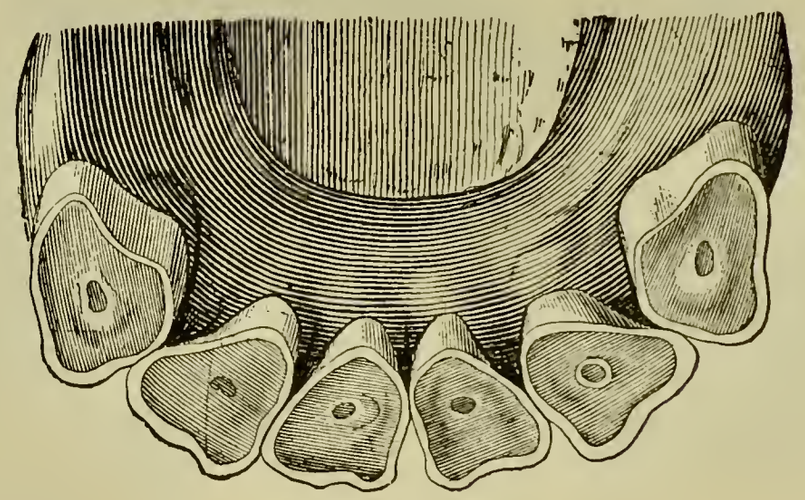
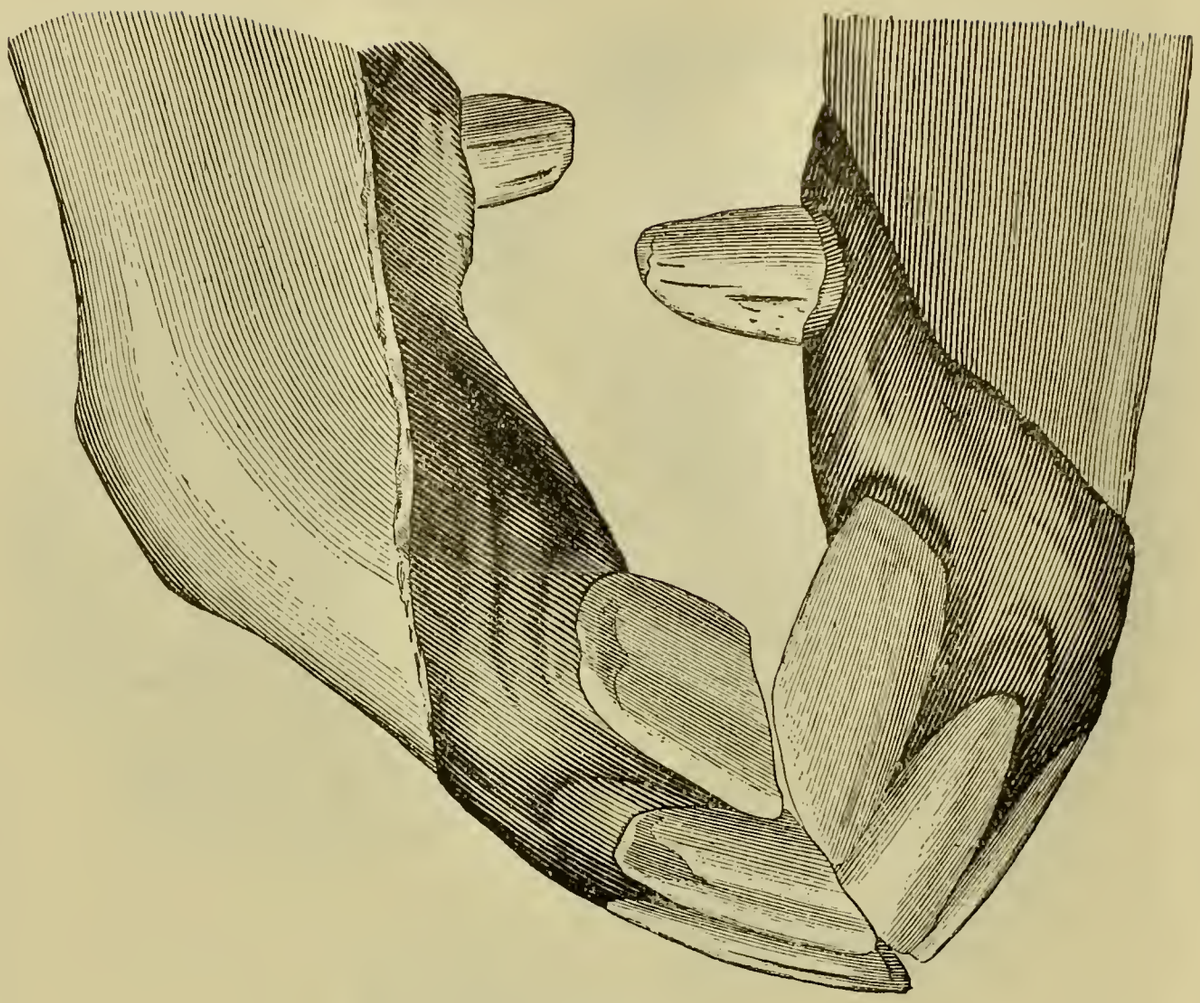


PLATE XXIX.

Nineteen Years.—Viewed in *front*, the superior corners are distinctly convergent at their free extremity; the intermediates also take this direction, which is perceived in the width of the triangular interstice which separates them from the pincers. In *profile*, the ogive formed by the apposition of the two jaws is much more acute. The notch of the superior corner still exists, but it will soon disappear in consequence of the horizontal direction which the inferior corner takes. The *tables* of the pincers and the intermediates appear to converge by their posterior angle, which renders them divergent in front; their antero-posterior diameter commences to exceed the transverse. The lower corners are always triangular. The central enamel in the superior pincers has often disappeared, but, in this respect, there are numerous exceptions.

TWENTY-ONE YEARS.



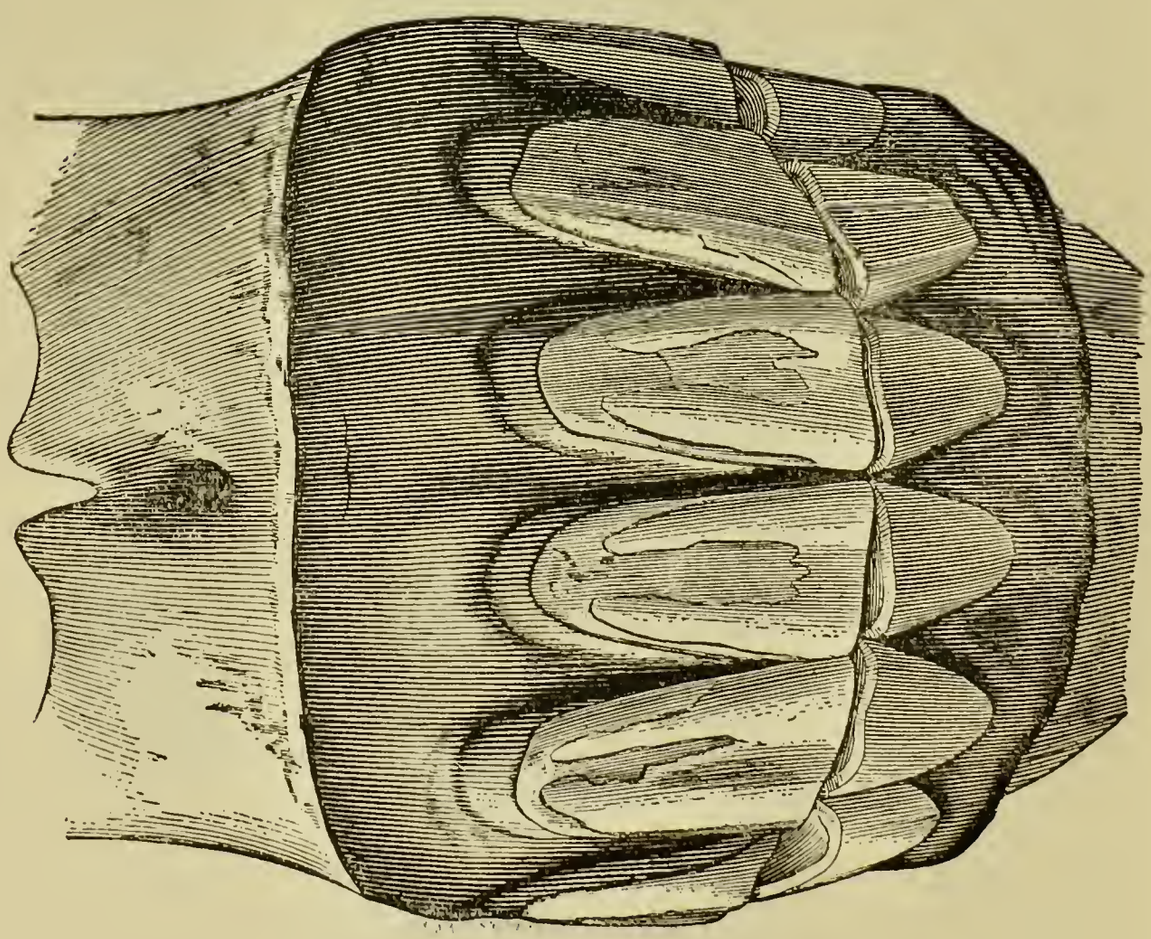
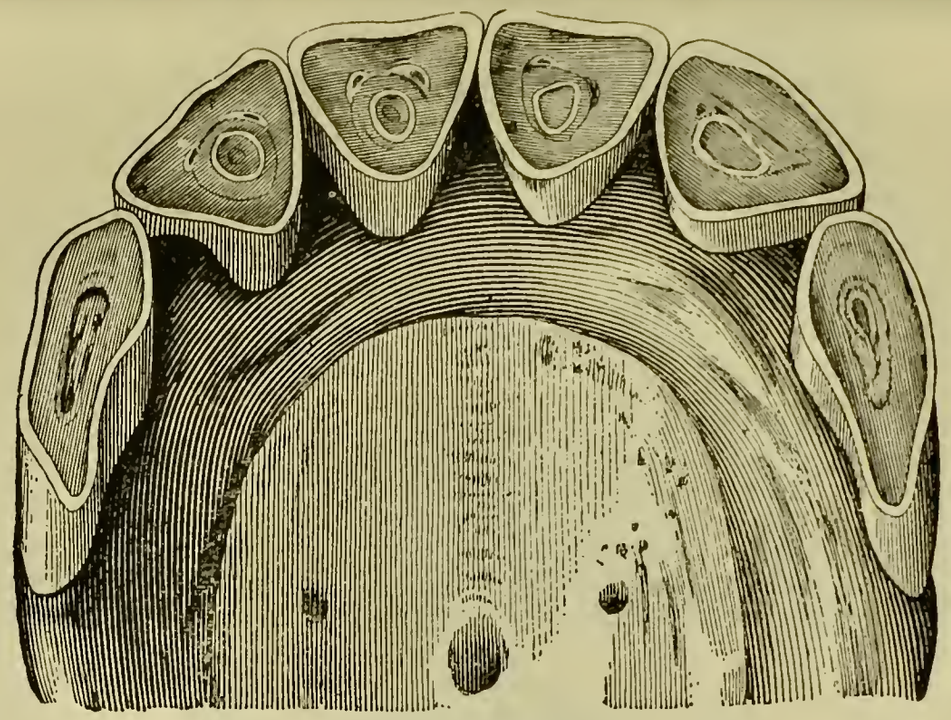
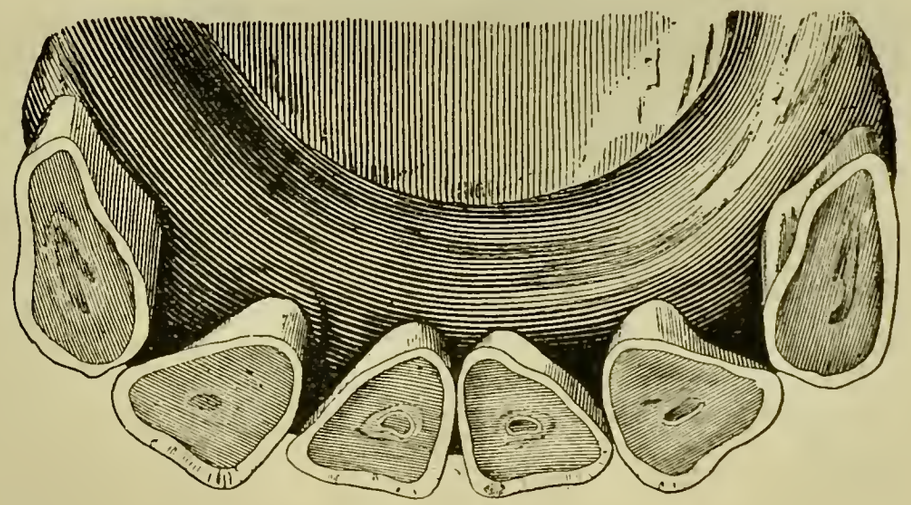


PLATE XXX.

Twenty-one Years.—The teeth have become so horizontal that, when viewed in *front*, it is difficult to see their anterior face, unless the head of the horse be raised. The triangular interstices, situated at the base of the superior incisors, augment more and more; this shows the convergence of the intermediates and the corners at their free extremity. In *profile*, the jaws are thin. The inferior corner, almost horizontal, has caused the disappearance of the notch on the superior corner. This disposition causes the formation, in these two teeth, of a surface of friction which is elongated from before to behind, or, rather, from the external to the internal side, instead of remaining triangular. The superior *tables*, in the pincers and the intermediates, are wide from their anterior to their posterior border; they are regularly triangular; the central enamel, in most instances, is absent. The inferior tables tend to become flattened from one side to the other and more and more divergent in front.





THIRTY YEARS.

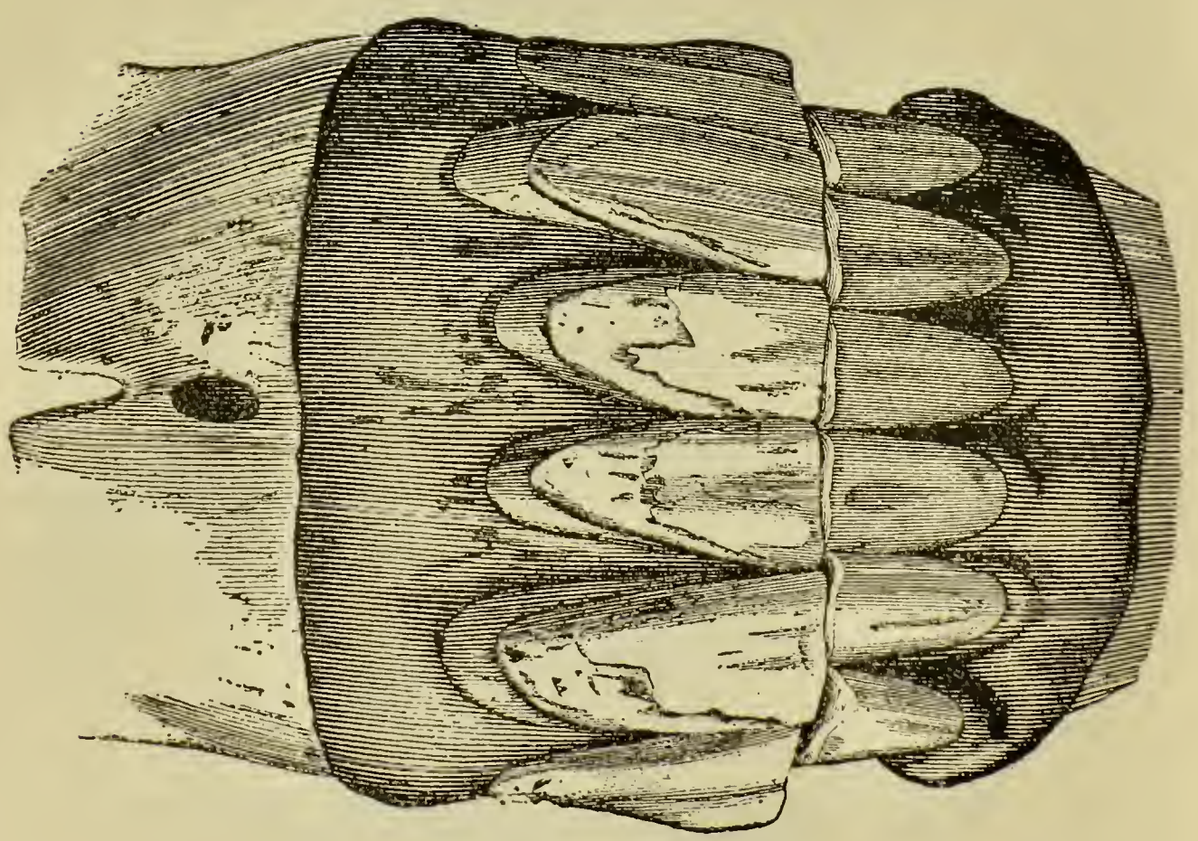
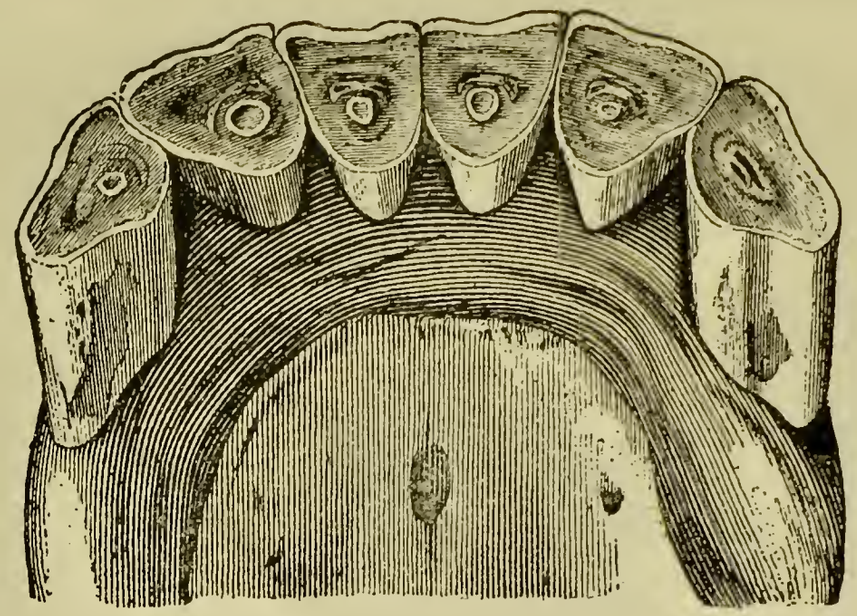
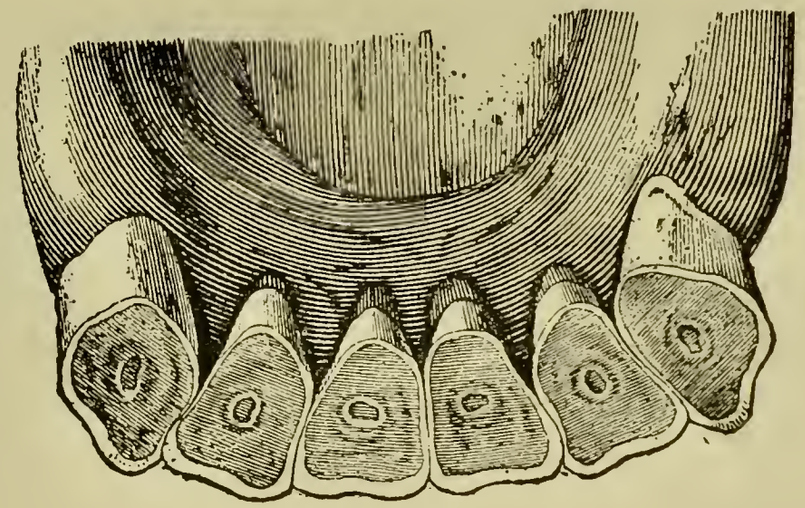


PLATE XXXI.

Thirty Years.—The characters of this period are those of extreme old age. They may be recapitulated as follows: in *front*, the superior arcade overlaps the inferior, which is considerably narrowed; the convergence of the corners and the intermediates becomes more and more distinct. In *profile*, the inferior incisors are very horizontal, especially the corners; the jaws are thin and separated from each other at the level of the bars. The inferior *tables* are flattened from side to side, or biangular; the peripheral enamel tends to disappear from their posterior border. Above, the tables are flattened in the same sense, and their peripheral enamel has a similar disposition. Sometimes in one of the incisive arcades, and at times in both, the teeth have acquired an excessive length, and then the central enamel has not yet disappeared; at other times, on the contrary, they are worn down almost to the gums and surrounded by a thick layer of radical cement, directly applied upon the dentine which is deprived of its peripheral enamel. Finally, the incisive arcs are very narrow and rectilinear from one side to the other.





PART III.

IRREGULARITIES OF THE DENTAL APPARATUS.

THE irregularities of the dental apparatus are numerous and interesting. When they exist, the horse is said to be *falsely marked*, or to have a *false mouth*. While many of them are without importance, there are others which should be taken into serious consideration, as much in their physiological relations as in the determination of the age. We will enumerate the more remarkable in the following synoptical table :

Irregularities.	1st. In number	Augmentation. Diminution.
	2d. In the form of the incisors.	
	3d. Through the uniting of two incisors.	
	4th. In the form of the central enamel	Fissure. Duplication.
	5th. In the depth of the infundibulum and its cavity	Béguité. False béguité.
	6th. Through defective length or excessive width of one of the jaws	Prognathism. Brachygnathism. Excess of width of the superior incisive arcade.
	7th. Through excess or lack of wear.	
	8th. Effects of wear from cribbing.	
	9th. Through the use of fraudulent means	Extraction of the milk incisors. Bishoping. Rasping of the corners.

We will study the irregularities of the dental system in the order given in this table.

1. Irregularities in the Number.

a. Augmentation.

Incisors.—The most extraordinary example of this anomaly is that which has been reported for the first time by Lafosse.[1] "There are some horses," says he, "which have a double row of incisors. This condition cannot exist without obstructing the other teeth, disturbing their support in the socket, and altering the germ of the tooth."

[1] Lafosse, Cours d'hippiatrique ou Traité complet de la médecine des chevaux, Paris, in-folio, 1772, p. 32.

We have made a similar observation upon a horse brought to the clinic of the Alfort School in 1842.[1] His mouth presented a double row of incisors of the second dentition in each jaw,—in other words, he had twenty-four in all.

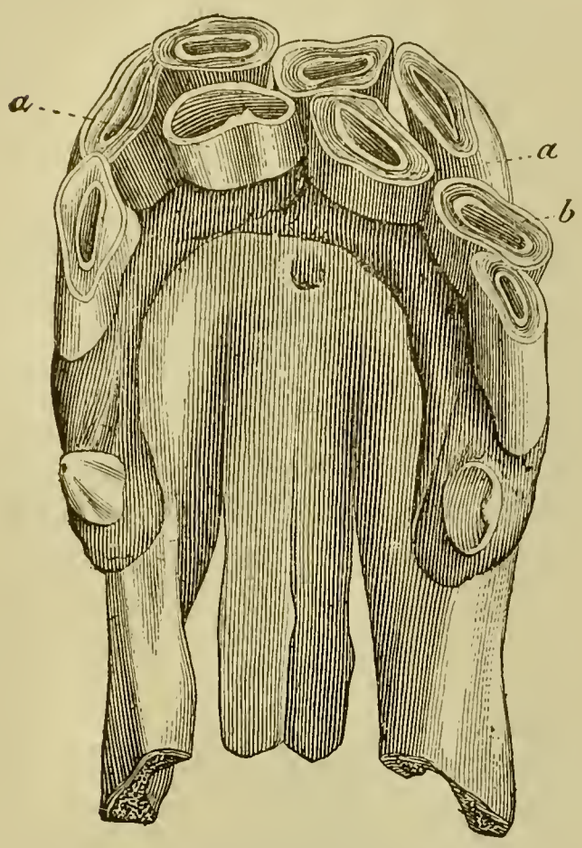


FIG. 308.—Two supernumerary pincers, *a*, *a*, and one intermediate, of the second dentition.

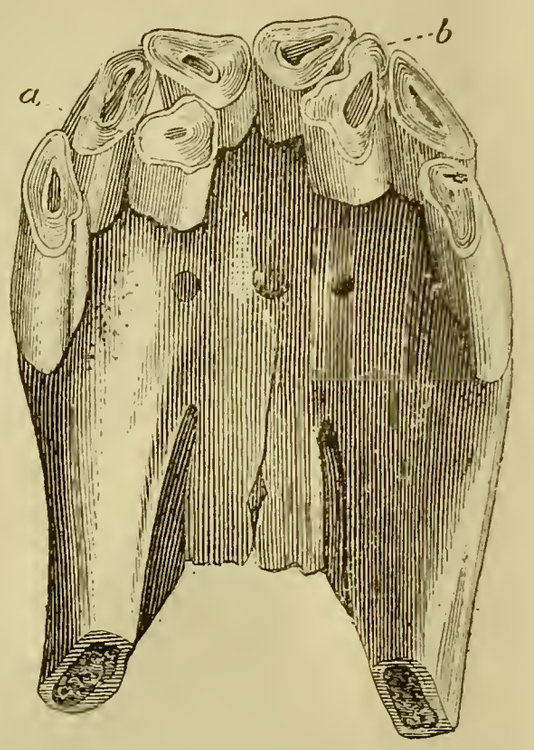


FIG. 309.—Two supernumerary intermediates, *a* and *b*, of the second dentition.

Such remarkable examples as these are very rare, but there are others relatively more frequent: those of augmentation of number, which involve the teeth of one or of both jaws, or consist in a *doubling* of these incisors. We have several times had the opportunity of witnessing these anomalies, more especially in the superior jaw.

Superior Jaw.—We have handed to Dr. Magitot[2] several specimens, which he reproduced in his beautiful treatise upon the "Anomalies du Système Dentaire." We will limit ourselves here to a few examples.

In one case (Fig. 308) there existed two supernumerary pincers, *a*, *a*, and one intermediate, *b*.

In another (Fig. 309) the supernumerary teeth were two intermediates, *a* and *b*.

In a third horse (Fig. 310) the anomaly consisted of one supernumerary intermediate, *a*, lying transversely and kept in position against the incisive arch by a small bridge of bone.

Finally, in a fourth (Fig. 311), a pincer, *a*, equally displaced, was found.

All these incisors were of the second dentition.[3]

---

[1] Arm. Goubaux, Des aberrations dentaires chez les animaux domestiques, in Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, année 1854, p. 70.

[2] Magitot, Traité des anomalies du système dentaire chez l'homme et les mammifères, in-4o, Paris, 1877.

[3] See, also, Ch. Morot, Incisive supplémentaire caniniforme à la mâchoire supérieure d'un cheval hongre de douze ans, in Recueil (Bulletin de la Société centrale de médecine vétérinaire), Mars, 1888, p. 138.

Inferior Jaw.—The augmentation in the number of incisor teeth in the lower jaw appears to us, all things considered, less common than in the upper jaw. We will cite, nevertheless, the doubling of a left permanent intermediate, which we have observed.

The supernumerary teeth, which, to our knowledge, are always of the second dentition, do not seriously modify the characters of the age; they are more or less solidly implanted into the alveolus, nearly always *displaced*, and influence in a variable manner the regularity of the incisive arcade.

It is important to remark that they differ from *irregular* teeth or from *stumps*, vestiges of deciduous milk-teeth broken by the animal or during a surgical operation.

Canines.—Our colleague, M. Ch. Morot, reports[1] having seen an adult horse with *seven canines*; the three supernumerary (two above and one below) were situated behind and very close to the normal canines.

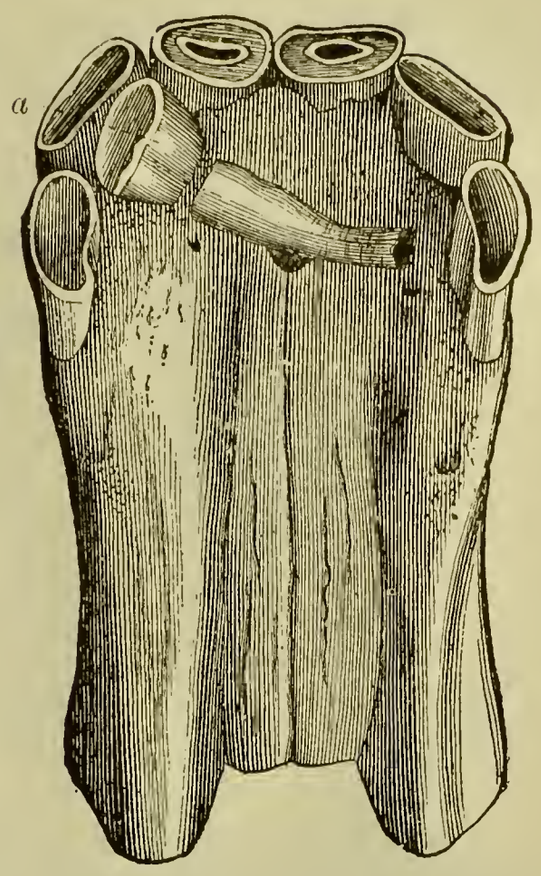


FIG. 310.—One right supernumerary intermediate, *a*, of the second dentition.

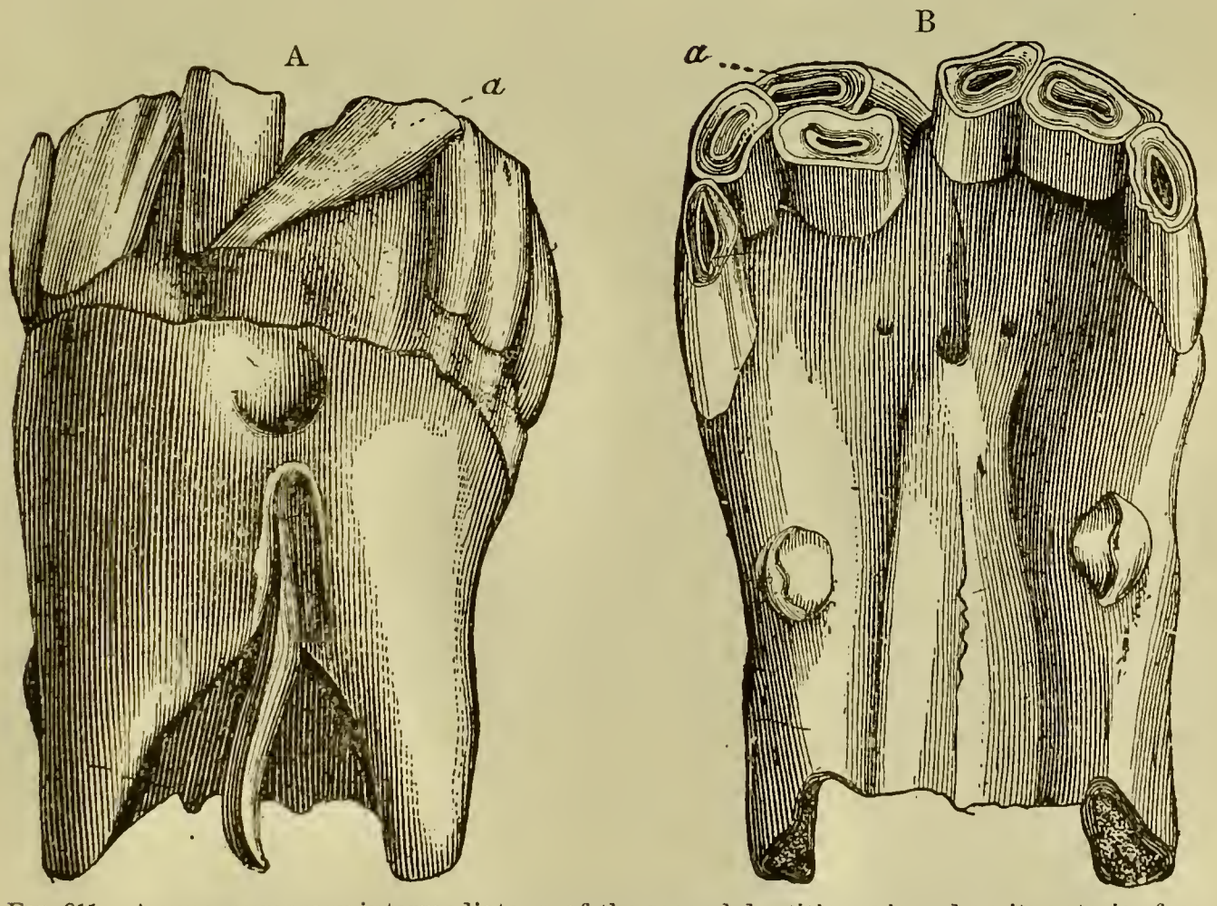


FIG. 311.—A supernumerary intermediate, *a*, of the second dentition, viewed on its anterior face, *A*, and on its dental table, *B*.

[1] Ch. Morot, Recueil de médecine vétérinaire (Bulletin de la Société centrale de médecine vétérinaire), 1888, p. 139.

Concerning our own experience, we have seen only one example in the ass (Fig. 312).

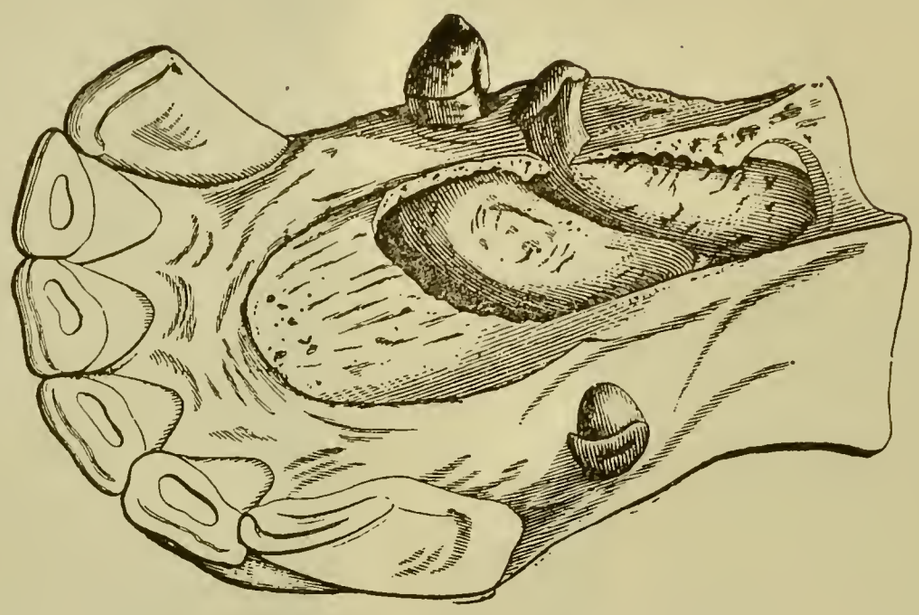


FIG. 312.—Double right inferior canine in the ass.

Molars.—Supernumerary molars in the horse and the ass have been observed for a long time by Lafosse,[1] Girard,[2] M. Thomas,[3] M. Chuchu,[4] M. Morot,[5] and ourselves.[6]

They exist nearly always in the superior jaw, either in the axis of the normal arcade or on the external side; in the latter case, they may produce wounds of the cheeks, a fact which has been observed by M. Chuchu.

In the inferior jaw they are considered very exceptional. M. Morot has, notwithstanding, related the case of a mare which presented a superior right supplementary molar, and, at the same time, two inferior, one right and one left.

Until the present time, the only facts known relate to the presence of *a single* supernumerary molar in each jaw; this tooth is most often situated behind the others, next to the sixth.

[We have in our possession a skull obtained from a Clydesdale mare, which has seven molars in each arcade. The first molar is evidently supernumerary, and very probably the first one of the seven molars in each arcade of the skull of the hipparion,—a reversion of an ancestral form; in other words, it is an excessive development of the *wolf-tooth*.]

It is not within our domain to speak of the *irregularities of locality*, of which science has collected several examples, in which the supernumerary teeth were situated in the zygomatic process, or at the base of the ear, projecting sometimes into the interior of the cranial cavity. These are heterotopic facts whose study pertains especially to teratology.

---

[1] Lafosse, loc. cit, p. 32.

[2] Girard, Traité de l'âge du cheval, 3e éd., p. 35.

[3] Thomas, Journal de médecine vétérinaire militaire, t. xiv., 1876-1877, p. 687.

[4] Chuchu, Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, année 1877, p. 637.

[5] Ch. Morot, Bulletin de la Société centrale de médecine vétérinaire, p. 434, in Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, 1888.

[6] Arm. Goubaux, loc. cit., p. 71.

b. Diminution.

Irregularities from diminution in the number of the teeth are perhaps less common than the preceding; they must not be confounded with the phenomena of a tardy eruption, with those of arrest of development, in which the teeth remain enclosed in their alveoli without ever piercing the gums, or, finally, with those of fractures and of extraction, which are quite often met in old horses. They can only result, in their true sense, from an arrest of development of the dental follicles; they entail no evil consequences, and may exist in the incisors, the canines, and the molars.

1st. **Incisors.**—Rudolphi[1] has noted the absence of one of these teeth in the horse, but gives no specific description.

M. Mégnin[2] has observed the absence of a left pincer in the adult horse.

In our experience, we have noted, in a horse fifteen years of age, the absence of the left intermediate and corner.

Absence of the corners, of which we possess some specimens (Fig. 313), has been cited.

In June, 1887, a horse was presented to us in which the four corners and the four tusks were wanting.

Relative to the diminution of the number of incisors of the first dentition, M. Bizard[3] has succeeded in obtaining the jaws of a colt twenty-eight months of age, in which the inferior pincer of the left side did not exist.

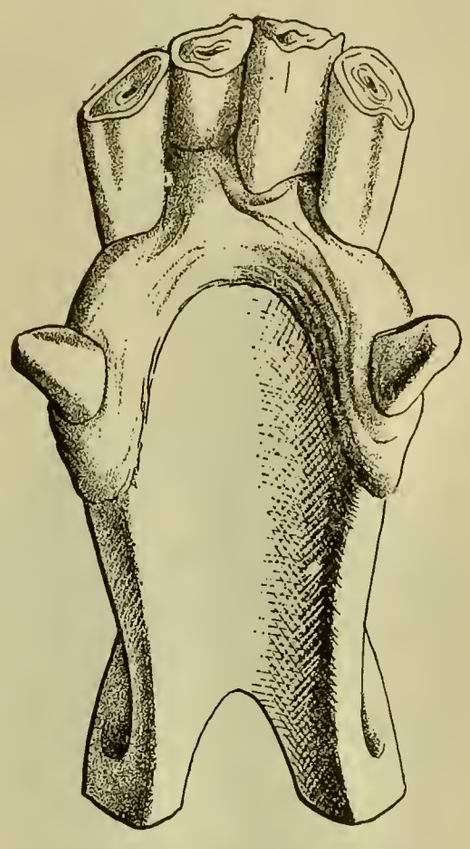


Fig. 313.—Absence of the inferior corners.

More recently our colleagues, Messrs. Lainé and Joly,[4] have mentioned the absence of the inferior pincers of the first and second dentition in a subject which they have been able to observe during a sufficient length of time.

M. Ch. Morot[5] has also presented to the Central Society of Veterinary Medicine two analogous cases, but involving the superior corners. Besides, he has demonstrated that this numerical reduction of the teeth is in obedience to the laws of heredity. He has also shown that the non-existence of the milk-teeth means a suppression of the corresponding permanent teeth; at other times, on the contrary, the eruption of the latter was not in the least hindered.

2d. **Canines.**—The absence of the superior canines, either on one side or on both, is more frequent than that of the inferior. But it is very excep-

---

[1] Rudolphi, cité par Isidore Geoffroy Saint-Hilaire, in Histoire générale et particulière des anomalies de l'organisation, t. i. p. 658.

[2] Mégnin, cité par le Dr. Magitot, loc. cit., p. 103, et suiv.

[3] Bizard, note communiquée.

[4] Lainé et Joly, note communiquée, 1887.

[5] Ch. Morot, in Bulletin de la Société centrale de médecine vétérinaire, Séance du 23 Novembre, 1882.

tional to find these teeth altogether absent, as in the horse of which we have spoken.

3d. **Molars.**—As to the molars, we have seen only two examples of this anomaly in the superior jaw.

2. Irregularities of Form.

"In certain subjects," says Girard,[1] "the incisors of the superior jaw present, at the age of six years, a well-marked triangular form, almost the same as is observed at fourteen or fifteen years of age." This premature triangular form, which we have often noticed, even at five years of age, cannot lead us into error, on account of the presence of the central enamel in all the teeth which have this form.

3. Irregularities caused by the Union of Two Teeth.

Isidore Geoffroy Saint-Hilaire[2] a long time ago mentioned this variety of irregularities, which is without importance in determining the age, but which should be considered as very rare, and resulting from the fusion of two neighboring dental follicles. They consist in an intimate fusion of two teeth, sometimes more or less distinct, at other times entirely confounded.

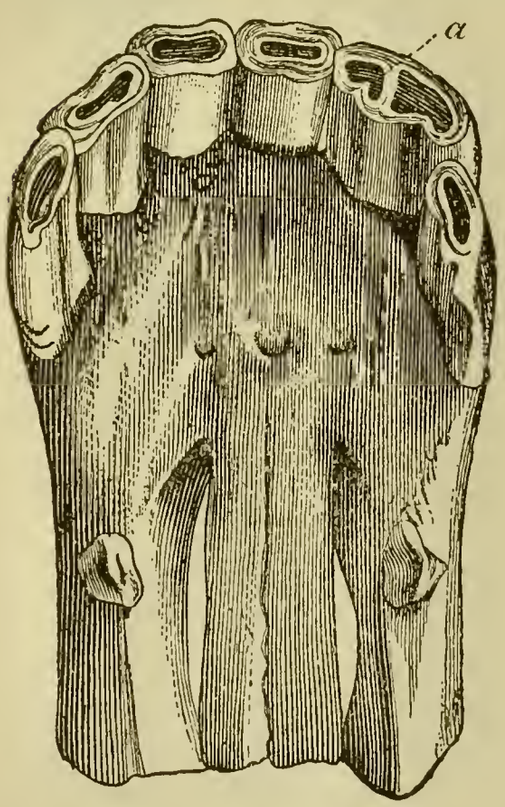


Fig. 314.—Union, at *a*, of two superior incisors, one of which is supernumerary.

We possess a specimen of the latter kind (Fig. 314); the superior intermediate was double, which could be easily recognized by its large volume, the presence of a groove corresponding to the line of fusion, and the existence of two perfectly-distinct external dental cavities.

Messrs. Chauveau and Arloing[3] have observed, in the clinic of the Veterinary School at Lyons, an ass in which the pincers and the intermediates were soldered together in the inferior jaw. The incisor teeth were only four in number instead of six, the irregularity existing on both the right and left sides.

M. Ch. Morot[4] has reported a very remarkable case of this kind in a gelding six years old. The double tooth was supernumerary and situated in the inferior jaw, external to and behind the corner, which it touched. The two pieces which composed it were seven centimetres in length and separated for the greater part of their extent, save at the level of the

---

[1] Girard, loc. cit., p. 66.

[2] Isidore Geoffroy Saint-Hilaire, loc. cit., t. i. p. 546.

[3] Chauveau et Arloing, Anatomie comparée des animaux domestiques, 4e éd., p. 413.

[4] Ch. Morot, Bulletin de la Société centrale de médecine vétérinaire, p. 140, in Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, année 1888.

roots, which were united at their points for a distance of one and one-half centimetres. The nerves and blood-vessels penetrated through the roots into the two pulp cavities by means of a single orifice; the alveolus was single.

4. Irregularities in the Form of the Central Enamel.

a. **Fissure.**—We know that the central enamel circumscribes the parietes of a conical cavity, depressed from before to behind, which is entirely isolated

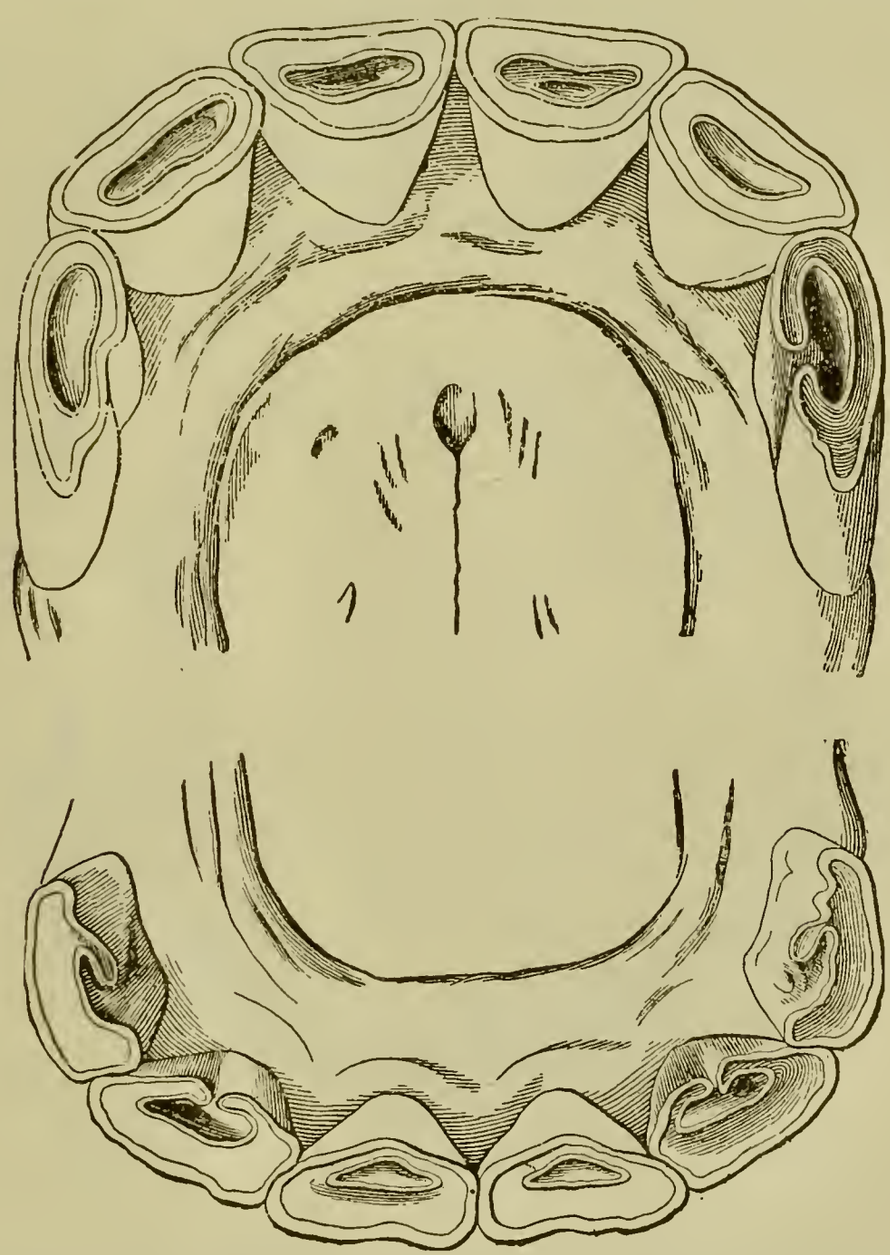


FIG. 315.—Fissure of the infundibulum of the inferior intermediates and corners, as well as of the left superior corner (horse).

from the peripheral enamel upon the surface of friction. This is not always so, as we have verified by observation a large number of times, but more often in the ass and mule than in the horse.

It happens, in fact, that the posterior border of the incisor, less developed than usual, fails to close the external dental cavity behind; whence it follows that the free extremity of this tooth, beginning at its anterior border, simulates a hollow surface, oblique downward and backward (inferior incisors), which can, to

a certain extent, be compared to the lingual surface (*avale*) of the tooth of a ruminant animal (Fig. 315).

This more or less deep variety of fissure of the infundibulum, which causes a total or partial absence of a true external dental cavity, is more common in the inferior than in the superior incisors, and sometimes renders difficult the determination of the animal's age. The surface of friction, as soon as it is formed, besides being very irregular, does not present in a distinct manner the two circles known under the names *peripheral enamel* and *central enamel.* The latter

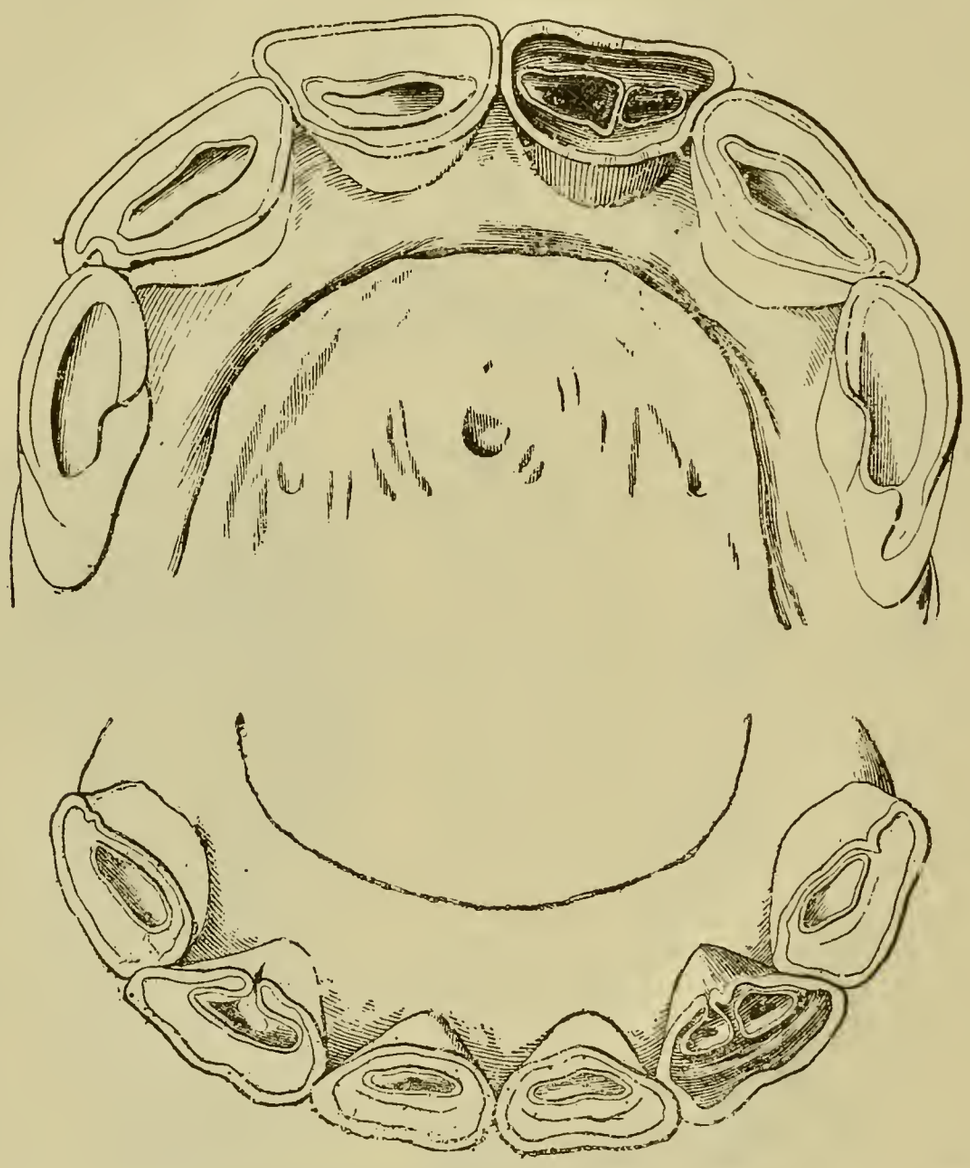


FIG. 316.—A superior pincer and an inferior intermediate provided with two infundibula.

is cleft behind, in a proportion which varies with the width of the fissure, and its extremities become continuous on each side with the peripheral enamel.

It is, without doubt, this type of tooth which Johann Schlechter, of Vienna, has taken for a type of development of the incisors of the horse.[1] It is only a question here of a malformation of the reflection of the enamel, otherwise somewhat rarely observed upon the whole of the arcade, but more common on the

[1] Johann Schlechter, Ueber Bau und Form der Zähne bei dem Pferde und seinen Vorfahren, in Œsterreichilche Monatschrift für Thierheilkunde, etc. (January, February, and March numbers, 1881).

corners than on the intermediates, and on the latter than on the pincers. The teeth which are normally constructed will always act as landmarks in determining the wear.

β. **Duplication.**—A much less frequent malformation is the *duplication* or *doubling* of the infundibula formed by the central enamel, resulting, consequently, in the presence of two external dental cavities upon the same surface of friction (Fig. 316). This fact, which we have pointed out for the first time,[1] and of which we possess some examples, has no importance as regards the determination of the age. These anomalies must not be confounded with those of fusion or soldering of two teeth, of which we have spoken; for, in the former case, the teeth are no larger than when in a normal state, and show, besides, no external trace of a previous fusion. It is probable that this anatomical disposition is the result of the bifurcation of the external papilla, or germ of enamel. In certain subjects, one of these two cavities is cleft behind and opens upon the posterior face of the tooth, instead of being entirely isolated, like the other one, upon the central part of the dental table.

5. Irregularities in the Depth of the Infundibulum and its External Dental Cavity.

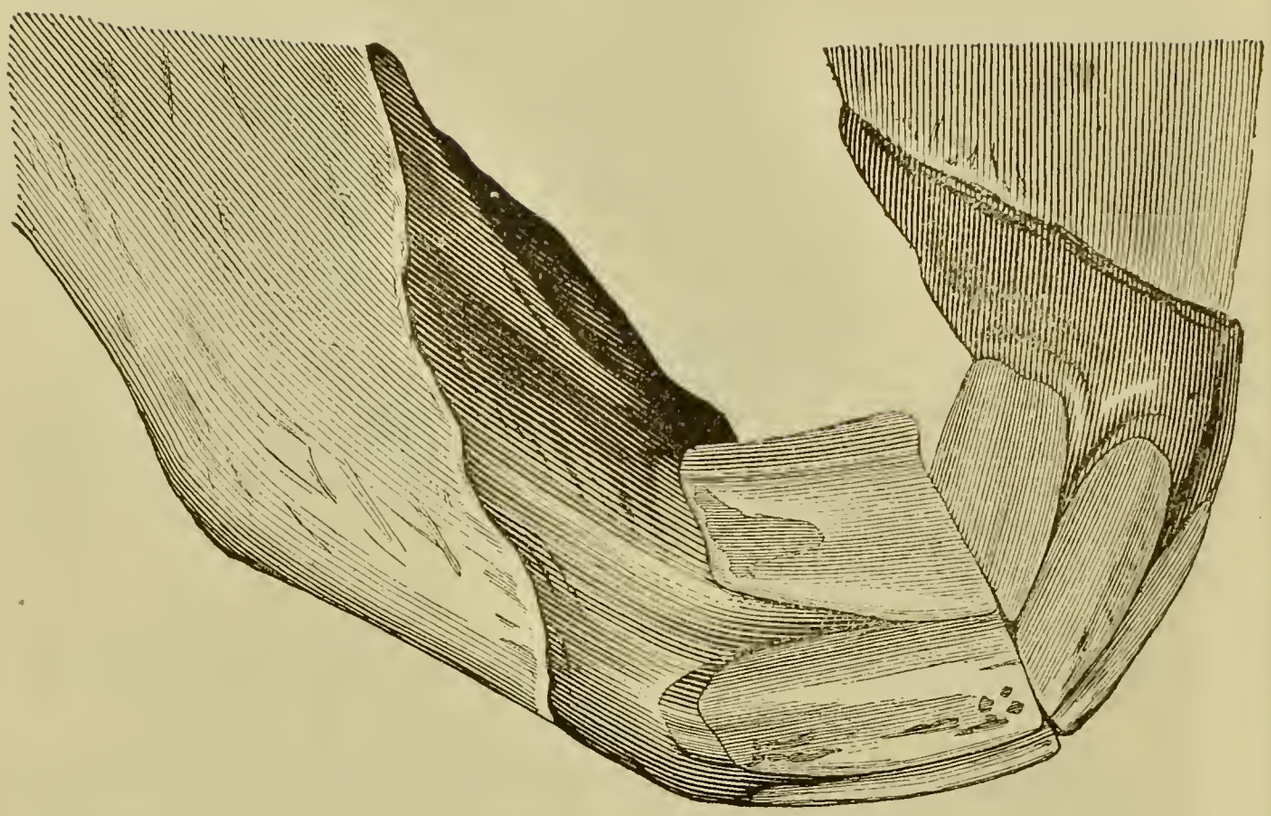
a. **Béguité.**—When the external dental cavity or dental cup persists upon the dental table at a period when it should have disappeared, the animal is called *bégu*, and does not mark his teeth properly, which is designated *béguité*. (Plate XXXII.)

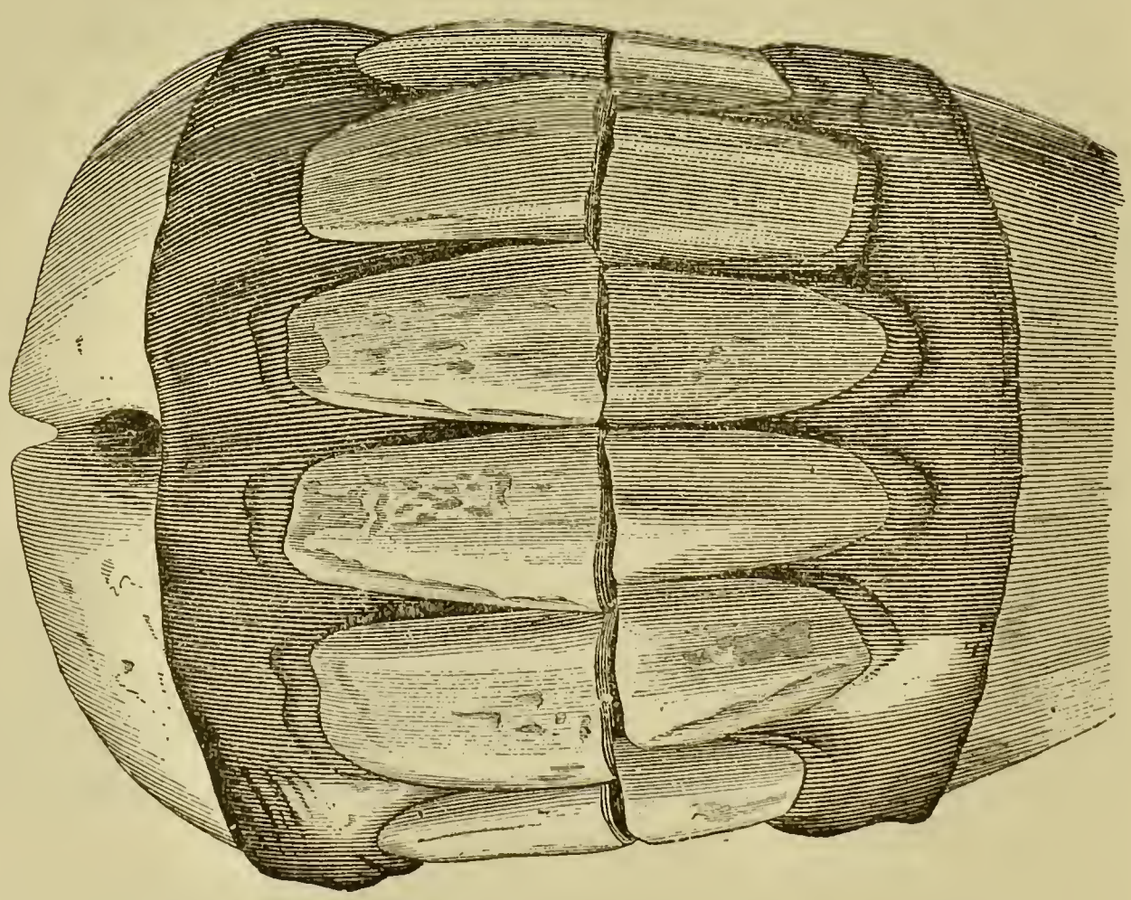
We know already that the bottom of the infundibulum is filled by a deposit of cement whose thickness can modify the depth of the external cavity of the tooth. Besides, the eruption of the incisors having taken place successively in pairs, from the pincers to the corners, the successive disappearance of these cavities is effected first upon the teeth which complete their eruption first, and which, for this reason, have been used the longer. It is this which constitutes *regular levelling*.

But this levelling can only take place in its normal succession, and with such regularity, on condition that the external dental cavity has almost the same depth in all the incisor teeth; or, in other words, that the cementous deposit of the infundibulum takes place in a layer of uniform thickness. But as this is far from being the case in many instances, since in certain pincers the cementous nucleus is two centimetres in thickness, while in others it scarcely attains a few millimetres, it can be very easily understood that an infundibulum almost void of cement means a *tardy levelling*, and that an infundibulum filled with cement means an *early levelling*.

---

[1] Goubaux et Barrier, Archives vétérinaires, année 1881, p. 133.





BÉGU.—NINE YEARS.

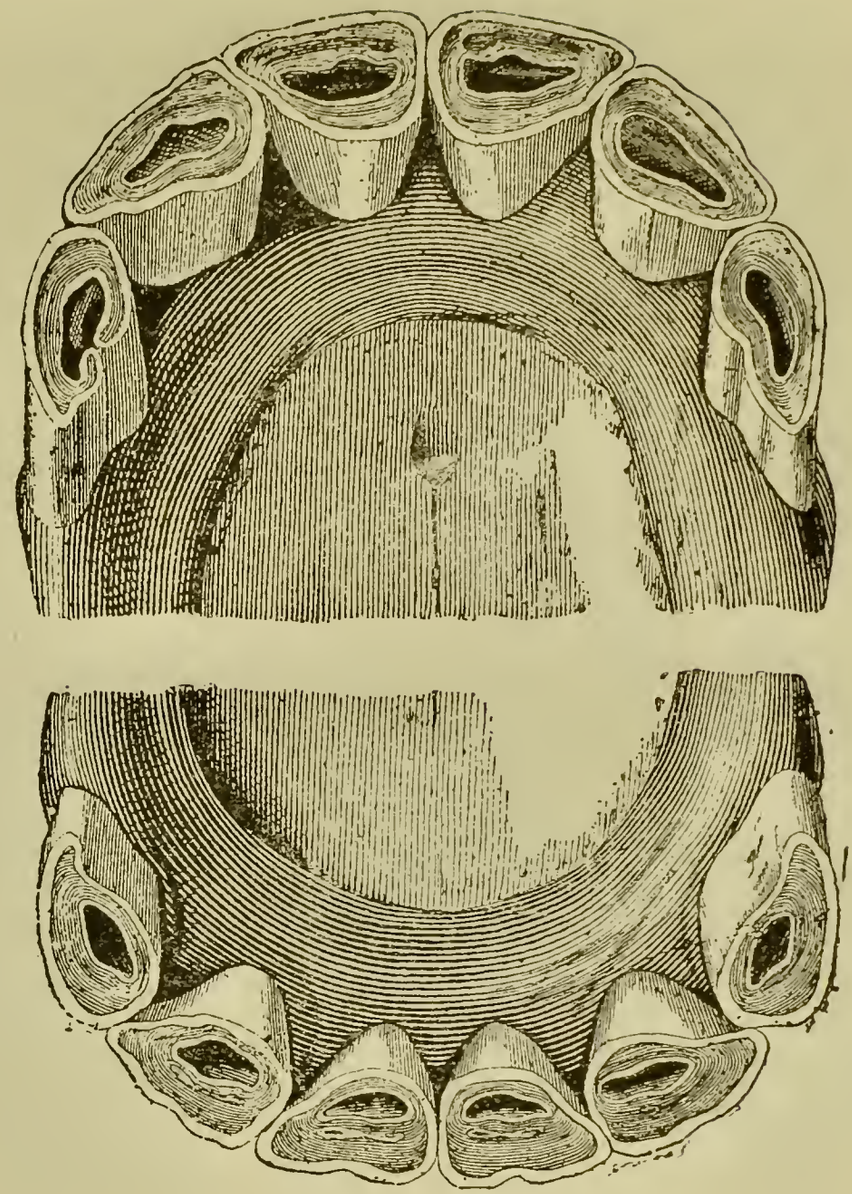


PLATE XXXII.

Bégu.—The horse to which these jaws belonged was *bégu* in all the inferior incisors. He was nine years of age. Inspection of the inferior *tables* shows the presence of the external dental cavity in all the teeth, when, at this age, they should have disappeared a long time before. Still, an examination in *profile* proves that the incidence of the arcades is not that of a mouth of five or six years. Besides, the inferior dental *tables* are round; the central enamel has a small area, and is approaching the posterior border of the tables; the corners are much worn and rounded; finally, the dental star, very distinct, occupies almost the middle of the free extremity. These characters, added to the freshness of the corners, the inclination of the inferior, the notch on the superior, and the general state of the subject, are sufficient evidence to correct the false indications furnished by the absence of levelling.

A deep external dental cavity means nothing else than the persistence of the cavity, "the mark," at a period when it should exist no longer, and its principal cause resides in the thinness of the layer of cement which fills its bottom.

Besides, the hardness of the dental tissues, the nature of the food, and the conditions of health of the teeth, are also so many causes capable of explaining this irregularity; but the differences of wear which they imply are not well recognized, and have not been, so far as we know, determined experimentally.

It is known that the dental cups should not be present after the age of eight years, for it is at this period that all the inferior incisor teeth are levelled.

The observer, however, will be very much mistaken if he accords an absolute value to this assertion. In many horses the external dental cavity, in the inferior incisors, has not disappeared at six years in the pincers, and frequently persists in the intermediates up to seven years. On the contrary, it is not rare to witness a too early levelling of the former or of the latter.

However this may be, *béguité* is not known to have the least influence upon the value of the services rendered by the horse. This reminds us of an acquaintance of ours at the Paris Tattersall, who never purchased a horse, however suitable he might have been in all other respects, if he was *bégu*.

According to M. de Curnieu, the *bégut* horse is a fable. "In fact, if the 'marks' on the dental table indicate six years, the length and the inclination of the teeth will contradict the first evidence, and should prevent us from being deceived. In these horses, the wearing away of the teeth takes place more slowly than in the generality of cases. Therefore the tooth is harder; therefore the general constitution of the animal is stronger; therefore the animal is more durable; therefore he really has for the service the age which he appears to have. For the age of a horse is not so much the number of years he has lived as of the years during which he will yet be able to live and to work."[1]

Of this there can be no doubt. Still there is no positive proof: 1st, that the anomaly in question is due to the hardness of the dental tissues; 2d, that the resistance of one organ to wear and tear necessarily implies that of the organism as a whole.

There are some mouths in which the dental cups are more hollow

---

[1] De Curnieu, loc. cit., t. iii. p. 529.

than in others, but this disposition of the latter, not having any influence upon the qualities of the animal, becomes unimportant as to its practical application. It is so irregular that it may exist in one or in several incisors, on one side only, or on both at the same time ; it is so frequent that it may be seen in almost all horses at some period or other of their life.

Hence we have the best reason for saying[1] that the *levelling of the incisors has much less value,* from a practical point of view, than the *form of the central enamel,* since the infundibulum is so irregularly filled with cement, according to the subjects. The successive configurations of its central enamel, as the tooth wears off, enables the practised eye to determine with enough precision to what phase of wear it belongs. Its absolute depth seems to us more constant in the same teeth than is generally believed. On the other hand, admitting that its length may become excessive, there are other characteristics drawn from the form of the tooth, its direction, and its coloration, which indicate more. These, in themselves, would be sufficient in nearly all cases to justify an opinion, but there is another one which, by its presence, should remove all doubts : it is the dental star, a yellowish, narrow, transverse line, which ordinarily becomes visible, at eight years of age, upon the dental table between the anterior border of the tooth and the ring of central enamel surrounding the external dental cavity, or its cul-de-sac, when the external cavity no longer exists.

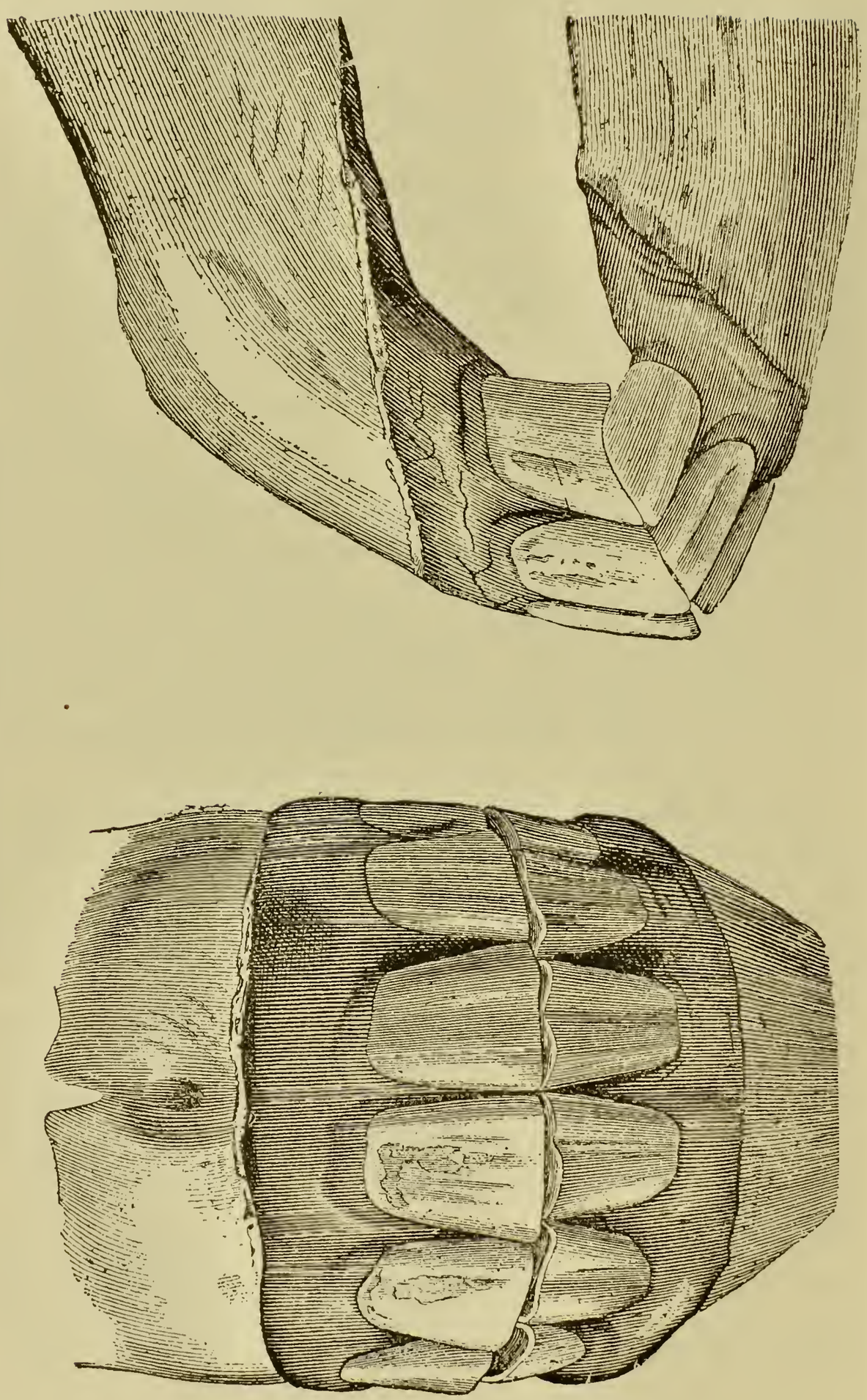
b. **False Béguité.**—The persistence of the cul-de-sac of the central enamel at a period when it should no longer exist constitutes *false béguité,* and causes the horse to be designated *false bégu.* (Plate XXXIII.) This cul-de-sac, it is known, is filled with cement, and appears on the table as a circular ring of enamel standing out in relief.

It appears thus first in the pincers, then in the intermediates, and, finally, in the corners, as soon as their levelling has been completed. If the wear is normal, and if the external cavity has the ordinary depth, it should assume this disposition at eight years in all the inferior incisors, and its disappearance takes place only at the age of twelve or thirteen years.

It is hardly possible to explain this tardy disappearance of the central enamel or the *false béguité* by admitting an excessive length of its external cavity, all things being equal otherwise. It may be surmised, nevertheless, that this anomaly may be due also to a greater

---

[1] Goubaux et Barrier, Archives vétérinaires, année 1881, p. 133.



FALSE BÉGU.—FOURTEEN YEARS.

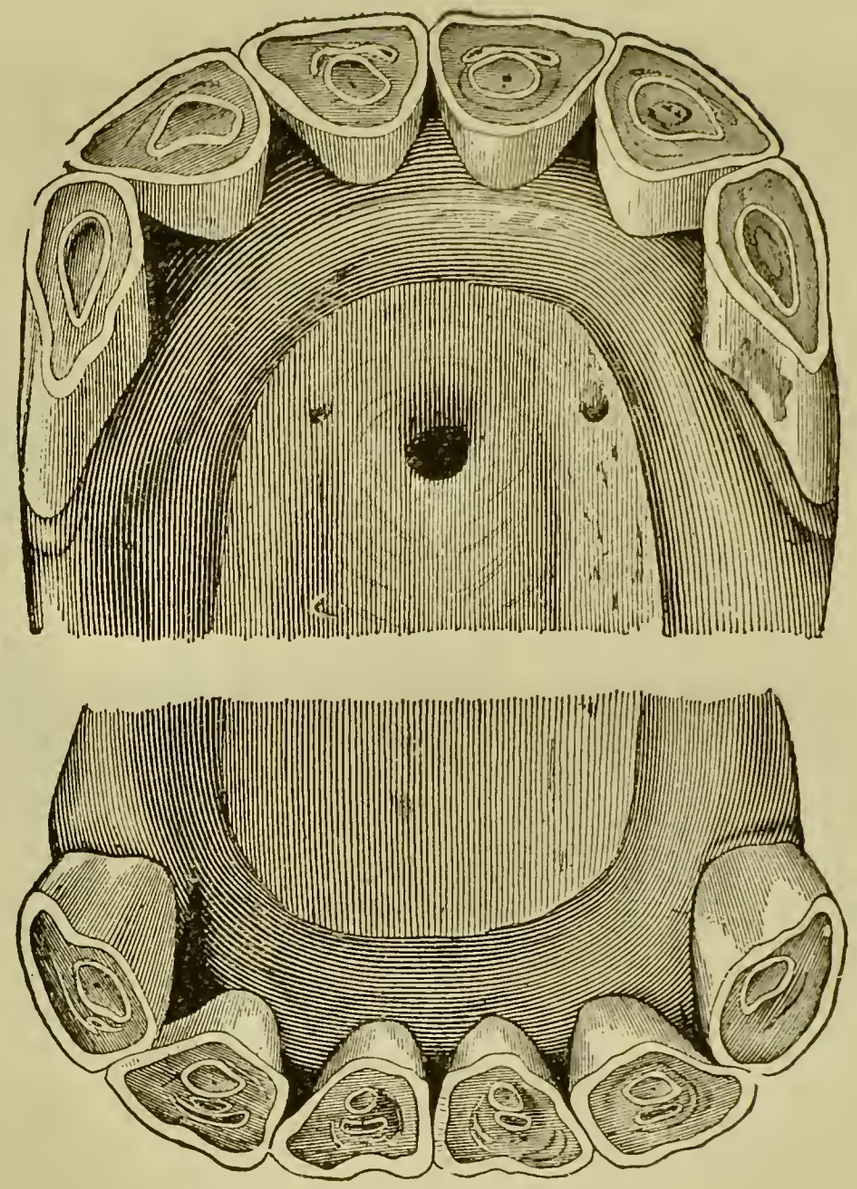


PLATE XXXIII.

False Bégu.—The subject from which these jaws were taken was *fourteen years of age.* Inspection of the jaws, made only from a point of view of their levelling, would indicate this mouth to be that of a ten-year-old; but a more careful examination of the dental table proves: 1st, that the pincers are almost triangular; 2d, that the intermediates are becoming so; 3d, that the dental star, very distinct everywhere, is quite narrow transversely, and even rounded in the pincers, and placed in the centre of their table. As to the inferior incisive arcade, it is greatly depressed in its middle. Viewed in *front,* the teeth are deprived of their cement; the inferior are not very apparent to inspection, in consequence of their horizontal direction. In *profile,* the inferior corner has an obliquity which is not that of six years; it is narrow from before to behind, and everywhere almost of the same width. The superior has a wide notch, which is cut in the middle of its table, while at seven years the notch is much closer towards its external border. Finally, the incidence of the arcades is very acute. All the characters tend to make this mouth older than would be inferred from a first observation.

hardness of the dental tissues, to the nature of the aliment, or, again, to their state of soundness; but the first of these causes is by far the most common.

Like the *béguité*, it is frequently observed and in a very irregular manner. Sometimes it exists only upon a few of the teeth, at other times in all, on one side of the incisive arcade only, or in both at the same time.

Whatever may be its forms, it is never a serious obstacle to the determination of the age. While its presence, at first sight, would indicate the horse to be younger, an attentive examination of the dental table—its particular form, the configuration and the situation of the dental star, the state of the superior incisors, the direction of the teeth, their length, their coloration, etc.—will furnish many signs, easily appreciable, and which will prevent us from committing a grave error.

6. Irregularities through Defect of Length or Excess of Width of one of the Jaws.

A.—**Defect of Length of one of the Jaws.**—We have seen and also possess some specimens of this very rare anomaly. Their variable degrees permit us to establish some important distinctions as respects their gravity.

In the mildest cases there is found a slight diminution of length of the superior jaw, which occasions a prominence of the inferior incisors and simulates somewhat the *prognathism* of man, in which the inferior jaw appears longer than the superior. The only unfavorable effect of this form of jaw is an abnormal wear, rendering the determination of the age more difficult.

In all the more serious cases (Figs. 317 and 318), on the contrary, it depends upon an arrest of development of one of the jaws, to which can be applied the name *brachygnathism*[1] (*superior* and *inferior*), because, in fact, the jaw which is affected is shorter than the other.[2]

Such a disproportion of length has a definite importance in that which concerns: 1st, the deformity of the opposite jaw, which is curved more or less forward than normal; 2d, great difficulty in the prehension of food, especially in horses feeding on pasture; 3d, finally, an absolute obstacle to the determination of the age.

Brachygnathism is *superior* (Fig. 317) or *inferior* (Fig. 318); the former is more rare than the latter. The incisors, in both cases, are of great length. As to the molar arcades, they are normal. The malformation, therefore, only alters the dimensions of the superior or inferior interdental spaces.

When the incisors still touch each other, the wear due to the friction involves their contiguous faces, and produces here, ordinarily, a very oblique bevelling.

---

[1] From βραχῦς, short, and γνάθος, jaw.

[2] It will be remarked that *superior brachygnathism*, for example, is accompanied by *inferior prognathism*, more or less marked, and *vice versa*.

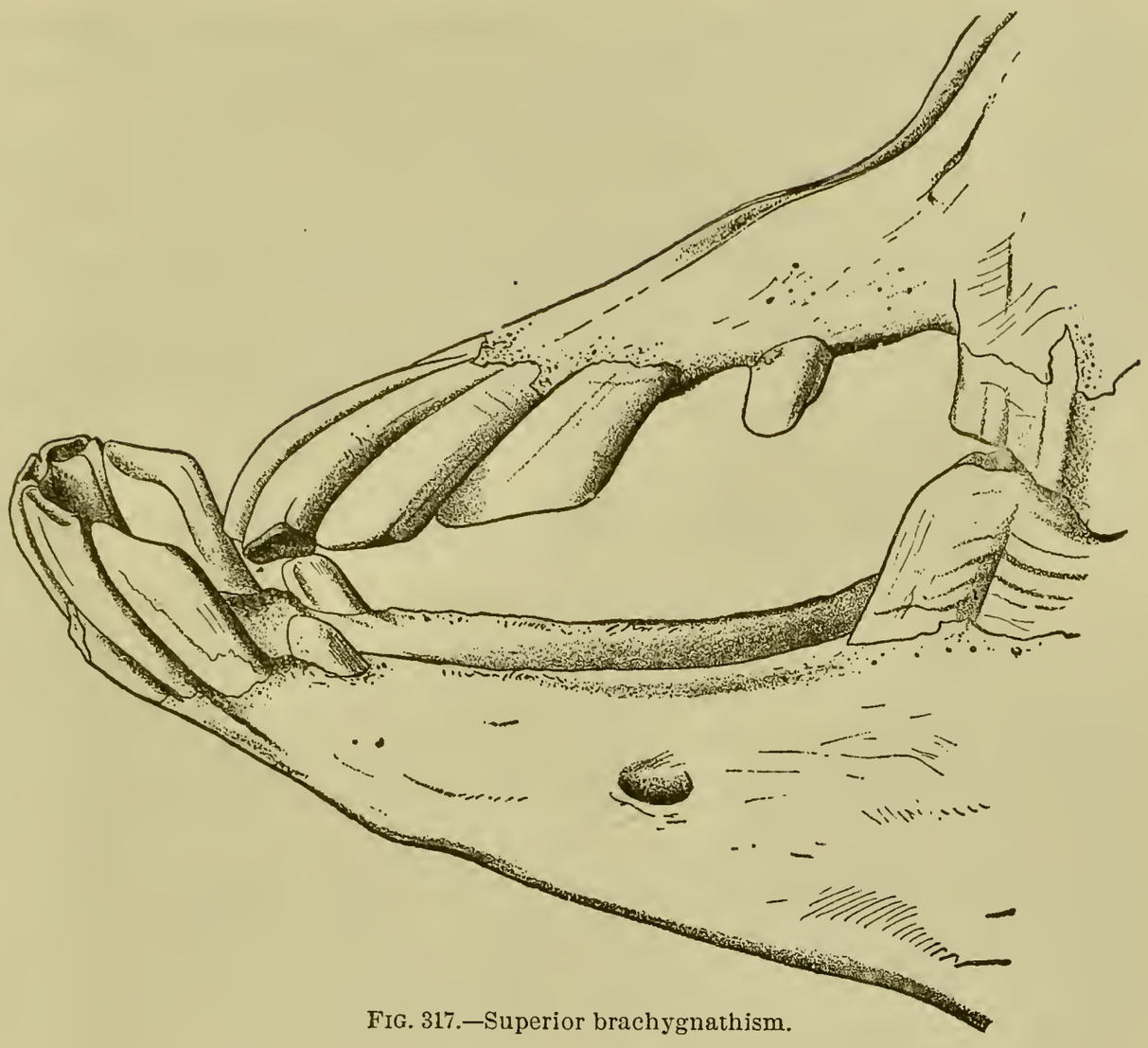


FIG. 317.—Superior brachygnathism.

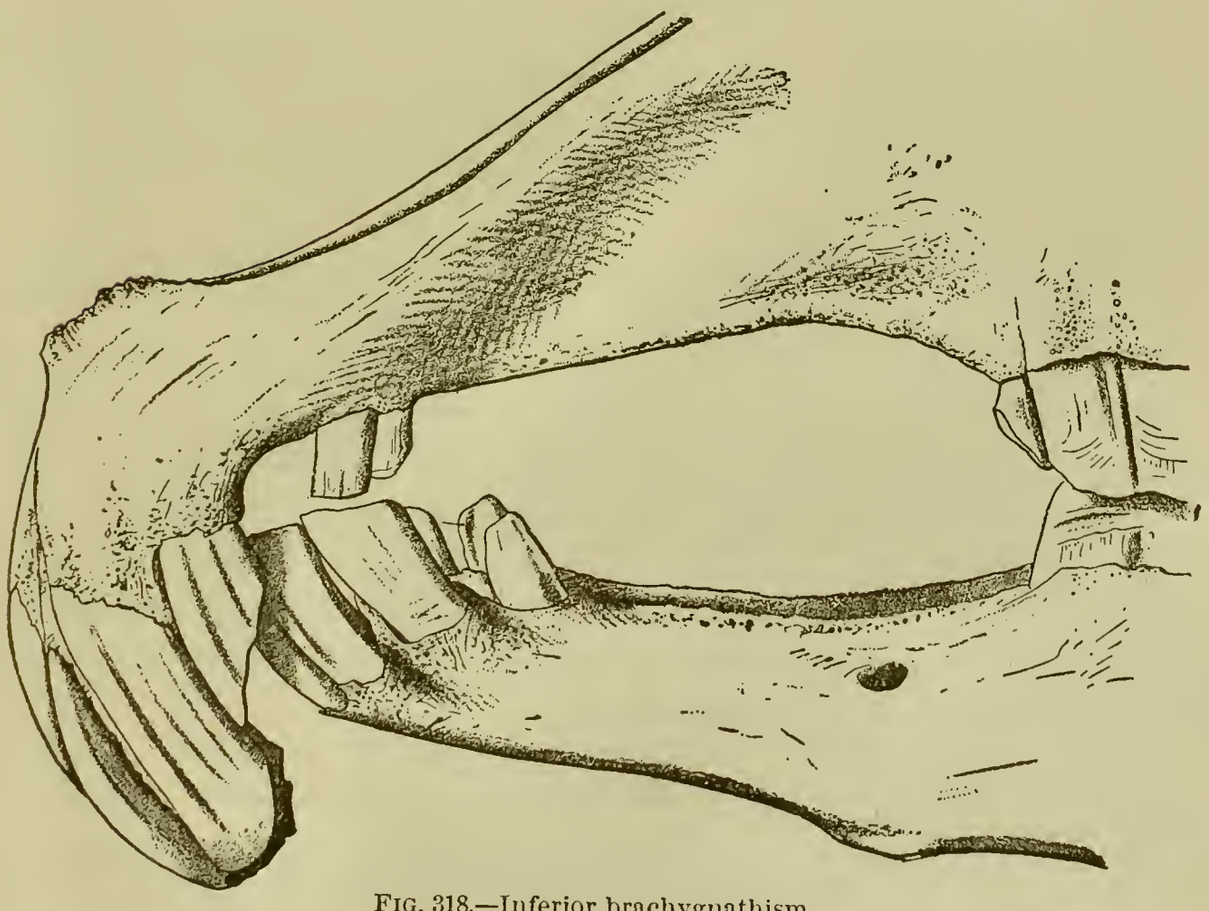


FIG. 318.—Inferior brachygnathism.

Let us add that the teeth of the shorter jaw, by increasing excessively in length, are at times capable of injuring the corresponding parts of the opposite jaw, the region of the barbs or the hard palate, according to the case.

Our colleagues, Messrs. Weber and Mitaut,[1] have each observed an example of inferior brachygnathism in which pressure was made on the hard palate almost to the point of perforation.

B.—**Excess of Width of the Superior Incisive Arcade.**—An *excess of width of the superior incisive arcade* is quite frequently met. When the jaws are closed, the latter overlaps the inferior arcade in front and upon the sides, over its whole periphery. This is probably the beginning of what we will study a little farther on under the name *parrot mouth.*

7. Irregularities through Excess or from Insufficient Wear.

§ 1. Incisor Teeth.

In general, the incisors always preserve the same length of their free part, although they diminish each year under the influence of the friction which takes place upon their table. This is due to the fact that the teeth are being constantly pushed out of their alveoli; whence it follows that what is at first a portion of the root will, in time, be pushed out so as to constitute a part of the crown. Transverse markings, those of a rasp, for example, made at different heights on the anterior face of these teeth, will ultimately disappear one after the other.

By experiments of this nature, Pessina[2] has demonstrated an annual wearing away of four millimetres of the tooth in common horses, and only three millimetres in those that are well bred. H. Bouley has verified the accuracy of these results in animals which belonged to him.

But there are some horses in which the teeth are too long, others in which they are too short. How can this be determined?

Nothing is more easy, since it is known, from the observations of Girard, that the free part of the incisors, from the gum to the table, has a mean length of fifteen millimetres. There are certain subjects, nevertheless, in which this length varies according to the teeth examined. The same author has recognized that it is about eighteen millimetres for the pincers, fifteen millimetres for the intermediates, and thirteen millimetres for the corners. All these facts, which we must remember, we will use presently.

---

[1] Weber et Mitaut, Bulletin de la Société centrale de médecine vétérinaire, in Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, année 1876, p. 768.

[2] Pessina, Sul modo di conoscere dai denti l'età dei cavelli. Translated from the German by Luiggi Ferreri and revised by Giuseppe Antonio Cross, Milan, 1831, p. 24 and Pl. ix.

As we have already stated, the variations of length are of two orders: the *excess* and the *insufficiency*. We will first study the former.

a. Excess of Length of the Crown.

This anomaly presents the following variations:

a. **Incisors too Long in both Jaws.**—In specimens deposited by us in the museum of the Alfort School, we have found an excess of length of nineteen to twenty-two millimetres for the superior teeth and fifteen to eighteen millimetres for the inferior.

The direction of such teeth, as a rule, closely approaches the horizontal, for, were it otherwise, the superior molar arcade could no longer be brought in contact with the inferior. Their free extremities are a little divergent, and, on this account, the arcades are somewhat fan-shaped. The surface of friction still resembles that of early years; flattened from before to behind, it tends to assume an oval form; as to the central enamel, it occupies a large area upon the dental table, and a small external dental cavity on the inferior corners often still exists.

The excessive length of the crown, in such conditions, is not in relation with that of the root; the teeth, less firmly implanted, are much more liable to break. Besides, they do not mark the real age, and might deceive the observer who only makes his inferences from the dental tables, without having recourse to the procedure indicated by Pessina and Girard.

To determine the correct age of the horse it suffices to shorten, in imagination, the teeth which are too long. This means, easy of employment if the successive forms of the dental table at the different periods be recalled, enables one to arrive at an estimate, if not exact, at least very approximative.

Sawing or rasping off the incisors which, in old horses, have acquired an excessive length, a procedure often practised by horse-dealers, with a view of making them appear younger than they really are, does not deceive the expert. An attentive purchaser should not thus be deceived, since, by this means, he is spared the mental operation of shortening the teeth, which we have just recommended. But the layman may be influenced by this trick, for he is imbued with the idea, very correct otherwise, that the exaggerated length of the teeth coincides, to a certain extent, with the animal's age.

b. **Incisors too Long in the Superior Jaw alone.**—This anomaly constitutes what is vulgarly called *parrot mouth*, or *crow mouth*, *bec de perroquet* (Fig. 319), by reason of the resemblance of the

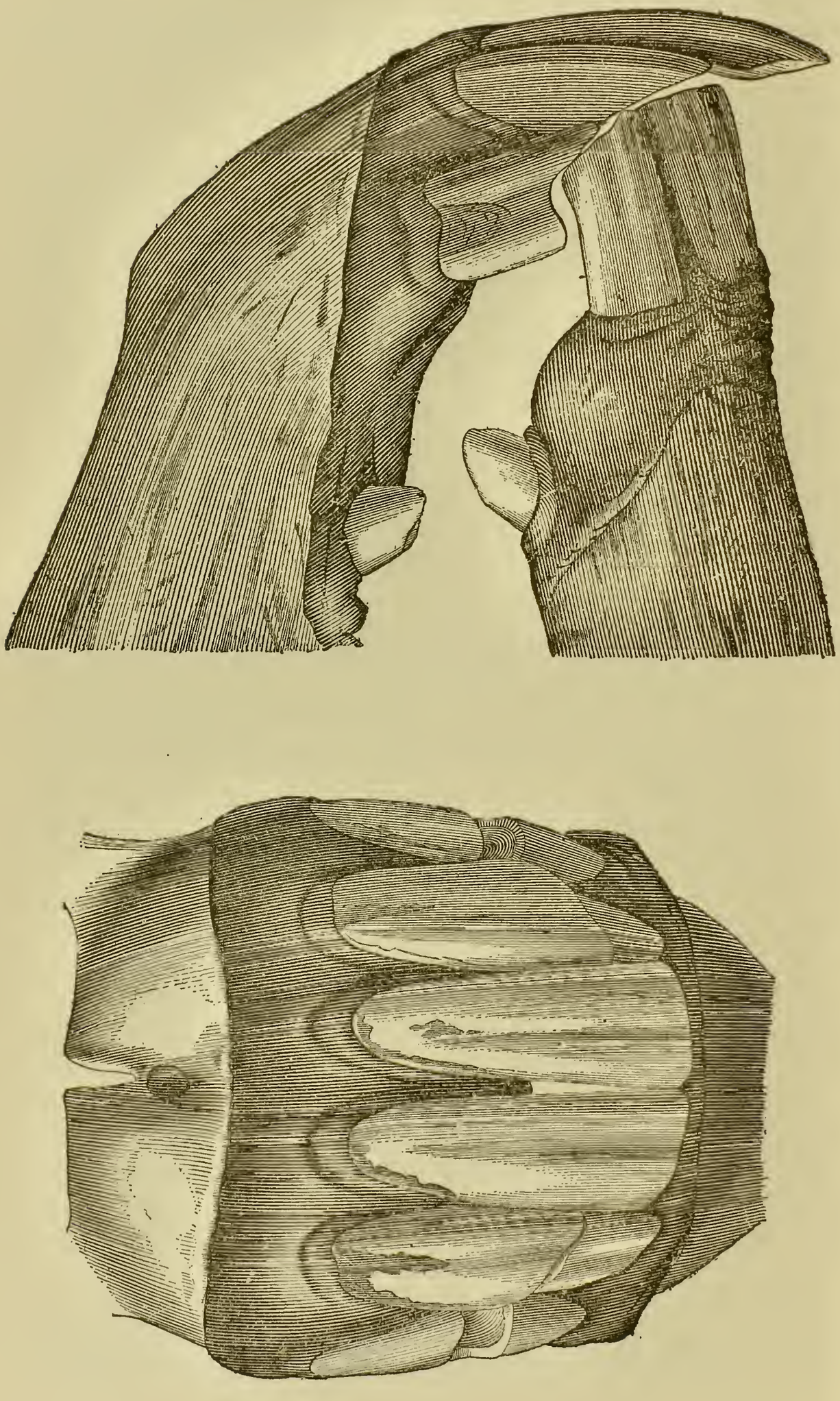


FIG. 319.—Parrot mouth.

superior jaw to the corresponding mandible of the parrot or the crow.

The teeth, in this case, not only have acquired an excessive length, which may reach ten centimetres, but they are greatly curved forward and downward, while their posterior face is cut by a sharp bevel from the friction of the inferior incisors.

The latter are generally shorter than in a normal state, and the "parrot beak" is formed almost regularly by the pincers and the intermediates on both sides of the arcade, the corners participating much less in this respect than their neighbors. Nevertheless, it may happen, as is seen in the jaw represented in the figure, that the irregularity is more marked on one side than on the other. In this case, the inferior teeth, which do not correspond to the projection formed by the superior, are longer than in ordinary conditions.

In certain horses five years of age, the superior jaw overlaps, for a few millimetres, the inferior, while behind the surfaces of friction correspond at their whole extent. The wear, therefore, spares the anterior border of all the superior incisors, especially the pincers and the intermediates. We think that there results from this, in time, first a more decided prominence of this border, then a more or less elongated bevel, and, finally, a true parrot mouth. Those who have had the opportunity of observing such horses during a number of years could easily throw some light upon this interesting point.

However this may be as to its varieties of form and its genesis, the parrot mouth is observed only in very old horses. It interferes more or less, according to its degree, with the prehension of food, especially that of the grains, for its prominence considerably hinders the action of the lips. The jaws become comparable, in a manner, to a pair of pincers or tongs whose branches overlap each other. Besides, their maximum separation has no longer the same proportion. While the buccal opening, in a normal state, is ten to eleven centimetres, we have found only two centimetres between the pincers of the two arcades, in the jaws represented above.

In such a state the determination of the age is almost impossible. We must depend mainly upon the characters relative to the direction, the color, and the width of the teeth, or, finally, shorten the latter, in imagination, to their ordinary length. When the *bec de perroquet* is too long and too inconvenient, it may be necessary to resort to mechanical means to shorten the superior arcade. This operation, which is done by means of a saw, is not very difficult when practised upon the living subject. Besides the immediate advantage which it

possesses of easing the animal, it also makes him show his real age, two reasons which should prevent its being considered as a fraudulent procedure.

c. **Incisors too Long in the Inferior Jaw alone.**—The inferior pincers and intermediates are equally capable of lengthening beyond measure and curving upward and backward in such a manner as to present, in the inferior jaw, an irregularity analogous to the preceding (Fig. 320). We have proposed, when describing the first specimen, to

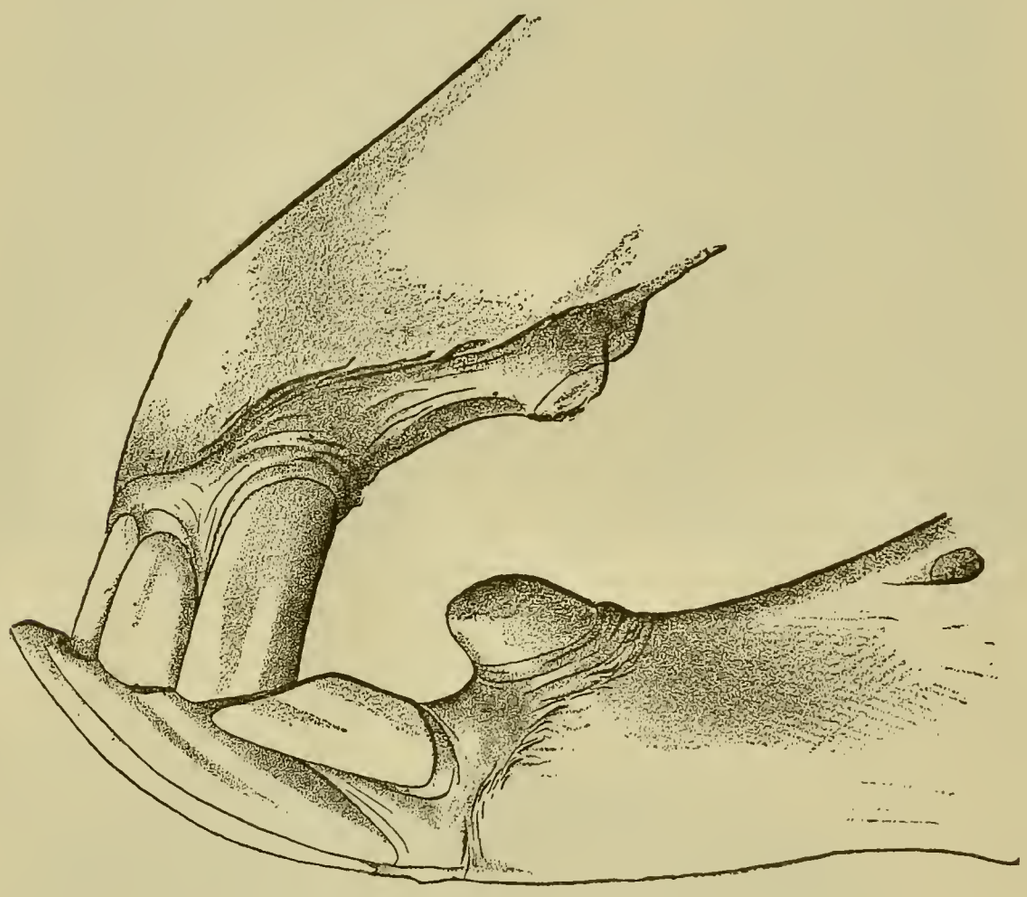


FIG. 320.—Reversed parrot mouth.

give it, for this reason, the name **reversed parrot mouth.**[1] It appears to be rather frequent in the mules in the department of the Gers, where our colleague, M. Faulon[2] has recently noticed it, and where the subjects which present it are called *beffes*. M. Brissot,[3] veterinarian at Suippes, has also noticed a very remarkable example.

Reversed parrot mouth seems to be due to a slight prognathism of the inferior jaw, or, again, to the absence of the superior pincers. The

---

[1] G. Barrier, Sur le bec de perroquet renversé, in Bulletin de la Société centrale de médecine vétérinaire, p. 134; Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, année 1885.

[2] Faulon, Bulletin de la Société centrale de médecine vétérinaire, p. 471, in Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, année 1888. Rapport de M. Chuchu.

[3] Brissot, Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, 1885; Bulletin de la Société centrale de médecine vétérinaire, p. 192.

characters of the wear are the opposite of those of an ordinary parrot mouth. Here it is the posterior face of the lower pincers which becomes bevelled as a consequence of the prolonged friction against the upper incisors. The difficulty in the prehension of food and in the determination of the age are of the same order as in the opposite anomaly; the discrepancy, in this case, is also remedied by the same operation.

d. **Excess of Length of some Teeth alone in both Jaws.**—This disposition is, so to speak, only a necessary consequence of the preceding. It will suffice to mention it.

In certain horses the inferior pincers, intermediates, and corners on the left side, for example, are very short, while the corresponding teeth of the superior jaw are very long. In the right half of the incisive arcade there is a contrary disposition. Whatever may be the seat and nature of this anomaly, the wear of the teeth in both jaws is always inversely proportional. If such a horse be examined with a view of determining his age, it is found that one side evidently appears older than the other. To make a proper estimate, it suffices to take the mean of the signs furnished by each side separately.

β. Insufficient Length of the Crown.

The irregularities due to this cause also involve both jaws; such examples, somewhat rare, are peculiar exclusively to old horses. In such deformities, save in horses that are cribbers, the teeth of the opposing arcade are always too long.

In specimens which we have before us while writing these lines, the *superior* pincers measure only 0.004 m., the intermediates 0.005 m., and the corners 0.009 m. from their anterior border to the gums; while in the inferior jaw we estimate in the same order 0.032 m., 0.030 m., and 0.028 m.

In the jaws belonging to another subject, but in which the defect of length existed in the teeth of the inferior jaw, we found (Fig. 321):

Superior Jaw (*Right*):		Inferior Jaw (*Right*):	
Pincer	0.031 m.	Pincer	0.001 m.
Intermediate	0.031 m.	Intermediate	0.007 m.
Corner	0.024 m.	Corner	0.001 m.

Very often the defect in the length of the free part coincides with that of the incased part, as can be seen in the figure. However this may be, the state of the dental table—by its form flattened from one side to the other, and by the abundance of the radical cementation—always

indicates that the animal has reached extreme old age. One should not purchase such a horse with the expectation that his service will still

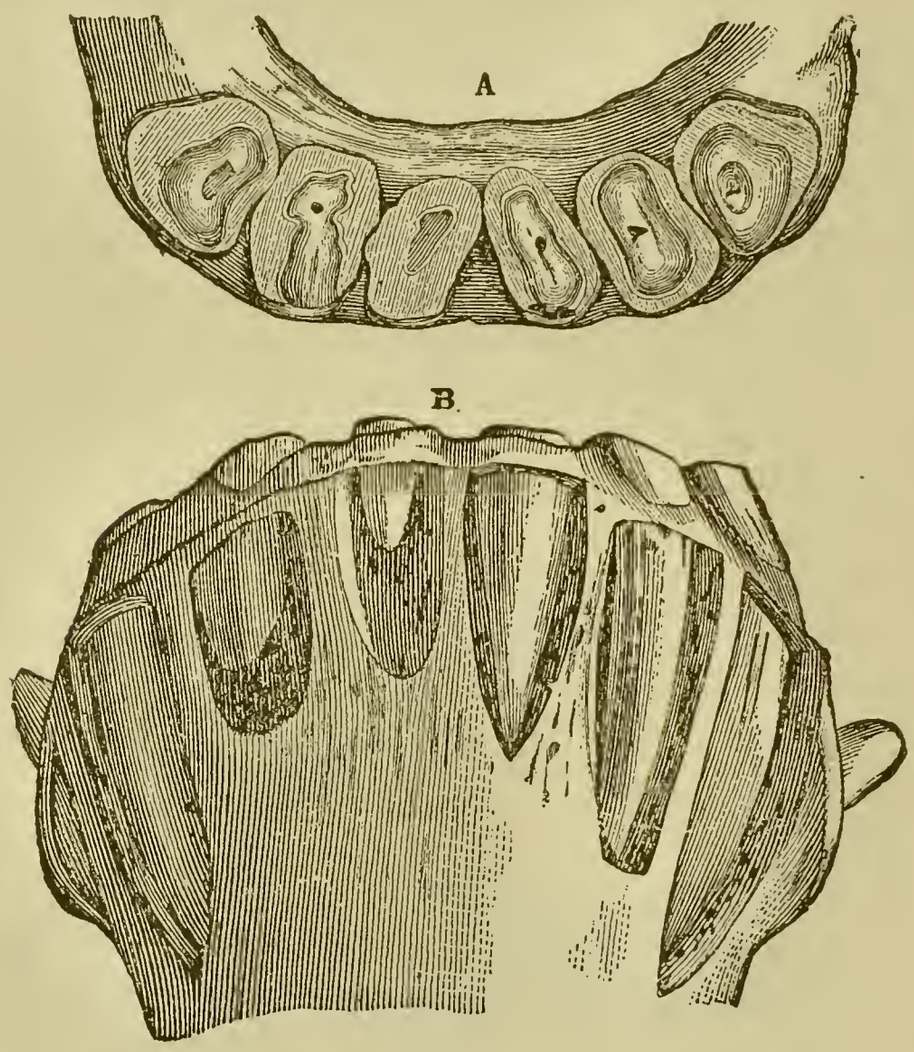


FIG. 321.—Incisors of the inferior jaw too short.
A. Dental tables. | *B.* Roots exposed in their alveoli.

be of long duration, a circumstance which, in such a case, removes all special interest from the determination of the age.

§ 2. MOLAR TEETH.

As in the case of the incisors, the irregularities of the molars are due to an *excess* or an *insufficiency* of wear. They may be seen only on one side, or on both sides at the same time; upon all the teeth of the same arcade, or only upon some of them.

Their *recognition*, at the time of purchase, *is of extreme importance*, by reason of the disturbances which they may cause in mastication and in nutrition.

a. Defect of Length of the Crown.

We have often found instances of this kind in subjects in the dissecting-room.

a. **Inferior Jaw.**—It is rare that the abnormal wear affects all the molars on the same side. Sometimes those of the middle are the shortest (Fig. 322), and then the arcade describes, as a whole, a somewhat regular curve, concave from before to behind, in which are placed the superior teeth. Sometimes, on the contrary, those of the extremities, the anterior or the posterior indifferently, are deformed, and then the middle part of the arcade becomes more or less convex, according to the degree of the anomaly (Fig. 323). Here, also, the length of the crown in the two jaws is always inversely proportional.

Another peculiarity is remarked, which consists in the separation of the roots in the advanced degrees of wear. They form then so many distinct teeth, and it almost seems that the number of molars is greater than in ordinary conditions. In the specimen presented in Fig. 322, eight teeth can, apparently, be counted; in that of

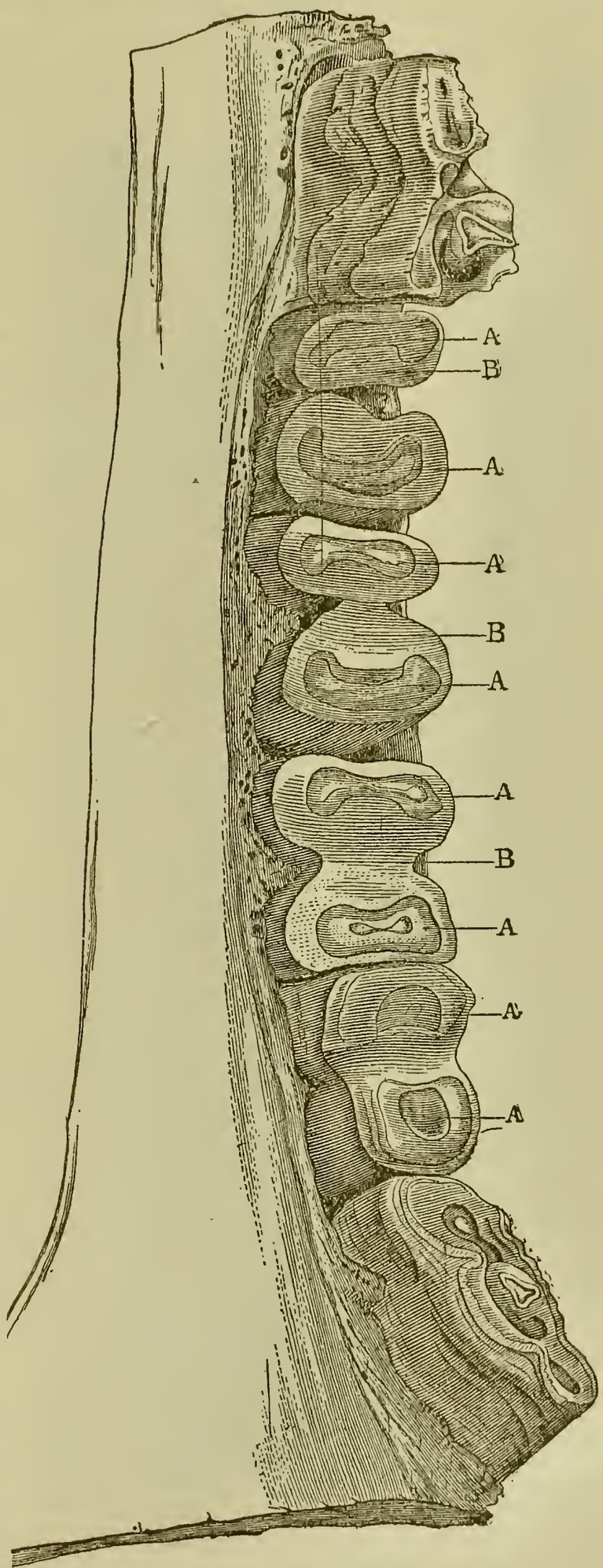


FIG. 322.—Inferior molar arcade of a very old horse, showing the radical cementation, as well as the insufficient length of the middle teeth.

A, *A*, vestiges of the roots; *B*, *B*, cement. The enamel has disappeared.

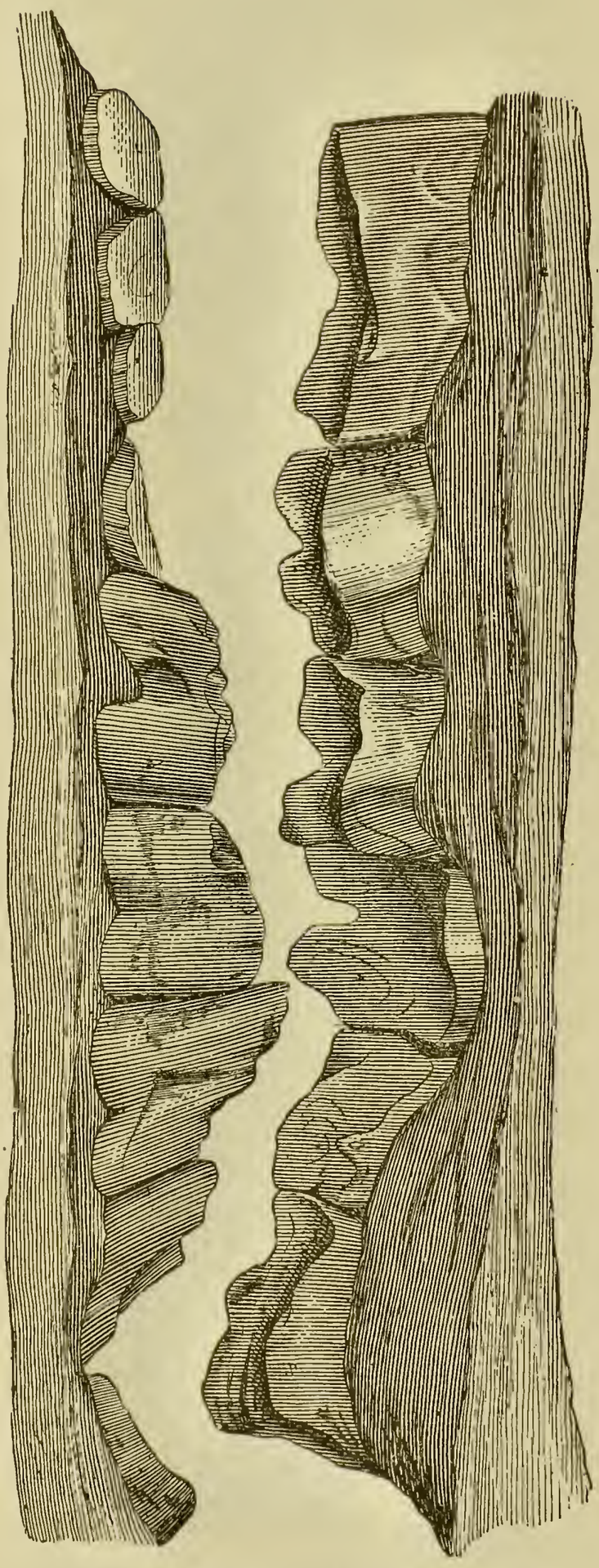


FIG. 323.—Right molar arcades of a very old horse. (The inferior jaw is to the left of the figure.)

Fig. 323 there are nine. Thus, as we have said *à propos* of their structure, when the wear has reached this point there is formed around the dental stumps a thick layer of cement, which, by consolidating them into the alveoli and augmenting the area of the dental tables, permits them still to fulfil their functions.

However, we would make a great mistake were we to believe that these functions are performed with the same perfection as when the animal is young. The surfaces of friction, having lost their bands of enamel, are smooth, round, and deprived of all roughnesses. Mastication becomes incomplete, irregular, and the alimentary substances pass through most of the digestive apparatus without yielding anything like the sum total of their nutritive principles. Hence nutrition is impaired; the animal becomes languid, emaciated, and, little by little, incapable of working.

b. **Superior Jaw.**—What we have just now said can, in all respects, be applied to the teeth of the

superior jaw when an excess of wear has made them too short. Instances of this kind are more rare. We present one in Fig. 323. The separation of the roots here is also less common, and the bands of enamel persist longer. It would be superfluous to go into fuller details.

β. Excess of Length of the Crown.

The irregularities from excessive length of the molars are as common as the preceding. As they may exist in both jaws, and as they give rise to the same considerations, we will examine them in a general manner.

a. **Sharp Spiculæ of the External and Internal Borders of the Molar Arcades.**—The excess of length, but slightly marked in the simpler cases, alters only the external or the internal borders of the surfaces of friction. It is then manifested by *asperities in the form of sharp spiculæ or points* appearing upon the external border of the tables of the superior molars, and the internal border, on the contrary, of those of the inferior molars. These roughnesses, by their prominence, lacerate the internal face of the cheeks and cut the lateral surface of the tongue; they cause, for this reason, severe pain, which interferes with the regular mastication and necessitates dressing of the teeth.

The presence of these irregularities may prove to be an obstacle to the normal lateral movements (diduction) which the jaws describe. This impediment is nearly always due, as has been pointed out by H. Bouley,[1] to the gluttony of the subjects or to their ravenous appetite. Mastication in them is hasty, and is accomplished simply by an up-and-down or chopping movement of the jaws. This is all the more decided as the aliment on which the animal feeds is less difficult of trituration. The superior molar tables, which are wider, and normally overlap the inferior, no longer rub against the latter at their whole extent, and become covered with sharp points at the level of the part not worn,—their external border. The impediment of which we speak can be remedied, in most instances, by the tooth-rasp or a few cuts of the tooth-plane.

b. **Bevelling of the Molars.—Molaires en Ciseaux.**—The molar teeth are subject to irregularities much more grave, and already pointed out by Girard,[2] by H. Bouley,[3] and by us.[4]

---

[1] H. Bouley, Nouveau Dictionnaire de médecine, de chirurgie et d'hygiène vétérinaires, t. iv. p. 622, Paris, 1858.

[2] Girard, Traité de l'âge du cheval, p. 49.

[3] H. Bouley, loc. cit.

[4] G. Barrier, Sur les molaires en ciseaux, in Bulletin de la Société centrale de médecine vétérinaire, p. 82; Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, année 1887.

The tables of the molars, instead of meeting each other on an almost horizontal plane, are sometimes worn down so obliquely that they become almost parallel to the median plane and overlap each other like the blades of a pair of shears (Fig. 324).

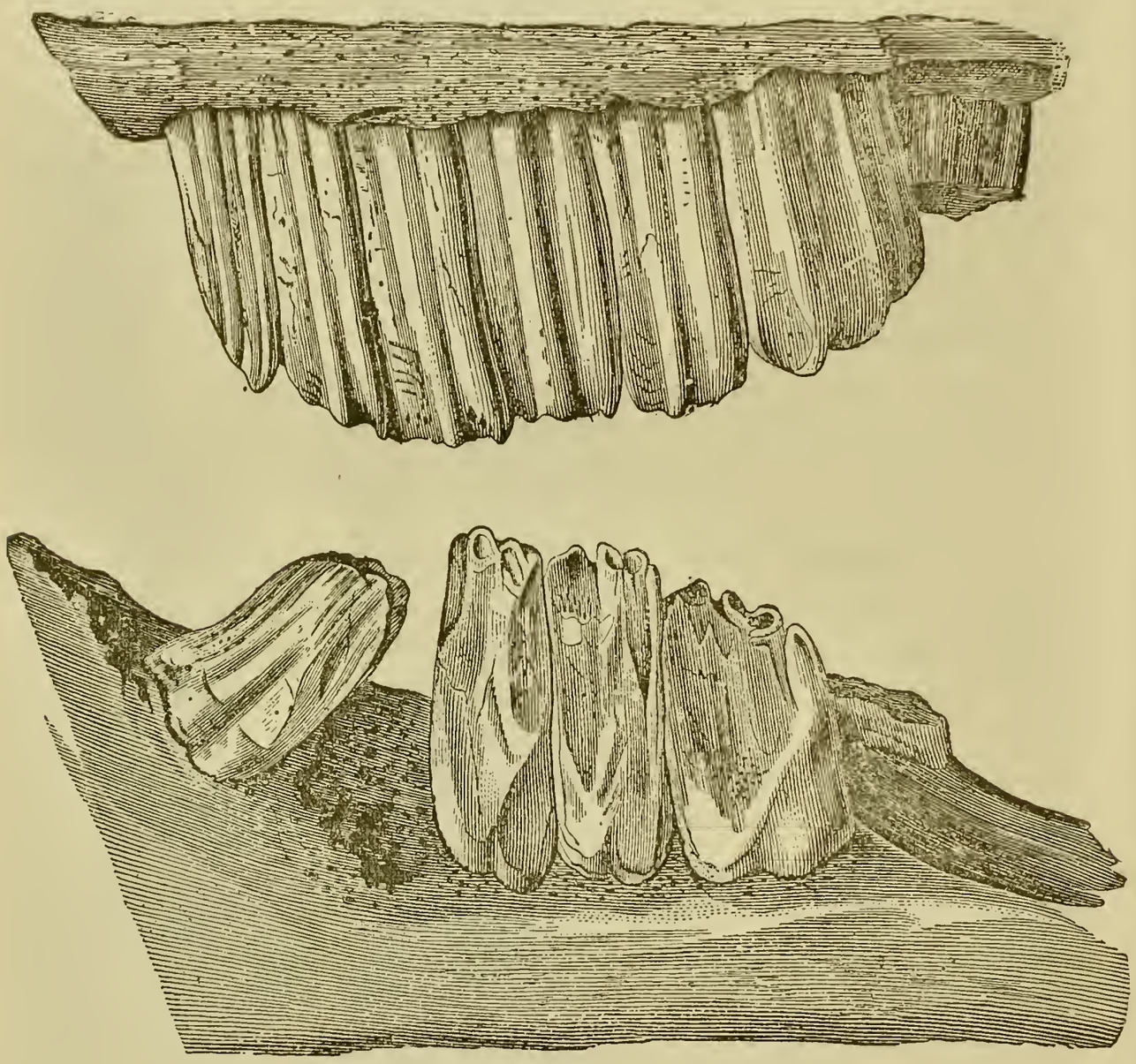


Fig. 324.—Bevelled molars from irregular wear.

This obliquity of the surfaces of friction enables the external side of the superior molars and the internal of the inferior to frequently acquire an enormous length, even to the extent of injuring the parts around the crowns, either the hard palate above (inferior molars), or, below, the bottom of the pouch of the cheek (superior molars).

French authors designate the teeth worn in this manner *molaires en ciseaux*, from their resemblance to a pair of shears.

Their mode of formation is easy to comprehend:

If a horse masticates on the right side, for example, it will be understood that the left molar arcades no longer rub against each other; the inferior is displaced inward from the superior, and it is only by its

external border that it can bruise the aliment against the *internal border* of the superior arcade, when the jaws are tightly closed. These two regions of the left arcades will therefore be the only ones exposed to wear, while the opposite parts of these same arcades, not exposed to friction, will continue to increase in length. Suppose, now, any permanent cause whatsoever (periostitis, caries, fistula, lesions of the cheek, the tongue, etc.) prevents, by the pain which accompanies it, mastication on the left side, and we will have the conditions for the production of the irregularity in question. The tables, being no longer worn outwardly for the superior molars and inwardly for the inferior, will acquire an excessive length at these points, and will become more and more obliquely bevelled outward and downward. The effect, becoming a cause in its turn, will be superadded to the action of the primitive lesion; the tables on the right side will remain normal, while those on the left will cross each other like the blades of a pair of shears.

The gravity of these *bevelled molars* depends upon the nature of the difficulties which the dental irregularity opposes to mastication, and which may even extend to lesions of the hard palate.

They may pass unperceived at the time of purchasing the horse, if the buyer neglects to examine the mouth. The state of the incisors will, nevertheless, arouse suspicions, the plane of meeting of these arcades not being regular; in fact, these teeth always appear short on one side and long on the other. This characteristic, of itself, is sufficient to direct attention to the molar arcades.

c. **Irregularities on the Surface of the Molar Dental Tables.**—For some obscure reasons, probably the absence of the normal movements of propulsion and retropulsion of the jaws, the molar arcades, no longer gliding against each other in the longitudinal direction, become covered with prominences more or less extensive and elevated, which are lodged in corresponding cavities on the opposite molar tables.

These irregularities of the surfaces of friction are generally attributable to a ravenous appetite, swallowing the food without mastication, and the slight consistence of the food. Under the influences of all these causes mastication is very rapid, the jaws make a simple up-and-down movement, and the tables are not worn smooth by the action of the two sets of teeth gliding against each other.

The softer constituents of the teeth are worn away and become hollow, while the harder parts preserve their length and even continue to increase. The effect, eventually becoming a cause, contributes more and more to augment the primitive inequalities, so that at a certain period

the projections on the dental tables will penetrate the gum of the opposite jaw, and finally the bone, whence an intolerable pain which renders mastication very difficult, and makes it almost impossible for the animal to feed himself.

Ordinarily, it is the superior molar arcades which present these prominences at the level of their middle portion, more rarely at their extremities; conversely, the inferior arcades are most often concave in their middle and elevated at their extremities. But great differences may occur in the wearing out of these teeth which cannot be comprised in this general description.

It may be said, in this connection, that whatever shortening or breaking, partial or total, exists at one point of the molar arcade,

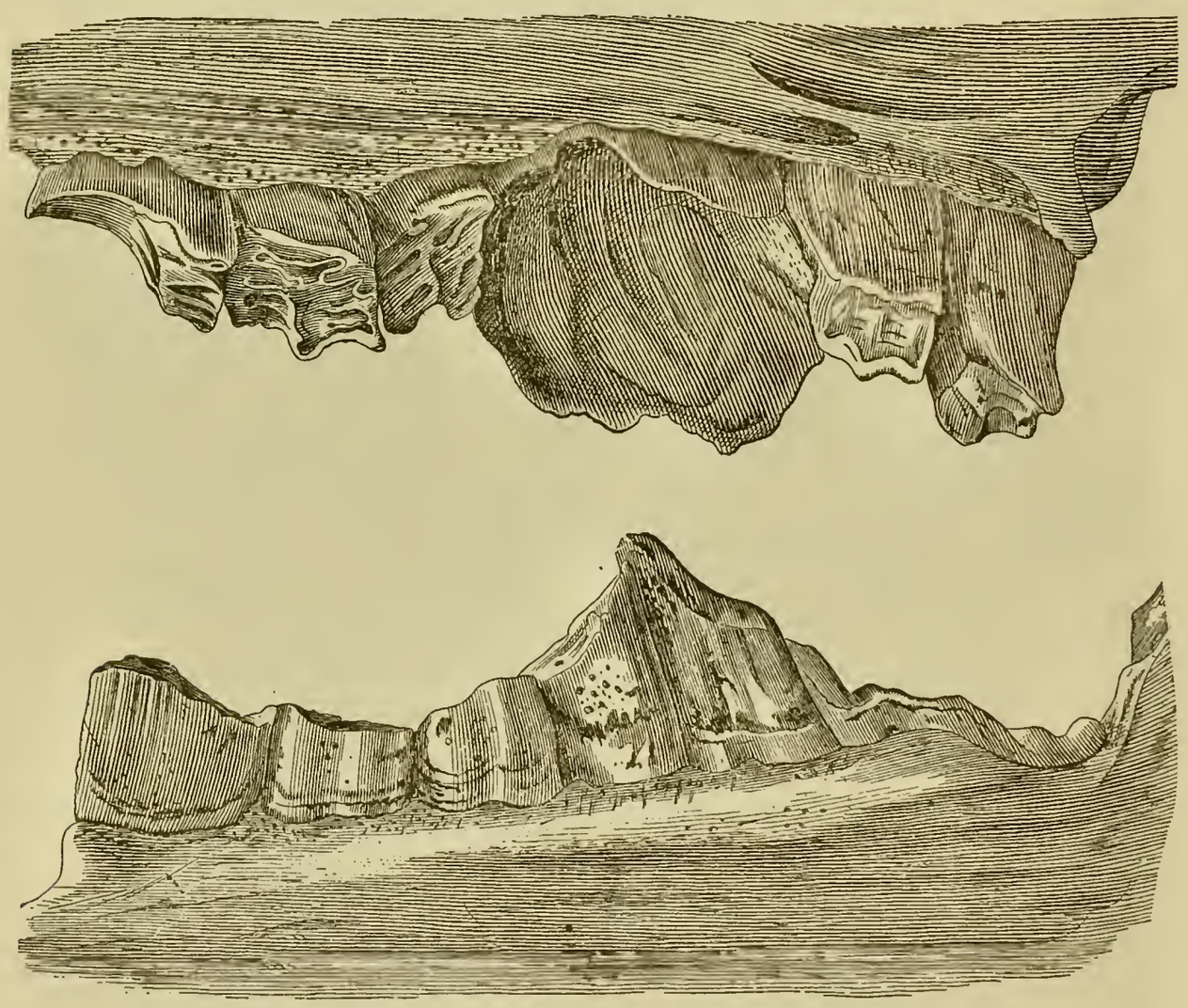


Fig. 325.—Hypertrophy of the fourth right superior molar. The cavity received the corresponding prominence on the inferior tooth.

results in a proportional elongation of the tooth opposite this place. This is especially observed in cases of fracture, extraction, caries, etc., so frequent, even in animals quite young.

We present (Fig. 325) a very remarkable example of an irregularity of this kind. The fourth superior molar shows upon its table a

cavity capable of lodging a hen's egg, and in which is received a very elevated conical eminence on the fourth inferior molar. It will be noticed that, in this case, the superior tooth is almost twice its normal size, and is not square. This hypertrophy has not the characters of an anomaly through fusion, as we have shown in the case of the incisors. It is more probable that it is the result of a dental cyst, an opinion which, if it were demonstrated, would also at the same time account for the excessive volume of the tooth and the slight resistance of its tissues to wear.

"To recapitulate," says H. Bouley,[1] "an important fact follows from the preceding statements: when, from one cause or another, the grinders of herbivora do not rub against each other regularly, on each side, and over the whole extent of length and width of the surface of the dental tables, the unequal wear, as a necessary and inevitable consequence, causes, first, the deformity of the molars, and, later on, the irregularity, the imperfection, and, finally, the insufficiency of their function. This result is explained by the continual pushing out of the teeth: in order that the latter phenomenon (*poussée*) may remain a physiological fact it must be counterbalanced by a proportional wear; then will the dental organs be preserved in their proper conditions of form and length, in order that mastication may be performed regularly.

"But if this wear is unequal or less than what it should be, at one point or another, either at the level of an isolated tooth, upon the borders of the dental row, or upon the whole extent of the grinding surface of this row, then the continued growth of the dental organs, or of that part of them which is not worn off, will inevitably cause an excess of their length. This being once accomplished, it cannot fail to be exaggerated progressively, because mastication becoming so much the more difficult as the masticatory apparatus is more imperfect, the friction of the grinders against each other diminishes proportionally to the degree of this abnormality.

"Thus the tooth which is abnormally lengthened because a primary cause prevented its regular wear, finding the condition of a new abnormal increase in the same excess of length which hinders the regular action of the molars, one against the other, *the effect produced becomes a cause in its turn*, and continues to produce similar effects; whence these deformities, often excessive, of the apparatus of mastication of which we have just given a description."

All this shows us that an examination of the molar teeth should

---

[1] H. Bouley, loc. cit., t. iv. p. 625.

never be neglected at the time of purchasing a horse; in this respect it is of the greatest importance in relation to the exterior.

8. Irregularities of Wear resulting from Cribbing.

If the incisors of a horse be examined, we sometimes find irregularities of their borders, their faces, or their tables. They are due to diverse causes, concerning which it is necessary to make some important differentiation.

Many irritable and nervous horses have, in fact, the bad habit of biting their fastenings or some surrounding object when they are approached, when they are caressed, or when they are groomed by the attendant. There results from this, in time, a sort of breaking off of the free border of their teeth, which makes them irregular, and which must not be confounded with the abnormal wear produced by *cribbing.* [In such a case the border is generally roughened and broken off in small particles; in cribbing, as we shall see farther on, the dental border is perfectly smooth.] Although these modifications of the dental apparatus may already be of a nature to complicate the determination of the age, they nevertheless do not alter the form of the incisors so profoundly that the observer cannot, without difficulty, deduce sufficient signs to this effect, should he be called upon to pass his opinion upon the animal submitted to him for examination.

The incisors likewise do not show any wear in that variety of *cribbing* which consists most ordinarily in swallowing air without fixing the teeth on a foreign body, and which, for this reason, we proposed, in 1866, to designate *aeropinic,* to distinguish it from the other varieties.[1] The French law of May 20, 1838, included cribbing in the number of redhibitory vices, but on condition that it did not imply the *marking of the teeth.*

In order to avoid the numerous cases of litigation which arose from the defective wording of this law, the legislature in 1884 judiciously substituted for the words *cribbing without marking of the teeth* those of *cribbing properly so called, with or without marking of the teeth.* Henceforth experts will no longer have to discuss the nature of the vicious habit in question or the characters of the wear of the tooth; it will suffice for them to ascertain the existence of cribbing *properly so called,* as to the signs of which all are agreed; this alone is of a nature to lead to a nullification of the sale, according to the terms of Article II. of the French law of August 2, 1884.

---

[1] Arm. Goubaux, Journal de médecine vétérinaire publié à l'École de Lyon; année 1866, p. 349.

The horse does not always place himself in the same conditions in order to crib: *he takes* or *does not take a point of contact.* In the latter case, it is said that he *cribs in the air*, or that he is a *wind-sucker.* We will not occupy ourselves with this here. (See *Vicious Habits.*)

When the horse cribs by *taking a point of contact* with his teeth, it is evident that the latter should present abnormal characters which vary in a very great degree, according to the mode of cribbing and the nature and form of the bodies which are seized between the jaws.

Sometimes, in fact, the animal chooses the bottom of the trough, the free border of the manger, the internal edge of this border, the lower cross-piece of the hay-rick, the strap or rope to which he is fastened; at other times it is the window-sill, the border of the stall, if he be loose in the stable; the end of the shafts, that of the pole of the wagon, the harness of a neighboring horse, or any other body in his reach, if he be harnessed to a wagon.

More rarely, he cribs upon himself, upon one of his members, for example; or, again, he cribs by contact and in the air alternately; finally, sometimes, the point of contact is simply taken by the lips or by the tuft of the chin; in this case the teeth will, of course, not show any abnormal wear.

But, whatever may be the mode of contact, or the incisors upon which it is effected, this wear is constant in all cases in which the jaws are in contact with bodies of wood, leather, metals, stone, etc., capable of cutting them in consequence of the repeated frictions.

After having fixed the jaws, the animal makes a guttural "clucking" sound more or less strong, which many persons liken to that caused by *belching*, but which to us appears to be exclusively a grunt or sound occasioned by effort: immediately after this the air descends towards the stomach. Our researches upon this point, as well as the analyses of the gas in the digestive apparatus, induce us to believe that, in the generality of cases, the subjects actually swallow the air. Many persons, on the contrary, think that there is an eructation of gas through the mouth, consequently true belching. We have not been able to verify this latter fact, although we have spent entire days with cribbing horses.

However this may be, it follows from our special observations of cribbing,[1] that the varieties of wear which result from it can be classed in one of the five following categories:

---

[1] Goubaux et Barrier, Des irrégularités dentaires résultant de l'usure produite par le tic; in Bulletin de la Société centrale de médecine vétérinaire, séance du 10 Novembre, 1881, et Archives vétérinaires, 1882, p 13.

1st. The abnormal wear only involves the anterior face of the incisors.

2d. It bears upon their posterior face.

3d. It exists upon their anterior and posterior faces at the same time.

4th. It affects the dental tables.

5th. It takes place upon the lateral surfaces.

In four of these cases, a *bevel* is formed at the expense of the faces; in the fifth, there is a simple shortening of the tooth, which leaves the form of the dental tables absolutely intact.

1st. **The Abnormal Wear only involves the Anterior Face of the Incisors** (Fig. 326: *A*, *B*, *C*, *D*).—The pincers and the intermediates are, as a rule, worn at the same time; more rarely only the corners are affected. The wear is ordinarily more pronounced in the middle portion of the arcades, and often more extensive from one side to the other. The bevel which results from it may become two centimetres in length, and may even go so far as to open the external dental cavity; this always diminishes to a great extent the surface of the dental table.

We have observed in this category the four following varieties:

a. The bevel exists only upon the superior jaw (*A*).

b. It is observed only on the inferior (*B*).

c. It is seen in both jaws (*C*).

In the first two cases, the contact takes place by the anterior part of the dental table upon the foreign body; in the third case, the horse seizes a round border or a sharp edge, each jaw setting itself or cutting against one of the adjacent faces of the foreign body.

d. The two bevels are upon the same plane instead of being convergent towards the interior of the mouth, *D*. This form results when the animal cribs on a wide, flat surface, as the bottom of the manger, for example, by making to-and-fro movements with the jaws alternately from before to behind or from one side to the other.

2d. **The Abnormal Wear only interests the Posterior Face of the Incisors** (Fig. 327, *A*, *B*, *C*).—This category is one of the most singular. If the observer confines himself to a simple separation of the lips for the purpose of examining the anterior face of the teeth, it is evident that nothing abnormal can be seen; if, on the contrary, he opens the mouth, it may happen that he still may not recognize the accidental use, or that, even if recognized, it may not be attributed to cribbing, but be considered simply as a dental anomaly.

This wear is manifested in this variety by a bevel converging towards the side of the lips, whose obliquity is directed in the same sense as the curve of the posterior face of the incisors, while in the preceding cases the bevel was directed in an inverse sense, which rendered it much more apparent. Nevertheless, the observer who has been forewarned will never fail to perceive very easily the posterior bevel of which we speak, but he will not forget that it is always less apparent below than above, in consequence of the greater curvature of the superior incisors.

It may be added that this sort of wear is more commonly observed in

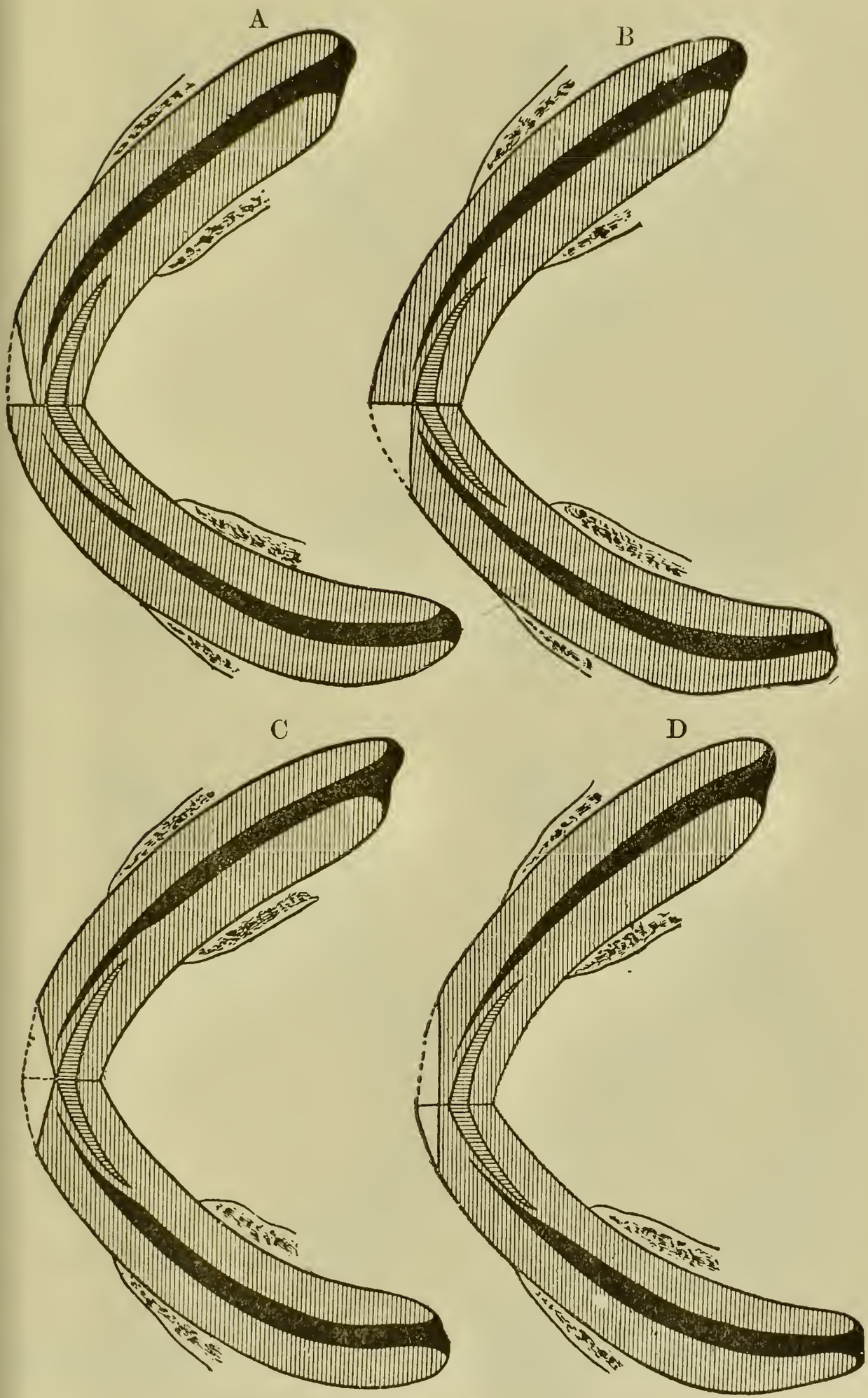


FIG. 326.—Abnormal wear produced by cribbing.

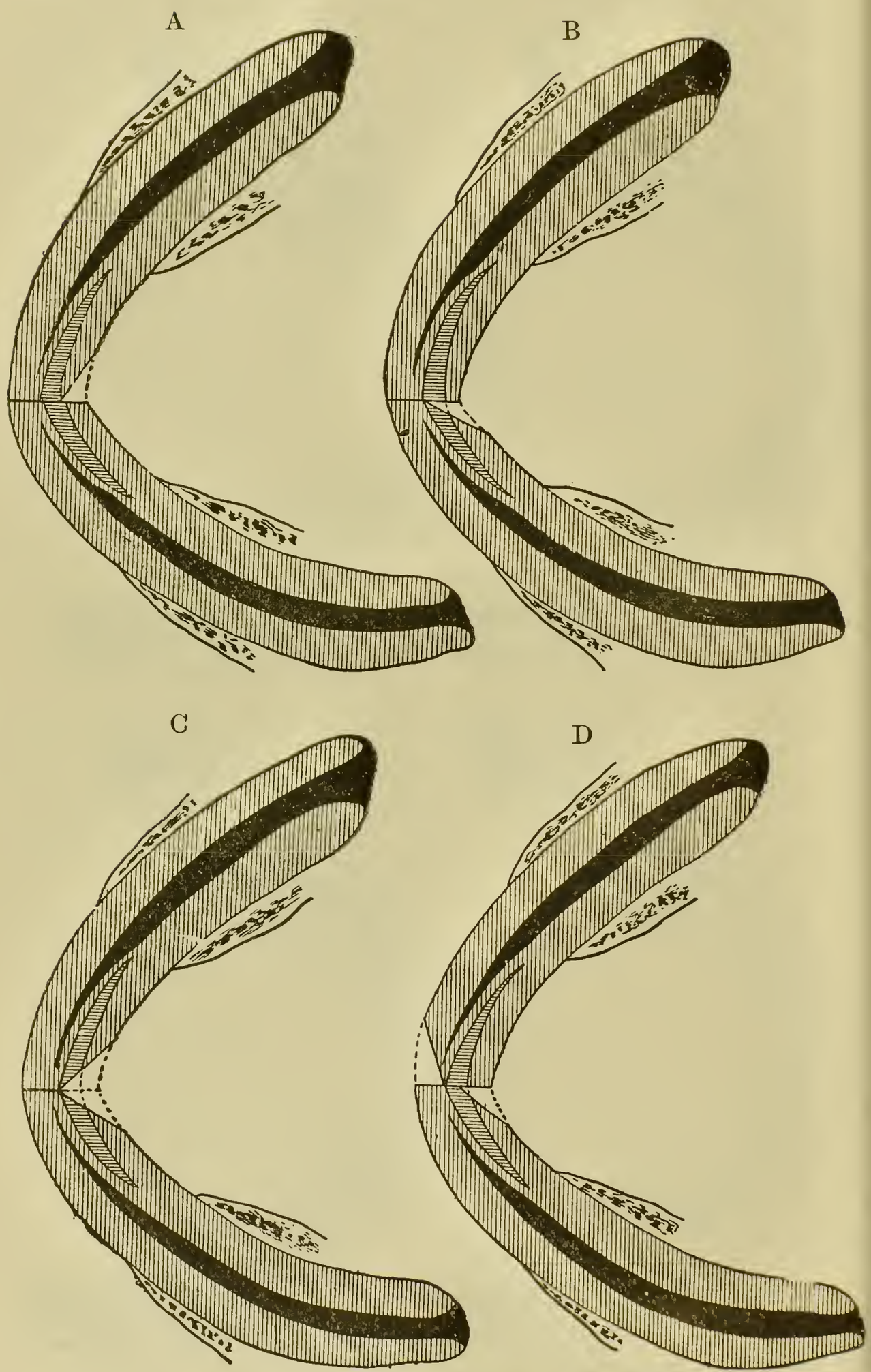


FIG. 327.—Abnormal wear produced by cribbing.

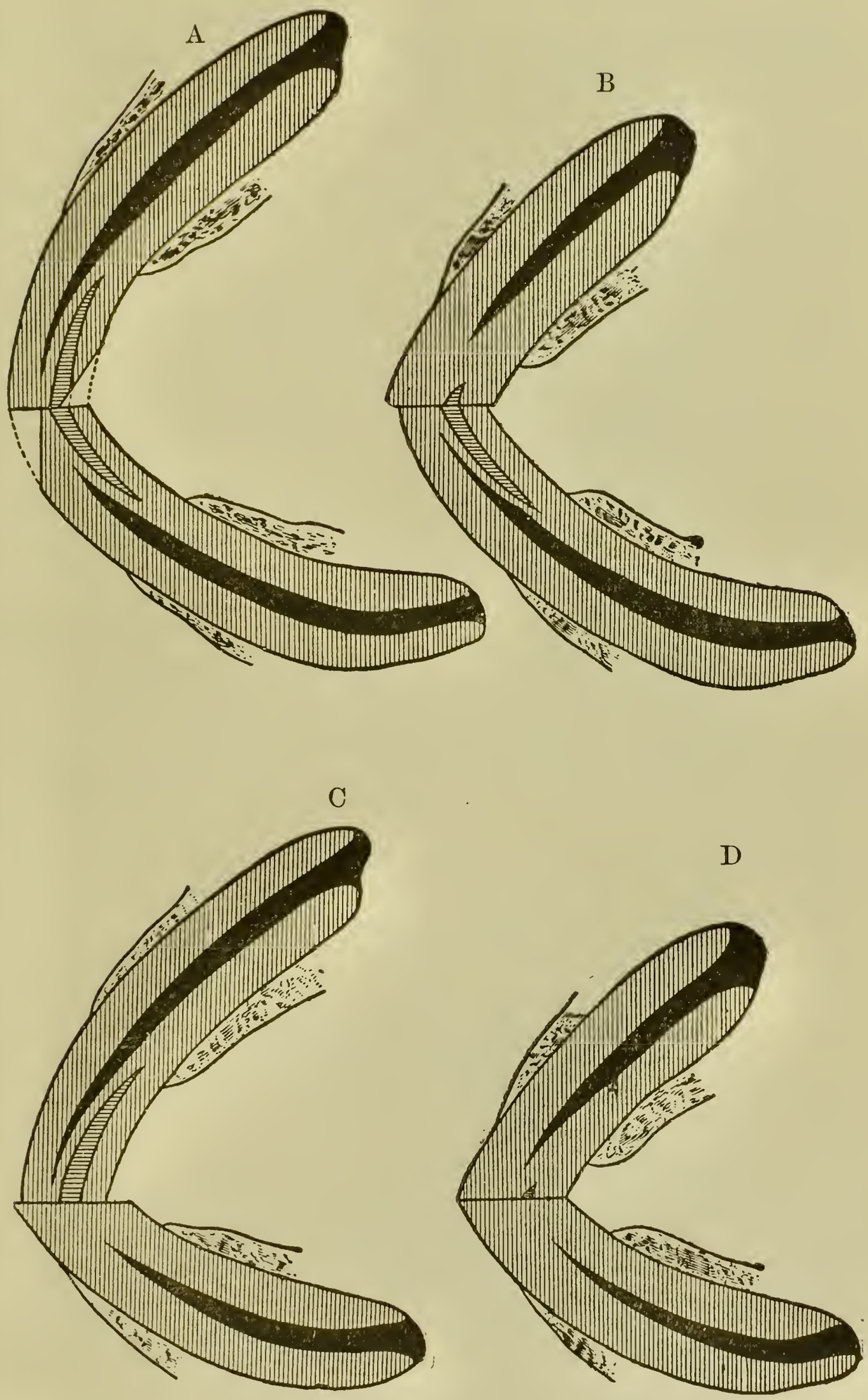


FIG. 328.—Abnormal wear produced by cribbing.

oblique teeth that have a tendency to become horizontal; they are all the more liable to this, as the subjects which present it are in the habit of cribbing most often upon a manger whose free border has its two edges very rounded.

a. The posterior bevel only exists above (*A*).

b. It only exists below (*B*).

c. It exists in both jaws (*C*).

Whatever may be its seat, it makes the teeth of the horse to a certain extent analogous with those of cattle; they are no longer in apposition, excepting by the more or less small portion of the anterior part of their tables.

3d. **The Abnormal Wear exists at the same time upon the Anterior Face of the Incisors of one Jaw and upon the Posterior Face of those of the other** (Fig. 327, *D*, and Fig. 328, *A*).—The varieties which are met in this category interfere more particularly with the proper determination of the age, for they show themselves, both above and below, by a diminution in extent of the tables, and on opposite sides. It is necessary, therefore, to replace, in imagination, the portion removed by the wear, first in one jaw and then in the other, which doubles its difficulties; while in the preceding categories the portions to be replaced were of the same nature in each arcade. There are, therefore, and in the same subject, a combination of two forms which we will pass in review.

Two varieties may be observed:

a. **The Anterior Bevel above and the Posterior below** (Fig. 327, *D*).—This variety is seen, for example, in horses which crib upon a manger whose free border presents upon its external edge a sort of round iron moulding projecting from the sides, and turned outward and downward. The surface of this moulding gives the point of contact to the upper teeth, whilst the lower glide along its edge by a retropulsive movement of the inferior jaw at the moment of the performance of the act. There are also circumstances in which cribbing is accomplished by the previous contact of the superior jaw. It is then only (when it has been once executed) that the animal, incited by a singular mania, rubs his inferior incisors across the edge in question, from one side to the other, and repeats the act several times during a few moments.

b. **The Anterior Bevel below and the Posterior above** (Fig. 328, *A*). —It is seen that, in this case, the marking is completely the reverse of the preceding. It is produced by seizing a round body with the jaws, as the border of a window, the extremity of the shafts, for example. This variety, however, is less common, because it necessitates a position of the head more uncomfortable for the animal. The latter, in fact, should approach the vertical direction, in order to allow the superior teeth to cut with their posterior face, an attitude which the subjects do not always find it possible to assume.

4th. **The Abnormal Wear only affects the Dental Tables** (Fig. 328, *B*, *C*, *D*).—This variety of wear is the most singular, for its only abnormal condition consists in a simple shortening of the teeth. But, as all horses which have the incisors too short are not necessarily cribbers, and as, besides, in all cribbers they are not invariably shorter than is necessary, it follows that the unprejudiced observer cannot well recognize the character of this particular shortening of which we now speak. In 1842, M. Mignon remarked[1] that it

[1] Mignon, Nouveau traité des vices rédhibitoires, 1842, p. 361.

would be interesting and useful to prove by observation whether horses which, without being very aged, have the incisor teeth very short may not have abandoned the habit of cribbing. M. Zundel[1] has related some facts confirming the opinion; we ourselves also know of several examples of this nature.

Horses which crib in this manner seize the foreign body with the whole extent of their dental table, most ordinarily the plane surfaces, external or internal, of a manger whose free border is too thick to be lodged between the two arcades at the moment of the effort. There is then a regular but excessive wear over the whole surface of friction of the teeth which bear against the foreign body.

The pincers and intermediates are nearly always the seat of the diminution of length. This fact is quite evident when the jaws are closed, for there exists a more or less wide interval between these incisors, the corners having preserved their normal length and contact.

At other times, the shortening may affect all the teeth of the same arcade, and then it may, even if perceived, at least fail to be attributed to cribbing, if we are ignorant of the relations of cause and effect which connect this variety of wear with the vicious habit as to the character of which we may be consulted.

The following are the three possible cases which we have noticed:

a. The shortening affects only the teeth of the superior jaw (*B*).

b. It affects only those of the inferior jaw (*C*).

c. Finally, it is seen on both jaws simultaneously (*D*).

In the last example the free border of the manger is narrow enough for the animal to be able to grasp it easily between the teeth.

5th. **The Abnormal Wear takes Place on the Lateral or Adjoining Faces of the Incisors** (Fig. 329).—The varieties of this category are very numerous and remarkably complicate the determination of the age. All are,

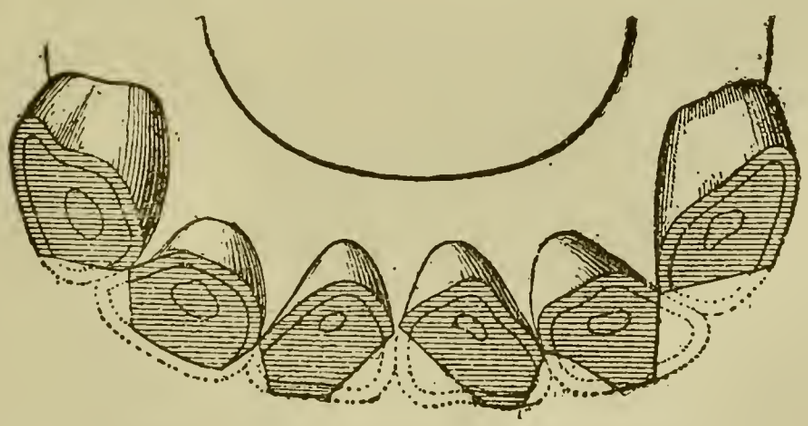


Fig. 329.—Abnormal wear produced by cribbing.

however, characterized by the formation of a double bevel at the expense of the lateral or contiguous faces of the teeth, converging towards the centre of the mouth. There results from this upon the anterior face of the incisive arcades, and when the jaws are closed, a series of vertical gutters or grooves whose bottom occupies the interstice comprised between two adjacent teeth. The tables at these places are deeply notched upon their anterior and lateral borders, by reason of the situation and the mode of convergence of the bevels.

---

[1] Zundel, Dictionnaire de médecine, de chirurgie et d'hygiène vétérinaires, t. iii. p. 585.

Here the abnormal wear is produced by the contact and friction of the dental arcades upon the halter-strap by which the animal is fastened. The latter stands back in the stall to stretch the halter-strap to its full length, cribs upon the latter, and afterwards rubs his teeth over it alternately from above to below and from before to behind. The convex form of the incisive arcades renders these movements at first difficult and uncertain; but soon the strap strikes more particularly the interstice of two teeth and enlarges it by reason of the repeated friction. The vertical gutter, becoming more and more hollowed, extends to the posterior face. The result is that the gum becomes irritated, and then, in order to avoid the pain which results, he cribs on the other side. Analogous phenomena taking place, he will then crib at another point of the arcade, where a new gutter will soon be worn out, and so on.

This abnormal wear usually takes place on both jaws, although it may sometimes affect only one, the superior or the inferior. In all cases, and although the number of gutters may not be multiple, the dental tables scarcely furnish any index of a nature to assist in the recognition of the age. It is necessary, therefore, to depend upon the length, the direction, and the freshness of the incisors, the characters of the tushes, those of the molars, and, finally, upon all the external signs, which we will study presently.

Such are the varieties of wear, as numerous as remarkable, witnessed on the teeth of cribbing horses.

A number of them may often be combined; the teeth may be bevelled off at the anterior border of their tables and at the same time be very much shortened; it is the same as regards the posterior bevels.

But what we have not observed yet is an abnormal wear of the anterior and posterior borders upon the teeth of the same arcade, either in the upper or lower jaw. In order that such wear *may* be produced, the subject should be capable of changing his manner of cribbing,—that is to say, of correcting himself spontaneously of a bad habit while he still has the power to indulge in it (which is almost illusory); or, again, the animal should be in some manner forced into this change by reason of his master altering the position of the surrounding objects on which he previously practised this habit. But, in such cases, it is more common to see cribbing cease altogether for a variable period of time, only to reappear as soon as circumstances are again favorable, rather than to observe a change in the horse's manner of cribbing. The subject does his best to find other objects and to overcome the restraint which is placed upon him, and he frequently succeeds in this, but he will always crib in the same manner. Nevertheless, it is well known that the cribbing horse, prevented from touching an external object, will, for this reason, not lose the habit, because he will learn to crib *in the air*, become a *wind-sucker*.

The seller may, in certain cases, find it to his interest to manipulate the teeth of a horse so that they show an *artificial wear*, capable of simulating that of cribbing properly so called.

How can we recognize the employment of this fraudulent practice?

This is ordinarily very easy.

If the abnormal wear has been produced by a file, the marks of the latter can be seen on the teeth. If, after having made a surface of friction artificially, the latter be polished to remove these marks, the fraud can be detected by the fact that the enamel is perfectly on a level with the dentine, and not (as when the wear is natural) *in relief* upon it, as we have already mentioned.[1]

Besides, those who perform these tricks do not always take the precaution or have not the ability to make upon the incisors a surface of wear in accordance with the nature of the object on which it was produced. Hence it seems to us insufficient that the prosecutor should place in evidence only the reality of this wear; it is, moreover, necessary that he should furnish the proof that it is certainly due to cribbing. This is what the expert should not forget.

The determination of the age is particularly difficult in cribbing horses, because the dental tables are in most cases partly destroyed by the friction which they have sustained. But in many instances the experienced observer gets over the difficulty by reconstituting, in imagination, the normal length and the normal form of the incisors. By considering the portions still present, it is possible to reconstruct the teeth such as they would have been if all the conditions had remained normal. It is this sort of dental restoration which we have endeavored to represent in the drawings that accompany our description; it is a great aid to those who are but little experienced.

Other indirect methods also lead to a recognition of the age of cribbers: we refer to the careful examination of the teeth least affected by the habit, especially the corners, which are less frequently abnormally worn by reason of their situation upon the lateral parts of the arcades; the superior incisors, the molars, and the buccal mucous membrane; the characters to be drawn from the direction, the length, the width, and the coloration of the teeth; the general aspect of the subject, the form of his head, the thickness of his jaws, the state of his temples, of his supra-orbits, etc.; in a word, all the characters, however weak they may be, capable of elucidating the question as to whether the animal is young or old.

---

[1] Arm. Goubaux, Bulletin de la Société vétérinaire, année 1849, p. 131.

9. Irregularities from the Employment of Fraudulent Means.

All salesmen endeavor to present their goods in such a condition as will enable them to dispose of them to the greatest advantage, and breeders and horse-dealers are not wanting in this respect. Concerning the age, they strive to give to the mouth the characters of that period of life in which the animals have their greatest value, endeavoring to make the young appear old and those that are too old young (at least in appearance). Two particular cases should be studied under this heading.

§ 1. Extracting the Incisors to make the Horses appear Older.

"In breeding districts," says Girard, "especially in Normandy, breeders rather frequently extract the milk intermediates, particularly in horses which are *retarded* in their development. This causes the eruption of the permanent teeth several months earlier than usual. Those who gain possession of these same horses very soon practise a similar operation upon the milk corners. In this manner, a horse which is not yet four and one-half years old is already provided with all the permanent incisors. . . .

"Certain subjects whose dentition has been hastened by the extraction of the milk-teeth will mark the age of five years, whilst they have really only attained four years.

"In order to recognize such a fraud, we must make every comparison capable of furnishing positive inductions and leading to the truth. The absence or the freshness of the tushes is no criterion by which to form an opinion, since these teeth, which come out most ordinarily at four years, may be advanced or retarded a year, and even appear only at six years. If we examine with care the state of the dental arcade, it can be verified that, though one has discovered a means of hastening the eruption of the incisors, he is still unable to make these teeth assume the position in the jaw which they should have and give to the dental arcade which they form the disposition that is proper to it. When the permanent teeth make their eruption naturally after having atrophied and expelled the milk-teeth, they arrange themselves symmetrically in the same order alongside of each other, and constitute at the age of five years a *regular arcade.* In the contrary case, when their eruption has been hastened by the extraction of the milk incisors, they are placed somewhat crosswise and render the *arcade irregular.* The gums and the alveolar border, at this period more or less red

and swollen, seem to push the dental row backward; these parts are so much the more sensitive as the extraction has taken place more recently. Sometimes particles of the teeth, incompletely extracted and still remaining in the maxillary bone, show themselves in front of the adult teeth; nevertheless, the incisive arcade presents an unusual aspect which the experienced eye can easily recognize. When the fœtal teeth have been extracted recently, the places which they occupied are inflamed, contused, and excoriated; for this reason it is always more easy to recognize fraudulent means from the beginning.

"Often the teeth of the inferior jaw alone are extracted; this is the true cause why, in a large number of horses, their eruption precedes that of the superior incisors; and this case is too simple not to be properly recognized."[1]

Many authors have spoken in the same strain. Séon Rochas,[2] who has fully described the mode of procedure in the extraction of the deciduous incisors, says that a horse three years of age, at the time of the operation, would appear three months later as a four-year-old, because the intermediates of the second dentition are commencing to appear.

All this, at first sight, seems very clear, but does the pulling of the milk-teeth really result in an earlier eruption of the permanent teeth? The question is worthy of a careful examination.

Everybody is not of the same opinion in this respect. De Curnieu, for example, expresses himself unmistakably against the success of the practice.[3]

"First," says he, "I do not believe in colts being *advanced* by the premature extraction of the milk-teeth.

"One day I bought a draught filly at the market of Chauny, without horse-teeth (without adult teeth) in the superior jaw and with four milk-teeth in the inferior.

"The place of the pincers was unoccupied, the gums healthy, clean, and without any appearance of a wound or cicatrix.

"When the superior pincers came out, the lower pincers were just ready to penetrate the gums. Evidently, some one intended to advance the dentition of the mare. Was it advanced? No; the teeth were extracted and that was all.[4]

---

[1] Girard, loc. cit., p. 84, et suiv.

[2] Séon Rochas, Histoire d'un cheval de troupe, Paris, 1839, p. 26.

[3] De Curnieu, loc. cit., t. iii. p. 527.

[4] It is only proper to remark that De Curnieu has not proved that the pincers had been pulled. It is a simple presumption on his part, which adds nothing to the proof of his conclusion.

"If, in extracting the milk-tooth, we do not wait until the permanent tooth has atrophied its root and prepared it to fall out, the gum will contract, and it will then be more difficult for its successor to penetrate naturally."

Mayhew,[1] on the other hand, has devoted a long chapter to the diverse fraudulent means which are employed in England to hasten the eruption of the permanent incisors. He speaks of cauterization of the gums with the hot iron, of scarifications of the gums, and, finally, of the extraction of the milk-teeth. But he considers all these means barbarous, and claims that the extraction of the milk incisors at times hinders the eruption of the adult incisors.

In the face of such contradictory opinions, we have applied directly to several of our honorable colleagues living in districts where extraction of the deciduous teeth is practised. Here are the answers given to our questions:

1st. *Who are the persons that practise extraction of the incisors of the first dentition?*

They are breeders, empirics, and dealers in horses. Veterinarians consider it, with good reason, as a fraudulent procedure with which they are unwilling to be associated.

2d. *Method of the operation.—Immediate results.*

The animal is held in a standing position, with a twitch placed on his upper lip.

Special instruments are employed: pliers, forceps, or even the key of Garengeot. It appears that the latter instrument is preferable, because it permits the extraction of a single tooth without disturbing or breaking the adjacent ones.

The difficulty of the operation augments in proportion as the time is more in advance of the period when the tooth should have fallen out of itself. In the latter case, it is very simple. It is necessary, nevertheless, to operate with caution, because the incisor may happen to break immediately below its neck.

The pain which is a consequence of the operation is often rather severe, and sometimes hinders the animal from continuing to feed in pasture. It is then advisable to feed him in the stable, at least during a certain length of time, on a particular diet, such as oats, rye, or barley which have been previously boiled.

The animal sometimes, as a consequence, becomes vicious or difficult to bridle.

---

[1] Edward Mayhew, The Horse's Mouth, showing the Age by the Teeth, 3d ed., London, p. 123.

3d. *At what age is the operation practised? How many teeth are extracted at one time?*

This varies. Sometimes the pincers alone are extracted towards the end of the second year; sometimes at a later period only the intermediates are extracted; or, finally, at a still later period the corners alone may be removed. But there are some horses in which the pincers, the intermediates, and the corners are removed at successive periods. It appears that the operation is sometimes performed only upon the teeth of the upper jaw.

In this respect there are no fixed procedures. The principle of the stock-breeder who has colts to raise is to dispose of them at the earliest possible moment to avoid the expense of feeding, the chances of loss or of deterioration, or, finally, to realize in the shortest time the amount which their sale will produce.

This trick is practised at from three to three and one-half years of age, if it be desired to sell the horse as a four-year-old, and from four to four and one-half if he is to be represented as a five-year-old past. It is understood, of course, that in the first case the four intermediates are extracted; in the latter case the four corners.

4th. *Does the extraction of the deciduous incisors hasten the eruption of the adult teeth?*

Nearly all our colleagues have given an affirmative answer to this question; one alone claims that not only does it not hasten, but that it even retards the eruption of the permanent teeth, according as it has been practised six, eight, or ten months before the natural period of their replacement. The others declare that the eruption is quickened, if the operation has been properly performed; that is to say, if the whole of the milk-tooth has been removed.

M. Yvon[1] has, in this respect, communicated to us some interesting observations.

"This operation," says he, "hastens the evolution of the tooth but little. In the vicinity of Bayeux, and especially in the district of Caen, where extraction of the incisors of horses is frequently performed to make the animals apparently older and to dispose of them more promptly, it is practised only, at furthest, six months before the period when the teeth would naturally fall out. More often, however, it is done two months and even only one month before this period, in order to dispose of them more easily to the remounts or sell them to dealers. In the first case the eruption of the permanent teeth is hastened two

[1] Yvon, note communiquée.

months at the most, and sometimes not at all; in the second case, from fifteen to thirty days.

"It would be a grave error to believe that by pulling the intermediates at the time of the natural shedding of the pincers the former would, at the end of some days, be pushed out on a level with the latter. The wound resulting from the operation on these teeth would, on the contrary, cicatrize very promptly, and form, at these places, a strong and quite persistent pad.

"As I have said above," adds M. Yvon, "I think that the extraction of the teeth advances the dental evolution but little. On the posterior face of each milk-tooth which is shed it is easy to notice a deep concavity, a veritable imprint made by the permanent tooth, which incrusts itself here by pushing the former out of its alveolus. It is evident that it is not the milk-tooth, which must fall out, that prevents the eruption of the permanent one, but rather this latter which pushes out the other one in proportion as it is developed.

"Our Norman colts, with a few exceptions, are born from the 15th of February to the 15th of June. There is therefore a difference of four months between these two extreme periods. In the month of January, five years after their birth, the colts born in February may have all their incisors, while in the others the evolution of the corners will not have taken place until the month of May. Nevertheless, all these colts will be considered as five years old, although those born in May or in June may not have all their teeth. To do away with the dental differences from this variation in time, breeders very often extract at four and a half years the corners of colts born in June, in order to make them mark five years, like those of February of the same year.

"Under other conditions, breeders extract at four and one-half years the corners of horses foaled at the commencement of the year, and their permanent corners having gradually acquired their normal length in January and February after their fifth year, they may pass them on ignorant persons for horses six years old."

The removal of the milk incisors has no influence upon the general development of the animal on which the operation is performed.

Finally, it must be concluded, after all the information given, that the extraction of these teeth quickens in a certain proportion the eruption of the permanent ones, and apparently makes the animal older, especially if the operation has been done a short time before the natural fall of the milk-teeth. In this case a horse which marks five years has, therefore, really not acquired this age.

§ 2. Bishoping, Countermarking.

The fraudulent trick known under the names **bishoping, countermarking,** is performed to make the horse appear younger than he in reality is; it, however, can only deceive ignorant and careless observers, as we will demonstrate immediately.

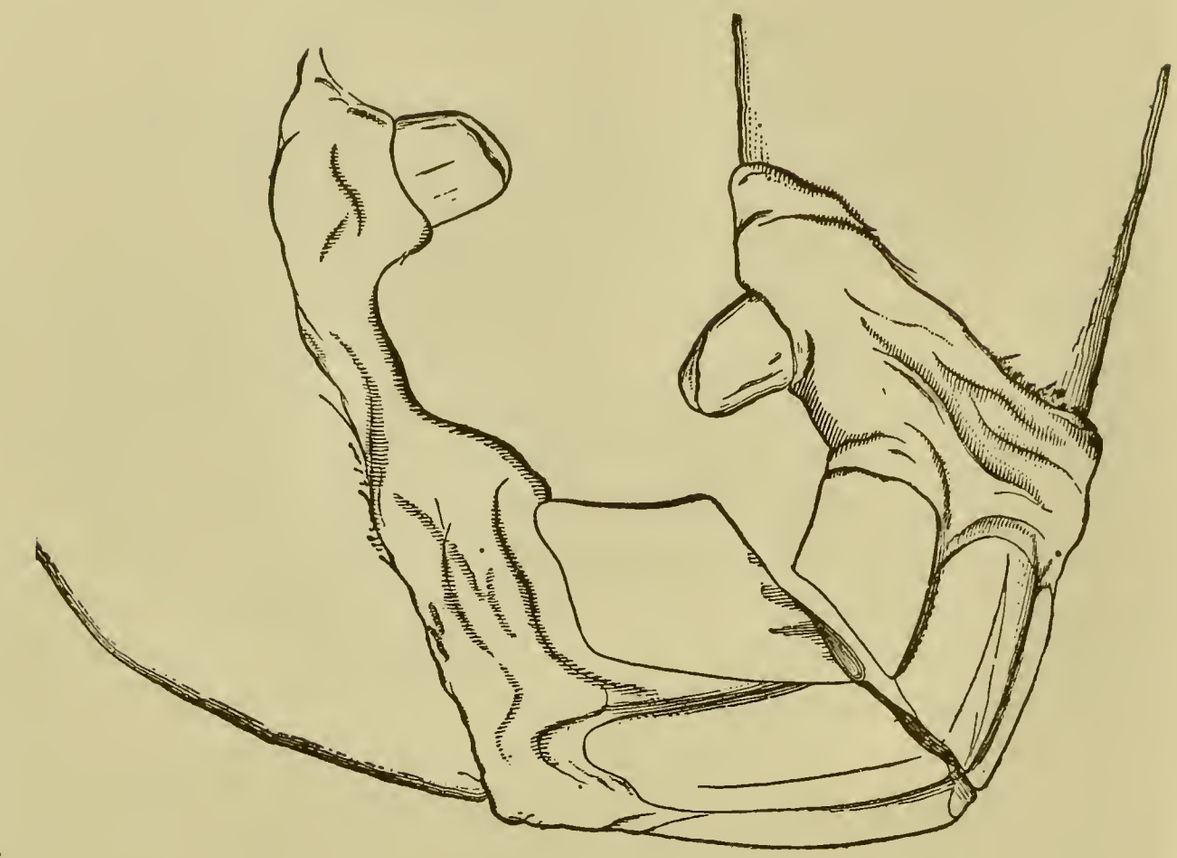
We know that in young horses the transverse diameter of the free extremity of the tooth is greater than the antero-posterior diameter. We know also that the dental table becomes modified and acquires a form successively oval, round, triangular, etc. We have seen, finally, that the external dental cavity occupies at first the whole of the surface of friction; that it gradually diminishes in depth, draws nearer and nearer to the posterior border of the table, disappears, and is then replaced by the central cement, circumscribed by the circle of central enamel, whose extremity, in its turn, finally completely disappears.

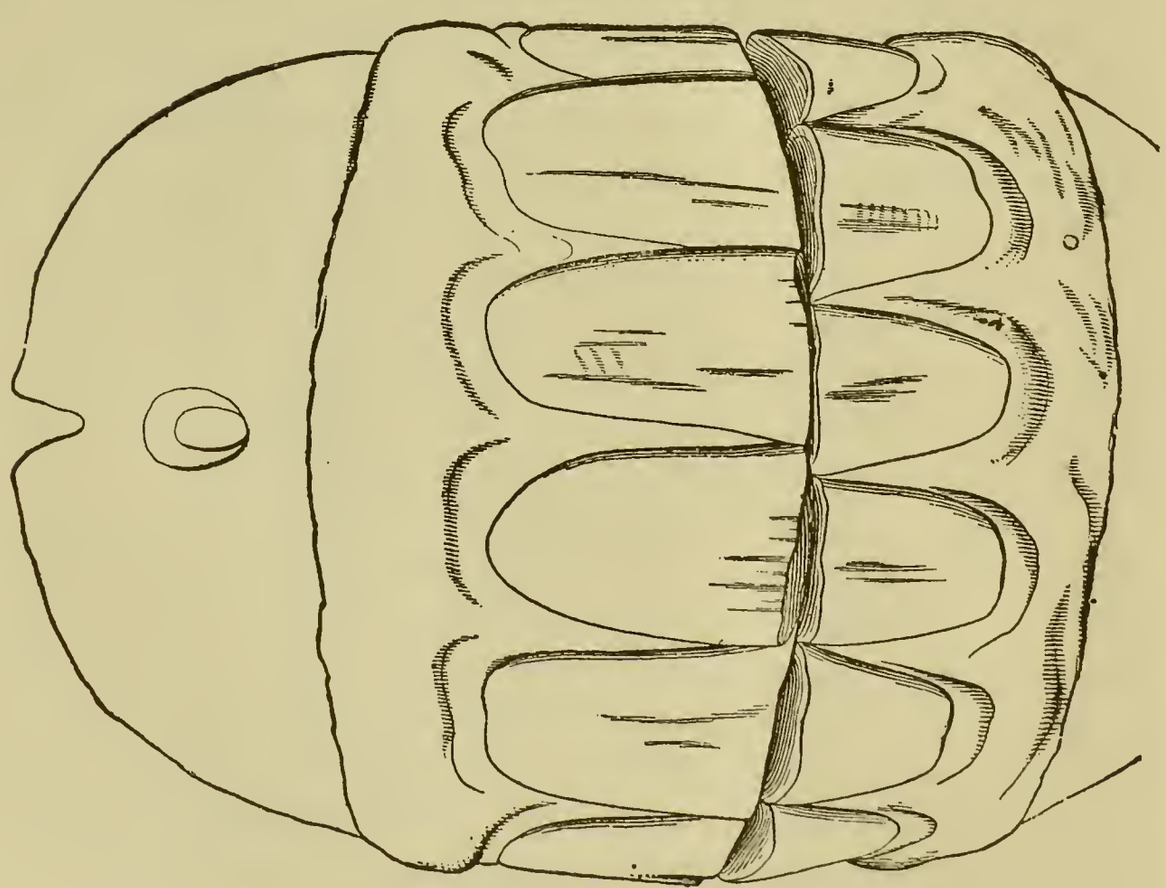
The jobber (for an honest horse-dealer would not indulge in such methods), in order to the better gain his end, will choose in preference a horse rather vigorous, still well preserved, and having good members. Let us take a subject twelve years of age, for example: the inferior incisors, at this period of life, are round, and the central enamel has disappeared, or almost so, from their tables. Suppose, also, now, that we desire to give to these teeth the characters of seven years.

Certain men in Paris have the reputation of practising this fraud very artistically, and we have had them perform it on two horses expressly for the purpose of showing it afterwards to our students. We have observed numerous specimens of this kind in horses recently purchased.

The following is the *modus operandi:* a strong halter is placed on the horse's head; the halter-strap is fastened close to the ground, so that the head is conveniently placed within the reach of the operator. Then a thick block of wood is placed in the mouth, to keep it open, so that the inferior incisive arcade may be altogether free.

Some operators, before commencing the *work,* level the dental tables in both jaws with the rasp; then, with a narrow gouge, a small transverse cavity is scooped out upon the intermediates and the corners. This operation is somewhat difficult on account of the hardness of the central enamel. These cavities are never made in the superior incisors, because there they still exist. At other times, also, the tushes are rasped off, especially on their inner side, to refreshen their free extremity by rendering it a little more pointed. The latter precaution is, however, not practised upon all *bishoped* mouths.





BISHOPING.

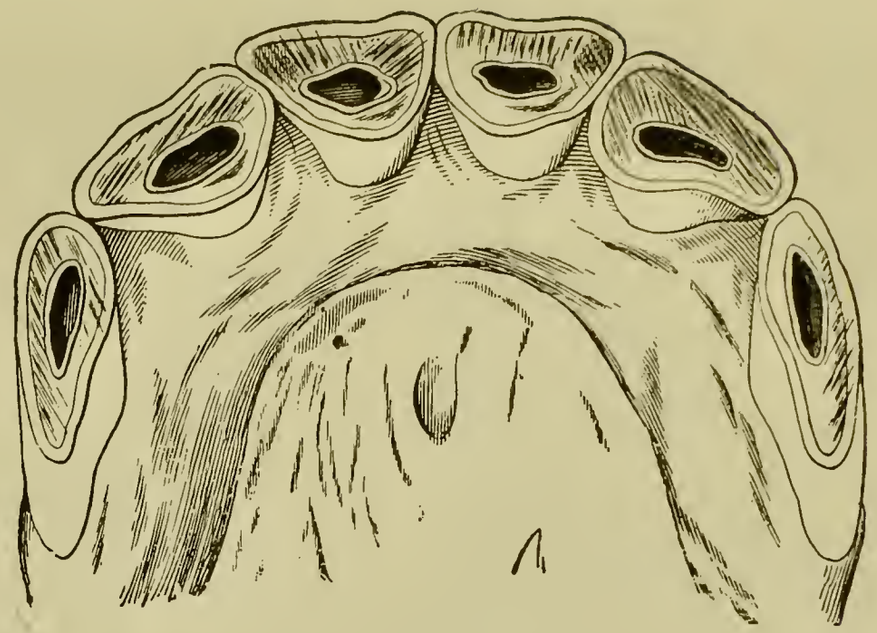


PLATE XXXIV.

Bishoping.—Upon the superior jaw, viewed in *front*, there is seen, between the two arcades, an interval at the level of the intermediates and the corners, showing that these teeth have been shortened by the rasp. This fact becomes more evident in *profile*. As to the *tables*, most of them show traces of the rasp; besides, those of the inferior intermediates and of the corners are hollowed, in their middle, by an artificial cavity, not surrounded by enamel, behind which are still seen vestiges of the central enamel.

The artificial cavity is then generally colored black by the application of nitrate of silver, so as to give to it the appearance of what in the adult tooth is called the *bean*, the mark.

But if we take the precaution to wipe the abundant saliva from the dental tables when the horse is offered for sale, it will be easy to detect this imitation. The following are its characteristics (Plate XXXIV.):

1st. If, after having separated one lip from the other, it is seen that the incisors of the two jaws do not exactly correspond, it is evident that their surface of friction has been rasped without shortening the molars in the same proportion.

2d. If, after having seized the tongue in order to separate the inferior jaw from the superior, cavities are observed upon the dental tables, it is necessary to ascertain if their presence is in relation with the form of the table; finally, it must be determined whether they are natural or artificial. We must be certain as to the latter point.

a. When the cavity is natural, it is surrounded by a border of enamel which is in relief above the dental table. This relief results from the fact that the two substances which essentially compose the tooth (the enamel and the dentine) do not offer the same resistance to wear.

b. On the contrary, *when the cavity is artificial*, its periphery is not surrounded by enamel, and the line which surrounds its opening or entrance is not in relief upon the table. Thus it can be very easily recognized by sight as well as by touch.

§ 3. Rasping of the Corner of the Superior Jaw.

We know that often at the age of six years the superior corners present a well-defined notch on their table, due to the fact that the whole of their table is not worn against that of the inferior. Many persons recognize the notch, and horse-dealers especially are well aware that if this notch be removed while the teeth are still fresh, the horse will seem younger than he really is. They remove it with the rasp. This trick, which is not very often practised, and of which we have seen some examples, is of no great importance; such manipulation may be easily discovered by finding the marks of the rasp upon the tables of the superior corners.

SECTION SIXTH.

CONSIDERATIONS RELATIVE TO THE DESCRIPTION AND IDENTIFICATION OF THE HORSE.

We propose to treat in this section on the ideas which the reader should possess in order to be able to *describe* a particular horse,—that is to say, to distinguish him from other horses. Among these items of knowledge there are some of which we have already treated and which we shall now only have to apply. The others we will study in detail; they have reference to the *coats* and their *peculiarities*, the *height*, and the formulation of that document called a *description*, which can also be employed as a model for a certificate of soundness.

CHAPTER I.

THE COATS.

---

1. Coats properly so called.

In the *exterior*, the word *coat* is synonymous with *robe*, and refers especially to the color of the hairs. It denotes the whole of the hairs which cover the surface of the body.

These hairs, produced by particular organs of secretion annexed to the skin (*hair-bulbs*), present a remarkable variety of colors. This is especially true of animals which live in a state of domestication. In wild animals, such as the tiger, leopard, deer, etc., the color of the hairs is uniform.

The colors of the hairs of the horse are the *black*, the *white*, the *red*, the *russet* or *reddish brown*, the *gray*, and the *yellow*. Their nu-

merous shades and diverse intermixing render the study of the coat somewhat complicated.

Nearly all writers on the horse have described these latter after classifications of their own, which they have considered simpler, more explicit, and more complete than those of their predecessors.

The history of these classifications and the examination of the principles upon which they are based would be irksome and would lead us too far away. It may be said to their credit that they are all tolerably satisfactory in relation to the facts mentioned, but not one of them is free from serious objections. The reason of this fact is the extreme complexity of the details of the subject. While most of the varieties can be identified and easily arranged into one of the divisions adopted, there are a certain number of them which defy all such attempts, and to describe which our language should extend its vocabulary. In our opinion, the invention of new terms would add fresh complications instead of casting a new light on these already confused descriptions. In practice it is wisest to make special mention of the exceptions—rare exceptions they are, in truth—which we are liable to meet.

Basing our argument upon the fact that ordinarily foals are never born either white or having pure white in their coat, and that this coat only appears more or less late,[1] we will at once establish, after the example of our noted colleague, Professor G. Neumann, three great categories : the *primitive coats*, the *derived coats*, and the *conjugate coats*.

By **primitive coats,** we understand those which the foal has at birth.

By **derived coats,** those which appear some time after birth, and are due to the introduction of white into a primitive coat.

By **conjugate coats,** those which are characterized by the presence, upon the same animal, of two primitive or two derived coats.

We will begin with the study of the first.

---

[1] We should, nevertheless, mention the following passage from De Curnieu relative to white foals : "Often," says he, "the white coat characterizes a race. Mention is made of the small white horses of the Duke of Montrose, in England, derived from Spanish or Barb horses. . . . In Hanover and Denmark white horses somewhat similar to the latter have been preserved for a long time. They still exist there, and are called *weissgeboren* (*white-born*). (In De Curnieu, Leçons de science hippique générale, 1re partie, p. 174, Paris, 1855.)

§ 1. Primitive Coats.

We will divide these coats into three groups:

a. The **simple coats,** formed by hairs of a single color.

Examples: *black, sorrel.*

b. The **composite coats,** formed by hairs of two colors: the one, black, for the mane, tail, and extremities; the others, yellow, red, or gray, for the body.

Examples: *Isabella, bay, mouse-color.*

c. The **mixed coats,** formed in great part by dark hairs, upon each of which are found two different colors, the yellow more or less light at the base, and the black at the summit.

Example: *fox-color.*

A.—Simple Coats.

We will class among the **simple coats** all those which are constituted by hairs of the same color. They comprise the *black* and the *sorrel.* If we do not include the *white* here, as nearly all authors have done, it is because this color does not belong to the primitive coats. Besides, the true white, that which, in the strict sense of the word, presents no dark-colored hairs, is so rare that many doubt its existence. The horses which are described *white* are, in reality, only very light grays, upon which some dark hairs of the coat are discovered in the mane or tail, if they are carefully examined. Moreover, we apprise the reader of a different opinion, according to which it will be easy for him to classify this coat in the various groups of which we will speak presently.

1st. The **black coat** needs no definition. It is the darkest of all the coats. Its varieties are two in number, as follows:

a. The **true** or **ordinary black,** dark, dull, uniform, and without any reflection.

b. The **rusty black,** dull, reddish in the sun, with a gradation of tints, less dark, and sometimes almost *washed,* at the elbows, the axillæ, the flanks, the abdomen, the thighs, and the buttocks. It is often difficult to distinguish it from the brown, especially in summer; we will, nevertheless, show how to differentiate between them in speaking of the latter coat.

The black may possess a brilliant reflection which is proper to it. This is designated by the names *coal black, jet black, extremely black,* on account of its brilliant aspect analogous to that of sparkling

jewels. It will be described more in detail in discussing the peculiarities of the coat.

2d. The **sorrel coat** consists of golden, fawn, and reddish-brown hairs, and recalls, more or less, the color of cinnamon bark.

We will add to this type that which most authors call *coffee-and-milk* or cream-color, for it appears to us to be only one of the varieties.

This sorrel coat comprises :

a. The **coffee-and-milk sorrel** is of a tint resembling that of a mixture of coffee and milk. According to its shade it is called *light*, *ordinary*, and *dark*. When very light it is more especially called *cream-color*.

b. The **light** or **fawn sorrel** has a yellowish tint which is similar to the coat of the deer. The ordinary sorrel will sometimes assume this aspect if the horse runs at liberty for a month or six weeks.

c. The **ordinary sorrel** recalls the color of cinnamon, not only for the body, but also for the mane, the tail, and the extremities.

d. The **bovine** or **washed sorrel** has a degraded fawn tint, but the mane, the tail, and the extremities are pale, *washed*, or almost white.

e. The **dark** or **dull sorrel** is of a cinnamon color, bordering upon brown.

f. The **cherry sorrel** has the reddish tint of a cherry.

g. The **chestnut sorrel** is of a clear, reddish-brown, and uniform color, like that of a ripe chestnut.

h. The **maroon sorrel** has the same general tint as the preceding, but shows, here and there, darker spots, analogous to the veins of the maroon of the West Indies.

i. The **burnt sorrel** has exactly the same shade of color as that of roasted coffee. It is not rare to see this tint with mane and tail almost entirely white. It should then be described *with white mane and tail.*

Several of these varieties are accompanied by peculiar reflections. Thus the light or fawn sorrel may be *golden ;* the ordinary and the cherry sorrel *copper-colored ;* the chestnut and the maroon *bronzed*, according to the manner in which they reflect the light.

We will add that the white markings of the head and members, as well as the leprous spots around the lips and nostrils, are extremely common in sorrel horses.

Finally, with De Curnieu,[1] we will say that we have observed several subjects of this color absolutely deprived of white hairs.

---

[1] De Curnieu, loc. cit., 1re partie, p. 179.

B.—Composite Coats.

We will call *composite coats* all those which are formed by two distinct kinds of hair, the one yellow, red, or gray, for the body, the other always black, for the mane, tail, and extremities.

They comprise the *Isabella*, the *bay*, and the *mouse-color*.

1st. The **Isabella** or **Isabella coat** is characterized by hairs of two distinct colors: those of the body are yellow or yellowish; those of the extremities, from the knee and the hock down, as well as the mane and tail, are black. This color of the horse is also called the *dun*.

According to its shade, it is *light*, *ordinary*, and *dark*.

It is common, but not invariable, to find a narrow, longitudinal black stripe (*mule stripe*) upon the median line of the back, the loins, and the croup of Isabella horses, as well as blackish stripes across their forearms and legs (*zebra stripes*); their ears are also often bordered by a band of dark hairs. Although these peculiarities undoubtedly modify the aspect of the coat, they do not change its nature. The essential characteristics necessary to identify this coat are the yellow hairs and black mane and tail or black extremities. When the mule stripe, the zebra stripes, or the auricular border exist, we simply mention their presence, for these markings may at times be found upon bay, sorrel, and mouse-colored horses.

This distinction, already accepted by several veterinary writers, has the advantage of clearly distinguishing the Isabella from the cream-color, whose hairs are often very analogous in color to the preceding. Hence the variety of Isabella *with black mane and tail* is no longer preserved as a definition; as to that which was formerly designated Isabella *with white mane and tail*, we could not admit it either. When the extremities are of the same color as the body, the animal should be considered as being a cream-colored sorrel. It will be remarked that here we consider the white or washed mane and tail as a *peculiarity* and not as a *variety*.

It would perhaps have been more simple, more natural, and more logical to classify the Isabella among the bays, to some of which it often bears a striking resemblance, and to make it a *bay Isabella*, in accordance with the principle which has guided us for the cream-color in relation to the sorrel. Nevertheless, with all due respect to traditions and technical language, we have preferred to allow our idea to be matured by time before proposing its absolute introduction into practice.

A humorous legend concerning the origin of the name *Isabella* relates that the Archduchess Isabella of Austria, daughter of Philip II. of Spain, and wife of the Governor of the Netherlands, made a vow at the time of the siege of Ostend not to change her linen before the surrender of the place. The siege having continued for three years (1601 to 1604), the chemise of the princess had acquired a peculiar fawn shade, to which has since been given the name Isabella.[1]

2d. The **bay** or **bay coat** differs from the Isabella only in so far that the yellow hairs are replaced by red hairs. The latter are of an ill-defined tint, similar to mahogany, ripe cherry, fractured red cinchona, etc., but varying from light to dark, from fawn yellow to maroon and brown.

The bay could not be confounded with the sorrel, first, because the mane, tail, and lower part of the members are black in nearly every case; secondly, on account of its deeper color, its brighter shade, and its more brilliant reflection.

We, nevertheless, meet horses of this color in which the members, *over their whole extent*, are of the same color as the main shade of the coat; upon others, only the coronets are black; finally, there are some in which black hairs exist only along the course of the tendons and upon the phalanges.

The varieties of the bay are as follows:

a. The **light bay,** whose red color is very light, bordering somewhat upon yellow. It often resembles the dark Isabella, and, like the latter, sometimes has the mule and zebra stripes, which lead us, in such cases, to classify it without hesitation with the latter type, in which these peculiarities are so common.

b. The **ordinary bay** is of a distinctly red color.

c. The **cherry bay, blood bay,** and **mahogany bay** are a little darker and almost identical. The names by which they are designated suffice to point out the differences as well as their particular shades.

d. The **chestnut bay,** of a uniform light brown, is similar to that of a ripened chestnut.

e. The **maroon bay** reproduces quite accurately the color of the maroon of the West Indies, with deeper and fresher shades upon the upper part of the body.

f. The **dark bay** is of a dark color bordering upon brown.

---

[1] Bouillet, Dictionnaire d'histoire et de géographie éd. de 1860; Littré, Dictionnaire de la langue française.

g. The **brown bay,** finally, is almost black. It might even be mistaken for the rusty black, especially in winter, were it not for the reddish colorations around the nostrils, the axillæ, the elbows, the abdomen, the flanks, or the buttocks, which always distinguish the former from the latter.

Bay horses, like the sorrel, often show white markings upon the head; nevertheless, such marks are less common in them. The same may be said of their reflections. In the vigorous and well-groomed subjects, and in a bright light, the light colors frequently appear *golden,* the red *copper-colored,* and the brown *bronzed.*

3d. The **mouse** or **mouse-colored coat** is also formed by an assemblage of two distinct colors: the body is covered with hairs of an ashy gray analogous to those of the mouse; as to the members, they are black from the knee and hock down, as in the Isabella and the bay.

According to the case, the mouse-color is *light, ordinary,* or *dark.* Sometimes the head is a little darker, and the mule stripe upon the back and the zebra stripes upon the arm and forearm are present; at other times, the members are of the same color as the body. The existence of these peculiarities should be mentioned.

C.—Mixed Coats.

In the preceding groups, we have seen that the coat is formed by hairs of but one or two colors, but the body, in all cases, is provided with hairs of the same shade; the extremities alone have a different color. In the mixed coat, the elements are of a diverse nature and ordinarily intimately mixed; besides, this mixing takes place in the individual hairs themselves: the latter show two distinct, localized shades, the one at their base and the other at their extremity.

For the reason that these coats, as a whole and in detail, show more or less of a combination of the characters of the other groups, we have named them *mixed.*

Only one variety of this coat has been, until the present time, recognized upon the horse: the *fox-color;* but there are others in certain domestic or wild animals, such as the collie dog, the cat, the badger, the wolf, the roe, the deer, the hare, the rabbit, etc. Each of them has some part of the integument, notably the superior face of the body, covered by hairs of two or three colors, associated in very different manners and combined in very variable proportions. To describe them would be outside the scope of this book.

The **fox-color**, or **fox-colored coat**, called in French *louvet*, resembles, as its English name indicates, the color of the fox ; formerly, it was called *color of the deer*, for similar reasons.

Vallon,[1] whose observations we have carefully analyzed, has, in our opinion, given the most accurate definition of this coat. "The fox-color (*louvet*)" says he, "is formed of two shades, the black and the yellow, sometimes *separated* upon different hairs, but most often *united* upon the same hair, whose *base* is *yellow* and the *extremity black*." We will add that the mane and tail are ordinarily dark like those of the burnt sorrel ; it is the same with the extremities ; in such cases the latter peculiarity should always be mentioned.

According to the predominance of the one or the other of these colors this coat presents the following varieties :

It is called *light*, when the yellow, more or less *washed*, predominates ; *ordinary*, when the yellow and black are distributed almost in equal proportions ; *dark*, finally, when the black is in excess over the yellow, itself quite intense. Horses of this color are rare. It is to be remarked that after *moulting* they become lighter, approaching the Isabella, the cream-color, and are at times almost white. Our colleague, M. Saint-Yves Ménard, has shown us one of them, belonging to the Japanese variety of horses, which could scarcely be recognized after having been clipped, because the base of the hairs was almost white.

The usual reflections of this color are the *golden* and the *bronze*.

§ 2. Derived Coats.

We have defined these coats : those which appear after birth and result from the introduction of white hairs into a primitive coat.

They are four in number : the *gray*, the *white*, the *flea-bitten*, and the *roan*.

1st. The **gray** is, in our estimation, much less easily distinguished than is generally supposed. Classically, it is regarded as a mixture of white and black hairs. Practically, this is far from being the case. All that is needed in order to convince one's self that this definition is insufficient is to select at hap-hazard ten gray horses. The *dark* hairs, first of all, *are not always black ;* far from it. The latter are often replaced by brown, maroon, chestnut, bay, sorrel, and, more rarely, yellow hairs. As to the white hairs, they are at times only the yellow

[1] Vallon, Cours d'hippologie, t. i. p. 578, Paris, 1863.

very thoroughly *washed.* This is why the grays are so difficult to specify. If they are, in fact, only a mixture of black and white, whence, then, come the bluish, the purplish, the reddish, or the yellowish shades which are found in the slate-colored, the wine-colored, the reddish, the roan, the Isabella, the dirty, and the flea-bitten gray? To reply that these shades are not so many varieties, but only peculiarities, does not solve the difficulty, for a peculiarity is a detail which changes the aspect of one region alone; it is not disseminated everywhere, and for the same reason does not modify the general color of the coat.

It appears to us more logical and exact to say that the gray is sometimes a mixture of black and white, sometimes of white hairs and those of a darker color, the latter consisting of the lighter colors, such as the bay, the sorrel, or the Isabella. The extremities, the mane, and the tail are always of the same nature as the coat of the body.

Brivet was quite conscious of the want of conformity of the varieties contained in the classical definition of this coat when he wrote, "The gray coat is excessively varied in its degrees; it is a sort of chaos, so many different shades of hairs are there; it is composed of all varieties: we mean to say that it borrows a little from all the colors."[1]

To recapitulate, two constant elements intimately mixed especially characterize the gray: *white* hairs and hairs of a *dark color.* It will be remarked that we intentionally use the word *dark* in order to indicate that this shade may vary from the true black to the brown.

To these elements are often added others, such as the bay, the sorrel, and the Isabella, which variegate the coat, but without taking away the characteristics and the aspect which are proper to it.

From the preceding statements, the gray coat is therefore the black, the bay, the Isabella, or the sorrel, mixed with the *white* to a degree more or less marked according to the case. This, consequently, justifies the place which we have given it among the *derived coats.*

In relation to its *degree*—that is to say, its darkness and brilliancy—we will recognize the following principal varieties:

a. The **very light gray**, which greatly resembles the white, and shows very few black or dark hairs.

b. The **light gray**, not so white as the preceding and with more black or dark hairs.

---

[1] Brivet, Nouveau traité des robes, p. 47, Paris, 1844.

c. The **ordinary gray,** which presents an almost equal mixture of white and dark or black hairs.

d. The **dark gray,** characterized by the predominance of dark or black hairs.

Relative to its particular *tint* or *color,* the gray is also called:

e. **Iron gray,** when it has the bluish shade of a piece of iron recently broken. This horse is vulgarly called *blue* or *grayish-blue.*

f. **Slate-colored gray,** when it resembles the dull blue of slate. It is a shade darker than the preceding, and varies from *light* to *dark,* according to circumstances.

g. **Clayey gray,** when it has a very light yellowish tint. It much resembles the clayey white.

h. **Isabella gray,** when it is constituted by a mixture of white, yellow, and dark hairs. According to the intensity of the yellow and the relative abundance of the dark and the black, it becomes *light* or *dark;* but its general tint always recalls that of the Isabella.

i. **Roan gray** when it is constituted by an intimate mixture of white, dark, red, or reddish hairs, the latter ordinarily less abundant. It may be *light* or *dark.* When the red or reddish hairs predominate over the others, and particularly over the dark, it acquires a more marked red tint; it is then called *wine gray.*

k. **Gray,** called "**thrush gray,**" when it has the aspect of a light roan gray, upon which are disseminated small patches of whitish or yellowish hairs (Brivet).

l. **Flea-bitten gray,** when it is constituted by a dark roan gray intermixed with small patches of whitish hairs (Brivet).

The last two varieties are very rare.

Gray horses have darker extremities, and become more and more light as they advance in age. They even change from year to year, which necessitates a frequent modification in their description. Finally, they are subject to numerous and special peculiarities, which we will study farther on.

2d. The **white** or **white coat,** being a color so universally recognized, needs no definition.

This coat exists, with very rare exceptions, only at a more or less advanced period of life. Hence we will consider it, essentially, as being derived from the gray, or again as a primitive color, such as the black, the sorrel, the Isabella, or the bay, in which the primary black, blond, yellow, or red hairs have almost totally disappeared. But in examining such horses, we find, in most instances, some of these

colored hairs upon the body, the mane, and the tail, or upon the extremities. The knowledge of this fact has led certain authors to say that white horses do not exist. Lecoq[1] has condemned this opinion as being too absolute. The determination of the coat is not arrived at with one eye alone. The whole, and not the detail, rules the diagnosis. The varieties of the color are as follows:

a. The **dull, milk,** or **pigeon white** is without reflection, opaque, of a milky aspect, and resembles somewhat that of a white pigeon.

b. The **porcelain white** has the tint of porcelain china, in consequence of the black coloration of the skin which is visible under the hairs.

c. The **dirty white** is of a slightly yellowish tint. It is derived sometimes from coffee-and-milk, cream-colored, or even from very light washed hairs. More frequently it results from uncleanliness.

d. The **rosy white** presents in some places more or less large rosy spots, which are due to the absence of the cutaneous pigment and to the thinness of the hairs, leaving the discolored parts of the skin visible.

The reflection of the white is the *silver*, in the same manner as the *coal* or *jet* is that of the black.

3d. The **flea-bitten coat** is formed upon the body by red and white hairs mixed, while the mane, tail, and extremities are of the same color as the coat proper, and often lighter.

It will be seen from this that the flea-bitten is nothing more than the sorrel more or less freely intermingled with the white.

It is differentiated from the gray with a rosy or reddish shade in that it never presents very dark hairs,—that is to say, black, blackish, or brown; but as it becomes more and more white with age, it will eventually terminate in a clear wine gray.

According to the abundance and intensity of the red, this coat is designated *light*, *ordinary*, or *dark*.

When the mixing of the two kinds of hairs is not uniform, it receives particular designations.

Thus the flea-bitten is called *all-flower*, when the white hairs are collected in small patches and disseminated over the groundwork of the coat.

It is called *peach-blossom*, when composed of patches of red or rosy hairs which are strewn over the lighter groundwork of the coat.

---

[1] Lecoq, Traité de l'extérieur du cheval, 5e éd., p. 468.

4th. The **roan** or **roan coat** is composed of three kinds of hairs: red, white, and black. The red and white hairs are mixed upon the body, the black form the mane, the tail, and are also found on the extremities.

This coat is therefore only a bay, modified more or less by the admixture of white.

According to the relative abundance and intensity of the red, this coat is called—

Light, when the white predominates.

Ordinary, when the red and white exist in almost equal abundance.

Wine, blood, or **strawberry,** when the red predominates.

Dark, finally, when the brownish red predominates.

In roan horses the members are not always black. In this respect the same remarks are true as in the case of bay horses.

With old age these horses become more white, and are then only roan grays.

§ 3. Conjugate Coats.

We designate by this name the coats which are characterized by the presence, upon the same animal, of two *primitive* or distinct *derived* coats, and, more rarely, of two varieties of the same coat.

Until the present time only two types have been described.

1st. The **piebald** or **pied coat** is nothing more than a union, and not an intermixture, of the white coat with one or other of those which we have described. As a result the animal presents a singular appearance: he is covered with large white patches, irregular, unequal in extent, and variously situated, which are associated and *conjugate*, so to speak, but do not blend with the colored areas, giving him a fantastic appearance.

In the strict sense of the word, the true *piebald* should consist only of the white and the black, like the plumage of the bird from which it borrows its name. Nevertheless, custom has decreed that the black color may be replaced by any one of the others. Hence to designate the coats of this type we employ a compound expression, in which the word *pied* always refers to the white, while the other term indicates the color with which the latter is associated.

Examples: *pied black, pied bay, pied roan, pied sorrel,* etc.

Besides, in order to make the description more exact, it is preferable to arrange the two terms of this expression in such a manner as to prefix the name of the color which covers the largest area of surface.

Thus we call it *bay pied, gray pied, roan pied,* etc., when the bay, the gray, or the roan covers a larger area than the white; and *pied bay, pied gray, pied roan* in the contrary disposition.

Finally, in order to be more precise, even the variety of the white or colored coat can be mentioned, as may be seen in the following examples: *rusty black pied, dark fox-color pied, flea-bitten rosy pied, burnt sorrel porcelain pied,* etc. Ordinarily, however, the varieties of the white color are not mentioned.

When the four extremities of a piebald horse are white, they are designated as having *stockings,* or as being *white-footed.*

When the mane, tail, and extremities of the pied bay, pied Isabella, and pied roan are white instead of black, one may be easily deceived, and confound these coats with the pied sorrel, cream-color, and flea-bitten. In such a case, there remain no other points to guide us excepting the shade of the hairs; but there are found at times in the forelock, the mane, the tail, or upon the extremities some dark, black, or colored hairs, which enable us to avoid this error. However this may be, if the exact determination of the colored hairs be impossible, it is well to indicate, for want of a more accurate expression, *that the subject has a white mane, tail, and extremities.*

The varieties of the *piebald* are as numerous as there are types of coats, excepting the white. We will consequently recognize—

The pied *black,* the pied *cream-color,* the pied *bay,* the pied *mouse,* the pied *fox-color,* the pied *gray,* the pied *flea-bitten,* and the pied *roan.*

2d. The **conjugate gray** and **Isabella** is an extremely rare coat, of which one of us[1] has observed but two examples. We have added to it the epithet *conjugate,* to distinguish it from the ordinary Isabella gray (which is mixed), and to fully establish its relation and its analogy with the *piebalds.*

In the case under consideration there existed, upon the body of the horse, *two distinct coats:* one was the *gray,* and the other the *Isabella.*

We are not aware that instances of this kind, identical and analogous, have been observed previously. In any case they might be very logically classified along with the latter and be designated according to the same principle.

We will also mention here another observation which we had the opportunity to make during the month of July, 1883, and which we brought under the notice of our pupils, as well as of H. Bouley and some others of our colleagues.

It concerned a mare in the army, used for the saddle, whose coat was *cherry bay,* and presented large, irregular patches of *dark maroon bay.* The latter were almost blended upon the left side of the body and members; upon the right side, disseminated and *well delineated.*

The officer who described this animal had entered her as a cherry bay

---

[1] Arm. Goubaux.

and maroon bay, "*en forme de pie.*" As a matter of fact, these two varieties of the bay were as well marked and distinct as the two coats of the piebald. If we had to give the description at present, we would say. "*Coat conjugate cherry bay and maroon bay color,*" etc. This qualification would recall at the same time the disposition of the two sorts of hairs, as well as the affinities of this singular coat with those of which we have just spoken.

De Curnieu[1] classifies in a special category the coats which, upon a base of white or trout-color, present unequal spots of an almost round form and disseminated over nearly the entire surface of the body. These spots, ordinarily dark or red, are more especially found upon white, gray, bay, and sorrel coats. When they are localized in one region they simply constitute a *peculiarity,* but when they are generalized they altogether change the color and aspect of the coat, and render it more or less fantastic.

Horses of this color are vulgarly called *spotted* or *marbled horses.* According to De Curnieu, these animals are most frequently found in Denmark, Hanover, and along the borders of the Danube. Formerly they were very much sought after and sold at high prices. To-day they are scarcely used except in the circus ring or for advertising wagons.

SYNOPTICAL TABLE OF THE COATS.

PRIMITIVE COATS. (Already formed a short time after birth.)			
Categories.	Color of the Hairs.	Primitive Types.	Corresponding Varieties.
A. **Simple coats.** Hairs of a single color.	Black.	**Black.**	*Ordinary, rusty.*
	Red or reddish.	**Sorrel.**	*Cream-color, light, ordinary, washed, dark, cherry, chestnut, maroon, burnt.*
B. **Composite coats.** Hairs of two varieties: some *black*, for the mane, the tail, and the extremities; others *yellow, red,* or *gray,* for the body.	Yellow.	**Isabella.**	*Light, ordinary, dark.*
	Red or reddish.	**Bay.**	*Light, ordinary, cherry, blood, mahogany, chestnut, maroon, dark, brown.*
	Gray.	**Mouse.**	*Light, ordinary, dark.*
C. **Mixed coats.** Several colors upon the same hair.	Yellow at the base, black at the point.	**Louvet.** (Fox-color.)	*Light, ordinary, dark.*

[1] De Curnieu, loc. cit., p. 190.

SYNOPTICAL TABLE OF THE COATS—*Continued.*

DERIVED COATS. (Appearing at a remote period of life, and due to the introduction of white into the primitive coat.)			
PRIMITIVE COATS—ELEMENTS.	COLOR OF THE HAIRS ASSOCIATED WITH THE WHITE.	DERIVED TYPES.	CORRESPONDING VARIETIES.
Black, sorrel, bay, Isabella.	Black, brown, blood-red, red, or yellow.	**Gray.**	*Very light, light, ordinary, dark, iron, slaty, clayey, Isabella, roan, wine, tourdille (dirty), flea-bitten.*
Those which form the gray.	White.	**White.**	*Dull, porcelain, clayey, rosy.*
Sorrel.	Reddish.	**Flea-bitten.**	*Light, ordinary, dark, all-flower, peach-blossom.*
Bay.	Red.	**Roan.**	*Light, ordinary, wine, dark.*

CONJUGATE COATS. (Union of two *primitive* or distinct *derived* coats, and, more rarely, of two varieties of the same coat.		
COATS OR VARIETIES—ELEMENTS.	CORRESPONDING CONJUGATE TYPES.	CORRESPONDING VARIETIES.
The white coat and one other.	**Pied.**	*Black, sorrel, Isabella, bay, mouse, fox-color, gray, flea-bitten, roan.*
The gray coat and the Isabella coat.	**Conjugate gray and Isabella.**	
Varieties: cherry bay and maroon bay.	**Conjugate cherry bay and maroon bay.**	

2. Peculiarities of the Coats.

Aside from the kind of coat and its variety, it is necessary to indicate, in a certificate of description, certain details or marked peculiarities, which are due to brilliant reflections, to the presence of hairs different from the others, either in color or in direction, or, finally, to a discoloration of the skin as well as of the hairs themselves. These

diverse markings, very variable in their situation, their form, their extent, and their nature, have received the general name *peculiarities of the coat* or the *markings*. They are of great importance for distinguishing subjects often identical as regards the color of the hairs and their special tint or shade.

We will divide them into four principal groups:

1st. *General peculiarities*, found indiscriminately upon the different parts of the animal.

2d. *Peculiarities special* to the *head*.

3d. *Peculiarities special* to the *body*.

4th. *Peculiarities special* to the *members*.

As to the *peculiarities independent of the coat*, we will make mention of them *à propos* of the certificate of description.

A.—General Peculiarities.

These markings, without any fixed location, are arranged under the following seven principal headings, according to their manner of formation:

1st, the brilliant reflections; 2d, the shade of the hairs; 3d, the white hairs; 4th, the black hairs; 5th, the red hairs; 6th, the different directions of the hairs; 7th, finally, the discolorations of the skin and of the hairs.

1. Brilliant Reflections.

They comprise the *jet black*, the *silver*, the *golden*, the *copper*, the *bronze*, and the *wavy* (*moiré*).

Jet Black.—This is the reflection proper to the black. It is identical with that of jet jewelry.

Silver.—By this term is designated the reflection of the white, the very light gray, and the very pale cream-color.

Examples: *silvery porcelain white; silvery light gray; silvery cream-color.*

Golden.—This term is applied to the sorrels, the bays, the Isabellas, and the cream-colors, whose shade is yellowish with a reflection recalling that of metallic gold.

Examples: *golden fawn-colored sorrel; golden light bay; golden ordinary Isabella; golden dark cream-color.*

Copper.—This reflection resembles the preceding, but is brighter and of a reddish tint, like that of copper utensils. It is found on the sorrel and the bay.

Examples: *copper cherry bay; copper mahogany bay.*

Bronze.—The bronze is more brown than the copper. It is seen more especially upon the *burnt sorrel*, the *maroon bay*, the *dark bay*, the *dark Isabella*, and the *louvet*.

Wavy.—This is a bright, changeable lustre, of an undulating aspect, which the preceding reflections acquire upon different parts of the body, when the hairs, instead of being smooth, present in places slight undulations, giving to the coat the appearance of wavy cloth or galvanized tin plate.

Examples: *silvery white, wavy upon the sides of the neck; jet black, wavy upon the croup and flanks; dark sorrel, bronzed and wavy upon the thighs and forearms; copper chestnut bay, wavy upon the cheeks and thighs; golden Isabella, wavy upon the ribs and shoulders*, etc.

2. Shaded Hairs.

The peculiarities due to *shaded hairs* comprise, upon the base of the coat, round spots, sometimes lighter, sometimes darker, resulting from a more or less intense tint of the general color.

It includes the peculiarity which is ordinarily called *dapple*.

A **dapple coat** is one which presents spots of the form and diameter of a five-franc piece, lighter or darker than the base of the coat, but of the same general color. They are observed upon bay, sorrel, Isabella, mouse- and fox-colored horses.

It is well to mention their presence, their abundance, and their seat.

When they exist on the coat of gray horses, French authors designate this peculiarity by the term *pommelé*.

When they are generalized, the coat is simply called dappled, without any other mention.

Examples: *dark Isabella, slightly dappled; burnt sorrel, greatly dappled upon the croup and thighs; mahogany bay, dappled upon the cheeks, neck, and sides; ordinary gray, greatly dappled upon the back and loins; dark dapple gray.*

3. White Hairs.

The peculiarities due to the absence or variable abundance of white hairs upon different parts of the body are *whole-* or *solid-colored*, *rubican*, *snow-flake*, *flea-bitten*, *growing gray*, and *bordered*. We will add to these the *accidental white markings*.

Solid Color.—We call by the terms *zain* or *solid-colored* the bay, black, sorrel, dark Isabella, and mouse-colored horse, whose coat has *no* white hairs.

Example: *solid jet black.*

Rubican.—This expression is applied to horses of a bay, black, sorrel, mouse, Isabella, and dark fox-color, which present, disseminated here and there in variable quantity, isolated white hairs, but never sufficiently numerous to change the nature of the groundwork of the coat.

It is important to mention their abundance and their seat.

Examples: *rubican chestnut sorrel; ordinary black, very rubican; cherry bay, slightly rubican upon the cheeks, neck, and sides; dark Isabella, very rubican upon the head and flanks.*

Snow-flaky (Neigé).—The *snow-flakes*, or *neigeures*, are small white spots strewn over a dark or colored coat, ordinarily the black, the sorrel, and the bay, and resembling snow-flakes which have fallen upon the body of the animal.

The terms *light* or *heavy* are used to designate these spots, according to the area of the base of the coat which is visible between them.[1] We have in one case seen a large number upon a sorrel horse which had been previously affected with herpes tonsurans.

The *neigeures*, instead of being *isolated*, are at times *confluent;* in such cases they form patches or spots, which we propose to name *snow-balls* or *snow-spots.*

Examples: *jet black, slightly snow-flaky upon the croup; brown bay, very snow-flaky upon the back and loins; cherry sorrel, with light snow-flakes upon the shoulders and sides; maroon bay, with large snowballs upon the loins and flanks.*

Flea-bitten.—This is found upon the sorrel and the bay, whose red parts are invaded by white hairs, which are mixed with the red in such a manner as to constitute flea-bitten areas upon the body or the head.

Examples: *cherry bay, flea-bitten upon the left cheek; chestnut sorrel, flea-bitten at the tail from birth.*

Grisonné, or Grayish.—These terms are often employed synonymously with the preceding, although in reality they have an entirely different signification. They indicate, in fact, the presence of white hairs mixed at one point or another with the *black* coat or the *black parts of the body,* such as the extremities, the mane, and the tail of the bay, the Isabella, and the mouse-color.

The grayish and the flea-bitten differ from the rubican, in that the white hairs which form these markings are sufficiently numerous to change, locally, the nature of the base of the coat.

---

[1] We need only mention the *light* snow-flake; the *heavy* is the snow-flake properly so called.

Examples: *black, grayish upon the temples; brown bay, grayish upon the right haunch; light Isabella, grayish upon the anterior face of the left canon.*

Bordered.—This word is applied to a mixture of white and colored hairs disposed in the form of a *border* around any white margin whatever, but always well outlined.

Examples: *bordered blaze, bordered stocking, bordered leprous spot,* etc.

Accidental White Markings.—We designate by this term the white markings which are the consequence of wounds produced by the harness, the hobbles, falling upon the knees, injuries, etc. Their number, their extent, and their location should be indicated in a certificate of description or of soundness.

Examples: *dapple light bay, accidental white marking on the withers and on the point of the right hock; rusty black, two small accidental white marks upon the face and a larger one at the base of the tail.*

4. Black Hairs.

The peculiarities formed by the *black hairs* are called *speckled, trout-spotted, ermined, leopard-spotted, spurious brand-iron mark, charbonné, louveté.*

Speckled.—This condition, designated by French authors *moucheté,* is caused by small black spots, similar to those produced by flies thickly scattered over the surface of the body. These spots are common upon horses of a white or gray coat.

Examples: *dull white, much speckled; light gray, slightly speckled upon the croup; iron gray, speckled.*

When the dark-colored spots are not entirely composed of black hairs, but contain some that are brown, maroon, or red, the coat is said to be *moucheté-truité.*

Same examples as the preceding.

Ermined.—The *ermine* spots (*herminures*) are black markings larger and more elongated than the preceding two. They always imply a white or very light gray base, and are arranged so as to simulate the spots on the fur of the ermine.

Examples: *burnt sorrel, blaze on head, neck ermined; mahogany bay, with large snow-flake spots, ermined upon the left side of the croup.*

Leopard-spotted.—The *leopard spots* (*tigrures*) are black or very dark patches whose disposition recalls that which is observed upon

the panther and the leopard. They are generally spread over the whole extent of the coat, while the preceding are usually smaller and localized upon an isolated white mark, such as a snow-flake patch, a blaze, a white face, white foot, or again, upon the white areas of the piebald coat.

Example: *pied chestnut bay, leopard-spotted upon the loins and right flank.*

Be this as it may, when the *herminures* are very abundant, they no longer preserve the character of a peculiarity; the aspect of the coat is then so modified that the latter is classified among those which, with De Curnieu, we have designated under the names *spotted, leopard,* or *marbled coats.*

The *herminure* is always a black marking upon a white base; the *tigrure,* or tiger-marking, is of the same character, but always larger, more round, and may be indiscriminately located upon a white or a colored base.

When these markings are formed by colored hairs, such as the bay, the sorrel, the Isabella, or the mouse, upon a white or very light gray base, the coat is called *marbled.* Nowadays the marbled and the leopard-spotted coats are considered identical.

Spurious Brand-iron Mark.—This is an irregular elongated black marking, appearing as if made by a stroke of the branding-iron or fire-poker upon a gray, sorrel, bay, Isabella, mouse, roan, or flea-bitten coat.

Examples: *iron gray, spurious brand-iron mark upon the left cheek; dark bay, spurious brand-iron mark upon the croup.*

There is still another black marking, the *charbonnure,* which is wider and more clearly outlined than the preceding. Otherwise, most authors consider these two as identical.

Louveture.—We propose to designate under the name *louveture* mixed, blackish spots, poorly outlined and of variable extent and configuration, proper to the light or fawn varieties of the Isabella, the bay, and the sorrel. They are formed by black hairs mixed with the red or yellow of the coat, giving to the latter, in these places, an appearance resembling that of the wolf. It looks as if soot had been sprinkled over the regions which present this peculiarity. We have seen it upon the head, the sides of the neck, the shoulders, the back, the ribs, the thighs, the stifles, the elbows, the arms, the fore-arms, the legs, etc.

Examples: *louveture Isabella; light bay, louveture in front of and behind the shoulders; fawn sorrel, deep louveture on the cheeks, neck, elbows, and forearms.*

5. Red Hairs.

We will mention in this group *trout-spotted, truité-moucheté, marbled, wine-colored,* and *rusty.*

Truité, or Trout-spotted.—The *truitures,* so named on account of their resemblance to the spots which are found on the trout, are small red or reddish patches, formed of bay and sorrel hairs upon a base of white or gray. They differ from those of the ordinary speckled surface only by their color.

Examples: *silver white, slightly trout-spotted; light gray, very much trout-spotted upon the head, the sides, and the croup.*

Truité-moucheté.—This is only the trout-spotted peculiarity in which a certain number of *truitures,* or spots, are composed of hairs of a reddish-brown or almost black color, which causes them to resemble the *mouchetures,* or fly-marks.

Same examples.

Marbled.—From the above it will be seen that we have called marble spots those analogous with the leopard spots, excepting that they are composed of colored hairs (bay, sorrel, Isabella, or mouse) upon a white or light-gray base.

Examples: *dirty gray, marbled upon the croup; light silver gray, marbled upon the loins; pied rusty black, marbled upon the left shoulder and the right side of the neck.*

Wine-colored.—The *wine-color* is characterized by the presence of red hairs mixed with those of a gray or white coat, upon any part of the body. Upon the white, the wine-colored points form spots ordinarily well circumscribed, well defined, and more or less extensive; upon the gray, these points are less clearly outlined, their color not contrasting so well with the gray. When the wine-tint is generalized over the body the horse is designated *wine gray.*

Examples: *very light gray, with large wine-colored spot over the back, sides, and abdomen; ordinary gray, wine-colored over the thighs.*

Rusty.—We thus designate the bright-red or yellowish-red coloration which the hairs of certain regions take, such as around the eyes, the alæ of the nose, the axilla, the breast, the elbows, the stifles, and the flanks, in bay and sorrel horses of a dark tint.

Examples: *maroon bay, rusty around the nostrils and eyes; burnt sorrel, rusty at the elbows and stifles.*

6. Hairs of Different Directions.

The hairs of a certain region do not always have the same direction; at times there are some which take a direction inverse to the

others, which causes, on their meeting with the former, a turning back or a more or less circular direction, to which has been given the names *épi*, *cowlick*, and *tuft*.

Tufts, or cowlicks, may be distinguished as *concentric* and *eccentric*, or, again, as *converging* and *diverging*, according as the hairs composing them curl up and converge towards a centre, or, on the contrary, radiate and diverge from a centre.

Some are constant and, consequently, exist upon all horses; these are met with on the middle of the forehead, on the breast, the axilla, and the superior and inferior parts of the flank; it is useless to mention their presence.

The others exist only on some animals, and constitute peculiarities which are ordinarily specified in a complete certificate of description as to their form, their extent, and their seat. We will cite as examples the *épi* which exists upon the lateral faces of the neck (*Roman sword*), that which is found along its inferior border, that which is between the two ears, those of the cheeks, of the withers, of the sternal region, the internal face of the thigh, the point of the buttock, etc.

One of our collaborators, M. Ledoyen,[1] has endeavored to give the physiological reason of the constant tufts.

According to him, they are designed to collect the perspiration upon special parts of the body in such a manner as to form drops, which then fall directly to the ground instead of accumulating in certain places exposed to friction, and where the skin soon becomes irritated and inflamed. We can only cite this interpretation, for any proof, experimental or otherwise, inclines us rather to admit the theory, not to deny it.

In France, and indeed throughout Europe, no importance is attached to the presence or absence of cowlicks, but it is quite different with the people of the Orient, who attribute to them great influence, aa being so many good or bad omens. It would be childish to dwell longer on this point. For more details we refer the reader to the book of General Daumas,[2] or to that which has been published by one of our collaborators, Minot, of Lisy-sur-Ourcq.[3]

Curliness or Frizzles.—We will classify with the tufts a peculiarity as to the nature of which our colleague, M. Blanc, the Paris veterinarian, has had the kindness to direct our attention. It is found

[1] Ledoyen, Démonstration de la valeur des épis et des causes de cette valeur chez les herbivores, in Mémoires de la Société vétérinaire du Calvados et de la Manche, 1851–1852, p. 193.

[2] Général Daumas, Les chevaux du Sahara et les mœurs du désert, p. 143, Paris, 1858.

[3] Minot, Appréciation du cheval et des qualités intrinsèques de cet animal pour le travail et la reproduction, p. 232, Paris, 1853.

in certain horses whose hairs have the *curly* aspect of *astracan*. The Hackney Cab Company has had several such horses in their service. They were of Danish origin.

This peculiarity can be indicated by the expression *curly* or *frizzled*.

Example: *with chestnut sorrel hair, frizzled.*

7. Discoloration of the Hairs or of the Skin.

The hairs and the integument itself are in certain cases the seat of discolorations which it is important to note. They include the *washed hairs* and the *leprous spots*.

Washed Hairs.—This expression signifies a general or partial discoloration of the coat, as if the hairs had been subjected to the action of water in order to make its primitive color disappear.

Examples: *dappled burnt sorrel, washed at the elbows and the stifles; brown bay, washed at the axilla, the flank, and the buttocks; light sorrel, washed.*

Leprous Spots (Ladre).—These terms, used to describe the integumentary lesions in lepers, are applied, in the exterior, to the parts of the integument which are destitute of their normal coloration in consequence of the absence of the cutaneous pigment in these places. The skin in these locations is of a pale or rosy color, which greatly contrasts with the surrounding black surface. Irregular spots, ordinarily denuded, thus result, which can be compared to the surface, at times variously colored, of the leprous skin.

The discolorations are most often met around and in the interior of the natural openings (mouth, nostrils, eyes, sheath, anus, vulva), or upon the testicles, the mammæ, the internal face of the thighs, the perineum, and the trunk of the tail; at times they are disseminated over the body in the different regions, and then the presence of the hairs renders them less visible. It is interesting to know that they are capable of increasing both in extent and in number, as well as of disappearing, although the causes of these singular phenomena cannot be explained.

Leprous spots are named—

Mixed, when the skin, which is their seat, is still provided with hairs.

Bordered, when, hairless in its centre, it is prolonged under the peripheral hairs and forms with them a sort of border around the given spot.

Marbled, when it presents here and there black spots or very dark points, at the level of which the skin is not discolored.

Absence of Hairs.—All horses are not born with the same quantity of hairs; in certain foals their diminution may even amount to a complete absence, called alopecia. These circumstances are extremely rare, and science mentions but a very small number of them. I. Geoffroy-Saint-Hilaire only mentions this anomaly;[1] De Curnieu reports several examples,[2] and one of us has also had a case of this kind, in 1832, in a menagerie.

B.—Peculiarities of the Head.

The peculiarities proper to the head are the following: *white mark of the head, fox-nosed, moustaches, Moor-headed, Moor-faced, wall-eye,* and *fawn-eye.*

White Mark of the Head.—We term by this expression the whole of the white coloration located upon the forehead or upon the face. It should be examined in relation to its extent, its form, its situation, its direction, its composition, and its termination. Let us review the expressions which characterize its diverse conditions:

1st. When the mark is located upon the **forehead** we say:

a. Relative to its **extent**:

Some hairs on the head, when the horse has here very few white hairs.

Scattered, if it presents a large number.

Medium, when there exists a spot of ordinary dimensions.

Prolonged, in cases where the mark is prolonged upon the face.

Interrupted, when it is intersected by a place deprived of white hairs.

Large, in cases where the mark is extensive.

b. Relative to its **form,** it is also designated—

Irregular, when the white has no recognized form.

Blaze, if the mark is round.

Star, when it presents prolongations analogous to the rays of a star.

List, whenever it is elongated towards the nostrils.

Crescent, when it simulates the arc of a circle. We then indicate whether the concavity or opening of this crescent is in relation to the *right,* the *left, above* or *below.*

Flame, when it has the form of the flame of a candle.

Heart, if it has the form of the heart on a playing-card.

---

[1] I. Geoffroy-Saint-Hilaire, Histoire générale et particulière des anomalies de l'organisation, t. i. p. 702, Paris, 1832.

[2] De Curnieu, loc. cit., 1re partie, p. 196.

Bifurcated, when it presents two prolongations separating at an acute angle.

Pointed, when it terminates in a point *above*, *below*, to the *right*, or to the *left*.

c. Relative to its **situation**:

High, when it is situated high up on the forehead.

Low, in the opposite case.

To the left, when it approaches the left eyelid.

To the right, when it is nearer to the right.

d. Relative to its **direction**:

Oblique, if it is elongated obliquely.

Transverse, if it extends transversely.

e. Relative to its **composition,** this mark is said to be—

Mixed, when the base of the coat appears to be mixed with the white hairs which compose it.

Bordered, when it is circumscribed by a mixed border.

Trout-spotted, when it is interspersed by red points.

Speckled, when it is mixed with black points.

Ermined, in cases where it is provided with larger black points.

2d. When the mark is located upon the **face** it is a **list,** and is designated:

a. In relation to its **width**:

Small list, when it is narrow.

List, if it has a mean width.

Wide list, when it occupies the whole width of the middle part of the face.

Semi-white-faced, when it also extends upon one of the lateral surfaces.

White-faced, when it extends upon the two lateral surfaces of the face.

b. In relation to its **length,** the list is—

Complete, if it extends the whole length of the face.

Incomplete, when it is not prolonged, below, to the extremity of the nose, or when it does not extend, above, to the forehead. It should then be mentioned on which side it is incomplete.

Interrupted, if it is intersected by hairs of the same color as the base of the coat.

When it is *prolonged to the upper* or the *lower lip*, involving them wholly or in part, it deserves particular mention.

c. In relation to its **termination,** the list is—

Pointed, when it converges towards the extremity of the nasal spine by forming a point analogous to the latter.

Dentated, when it terminates by indentations or teeth.

Terminated in leprous spots, when it is mixed inferiorly with some leprous spots.

d. In relation to its **direction,** it is—

Deviated to the right, when it passes upon the right lateral surface.

Deviated to the left, in the contrary case.

e. Finally, in relation to its **composition,** it may be—

Mixed, bordered, trout-spotted, spotted, and **ermined,** identical with the white mark on the forehead.

Fox-nosed.—We designate by this expression the rusty coloration,—that is to say, the red or yellow hairs which horses of a dark color (brown bays, burnt sorrels) have upon the alæ of the nostrils and around the lips.

Moustaches.—The moustaches are tufts of long hairs, white or colored, which the superior lip presents on each side. This peculiarity is rarely (though incorrectly) noted.

Moor-headed.—The horse is *Moor-headed, cap de Maure,* when the head is black or much darker than the rest of the body, as is seen in the iron gray, the mouse, the roan, the Isabella, and the fox-color.

Moor-faced.—The animal is *Moor-faced* when the inferior part of the head or the face is of a black or very dark color.

Wall-eye.—The eye whose iris is of an ashy or bluish color, instead of being brown, is called *wall-eye;* the horse is also said to be *silver-eyed.* This discoloration often exists in a single eye as well as in both; more rarely it is seen only in a portion of one or other of these organs. It is said that horses which are thus marked have less clear vision in darkness (Brivet).[1]

Fawn-eye.—"The color of the iris sometimes takes a fawn or lees-of-wine tint; to this eye we preferably give the name *fawn,* because this tint is most usual. We should mention this peculiarity, although it has not yet been described by authors" (Brivet[2]).

C.—Peculiarities of the Body.

The peculiarities whose exclusive seat is upon the body are the *mule ray,* the *cross upon the withers,* the *roebuck abdomen,* the *white or washed mane and tail,* and the *mixed mane and tail.*

---

[1] Brivet, loc. cit., p. 191. [2] Ibid., loc. cit., p. 192.

Mule Ray.—The *mule ray* or *stripe* is a dark or black stripe, formed of black or red hairs, of a maroon or brown tint, which extends, upon the median line, from the withers to the base of the tail.

It is observed upon Isabella, bay, sorrel, mouse-colored, gray, and fawn-colored horses, but not in all, which constitutes it an occasional peculiarity of these coats.

Cross upon the Withers.—This expression is used to designate a dark stripe which passes transversely across the withers upon the sides of the shoulders. It is found upon the same coats as the preceding marking, although more rarely.

Sometimes it extends upon one shoulder only, which should always be mentioned.

Examples: *light Isabella, mule ray and cross; ordinary mouse, mule ray and cross to the right; fawn sorrel, cross; chestnut bay, mule ray.*

Roebuck Abdomen.—This is only a yellowish washed coloration of the inferior face of the abdomen, which often extends to the hairs of the sheath, the testicles, the mammæ, the internal face of the thigh, and the perineum. It is especially marked in the Isabella, the bay, the sorrel, and the fox coats.

This expression, because of its inaccuracy, is no longer used. It is simpler and more exact, in fact, to specify the parts which are the seat of this peculiar color.

White or Washed Mane and Tail.—When the mane and tail are white in black, bay, Isabella, sorrel, mouse, and fawn horses, instead of being black or dark, we designate them *white* or *washed;* also if they are completely or only partially so.

Examples: *burnt sorrel, white mane and tail; dark bay, washed mane and tail; ordinary black, base of tail white; dark Isabella, middle portion of mane washed.*

Mixed Mane and Tail.—The mane and tail are called *mixed* when they contain some white hairs which do not enter into the composition of the coat considered, such as the black, the sorrel, the bay, the Isabella, the mouse, and the fox. Ordinarily the mixing is only partial.

Examples: *mahogany bay, tail mixed; rusty black, base of mane mixed; Isabella, mane and tail mixed.*

D.—Peculiarities of the Members.

The peculiarities which concern the members are the *white-foot,* the *zebra stripes,* and the *arborizations.* To these should be added the diverse colorations of the *horn of the hoof.*

White-feet.—White-feet consist of white marks on the inferior part of the members. They are very common and are seen in nearly all the coats, even the gray, where they are, however, less striking.

They must be examined in relation to their *number*, their *extent*, their *form*, and their *composition*.

a. In relation to their **number**, the horse may have—

One white-foot, and then the member which is involved should be mentioned.

Example: *white-foot, anterior left.*

Two white-feet, in which case they are necessarily anterior, posterior, lateral, or diagonal.

Examples: *white-feet right lateral biped, left diagonal biped,* etc.

Three white-feet.—Here it will suffice to specify the one which is isolated. Example: *three white-feet, posterior left.* This signifies that the right posterior alone is not white.

Four white-feet.—This needs no further explanation. It suffices to mention the character of these markings.

Old veterinarians named *arzel* the subject whose posterior right foot alone was white. The legend narrates that such a marking was considered as a very bad omen. In support of this, it is related[1] that the mount of a certain Sejanus, a Roman consul and favorite of Tiberius, was thus marked, and as this horse killed in succession each of its five owners, it became the fashion to say of a man who seemed threatened with an unfortunate end, "*He has the horse of Sejanus.*"[2]

Let us add that horse-dealers also call *magpie* the bay horse with four white feet. They also give the same name to pied horses.

b. In relation to its **extent,** the white-foot is designated—

Incomplete, if it does not completely circumscribe the member.

Interrupted, if its course is broken by black or colored hairs, or if it is not continued to the extremity of the member.

Trace of white-foot, when it occupies only a small portion of the coronet.

Beginning of white-foot, when it only involves the region of the coronet, which it completely surrounds.

Small white-foot, when it surrounds the coronet and the pastern.

White-foot, when it extends to the fetlock.

---

[1] De Lafont-Pouloti, Nouveau régime pour les haras, p. 23, Paris, 1787

[2] See, for more details, Solleysel, Le parfait mareschal, Paris, 1693, t. ii. p. 129.

Large white-foot, or **half-stocking,** when it reaches the middle of the canon.

Stocking, when it extends to the knee or the hock.

High stocking, when it reaches still higher and extends upon the forearm and the leg.

Finally, **very high stocking,** when it reaches the vicinity of the body.

c. In relation to its **composition,** it is similar to the markings of the head :

Bordered, speckled, ermined, trout-spotted, mixed, marbled, etc.

We should mention the white-feet of gray horses only in cases where these markings are perfectly apparent.

[In a certificate of soundness, it suffices to specify the *name* of the region which is white, it being understood that the white coloration exists. As to the head, it is only necessary to mention the character of the marking without stating that it is on the head.

Examples: *light bay, star, off hind pastern; burnt sorrel, blaze, three half-stockings near hind.*]

Zebra Marks.—The *zebra marks* are *black* or blackish sinuous lines directed transversely upon the regions of the forearm, the leg, the knee, the hock, and the canon, which recall somewhat the disposition of those seen upon the zebra. They are observed more frequently upon the Isabella, the mouse, the sorrel, and the fawn bay.

Arborizations.—The *arborizations* are peculiarities analogous to the preceding, but differ from the latter in that they are formed of *white* hairs. They are located upon the external face of the forearm, the leg, and the back of the ears, in horses exclusively gray. Our observations, extending over a long period, have taught us that these markings follow very accurately the direction of the corresponding subcutaneous arterial branches (anterior radial, anterior tibial, and posterior auricular arteries).

Color of the Horn.—The color of the skin of the coronary band determines that of the horn of the hoof in the parts situated below. It is frequently modified by white markings in the region of the foot, and may, in fact, be *white, black,* or *mixed.*

3. Causes of the Modifications of the Coats.

In general, coats of the same color and even the same shade have not, at all times, identical characters. This is due to diverse influ-

SYNOPTICAL TABLE OF THE PECULIARITIES OF THE COATS.

General Peculiarities.

(Without Fixed Location.)

- 1. *Brilliant reflections.*
  - Jet black.
  - Silver.
  - Golden.
  - Copper.
  - Bronze.
  - Wavy.
- 2. *Shaded hairs.*
  - Dappled.
- 3. *White hairs.*
  - Solid-colored.
  - Rubican.
  - Snow-flaky.
  - Flea-bitten.
  - Grayish.
  - Bordered.
  - Accidental markings.
- 4. *Black hairs.*
  - Speckled.
  - Moucheté-truité.
  - Ermined.
  - Leopard-spotted.
  - Spurious brand-iron mark.
  - Louveture.
- 5. *Red hairs.*
  - Trout-spotted.
  - Truité-moucheté.
  - Marbled.
  - Wine-colored.
  - Rusty.
- 6. *Hairs of different directions.*
  - *Tufts, curly.*
    - Concentric.
    - Eccentric.

Discolorations:

- *Of the coat.*
  - Washed.
- *Of the skin.*
  - *Leprous spots.*
    - Mixed
    - Bordered.
    - Marbled.
- *Absence of hairs.*
  - General.
  - Partial.

Special Peculiarities.

Head.

1. *White Mark of the head.*
   - *On the forehead.*
     - Extent.
       - Some hairs.
       - Scattered.
       - Medium.
       - Large.
       - Prolonged.
       - Interrupted.
     - Form.
       - Irregular.
       - Blaze.
       - Star.
       - List.
       - Crescent.
       - Heart.
       - Flame.
       - Bifurcated.
       - Pointed.
     - Situat'n.
       - High.
       - Low.
       - Right.
       - Left.
     - Dir'n.
       - Oblique.
       - Transverse.
     - Composition.
       - Mixed.
       - Bordered.
       - Trout-spotted.
       - Speckled.
       - Ermined.
   - *On the face.*
     - Width.
       - Small list.
       - List.
       - Wide list.
       - Semi-white face.
       - White face.
     - Length.
       - Complete.
       - Incomplete.
       - Interrupted.
       - To lips.
         - Superior.
         - Inferior.
     - Termi'n.
       - Pointed
       - Dentated.
       - Leprous spots.
     - Dir'n.
       - List to right.
       - List to left.
     - Composit'n.
       - Mixed.
       - Bordered.
       - Trout-spotted.
       - Speckled.
       - Ermined.
2. *Fox-nosed.*
3. *Moustaches.*
4. *Moor-headed.*
5. *Moor-faced.*
6. *Wall-eye.*
7. *Fawn-eye.*

Body and Members.

I.—Body.

1. *Mule ray.*
2. *Cross upon the withers.*
3. *Roebuck abdomen.*
4. *White or washed mane and tail.*
5. *Mixed mane and tail.*

II.—Members.

1. *White-feet.*
   - Number.
     - 1 White-foot
       - anter.
       - poster.
     - 2 White-feet
       - anter.
       - poster.
       - lateral.
       - diagon.
     - 3 White-feet of which one:
       - anter.
       - poster.
     - 4 White-feet.
   - Extent.
     - Incomplete.
     - Interrupted.
     - Trace.
     - Coronet.
     - Pastern.
     - Fetlock.
     - Middle of canon.
     - Stocking (knee or hock).
     - Forearm or leg.
     - To body.
   - Form.
     - Irregular.
     - Regular.
     - Pointed.
     - Dentated.
   - Composition.
     - Mixed.
     - Bordered.
     - Trout-spotted.
     - Speckled.
     - Ermined.
2. *Zebra marks.*
3. *Arborizations*
4. *Horn of hoofs.*
   - White.
   - Black.
   - Mixed.

ences, the principal of which are the following: the *age*, the *sex*, the *cleanliness of the skin*, the *nourishment*, the *condition* and the *health*, the *atmospheric action*, the *humidity of the air*, the *sunlight*, the *season*, the *climate*, the *moulting*, and the *tinctorial action of certain substances*.

Age.—The foal is covered, at birth, with fine, short, woolly hairs of a dark color, which, towards the middle of the first year, are replaced by those of the distinctive or adult coat. Hence it is extremely difficult to foretell at this period what the latter will be. The head and the extremities are sometimes an index, but are frequently uncertain. "Thus," says De Curnieu,[1] "the gray is always born very dark, and sometimes absolutely black; the black, on the contrary, is at first reddish or mouse-colored, and now and then even ashy gray. The bay and the sorrel are sometimes darker at birth and sometimes lighter than at the adult age, and in all cases the legs are of a fawn-color, which becomes so light towards the region of the foot that it is often necessary to use care to distinguish them from white-feet. At this age the coat leads us into frequent errors and doubts."

In proportion as the animal grows older the coat, even when it appears *made*, is modified by the more or less early appearance of white hairs. Let us recall, in passing, that it is the knowledge of this fact which has led us to adopt the grouping established by Professor Neumann,—that is to say, to divide the coats into *primitive* and *derived*.

Sometimes the white hairs appear at an early period, especially around the eyes, the temples, and the ears, in horses which later will become gray, white, flea-bitten, or roan. The last two are always sorrel or bay at birth; then they become rubican, and at the end of a variable period the white hairs are so numerous that the coat must be classed as roan or flea-bitten. Generally, they do not remain thus: the white in them always increases more and more. These remarks apply equally well to the black destined to become gray afterwards.

Sex.—The influence of sex is ordinarily combined with several other causes of which we will speak. Nevertheless, it is commonly observed that in stallions the hairs are darker, of a brighter shade, and fresher-looking than in geldings and mares. The same is true of their diverse reflections.

Cleanliness of the Skin.—The cleanliness of the skin and the hairs, obtained by good grooming, lotions, baths, and local lathering,

---

[1] De Curnieu, loc. cit., 1re partie, p. 185.

lathering, gives to the coat a lustre and a brilliancy which are not seen in those of horses improperly cared for. The latter are always dull; the white and light gray are dull and ordinarily soiled by the litter in the regions of the thighs, the buttocks, the sides, the elbows, the knees, the hocks, and the fetlocks.

Nourishment, Condition, Health.—A good alimentation, especially a grain regimen, a satisfactory degree of corpulence, and a good state of health render the hairs smooth, fine, brilliant, the shade of the coat more bright, and the skin supple. On the contrary, in poorly-nourished, thin, emaciated, or diseased horses the hairs are rough and staring and have a dead color.

Atmospheric Action.—Animals which are always exposed to the action of the open air and the sun, and those which run in pasture day and night, for example, are soon sunburnt or tanned, and are covered with long, dry, dead, staring hairs of lighter tint. It is different with those which are constantly kept in the stable, protected from the atmospheric inclemencies, the dust, or the cold by coverings or blankets, under which the coat loses nothing of its lustre and its brilliancy.

Humidity of the Air.—*Dampness* makes the coat darker, by moistening the hairs, causing them to adhere to one another, and modifying their reflections; mist or fog simply deadens it, in the manner of a brilliantly-polished object which is placed in an atmosphere charged with watery vapor.

Sunlight.—The direct action of sunlight altogether changes the aspect of the coat, especially in well-groomed horses. It then communicates to the hairs incomparably bright shades and brilliant reflections. Under these conditions the white, the light gray, the black, the bay, the sorrel, and the Isabella become, according to circumstances, silver, jet, golden, copper, bronze, and sometimes rainbow-colored. In the shade all these peculiarities disappear.

Season and Climate.—The influence of the seasons and the climates seems to be dependent upon the sunlight and the hygrometric state of the air. Thus the hairs are shorter, smoother, more shiny, and darker in summer than in winter, when they lose their reflection, become longer, coarser, paler, and washed. Besides, in warm climates the coat is more brilliant and its shades brighter than in cold and moist climates. However, these characters change as soon as the atmosphere becomes cloudy and damp. This is due to the less intense light and to the moisture, two causes which contribute to render the coat dull and sombre.

Moulting.—In general, moulting or shedding the coat gives to

it a lighter color, because the hairs are always paler at their base than at their point; it becomes, on the contrary, slightly darker in the white and light gray, because it allows us to perceive the black color of the skin. Let us cite some examples: the ordinary black becomes rusty; the burnt sorrel, maroon; the cherry bay, light; the dark Isabella, ordinary; the ordinary mouse, light; the roan, flea-bitten (upon the body only); finally, the *louvet*, Isabella and sometimes almost white. But in proportion as the hairs grow the horse regains little by little his primitive shade.

Tinctorial Action of Certain Substances.—Garsault[1] has spoken of horses dyed bay, bay brown, or black, in order to prevent their recognition, or to arrange them better with reference to the convenience of the owner. Unfortunately, at the next moulting-time the horse will recover his old coat, sometimes even fifteen days afterwards, if the color has been sparingly used! This fraudulent practice is no longer employed; there are, however, a few dyers who use it in order to conceal the imperfections in the colors of dogs.

The application of certain medicaments to the skin produces for a short time an abnormal coloration of the coat. Such are the tincture of iodine, which stains it more or less yellow; nitrate of silver, black; Villate's solution, pale green; ointment of the biniodide of mercury, which colors it red; mercurial ointment, slaty gray; unguentum populeum, vegetable green, etc. It suffices to call attention to these *artificial* peculiarities, in order that they may not be confounded with the *natural;* they are of but temporary duration.

4. Indices furnished by the Coats and their Peculiarities as to the Qualities of Horses.

What is more difficult to overcome than prejudices and superstitious ideas? Often a simple examination would suffice to overthrow them, but, nevertheless, they always find here and there minds disposed to give them a kind welcome and to propagate them.

This is shown very plainly by all that has been said and written upon the selecting of horses according, exclusively, to their coat or their peculiar markings.

The color of the hairs, their shade, the form of the white marking on the head, the number and extent of the white feet, the presence, the form, and the situation of the tufts, etc., have all served as the basis of a theory, and the theorists have committed the error of arguing from a particular premise to the general. A brown bay horse, for ex-

[1] Garsault, Nouveau parfait maréchal, p. 36, 4e éd., Paris, 1770.

ample, which has shown himself endowed with great qualities, has a star on the forehead; this has been sufficient, in many cases, to give this coat and this marking a premium over all others.

Here, as in all preconceived ideas, coincidences have been noticed without taking into consideration the contrary facts, interpreted as exceptions, although more numerous. Thus, black horses are but slightly esteemed, because they are used in hearses; white horses and those whose coat is pale or washed are rejected, under the pretence that they are slow, lymphatic, and deficient in energy; sorrel horses are in disrepute, because they are believed to be of a vicious temperament, etc.

In other cases, there is not even the shadow of a reason in favor of the judgment formed. Taste, fancy, caprice, and fashion alone determine the choice. "It is even impossible," writes De Curnieu, keen connoisseur though he be,[1] "for a man with much experience among horses not to have certain whimsical preferences for such or such a coat, or such or such a mark. Thus, I never like to buy a cherry bay horse with four white feet, while a brown bay with these markings pleases me, provided he has a white mark on the head. I prefer the Isabella to be solid-colored, and the black to have at least a star on the forehead. Two hind white feet and a list appear to me good signs in a black, a bay, and, especially, a sorrel horse. The proverb, '*Cheval de trois, cheval de roi,*' intending to express that a horse with three white feet often has more brilliancy than endurance, is frequently true. Two fore white feet and one or none behind, and, in general, more white in front than behind, diminishes greatly, to my mind, the value of a horse. Finally, although with all the coats there are found horses extraordinarily good as well as bad, I always much prefer the burnt or golden sorrel, the bay, and the trout-spotted."

These opinions, which vary with the observers, the times, and the places, being credited to-day, disbelieved to-morrow, and revived later on,—will they not, like the belief of the ignorant in the mysterious, be banished by a more rigorous observation and a more careful judgment of facts?

In this respect, it is interesting to read the works of the old horse-doctors and horsemen. In most cases they abound in the strangest kind of superstitions, which Solleysel[2] and Garsault,[3] especially, have reprinted too indulgently.

Strictly speaking, all persons do not manifest the same credulity

---

[1] De Curnieu, loc. cit., 1re partie, p. 194.

[2] Solleysel, Le parfait mareschal, 2e partie, p. 126, et suiv. éd. de 1698.

[3] De Garsault, loc. cit., p. 15.

concerning the indices furnished by the coats and their peculiarities. Thus, Gaspard de Saunier[1] does not hesitate to speak of these remarks as "pure fiddle-faddle and imagination!" The old proverb, which says that "*there are good horses under all colors,*" was not unknown to him, and he leaves us to suppose that the prejudice against white, pale, washed, sorrel, black, and white-footed horses, leprous spots, etc., had, even at that time, numerous opponents.

We do not intend to examine these strange and incongruous opinions. We will, nevertheless, mention some special requirements and peculiar facts worthy of interest.

In general, in pleasure-horses, the darker coats, especially the black and the sorrel, are sought after, on account of their great lustre, their more brilliant reflections, and the ease with which they may be groomed. Nevertheless, the choice of the coat has at times another guide than fancy and style. Thus, in the hunter the gray is preferred, because this color contrasts more sharply with the red costume of the huntsman.

At other times the purchaser desires a particular coat for the reason that it is, as it were, a race characteristic. Percheron and Brittany horses, for example, being nearly always gray, are not in great demand, either in France or other countries, if they have a color which shows that they have been contaminated with some inferior races.

In the French army it is known that at the remount depots gray and white horses are condemned on account of their color, which can be too easily distinguished on the battle-field.

Moreover, the white and the gray coats are objectionable in other respects, which justify in part the slight esteem in which they are held. They are soiled very easily by the litter and mud, and become very unpleasant, at the time of moulting, to the rider and the driver on account of the white hairs which freely fly about; finally, they predispose the animal to the formation at some time of melanotic tumors, either internally or upon the exterior of the body, which may occasion considerable inconvenience and may even cause the death of the animal in some rare cases.

We recall, on this subject, the appropriate remark of our colleague Mercier (of Évreux), that subjects affected with internal or external melanosis always have a curly or frizzled mane and tail, a character which should attract attention if it be very prominent.

From a zootechnical point of view, the white markings on the head, the body, and the members deserve to be taken into consideration.

---

[1] Gaspard de Saunier, L'Art de la cavalerie, in-folio, p. 51, Amsterdam et Berlin, 1756.

As Hartmann affirms,[1] "These markings are transmitted by heredity, and always become larger in the descendants, so much so that finally pied horses will be produced."

The same author establishes a connection, the accuracy of which is far from being demonstrated, between the disagreeable odor which emanates at times from certain horses and the color of their coat. According to him, in fact, "the perspiration of rubican, bay, and sorrel subjects, like that of some florid and blond persons, has an extremely strong and disagreeable odor." Although we have had two opportunities of verifying this fact, one upon a light sorrel and the other upon a dark gray, we see in these exceptions only, and, indeed, very rare coincidences, which it would be absolutely erroneous to establish as a rule.

CHAPTER II.

THE HEIGHT.

Definition; Importance.—The **height** of the horse is the distance from the summit of the withers to the ground. It varies in very large proportion according to the race and the subject. The extreme measurements which we have obtained are the following:

Small Spanish horse	0.98 m.
Heavy-draught Flemish horse	1.83 m.

Nevertheless, we may meet subjects which are smaller, and likewise others which are much larger. The celebrated American horse-trainer, Carter, publicly exhibited in London, it is said,[2] a very remarkable giant of the equine species. Born at Northampton, six years of age, and of a heavy-draught type, this gigantic animal was six feet nine inches in height (English measure), or 2.057 metres, and weighed 2500 pounds, or 1133 kilogrammes and 537 grammes. His proportions were regular, and he was active on his feet. To make a more striking contrast, a Scotch pony was placed alongside of him, which could pass under him without touching his abdomen.

The reader will see, *à propos* of the *services*, the importance of the height when it is a question of determining the category in which the horse should be classed. Whence the necessity of approximating as closely as possible to it, inasmuch as it constitutes, in relation to a

---

[1] Hartmann, Traité des haras, p. 75.

[2] Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, année 1847, p. 790.

technical description, a factor whose ordinary precision and fixity are very great aids in distinguishing, in practice, animals otherwise almost alike.

Experienced persons judge the height of a horse quite accurately by a simple glance, scarcely misjudging it even by one centimetre. However, it is preferable to employ an instrument which gives positive information and constant results, if it be well constructed and properly manipulated.

Sometimes, however, we meet with certain very irritable subjects which object to being touched, and can only be approached with difficulty. "Such cases are frequently found," says Captain Rivet,[1] "among the horses in the swamps of the Poitou and the Vendée, which have never been shod, and which are haltered for the first time when they are brought before the committee on remounts." Be this as it may, we must always act with gentleness and care to avoid accidents; the height must be judged by the eye alone whenever it is impossible to take it by other means.

Instruments employed for determining the Height.—An instrument formerly in vogue was the *chain*, of which some persons still speak, but often without being acquainted with it. The most recent description of it which has been given dates back to 1770; we will repeat it here simply on account of its historical interest.

"The *chain*," writes De Garsault,[2] "is made of small links of iron or brass, is six feet long, and is marked foot by foot by a twisted brass wire; from the fourth to the sixth foot other small iron or brass wires mark the inches; at the lower end of the chain is a plumb. In measuring the horse, the chain is so held that the plumb hangs opposite to the hoof of the fore-foot; then, placing the chain along the side of the shoulder to the point of the withers, the corresponding point on the chain is noted; then the number of feet and inches on the chain is determined, and the height of the horse obtained according to this measurement. This measurement is not exactly accurate, because it can be modified by the shoulder, more or less fleshy, in different horses of equal height, which may sometimes amount to a difference of two and one-half inches or more."

The same author adds farther on:

"Some persons, in the absence of the graduated chain, measure upon a cord with the fist. The fist measures three inches, which is called a *hand*. Thus, nineteen hands are equal to about four feet nine inches. More rarely the elbow is used to measure the horse; one elbow equals one foot and a half."

Modern horsemen, much more correctly, measure the height of the

---

[1] Rivet, Guide pratique de l'acheteur de chevaux, p. 53.

[2] De Garsault, Le nouveau parfait maréchal, p. 34, Paris, 1770.

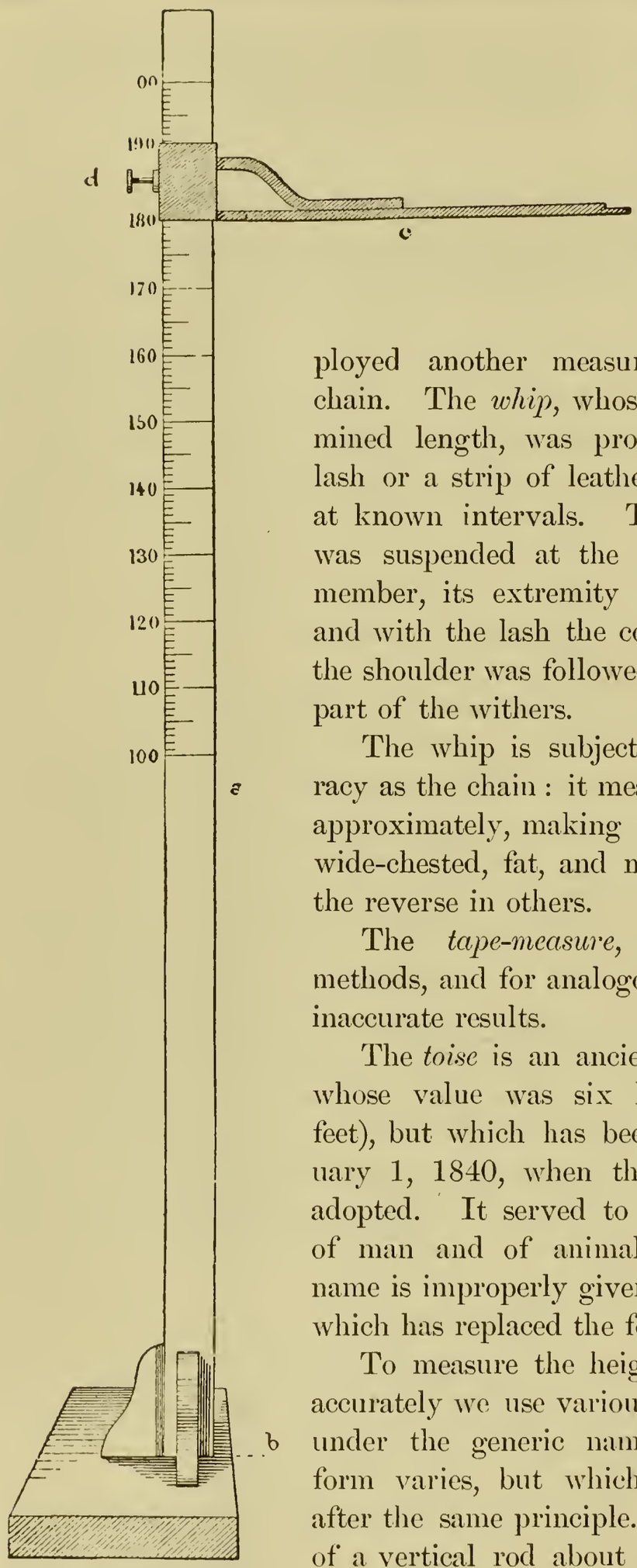


FIG. 330.—Hippometer with pedestal.

horse with the open hand, allowing four inches to each *hand.* Thus, a horse five feet six inches in height is 16.2 hands high.

Not very long ago horse-dealers employed another measure equivalent to the chain. The *whip,* whose handle had a determined length, was provided with a plaited lash or a strip of leather which was knotted at known intervals. To use it, the handle was suspended at the level of the anterior member, its extremity touching the ground, and with the lash the contour of the arm and the shoulder was followed to the most elevated part of the withers.

The whip is subject to the same inaccuracy as the chain: it measures the height only approximately, making the latter too great in wide-chested, fat, and muscular animals, and the reverse in others.

The *tape-measure,* like the preceding methods, and for analogous reasons, also gives inaccurate results.

The *toise* is an ancient measure of length whose value was six French feet (6.39459 feet), but which has been disused since January 1, 1840, when the metric system was adopted. It served to determine the height of man and of animals. At present, this name is improperly given to the double metre, which has replaced the former.

To measure the height of the horse more accurately we use various instruments, known under the generic name *hippometers,* whose form varies, but which are all constructed after the same principle. They are composed of a vertical rod about two metres in length, graduated in centimetres and sometimes in

millimetres, to which is attached another, but horizontal, rod that can be lowered or raised at will upon the former, and is fastened by means of a screw.

The simplest of the hippometers is the *standard.* It consists of a flattened rod, graduated upward and downward, upon which freely glides a horizontal bar or gauge, that is, consequently, always perpendicular to it. A pressure-screw serves to fix the gliding bar upon the vertical rod, when the former has been gradually lowered upon the latter to the level of the withers. The standard would be an accurate instrument were it not for the inconvenience of always placing it in the perfectly vertical position.

For the standard, therefore, the *hippometer with a pedestal* has been substituted. In the latter (Fig. 330), the vertical rod, *a*, is thick, quadrangular, and inflexible, and rests upon a small pedestal, *b*. The horizontal arm, *c*, glides upon the former, and is supported there by a pressure-screw, *d*, which can fix it upon any point of the scale.

The graduation is expressed in centimetres, and at times in millimetres. We may mention that the proclamation of the French Minister of War, dated June 10, 1847, requires that the height be taken in centimetres and not in millimetres. When the number of millimetres is above five, it is counted as a centimetre; if the number of millimetres is below five, they are entirely disregarded, and only the even centimetres are counted.

This hippometer can scarcely be employed except in large establishments, such as remount depots, schools, large sales-stables, etc. It is too cumbersome,

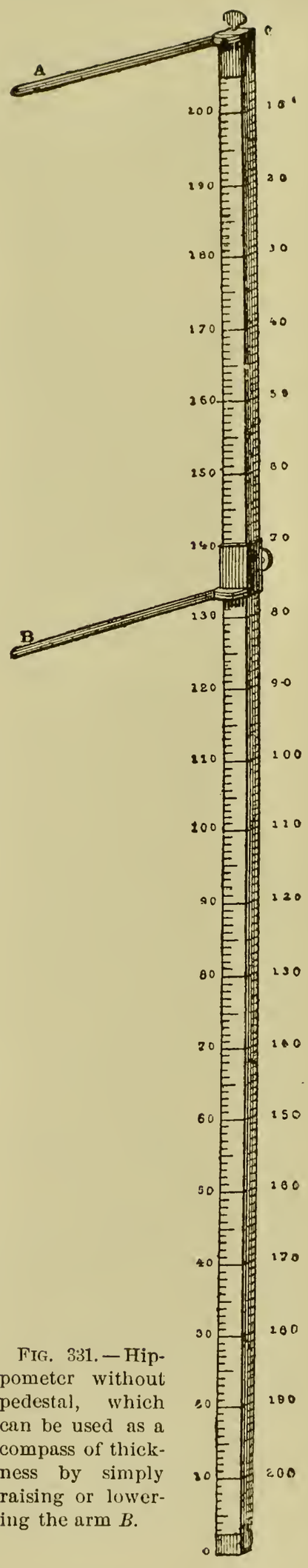


FIG. 331.—Hippometer without pedestal, which can be used as a compass of thickness by simply raising or lowering the arm *B*.

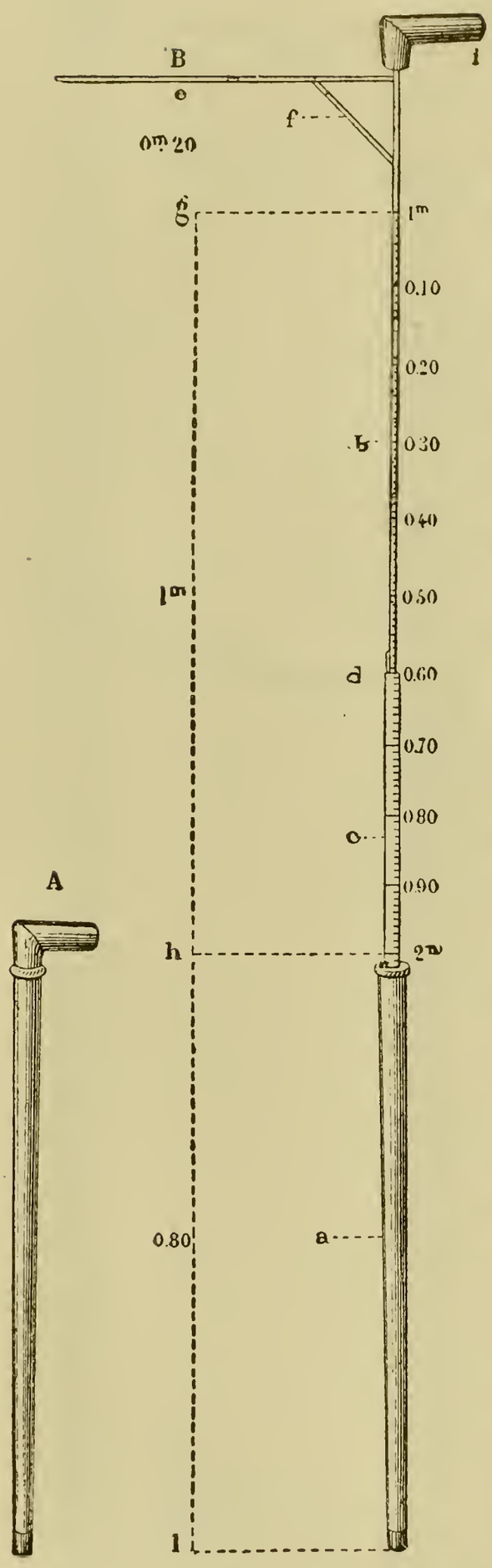


FIG. 332.—Hippometric cane.
A. Closed, serving as a cane.
B. Unfolded, forming a standard.

and would be inconvenient of application in the horse-market, at the cattle-show, or in the farm-yard, unless a large number of animals were to be measured. Besides, it gives erroneous results whenever the ground upon which the measurement is made is not perfectly horizontal.

For these reasons we much prefer the *hippometer without a pedestal* (Fig. 331), which we have had constructed for our particular use, and which possesses the advantage of being very easily changed into a compass of thickness, as, for example, in measuring the length of the body or that of the base of support.

But when the expert is called away from home, the *hippometric cane* (Fig. 332) may be used; this is more portable, and, on the whole, very satisfactory, in spite of its flexibility. It consists of an ordinary Malacca or rattan cane, *B*, which is hollowed internally, and contains a quadrangular metallic graduated rod, formed of two pieces, *b* and *c*, the one gliding within the other when they are not in use. Superiorly this rod is hollowed by a longitudinal slot designed to lodge a horizontal branch, *e*, which the support, *f*, constantly keeps perpendicular to the rod in question.

Both pieces are graduated so as to form a continuous scale when fully drawn out, beginning

at the point *g*, whose situation varies according to the height of the cane itself. The distance, *eg*, is always calculated in such a manner that it makes the length of the cane equal to one metre. This amounts to the same thing as though the cane itself had this length, and, it being inconvenient to carry a cane of this size, the inventor conceived the ingenious idea of giving to the distance, *eg*, the required length of which we speak.

To use this instrument, the handle, *i*, must be forcibly pulled to draw out the whole length of the superior segment, *b*. A catch placed at the lower end of this segment fixes it here, *d*, and prevents it from being pushed back into the lower segment when pressure is made upon the handle. It is necessary to take this precaution in order to avoid the errors which would otherwise follow. The horizontal bar, *e*, is then placed in position, supported by *f*, and the animal is measured, as in the preceding cases, by gradually pushing the graduated segment into the cane, *a*. When the segment, *c*, has been entirely pushed back, we meet with a resistance at *d*: the instrument will now shorten no more. It is then necessary to press upon the catch, *d*, to allow the segment, *b*, to descend in its turn. As soon as the horizontal arm touches the summit of the withers, the figures corresponding to the extremity of the cane, *h*, are read, and it only remains now to add this number to one metre to determine the accurate height of the horse.

When purchasing a hippometric cane, it is important to verify its accuracy with care, for the metallic cap at the extremity, *l*, is sometimes too short or too long, and the combined distances *lh* and *eg* are then no longer equal to one metre. It is necessary, besides, that the arm, *e*, should form a right angle, move easily, and, with its support, *f*, be easily lodged in the groove which is excavated for it upon the segment *b*. It is indispensable also that the segments *b* and *c* should glide one within the other, and both within the sheath of the cane, without excessive friction. Finally, the play of the spring *d* should be exact.

Precautions to be taken.—In order to measure a horse certain precautions must be taken, without which the measurement would be of no value. The animal should first be taken upon a horizontal surface and placed in the position of regular station. An assistant, standing in front, holds the head and neck in their ordinary position; then he covers with one of his hands, especially from behind, the eye on the side towards the operator, in order that the animal may not become frightened or unmanageable. Besides, the operator should be careful to touch the animal very gently. As to the hippometer, it is needless to say that it must be held vertically. If it be inclined or incurvated

towards the horse, it loses its horizontal position and, consequently, makes the height too great; curved in the opposite direction, the result obtained is too small.

One means of verifying the vertical direction of the instrument is to examine with it, from in front and from the side, the corner of a building, the moulding on a wall, a door-post, etc.; in a word, some vertical object which is close by. Differences in certain results are very often occasioned by neglect of this fundamental test. In this respect, the hippometer with a pedestal is as uncertain as the others; it deserves even less confidence when it is employed upon soil not perfectly horizontal and uniform; the least unevenness of the ground will cause a deviation of the horizontal arm, the extent of which is directly proportional with the height of the instrument. It is therefore necessary to verify its horizontal direction at each examination; the small pedestal upon which it is mounted has, in our opinion, no other use than to enable the operator to get rid of it easily when it is in his way.

With the hippometric cane we must take care that its extremity be not lower than the shoe of the horse. This may take place if the horse be measured upon uneven pavements or stable floors. In such cases the extremity of the cane sometimes rests in a depression or an interstice, whose depth and width, however, are not sufficient to change the equilibrium of the hoof.

Finally, we must take notice of the height of the anterior heels, the thickness of the shoes and their heels, as well as the quantity of adipose tissue, which, in stallions, is often excessive upon the superior border of the neck and more or less conceals the summit of the withers.

Concerning army horses, Captain Rivet[1] states that, "*when the horse is five years old or older*, the maximum limit of the height can be exceeded by two centimetres, but never more, in order to have a standard of uniformity among army horses."

Fraudulent Methods.—Fraudulent methods to increase the height are employed rather frequently, especially in cases where two horses are presented as mates, or, again, in horses offered at the army remounts which are not up to the required height.

Under these conditions the seller endeavors to place them in such a position that the hind-quarters are relatively lower than the fore-quarters. In the stable, as well as on the exhibition-ground, everything is so arranged that this trick can be easily enough accomplished. When it cannot be done in this manner, the seller augments the height of the

[1] Capitaine Rivet, Guide pratique de l'acheteur de chevaux, p. 55.

heels, the thickness of the shoes and their heels, obliges the animal to lower his head, which stretches the nuchal ligament and raises the withers; finally, if needs be, he pinches him under the sternum or irritates and excites him with the whip to make the animal restless and render the operation of measuring less exact.

CHAPTER III.

CERTIFICATE OF DESCRIPTION.

Definition; Divisions; Importance.—A certificate of description is a written document comprising a short, precise, clear, methodical, and more or less complete enumeration of the external characteristics which enable one to distinguish a certain horse from all others.

It is *summary* or *detailed*, according to the number of items which it contains.

In some cases it is limited to a simple indication of the external characters. Some authors also include elements which, strictly speaking, are not essential to it. We refer to the *pedigree* and the *performances*, of which we will speak farther on.

Whatever may be its form, a certificate of description is a document which, in many instances, may become one of very great importance, either in disputes relative to some of the redhibitory vices or when there is a question of theft, substitutions, and exchanges in relation to legal proceedings, etc. It then becomes an official instrument by the aid of which one should always be able to establish the identity of the animal in litigation.

Order to be followed.—The order adopted in the enumeration of the characters which should be included in a complete description of the horse varies somewhat according to the circumstances and the purpose in view. In general, it is adapted to the nature of the information which it is necessary to know. The only rule which should invariably be followed is to proceed in a uniform manner with all animals belonging to the same series, so that we may go forward methodically and rapidly without omitting any important details. The following is the order usually adopted:

1st. *Sex, state of the genital organs.* 2d. *Race.* 3d. *Service.* 4th. *Coat, its varieties and its peculiarities.* 5th. *State of the mane and tail.* 6th. *Age.* 7th. *Height.* 8th. *Blemishes and peculiar markings.* 9th. *Diverse peculiarities foreign to the coat.* 10th. *Date.*

Here may also be inserted—

The *name* and *registration number of the horse*, his *price*, his *pedigree*, his *performances*, and the *name* and *address of the proprietor*.

In the army, in breeding establishments, and in livery, omnibus, and street-car stables the order of this outline may be a little different from the preceding. We will give some examples farther on.

The preceding headings require some explanatory remarks as to details, which we will give below.

1st. **Sex, State of the Genital Organs.**—The words *mare*, *horse* or *entire horse*, and *gelding* explain sufficiently this first phrase. Nevertheless, it is necessary to note *gelding bistourné*, and not *entire*, a horse which has been emasculated by subcutaneous torsion of the testicular cord. (See *Bistournage*, page 178.) Likewise, we should designate by the terms *cryptorchid* or *monorchid* a subject whose two testicles, or only one of them, have not descended into the scrotum. On the other hand, we designate *entire* the horse provided with only one testicle, and in which the other has been removed for a therapeutic purpose, as, for example, in the cure of strangulated hernia. In such cases this detail should be indicated under the heading *diverse peculiarities foreign to the coat*. The presence of a cicatrix of a special character at the place of the absent testicle always enables us to distinguish an animal of this kind from a true monorchid.

There are instances (very rare) in which it is at first embarrassing to name the sex of the animal under examination. We refer to the so-called *hermaphrodite horses*, of which science has already furnished quite a large number of examples.[1] These subjects are nothing more than complicated cryptorchids with grave malformation and atrophy of the external genital organs, in most instances having a simple fissure of the perineum or of the sheath, to which is sometimes added a median fissure of the canal of the urethra; the latter malformation is known under the name *hypospadia*. We need, consequently, not hesitate as to the sex; all observations agree in regarding them as males, and not as females, nor as real hermaphrodites. Besides, on autopsy, we constantly find the testicles either external to the inferior inguinal ring, in the inguinal canal, or in the abdomen;

---

[1] See, for more details, De Garsault, Le nouveau parfait maréchal, ch. ix. pl. xxviii., Paris, 1770.

J. B. Gohier, Mémoires et observations sur la médecine et la chirurgie vétérinaires, t. i. p. 27, Paris, 1813.

A. Rey, Deux exemples d'hermaphrodisme dans le cheval, in Journal de médecine vétérinaire publié à l'École de Lyon, année 1846, p. 230.

I. Geoffroy-Saint-Hilaire, Histoire générale et particulière des anomalies de l'organisation, t. ii. p. 87.

the testicles are soft, flabby, and without spermatozoa, like those of cryptorchids. To these glands are annexed the normal deferent canal, which terminates in the urethra after following its ordinary course upon the superior surface of the bladder. Neither a uterus nor ovaries have ever been found.

It is none the less true that the external resemblance of these animals with the mare is rather striking. They have, in fact, two perforated inguinal glands well developed; the borders of their perineal fissure almost simulate the lips of a vulva; as to their penis,—atrophied, curved like an S, and always directed backward,—its free extremity is lodged in the inferior commissure of the cutaneous opening, like the clitoris of the female. But these animals are distinguished by other external and unequivocal characters. First, their mouth is provided with tusks like that of ordinary males; besides, their pseudo-clitoris is customarily pierced by an orifice through which the urine flows, unless there be a hypospadia, in which case the urethral fissure terminates directly in the bladder and not in the vagina; finally, they show masculine signs, neigh, and have an erection of the penis at the approach of a mare in heat, and at times endeavor to mount her. In the presence of such undeniable proofs of masculinity there is, therefore, no possible doubt. Such a horse should, in our opinion, be designated *cryptorchid horse, affected with a fissure* (median or lateral) *of the perineum, the sheath,* or *the urethra,* etc., according to the seat and the nature of the parts interested.

2d. **Race.**—Save in the races whose characters are very striking, there are instances in which it is not always possible to tell the race. This fact is due to the numerous crossings which have been practised for a long time upon the various types, formerly much more easily recognized. At present the mixture often becomes so confusing that one is almost tempted to imitate the example of Buffon relative to the dog, by establishing, also, for a number of subjects without any established origin, the large group of *street horses* (*chevaux de rue*). In practice, these animals are usually termed *common horses, horses of a common race,* a vulgar and improper expression, which, literally, by no means conveys the idea of bastardy, but to which, nevertheless, it is intended to make allusion. In such cases, it is better to omit mention of the race when it is not very clearly characterized, rather than expose one's self to error in the diagnosis.

3d. **Service.**—The *service* for which the animal can be employed is indicated by these words: "*proper to the service of . . .*" It is then specified if the animal in question is a saddle-horse, a driving-horse, a

running-horse, a trotting-horse, a steeple-chaser, a light- or heavy-draught horse, mixed, etc. In general, this factor in the description can be decided without difficulty. When the same subject can be used under the saddle, for driving, as well as for light-draught purposes, it is said to be *for saddle and harness.* We will show, in speaking of the pleasure-services, that motors of this kind are somewhat frequently employed to-day, as, for example, the pony and the cob.

4th. **Coat, its Varieties and its Peculiarities.**—The order to be followed here is indicated exactly by the title of this paragraph. We usually say, "*color* sorrel, bay," etc. Finally, this expression can be simplified by omitting the word coat.

Example: *light bay,* etc.

The term designating the variety should be placed immediately before it.

Examples: Coat, *burnt* sorrel; coat, *rusty* black; *dark* roan gray.

Finally, it is necessary to specify the peculiarities of the coat by commencing with those which have no fixed locality, and then mentioning those of the head, of the body, and of the members.

Example: *brown bay, very rubican, large blaze, leprous spot at the end of the nose and the superior lip, mane and tail mixed, small accidental mark behind the withers, three white feet irregular and dentated, one of which (the anterior right) is smaller.*

5th. **State of the Mane and Tail.**—The tail may be entire or may be shortened by amputation. In the first case, the horse is designated *with full mane and tail;* in the second, *docked.*

At the present day, many horses have their tails *docked,* and many persons still term the subject *with full mane and tail* whose hairs have not been shortened, whatever may be the state of the trunk of his tail. But it is evident that it would be more exact to employ the term *tail docked, hairs full,* for horses whose hairs have been preserved at their full length after the amputation of a part of the trunk. Likewise, we should say *tail entire, hairs banged,* in all cases in which the trunk is intact and the hairs alone have been shortened, as is observed in the race-horse.

If this appendage has been submitted to an operation after the English style, it suffices to use the word *docked.* It is understood that in this case the hairs are always *banged.* But when the amputation of the tail has not been done in this manner, the description should make mention of it: . . . *docked, with full hairs.* After having given the state of the trunk, the condition of the hairs is indicated.

Example: *Tail docked, club-shaped, brush-shaped,* etc.

6th. **Age and Peculiarities of the Teeth.**—The reader has seen that, from three to six years, the various degrees of the dental wear are indicated by special expressions: *rising such age, having such age,* or *past such age.* These expressions are used in the description when the horse has not yet reached his seventh year. When he has passed this age, the facts are far from being as positive. On the other hand, we should not fall into the contrary error by saying that the horse is *old* or *aged.* As the determination of the age is no longer absolutely certain, we always make use of the word *about* as a prefix.

Examples: *rising four years, five years, about eighteen or twenty years old, about fifteen years old, nine years old,* etc.

In this connection it is also necessary to mention the *peculiarities* and the *anomalies of the teeth;* to recognize, for example, if the dental cup is too deep or too shallow; if the horse has supernumerary, double, or badly-directed teeth, wolf-teeth, etc.; if any teeth are missing; if those which he has are too long or too short, irregularly worn, etc.; finally, if some of them are worn abnormally from cribbing. These peculiarities or anomalies constitute, nearly always, excellent signs of identification. It is therefore necessary to note them with care.

7th. **Height.**—The height should be expressed in metres and centimetres, or, what is more preferable and more customary, in *hands,* allowing four inches to the hand. It is also necessary to say in what manner it has been estimated.

Example: *height, sixteen and a half hands with standard or with chain.*

When a certificate reads that a horse is "*about* . . . hands high," it is evident proof that it has been impossible for the operator to measure the height with accuracy.

8th. **Blemishes and Peculiar Markings.**—It may happen in many cases that there are no special remarks to be entered in this paragraph. Be this as it may, we should here enumerate the various *blemishes,* such as splints, ring-bones, spavin, curb, thoroughpin, wind-galls, cicatrices on the shoulders and withers, on the knees, etc.; in a word, all the *permanent* blemishes. The same applies to the peculiar *markings* of horses on breeding farms, those of certain public corporations, etc.

9th. **Diverse Peculiarities Foreign to the Coat.**—Frequently, likewise, it might be advisable to mention in a certificate of description that the horse has a tendency to walk in such or such a gait,—the amble, the running walk, for example; that he has such or

such a defect in his equilibrium (parrot-toed, crooked-legged, bow-legged, cow-hocked, under himself, etc.); that he is lame in one of his members when warm or cold; that he has heaves, rears, kicks, bites, etc. This information is sometimes of great use, especially in gray horses, which are so difficult to distinguish from one another. Needless to say, these details are useful in legal documents.

10th. **Date of the Certificate.**—If a horse always retained the same appearance, it would not be necessary to date the certificate. But this precaution should never be neglected; otherwise, it becomes impossible, at a later period, to verify the age, the height, the shade of the coat, its peculiarities, etc. Besides, it enables us to ascertain the changes which have taken place during the time intervening between two successive certificates, and prevents us from erring as to the authenticity of the first one.

We have said at the commencement of this chapter that other facts are sometimes mentioned in the certificate, such as the *name of the horse*, his *registration number*, his *price*, as well as the *name and address of his owner*. These four points needing no further explanation, we will confine ourselves to their simple enumeration. The case is different, however, with the *pedigree* and the *performances*.

Pedigree.—The term *pedigree* is synonymous with *origin* and *genealogy*. In stallions, trotters, and runners it is especially important to know the pedigree or genealogy. Farther on we will give some examples of certificates to which are added these particular facts.

The horse whose genealogy has been entered in the *Stud-Book* is called *traced;* in the contrary case he is marked *not traced*. This expression is especially applicable to thoroughbred and trotting-horses.

Performances.—This word is employed on the turf to indicate the work which the race-horse is capable of accomplishing. We can easily understand the importance which is attached to a knowledge of these performances when it concerns animals designed for breeding purposes or for the race-course. There is no public sale of running- or trotting-horses in which the performances of each subject are not given in a more or less explicit manner.

In general, these certificates are rarely as detailed, and, to speak candidly, it is useless to complicate them except when they are liable to figure in legal proceedings, or in the case of animals designed for breeding purposes.

Most often they are very concise, and are confined to a simple enu-

meration of the principal distinctive characters : *sex, state of the genital organs, service, coat* (its varieties and its peculiarities), *age, height,* and *date.*

In the French army all the horses are marked by a number burnt upon the left anterior hoof; the anterior right, on the contrary, is reserved for a mark indicating the branch of the service and the regiment to which the animal belongs. Finally, each subject bears a particular name; the place where purchased and the price paid for him are always known. These are the various elements which enter into a military certificate, and which should be enumerated in the following order :

1st, *registration number ;* 2d, *name ;* 3d, *sex ;* 4th, *age ;* 5th, *height ;* 6th, *color and its varieties ;* 7th, *peculiarities ;* 8th, *where purchased ;* 9th, *price ;* 10th, *regiment.*

On *breeding farms* the order followed is almost the same. Here, also, the pedigree is added to the certificate, and sometimes the principal performances of the subject.

In large transportation companies the order adopted is similar to that of the army, but differing somewhat with each establishment, and for which there seems to be no uniform formula.

In the *Compagnie générale des omnibus,* of Paris, for example, each horse corresponds to a descriptive account, upon which are recorded the following elements: *registration number* (marked with the hot iron upon the left side of the neck), *name of seller, date of purchase, sex, age, height, coat,* its varieties and its peculiarities.

Models of Certificates.—We will here give a certain number of examples of certificates in which the principles previously mentioned will be applied.

Civil Certificate, very Complete.—Philadelphia, September 23, 1891. No. 243. Harry, gelding, Norman race, proper to light-draught service; coat dark chestnut bay, dappled upon the shoulders and croup, very rubican upon the cheeks, the neck, and the back; head, star prolonged by a small bordered list, deviated to the right, terminated by a marbled leprous spot between and in the nostrils, and prolonged to the superior and inferior lips; three accidental marks, one upon the left side of the withers, the other two upon the right and behind; grayish at the base of the tail; abdomen, axilla, and stifle washed; diagonal left fetlocks, the posterior irregular, dentated, and ermined; pastern, anterior right, bordered, speckled; tail docked and banged; age six years; one supernumerary left superior intermediate; absence of superior right canine; 16½ hands high with standard. Small spavin on left hock, with traces of actual cautery in points in same place; outbow-foot anterior right; interfering

mark left anterior fetlock. Bought for $500, in 1880, of X——, horse-dealer in Philadelphia.

The same, less Complete.—Philadelphia, September 23, 1891. No. 243. Norman gelding, light draught; dark chestnut bay, dappled, rubican; head, star prolonged by small list, deviated, terminated by leprous spot at the nostrils and at the inferior lip; three accidental marks upon withers; grayish at the base of the tail; three white feet, one of which, the anterior right is but slightly marked; tail docked; age six years; 16½ hands high, standard; bought for $500, at Philadelphia.

The same, more Concise.—Gelding, chestnut bay, dappled, rubican; head, star prolonged by list, terminated by leprous spot at the nostrils and at the inferior lip; tail docked; three accidental spots upon the sides of the withers; three white feet; six years; 16½ hands high; price $500. Philadelphia, September 23, 1891.

The same, too Incomplete.—Gelding, chestnut bay; star prolonged by a small list, terminated by leprous spot; three white feet; tail docked; six years; 16½ hands high.

[The following is a convenient formula of a certificate which I have used in examinations for soundness, and which gives entire satisfaction. (Harger.)

No._____ Philadelphia,_____Mo._____189

EXAMINATION FOR SOUNDNESS.

This Certifies that I have this day examined, at the request of

*M*_____

*Animal,*_____; *Age,*_____ *Height,*_____

*Markings,*_____

_____

*NOTES:*_____

_____

*From above notes, in my judgment, said Animal is*_____

_____

Above examination does not include such obscure diseases as Staggers (Epilepsy and Immobility), Moon-blindness, Cribbing, without marking teeth, etc.]

It will be seen from the preceding examples that the details of the coat and its peculiarities, as well as most of the other secondary matter, are gradually omitted. The animal is consequently more and more easily confounded with the others, especially if the latter comprise a large number and belong to a troop in which the horses are almost uniform as to the coat and its shade and as to their height.

The expression *simple*, by which is designated a certificate in which the details are very summary, is not to be encouraged. The de-

scription is either *complete* or *incomplete, detailed* or *summary.* The horse alone which is described may be *simple* or *complicated* in his characters, and then the certificate will be more or less complete according as it is detailed or summary. It is not possible to be brief and at the same time complete in describing a thing which is complicated. It is proper to be relatively concise, and it is always well to pass upon the value or the worthlessness of certain observable facts. It is evident that if we propose to give simply the data of a clinical observation of a given horse, the enumeration of his registration number, his name, the peculiarities of his coat, etc., will be of no interest in the case. If, on the contrary, it refers to an animal concerning which there is some difference, for example, we should note all the facts without fear of making it too detailed.

Examples of Military Certificates.

a. "No. 1212. Jupiter, gelding, four years; 1.60 m.; cherry bay, snow-flaky upon the croup; head crescent to the right; mule stripe; three white feet, of which one, the anterior left, is bordered and trout-spotted." (Vallon.)

b. "No. 15. Cornelius, stallion, four years; 1.40 m.; golden sorrel; posterior stockings, dentated and ermined around coronet." (Merche.)

c. "243. Alcide, gelding, six years; 1.54 m.; golden sorrel; head mixed; list bordered upon forehead, terminating in leprous spot between the nostrils and the lips; lateral right white feet, the posterior small. Bought at Angers, January 3, 1873, 600 francs. Traced. Trace, of blisters on the thighs." (Commission d'hygiène hippique.)

d. "Regulus. Barb horse, entire; foaled at the stud of Bône (Alélick) in 1846; height 1.49 m. with standard; light gray, much trout-spotted, especially upon the cheeks and around the eyes; black moustaches; traces of actual cautery in points on a spavin of left hock and string-halt on same side; sold as a stallion, 1500 francs, April 1, 1852." (Merche.)

The last example is given as a model for a detailed certificate.

Examples of Certificates for Breeding Establishments.—As we have said, we add, on the stock-farm, the pedigree, the performances, and the get of such or such a stallion, also the place and date of birth.

a. "Thoroughbred colt, by Royal Oak and Carisandre, foaled March 8, 1847, and entered in the French *Stud-Book* under the name Fianetta; coat light bay, bordered list prolonged to the extremity of the nose; trace of white foot posterior right, ermined; high stocking anterior right, bordered and irregular." (Richard, du Cantal.)

b. "Thoroughbred broodmare, entered in the French *Stud-Book* under the name Josephine; by Napoleon and Agar; foaled in 1840. Height 1.66 m. Burnt sorrel, rubican upon the croup and the base of the tail; traces of white feet left diagonal biped; blaze prolonged by a small list, bordered upon the forehead; grayish upon the right cheek." (Richard, du Cantal.)

c. "Agar, English thoroughbred mare; 1.58 m.; sorrel; flame; white foot posterior right; foaled at the stock-farm of Pin in 1837; sire Eastham, dam Danaé.

"Eastham: sire, Sir Oliver; dam, Cowslip.
"1840. Imbroglio, by Paradox.
"1841. Ben Agar, by Lottery.
"1842. Reine-de-Chypre, by Eylau." (Vallon.)

In certain cases the pedigree is more complete. The following is an example taken from the *Journal des haras.*[1]

PEDIGREE OF SAINT CHRISTOPHER, WINNER OF THE GRAND PRIZE OF PARIS IN 1877.

Saint Christopher.	*Mortemer.*	*Compiègne.*	Fitz-Gladiator (1850).	Gladiator.	Partisan, by Walton.
					Pauline, by Moses.
				Zarah.	Reveller, by Comus.
					Rubens Mare.
			Maid of Hart (1846).	The Provost.	Saddler, by Waverly.
					Rebecca, by Lottery.
				Martha Lynn.	Mulatto, by Catton.
					Leda, by Filho da Puta.
		Countess.	Nuncio (or The Baron).	Plenipo.	Emilius.
					Harriet, by Pericles.
				Ally.	Partisan.
					Jest, by Waxy.
			Eusebia (1839).	Emilius.	Orville.
					Emily, by Stamford.
				Mangel-Wurzel.	Merlin, by Castrel.
					Morel, by Sorcerer.
	Isoline.	*Etnelnert.*	Faugh-à-Balagh (1842).	Sir Hercules.	Whalebone.
					Peri, by Wanderer.
				Guiccioli.	Bob-Booty.
					Flight, by Escape.
			Espoir (1841).	Liverpool.	Tramp.
					Whisker Mare
				Espérance.	Lapdog, by Whalebone.
					Grisette, by Merlin.
		Bassishaw.	Prime Warden (1834).	Cadland.	Andrew, by Orville.
					Sorcery, by Sorcerer.
				Zarina.	Moriso, by Muley.
					Ina, by Smolensko.
			Miss Whinney (1838).	Sir Hercules.	Whalebone.
					Peri, by Wanderer.
				Euphrosyne.	Comus, by Sorcerer.
					Shuttle Mare.

The pedigree only contains so many minute details when it concerns a celebrated horse. If Saint Christopher had not won the

[1] Journal des haras, année 1877, 1re partie, p. 371.

Grand Prix de Paris, his pedigree would have been indicated in the following manner :

Saint Christopher : sire, Mortemer ; dam, Isoline.
Mortemer : sire, Compiègne ; dam, Countess.
Isoline : sire, Etnelnert ; dam, Bassishaw.
Compiègne : sire, Fitz-Gladiator ; dam, Maid of Hart.
Countess : sire, Nuncio ; dam, Eusebia.
Etnelnert : sire, Faugh-à-Balagh ; dam, Espoir.
Bassishaw : sire, Prime Warden ; dam, Miss Whinney.

Sometimes we prefer to recognize more especially the direct *genealogy* of the *two progenitors*. The pedigree is then formulated as follows :

Saint Christopher.

Sire, Mortemer.	Dam, Isoline.
G. s., Compiègne.	G. d., Bassishaw.
G. g. s., Fitz-Gladiator.	G. g. d., Miss Whinney.
G. g. g. s., Gladiator.	G. g. g. d., Euphrosyne.
G. g. g. g. s., Partisan.	G. g. g. g. d., Shuttle Mare.

In connection with the pedigree a list of the animal's performances is enumerated, if he be a celebrated one. It should be remembered, nevertheless, that in order to operate with rapidity and precision it is necessary to have much practice, a methodical procedure, and quick perception. All certificates that are intended for public use should be previously revised and corrected with care.

SECTION SEVENTH.

THE APTITUDES OR THE SERVICES.

THE horse's strength is employed in moving burdens placed upon his back through the agency of the saddle or the pack-saddle, or dragged along the ground, either directly or by means of particular vehicles on wheels, or hauled on the surface of the water.

In other words, he *carries* or he *pulls;* exceptionally, he does both at the same time. In both cases the effort to be made depends in great measure upon the weight of the burden, the velocity with which it is moved, and the consistency and inclination of the surface upon which it rests.

From this point of view, we should primarily establish two principal categories: *saddle-horses* and *harness-horses.* Practically, however, these would be insufficient, and would confound aptitudes which it is important to distinguish. The special exigencies of luxury, the army, commerce, industry, and agriculture evidently require some degree of specialization; again, we must not lose sight of those requirements which relate to the reproduction of the species.

Therefore we will divide the services into four principal chapters. In the first we will study the *race-horse,* whose pecuniary value is the most considerable; in the second we will treat of *horses of luxury;* in the third, *cavalry horses;* finally, in the fourth, *horses for industrial and commercial purposes,* whose average value is generally inferior to that of the preceding.

We will add that, according to his category, the horse is constantly utilized as an animal of force or of speed and, more rarely, as a mixed motor. All things being equal, it follows that his height and bulk should, before all other attributes, constitute the principal elements by which to class him in such or such a group, because these elements, united to the bulk and elevation of the vehicles, are in direct relation with the extent or intensity of the muscular contraction, the greatness

or power of the effort to be made. Afterwards will follow, as a secondary although very important consideration, the examination of his conformation, his breeding, his gaits, his origin, and his performances, if there be any, his dressing, his training, his coat, etc. Under these different aspects we will briefly investigate each service. The information given concerning prices is not absolute, in this sense, that they are subject to variation according to circumstances, but they are drawn from a good source and represent with sufficient accuracy the actual value of the horses in the place under consideration.

CHAPTER I.

RACE-HORSES.

It is not our intention to give an opinion here upon the utility and value of *races*, tests by the aid of which it is sought to ascertain the qualities of speed and endurance of a certain number of subjects which are designed for breeding purposes, in order to ameliorate the equine species. We simply wish to recall that animals which undergo these trials may acquire considerable value on account of the possibilities hoped for in them either as reproducers or as machines destined to win prizes.

Thus considered, these animals constitute a category with well-determined limits, concerning which we should say a few words.

We will divide race-horses, according to their specialization, into *running-horses*, *steeple-chasers*, and *trotting-horses*.

A.—Running-Horse.

Mode of Utilization.—As his name indicates, the running-horse is always ridden upon the race-course at a fast gallop,—that is to say, upon chosen ground, almost flat, and never presenting obstacles to be leaped over. The jockey who mounts him uses every effort to make him travel over the ground with the greatest speed possible.

Height.—His height varies from 1.55 metres to 1.65 metres, but the highest is sought for, since it places the animal in the best conditions to take long strides.

Conformation.—We have indicated on page 406 the principal features of this conformation. The running-horse (Fig. 333) should

have a high chest and long members; a short body and strong loins; the neck, shoulder, croup, thigh, buttock, leg, and forearm should be long, without being too heavy in the upper part; the members strong, clean, and free from blemishes; he should have wide and thick articu-

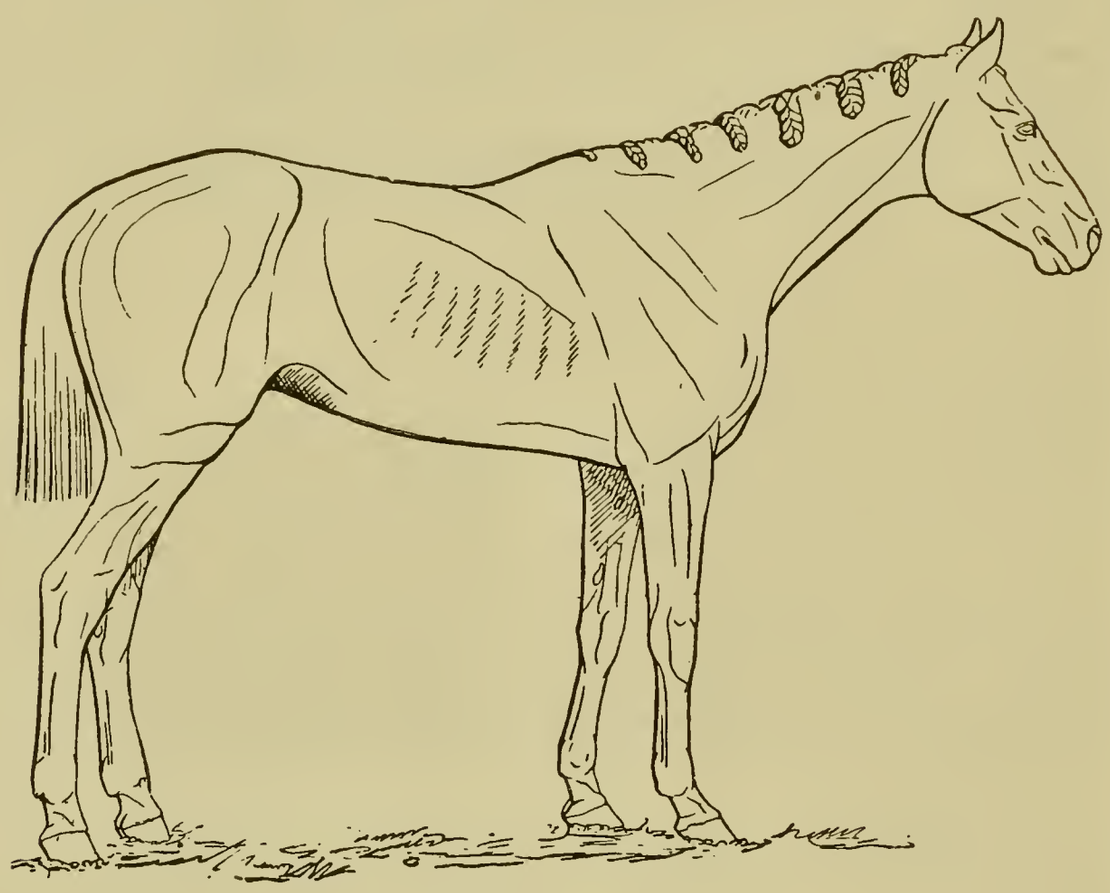


FIG. 333.—Running-horse.
Vermout, winner of the great prize of Paris in 1864. (Reproduced from a photograph belonging to M. Delton.)

lations, closed in the superior angles, open in the inferior; a deep chest, abdomen slightly full; fine skin, hair, mane, and tail; an animated and expressive physiognomy; he should be graceful, nimble, elegant, excitable, energetic, impetuous, and of great endurance.

Preferred Coats.—The two coats which are the most common are the bay and the sorrel, sometimes the roan, and more rarely the roan gray; the black is but little esteemed, the qualities of the horse being, of course, taken into consideration.

Price.—The price of a running-horse is as variable as that of a work of art. It is determined, for the eighteen months' colt, or the *yearling*, which has not yet appeared upon the turf, according to his genealogy and his conformation. At that time the greatest value is attached to the qualities of the parents and even of the grandparents, especially when they are combined, in their descendant, with great perfection of form. In such cases, the value of the young subject

remains always contingent, since he has not yet shown what he is capable of accomplishing. Speculations have no other base than the succession of trials undergone during the training. Under these conditions the price may vary from $200 to $6000.

Beginning at the age of two years, as soon as the colt appears upon the race-course, his value increases in proportion to the number and nature of the prizes which he has won. His value as a stallion may then be $2000, $6000, $10,000, $20,000, $40,000, and even $60,000, when his conformation is perfect. On the contrary, if he has not been successful, his owner can scarcely dispose of him for a few hundred dollars. With such variations, it is impossible to determine anything. Horses which have been purchased for $20,000, by reason of the hopes arising from a victory too easily won, have been known, after a few easy defeats, to depreciate in value to $1000 or even to $600 !

Origin.—The running-horse is always of the so-called thoroughbred blood. His pedigree is inscribed either in the English or French *Stud-Book*. It is therefore very easy to become accurately informed as to the qualities of his ancestors by consulting one or other of the aforesaid records.

B.—The Steeple-Chaser.

Mode of Utilization.—This name is given to a variety of horses which only appear in races in which obstacles are to be leaped over. Here, again, the horse is mounted and always ridden at a rapid gallop. The trial takes place upon the race-course, as in the preceding case, but a series of artificial obstacles are intentionally placed upon the track, such as hedges, walls, ditches, brooks, *Irish benches*, etc., over which the animal must leap successively before reaching the end. This kind of race, being much more exciting, delights the public infinitely more than the ordinary race, on account of the incessant dangers threatening, at each new obstacle, the jockey and his mount.

Height.—The medium height is comprised within the same limits as that of the preceding,—that is to say, between 1.55 metres and 1.65 metres. The intrinsic value being equal, preference is given to the tallest subjects, because they are able to leap over higher obstacles without loss of speed.

Conformation.—The conformation does not differ much from that of the running-horse, for only horses which have not performed well on the race-course are risked in the steeple-chase. High withers, a short and straight dorso-lumbar region, a strong and beautiful attach-

ment of the loins; large and strong muscles of the hind-quarters, particularly of the croup (which, without inconvenience, may be a little inclined), the thigh, the buttock, and the leg; development of the articulations, especially of the hocks and the pasterns; strength and beauty of equilibrium of the anterior members; finally, a rather short body,—such are the principal qualities to be sought for. It is evident that training constitutes an essential element of this condition. If the subject is not trained with the special purpose to jump high, freely, and with skill, it is useless to enter him in this kind of race, whatever may be the perfection of his form.

The horse which we have chosen (Fig. 334) as a type is Bois-Roussel, which won the French Derby in 1864. Although he never

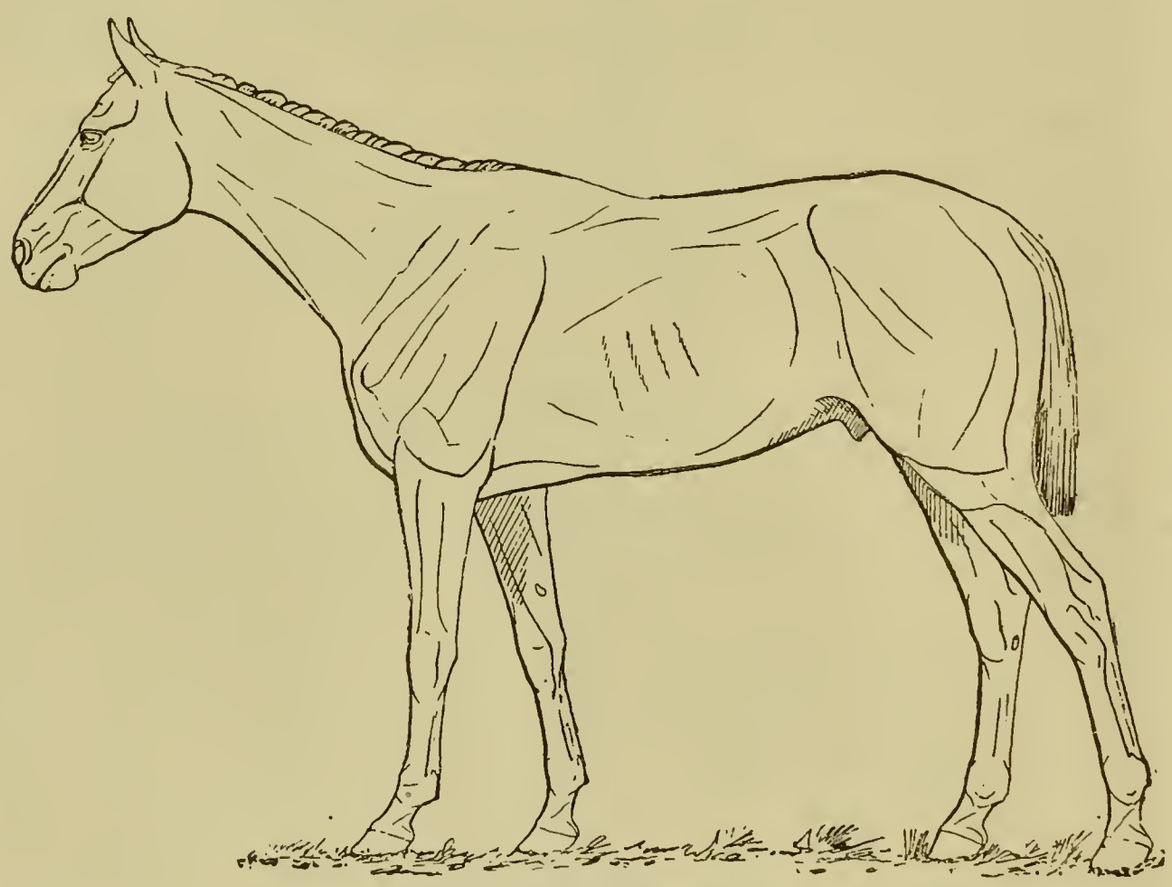


Fig. 334.—Steeple-chase horse.

Bois-Roussel, winner of the French Derby in 1864. (Reproduced from a photograph belonging to M. Delton.)

ran in a steeple-chase, his whole conformation indicates how great would have been his fitness for this service had he been trained with a view to it. It is, then, quite intentionally that we here recommend his portrait to the reader's attention, in spite of the different use to which he has been put by his owner.

Preferred Coats.—Most subjects in this category are bay, sorrel, or roan, but excellent ones are found among the other colors.

Price.—The price of the steeple-chaser is as variable as that of any other race-horse. It is determined according to the pedigree and the conformation in the colt which has not yet performed; on the other hand, according to the performances and the successes obtained when he has already appeared upon the turf.

Ordinarily, it is inferior to that of the preceding, because the animals which are entered in steeple-chases are neither as beautiful nor as serviceable. It is evident that if their chances of winning a prize on the race-course were good, it would be to the advantage of their owners to utilize them in this way, for accidents are much less common. For these reasons we give, based upon very general indications, the figures $200 to $12,000 as representing the approximate value of this variety of horse.

In a large number of hippodromes it is rather common to meet among steeple-chasers running-horses which have met with some accident in a former race, a laceration or rupture of the tendons, for example. They are then said to be *broken down*. In this case, they are castrated with a view of modifying somewhat their conformation, and are then fired that they may regain their strength. However, their price is diminished in proportion to the blemishes of which they still bear the traces.

Origin.—Formerly the half-thoroughbred horse was employed for the steeple-chase, being foaled and raised exclusively with a view to this end. Little by little the trainers conceived the idea of making use of the thoroughbred horse, which experience has always shown to be superior in speed and endurance. For this reason we no longer see the half-breed at the present time.

C.—Trotters.

On a parallel with the running races are placed the *trotting races, in harness* or *under the saddle*, for which purpose a particular variety of horses is produced. We must then distinguish at once in this group *trotters in harness* and *trotters under the saddle.*

1. Trotters in Harness.

Mode of Utilization.—As their name indicates, these animals are always driven upon the race-track harnessed to very light vehicles called *sulkies* or *skeletons.*

"The sulky is composed of a small seat, without covering, for a single person. The driver has his legs separated, and his feet rest upon two bars fastened to the shafts; besides, the horse is harnessed so short that his hind-quarters are placed between the two legs of the

driver. This vehicle is not suspended; a pair of very large light wheels, an axle, and two shafts form the whole, which does not weigh more than twenty-five kilogrammes." [1]

In construction and lightness the skeleton resembles the sulky very much, but it has four wheels and is not very high.

In Russia and in England the trotters in harness are often utilized with the vehicles of which we have just spoken; in America, principally in the United States, a skeleton a little modified, known under the name of *buggy*, is used, which the French vulgarly call *araignée* (spider), because of its aspect, or *mort-subite* (sudden death), on account of the dangers to which it exposes the driver when rounding the turns. In Norway, the Norwegians employ it; in cold countries, in general, the *sleigh* is used.

Height.—The ordinary height of these horses varies from 1.52 metres to 1.65 metres.

Conformation.—The animal should be harmonious, unblemished, well constructed in the body and in the members. Withers rather low and loins slightly weak may be overlooked, but a powerful croup, thighs, buttocks, legs, and hocks are essential; also, long neck, shoulders, and forearms; not too horizontal in the croup; normal inclinations of the superior segments of the members; width, height, and depth of the chest; wide, thick, neat, and clean articulations; in a word, all the characters of a beautiful conformation. It is especially when in motion that a trotter can be judged. By his actions, lengthened, close to the ground, and regular, by the extent and complete projection of the anterior members, and by the energetic action of the hind members, he will manifest in the best way his aptitude as a trotter.

We give as an example of this variety (Fig. 335) the portrait of Fazan, a Russian stallion of great value, presented to the Emperor Napoleon III. by Czar Alexander II. at the time of the Universal Exposition in 1867.

Finally, with respect to education or training, he should be accustomed to preserve the trotting gait during the whole duration of the race. The rules specify formally that every horse which *breaks* (*runs*) is obliged to resume the trot immediately. This change from a fast gait into another less fast always causes loss of time and a considerable slackening of speed. Subjects of the first rank are not wanting in number, which have the greatest difficulty in winning a prize, because

---

[1] Belvalette et Quenay, Rapport du jury international de l'Exposition universelle de 1878 (section de la carrosserie et du charronnage), p. 46, Paris, Imp. nat., 1880.

they are too ardent, too excited, from the moment they appear on the track until the end of the race.

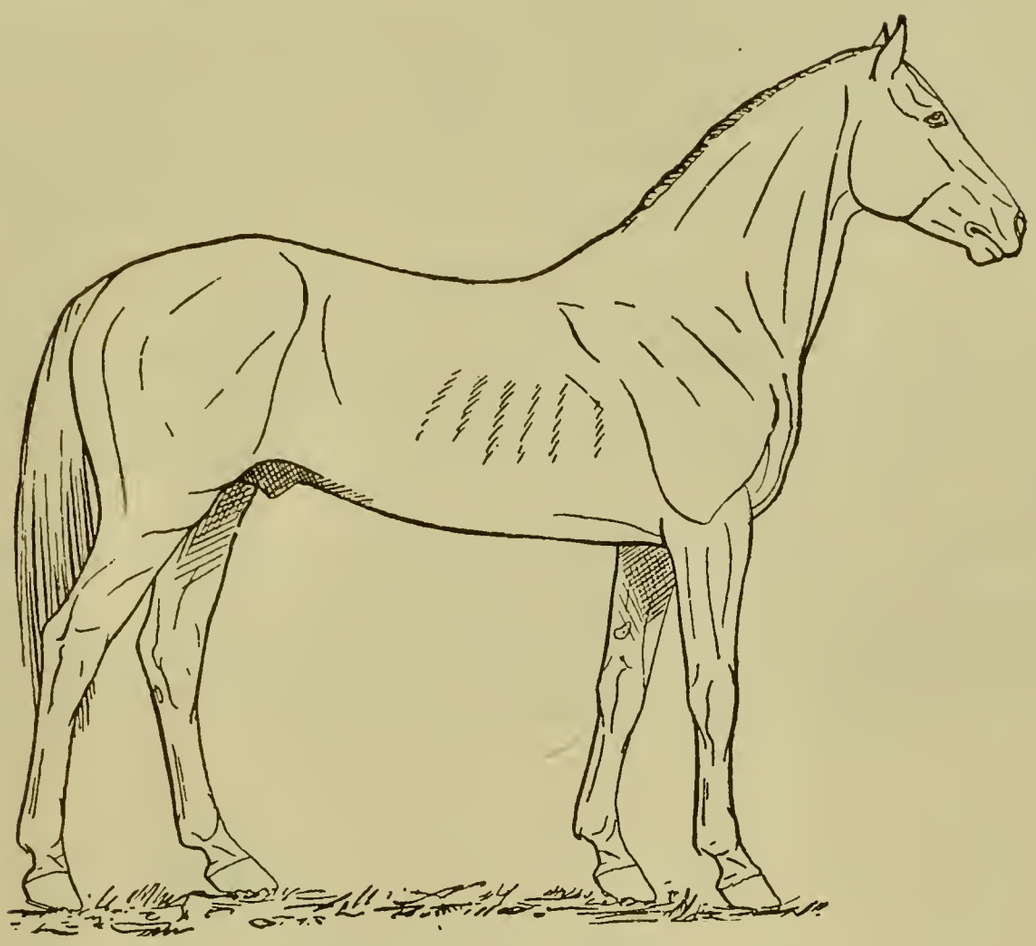


FIG. 335.—Trotter in harness.

Fazan, Russian stallion of the Orloff variety. (Reproduced from a photograph belonging to M. Delton.)

Preferred Coats.—Properly speaking, there are not, among trotters under harness, any preferable coats. It may simply be said that the dark colors, bay or sorrel, are always the most esteemed.

Price.—The price of geldings and mares varies from $600 to $2000 and even $40,000. Stallions are much more expensive; to our knowledge there are some which have brought as much as $105,000 in America. Here, again, the differences of price result from causes of the same nature as those which influence the value of race-horses in general; such are the pedigree (genealogy), the conformation, the gaits, the performances (trials undergone), races won, etc. We will dwell no further upon these.

Origin.—Several countries are renowned for their trotting-horses. The United States, England, Russia, and France furnish the most remarkable examples. The American trotter has only lately been imported into Europe; the English is bred mostly in Norfolk and also in Yorkshire; the Russian is found in the stud of Orloff; as to the French, he comes especially from Normandy, more rarely from the Ardennes.

These animals all possess great speed and endurance. However, if we wish to classify them with regard to speed, the American and Russian ordinarily come first, whilst the Norman and English only hold the second place. As regards endurance, the Norman and English excel the American and Russian. We will find these last two excitable; their chest would be improved were it a little higher, like that of the English horse, for example.

2. Trotters under the Saddle.

Mode of Utilization.—Trotters under the saddle appear on the race-course always mounted, like the running-horse or the steeple-chaser; it is useless to add that they never have any obstacles to leap over.

Height.—Their height, slightly inferior to that of the preceding, varies between 1.50 metres and 1.62 metres.

Conformation.—Their conformation is the same, although still greater perfection is sought, particularly with regard to the fore-quarters,

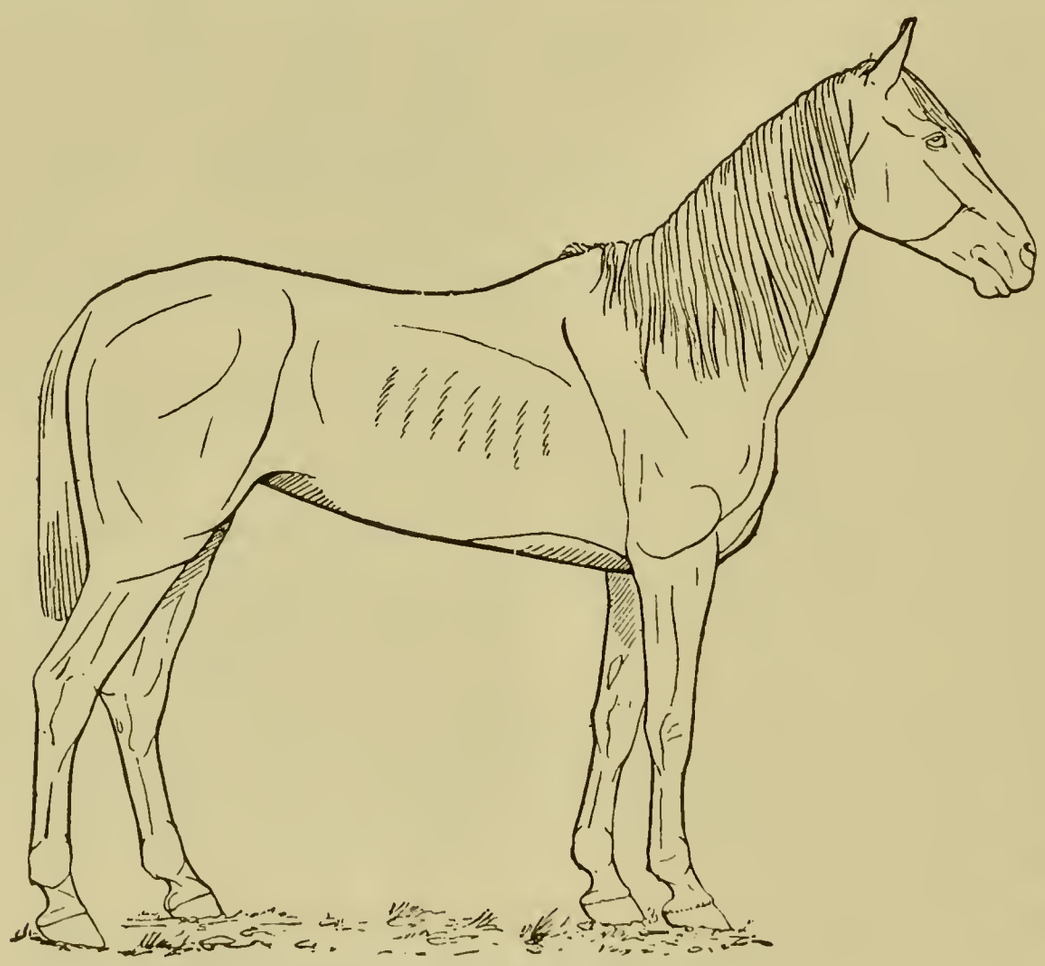


FIG. 336.—Trotter under the saddle.

Bayadère, Anglo-Norman mare. (Reproduced from a photograph belonging to M. Delton.)

already burdened with the weight of the rider. For the trotter in harness, withers somewhat low, a back slightly hollow, loins rather

weak, and anterior equilibrium somewhat defective, may be overlooked; but such defects are unpardonable in the trotter under the saddle.

We give as an example the portrait of Bayadère (Fig. 336), a celebrated Norman trotter, never beaten, and foaled in 1853 by Phenomenon and Bayadère (by Ramsay), victor in twenty-two trotting races at the expositions of 1862 and 1863.

Preferred Coats.—Taste and fashion have established nothing in particular in this respect; there are no coats of special value; the darker ones are preferred, however, to the others.

Price.—The prices here are lower than those of the preceding category, because horses trotting under the saddle are less common and less in demand than those trotting in harness. These prices vary from $400 to $2000 and even $2500 for geldings and mares. For stallions four years of age as much as $5000 have been paid.

Origin.—Nearly all these animals originally came from Normandy and Norfolk, and result from crossing practised for a long time between the local races of these countries and the thoroughbred horse.

CHAPTER II.

HORSES OF LUXURY.

In this group we place horses used for the trot and the gallop, but never appearing upon the turf. These are exclusively animals of display; they are mounted or harnessed; more rarely they are adapted for horseback riding and for driving. Their service, which is not fatiguing, consists of a single drive of two or three hours at the most, during which they move at moderate speed.

They constitute an important commercial element, which recommends itself both by the number of its representatives and the high prices which they reach.

We will divide them into two categories with respect to their destination: *coach-horses* and *saddle-horses*. The former having a much greater value than the latter, will be examined first.

A.—Coach-Horses.

Coach-horses are so called from the name of the vehicles with which they were formerly used. These horses are harnessed at the

present time to all carriages of luxury, *in pairs* or *single*, according to circumstances.

With respect to height and bulk, they are again subdivided into *large coach-horses* and *small coach-horses.*

1. Large Coach-Horses.

Mode of Utilization.—The large coach-horses are nearly always driven *in pairs*, two or four at a time, to large carriages of luxury of various kinds.

Height.—The average height of these horses varies from 1.63 metres to 1.70 metres; exceptionally, some of 1.78 and even 1.80 metres are found.

Preferred Coats.—The coat, in this category, has an importance which must not be neglected. The ordinary bay, the brown bay, and the burnt or golden sorrel are the colors most highly prized.

In certain cases two subjects of different coats are harnessed together: a brown bay and a beautiful dappled gray or a white horse, for example. This *variegation* is, however, no longer fashionable; it attracts the eye and has a pretentious appearance, and at the present time, at least, is not often seen among the aristocracy.

Formerly, two dark horses, alternating with two light ones, were driven in pairs to a mail-coach or a Daumont carriage. They are then disposed like a *checker-board*, according to the common expression: a dark and a light at the pole, and a light and a dark in front. The result is that coats of the same color are placed diagonally. This is, be it understood, a purely fantastic or capricious blending of shades.

The black coats are but little esteemed; they are only made use of as evidences of mourning. In such cases, the carriage and harness, as well as the dress of the coachman and footman, are black. Unless the owner be in mourning, a black team is no longer fashionable. Hence a black coat should be, to the buyer who is above questions of fashion, a forcible pretext for depreciation.

Conformation.—The large coach-horse, being the horse of display *par excellence*, should have a perfect conformation and gaits as brilliant as possible. His intrinsic value is of secondary importance, for he has always enough endurance to perform the service required of him, which is not laborious. The horse thus chosen should have a square head, rather light, neat, and expressive; a long, supple, and well-attached neck; beautiful withers; oblique and muscular shoulders; a good dorso-lumbar line; a horizontal croup with a tail well attached and well carried; a round and descending rib; a full and

short flank, a muscular thigh, a descending buttock; strong, clean members without defect; small feet, etc. If slender, he does not properly fill the harness and appears disproportionate with the vehicle to

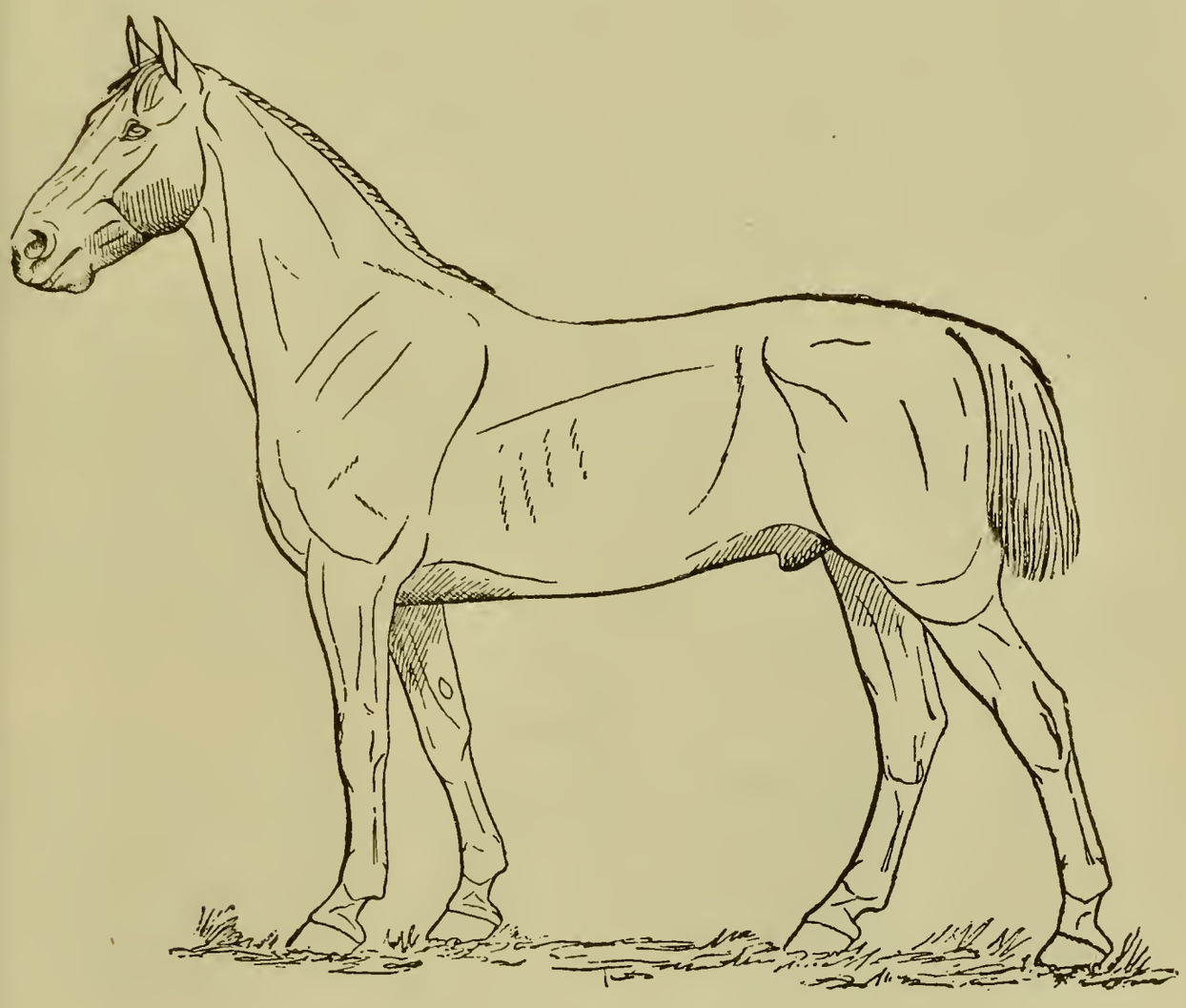


FIG. 337.—Large coach-horse.

Lahore, half-thoroughbred Anglo-Norman, belonging to the Marquis d'Aligre. Grand prize at the horse exposition of 1868. (Reproduced from a photograph belonging to M. Delton.)

which he is harnessed; too stout, he becomes heavy, massive, wanting in suppleness and grace; he must be fine and well proportioned (Fig. 337).

Origin.—The most valuable large coach-horses are half-breeds (*métises*) more or less resembling the horses which come from England, particularly from Yorkshire and Lincolnshire; the largest among them are bred in Suffolk. Normandy, especially the plain of Caen, furnishes some very handsome ones, but they are second to the English. Then come the German and the Dutch coach-horses, the former raised principally in Hanover and Mecklenburg, the latter in Friesland. Both are very numerous in the Paris market. They are brilliant, have considerable style, and are sometimes from very good ancestry. However, their conformation is sometimes inferior to the English and the Norman coach-horses; they often lack something to be desired.

Among these horses the *defects* are seen in their long, narrow head, which is but slightly arched and poorly attached; their eyes, which are placed high; their slender neck, flat chest, weak back, long and poorly-attached loins, hollow flanks, prominent haunches, slender members, coarse mane and tail, and large and flat feet. Their movements, it is true, have a certain elegance, but they are excitable. These subjects trot from the knee (knee-action) and are wanting in speed and in activity.

Price.—The price varies according to the size of the animals, their conformation, breeding, pedigree, coat, and especially according to the dressing, the mating, and the brilliancy of their gaits. It varies, for a pair of fine coach-horses, from $2000 to $3000 and even $4000.

But this price increases very much when two pairs of horses, very similar and well mated in all respects, are selected, for they are obtained with difficulty. Under these conditions, there are examples of two matched pairs which have cost as much as $12,000 and $15,000.

On the other hand, it is possible to buy a pair of Hanoverian, Mecklenburg, or Friesland horses for $1000, $1500, or $1800 at the most, but they are never coach-horses of the highest grade.

2. Small Coach-Horses.

Mode of Utilization.—The small coach-horse is harnessed *single* or *double* to carriages of less weight, such as the landau, three-quarter coupés, ordinary coupés, etc. Less wealthy people drive them sometimes to the landau and the calèche as they would a large coach-horse, which would, however, be much more in accord with this kind of vehicle were his price not so high.

Height.—As its name indicates, this horse is of inferior size to that of the preceding; it varies from 1.56 metres to 1.62 metres.

Preferred Coats.—The whims of fashion are here as exacting as for the large coach-horse. If the light coats, principally the gray, are preferred, it is on condition that the subjects have some exceptional qualities.

Conformation.—The conformation of this horse always implies elegance, style, firmness, brilliant and striding gaits. Nevertheless, he should be more bulky, more stocky, and closer to the ground than the large coacher. Besides, proportionally, his work is more considerable, since he is generally driven alone to carriages almost as heavy. Among other beauties, he must have a neat head, long neck, good withers and shoulders, strong body, strong members, without defect and with good equilibrium, good action, and enough bulk to fill the harness well (Fig. 338).

Origin.—The finest small coach-horses come from England and Normandy; the latter are produced in Merlerault (Orne); the Hanoverian, the Mecklenburg, and the Dutch occupy a second rank.

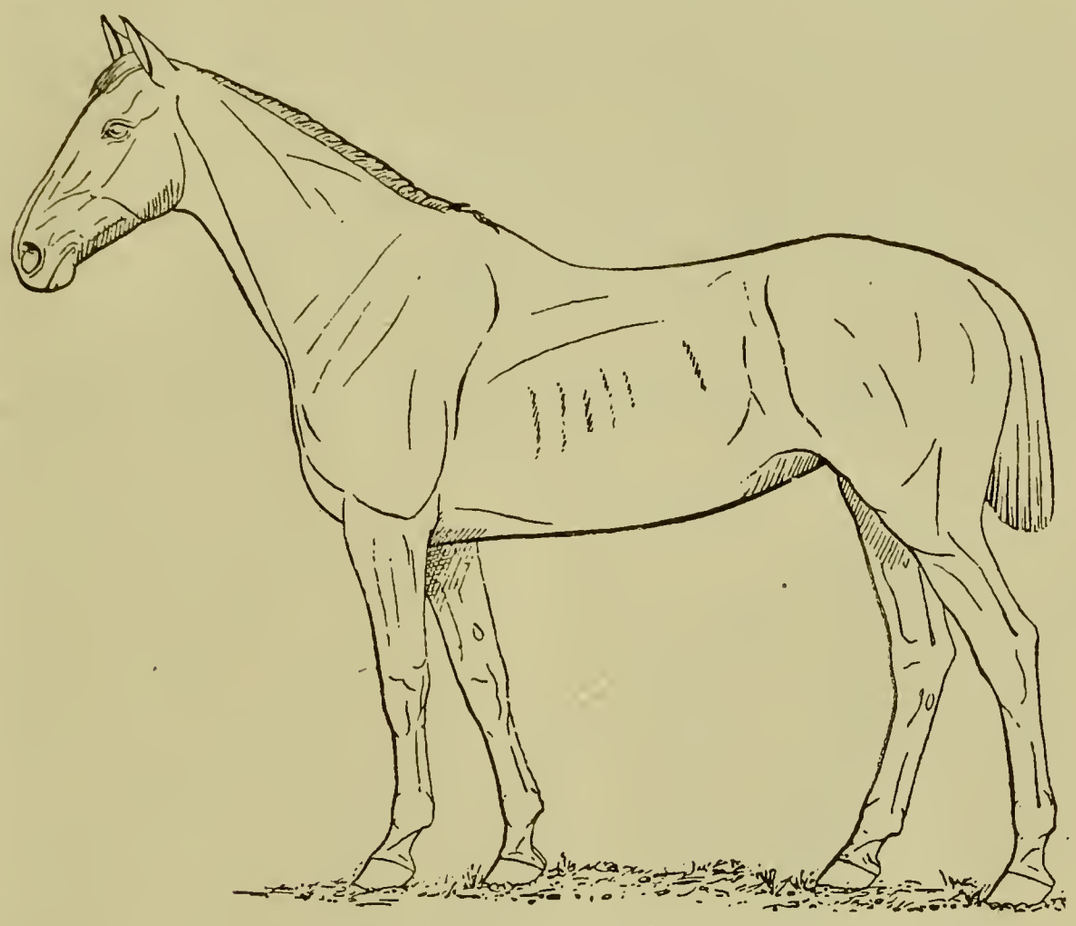


FIG. 338.—Small coach-horse.

Shang-Haï, half-thoroughbred Anglo-Norman. Grand prize at the horse exposition of 1868. (Reproduced from a photograph belonging to M. Delton.)

Price.—This horse is necessarily inferior in value to that of the large coach-horse. In the first place, he is smaller; again, his mating need not be taken so much into consideration, since he is oftener driven single; finally, when driven double, he is mated more easily, because there are more from which to choose and less to be exacted.

Besides, his price is subject to the same variations, inherent principally to the size, conformation, breeding, coat, and brilliancy of the gaits. It varies from $500 to $1200. The pair has an average value of from $1400 to $1600; exceptionally, from $2000 to $2400

B.—Saddle-Horses.

All horses of this category may be utilized for the service of the *saddle*, some exclusively, others accessorily, they being fitted for a *double purpose*. If we have joined these latter to the former, it is as much to avoid making a division as to call attention to the fact, that they are harnessed perhaps less often than they are mounted.

We will adopt here, as in the preceding groups, the distinctions established in commerce.

1. The Hackney.

Adaptation.—The saddle-horse of pure luxury, which is reserved for the promenade and for display, and which is put to no other use, is the *hackney*. He occupies, in the list of saddle-horses, the same place as the large coach-horse among the coach-horses,—that is to say, the first rank. He is chosen for gentlemen or for ladies and young men. In the first case, he is generally larger, more nervous, better bred, higher, and has a longer gait; his price is also higher.

Height.—For a man, a hackney of 1.55 metres to 1.62 metres is needed; for ladies and young men, he may be smaller, since he is

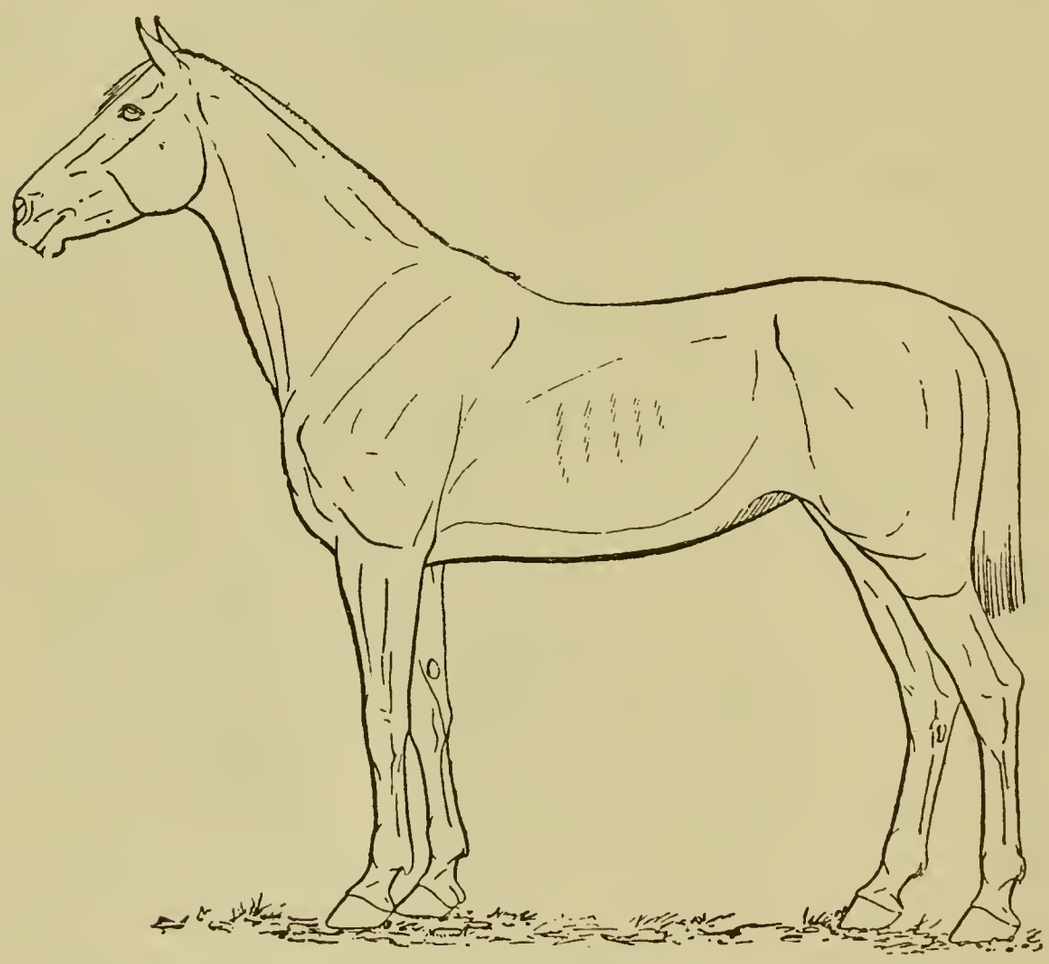


FIG. 339.—Hackney.
Gelding belonging to the Princess of Metternich. (Reproduced from a photograph belonging to M. Delton.)

intended to carry less weight; his height also varies from 1.54 metres to 1.60 metres.

Preferred Coats.—These are, indisputably, the dark shades: the bay, brown bay, golden or burnt sorrel. The gray coats, on account of their resemblance to those of common horses, are but little valued.

Conformation.—The purity of the anatomical outlines approaches perfection; the harmony of the form and the fine proportions of the body give to the connoisseur an impression of plastic beauty; the thinness of the integument, the neatness of the members, and the beauty of the whole are carried almost to extremes; the ease and suppleness of the movements, the gracefulness of the attitudes, the nobleness of the walk, the expression of the physiognomy, the pride and intelligence of the look, the elegance and brilliancy of the gaits, united to breeding, docility, impetuosity, and ardor,—such are the qualities which this horse should possess, the animal chosen by every sportsman really worthy of the name (Fig. 339).

Origin.—The finest hackneys are often of pure English breeding, sometimes Irish very nearly thoroughbred. Eastern Prussia also furnishes some; they are known in commerce by the name *trakens*, because they are produced principally in the stud of Trakehnen. Some, also, come from Würtemberg, in the neighborhood of Stuttgart. Finally, Normandy possesses some that are quite handsome, principally in that part of the department of Orne which is called Merlerault.

The hackney lightest in weight, that which is preferred for ladies and young men, is found among horses of all origins, many of them, however, being small thoroughbreds and horses from Southern France, principally from the vicinity of Tarbes.

Price.—The price of these animals varies much according to size, conformation, fineness, breeding, gaits, coats, etc. The largest ones cost from $600 to $1400 or $1600; the smaller ones from $200 to $1000 or $1200.

2. The Cob.

Mode of Utilization.—The *cob* is a horse of luxury for driving or riding, which is used as a saddle-horse for old persons and those of heavy weight, and which may, besides, be employed as a driving-horse for light carriages, such as phaetons, buggies, dog-carts, etc.

Height.—The expression *cob* has been abused by being applied to all rather powerful small horses. In England the average height of the cob is 1.40 metres; in France he is larger, his height varying from 1.50 metres to 1.58 metres.

Preferred Coats.—The present fashion rather favors the roan and the iron gray, but we find all kinds of coats.

Conformation.—This horse, a very pleasant sort to use, is short, stubby, muscular, regular and round in form, close to the ground; he has an expressive head, a rather strong neck, a wide chest, strong members, compact conformation, and a calm and docile temperament.

Notwithstanding some appearance of clumsiness and indifference, he has, nevertheless, style, elegance, distinction, beautiful gaits, and ardor when necessary (Fig. 340).

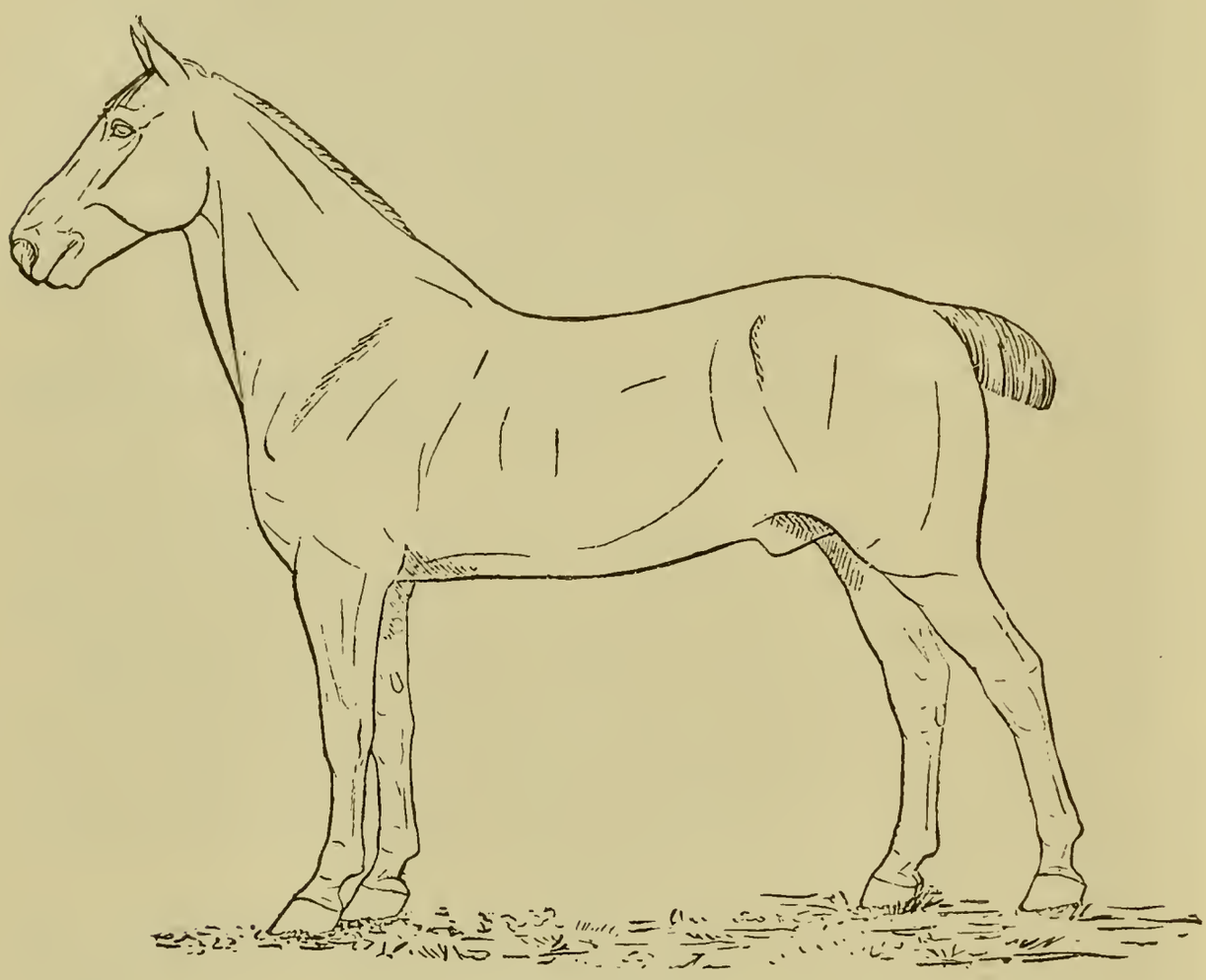


FIG. 340.—Cob.
(Reproduced from a photograph belonging to M. Delton.)

Origin.—The English cobs are by far the most valuable. They come from Norfolk. Ireland also produces some. The French variety is less numerous; some are found in the market of Niort, which are brought from Poitou and Saintonge.

Price.—When the pedigree is good, their value ranges from $400 to $1600.

3. The Hunter.

Mode of Utilization.—As the name indicates, this horse is exclusively designed for hunting. He must not be confounded with the steeple-chaser, which is one variety of race-horse. His principal characteristics are those of galloping and leaping over obstacles.

Height.—His average height ranges from 1.54 metres to 1.62 metres. It is never less, but sometimes more; the huntsman chooses his mount with reference to his own size and weight. Thus, certain hunters attain a height of 1.75 metres.

Preferred Coats.—Little importance is placed upon the color of the coats of these horses. However, light coats, such as the gray and the pied particularly, are very much in favor, as they contrast agreeably with the red coat of the rider.

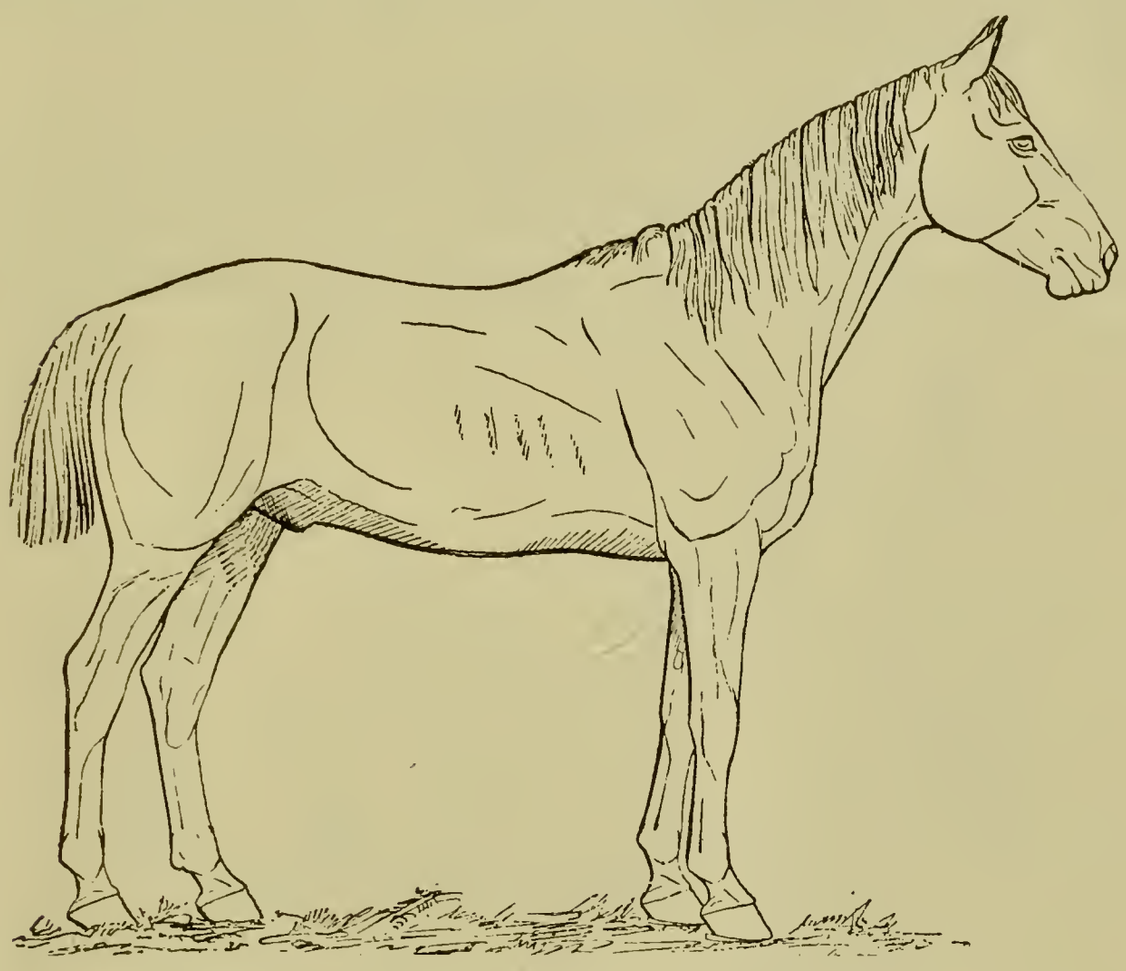


FIG. 341.—Hunter.
(Reproduced from a photograph belonging to M. Delton.)

Conformation.—A beautiful hunter should have a long, high neck, never arched; beautiful shoulders, high chest, prominent withers, strongly-built body, muscular loins, well attached, a powerful croup, thigh, and buttock, and, finally, strong members of good equilibrium. To these qualities must be added energy, good breeding, endurance, and speed, for hunting is very laborious and difficult, and exacts a special training (Fig. 341).

But all horses which are used for this service by no means possess all these conditions, especially in France. Many of them are blemished and have a very defective conformation; hence they are not serviceable very long.

Origin.—The best hunting-horses are half-breeds, bred in England and in greater numbers in Ireland. Those which are used in France are usually half-ruined thoroughbred and some Norman horses.

Price.—Their value is not uniform, owing to the variety of their

breeding, their state of preservation, the absence of blemishes on their members, and their degree of training. In France, their price varies from $160 to $500; in exceptional cases they are worth from $800 to $1000. But in England, "a hunter known to have performed brilliantly with the county hounds may reach a price ranging from 600 to 750 guineas."[1]

4. Double Pony.

Mode of Utilization.—The *double pony* is smaller, more common, less fine, and less speedy than the cob. Like the latter, he can be mounted or driven to harness, according to circumstances.

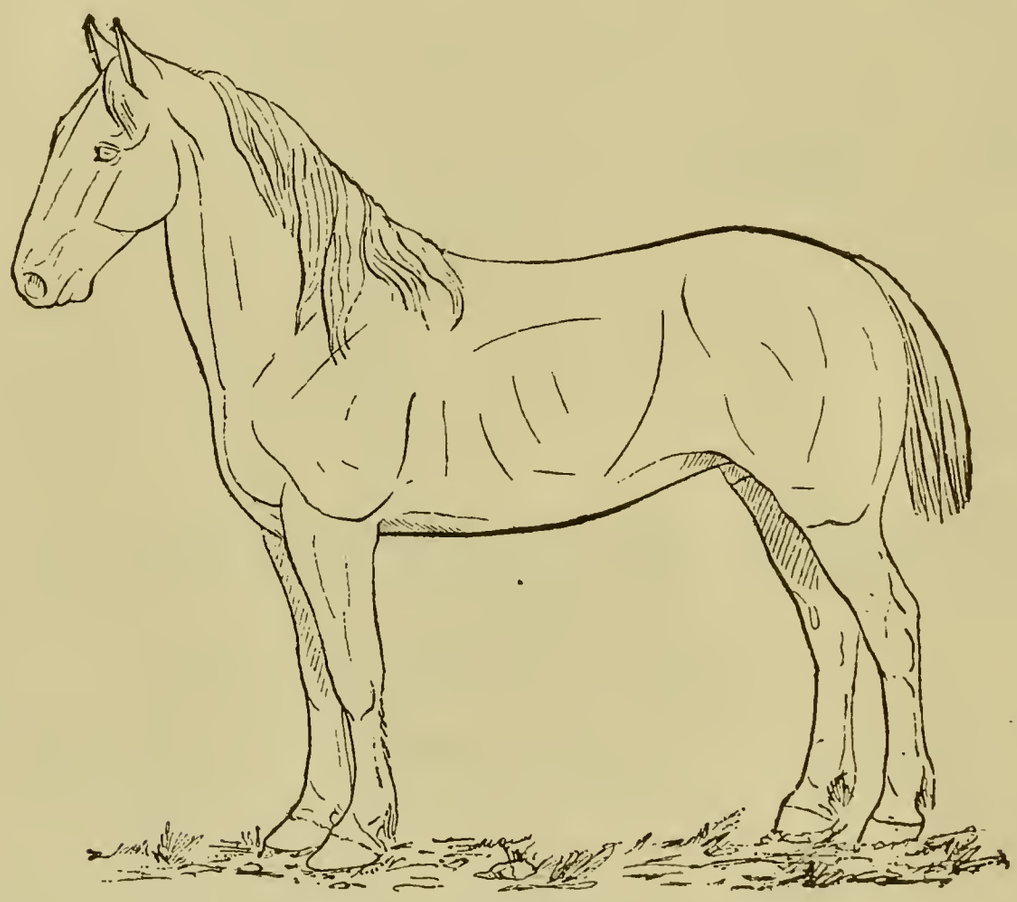


FIG. 342.—Double pony.
(Reproduced from a photograph belonging to M. Delton.)

Height.—His average height is from 1.45 metres to 1.53 metres.

Preferred Coats.—They are of all colors, which are of equal value.

Conformation.—This horse is close to the ground, broad-backed, muscular, of a strong conformation and rounded form; his head is coarse, his members strong, but not very fine; he is often sluggish and indolent (Fig. 342).

---

[1] Plazen, inspecteur général des haras. (Note communiquée.)

Origin.—He has no special centres of production, but is found scattered over Denmark, Poland, Ireland, Wales, and in France, in Brittany, along the English Channel, the Ardennes, etc.

Price.—His price varies from $100 to $300; when of exceptional form and aptitude, his value may even rise to $350.

5. Pony.

Mode of Utilization.—The *pony* is the smallest horse of luxury, and is especially adapted to children's use. When harnessed, he is driven to all sorts of small vehicles.

Height.—The height of ponies is very variable; it ranges from 1.30 metres to 1.45 metres; but there are some in which it is no more than one metre.

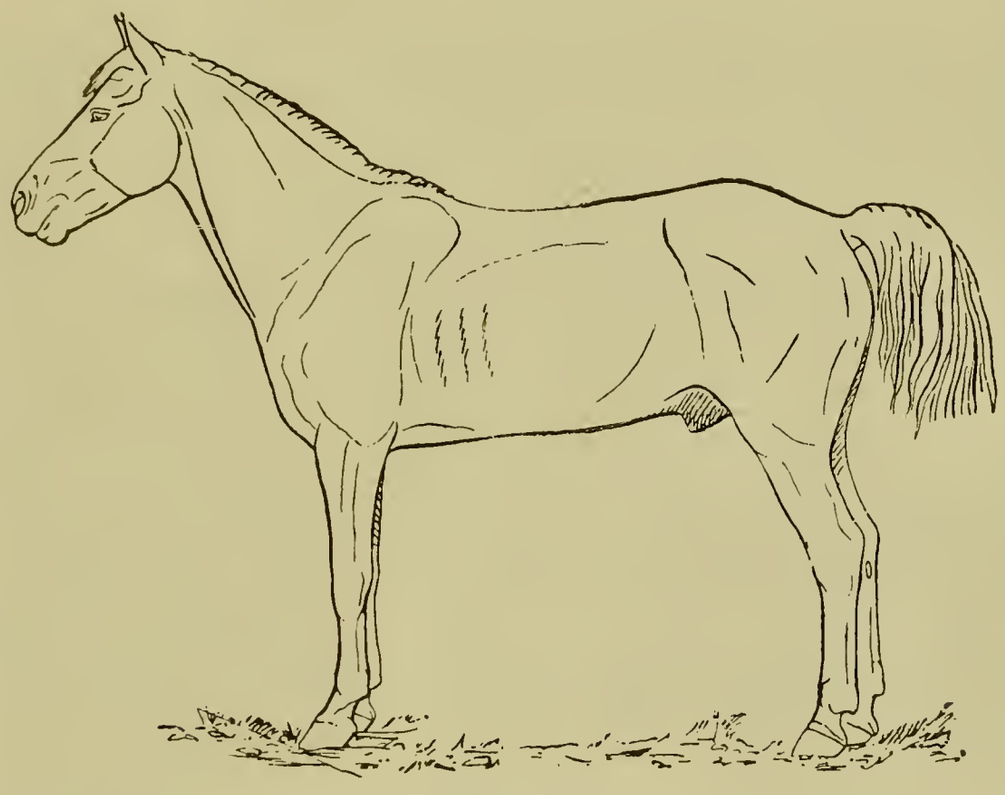


FIG. 343.—Pony.
(Reproduced from a photograph belonging to M. Delton.)

Preferred Coats.—We have nothing particular to say in this respect. In England, odd coats are the most sought after, the piebald, for example.

Conformation.—The body is close to the ground, compact, and muscular; the head often concave over the forehead and nose, and expressive; the neck a little heavy, but carried high; the members fine and neat; the mane, the forelock, the tail, and the hairs of the extremities are long, coarse, and abundant; in trotting, the step is high and frequently repeated; finally, they possess speed, energy, endurance, and a robust constitution (Fig. 343).

Origin.—The most remarkable ponies come from England, Scotland, Ireland, Iceland, the Shetland Islands, Wales, Corsica, the Crau d'Arles, the Landes, and, generally, from all mountainous and poor countries.

Price.—In France, the price of a pony varies from $60 to $300. "In England, when the animal is exceptional, it may increase to $1000 or $1200 and even more."[1]

CHAPTER III.

CAVALRY HORSES.

THE horses intended for the army are, in France and other continental countries, bought in the breeding districts by special committees, which act under instructions from the Minister of War.

For the present, we will limit ourselves to indicating the divisions established by the remounts, the requirements which the animals bought by them must meet, and, finally, the prices which are paid for them.

Army horses are divided into three great categories, according to their service: the horses *de carrière*, employed in the equestrian schools of the army; *staff* horses, reserved for the remount of the corps of officers; finally, *troop* horses, which constitute the principal part of the cavalry. Staff and troop horses are, besides, classed according to that part of the army to which they are suited: *reserve, line, light cavalry,* and *artillery* (saddle or harness). Again, in each of these subdivisions they are distinguished, according to their qualities, as *very good, good,* or *passable.*

Each year the price of the cavalry horse is established by the Budget Committee, but it generally remains about the same.

This schedule price is neither a minimum nor a maximum one; it is looked upon as representing the value of a *good* horse in each category.

It is always understood that a sufficiently large margin is left to the officials of the remount depots, for the practice of economy, either by encouraging the production of horses of such or such a category by paying more for them, or in order to give a proper value to the animals that are difficult to obtain, as the cavalry-school and the reserve horses, for example, which are in great private demand by the wealthy. It is the

---

[1] Plazen, loc. cit.

duty of the presidents of the commissions on purchasing to see that the latter do not exceed the limits of price allowed to them.

Category.	Scheduled Price.	Real Price paid at the Remount.
Cavalry-School Horses	360 dollars.	300 to 440 dollars.
Staff Horses.		
Reserve	280 "	260 to 320 "
Line	272 "	240 to 280 "
Vanguard	228 "	210 to 280 "
Troop Horses.		
Reserve	232 "	210 to 280 "
Line	206 "	180 to 220 "
Light cavalry	182 "	150 to 200 "
Artillery (saddle)	200 "	200 to 220 "
Artillery (harness) . . .	200 "	160 to 190 "

We give in the above table the scheduled figures which were established by the French government in 1889, and we place opposite the prices which the remount really pay.[1]

We will now quote from Captain Rivet,[2] whose competency in this direction is well known. The lines below are full of precious information for purchasing officials and officers of the army.

A.—Staff Horses.

"They may be classed as follows:

"1st. **Ordinary.**—Regular conformation, medium neck, sufficient power and speed. Those which have a rather large head, a white color, washed mane and tail or coat, and slight blemishes are also included in this class.

"2d. **Good.**—Those which have sufficient breeding, good neck and lines, regular conformation, strong body and members, and good gaits.

"3d. **Very Good.**—Those which possess a good conformation and good breeding, a fine, expressive head, strength, beautiful chest, good members, prominent tendons, long and brilliant gaits.

"The price of the *ordinary* horse is from 75 to 150 francs less than that of the *good* horse, with a range of 50 francs above or below.

"The value of the *very good* horse is 100, 150, and in rare instances 200 francs more than the average.

"The price of the *gray* horse is one-eighth less than that of the class in which he may be placed.

"The standard *line* horse ranks between the *reserve corps* horse

[1] Wiart, Vétérinaire en 1er au dépôt de remonte de Caen. (Note communiquée.)
[2] A. Rivet, Guide pratique de l'acheteur de chevaux, p. 19, et suiv., Caen, 1877.

and the *light cavalry* horse; the average scheduled price of the staff horse may be applied to him. The price of the reserve horse will be 100 francs more, and that of the light cavalry 150 francs less.

"These data convey nothing absolute, and are only points of reference which may be utilized specially in countries which furnish the majority of reserve and line horses."

B.—Troop Horses.

"The troop horses may also be grouped into three principal classes:

"1st. **Passable.**—Either by reason of their conformation, their defects of equilibrium, their want of ampleness of the chest, or their blemishes.

"2d. **Good.**—These may be subdivided into three categories: *a*, if there are white markings, if the coat, the mane, and the tail are washed, the head large, the neck short, etc.; *b*, *good, properly so called*, if they have enough neck, strong body and members, sufficient weight, harmonious conformation, and good action; *c*, if they have, besides, a fair physiognomy, a solid coat, and energy.

"3d. **Very Good.**—Those that have a good physiognomy, a neck well attached, a very good body, beautiful chest, good members, fine coat, power, and long gaits.

"The *passable* horse, of which no more than a certain number should be willingly bought, commands one-fifth less than the scheduled price.

"The price of a *good horse of the first degree* is about 60 francs less than the average; that of the *second degree*, or properly called *good*, is the mean sum; and, finally, that of the *third degree* is 50 francs more.

"The *very good* horse costs from 75 to 100 francs more than the average price.

"The price of the *gray* horse is one-eighth less than that of the category in which it may be classed, and the passable gray should never be bought, so as not to encourage that coat, which is known to be unsuitable for war service.

"Every horse that is one-fifth less in value than the average, should be condemned.

"In order to operate with quickness and certainty, if it be possible, it is well to draw up a table of the different prices based upon these statements, and to consult it when necessary. (See pages 747 and 848.)

"It is important to make marked differences in the prices, according to the quality of the horses, so as not to be always confined to the average prices for the *very good* and the *passable* horse.

"The breeder and the horse-dealer should be convinced that the

committee judges impartially and as accurately as possible the horses which are presented to them, and that they pay for a horse what he is worth from a military point of view.

"A horse may, in fact, have considerable commercial value for a heavy team, or as a coach-horse, and still not be suitable for the cavalry, or only be a very ordinary saddle-horse. Again, a beautiful saddle-horse may be more valuable for the remount than for commerce. These differences are of importance, and, while seeking to approximate to the mercantile value of the animal, we should not forget the use for which he is reserved. . . .

Schedule of Prices

ACCORDING TO THE AVERAGES PAID AT THE REMOUNT.

1. *Cavalry-School Horses.*

Beautiful lines, much expression, irreproachable body, good breeding, energy, good temper, easy and long gaits.

Height.	Ordinary.	Good.	Very Good.
	Head somewhat common, white coat a little washed, slight blemishes.	Good head, solid coat, without blemishes.	Good physiognomy, beautiful coat, brilliant gaits.
1.56 m. to 1.62 m.	320 to 340 dollars.	360 to 380 dollars.	400 to 410 dollars and more.
Gray Horses.			
1.56 m. to 1.62 m.	280 to 298 dollars.	315 to 332 dollars.	350 to 394 dollars and more.

2. *Staff Horses.*

Height and Arms.	Ordinary.	Good.	Very Good.
	Regular conformation, medium neck, enough power and action, head rather large, slight blemishes.	Good enough breeding, neck, and lines; regular conformation, full, strong body and members, good action.	Beautiful lines, expression, fine head, energy, power, fine chest; good members, prominent tendons, brilliant gaits.
1.56 m. to 1.60-62 m., Reserve	250 to 265 dollars.	280 to 290 dollars.	300 to 310 dollars and more.
1.53 m. to 1.58 m., Line	230 to 245 "	260 to 270 "	280 to 290 " "
1.52 m. to 1.54 m., Light . .	205 to 215 "	225 to 240 "	250 to 260 " "
Gray Horses.			
1.56 m. to 1.60-62 m., Reserve	. . . . .	245 to 254 dollars.	260 to 270 dollars and more.
1.53 m. to 1.58 m., Line . . .	. . . . .	228 to 236 "	245 to 254 " "
1.52 m. to 1.54 m., Light . . .	. . . . .	200 to 210 "	210 to 228 " "

Schedule of Prices

ACCORDING TO THE AVERAGES PAID AT THE REMOUNT—(*Continued*).

3. *Troop Horses.*

Height and Arms.	Passable.	Good.			Very Good.
		1st Degree.	2d Degree.	3d Degree.	
	By reason of conformation, defects of equilibrium, want of fulness of the chest, or blemishes.	Coat white, or washed, large head, neck a little short.	Sufficient neck, body, and members, good gaits, good *ensemble*.	Besides, fair physiognomy, solid coat, energy.	Good physiognomy, neck well attached, very good body, fine chest, good members, beautiful coat, strength, long gaits.
1.56 m. to 1.60-62 m., Reserve	About 200 dollars.	220 dollars.	230 dollars.	235 dollars.	Rarely. 240 to 250 dollars and more.
1.51 m. to 1.54-57 m., Line	" 165 "	195 "	205 "	215 "	220 to 225 dollars and more.
1.51 m. to 1.54 -57 m., Artillery (saddle) .	" 155 "	182 "	192 "	205 "	207 to 212 dollars and more.
1.48 m. to 1.54 m., Light	" 145 "	190 "	180 "	190 "	195 to 200 dollars and more.
1.48 m. to 1.60 m., Draught	" 145 "	190 "	180 "	190 "	195 to 200 dollars and more.
1.54 m. to 1.60 m., Transportat'n (saddle)	" 155 "	182 "	192 "	205 "	207 to 212 dollars and more.
Gray Horses.					
1.60 m. to 1.60-62 m., Reserve	Must not go beyond a certain proportion of passable horses with dark coats, and should not buy any gray ones.	. . . . .	195 dollars.	205 dollars.	Rarely. 210 to 220 dollars and more.
1.51 m. to 1.54-57 m., Line		. . . . .	180 "	190 "	200 to 210 dollars and more.
1.51 m. to 1.54-57 m., Artillery (saddle) .		. . . . .	190 "	180 "	190 to 200 dollars and more.
1.48 m. to 1.54 m., Light		. . . . .	158 "	168 "	178 to 186 dollars and more.
1.48 m. to 1.60 m., Draught		. . . . .	158 "	168 "	178 to 186 dollars and more.
1.54 m. to 1.60 m., Transportat'n (saddle)		. . . . .	170 "	180 "	190 to 200 dollars and more.

"NOTE.—The *saddle artillery* is the *dragoon;* but as the good line horse cannot be found in sufficiently large number, a difference of price must be made between the one which fills the desired conditions and the one which is more compact, especially in the neck and shoulders.

"This table contains *nothing absolute;* it is only a series of indications which aid in fixing the price to be given for each horse suitable for the army, so as to pay for him no more than his real value. The scale is continuous in each category from the minimum to the maximum."

"The *hollow back* is generally the cause of the greatest variations; it depreciates the horse for the saddle to a great extent; too much exaggerated, it even renders him altogether unfit for this service, whilst

under the saddle his neck projects as well as his head, which gives a certain grace to the gaits.

"It must not be forgotten, however, that a slightly hollow-backed horse with a narrow chest, and scarcely four years old, will be strong and broad enough at six years old. Proper consideration is not always given to the difference existing between the four-year-old and the five- or six-year-old horse. With the four-year-old horse everything is clumsily bundled up; his future condition must be guessed at; he will certainly gain. The six-year-old horse, on the contrary, will remain about the same. Still, the horse and especially the mare six years of age, which have never had anything but grass, are like those of four years old.

"Whilst confining ourselves to the regular limits of height, we must not class a horse *to the centimetre;* our judgment must be founded upon his construction, his ampleness, his expression, his degree of thoroughbred descent, and his gaits. A certain horse of 1.54 metres will make a good cuirassier if he has a strong build; another of the same height can only make an ordinary dragoon if he possesses a medium development; another of 1.60 metres is good for nothing if he is *leggy,* lanky, and weedy.

"Only the horse which is really worthy of the name should be classed as an officer's horse; we should not yield to simply apparent qualities which are not backed by strength and endurance. Reasoning thus, it would often happen that the officers' horses would be inferior to the troop horses.

"The principal centres of production and amelioration in France are Normandy, Brittany, Vendée, Poitou, Limousin, Bigorre, and Morvan, which produce horses suitable for the saddle. The Franche-Comté, Lorraine, Ardennes, Boulonnais, Perche, and the Pays de Caux are, in geographical order, the countries where draught-horses are especially predominant."

CHAPTER IV.

HORSES OF INDUSTRY AND COMMERCE.

We will consider in this chapter all draught-horses, by far the most numerous class, including as it does the animals employed in commerce and agriculture, in the service of workshops and manufactories, in farm-labor, in omnibuses and tramways, and in all sorts of

heavy transportation, in the retail deliveries of large stores, for hackney cabs and coaches,—which, in a word, are used for all the special requirements, so numerous and so various, of the ordinary city and country life.

The very diversity of these requirements renders impossible a detailed classification of the horses thus employed. As a general rule, they are used either at a walk or at a trot. In the first case, of course, the burden is always considerable as compared with that in the second. The conformation must therefore be proportionally different.

This fact permits us to establish two large divisions in this category : *heavy-draught* horses and *light-draught* horses. But among heavy-draught subjects there are some whose work is alternately accomplished at a walk or at a trot, and which resemble very much the slow heavy-draught variety by their large size and the bulk of the weight which they carry, but are distinguished from the light-draught horses by an inferior speed and less slender forms. We have previously given them the name *fast heavy-draught* horses (see page 409).

Such are the three tolerably well-defined groups into which *horses of service*, properly so called, may be divided. Difficulties arise as soon as we undertake to establish secondary divisions. The reason of this is that the three principal factors of the general form, height, bulk, and the gaits, vary only within scarcely appreciable limits, according to the destinations.

It is less the whole conformation than the education imparted with a view to the adaptation desired which principally specializes a particular aptitude in a given category, like that of the heavy-draught, for example.

Thus, the shaft-horse, the heavy cart-horse, the tow-horse, the dray-horse, the horse that unloads wood upon the wharf, the horse that is employed to hold the cart back when going down a descent, or to help to draw it when going up a sharp incline, all these are draught-horses that are recognizable as such at first sight, but which education, training, and habit have rendered peculiarly fit for some special service. No doubt the qualities which make special motors of them imply some physical modifications ; but these are imperceptible, owing to the part played by the moral modifications. Now, we must be careful not to confound, among these changes in the form of the body, those which result from actual adaptation and those which proceed from usage. The first are incomparably weaker than the second, and cannot be considered as capable of realizing distinct types of conformation unless these changes

have been produced and transmitted during numerous generations. For this reason, we shall confine ourselves to generalities in what concerns the great divisions of the horses of industry and commerce.

A.—Slow Heavy-Draught Horses.

These animals are always employed at a walk. We will take as a type the **dray-horses,** which are usually employed for hauling building materials, wood, stones, and iron, and which are harnessed to those

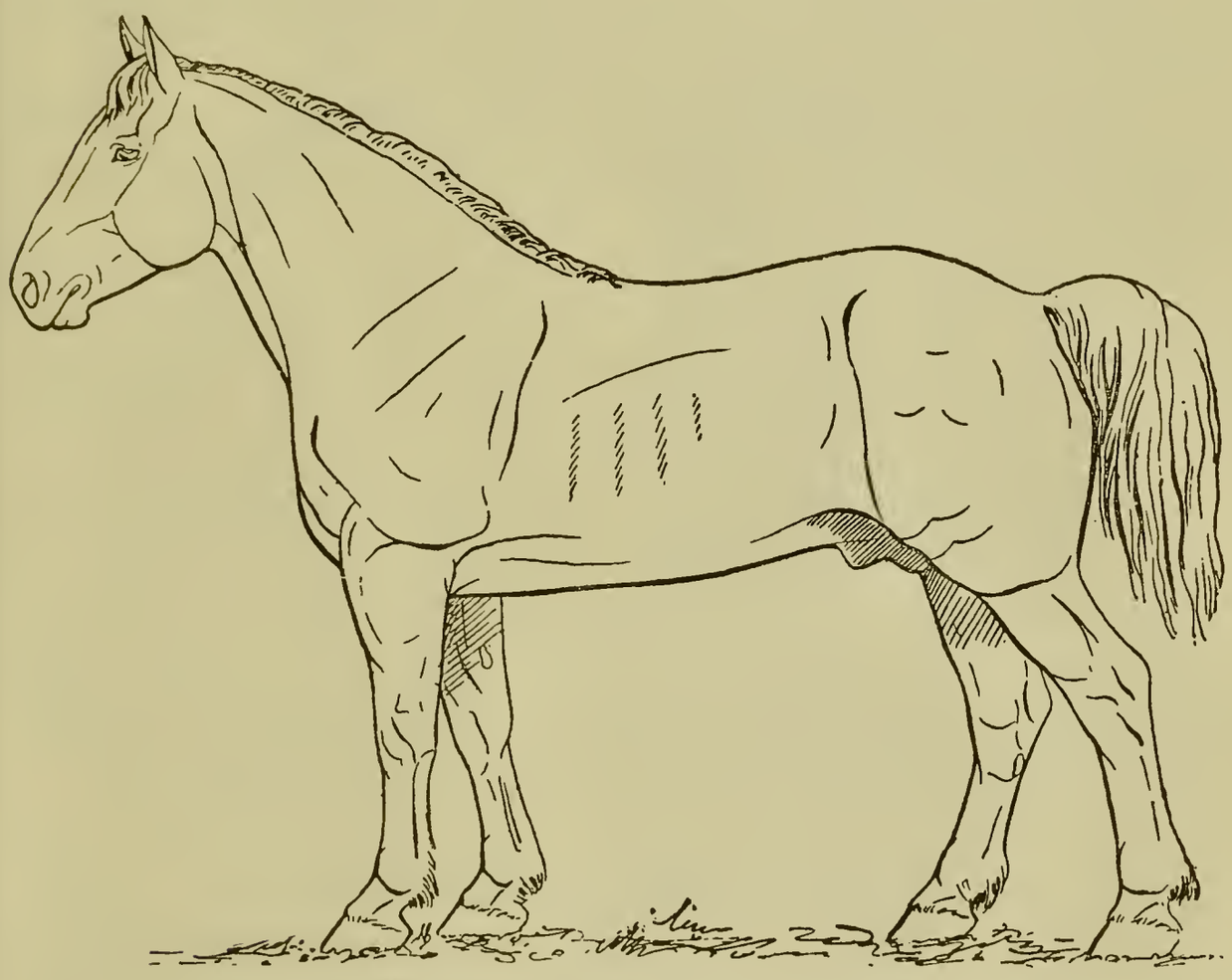


FIG. 344.—Slow heavy-draught horse (dray-horse).
(Reproduced from a photograph belonging to M. Delton.)

vehicles known as *drays,* loaded with enormous weights, also to heavy wagons, carts, etc. ; in a word, to all two- or four-wheeled vehicles intended for heavy traction. The dray-horse is rarely harnessed alone ; generally four or five horses similar to him, but sometimes smaller, are driven in the same team.

With regard to **conformation,** preference is for a body that is massive, low-set, ample, very muscular, short-flanked, cylindrical, with solid, large, and broad limbs, good feet, good physiognomy, ardor, and endurance (Fig. 344). He is preferred entire, as he is then more vigor-

ous. In this connection those horses are reserved as shaft-horses which are nearest to perfection; their loins are short and very straight, their croups well made, their members very strong, of good quality and perfect equilibrium. Unfortunately, owners are far from always attending to these requirements; they too often employ as a shaft-horse their tallest horse, wrongly imagining that muscular power and other qualities necessary for this work are directly and exclusively in proportion to the height.

The **height** is very great, on account of the volume and weight of the loads to be moved. It varies from 1.55 metres to 1.75 metres; exceptionally, it exceeds the last figure; in this case, the horse is in most instances badly conformed and defective.

As to the **coat**, little importance is attached to it; however, custom favors the dapple and the dark gray more than the coats called *colored*, —that is to say, the bay, chestnut, roan, black, etc.

As to **prices**, they vary greatly, according as the animals are destined for industry and commerce or are bought for breeding purposes. On an average, geldings, mares, and non-producing stallions cost from $300 to $500; stallions from $600 to $1000. Shaft-horses, all things being equal, bring twenty-five per cent. more than the others, but it is daily becoming more and more difficult to obtain them, on account of the enormous competition of the Americans on the French market. It is no exaggeration to say that every year the breeders of the Perche and the Beauce export to the United States from twelve to fifteen hundred of their handsomest gray horses, which the American purchasers buy for stallions, at from $1200 to $1600.

B.—Fast Heavy-Draught Horses.

As we have said, the horses of this category differ from those of the preceding in that they alternate the trot with the walk, the loads which they pull being much less heavy. In Paris, they are specially used for brewers' and milkmen's wagons, and for omnibuses and tramways.

They are of smaller stature, and the body is less massive, less ample, and less muscular; on the other hand, they have longer, lighter, and more slender members, longer necks, and a more rapid gait.

Brewers' Horses (Fig. 345) are from 1.62 metres to 1.65 metres high. They are harnessed singly to small two-wheeled wagons called *brasseuses*, also in pairs to light drays. They trot almost invariably. Most of them come from Perche, Beauce, and Normandy (Eure and

Seine-Inférieure). Small Boulonnais and some coarse Breton horses are found among them. Their average price varies from $300 to

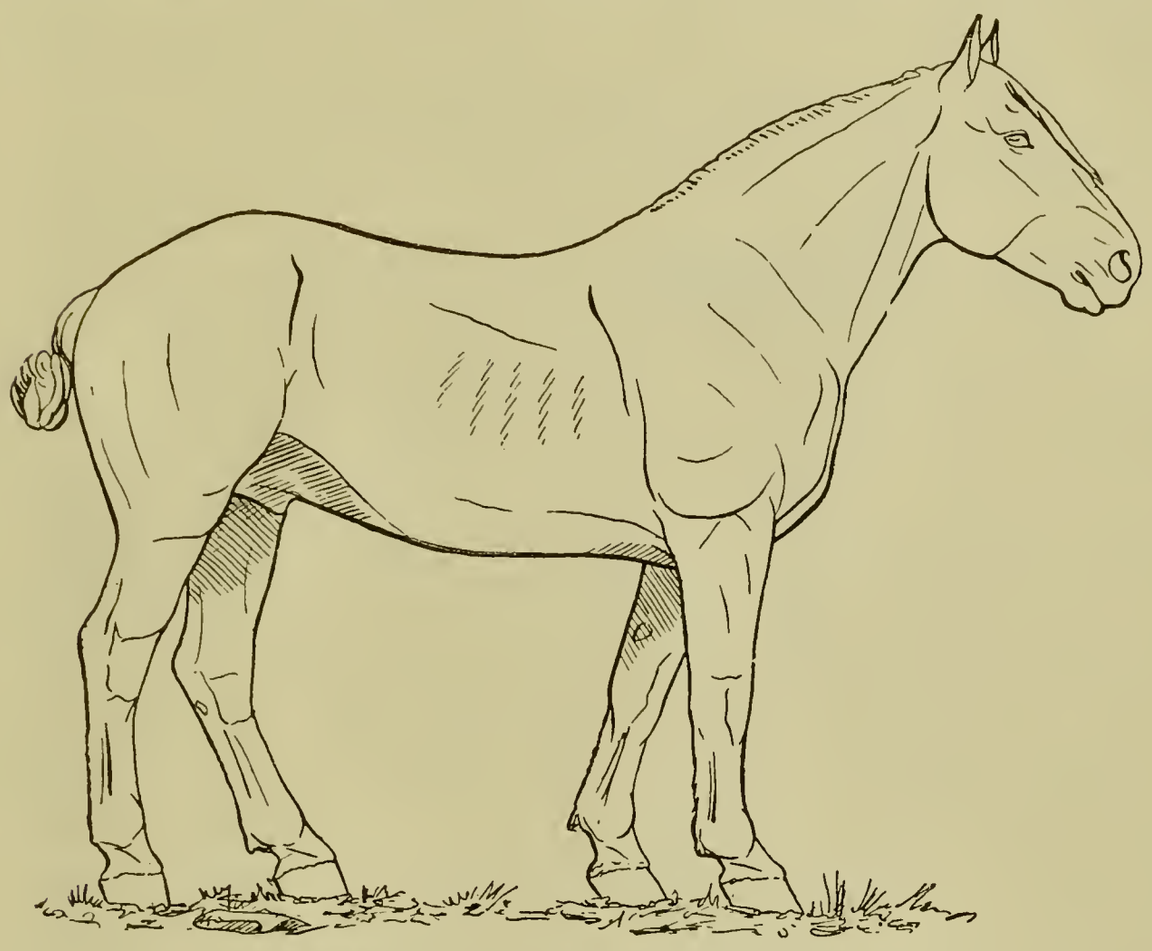


FIG. 345.—Fast heavy-draught horse (brewers').
(Reproduced from a photograph belonging to M. Delton.)

$350; but it is never very high, for they are not in demand as stallions; they are not bulky enough for this service.

The **milkmen's horses** are a little smaller; their height is only 1.60 metres. In France, they are driven to two-wheeled wagons called *laitières*. They come from the same localities as the preceding, but they are lighter in weight, more slender, and more active. Their price varies from $300 to $320.

The subjects which we describe under the names of **stage-coach, omnibus,** and **tramway horses,** more bulky and heavier, although not so tall, mark well the transition between the types of the fast heavy-draught, of which we have just spoken, and those of light-draught, which follow immediately afterwards. They are worked in twos and in threes in railroad trucks, in omnibuses which are used by large transportation companies, and in the street-cars, which, in spite of their considerable volume, have a very weak coefficient of traction, allowing the use of lighter motors, and therefore lessening the expense of purchase and of keep.

The largest of these horses are those used by the French express companies; their height is from 1.62 metres to 1.65 metres; then

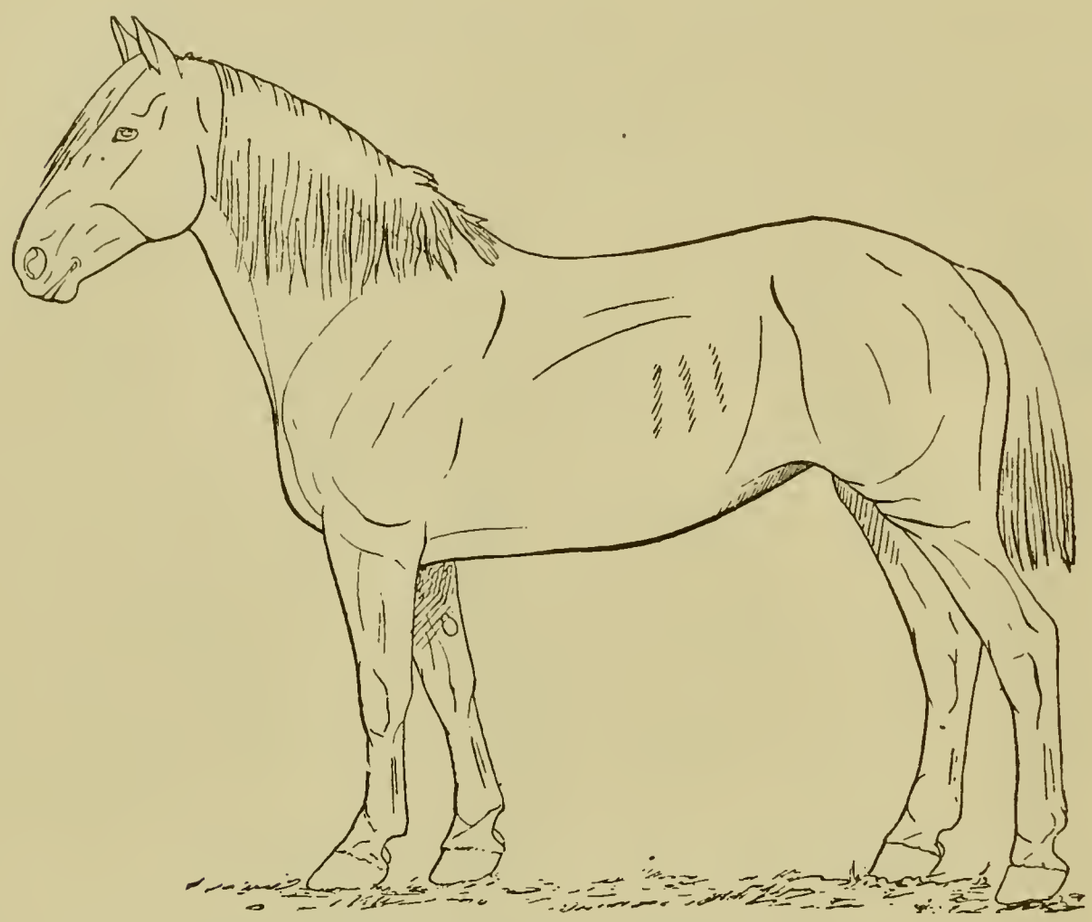


FIG. 346.—**Vélocité**, Percheron mare of the Compagnie générale des omnibus. Grand prize of the Universal Exposition of 1878.
(Reproduced from a photograph belonging to M. Delton.)

come those of the three-horse omnibus, and of the street-cars, which are 1.60 metres to 1.62 metres; those of the tramways rank last; their height varies from 1.58 metres to 1.60 metres.

It is impossible to indicate by words the differences of conformation which distinguish these animals from the preceding. We refer the reader to what we have already said on page 409. They are of about the same type, with more or less bulk and speed according to the height and the purpose of use. But the volume remains considerable in proportion to the members, which, without losing any of their strength, become longer and more slender to give more extent to the movements and increase the rapidity of the steps (Fig. 346).

The Perche, Beauce, Brittany, Normandy, and the Ardennes are the sections which furnish these horses for commerce. Those of Normandy come from Eure, Seine-Inférieure, and Orne, particularly from the vicinity of Mortagne.

The express horses and the street-railroad horses—that is to say,

the largest division of the group—are worth from $280 to $350. The average price of those of the Compagnie générale des omnibus et tramways of Paris is $250; a little more or a little less, according to circumstances.

C.—Light-Draught Horses.

In this category we have placed the horses whose habitual step is the fast trot.

The true type which formerly represented it was the **post-horse,** now somewhat scarce, but still reserved for certain services of luxury. Teams of post-horses are in fact rather in vogue in châteaux, country residences, and villas during the hunting, the racing, or the bathing season, for visits among relatives, friends, or guests.

The post-horse may be considered, from his conformation and breeding, as the intermediate between the small coach-horse and the fast heavy-draught horse. He should be low-set, rather plump, with good members, regular body, with a fine neck, a horizontal croup, and long gaits. His height varies from 1.56 metres to 1.58 metres. These characters make him resemble very closely the cob, whose finer and more brilliant qualities he does not, however, possess. He is driven in twos or in fours in mail-coaches and family carriages. A few years ago the dark gray was the color preferred for this kind of horses; now the bay and the black are preferred. Most of these horses come from the vicinity of Mortagne (Orne), Côtes-du-Nord, and, especially, Finistère, where they are found in the Conquet, in the neighborhood of St. Renan and Trélabu. Their average price is from $300 to $350.

Secondary to these animals, but more common, less elegant, and of less regular form, we place the **geldings and mares of commerce,** which are used for all sorts of professions and industries.

Their **height** varies from 1.58 metres to 1.65 metres, according to the weight of the vehicles which they are to draw; it is rarely as high as 1.70 metres; in such cases they are nearly always thin, lanky, long-legged, and delicate. They are constantly worked alone, their load being seldom heavy. They come principally from the Pays de Caux (arrondissements of Havre, Dieppe, and Yvetot), the Ardennes, Mayenne, Sarthe, and Côtes-du-Nord. Their **price** varies from $200 to $400.

In the series of light-draught subjects are found many **small common horses,** suitable for fast individual or public services. They are often designated (especially in Brittany and Normandy) by the name *bidets*, or *nags*, but they have nothing in common with the

animals which were formerly called *bidets d'allure*, whose gait was a running-walk, which were used under the saddle, and disappeared with the custom of travelling on horseback, since the improvement of the roads and the use of railroads. In large cities they are represented by horses for hire. Energetic, very robust, inured to fatigue and privations, of a somewhat regular conformation, light, and quick, they are harnessed alone or in pairs to small carriages, such as small breaks, small upholstery wagons, pleasure-carts, tilburies, cabriolets, etc. For public service they are used in the various kinds of coaches (coupés, victorias, cabs), and also, in some provincial towns, on tramways.

Their medium height varies from 1.50 metres to 1.56 metres, and their cost from $160 to $180.

They have no special centre of production, but are ordinarily furnished by the less fertile districts.

SECTION EIGHTH.

VICIOUS HORSES.

Up to this point we have occupied ourselves only with the external conformation of the horse, and the reader should by this time be in possession of the elements necessary to appreciate it thoroughly. Still, this will not be sufficient for him. It may in fact happen that the animal has an irreproachable form, superb actions, energy, and ardor, and yet is deficient in the *moral qualities* necessary to utilize, for the benefit of those who use him, all the advantages which the perfection of his mechanism confers upon him. Poorly endowed in this respect, he will expend his forces at a loss, under the influence of the *bad habits* which he has contracted; or he will be harmful, dangerous, unserviceable, on account of his *vices*, which is a much more serious matter, especially so far as the public interest is concerned. A rapid examination of his moral imperfections, whether slight or grave, becomes an indispensable complement of the preceding sections. We will divide this subject into two chapters:

In the first we will study the *vices* or *vicious habits*,—that is to say, the dispositions contracted by frequent repetition of injurious actions, which, however, involve no very bad consequences, implying no evil natural inclinations, and never entirely preventing the utilization of the horse.

In the second we will pass in review the *vices properly so called*,—that is to say, the serious defects, showing an indocile, stubborn, or timorous nature, a bad education, an indomitable aggressive character, defects which, in a word, render the animal dangerous or almost useless.

The question to be solved is this: *given a vicious horse, how are we to recognize him?*

CHAPTER I.

WHIMS AND VICIOUS HABITS.

We designate as **whims, bad** or **vicious habits,** a certain number of acts, resulting in most instances from idleness, which the horse free from restraint incessantly repeats, without any other motive, in reality, than the gratification of desires which at length become imperative, but which always more or less interfere with his complete utilization. The subjects of these whims may be classified as follows :

1st. Horses which loll the tongue, double it up, or continually protrude it from the mouth.

2d. Horses which strike the lower lip against the upper.

3d. Horses which rub the lower extremity of the head against the manger, or the tail against surrounding objects.

4th. Horses which shake the head up and down or jerk the reins.

5th. Horses which grasp the branches of the bit with the lower lip.

6th. Horses which tear their blankets with the teeth.

7th. Horses which rest one hind-foot upon the other.

8th. Horses which lie down cow-fashion.

9th. Horses which strip their halters.

10th. Horses which roll as soon as they are harnessed, or upon entering the stable after working.

11th. Horses which *trot in the stable.*

12th. Horses which paw in the stable.

13th. Horses which *weave* like a bear.

14th. Horses which eat earth.

15th. Horses which crib or suck wind.

We pass over divers other vices of too little importance to deserve mention here. They consist most frequently of a kind of sudden, convulsive, and involuntary movement of certain regions, which the animal has inadvertently contracted by degrees, and which has no other effect than that of rendering him ungraceful. Ordinarily, this contraction has its seat in the face, in some of the nasal muscles, the lips, the cheeks, or the eyelids. At other times it takes place in one or other of the muscles of the head ; the latter then shakes by slight jerks, more or less marked and more or less frequently repeated according to circumstances. Finally, there are cases in which the same phenomenon is observed in the muscles of the neck, which determines

a more excessive displacement, and is therefore more disagreeable to the eye.

1st. **Horses which loll the Tongue, double it up, or continually protrude it from the Mouth.**—When describing the region of the tongue, we had occasion to say a few words about these vicious habits. It is known that certain horses during work protrude the tongue from the buccal cavity, usually either to the left or to the right, sometimes in front. This defect constitutes what is called *lolling the tongue*, or *having a pendulous tongue*, but it is not, as one might suppose, always the result of a paralysis of the lingual muscles.

On other occasions, a horse will alternately protrude his tongue from his mouth and retract it somewhat as serpents do: he is then said to have a snake's tongue.

Sometimes the animal doubles up the tongue,—that is to say, folds the free part backward and underneath, without its being visible, however, on the exterior.

Finally, there are horses which displace the tongue in such a manner that, instead of supporting the bit, it lies on top of the latter. The inconveniences which result from these four different lingual displacements are not identical. The lolling tongue, besides giving a stupid expression to the face, is exposed to cuts, often deep, which hinder the prehension of food, its mastication, insalivation, and deglutition.

The serpentine tongue is a less important defect: the most serious fault to be found with it is the great loss of saliva which it occasions, for it is drawn back into the mouth only after it has become dried in order to become moistened again. Besides, it becomes filthy and soils the parts of the harness which it touches.

As to the other habits, they injure the bitting by preventing the bit from having its ordinary point of support. They are remedied by tightening the curb.

2d. **Horses which strike the Lower Lip against the Upper.**—Certain horses, harnessed, mounted, at rest, or during exercise, in the stable or outside, have the bad habit of continually moving their lower lip, by sudden and rapid to-and-fro movements, which cause it to strike, sometimes with a noise, against the upper lip. This singular vice is nothing worse than unpleasant. In the language of horsemen, it is called *cracking nuts*. It is prevented either by adapting to the bit a lip-strap, or by fastening to the lower part of its two branches a sort of metallic cross-piece, conforming with the shape of

the tuft of the chin and limiting the descending movements of the lower lip.

3d. **Horses which rub the Lower Extremity of the Head against the Manger, or the Tail against surrounding Objects.**—In the stable we sometimes see a horse rubbing the end of his nose against the side of the manger, or the tuft of his chin against the bottom of the latter. He then moves his head alternately from one side to the other, or from before to behind, with provoking persistence, as if he experienced from these manœuvres a pleasant tickling sensation. This habit is indulged in during the intervals between meals, when the animal has no food with which to occupy himself. To remedy this is very difficult, if not impossible; fortunately, it has no serious drawback.

It is different, however, with horses which rub the base of the tail against surrounding objects, as the sides of the stall. The hairs of the tail soon become dishevelled, tangled, break, and fall off, under the influence of repeated rubbings. This disfigures the part very much. No doubt uncleanliness, or disease of the skin, ordinarily causes intense itching in this region. Often, however, this symptom results from the presence of worms in the intestine. Attention should be especially paid to this. An appropriate treatment will remove the cause and its effect at the same time.

4th. **Horses which shake the Head or jerk the Reins.**—In either of these cases the horse gives his head alternate movements of extension and flexion when he is in harness or mounted. With the driving-horse or the draught-horse, the reins, constantly drawn forward or backward, may be caught by the extremity of the shaft or the pole, and annoy the driver. With saddle-horses, besides the difficulty in keeping a proper hold of the reins, the movements of the head, when they are extensive, jerk the arms and the body of the rider with great violence, and sometimes may even unseat him. On the other hand, the horse that is given to this habit pays no attention to the ground upon which he moves, and hence is liable to stumble and fall.

Outside of the dressing and the combined action of the reins, there is but one remedy for this habit, and that is the employment of a martingale of suitable length.

We do not allude here to horses which practise the habit on account of an exaggerated sensibility of the bars, or to those whose dressing has not yet been completed, horses to whom the pressure of the bit is

disagreeable, annoying, or painful. Under these circumstances, it is evident that the pressure should be diminished, either by modifying the form of the bit, or by making the traction of the reins proportional to the degree of sensibility of the mouth.

5th. **Horses which grasp the Branches of the Bit with the Lower Lip.**—This habit, a very common one, shows itself during work, in walking, in trotting, and more rarely in galloping. Usually it is with the lower lip that the animal seizes one of the branches of the bit. Sometimes he succeeds in seizing it between his teeth, especially if the bit is of the kind called *pelham*, or if the bar is broken. In such cases, the defect may become serious at any moment,—for example, in places where it is important to drive with care to avoid obstacles in the road. Usually a light jerk of the reins will compel the horse to let go and take his attention away from it. But when this is inefficacious, the false curb must be applied, or even a bit having its branches curved backward.

6th. **Horses which tear their Blankets with the Teeth.**—There are horses which have the habit of biting and tearing their blankets. Perhaps the salty taste which is found in woollen fabrics impregnated with sweat or other excrementitious productions of the skin, leads them at first to lick the blanket, and then to tear it; but never, as is thought by some, do they eat it. The inconvenience is more serious to the owner than to the animal, since it occasions expensive repairs. This can be avoided by using a bar attached at one end to the halter and at the other to the surcingle, which prevents the lateral inclination of the head and neck. Another means is often employed which, in our opinion, is more efficacious. It is a kind of *bib*, made of a piece of woollen cloth or of leather, fastened at one extremity to the posterior part and the sides of the nose-band of the halter, the other extremity hanging free a certain distance below the lips. This bib interposes between the teeth and the blanket every time the horse attempts to bite the latter. He never succeeds in doing more than biting the leather without being able to tear it, since it offers no resistance to his efforts. On the other hand, however, the bib soon becomes soiled by the saliva and the food, so that it acquires a disagreeable odor, and soon wears out, rendering its frequent renewal necessary, which is expensive.

7th. **Horses which rest one Hind-Foot upon the other.**—It is not a rare thing to see a horse when he is tired rest himself by

placing the plantar surface of one hind-foot, semi-flexed, upon the anterior face of the other. Some subjects acquire this habit under the influence of certain causes apart from fatigue, but as yet insufficiently ascertained. Perhaps the unevenness of the stable floor, as we have observed, makes it difficult for him to stand upright, and may bring about this result.

However this may be, the prolonged and frequently-repeated contact of the shoe occasions wounds of the coronet and contusions of the coronary band. Sometimes even, as a consequence of these latter, the superior border of the wall becomes thickened, entirely changing the direction of its anterior face and tending to render it more or less perpendicular to the ground.

The only means of preventing this defect consists in protecting the parts exposed to wounds by a leather pad or boot.

8th. **Horses which lie down Cow-Fashion.**—The cause of this habit has thus far eluded observation. The horses which manifest it assume the decubitus peculiar to ruminants,—that is to say, they hold their anterior members flexed under the chest. The result of this is that the extremity of the branches of the shoe, the heels (always on the inner side), presses against the elbow. From its prolonged contact and friction there results at first an irritation of the skin, then sometimes a wound, but more usually an indolent tumor capable of acquiring a considerable volume, and called a *shoe-boil*, on account of the cause which gives rise to it. In treating of the *elbow* (page 221), we said that during several years we kept trace of a horse which was actively worked and which had at each elbow an enlargement of this kind, of the size of a man's head. Generally, the tumor is annoying and ungraceful rather than harmful. However, it may become so painful as to necessitate suspension of work. As soon as an excoriation or evidence of friction is seen on the surface of this region, it is important to ascertain the animal's usual mode of decubitus. If he lies down like a cow, it will be advisable to remedy the habit either by protecting the foot with a boot, or, preferably, by shortening the inside heel of the shoe to prevent it from rubbing against the elbow.

9th. **Horses which strip their Halters.**—This expression is used in horse language to indicate that a horse is in the habit of extricating his head from the halter.

The inconvenience of such a habit is often of no consequence, especially when the horse is alone in the stable. However, if there is

fodder in the stable, or if the oat-box has been left open, a greedy, gluttonous horse is apt to contract a fatal indigestion. In other cases he goes and scents around his neighbors, attempts to fight, teases the mares and perhaps mounts them if he be a stallion, and is liable to injuries from bites and kicks, as well as to falls, wounds, contusions, fractures, and accidents of all kinds.

A plain strap around the neck, instead of the halter, would often be sufficient to keep the horse in his place, if it did not leave too much liberty to the head. Hence it is better to employ at the same time both neck-strap and halter, each fastened separately to the manger. But it would be erroneous to believe that a throat-latch added to the halter will always be sufficient to check this practice, as certain authors thought, particularly Cardini.[1] We have from personal knowledge numerous proofs to the contrary.

10th. **Horses which roll as soon as they are harnessed or when they return to the Stable after working.**—Another very disagreeable habit is that of rolling upon entering the stable after work, or on being harnessed. Some horses experience this desire to such an extent that they seek its gratification at every opportunity. After an insignificant exercise, with a harness perfect in regard to its adjustment, under conditions, therefore, when the horse can be neither tired nor inconvenienced, he will commence to roll as soon as he is not watched. The consequences of this vice are much more serious for the owner than for the animal himself. The latter only runs the risk of getting soiled; he is rarely injured. But it often happens that he breaks the saddle, tears his blankets, and ruins the harness. Under these conditions, the expenses of repairing become onerous. Fortunately, the vice is easily prevented by tying the horse, so that he cannot lie down until the harness has been either put on or removed.

11th. **Horses which trot in the Stable.**—This habit is rare; however, several horses have furnished us examples of it. In the stable, in front of the manger, they move successively upon their diagonal bipeds with considerable rapidity, thus accomplishing a sort of stationary trot, but more or less irregular and interrupted. We think that regular exercise instead of a prolonged stay in the stable would overcome this vice. The result of the habit, when it exists in an exaggerated degree, is to fatigue the animal to no purpose whatever. In this case, his anterior members must be fettered or hobbled.

---

[1] Cardini, Dictionnaire d'hippiatrique et d'équitation, Paris, 1848.

12th. **Horses which paw in the Stable.**—Certain subjects contract the habit of persistently pawing the floor of their stable with one of their fore-feet. In cases of colic the horse frequently manifests, in this manner, the uneasiness and pain which he suffers. We do not allude here to this symptom. We wish to speak more especially of an analogous habit, which has no morbid cause, but which evidences the restlessness the animal feels when alone in the stable, when he has insufficient exercise. This is a most disagreeable vice. Besides useless fatigue and loss of energy, it causes a rapid wearing out of the shoe, necessitating its more frequent renewal, and gives rise to incessant noise, well-nigh unbearable, especially at night-time, an inconvenience of no trifling nature when the stable occupies the first floor of a dwelling-house. The means of remedying this habit consists in giving the horse proper daily work, and, if need be, from time to time fettering the two anterior members.

13th. **Horses which weave.**—This habit, similar to that of the bear, consists in lateral oscillations of the head and neck, accompanied by an analogous and alternate movement of the body upon the anterior members. Sometimes these members retain the same position, at other times one foot is slightly raised, the left, for example, when the movement takes place to the right, and *vice versa.* The subjects which especially contract this habit are those which stand too long in the stable, and whose fore-feet rest upon an uneven stable floor. Generally being of an irritable temperament, they assume a particular attitude in order to execute it; their anterior feet, separated from each other, diverge; their toes are turned outward like the outbow-footed horse. The habit is indulged in with more or less frequency, but especially during the intervals between meals. Its principal effect is a useless fatigue, and it is with much difficulty that the habit can be prevented. This may be effected, however, by attaching the animal with two straps of such a length that the head can still be raised and lowered, but cannot be turned to the right or the left.

14th. **Horses which eat Earth.**—This vice is a depravation of the appetite, which is by no means rare in some localities. Perhaps the saline taste of certain soils causes the animals in some cases to contract the habit. But, ordinarily, the insoluble and insipid minerals thus swallowed are not capable of stimulating the taste. Thus, examples have been recorded of horses which eat chalk; we have seen several of them in Champagne. They had at first fallen into the habit of

licking the plastering on the walls of their stables, then they had bitten it with the teeth, and finally had eaten it.

At any rate, the facts of which we speak are exact and are, besides, familiar to physiologists and pathologists. Are they always the result of a vicious habit and bad education, or are they rather the expression of a need of the organism which does not find a sufficient quantity of earthy salts in the ordinary aliments? This has not yet been demonstrated. The truth resides, in all probability, in both of these hypotheses.

Of itself, the vice of eating earth may give rise to very serious consequences. Subjects which suffer from it are exposed, among other things, to frequent colics, and even to irremediable intestinal obstructions. Their purchase, therefore, is not to be recommended, but, in France, this vice is not considered as belonging to the list of redhibitory vices. We shall see that the case is entirely different with the following vice, which consists in *swallowing air*.

15th. **Horses which have the Vice of "Wind-Sucking," or swallowing Air.**—The various modes of swallowing air are vulgarly known by the names *cribbing* and *wind-sucking*. In the great majority of cases, this habit is accompanied with a guttural noise very much resembling an eructation; exceptionally, this noise is not made.

Authors are far from agreeing upon the true nature of cribbing. Nearly all consider it as proceeding from a simple *eructation of gas* through the mouth. Others consider it as resulting from a *deglutition of air*. Notwithstanding the number and authority of those who express an opinion contrary to ours, we hold firmly to our view, for it rests upon physiological and experimental facts to which no serious objection has yet been offered.[1]

In the first place, the guttural noise has not the characters of that of *belching*, but is rather an effort having its seat in the larynx. Upon a horse which cribbed with a loud sound, we practised tracheotomy and divided the two recurrent laryngeal nerves.

The animal continued to crib; but the sound disappeared on account of the paralysis of the larynx and the opening made in the trachea.

---

[1] See, for further details:

Liautard, Du tic à l'appui, in Journal de médecine vétérinaire publié à l'École de Lyon, 1861, pp. 552 et 600.

Farges, Du tic et de ses diverses espèces dans le cheval, in Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, 1864, p. 5.

Arm. Goubaux, Communication sur le tic proprement dit, in Journal de médecine vétérinaire publié à l'École de Lyon, 1866, p. 249.

Besides, to suppose that it is produced by an eructation would make it necessary to admit that horses which crib have the power of ejecting into the œsophagus the gas contained in their stomach. Such is not the case; for we have never seen, at the autopsy, any abnormal dilatation of the cardiac end of the stomach; a stomach inflated through the pylorus will not allow any escape of air from the œsophagus, free from ligature, no matter what pressure may be employed.

We will add that if the guttural air were an eructation, as is believed, we could not understand why such horses suffer from abdominal tympanites still more when they crib persistently, whilst we know that their meteorism disappears promptly as soon as the gas is ejected through the anus. H. Bouley affirms, however, that he saw a horse belch and perceived the grassy odor of the gases ejected by the animal. An observation of the same kind has been made by one of our pupils, which case we published in the *Journal de l'École vétérinaire de Lyon.* By no means disputing the exactness of these facts, we simply consider them to be pure coincidences, very rare and altogether exceptional.

What we maintain is that *horses which crib swallow air.*

To demonstrate this, it suffices to expose the œsophagus and slightly raise it, as in performing œsophagotomy. We shall then see, after each effort, a mouthful of air descending through this passage in the direction of the stomach.

Another and even more palpable proof consists in collecting, immediately after death, the gases contained in the stomach and the first portions of the intestine, and submitting them to a chemical analysis. Clément, at our request, undertook these researches, when he was principal of the chemical laboratory in the veterinary school of Alfort. In the stomach, always more or less distended, he found pure air; in the small intestine he also found air, but it was modified on account of its mixture with the gaseous products of digestion.

These experiments, therefore, show that the essential character of this vice is a deglutition of air, frequently laborious and at such times accompanied by a noise resulting from an effort having its seat in the larynx.

The horse does not always perform this air-swallowing in the same manner. Sometimes he does not take any point of support; sometimes, on the contrary, the inferior extremity of his head is supported upon a resisting body in order to render the act easier. From these different methods come the distinctions of *cribbing in the air*, or *wind-sucking*, and *cribbing with support*, according to the method employed by the animal.

The old French law upon the *redhibitory vices* ranked cribbing in the air, without support or without wear of the teeth, among the vices capable of causing a nullification of the sale. At present, according to the new law of 1884, *cribbing properly so called*, whatever its form, *with or without wear of the teeth*, is to be considered as *redhibitory*.

The vice manifests itself usually as follows: To *crib in the air*, the animal begins by agitating his lips by frequent, rapid, and slight up-and-down movements of these organs; then he suddenly lowers his head, sometimes to a level with his knees, and then swallows a mouthful of air, with or without the production of the guttural sound which has wrongly been compared to an eructation. Often this effort is not successful; in this case it is confined to a simple deglutition of saliva, which, however, does not appear to give the desired satisfaction, since the attempts are renewed until the desire is satisfied.

Cribbing *with support* differs from the preceding only in this,—that in order to execute it the inferior extremity of the head is supported upon a resisting body of some kind. Horses which are prevented from cribbing in this manner sometimes learn to crib in the air, and *vice versa*. We have seen (page 753) that the body chosen as the point of support is very variable. Sometimes it is the bottom of the manger, the border of the manger, the internal or the external edge of this border, the lower cross-piece of the hay-rack, the halter-strap; sometimes it is the window-sill, the side of a stall, the end of the shaft, that of the pole, the harness of his mate, etc.; more rarely the animal cribs upon himself. In most instances, the teeth effect the support; in other cases it is the lips, the tuft of the chin, the inferior border of the jaw. The subject often previously moves his lips over the body which he is going to seize, or he licks it and wets it with saliva. Then he presses forcibly on it, arches his neck if this body is somewhat low, and, finally, energetically contracts his inferior cervical muscles, especially the sterno-maxillaries,[1] and at that moment produces the guttural noise of which we have spoken.

When the teeth rest on the point of support, there is an abnormal wear of the incisors. As the reader already knows the various characters of this wear (see page 753), we shall not refer to it again. We need only bear in mind that in cases of expert testimony it is useful to prove its existence, and to show clearly that it is the necessary consequence of the manner in which the support is effected. Horses

[1] At autopsies, we have frequently noticed, as M. Berthe has done, that these muscles are much more voluminous than under ordinary conditions.

indulge in this vice during meals or during the intervals between meals, and repeat it with more or less frequency and persistence. Some desist from the practice in the presence of strangers; others do it only when they are alone in the stable; the greater number, however, indulge in it whenever they experience the desire; and there are some in which the accidental arrival of some one in their stable provokes the desire to crib. This vice is not always equally easy to detect. Certain subjects must be carefully watched for a long time; in some cases the observer is even obliged to conceal himself to detect them. The expert should never neglect this precaution when he has any doubts as to the case.

Long periods of intermittence in the manifestation of this act have been recorded. Bellanger tells us of a cribber which, during the Italian campaign of 1858, had never cribbed, but which resumed this habit upon his return to his stable in Paris. The same observation may be made every day. Very often the removal or change of the body which acts as a support will be sufficient to cause the disappearance of this defect. Unfortunately, this remedial measure is only temporary in its effect; the animal soon manages to find a new place, and the habit is recommenced.

Many remedies for cribbing have been devised. The one which seems to give the best results is a leather strap placed more or less tightly around the neck at the level of the throat. In conjunction with work, it produces good effects upon vigorous horses which become restless through a too prolonged standing in the stable. We have performed tenotomy upon the two sterno-maxillary muscles, but without success. Cribbing horses are subject to flatulence of the intestines, as has been said. The quantity of air which they swallow is sometimes so enormous that it causes a distention of the intestines accompanied by colicky pains. Fortunately, the latter are not of a serious character. Brisk exercise and the occasional application of the whip, if necessary, forcing the animal to run, jump, and kick, will soon cause the expulsion of the gas. But it escapes through the anus and not through the œsophagus.

Cribbers are, moreover, a source of useless expense to their owners, because they mutilate the hay-rack, the manger, the harness, etc., upon which they apply their teeth. Besides, the wear of their teeth is sometimes so marked that they experience inconveniences from it, principally when their incisors are shortened to a level with the gums. Horses that crib have been supposed to require a longer time to eat their oats, and to lose a portion during feeding, which led to their

being fed from nose-bags instead of from a manger. We are not of this opinion. Often have we taken note of the time required by cribbers to consume their ration. When they have an ordinary appetite it takes them about fourteen minutes to eat two litres of oats; if they drop a certain quantity of the feed, they will afterwards pick it up again from the ground. The loss of time and food is insignificant.

CHAPTER II.

VICES PROPERLY SO CALLED.

UNDER the above heading we class those *serious moral defects* which indicate an indocile, stubborn, or irritable nature, a bad education, an ungovernable temperament, an inclination to be aggressive, or to resist, —vices which, in a word, render the animal dangerous or almost useless.

Generally, horses which have these imperfections are called *vicious;* they are further designated in various ways, according to the vice with which they are affected. Thus, the *balky* horse is one which disobeys the command of his driver or refuses to go in the desired direction; the *biter*, one which attacks or defends himself with his teeth; the *kicker*, one which uses his hind-feet under similar circumstances; the *rearing* horse, one which raises the fore part of the body to strike or to dismount his rider; the *shyer*, one which is easily frightened by accidental things or circumstances for which he cannot account.

Sometimes vicious horses are qualified as *wicked*, and at other times as *stubborn*. There are some, however, for which specific names would be impossible. We will rapidly pass them in review.

§ 1. EXTERNAL MANIFESTATIONS PROPER TO EACH VICE.

1st. **Balky Horses.**—The balky horse, as already said, refuses to obey his rider or his driver.

Balkiness, one of the most common equine vices, is as frequently found in the saddle-horse as in the driving-horse. Sometimes the animal obstinately goes in a direction different from that in which he is desired to go; sometimes he refuses to go along certain roads, to pass by certain objects or certain houses; in other cases, he stops, notwithstanding the most energetic efforts of the rider or driver; or he will insist on going to the right, to the left, forward, backward, or will refuse to advance, to turn, to back, to jump, etc. It is not from fear, but from

stubbornness; not from a spirit of resistance, but from a determination to have his own way. It will be readily understood that such horses are the source of serious danger to those who drive them, since one has to contend constantly with them, and sometimes it becomes impossible to handle them by the ordinary means. Numerous accidents are thus occasioned in large cities, where the streets are always crowded. We have seen balky horses allow themselves to be belabored with blows rather than move one step; many will remain in the same spot, without offering any other resistance than a determined obstinacy. These are the least dangerous. Generally they make this vice still worse by striking with their fore-feet or by biting; in such cases, the best course to pursue is to await their pleasure; the wisest plan, however, would have been not to purchase them at all.

2d. **Horses difficult to Approach or to Groom.**—We include among vicious horses those which it is difficult to approach. As soon as such horses see any one coming near them, they set back their ears, stamp with their feet, strike or kick, show their teeth and try to bite. When loose in their stalls, they turn around and commence to kick. If they be placed in a single stall, it is often difficult to avoid their attacks. When they do not succeed in biting or striking, they press the attendant who approaches them against the side of the stall, even leaning down to squeeze him with still more force. Many of them, when mounted, have the habit of pressing the leg of the rider against trees, walls, and other objects. It is with a view to avoid accidents of this kind that all riding academies are provided with a wall inclined towards the track.

All these animals are skittish and irritable. We should approach them boldly, speak to them, and avoid raising the arms, and especially touching or stroking their hind-quarters. Gentleness, caresses, some little dainty, in a word, kind treatment, will have the happiest effect upon their disposition; while loud words, threats, and the use of the whip will nearly always render them intractable.

Certain subjects have, besides this vice, that of being difficult to groom. They bite their halter-strap when they are curried, snort, arch their back, try to lie down, press the groom against the stall, stamp, strike with the hind-feet, set back the ears, and show in a thousand ways their distaste for the grooming. When they are only skittish or ticklish, they are not very dangerous. If they are badly treated, however, they will soon become aggressive. They should therefore not be dressed with the curry-comb, nor should they be treated harshly; it

would also be well to tie the head to the hay-rack to protect one's self from bites and kicks.

When these simple means are not efficacious, others must be improvised according to circumstances. Recourse may be had, for example, to the muzzle, a side-line, a rope forming a loop around the neck, passed through the mouth, then around the hind pastern, and forward again through the halter, where it is tied or held by an assistant, etc. The important point is to secure the head and keep it in place; the proceedings, in this respect, vary according to the disposition of the localities, but it would be out of our scope to describe them in detail.

3d. **Horses difficult to Harness or to Mount.**—In most cases, a horse allows himself to be harnessed without any difficulty, especially if the harness causes him no pain by rubbing over sore places and is applied with care and gentleness.

Sometimes, however, he offers a most determined resistance. He kicks, strikes in front, rears, squeals, bites, and tries to lie down. Under these conditions, he becomes all the more dangerous according as the man who approaches him is loaded with the harness or blanket with which he wishes to cover him. Certain animals refuse to receive the bit; they turn their heads from side to side, rear, or try to run away or to bite. Others puff up and resist when an attempt is made to tighten the girth, or to place them between the shafts, or to mount them. In the latter case, the animal often rears, plunges forward, and jumps as soon as the rider's foot is put in the stirrup. Some avail themselves of this moment to bite their rider; others rear and kick as soon as he is in the saddle; the more vicious try to dismount their rider, then to lie down and trample upon him.

Nothing could be more varied than the ways in which this vice is manifested. It may be modified, but it is impossible to overcome it altogether. The most frequent means used consists in fastening the horse's head very short to the hay-rack before harnessing him, in order to prevent him from kicking and biting; two of his diagonal members are hobbled if he attempts to rear. In some cases recourse must be had to the twitch in order to bridle him. Lastly, it often becomes necessary, to get him between the shafts, to cover his head with an apron. But it is only by a methodical dressing that he can be accustomed to receive the rider.

4th. **Horses difficult to Shoe.**—It is very important, when purchasing a horse, to make him lift his feet one after the other, and to

strike each foot with a hammer, in order to make sure that he lets himself be shod without difficulty. The neglect of this precaution may result in very serious consequences; for animals which are difficult to shoe are always a great inconvenience to their owners, and too often the cause of accidents to blacksmiths and other persons. When the horse is merely lazy, the inconvenience is comparatively trifling; he *gets himself carried*, as the saying is, and the farrier can relieve himself of a portion of the weight by means of a rope fastened to the pastern and passed around the thorax. But when the animal absolutely refuses to allow his feet to be manipulated, his shoeing becomes difficult and dangerous. In fact, it is then necessary to place him in a *stocks* or *travis*, and sometimes to throw him down upon a soft bed of straw, to succeed in the attempt. We see, then, to what inconveniences one is subjected at each successive shoeing of the horse. The risk of personal injuries, and of wounds inflicted by the horse upon himself, and the dangers to which one is exposed when it becomes necessary to employ violent means, make it judicious to reject him, or, should the vice not have been perceived at the time of purchase, to get rid of him.

5th. **Biters.**—We designate by this term horses which use their teeth against persons who approach them, groom them, mount or lead them, as well as those which use them as weapons of defence against other animals. This vice is undoubtedly most common in stallions, which often show around their lips, nostrils, sides, and upper border of the neck, and the withers, evident traces of the struggles they have had with their neighbors and rivals. In whatever direction they gratify their vicious propensity, they all eventually become very dangerous. Some have been seen to plunge ferociously upon their victim, trample him underfoot, bruise him, and rend him, as if impelled by a furious rage. As a rule, dealers do not hesitate to put them up for sale, especially when the vice is not very marked. Hence purchasers should leave no means untried to recognize them. They usually set back their ears, pucker their nostrils, curl up their lips, stretch out their heads, and show their teeth when any one passes within reach of them. Sometimes, however, they appear very docile, accustomed as they are to the grooms; at other times their apparent gentleness is due only to their being cowed down by the remembrance of past punishments or their dread of future ones. As soon as they change masters their vicious and aggressive nature quickly reasserts itself. It is then important that the new owner should approach them himself, and caress and stroke them gently, so as to avoid startling them. Such animals

are not useless. Were not their vice a grave one, they would be as good as other horses, for they are neither indocile nor lazy. On the contrary, fatigue, privations, and bad treatment are of little concern to them. That is why there is but little hesitation to use them. Many of them perform the most laborious work. It is customary to work them on the lead, or to place them between horses with which they have no desire to fight. But they must always be watched. The simplest way to protect one's self against their attacks is to muzzle them; in the stable, they can be secured by means of the necklet or neck-cradle, or by tying them on both sides of the stall, or with the side-rod fastened to the surcingle, a nose-band, a muzzle, a rope passing through the mouth and the hind pastern. When they are very troublesome, it is well to make use of the muzzle.

6th. **Horses which rear and strike with the Fore-Feet.**—There are some horses which only rear; others rear and at the same time strike with the fore-feet; still others strike without rearing. The first, or *rearers*, raise themselves suddenly upon their hind-feet for the purpose of defence or attack, by a sudden impulsion of the anterior members. This act, which is often only the result of excessive playfulness or restlessness, may unfortunately also assume the character of a very dangerous vice. The saddle-horse, when rearing, sometimes strikes the rider with his head and injures him either in the face or on the chest. The blow is in some cases so violent that the rider is dismounted and under the horse's feet. Besides, the animal himself often loses his balance and falls over backward, crushing the rider under his body and causing serious fractures of the ribs, the pelvis, or the limbs.

Some rearers, as soon as they are standing up, avail themselves of this attitude to strike out with their fore members at neighboring persons or horses. Some have been seen, after throwing off their rider, to kneel down upon him and crush him in the most horrible manner. Under similar circumstances, there are some which attack the groom with their teeth, a habit which is popularly characterized in a singular way by the expression, they are *in love with the man!* Are not these actions rather the result of a premeditated vengeance directed against those who have been violent and brutal in their treatment of the animals intrusted to their care?

This vice is tolerably easily remedied. When in the stable the horse may be prevented from rearing by a short halter-strap; in the shafts or mounted, by the use of the martingale. When he simply strikes in front, this habit is sometimes corrected by the manger being

made very slanting in front; it then becomes impossible for him to raise his forearms very high without striking his knees against the bottom of the manger.

7th. **Horses which back.**—The importance of this vice has been recognized for a long time past, for Gabriel Meunier,[1] in the midst of an enumeration of very different matters, exclaims, "Du cheval qui recule. . . . *Libera nos, Domine!*"

Although more difficult than ordinary progression, backing is an act which every horse properly dressed should be able to perform when required. There are some, however, which back without any apparent motive; others do it as soon as they are touched with the whip, or when they are in the hands of unskilful drivers or inexperienced riders. A similar result is produced when the animal inclining his head to one side, in the endeavor to rid himself of flies, for example, hooks the inferior cross-bar, which unites the two branches of the bit, against the end of one of the shafts. We have also seen it occur in cases of turning a four-wheeled carriage by holding the horse by the bridle, when the lines have remained attached to the dasher; finally, it is often the consequence of fear or of pain occasioned to the bars by brutal tractions upon the reins.

Whatever the cause which produces it, horses having this habit are always very dangerous, especially in large cities, where they may back through shop-windows, knock against other vehicles, injure the passers-by, etc. Outside of good training and careful driving we know of no practical means to remedy this evil. It is important, then, at the time of purchasing an animal, to ascertain that he is free from the habit.

8th. **Kickers.**—"A cheval rueur d'avant passe," says a proverb of the sixteenth century,[2] which may be translated, "With a kicking horse, pass in front."

This vice consists in kicking as a means of attack or of defence. All horses, however, do not kick in the same manner. Some *kick at the riding-boot*, when they endeavor to strike, with one of their posterior members, the leg of the rider as he is about to mount. Others *kick cow-fashion, give a kick like a cow*, forcibly projecting one hind-foot forward and outward, like a cow, to reach a person standing near their corresponding anterior member. Again, there are some which kick backward with only a single posterior member. But generally it

---

[1] Gabriel Meunier, Trésor des sentences, sixteenth century. [2] Mimes de Baïf.

is kicking properly so called which is witnessed. It often takes place in the stable, without any good reason. In such cases, the injuries sustained by the points of the *hock* produce small swellings, *capped-hock*, which should be taken into consideration in purchasing a horse. Frequently it occurs during work, from contact of the leg, the spur, the riding-whip, or the whip-lash, from the touch of the lines upon the croup, or of certain parts of the harness, as the traces, or from some unexpected occurrence stimulating the hind members and surprising the animal. The subjects worked in single-file at times kick the shaft-horse with violence upon the head, the chest, and the internal face of the forearm. The same is true of saddle-horses with reference to those who follow them, or to their neighbors in the parade, in the riding-school, and in cavalry manœuvres. Mares, especially those which continually evert the clitoris, are very irritable when people approach them too closely. Too low a dash-board sometimes permits the driving-horse to catch the lines under his tail and retain them there. Should the attempt be made to pull them out forcibly, it is by no means rare for the horse to kick. We cannot too strongly condemn the bad practice which some drivers have of correcting a horse for this or any other habit by the free use from behind of a long whip, the lash of which in a manner encircles the animal's shoulder, ribs, back, loins, and a part of the croup. This so-called girdle-whipping is often dangerous. The animal, surprised by so violent and so sudden a punishment, ordinarily responds to it by a shower of kicks, and it is very fortunate if he does not run away.

Under all these circumstances, kickers can inflict upon their neighbors more or less serious injuries, such as contused wounds of the chest, the ribs, or the abdomen, or fractures of the bones of the head, the forearms, or the legs. Too often, also, these accidents befall the persons who drive, mount, approach, or groom the animals in question.

The kicking-strap, passing across the croup from one side to the other, and fastened to the shafts, is a fairly practical method to prevent kicking during work when the animal is in harness. In the stable, the rope through the mouth and around the fetlock, as before described, should be fixed to the halter. With this appliance a horse will seldom kick more than once. Finally, when they are used under the saddle, the rider must bring good horsemanship into play to prevent them from lowering their heads, and be very careful at the time of mounting.

We will also consider with kickers those horses which switch their tails,—that is to say, which shake their tails like dogs when their hind-quarters are approached. "Don't buy a horse that switches his

tail" is the advice of an old proverb.[1] This advice is to be remembered, for these animals, among which are found especially *ticklish* subjects and *pissy* mares, are inclined to kick and show their evil intentions. They expose persons to all the dangers we have enumerated.

9th. **Timid Horses, Shyers.**—*Fear*, says Littré,[2] is a painful passion which is excited in us by that which appears dangerous, threatening, and supernatural. *Fright*, according to the same authority, is fear carried to a high degree, a great fear. In horse language, timid or easily-frightened horses are known by different names. The horse which is afraid of his shadow or of an object which surprises him is also called *skittish*. The timid horse is one which is easily frightened; the horse which is said to be *watchful*, or a *little watchful*, is more or less timid.

Fear, in the horse, does not seem to be ever the effect of a simple moral influence, such as is observed in some circumstances in man. In most cases the causes are entirely external; their action is sudden,—one may say instantaneous. Some act upon sight, others upon hearing; most of them affect simultaneously the apparatus of vision and hearing, and sometimes even that of olfaction. Who has not seen a horse, that has often been maltreated by his driver, prick his ears upon the approach of the latter, open his eyes widely, and pull back or swerve to one side, to avoid the blows with which he imagines he is threatened? Another one, at the sight of clothing hung out on clothes-lines, flapping to and fro, and blown up by the wind, will plunge to one side and start to run away. Still another will suddenly stop, rear, and turn around on the road, alarmed by a pool of water reflecting the rays of the moon, a velocipede wheeling along rapidly and silently, a field laborer suddenly rising from a stooping attitude, a dog running out of a house into the street, a railroad train suddenly coming out of a tunnel, the bright light emanating from a sky-rocket sent up in the dark by a child, etc. How many horses tied at the door of a blacksmith-shop are frightened by the sparks which fly from the iron hammered on the anvil, prick their ears, dilate their nostrils, snort, pull at the tying-strap, break their bridle, run away, or throw themselves down! How many, also, unbridled and quietly eating their oats as they stand by the sidewalk, while the driver is taking his repast, are suddenly seized with fear on seeing the flashes of light reflected from the freshly-var-

---

[1] Bouilli, Proverbes, sixteenth century.
[2] Littré, Dictionnaire de la langue française.

nished wheels of passing vehicles, a flock of pigeons flying to roost upon the roof of a neighboring house, a drove of sheep approaching in a huddled mass along the dusty road, etc.

The exciting causes of fear which act upon the sense of hearing are perhaps even more numerous and more operative than those which act upon the sense of sight, because it is harder for the horse to understand their nature. We may mention among them a sudden noise, such as the report of a fire-arm or of a cannon, the explosion of a piece of fireworks, the whistle of a locomotive, the barking of a dog, the accidental resonance of the ground over which the horse is travelling, the transition from a dirt road to a pavement, or to a wooden or an iron bridge, the shaking of the ground and the noise produced by the passing of a railroad train, the swift arrival of a carriage, the beating of a drum, the sound of a bugle, etc. "A good bugler's horse is not frightened by noises." [1]

The odor of wild beasts, certain pungent emanations which the animal perceives suddenly when passing before a menagerie or a knacker's establishment, etc., may also frighten him and cause him to run to one side. But influences of this kind are more rare than those mentioned in the preceding paragraph. Such horses at every moment expose to great dangers those who drive them. Good horsemanship alone is capable of inspiring them with confidence and boldness.

10th. **Aversion to Special Objects.**—We purposely take up this vice immediately after the preceding, on account of the difficulties which are sometimes experienced in distinguishing the one from the other. It is characterized by the extreme repugnance, mingled with hatred and aggressiveness, which some horses manifest for certain colors, or towards certain animals. J.-B. Rodet[2] has given three remarkable examples, and we also have observed some. The following are cited from Rodet:

"In 1806, during the campaign of Austerlitz, a Piedmontese officer possessed a beautiful mare, a very good animal in all respects with the exception of a vice which rendered her excessively dangerous as a saddle-mare. This animal had a very decided aversion for *paper*, completely losing her senses not only as soon as she saw it, but also whenever, even in darkness, she heard the rustle produced by it. This effect was always so prompt and so violent that in several instances, taken by surprise as it were, she ran away or dismounted her rider, and even at one time, the foot of the latter remaining caught in the stirrup,

---

[1] Leroux, Dictionnaire comique, t. i. p. 162.

[2] J.-B. Rodet, Doctrine physiologique appliquée à la médecine vétérinaire, p. 272, et suiv. In-8°, Paris, 1828.

she dragged him for some distance over the stony ground. A remarkable fact was that this same mare was very gentle otherwise, and, excepting this one object of her special terror, she would ignore all the causes which ordinarily frighten most horses: the noise of a cannon, the beating of drums, military music, the whizzing of balls and bullets, the sight of camp-fires, the smoke and fire of small-arms or artillery, the sight of troops in battle, the waving of plumes and flash of brilliant arms,—none of these would give her the least fear. And, as was several times observed, she did not show the same fear for other white objects as that which she experienced at the sight or the noise of paper. Every means employed for the cure of this defect proved unsuccessful, and her owner was forced to sell her, not being able to use her as his mount.

"Déicon, a brown bay horse, belonging to the old French army, was very gentle to man, to other animals, and to all horses, except those with a more or less brilliant *light-gray* coat. In fact, he had for the latter, and for them only, so great a hatred that as soon as he saw one he would make every effort to get to him; when he succeeded in this he would assail him with great violence. He behaved in the same way at all times and in all places,—free or when mounted, on the drives, the roads, on the march, or during the manœuvres or the halts: his animosity was such that it was dangerous to put not only a stallion but even a mare of a gray or white coat in his stable or at any distance away from this, so long as he could see them. He was not satisfied until he had broken loose, and when he succeeded in this he would plunge upon these animals, kicking and biting them with the greatest fury, usually seizing them by the head, often even by the throat, and might have choked them had not some one promptly come to their assistance. As he grew older (he was eighteen years old when he was sent out of the army), this furious temper only slightly abated. In 1818 it was so strong that he could not be turned out to grass with the other horses of the regiment which, like himself, were in need of this diet. For other white bodies he did not have the same aversion as for horses whose coat approached this color.

"Dague, a sorrel mare, of the Norman variety, was, on the contrary, very much afraid of all *inanimate white bodies*,—that is to say, bodies motionless of themselves, such as white cloaks, shirt-sleeves, cross-belts, paper, but especially white plumes. When these white bodies, set in motion by any cause whatsoever, unexpectedly met her gaze, if they were of a certain size, and if the movement was somewhat rapid, she was extremely frightened and would endeavor to run away. But if the white objects were small and had but a slight degree of movement, she would plunge angrily upon them and endeavor to bite them and strike them with her fore-feet. *No other color* and no other bodies produced this effect upon her. A still more singular circumstance was that she manifested neither fright nor anger in the presence of white horses and white dogs, whilst she was always irritated at the sight of a sheet of paper or a white plume set in motion by the air or any other cause."

We, on our part, saw several times during the existence of the post at Alfort, relays of *gray* horses attack relays of *bay* horses, striking them with their anterior members and biting them, uttering at the same time the most ferocious cries.

One day, a *gray* stallion, having broken his halter-strap, escaped

from the hospital yard of the school of Alfort, and with his teeth and feet attacked a bay horse harnessed to the wagon of a grocer who supplied the establishment. It was with great difficulty that the two animals were separated; the aggressor had seriously wounded the other horse and almost demolished one of the shafts.[1]

We have known horses which had the greatest horror for hogs; their ears directed forward, the expression of their face, their snorts of alarm, their efforts to run away, everything, in short, showed the fear which they felt.[2]

Wild animals, by the peculiar odor which they exhale, seem to provoke identical manifestations. We saw, a few years ago, a good horse harnessed to an upholsterer's wagon stop suddenly, jump to one side, and snort loudly in the presence of three very peaceable *bears* which some gypsies led by a rope, and which did not in any way obstruct the road. But facts of this kind are not rare; all those who have travelled in countries where the wolf still exists have seen similar occurrences.

11th. **Runaway Horses.**—A horse is said to run away when he suddenly rushes forward blindly, impetuously, madly, going straight ahead, heeding nothing but the irresistible stimulus which impels him, and losing even the instinct of self-preservation. Vulgarly it is erroneously said that he *takes the bit between his teeth*, that he is *seized with a short fit of insanity*. In horse language, the same thing is expressed by saying that the animal *pulls*, or again, the runaway horse is called a *lugger*.[3] Generally, this vice is more common in ardent, very sensitive, and irritable horses, and in those which have bad eyesight. It also appears to us more frequent in warm countries and during the hot seasons, judging, at least, from the reports in the press. But the usual causes are fear and pain. Any sudden noise inspiring terror, such as the report of a gun, an explosion, a clap of thunder, the beating of drums, the whistling of locomotives, an unusual resonance of the ground, passing over a bridge or under an arch, the arrival of a train, the barking and attack of a dog, the sudden appearance of white bodies in motion, such as clothes flapping on a clothes-line, the sight of a

---

[1] See, also, Séon Rochas, Hygiène vétérinaire militaire, p. 505, Paris, 1844.

[2] One of the authors has observed in a parrot the same aversion for hogs. When it saw one of these animals, it was seized with terror, gave utterance to piercing screams, and would sometimes tumble from its perch.

[3] See, for further details, Arm. Goubaux, De l'emportement chez les chevaux et des moyens de le réprimer, in Moniteur des hôpitaux du 31 Octobre, 1855, and Argus des haras et des remontes, année 1856, pp. 441 et 496.

wild animal, or the odor emanating from it, the breaking down of a carriage, the snapping of the axle-tree, the shaft, the pole, of some part of the harness, as the girth, the crupper, the trace, the lines, the accidental unfastening of the collar, etc., any sudden pain, a wound, brutal traction upon the bit, a violent cut of the whip, immoderate use of the spurs, sometimes the simple inconvenience occasioned by a disarranged harness, etc.,—any of these circumstances, or many other analogous ones, may cause a horse to run away.

Often it results from a vicious disposition, a bad education of the horse, which, at the slightest provocation, becomes irritable, defends himself, and runs away.

Sometimes, on the contrary, the act implies neither fear, pain, nor annoyance, and occurs in animals which display in other respects extreme gentleness. High spirits, the desire to run, the need of exercise, a whim, or some internal impulse as yet not satisfactorily explained, leads them on, intoxicates them little by little, and the next moment they "lose their head;" they fall a prey to the mad impulse and are deaf to all restraint. Some people are imprudent enough to unbridle their horses entirely, in order to give them a drink or to feed them, along the roadside or on the street, without keeping a watchful eye over them. In such cases accidents are not rare. Accustomed to work with a bridle and with blinds, and thus to see only what is in front of them, these animals become frightened at the sight of objects in motion alongside of them, and will at once start to run away. For this reason the use of blinds should be avoided as much as possible, and especially should the bridle never be taken off upon the public road, unless extreme watchfulness is exercised upon the vehicles, or the brake applied to the wheels, and the horse's head tied to a weight or to some fixed body close by.

Again, there are some persons who will not allow any other carriage to pass them on the road, and on that account urge and excite their horses in every possible way. The latter at first quicken their gait, become excited by degrees, redouble their speed, and often end by running away. In time the spirit of emulation becomes a part of the horse's disposition and develops into a veritable mania. He will no longer allow another horse to pass him on the road, and manifests this determination, if needs be, by indocility.

The animal which runs away usually breaks suddenly into a gallop and rushes forward headlong with all the speed of which he is capable. Sometimes the increase of speed is gradual; little by little the animal becomes unmanageable, and in a short time he is beyond the control of

his master. Once started, he no longer knows what he is doing, no longer sees, hears, or smells; he *runs away*, and this seems to be the only thing he has the desire or the ability to do. Nothing calms him; deaf to threats, insensible to blows and tractions on the bit, he no longer realizes danger. The efforts made to stop him, the obstructions in his way, the cries of alarm which are raised along his route, serve but to increase his fright. He stops only when utterly worn out in strength and wind, or when his career is checked by collision with a house, a wall, or a vehicle.

During this senseless run the horse holds his head in a characteristic manner: he carries it either extended or arched. In either case he takes a strong point of support on the bit by the assistance of the bars, except when he is unharnessed or left to himself. It is this that has led the layman to suppose that the runaway horse has *the bit between his teeth.* We know, however, that this is not the case. The bar of the bit can, at most, scarcely touch the first molars. This indeed would be sufficient to explain the twisting of the branches of the bit and the rupture of the bearing-rein, which sometimes result from the violent tractions made to restrain the animal, to avoid danger or pull him back.

Many means have been devised to prevent runaway accidents or to control runaway horses. When a horse is running away on a level, unobstructed road, all that can usually be done is to let things take their course; the dangers are not great; the horse will stop of his own accord when he becomes too tired to run farther. If the driver feels him start suddenly away, pulling every instant more and more, especially if this is habitual with him, it becomes necessary at once to *saw* the bit (that is, pull alternately upon each line) and try to turn the horse's head strongly around to the left or to the right, in such a way as to slacken his gait, hamper his movements, and produce a sharp pain upon the bars; when practicable, it would be well to turn him into ploughed ground. But if the horse has become entirely unmanageable, there is nothing left for the driver to do but to use every effort to keep his seat, and await the result. To leap from the wagon would be, at least, equally dangerous. No doubt there are mechanical arrangements which act in various ways upon the mouth and the eyes, and by the aid of which it is possible to prevent a horse from running away altogether. Unfortunately, they are not always at hand at the required moment. They ought to be permanently employed on horses difficult to manage; but, then, what constant attention, what expenses, what annoyance they entail! Besides, however ingenious they may be, they

are not applicable to animals left unbridled upon the public road. There is only one way to manage these that we know of: that is, to grasp their heads firmly and seize them by the nostrils. On the whole, the wisest thing to do with reference to a horse addicted to running away is to get rid of him as soon as possible; the pecuniary loss that may result is not to be thought of for an instant, in view of the irreparable accidents which might be the consequence of retaining him in one's service.

§ 2. General Causes of Vices (whether ascertained, probable, or surmised).

The **causes** of vices are as yet but little understood, on account of their extreme complexity. Their influence is either *temporary* or *permanent;* this, in our opinion, explains the relative curability of the untoward manifestations to which they give rise.

Most authors who have made a study of this question concur in the opinion that **heredity** is one of these causes.

"Every horse," says De Lafont-Pouloti,[1] "which is indolent, indocile, timid, bad-mouthed, balky, stubborn, cowardly, skittish, or spiteful to man, is to be rejected, however perfect he may be otherwise; his get will have the same disposition."

Hartmann thinks likewise that the offspring may inherit the good qualities as well as the bad ones.[2]

Brugnone would exclude from reproduction all horses which are skittish, too ardent, ill-natured, indocile, kickers, or biters; also the lazy, the irascible, and the cowardly.[3]

Demoussy[4] asserts that physical resemblance is not the only similarity transmitted to the descendants, but that the latter inherit also the moral qualities of their ancestors. For example, the shy horse would usually beget timid colts. The great-grandchildren of Cardinal and of Jaumont, and quite a number of the progeny of Curde would (according to him) be distinguished from their contemporaries by their excessive irritability and their irascible disposition.

Professor Grognier[5] speaks of moral qualities which, transmitted through many generations, have ultimately become race-types, such are

---

[1] De Lafont-Pouloti, Nouveaux régimes pour les haras, p. 23, Turin, 1787.

[2] Hartmann, Traité des haras, translated from the German, 2e éd., p. 74, Paris, 1788.

[3] Brugnone, Traité des haras, translated from the Italian by Barantin de Montchal, p. 53, Paris, 1807.

[4] Achille Demoussy, Traité complet des haras, p. 60, Tulle, 1833.

[5] L. F. Grognier, Cours de multiplication et de perfectionnement des différents animaux domestiques, p. 239, 3e éd., revised by Magne, Paris, 1841.

the gentleness and docility of the coach-horse of the Cotentin and the indocility of the camargue horse. "It is a rare thing," he adds, "to see balky and ill-tempered colts begotten by gentle and docile stallions, whilst every day we see young horses disposed to kick and bite whose sires and dams were affected with the same vices. A stallion stationed at Alfort was very ill-tempered, and this ill temper was transmitted to the majority of his get. In England there are examples of families of horses, very superior otherwise, but vicious from sire to son, and dangerous to the lives of those whose lot it was to mount them and care for them."

De Curnieu[1] recommends the use of the half-thoroughbred mare for breeding "only when she has done good service and has a good temperament. If she kicks, bites, or is difficult to harness, to shoe, or to groom, there is every reason to believe that the colt will be like her, through heredity, education, *bad example*. . . . If you wish to produce a horse for your own use," he continues, "reject a vicious broodmare, and try to obtain some reliable information concerning the stallion, but do not let yourself be duped, especially if it be a question of a thoroughbred horse ; for the slightest indication of irritability in an ordinary mare, a shadow of an inclination to kick, laying down of the ears, all this becomes a downright vice when it is increased from the father's blood, especially if he has defects of the same nature. No mare should be used as a broodmare unless she is perfectly known."

All these statements are of great importance in guiding the breeder in the choice of the stallion and the mare. All vicious stallions of studs should be banished from the breeding farm.

Excessive impressionability and innate irritability also often give rise to serious vices, because they occasion violent reactions in the presence of the simplest methods of leading, driving, or restraining the animal, and will soon provoke indocility, anger, aggressiveness, and a spirit of revenge.

Bad education, resulting from a **bad example** set by the mother and, especially, by the attendants, has an undeniable influence. How many horses are known to be kickers, biters, rearers, runaways, irascible, or timid, which have learned these vices from their mothers or have contracted them by degrees through the provocations and continual teasing of man himself!

Interference with already acquired habits sometimes renders the horse ill-tempered. Some horses, for example, will not toler-

---

[1] De Curnieu, Leçons de science hippique générale, 3e partie, p. 313, Paris, 1855.

ate the rider's mounting on the right side or leading them from this side; others, worked in a team, will work only when they are placed on the right side or on the left side; still others will work only in the shafts or in file; some saddle-horses will not work in harness, and *vice versa;* some become indocile when the rider or driver is changed, etc.

But there is no cause more important or more common than **bad treatment.** It rebukes the horse, frightens him, and disposes him to resist and to attack. Carters, coachmen, grooms, blacksmiths, riders, and brutal masters are in most instances primarily culpable and responsible for the vices which follow bad treatment.

Pain, resulting from wounds on the surface of the body, from a defective fitting and application of the harness, or from the use of brushes and curry-combs whose stiffness is out of proportion to the degree of sensibility of the skin, etc., produces the same effects upon the disposition, and often renders the animal intractable. Thus, the wounds in the region of the loins occasioned by the saddle are usually so painful that the animal cannot be used, and kicks, rears, defends himself, and absolutely refuses to allow his rider to mount him.

During **warm seasons** the horse is more frequently vicious than during cold weather. The heat enervates him, the cutaneous secretions, being more abundant, irritate his skin, and the insects especially constantly annoy him. Certain insects belonging to the diptera, as the gad-fly and spider-fly, for example, torment him, stinging him sometimes in the most sensitive regions; he is very apt to become indocile, irritable, and even unmanageable when he is not accustomed to these annoyances.

The influence of **diverse physiological states** should also be mentioned. Some are connected with the function of reproduction; such are the *sexual desires* and *maternity.* Others depend upon a *defective conformation of the eyeballs.*

In the entire horse the *sexual desires* manifest themselves especially in the spring and during the heated term of summer. At these two periods of the year horses which at other times are gentle and docile suddenly become excitable and stubborn. They have frequent erections, neigh, plunge upon their grooms, and furiously kick and bite neighboring horses. Castration is often the only means of remedying this condition, which, in certain cases, may have very serious consequences.

Demoussy[1] says that "the mare also shows, by unequivocal signs, the want of satisfying the desires of nature. The sexual organs

---

[1] Demoussy, loc. cit., p. 64, et suiv.

become tumefied; the vaginal membrane is congested; there is a copious discharge of a mucous, tenacious, whitish fluid from the vulva; the animal frequently stretches out to urinate; the temperature of the perineal region is raised, the neighing becomes more frequent than usual, the eyes are more expressive, the physiognomy more animated. When she is in the stable, she is more restless; she trembles at the slightest noise, and her uneasiness ceases when she is taken out. The saddle-mare, when she is mounted, no longer responds to the spurs. Far from considering their effect a punishment, as in other seasons of the year, their pressure upon the flanks no longer quickens her step; she stops, on the contrary, and stretches out, separating the abdominal members. Sometimes she resents the correction inflicted upon her; she kicks, and in the act of raising her hind-quarters discharges several jets of urine. If she is then vigorously spurred, she defends herself to the utmost. . . . However, the most irascible disposition and the greatest ill temper yield sometimes to the powerful influence which dominates them. I have seen the most savage mares allow themselves to be led with the greatest docility at the time of rutting, because they were in hopes of being taken to the stallion, but such an occurrence is very rare."

After parturition, many mares which until then had been very gentle, suddenly become aggressive and vicious. Always watchful that nobody should touch their foal, they then display extreme irritability and must be approached with great caution.

An *abnormal conformation of the eye*, considered as a dioptric apparatus, results especially from an aberration in its spherical shape or in the curvature of the cornea. From this there results, as we have already shown on page 71, a defective vision which gives rise to presbyopia and myopia. It is a matter of common observation that myopic animals are more timid and more liable to shy than others, and, on this very account, dangerous to those who have charge of them or who employ them.

Insanity has been admitted by J.-B. Rodet[1] and Pierquin[2] to be a possible cause of ill temper. And, truth to say, we are, in spite of ourselves, apt to find, in several vicious manifestations in the horse, something analogous to, if not identical with, the fits of unreasoning passion observed in man. How can we explain, for example, the singular condition of horses which kick at night when in the stable with-

---

[1] J.-B. Rodet, loc. cit., p. 254.
[2] Pierquin, De la folie chez les animaux.

out any appreciable motive? How can we account for those sudden attacks of terror which are witnessed in some horses in the midst of the greatest external quietude, and which so closely resemble hallucinations? To what are we to attribute the caprices, the stubbornness, of the balky horse, and the occasional fury of the dumminess? What significance are we to attach to the last period of excitement of the runaway horse? What are we to think of the feeling of aversion or anger displayed towards the colors white and red, or towards certain species of inoffensive animals? Why, in a word, may not the horse, which also has intelligence, be liable to perversions of judgment, disturbances of intellectual sensibility, or other moral perturbations, resembling human mania, dementia, delirium, and insanity? In domestic animals, says Littré and Robin,[1] cases of idiocy and imbecility, either congenital or consequent upon diseases of the brain or its meninges, have been observed. To say nothing of ordinary delirium, horses laboring under hallucinations and others which had lost the consciousness of their bodily wants have been met with. Aside from cases of acute disease, there are well-attested instances in which the mental states of dogs were similar to those of insane persons. There are hallucinations during the whole of the hydrophobic stage.

We take this opportunity to raise the interesting question of intellectual aberrations in the horse, and propose it to our colleagues as a subject of study which up to this time has been almost unexplored, although very worthy of being investigated. It would be instructive to determine by the autopsies of balky, runaway, and other vicious horses whether there exist any alteration of the *brain* and its envelopes, in relation to weight, form, volume, blood-vessel supply, intimate structure, etc. Perhaps we should find lesions like those which have been met with in the human species, and also in cases of immobility.

CHAPTER III.

CHOICE OF THE HORSE.

BEFORE proceeding to the *choice of the horse*, the reader should be acquainted with certain facts which concern the seller and the purchaser, in order that he may have a correct idea of the difficulties

---

[1] Littré et Robin, Dictionnaire de médecine, etc., p. 629, 14e ed., Paris, 1878.

which the latter will experience in his transactions with the former. It is not sufficient to go to the dealer and ask him to show what he has to sell: in order to buy as a skilful connoisseur it is necessary to be well acquainted with the habits and business ways of a trader whose every interest is to deceive and swindle the buyer; besides, it is important to know what precautions are needed in dealing with him. These ideas will form the subject of the two following sub-chapters.

§ 1. The Seller.

The seller, as is known, is a *breeder* or a *horse-dealer;* more rarely he is a *private gentleman.* But we will lay no stress upon these distinctions, since any man who sells horses, whatever his social status, tries to present them in the best possible conditions, in order to reap the greatest profit from the sale. Trickery, fraud, and deception seem in this connection to be inherent in the very nature of things. The difference between one seller and another will be merely a difference in degree. Even the most scrupulous will acknowledge only certain defects in their horses; the discovery of the others they will leave to the sagacity of the purchaser. As to those who are less honest, they conceal everything except the qualities which they exaggerate and even improvise according to the requirements of the case. To declaim against these tendencies would be a waste of time. The best thing to do is to guard against being deceived by making one's self acquainted with the tricks resorted to by horse-dealers. These consist in the employment of a special diet and of certain attentions and certain hygienic conditions in the dressing, in a special toilet, in clipping, and in appropriate shoeing.

a. By **diet,** the horse-dealer can easily manage to increase or diminish the size of the abdomen and render the development of this region proportional to that of the other parts of the body. Thus, by giving watery food, such as hay, grass, etc., he can modify the shape of the so-called *narrow-gutted* horse; by substituting for the ration of hay a larger quantity of oats, he will cause the *cow-belly* to disappear, and at the same time will render the coat less coarse and more glossy.

b. By regulating the **light** in the stable and slightly increasing the **temperature,** the coat will be made to assume brighter shades and to reflect a more brilliant lustre.

c. By covering the body with blankets, and keeping a hood upon the head, neck, shoulders, and breast, the coat is rendered cleaner, more glossy, more supple, and more smooth. But it is especially by the aid of **good grooming,** frequently repeated, that the coat is beautified. By means of the curry-comb, a wisp of straw, a brush, and a sponge,

all the excretory products which accumulate on the skin are removed, and the hairs are cleansed of all foreign bodies that may adhere to them.

d. Again, **training**, or **dressing**, constitutes an important means of preparation for the sale. By gentleness, caresses, and appetizing delicacies the dealer by degrees teaches the horse to allow himself to be approached, to be harnessed, to have his members touched and his feet raised; thus, also, his disposition is rendered more docile, he becomes accustomed to his master's voice and person. The dealer leaves no means untried: patience, kind treatment, intimidation, rebukes, brutal blows, and narcotics, successively employed to tame him, if he be ill-tempered, irascible, or vicious, and to dominate him by the mere fact of his trainer's presence.

When the training is completed, the most intractable animal has, usually, become docile and obedient, is easily harnessed, saddled, bridled, and mounted; he no longer manifests fear of noises, people, and things, simply because of the fear which the sight of his master awakens in him. When he passes into other hands, however, often everything changes its aspect: the defects reappear, and are the more readily attributed to the unskilfulness of the purchaser, as the latter had not, by his own showing, suspected them at the time of the sale. Fortunately, these dishonest tricks are not resorted to by dealers who have any regard for reputation. The good effects of the training which they give to their horses are permanent, and many dealers will take back, without objection, animals which do not suit their customers. In such cases, however, it should not be forgotten that if the seller consents to take back the animal, it is upon the well-understood condition that the purchaser shall not go to his neighbors for one that suits him better. The exchange which is offered to him always deprives him of much of the self-confidence which he felt before he made his first mistake, and it is then that he should be especially cautious in his selection, so that the second transaction be not unsatisfactory, for he is at the mercy of the man with whom he deals.

It is by training that the pleasure-horse acquires the swan-like curve of the neck which is so much admired in such animals. An instrument of torture, called the *cavalier de bois*, is employed for this purpose. It consists of two bars of wood crossed thus, ×, consequently diverging above and below from their point of intersection, and held in place upon the back by means of an ordinary surcingle. It is so arranged that, when the animal is bridled, the reins can be attached to a buckle, by means of which they can be shortened at will. Nothing is then

easier than to force the neck to maintain the desired degree of flexion. The first applications last from five to ten minutes; they would seem to be painful, from the evident fatigue which they occasion. As the lessons increase in length, they give less fatigue to the animal, which soon becomes so accustomed to them that every feeling of uneasiness disappears; he is walked and trotted as before the habit is acquired; the neck and head will hereafter be carried in the desired position.

With the pleasure-horse, training does not stop here. It is always supplemented by daily drives, in which he is driven on the near side of a horse already thus trained, if he is intended for a double team. During these drives he is accustomed to walk, trot, turn, back, step forward, and stop, so that he can easily execute these manœuvres in the hands of the dealer and under the eyes of the purchaser at the time of the sale.

e. The toilet is a device the object of which is to give a horse a fine and *distingué* look. It is practised only upon light-draught and heavy-draught horses, and upon those of good breeding, some of whose parts are somewhat too coarse. It consists in removing or shortening, by various means, the hairs scattered over the face, around the mouth, the nostrils, the eyelids, along the lower jaw, and in the intermaxillary space; in diminishing the thickness and length of the forelock, the mane, the tail, the thickness of the canon, the fetlocks, the pasterns, and the coronets; finally, in cutting the hairs on the inner surface of the ears.

The toilet is said to be *complete* when it is practised upon all the parts; it is *incomplete* or *partial* when one or several of them are thus treated. In the latter case the operation is designated by a special term.

The hairs scattered over the head in the places of which we have just spoken are removed by being *cut* with the scissors, *extracted*, or *singed*. Extraction is done with the hand, as in plucking a fowl, and is a somewhat painful procedure, the pain even continuing for some days after the operation. Singeing, when it is well done, is greatly preferable. It is done with a candle, a small bundle of lighted straw, or an alcohol lamp. Care must be taken, however, not to burn the surrounding hairs or the skin. As the singeing proceeds, the dog-grass brush is passed over the surface of the skin to remove the carbonized parts which still adhere to the hairs. The removal of the hairs of the ears, a somewhat difficult procedure, is practised only upon common horses, in order to give greater neatness and make their heads look

lighter. First the hairs which surround the external orifice of the ear, and then those on the inner face of the auricular cartilage, are cut with the scissors, care being taken to leave no visible traces of the cutting.

We have seen that the mane and the forelock are plaited in order to give them a good direction, and that the thickness of the hairs of the former is diminished by means of a comb or a special clutch, which pulls out a certain number.

As to the arrangement of the tail, it is done in the same manner whenever it is deemed desirable to make it smaller. Very often, however, the hairs are cut transversely. They are grasped firmly with one hand near their extremity, and with the other are cut evenly with the scissors or a knife, either at the level of the point of the hocks, or higher up or a little lower down.

Light-draught horses and (in France) army horses are the only ones in which the hairs of the members are cut; in well-bred horses the hairs of the members are usually so short that such a procedure is not necessary; in the heavy-draught horse they are arranged in a particular way, of which we will speak farther on.

To dress the hairs, a horn comb, or, better still, a comb made of brass, and a pair of curved scissors, are employed. The operator proceeds in the same way as a barber in cutting a person's hair. He introduces the comb between the hairs from below upward, commencing at the coronet and passing upward. The difficulty, which is considerable, consists in thus dressing the coronet, the pastern, the fetlock, and the canon without leaving any traces of the cuts of the scissors. Care must also be taken not to wound the skin with the teeth of the comb, and it is important not to remove the hairs around the coronary band, nor to shorten them too much in the fold of the pastern, where they protect these parts against the irritating action of dust and mud. Dealers are not only skilful in dressing the hairs artistically and shortening them to a suitable degree, according to the quality of the subjects, but they also excel in concealing, by cutting them obliquely, below the knee, the defect which results from a feeble development of the tendons. A practised eye will readily detect this fraud; it can only deceive the inattentive or the inexperienced.

In certain heavy-draught horses the hairs of the extremities are so abundant and of such length, thickness, and coarseness, that it is often found necessary to shorten them so as to render the inferior part of the animal's members less heavy. With this object the dealer makes use of a very sharp triangular and short knife. The member to be

dressed being raised, the blade of the instrument is introduced into the mass of hairs and part of their length cut away. This operation should be done quickly, and its good execution depends much upon the amount of practice possessed by the person who performs it. It is sometimes done with the members resting on the ground.

f. **Clipping** consists in cutting the hairs over the entire surface of the body. It has some advantages from a hygienic point of view, since by diminishing the thickness of the coat it lessens the perspiration to which the slightest exertion gives rise during the winter, in work-horses, and which often occasions chills leading to serious reflux of the blood into the respiratory or the digestive organs. But it is not with any intention of guarding the animals against diseases that the dealer clips his horses. Rather it is to give them an appearance of lightness and fineness and to conceal a coarse conformation, when they have an unattractive look, a lymphatic temperament, and a clumsy and common-looking form. The instrument used everywhere at present for clipping horses is the clipper, or clipping-machine. "It is generally composed of two comb-like metallic plates which move one upon the other. The lower plate, which comes in contact with the skin, is a kind of comb, whose short teeth insert themselves between the hairs and thus straighten them up. The upper plate, set in motion by means of a handle which acts as a lever-arm, glides upon the lower plate in such a manner that its sharp teeth move from side to side in relation with the fixed lower teeth and cuts the straightened hairs close to the skin. As soon as one becomes accustomed to the use of the clipper, the operation is performed without any difficulty."[1]

g. **Shoeing,** recently and properly done, has a certain value as a means of adornment. It improves the appearance of the feet, rectifies their equilibrium, lessens their size, and corrects several of their defects. It also often serves as a pretext for various manœuvres which bespeak anything but honesty on the part of the seller. Is it not well known that it is possible by shoeing, if not to prevent overreaching, at least to cause the noise resulting from the habit to disappear? Is it not well known, also, that the defect of interfering may be thus concealed; that by diverse means, such as the application of gutta-percha, a corn, toe-cracks, and quarter-cracks can be hidden; that with the rasp, a hoof which has been deformed by a chronic laminitis can be restored to its normal appearance, etc.? These are frauds of which the purchaser

---

[1] Magne et Baillet, Traité d'agriculture pratique et d'hygiène vétérinaire générale, 4e éd., t. iii. p. 587, Paris, 1883.

should be aware, for the unscrupulous dealer will not hesitate to resort to them whenever he thinks it to his interest to do so.

h. When the horse is ready to be sold, he is either placed in a special stable or is taken to a public market. Here the seller will spare no device of ornamentation to attract the attention of the visitor. All his animals are covered with similar blankets, more or less rich-looking, with wide colored borders, and each bearing his monogram. Every animal is provided with a variegated girth, as well as a leather halter, white, yellow, red, green, or blue, its shade contrasting strongly with that of the coat. Ribbons of glaring colors are sometimes attached to the halter or the bridle, the forelock, the mane, and the base of the tail. Bands of linen regularly rolled around the canons and the fetlocks, knee-caps, and ear-caps of linen or netting are also seen. It is customary, in the market or on the exhibition ground, to fasten a bunch of straw to the mane and one to the base of the tail to indicate that the horse is for sale. This display is by no means always a mere advertisement. It is much more likely to be a blind to conceal various defects and irregularities of conformation. The ear-caps straighten the ears, the blinds of the bridle conceal the eyes, the blankets bring the shade of the coat into strong relief, hide defects of conformation, and diminish the apparent length of the body, the knee-caps conceal the knees, the bands cover splints, windgalls, etc. On several occasions we have seen, in the Paris market, intractable or vicious horses subdued and rendered docile by use of a small *twitch* supported behind one of the branches of the bit, or attached to the side of the bridle or the halter. The best way to protect one's self against all these tricks is to examine the horse with the blanket and all other appurtenances removed, and to pay no attention to the dealer's talk.

§ 2. The Purchaser.

The purchaser should, above all, know exactly what he wishes to buy,—that is, he should know the kind of service the horse is intended for, the animal's gaits, size, conformation, sex, age, and coat, and the price which he is willing to pay for him. It is also important that he should have been prepared for the making of his purchase, either by long practice, great ability, an old routine or by study aided by observation, for the time has come when he must avail himself of all the special knowledge he possesses.

The most elementary prudence at once commands him to purchase only a *healthy* horse, or, at least, one with no diseases, either acute or

chronic, that are capable either of endangering his life or of impairing his usefulness.

Further, he should endeavor to ascertain in this connection the following points:

1st. Does the horse answer to the *service* required of him:

By his *conformation* (*ensemble*, size, general symmetry).

By his *general physiognomy* (breeding, temperament, race, coat).

By his *action* (heaves, roaring)?

2d. Is he fitted for it both by *training* and by *disposition?*

3d. Is he close to or far from the *age of his full usefulness?*

4th. Is he affected with *diseases*, *vices*, and *defects*, and, if so, how far do they interfere with his usefulness?

5th. Finally, is the *price asked* in accordance with his intrinsic value?

If the purchaser does not feel himself capable of judging of these points, he should not hesitate to call in the aid of an expert. Whatever the expense of consulting a professional man, it is not to be compared with the loss which would result from a wrong selection. Veterinarians will be found the safest guides in such matters. Their special studies and their knowledge enable them more especially to give the best advice and to judge of the qualities, defects, and blemishes of the animal presented and of his state of health or of disease.

We must not forget that the purchase of a horse is a difficult and delicate matter; but the trouble increases still more when one is purchasing for others. In this case, it is important to be well informed as to the tastes and requirements of the person for whom the choice is to be made, and also as to the limits of the price to be given. A saddle-horse is desired, for example. It is well to know if the person who employs us is a sportsman in the proper sense of the word, or if, on the contrary, he possesses only elementary notions of horsemanship; because the animal chosen for the latter should not have the energy, ardor, breeding, and action of a horse selected for the former. The true sportsman would find no pleasure in mounting a horse which, though well formed, was sluggish, lazy, irresponsive to the spurs, heavy on the hand, and without action, whilst another individual might appreciate these as qualities likely to add to his safety and satisfy his wishes. The same thing is true as to driving-horses and draught-horses. The particular conditions of their utility should be constantly kept in view, so as to adapt them as exactly as possible to the requirements of the service as well as to those of the owner himself.

§ 3. Examination of the Horse.

The examination of the horse cannot always be made at one's leisure, although enough time should be taken, if possible, to make the examination thorough. This depends upon the place where the purchase is made. As a rule, purchases are made at the horse-market or at the horse-show, and very often at the dealer's stable.

We will say a few words upon the plan to be followed in each of these circumstances.

1st. **Examination of the Horse at the Horse-Market.**—When a horse which seems to answer the requirements has been found, he should be brought out of the stall, taken away from the other horses, and, if possible, led to a quiet place, where he can be easily observed. It will then be seen at once whether, by his size, weight, and general development he fulfils the required purpose. At the same time it will be well to determine his age and his race. Finally, his price should be asked. If these first conditions are not favorable, or if the price is too high, it is useless to proceed further with the examination. Only a general inspection of the whole animal will be made, by a glance of the eye; either he pleases or he displeases. That should suffice.

When the impression is favorable, a more minute examination of the mouth, eyes, nostrils, and intermaxillary space is indispensable, and this should be made according to the *rules* we have indicated, so as not to omit anything that is important. Then the horse should be *placed*, and a careful survey made of him both in general and in details, embracing his equilibrium, his gaits, etc., all this in accordance with the instruction which we shall now give.

2d. **Examination of the Horse at the Dealer's.**—At the dealer's, the purchaser can take his time, and it is there especially that he will find what he wishes as to kind, nature, quality, and price; provided, always, that the dealer is one whose reputation is made and whose honesty is well known. The animal should be seen *in the stable*, and *in action* on the *show-ground*.

a. **Examination in the Stable.**—Passing through the stable, the purchaser will examine the horses with attention, and as soon as his choice is fixed upon one of them, he will note the manner in which the animal is tied to the manger, how he stands in the stall, the way in which he carries his head, the expression of his countenance, and the movements of his ears; this is the time also for him to observe the conformation of the hind-quarters, the hocks, the fetlocks, etc.

Then he will order the horse to be taken out of his stall. At once the dealer or the stable-man will take off the blanket, run the brush over the horse's coat, and comb his mane and tail. During these preparations the traditional piece of ginger is introduced into the anus, as has been seen. Then the horse is turned round in his stall, and the strap of the halter is placed in his mouth, or a bridle is put on his head, according to circumstances. The purchaser observes the way in which the animal has turned, if he has backed easily, and what his general attitude was while being groomed. Before taking him out into the yard, an examination must be made of the eyes, the nostrils, the submaxillary glands, the pulse, the age, the mouth, and the poll, the horse being in the door-way.

b. **Examination on the Show-Ground.**—The *show-ground* is a flat patch of ground situated in front of a wall painted or papered green in such a way as to show off the animal to the best advantage; it is usually situated on a higher level than the surrounding parts, in order to give more prominence to the height of the horse. The horse having been led there, the stable-man, standing in front of him, makes him step forward or backward until his fore-feet and hind-feet are respectively on a line with each other; after which the head is kept in a fixed position.

The dealer should be told not to place the animal in the camped or stretched-out position, so that his equilibrium, the axis of the members, may be appreciated; then the animal should be examined as a *whole* and in *detail* by successive inspections in profile, on both sides, in front, behind, and obliquely from in front and from behind. This survey should be made at a distance of four or five steps, while walking around the animal slowly, stopping for an instant at each of the points which we have just enumerated.

In judging of the whole, of the ensemble, we should take into account the general harmony of the great lines, the height, the length, the size, the relative development of the upper and lower parts,—that is, of the body and the members; the equilibrium, the expression of the head, fineness, temperament, race, and breeding should all be studied

In judging of the details, one should begin with the limbs and end with the trunk. Comparing the horse to a locomotive, M. Sanson says, very appositely, that the former, like the latter, consists of a generator of force and a mechanism which is the machine properly so called. In the first place, then, we should examine the organs of locomotion or of movement, the wheels, the cranks, the rods, and the pistons, then the generator of steam, the boiler, and fireplace. It is

evident that, however perfect this generator may be, however great the amount of steam or of heat that it produces, if the organs of the machine consume too great a part of it, or are liable to break within a short time under its impact, the locomotive cannot be considered fit for service. The solidity and good arrangement of these motor organs, then, are essential, since without them the generator of force cannot be used, for the expansive power of steam is available only through the medium of the mechanism which it moves.

"It is the same with the animal machine, in which the motor organs are represented by the members, whilst the generator of force is represented by the trunk. The latter, in fact, contains all the organs for the nutrition of the machine, the digestive and the respiratory apparatus through which are introduced the solid, liquid, and gaseous articles of food indispensable to the display of organic power and the manifestation of movement."[1]

The advantage of this method is that one is obliged to begin the examination with the hoof, whose good integrity and conformation are of so much importance. In order that another examination may not be necessary, one should make sure at once, by raising each of the four feet, that the animal will offer no resistance to this manœuvre, and by striking upon his shoes, that he will allow himself to be shod without difficulty. The upper parts of the members should then undergo ocular inspection, either by comparing the analogous parts in the two anterior and the two posterior members, or by analyzing them as compared with those which are above or below them in the line of the same member. In the first case, the horse is divided into imaginary horizontal sections (feet, pasterns, fetlocks, canons, knees, and hocks; forearms and legs; arms and thighs; shoulder and croup), as recommended by Captain Rivet;[2] in the second, we proceed vertically in such a way as to recognize the harmony of adjacent regions (canon and forearm; arm and forearm; shoulder and arm). In our opinion, the eye of the examiner should take in the animal in both of these two ways, for each will give valuable information.

The body is to be examined in the same way (neck, shoulder, withers, back, croup, chest, abdomen, and flank). While inspecting the flanks, the movements of which are of great importance, the genital organs should be examined, the loins pinched, and the tail raised to examine the anus.

---

[1] A. Sanson, Traité de zootechnie, t. iii. p. 179, 2e éd., Paris, 1878.
[2] A. Rivet, Guide pratique de l'acheteur de chevaux, p. 108.

As to the head, it is to be reserved for the last, because the eyes, nostrils, age, mouth, and intermaxillary space should be particularly examined a second time in full daylight. While the head is being inspected, the larynx should be compressed with the intention of provoking a cough. The healthy condition of the two jugular veins should also be determined at this time.

The examination of which we have spoken should be made *as much as possible* without touching the horse. The purchaser should have sufficient experience to recognize at a glance whatever blemishes may exist. If there be any doubt in his mind, he should remove it by examining the parts with the hand. Should he suspect a splint, a spavin, etc., he has the right to make himself acquainted with the actual state of affairs by every proper means. The error once committed, it is too late to repair it; this should never be forgotten at the time of the sale.

c. **Examination of the Horse in Action.**—It is important, after this, to exercise the animal at the walk, the trot, and, in certain cases, the gallop, in order to judge of the beauty of his gaits. In these exercises, except the last, he will be led by the halter, and the intending purchaser must see to it that the hand does not furnish a point of support for the head. With this object, the stable-man is to be instructed to allow considerable freedom to the horse's head, and as he always holds a whip in his left hand, the dealer should be requested to abstain from all extraneous means of excitement, such as cracking the whip, striking his hat, shouting, gestures, etc. It is indispensable that the trial should take place on a paved surface, this being the best way to detect any existence of lameness. Finally, in these manœuvres, the horse should be examined in profile, from the left and the right, in front and from behind, either by running him successively from one side of the yard to the other, or by making him turn around in a circle. This will give an opportunity of noticing how he turns and how he backs. After this preliminary examination, the animal should be seen in the *trial*, mounted or harnessed, according to the service for which he is intended. Light-draught horses, as well as driving-horses, are, however, often mounted, in order to show better the extent of their movements, their nimbleness, and their speed.

The trial of the *mounted* horse should always be made with the saddle and bridle, in the case of a saddle-horse. It will be well, indeed, for the purchaser to mount him himself, after the boy, to judge of the sensitiveness of the animal's mouth, his reactions, ardor, tractability, dressing, etc. He will see at the same time how the animal

allows himself to be bridled and saddled, how he bears the pressure of the girth, and how he behaves when the foot is put in the stirrup. Here, again, the horse should be seen in profile, right and left, in front and from behind.

The trial of the draught-horse cannot always be made under favorable conditions at the time of the sale, for example, at a fair or in the horse-market, because the necessary appliances are often lacking. Sometimes, however, this inconvenience is obviated by harnessing the animal to a cart, and in a few minutes blocking the wheels, so as to ascertain his energy, vigor, and strength, the ease with which he pulls, and his manner of pulling. In the Parisian market, a special track, the trial track, is reserved for this purpose, and heavy vehicles, easily stopped, as well as sets of harness, are placed at the disposal of the public. Unfortunately, these harnesses are neither so numerous nor so varied that they can be properly fitted to any horse. Many of the animals, worried by a poorly-fitting collar, make a noise similar to that of roaring, an affection from which, in reality, they are entirely free.

As to driving-horses, they are not shown in the same way; the dealer harnesses them and drives them to various vehicles which the purchaser can mount, and where he also has the privilege of driving them, if he chooses. But before doing this, he should ascertain, by observing every detail around the stable, how the animal allows himself to be harnessed and led, how he trots, turns, stops, backs, and starts off. He should ascertain, also, that he is good in his wind, that he is gentle and tractable, and that he does not become frightened at unfamiliar objects or noises.

Besides the ascertaining of the fitness and qualifications of the horse, another object of the trial is the testing of his respiratory organs. Whether the horse be harnessed or mounted, one should always, as soon as he is stopped,—that is to say, after a sufficient amount of exercise,—listen attentively to the sound of his respirations, to see if he is a roarer, and to examine the movements of his flanks, to be sure that he is not heavy and short-winded. In some countries the law allows a trial of nine days for the detection of the so-called redhibitory vices, but much trouble will be avoided by finding them out at the time of the sale.

We recapitulate, in the following table, the order in which to proceed in the examination of the horse. After practising with this table a few times the beginner will rapidly become expert in the somewhat complicated operations which are asked of him.

SUMMARY.

The purchaser should examine the horse :

In the Stable :

1st. **In place :** method of harnessing, general attitude, the ears, grooming, ginger, turning, backing, docility.

2d. **In the door-way :** eyes, nostrils, age, mouth, intermaxillary space, pulse, poll.

On the Show-Ground :

Inspect the horse : in profile, right and left ; obliquely, forward and backward ; from in front and from behind. His attitude and his equilibrium then should be examined :

1st. **The whole conformation :** general harmony, height, bulk, body and members, physiognomy, temperament, race, and breeding.

2d. **Details :** the animal must be viewed from all sides, following the order given below.

a. **Members.**—Examine them separately and from below to above : foot, fetlock, canon, knee, and forearm ; hock, leg, etc.

View them together and horizontally : fore-foot and hind-foot, knee and hock, forearm and leg, arm and thigh.

b. **Body.**—*Upper zone :* neck, withers, back, loins, croup.

Lower zone : breast, shoulder, chest, abdomen, flank.

Explore the groin and the genital organs, pinch the loins, raise the tail (anus and vulva), docility.

c. **Head.**—Expression, proportions ; examine again the eye, nostrils, mouth, age, intermaxillary space ; excite a cough, inspect the jugular veins.

In Action :

View the horse in all possible aspects and take note of his gaits, speed, nimbleness, elegance, endurance. Make him stop, back, turn, etc. Respiration and flank (roaring and heaves). Dressing, docility, etc.

The trial will take place :

1st. **Led by the hand :** *walk* and *trot ;* on hard road and paved road. Lameness ; flank.

2d. **Mounted :** saddle, bridle, girth, disposition, docility, dressing, gaits, *trot* and *gallop*. Respiration, flank.

3d. **Harnessed :** harness, bridle, docility, disposition, dressing, force, speed, *walk* and *trot*, etc.

Taking Notes.—If only one horse is to be purchased, it is not worth while, as a rule, to determine his *relative* value by concrete notes, expressing the sum total of the aptitudes he has shown. But it is very different when a considerable number of animals are to be bought or to be compared. In such cases, the jotting down of notes is indispensable not only to establish and facilitate their classification, but also to enable the expert to furnish exact information concerning them. In this connection every man is at liberty to take notes,—that is to say, to group as he chooses the different elements which he has observed, after his

own ideas, and to give them the relative importance which he considers they ought to have. The following is the scheme we use on competition committees when we deal with horses already grouped by categories, according to their height, weight, and age.

EXAMPLE OF NOTES.

	Coefficients.	Marks.
Conformation: General	1	4
Conformation: Details (members, body, head)	1	4
Equilibrium	1	5
Gaits	1	5
Race and **endurance**	1	4
Trial, disposition, docility, dressing	1	1
Number of notes	6	23
Aptitudes resulting from the *average* (total of the points divided by six)		3.83

NOTE.—The scale of marks which we employ to note each subject is from 0 to 5, but it can be modified at will. We reject every horse that does not obtain the average of 3. If many horses are to be judged, it is well to take down the information in a note-book having, for example, the following formula:

MODEL OF PURCHASE MEMORANDUM-BOOK.

Names or Numerical Order.	Conformation.		Equilibrium.	Gaits.	Race and Endurance.	Trial, Disposition, Docility, Dressing.	Total.	Average.	Observations.
	General.	Details.							
Bijou	3	4	4	2	3	4	20	**3.33**	Ambler.
Coco	4	4	5	4	4	5	26	**4.33**	Weak loins.
Pompier	3	2	1	2	3	1	12	**2.33**	Old and worn out.

To simplify and hasten the evaluation of any horse whatsoever, Professor Tabourin,[1] in 1877, devised *for beginners* a system of notation the essential character of which was the estimating in figures of the beauties of *some regions* only, considered as of *predominant importance,* deducing from the sum total of the marks obtained an estimate of the general value of the animal.

Professor Baron[2] has recently attempted to revive the same idea, under the name *method of judging by marks,* but with a much more

[1] Tabourin, La connaissance extérieure du cheval réduite à l'étude d'un petit nombre de caractères. Méthode synthétique à l'aide de laquelle on peut juger de la valeur d'un cheval exposé en vente, pour la forme et pour le fond; in Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, 1877, pp. 710 et 813.

[2] R. Baron, Appréciation de la vache laitière par la méthode des points, in Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, 1888, p. 797. Extension et généralisation complète de la méthode des points, in Recueil de médecine vétérinaire, 1889, pp. 33, 105, 185, 262, 326, et 379.

judicious selection of the parts upon which he bases the result of his examination. For this purpose our colleague has endeavored to formulate for each type of utilization a special *table*, on which the particular aptitudes to be noted are enumerated and numbered according to their relative importance.

It is evident that every experienced horseman will have his own way of interpreting different things. But as in such cases opinions are always divergent, we shall not enter into the details of the proposed systems, their value depending, in our opinion, on the judicious use which is made of them.

Up to the present time the methods of notation applied by beginners to a single individual do not seem to have given the results that had been hoped for.

The reason is first that they are not in vogue in our present practice, the fact of taking notes upon a horse on the show-ground being looked upon, and not without reason, as a sign of inexperience.

Finally, they are still open, for aught we know to the contrary, to one or the other of these two objections :

Either they have a tendency to limit the examination to too small a number of regions, or, on the contrary, they make it cover too complicated groups of parts or of characters.

In the first case, aiming at excessive simplification, they become manifestly insufficient, inasmuch as they expose one to neglect a certain number of important beauties or defects, and thus lead to erroneous conclusions. In the second case, they embrace too many points, and thus lose their simplifying character, leaving the student as much puzzled as he was originally.

The difficulty, then, is to find a system free from these exaggerations.

But, however perfect a method of notation may be, it cannot prove a substitute for a thorough analysis of the parts. To render it useful, it is necessary to practise it often, and consequently to observe much, and to go patiently through the different operations which it implies. This, above all, should never be forgotten.

§ 4. Horses mated or paired.

When horses are chosen with a view to forming harmonious and identical groups, at least with reference to form, height, weight and bulk, breeding, coat, and age, they are said to be *mated* or *paired ;* and, as breeders and dealers experience much difficulty in obtaining horses

that can be thus paired, the absolute price of one of these groups is always much greater than would be the total amount of the separate individual values.

In most cases horses are matched, in couples or pairs, for pleasure teams; for heavy work one is much more easily pleased than when elegance and fashion are in question; besides, even fashionable people are not always sufficiently fastidious to demand an absolute resemblance between the horses of the same pair, and thus the price of the pair is lowered in proportion.

From these data it will be understood that mated teams are principally sold only in those high-life centres where there is a demand for them. The purchases are usually made at the stable of the regular dealer.

On his arrival, the customer is at first invited to look at the different teams which the dealer has in his stable, and it is business for him to show what animals suit him, as to height, age, race, and coat, according to the team of horses he wishes to have. His selection being made, the horses should be examined, their value determined, both separately and as a pair, and the question of price decided.

They are then taken out of the stable. The first point to be ascertained is whether the mating is real, for, should it not be so, it would be useless to proceed with the examination. It is easy to judge of the height, the coat, and the general proportions by placing the horses side by side, first in the usual way, and then facing in opposite directions. Afterwards they are inspected separately; they are examined in detail, at rest, at a walk, at the trot, led by hand; and even now it is possible to place them mentally side by side and thus ascertain if the differences between them are sufficiently marked to cause them to be rejected. For example, when the difference of age amounts to several years, the purchaser should hesitate to make the bargain, for a short time afterwards, whereas one of the horses will still be vigorous and fit for service, the other will be worn out and unable to travel with his mate. The presence of serious blemishes is a good reason for declining to purchase.

Lastly, the general examination of the animal is resumed with the utmost care. There should be the desired degree of equality in height, length, carriage, bulk, weight, direction of the members, temperament, energy, and coat. The two animals should be capable of being harnessed to the carriage indifferently to the right or the left, and no attention should be paid to the observations of the dealer, who may explain how they have been accustomed to be always driven on the same side,

and who, as a rule, will harness the better one of the two on the left side and the poorer one on the right. In this manner it will be easy to find out if there is between them a great disproportion in vigor and in the gait, a difference which would perhaps not have been otherwise perceived. The horses are held by an assistant standing between them, who makes them, according to the orders of the purchaser, successively walk, back, turn to the right and to the left, after which, if the trial is satisfactory, there is nothing more to be done but to hitch the horses to the carriage. This is the most difficult and most important procedure of all, and great attention should be paid to it. All dealers possess vehicles of various sorts intended to train and to exhibit mated horses. The purchaser makes the pair pass before him in every direction; finally, he gets on the seat and drives, or employs some trustworthy person to drive for him.

The following qualifications must be found in horses that are to be mated: 1st, identity of race, energy, and temperament; 2d, equality of age; 3d, equality of height, form, and length; 4th, harmony of the gait; 5th, the same quantity of force and good breeding; 6th, the same kind of coat. The last point, which is really only a matter of fashion and taste, is at present sometimes waived. Often, not to mention little details which cannot be absolutely alike in the two horses of one pair, such as white feet, or some peculiar mark on the head, a radical difference of the coats is accepted, and very fine coach teams are to be seen composed of a dapple-gray and a bay. Of course this combination will not give the perfection of elegance which would result from absolute similarity in the two subjects, but with respect to their value, such a pair will frequently be better mated and more easily found, and, therefore, will cost much less.

§ 5. Horses which may be mounted or driven at will.

There are horses which may be indifferently driven to a carriage or mounted, according to the pleasure of the owner. Let us here remark that the advantages of this double utilization are less absolute than relative, and more imaginary than real. A good saddle-horse always loses in value by being driven much, just as the driving-horse makes an indifferent saddle-horse. In this respect, it is with horses as with hunting dogs. If the latter are indifferently employed as bird-dogs or rabbit-dogs, etc., they will soon lose their good qualities for either service, but afterwards will tend to return to the special use for which they have the greatest aptitude; the true sportsman will have none of them, and he is right.

This ostracism which banishes from the stable of the wealthy the "double-purpose" horse is justified by the peremptory reason that the true rider is averse to mounting an animal which has not been dressed and trained with a view to saddle-work. How, indeed, can this animal act properly and balance himself, if he has not been initiated into the means that will be used to guide him, if he is incapable of understanding the meaning of the indications given by the legs and hands, and if he cannot draw himself in or gather himself up readily, an attitude indispensable to most of his manœuvres? The saddle-horse which has been satisfactorily trained understands a special language, that of the hands and legs, and his conditions of equilibrium are changed. A part of his weight is thrown *upon the haunches*, as the riding-master says, because, in his case, the centre of gravity has been displaced backward and brought nearer the posterior quarters. This result is evidently obtained by education, but it must not be forgotten that the new aptitudes acquired by a subject are transient and require a daily practice if it be desired to preserve them.

On the contrary, the driving-horse or light-draught horse is the outcome of an entirely different training, if not, indeed, of a quite opposite training. Accustomed to bear against the collar, he soon carries his head and his neck more horizontally in order to displace the weight forward upon the harness, which relieves him very much. The animal is balanced *upon the shoulders*, and not upon his haunches, as in the preceding case. Besides, the action of the driver is different; the hands no longer give the same indications, and the legs are here out of the question. In this condition the head and the neck are always but little "drawn in;" as to the "gather" attitude, it no longer exists. It is therefore natural that the animal should be less supple, harder on the hand, less manageable, and that the means of utilizing him should be fewer and less diversified.

How, then, can he, if he be constantly worked in the shafts, acquire, in a lasting degree, the attitude and qualities required for the riding service? All attempts made in this direction, meaning confusion for him, will succeed only in spoiling him, so that the time will come when in all respects he will only be an *ordinary* horse; not only will he have learned almost nothing, but he certainly will have lost with regard to the aptitude in which he formerly gave the most satisfaction. We understand and approve the sportsman who refuses to lend his favorite horse to others, and who obliges his servant to lead him by the hand when any accidental occurrence prevents his customary outing with the owner on his back. Nothing is easier than to notice, in the case of a

well-trained horse, that a stranger has ridden him even for a short while; much worse will be the results should he be used for a different service.

For enthusiastic horsemen the "double-purpose" horse is therefore a myth; they will not hear of him. But real horsemen are not the only people who employ the saddle-horse. The majority of riders have a very limited knowledge of horsemanship, and many are satisfied with the merest inkling. Provided that the horse which they hitch to their carriage to-day will on the next day allow himself to be mounted, walked, trotted, and galloped, if need be, and will turn to the right or the left, this is sufficient for them; they ask nothing more. Those are the people who seek, purchase, and utilize the "double-purpose" horse; nor is the latter as common nowadays as it was formerly.

The general form of this horse is that of the *saddle-horse* with variations in height, weight, bulk, and breeding, according to the case. A saddle-horse, if he be not vicious, may always be driven to a vehicle adapted to his conformation, whilst it is not correct to say that a driving-horse or a light-draught horse will be sure to be suitable for the saddle. Some special defect might greatly detract from his value for the latter service, while it might be of no consequence in the case of the former.

Still, if we wish to choose a subject partaking of the type of saddle-horses, we must not be too exacting upon this point. And in truth it would be out of the question to seek the perfection of the type in him, since it is known that, from the very character of the proposed service, the individual chosen will never be perfect. One must be contented, therefore, with a short body, not plump, although rather ample, a head somewhat large, a shorter neck, a withers less prominent, a croup somewhat oblique; but the upper part of the body should be regular and well supported; the members should be strong and well poised, even though they lack fineness; there should be a certain *distingué* look in the general appearance; the actions should be free and easy; there should be more endurance than speed and more firmness of the members than brilliancy.

Large coach-horses and heavy-draught horses are the only ones that cannot be mounted: the first because they are almost always too heavy and too long, the second because of their weight and their absolute lack of breeding. All other horses, after a short training, can be used either under the saddle or in harness.

INDEX.

A.

Abdomen. Situation, limits, anatomical base, beauties, defects, volume, 149; form, 150: diseases and blemishes, 151; grey-hound-like, dropping, pendulous, cow's, 151; horse which has too much air passing underneath the, 151.

Age. The parts to be examined for the determination of, 645; characters of the age furnished by the teeth, 648; rising, having, past such age, 649; marking no more, 656.

Albugo, 56.

All-flower, 781.

Amaurosis, 56.

Amble, 505; definition, 505; characters, 506; notation, trail, displacements of the centre of gravity, length of the step, 507, 508; speed, disadvantages, conformation, 508, 509; broken amble, 509.

Anorchid, 179.

Anterior quarters, 22.

Anus. Situation, limits, anatomical base, 174; form, diseases, blemishes, 174.

Aqueous humor, 50.

Arborizations, 779.

Arm. Situation, limits, anatomical base, form, movements, 214; length, 215; direction, 216; muscularity, diseases, and blemishes, 219; point of the arm, 201.

Arthrogoniometer, 375.

Articular angles (angles formed by the union of the locomotory segments). Orientation, 190; extent of the space or field of oscillation of their segments, 191; limit of extension and flexion, 191; measurement, 375; value, 377; photography applied to the measurement, 377; influence of the inclination of the bones upon speed, 382.

Articular movements, limits, 190.

Artificial eye, 51.

Attitudes, 38.

Avalure, 339.

Aversion to special objects, 877.

Axes. Regular, irregular, line of axis of a member, 442; of the anterior members, 443; of the posterior, 456.

Axilla. Situation, limits, anatomical base, 147; diseases, 147; fraying, 147.

Axis. Of figure of a bone, 365; of movement of a bone, 365; of rotation of the bones, 371; direct axis of a member, 193.

B.

Back. Situation, limits, anatomical base, 116; direction, 117; form, 119; length, 120; width, 121; diseases and blemishes, 122; straight, convex, concave, roach, sway, hollow-backed, 117; dipped, double, 119; sharp, long, 120; short, 121.

Backing, 541; vicious habit, 874.

Balky horses, 869.

Bar (part of the hoof), 317.

Bar (region of the mouth). Situation, limits, anatomical base, form, beauties, diseases, blemishes, 74.

Barb (barbillon), 75.

Base, of support, 10; form, 439.

Bay (coat), 776.

Bean, 770.

Beat, 474.

Beating of the parotid glands, 84; of the lips (vicious habit), 72, 619.

Beauties. Definition, 31; divisions, 31; absolute and relative, 31.

Bégu, 729; false, 733.

Béguité, 729; false, 733.

Bidets, 530.

Billarder, 586.

Bishoping, 767.

Bistournage, 178, 814.

Bistourné, 178.

Bit. Description, use, 80; action, 82.

Biters, 872.

Bitting, 82.

Black (coat), 773.
Blaze (mark of the head), 794.
Blindness, blind horse, 57.
Blinkers, 51.
Blood. Opinion of the laity, 397; origin of the word, 398; definition and nature, 400; whence derived, 401; artificial transmissibility, 401; index of the, 402; horse which has blood, 399; pure-blooded, 399; horse which has too much, 411; in which the common element predominates, 412.
Body, divisions of, 21; and members, 395; ciliary, 48.
Bordered, 793.
Bounding, 575.
Bow-legged, 269, 462.
Brachygnathism, 736.
Brand (mark of identification), of the thigh, 243.
Breast. Situation, limits, anatomical base, form, width, 144; blemishes, 147; sharp,, hollow, sunken, 144.
Breeding, 403.
Broken-down, 288.
Broken trot, 522.
Bruised sole, 388.
Brushing, 506.
Bucking, 575.
Butteris. Cuts with the butteris, 336.
Buttock, 237; point, angle, fold, 238; long, well descended, short, round, salient, 242; sharp, well furnished, 243.

C.

Calf of the leg, 248.
Calluses, 108.
Camper. Horse camped in front, 448.
Canker, 337; behind, 459.
Canon. Situation, limits, anatomical base, 279; rôle and action, 281; form, direction, 283; length, 284; width, thickness, 285; fineness, neatness of outline, 286, 287; diseases, blemishes, 287; meagre, narrow, round, slender, 286; overreaching, striking, 287, fractures, 290.
Canter, 527.
Capellet, 270.
Carcinoma, 181.
Cataract, 56.
Cavalry horse, 844; staff horse, 845; troop horse, 846.
Cavity, external dental, 597, 603; irregularities of depth, 729; internal dental, 600.
Cement, 608; radical, 610, 635.
Centre of gravity. Determination in the horse, 3; experiments of Raabe and Bonnal, 6; of Morris and Baucher, 6; of Morris and Bellanger, 8; Goubaux and Barrier, 9; displacements, 478.
Certificate of description, 813; order to be followed, 831; enumeration of points, 831; models, 819.
Chain, 807.
Champignon, 181.
Character, 403.
Cheek. Situation, limits, anatomical base; beauties, defects, 58; blemishes, 59; raising of the skin, 645.
Chest. Definition, limits, anatomical base, function, 157; beauties, height, 158; width, 159; depth, defects, 161; well descended, 158; narrow, long, 161.
Chestnut, anterior, 227; posterior, 279.
Chin. Situation, limits, anatomical base, diseases, blemishes, 68.
Choice of the horse, 886.
Choroid coat of the eye, 48.
Ciliary process, 48; body, 48.
Circled hock, 279.
Circles, of the hoof, 339.
Claudication, 558.
Close hocks, 463.
Closed (horse), in front, 146, 454; behind, 462.
Coach-horses, 833; large, 834; small, 836.
Coats, division, 772; primitive, simple, 773; composite, 775; mixed, 777; derived, 778; conjugate, 782; spotted, 778; synoptical table, 784; peculiarities, 786; of the head, 794; of the body, 796; of the members, 797; synoptical table, 800; causes of the modifications of the coat, 799; index furnished by the coat, 803.
Coffee-and-milk (coat), 774.
Collar, application of, 214.
Common horse, 399.
Compass of thickness, 373.
Compensations, 430; examples, 431.
Conjunctiva, 50.
Contact, 474; period of exchange of, 476, phase of, 195.
Contraction of the hoof, 337.
Coom, 182.
Cord of the testicle, 177.
Corded lymphatics, 109.
Cornea, 48.
Corners (incisor teeth), 597; rasping of the superior, 770.
Corns, dry, moist, suppurating, 338.

Coronary band, 315.
Coronet. Situation, limits, anatomical base, 309; width, fineness, absence of blemishes, diseases, blemishes, 310; mange, 311.
Costal region, 152.
Cover his steps, 474.
Cow-hocked, 268, 463.
Cowlick, 792.
Crapaudine, 310, 340.
Cream-color, 774.
Cremaster muscle, 176.
Crescent, deformity of the sole, 339.
Cribber, 753.
Cribbing, 752, 865; with or without marking the teeth, 752; with a point of contact or in the air, 753.
Crop-eared, 44.
Cross-footed, in front, 455; behind, 464.
Croup. Situation, limits, 123; anatomical base, 124; length, 125; thickness, 128; width, 129; direction, 130; forms, 140; diseases and blemishes, 141; long, short, 125; horizontal, 130; oblique, 137; sharp, almond-shaped, mule-like, 140; narrow, pointed, hen-tailed, cut-off, low, slanting, double, angular, oscillating, 141.
Crown of tooth, 597.
Crowned, of knee and fetlock, 234.
Cryptorchid, 179.
Crystalline lens, 49.
Curb, 273.
Cutaneous envelope of foot, 314; podophyllous tissue, 315; velvety tissue, 316; plantar cushion, 316.
Cutidure. (*See* Coronary band.)
Cutigeral cavity, 318.
Cyst (soft tumor filled with liquid), of the false nostril, 64; of the testicle, 181.

D.

Dartos, 44, 169.
Deafness, 45.
Decubitus, 466.
Defects. Definition, divisions, 32; absolute, relative, congenital, acquired, 32.
Déjuger (se), 475.
Dental star, 614, 616, 654.
Dental table, successive forms, 64; details according to age, 615.
Dentine, 612.
Dépiste (se), 475.
Discharge, of the nose, 63.
Docked, 44, 169.
Docking, 169.
Double expiration, 166.
Dourine (maladie du coït), 184, 186.
Draught-horse, slow heavy-, 851; fast heavy-, 852; light heavy-, 855.
Dry spavin. (*See* Stringhalt.)

E.

Ear. Situation, limits, anatomical base, length, 41; thickness, movements, 42; defects, blemishes, 43; fraudulent means employed, 44; bold, 42; restless, swine-ear, 43; crop-eared, 44.
Ear-cutter, 45.
Early eruption of the permanent teeth, causes of, 638.
Eczema, 288.
Elbow. Situation, limits, anatomical base, length, 219; direction, diseases, blemishes, 220; on the body, 220; turned outward or inward, 220.
Elevation (place of oscillation of a member in the air), 475.
Emphysema (infiltration of air into the connective tissue), pulmonary, 166.
Enamel, 611; germ, 606; peripheral, 612; central, 615.
Endurance. Opinion of the laity, 412; in different kinds of animal motions, 416; external form as an index, 418; practical determination, 420; examples of, 421; of a troop in campaign, 424.
Ensemble (word which signifies the manner of existence of the proportions of a given animal), 385.
Entire horse, 178.
Equilibrium, 10, 473.
Ergot, 297.
Evacuator, 174.
Eventration, 151.
Examination of the horse, 894; at the horse-market, 894; examples of notes, 900; in the stable, 894; in action, 897; trial, 897; model of purchase memorandum-book, 900; on the show-ground, 895; summary, 899; taking notes, 899.
Excision of the submaxillary ganglia, 69.
Excitability, 411.
Exomphalus, 151.
Exterior. Definition, object, end, utility, 2.
Eye. Situation, limits, anatomical base, 48; eye-globe, 48; media, 49; compartments, 50; protective organs, 50; ocular sheath, 50; apparatus of lubrication, 51; examina-

tion, 51; beauties, 53; defects, 55; diseases, blemishes, 56; artificial, 57; small, concealed, bovine, bordered, unequal, myopic, hypermetropic, hollow, wall-eyed, fawn-eyed, 55.

Eyebrows, 47.

Eyelids, 51; thin eyelid, 54.

F.

Face. Situation, limits, anatomical base, 38; divisions, direction, width, 39; diseases and blemishes, 40.

False nostril, 61.

Fatigue. Definition, causes, 414.

Farriery, 335.

Faults, 33.

Fetlock. Situation, limits, anatomical base, 290; mechanism, 290; form, width, 293; thickness, direction, fineness, 294; diseases and blemishes, 295; small, round horse with light wrists, weak in the pins, 294; puffy, 295.

Fici, 295.

Figure, 403.

Fissures, of the pastern, 309.

Fistula, of the withers, 116; of the back 122; of the anus, 175; artificial, of the anus, 175.

Fitness, 31.

Flank. Situation, limits, anatomical base, divisions, form, 162; extent, 163; movements, 164; examination, 165; diseases, blemishes, 167; hollow, cord, movable portion, 162; hollow, corded, tucked up, greyhound, short, narrow, 163; horse which has two fingers' width of flank, 164.

Flea-bitten (coat), 781.

Fly-specks, 789.

Flying trot, 522.

Foot. Definition, organization, 312; internal parts, cutaneous envelope, 313; differences between fore and hind, right and left, 321; elasticity, 323; beauties, characters of the unshod foot, 327; defects of volume, proportion, 328; conformation, 329; equilibrium, 332; quality of horn, 335; accidents from shoeing, 335; diseases, 336; large, small, 328; narrow, unequal, flat, 329; full, pumiced, with bunions, 330; with high heels, low heels, sloping heels, 331; outbow-footed, cross-footed, crooked-footed, 332; pincard, club-foot, 333; soft, dry, broken, 334; with weak heels, 335; accidents from pricking, 335; compression by the nail, by the shoe, heated sole, burnt sole, excessive paring, cuts from hoof-knife and butteris, 336; diseases of, 336.

Force, moment of a, 12; horses of, 405; of a horse, 405; of a muscle, 405.

Forearm. Situation, limits, anatomical base, form, 221; movements, length, 222; width, 224; thickness, direction, 225; diseases, blemishes, 227; muscularity, 224; slender, 225.

Forehead. Situation, limits, anatomical base, width, 36; direction, peculiarities, diseases, blemishes, 38.

Forelock, 110.

Forging, 582.

Founder, 338.

Fox-nosed, 796.

Fraying of the axilla, 147.

Frog, 319; frog-stay, 319; median lacuna, lateral lacuna, branches, 319; point, glomes of, 320.

Frosted, 63.

Furrow of misery, 238.

G.

Gaits. Divisions, 472; diverse qualifications, 473; play of the members, 474; speed, 477; displacement of the centre of gravity, 478; reactions, 479; analysis, 479; systems of notation, 490; synthetical study, 496; the gaits in particular, 503; transitions between the different gaits, 568; defects, 576.

Gallop. Definition, 544; to the right, to the left, 545; true, false, diagonal, lateral, 546; disunited, 547; play of the members, 547; number, nature, succession, duration of the bases of support, 549; duration of the contacts of the feet, and the projection, 549; effort of the members, association of the members, and attitudes of the body, 552; transition from station and the walk, 555; varieties and trails, 556; length of the stride, speed, displacement of the centre of gravity, 559; reactions, 561; conformation, uses, 562.

Gallop, slow. Definition, notation, 563; trail, length of the stride, 565.

Garniture (edge of the shoe projecting beyond the wall), 328.

Gelding, 178.

General causes of vices, 882; bad education, 883; excessive impressionability, 883; interference with habits already acquired, 883; insanity, 885; pain, 884; phys-

iological states, 884; sexual desires and maternity, 884; defective conformation of the eyeball, 884; parturition, 885; warm seasons, 884.
Gland in the intermaxillary space, 168.
Glands, Meibomian, 51; lachrymal, 51; excretory canals, 51.
Glaucoma, 56.
Golden (reflection of coat), 786.
Goutte seriene, 56.
Granary, 58.
Grapes, 295.
Gray, 778; temples, 47.
Grease, 228, 295, 310.
Groin. Situation, limits, anatomical base, 167; examination, diseases, 167, 168.
Gums, 73.

H.

Halter-cast, 308.
Halter-strap, 308.
Haunch. Situation, limits, anatomical base, 142; well detached, angular, low dropped, low, 142; long, short, narrow, wide, straight, oblique, 143; horse upon his haunches, 562.
Head. Divisions, 34; regions, 35; harmonious relations, 86; length, volume, 87; direction, 88; forms, 92; attachments, movements, 95; fine, coarse, fleshy, plain, senile, sharp, 87, 88; horizontal, 89; vertical, 91; straight, conical, arched, hare-faced, ram's head, 93; snub-nosed, rhinoceros, 94; the head as a unit of measure, 359; proportions, 361.
Heavy (affected with heaves), 166.
Heel of the wall, 317.
Height of horse, at the withers, 386; at the croup, 386; relation to length, 391.
Hermaphrodite, 814.
Herminures, 789.
Hernia, umbilical or exomphalus, 151; ventral, 158, inguinal, 168, 181.
Hippiatrique (name formerly given to all that pertains to the medicine of the horse).
Hippobosca equina, 175.
Hippometric cane, 841.
Hip-shot (fracture of the haunch), horse, 143.
Hock. Situation, limits, anatomical base, 253; external conformation, 255; examination, 257; movements, 255; beauties, neatness of outline, 260; width, 261; thickness, 262; direction, 268; diseases and blemishes, 269; extent of the tibio-tarsal angle, 263; fold of the, 255; point, cord, hollow of the, 256; rotating, 258, 581; fat, full, doughy, wide, narrow, slender, 261; straight, 264; close, crooked, 268, 463; too open behind, 268; the hock as a centre of amortissement and impulsion, 258.
Hood (for ears), 45, 83.
Hoof. Definition, form, 316; division, 317; growth and wear, 323; concussion, 338.
Hoof-knife, 336.
Hooped knee, 236.
Horn. Structure, properties, origin, color, consistency, 332.
Horns, frontal, 38.
Horse-pox. (*See* Variola equina.)
Horses, of industry and commerce, 849; difficult to approach or to groom, 870; difficult to harness or to mount, 871; mated or paired, 901; which back, 874; which eat earth, 864; which may be mounted or driven at will, 903; which paw in the stable, 864; which rear and strike with the fore-feet, 873; which rest one hind-foot upon the other, 861; which rub the lower extremity of the head against the manger, or the tail against surrounding objects, 860; which suck wind or swallow air, 865; which strip their halter, 862; which tear their blankets, 861; which weave, 864.
Hunter, 841.
Hydrocele, 181.
Hydropsy, of the eye, 56.
Hygroma (serous effusion into the connective tissue), of the knee, 235; of the hock, 270.
Hypospadia, 814.

I.

Immobility, 73, 886.
Impressionability, 411.
Imprint, of the foot, 474.
Impulsion, from behind, 522; mechanism of, 189.
Inbornness, 309.
Incisor teeth, of the first dentition, 597; second, 601; structure, 606; direction, 616; eruption, 637.
Inclined plane. Rôle, 19; application to animal mechanics, 19; of surface and of segment, 20.
Indurations, 287.
Inferior maxillary region. Situation, limits, anatomical base, beauties, 67; diseases and blemishes, dressing of the hair, 68; examination, 645.

Interaxilla. Situation, limits, anatomical base, 147.
Interfering, 586, 587.
Intermaxillary space. Situation, limits, anatomical base, defects, 65; diseases and blemishes, 66.
Iris, 48.
Irregularities, of number, 721, 722; form, 726; fusion, 726; excessive or insufficient wear, 738; cribbing, 752; extraction of milk-teeth, 762.
Irritability, 411.
Isabella (coat), 775.
Ivory, 612; germ, 606.

J.

Jarde, 275.
Jet black, 786.
Jointed, long, short, 300, 450; straight, low, 304, 450.
Juger (se), 474.
Jumper. (*See* Leaper.)

K.

Keraphyllocele (horn tumor on the internal face of the wall), 339.
Keraphyllous tissue, 315.
Kickers, 874.
Kicking, 471; like a cow, 874; vicious habit, 874.
Knee. Situation, limits, anatomical base, 227; movements, 228; form, 229; fineness, thickness, width, 230; height, direction, 231; clearness of outline, diseases and blemishes, 234.
Knee-action (high), 22.
Knee-sprung, acquired, congenital, 231, 450.
Knuckling, 297, 450.

L.

Lachrymal, gland, caruncula, puncta, ducts, sac, canal, 51, 61.
Lameness. Definition, 588; recognition of, 589; acute, recent, chronic, 591; continued intermittent, cold, warm, 592; horse which limps on all-fours, 589.
Laminar tissue, 315.
Lampas, 79; burning of, 791.
Lanky, 395.
Leaper, 575.
Leaping. Definition, divisions, 569; varieties, 570; trail, 572; notation, 573; conformation of leapers, 575.
Leg. Situation, limits, anatomical base, form, 246; movements, length, 247; width, 248; thickness, 249; direction, 250; diseases and blémishes, 252; long, 247; thin, lean, fat, 250; fracture, 252.
Length of the body, 387.
Leprous spots, 793.
Leucoma, 56.
Levelling, of the incisors, 615.
Lever. Definition, equilibrium, 11; lever-arm, 12; direction of the forces, 13; different classes, 16; fixed, inter-resisting, 16; inter-puissant, 17.
Life. Duration of the life of the horse, 642.
Limp, on all-fours, 583; at ear, 43.
Lines. (Synonyme for length and direction of the regions.) Horse which has beautiful lines is symmetrical in his lines, 343.
Lingual canal, 75.
Lippitude, 56.
Loins. Situation, limits, anatomical base, width, length, form, direction, 122; examination, diseases, blemishes, 123; low, weak, false, dipped, narrow, feeble, 123; flinching over the loins, 123; strain, 123, 585.
Lop-eared, 43.
Louvet (coat), 773.
Louveture, 790.
Luxation of the patella, 245.
Lymphangitis (inflammation of the lymphatic vessels), 295.

M.

Magpie, 798.
Maladie du coït, 184.
Malanders, 235.
Mammæ (region of the wall on each side of the toe), 317.
Mammæ (glands secreting the milk). Situation, limits, anatomical base, external characters, diseases, blemishes, 186.
Mane. Situation, limits, form, 109; simple, double, 109; cutting of, 110; washed, mixed, 797.
Mange, of the neck, 109.
Marbled, 791.
Mark, white mark of the head, 794.
Martingale, 92.
Mechanics, principles of, 11; muscular, 14.
Mécouvrir (se) (overchecking), 475.
Meibomian glands, 51.
Melanosis, of the eyelids, 56; of the tail, 174; of the anus, 180; of the sheath, 182; of the penis, 184; of the mammary gland, 186.

Members. General considerations, 186; function, 186; mechanism of impulsion, 189; orientation and play of the locomotory angles, 190; space of oscillation, 191; mode of evolution during progression, 193; systematic analysis of the play of the, 195; regions of the anterior, 200; the posterior, 237; body and members, 395; direct axis or line of direction, 441; line of axis of a, 442; axes of the anterior, 443; the posterior, 456; horse straight in the members, 294.

Molars. Supplementary premolars, 622; posterior supplementary molars, 636; first dentition, 636; second dentition, 625; premolars, 625; hind molars, 626; development, 631; structure, 633; eruption, 640.

Moment, of a force, 12; of a muscle, 15.

Monorchid (without visible testicles), 186.

Moor-faced, 796.

Moor-headed, 796.

Mounted upon matches, 397.

Mounting side, 22.

Mouse-color, 778.

Moustaches, 796.

Mouth. Situation, divisions, 69; temperament, 81; bitting, action of bit, 82; steady, sensitive, tender, delicate, easy, strong, hard, thick, spoiled, fresh, active, 81; mouth made, 655.

Mule ray, 797.

Mule's foot, 337.

Muscle. Insertion, 14; intensity and extent of contraction, 14; moment, 15; contraction, 414.

Muscles, superficial, 28, 29, 30.

N.

Near side, 22.

Neck, of tooth, 597.

Neck (region of body). Situation, limits, anatomical base, divisions, 98; form, 99; direction, carriage, 100; volume, 102; length, 103; attachments, 105; movements, 106; diseases and blemishes, 107; arched, swan-necked, stag-like, ewe-necked, reversed, 99; vertical, 100; horizontal, 101; oblique, 102; supple, 100; slender, thick, 103.

Necrosis, of the poll, 83; of the nuchal ligament, 108.

Neurotomy (section of the digital nerves), 309, 578.

Nicking, of the depressor muscles of the tail, 169.

Nictitans membrane, 51.

Nose. Extremity of, situation, limits, anatomical base, 40; blemishes, 41.

Nostrils. Situation, limits, anatomical base, form, divisions, 59; beauty, movements, 60; examination, 61; expression, blemishes, 64.

Notation (of the gaits), 490; reproduction of, 500; model for, 500.

Nuage, 56.

O.

Œdema (exudation of serum into the connective tissue), of the abdomen, 151; of the scrotum, 180; of the sheath, 182.

Œstrus hæmorrhoidalis (insect whose larvæ inhabit the digestive canal of the horse), 175.

Off side, 22.

Olecranon (head of the elbow), 56.

One-eyed, 57.

Onglet, 56.

Open (horse), in front, 146, 451; behind, 268, 461.

Ophthalmia, 56.

Orbital cavity, 50.

Orchitis (inflammation of the testicle), 181.

Osselets, of the knee, 236; of the fetlocks, 297; of the pastern, 309.

Outbow-footed, in front, 454; behind, 463.

Ovariotomy, 185.

Overreaching, 587.

Overstretching, 288.

P.

Pacing, 504.

Paddling, 586.

Palate. Situation, limits, anatomical base, diseases, 83.

Paries. (*See* Wall.)

Parotid region, 84.

Paring, of the foot; foot too much pared, 336.

Parrot mouth, 740.

Parrot-toed, in front, 455.

Pastern. Situation, limits, anatomical base, 298; movements, form, 299; width, thickness, length, 300; direction, 303; neatness of outline, 307; diseases, blemishes, 308; fold of, 300; exostosis, 309.

Patella (bone of the stifle). Fractures, luxations, 245.

Patineur, 530.

Peach-blossom, 781.

Pedigree, 818.

Pegged shoulders, 203, 578.

Pendulum, 184.
Penis. Anatomical base, beauties, defects, 183; diseases, blemishes, 184; paralysis of, 184.
Perched high, 397.
Performances, 818.
Perineum, 175.
Periodic fluxion, 56.
Periople, 320.
Perioplic band. (*See* Periople.)
Phlebitis, 109.
Piebald, 782.
Pincard foot, 333.
Pissy (mare), 185.
Pituitary membrane, 62.
Placer (attitude of the horse), 442.
Plantar cushion, 313, 316.
Podophyllous tissue, 315.
Point, 439, 589.
Pointed haunch, 140.
Pointing. (*See* Point.)
Poll. Situation, limits, anatomical base, diseases, blemishes, 83.
Pommelé (dapples), 787.
Posterior quarters, 22.
Pricking of the foot, 335.
Prognathism, 736.
Projectile, 479.
Proportions. Definition, relation of regions, 341; harmony and discord, proportion and disproportion, 342; the agreeable, the beautiful, and the good, 344; history, 344; object and utility, 357; points of view from which the proportions are studied, 357; relations of dimensions between the parts, 358; of the man and the horse, 364; angular relations of the osseous segments, 365; theory of the similitude of the angles and the parallelism of the bony segments, 365; determination of the articular angles, 371; influence of the inclination of the bones upon speed, 382; general relation of the whole organism, 385; height, 386; length, 387; width, 395; relations between the body and the members, 395; relations of the organism with the nervous system, 397; isolated effects of beautiful proportions upon the animal machine, 404; conditions of the motor *en mode de masse*, or of force, 405; *en mode de vitesse*, or of speed, 407; of the mixed motor, 408; excitability, impressionability, irritability, 410; result of beautiful proportions upon the mechanism, endurance, 412; definitive synthesis, 429; proportions viewed in profile, 360; of the head, 361.
Pulmonary emphysema, 116.
Pulp cavity, of tooth, 600.
Pulp (dental), 600.
Pupil, of eye, 48.

Q.

Quarter, of hoof, 317; false, 339.
Quitter, 310, 339.

R.

Race, 403.
Race-horses, 826.
Racking, 522.
Raising of the skin, 660.
Rammy foot, 339.
Rampin. (*See* Pincard.)
Raphé, 175.
Rassembler (attitude), 440.
Reactions, of the body, 479.
Rearing, 468.
Regions, of the horse (table), 23; in profile, in front, behind, 24, 25, 26, 27.
Reflex power, 400.
Retina, 49.
Ribs, 152.
Ridgeling, 179.
Ring-bones, 311.
Ringed, 185.
Roan (coat), 782.
Roarer (horse affected with roaring), 64.
Rubican, 788.
Runaway horse, 879.
Running-horse, 826.
Rusty, 791.

S.

Sallenders, 270.
Sarcocele, 181.
Sclerotic coat, of the eye, 48.
Scrotum. Anatomical base, 176; beauties, 177.
Seams, of the quarter, the toe, 337; the bar so barred, 338.
Seat (of the rider), 553, 576.
Seedy-toe, of the wall, 339; of the sole, 339.
Seller, 887; tricks resorted to by, clipping, 891; diet, 887; grooming, 887; light, 887; shoeing, 891; training or dressing, 888; toilet, 889.
Shaft-horses, 852.
Sheath. Anatomical base, diseases, blemishes, 182; horse which urinates in his sheath, 184.

Shoe, 335; wide-webbed, 328; semi-covered, 329; covered (width of the branches of the shoe), 329.
Shoe-boil (fibrous tumor of the elbow), 221.
Shoeing, 335; accidents from, 335.
Short-winded, 165.
Shoulder. Situation, limits, anatomical base, form, 201; movements, 202; length, 205; length in relation to the arm, 205; direction, 207; scapulo-humeral angle, 209; position, muscularity or volume, 212; diseases, blemishes, 213; crest, point, 201; angle blemish, 202; pegged, 203; long, short, oblique, 204; vertical, 205; well placed, forward, 212; well outlined, meagre, lean, atrophied, massive, fleshy, thick, 213; cold or pegged, 578; horse upon his shoulders, 562.
Shyers, 876.
Side (mounting, left side of the horse), 22.
Sides. Situation, limits, anatomical base, form, movements, beauties, 152; round, flat, incurvation, 153; length, 154; defects, diseases, blemishes, 156.
Silver (reflection), 786.
Similitude of the angles, theory of (General Morris), 365.
Skipping, 527.
Skittish, 43.
Sneezing, 64.
Snowballs (spots), 788.
Snow-flakes, 788.
Sole, of the foot, 378; bruised, 338; burnt, 336; heated, 336.
Solid-colored, 787.
Soot-balls, of the eye, 49.
Sorrel (coat), 773.
Sound of the frog, 182.
Spavin, 273.
Speed, condition of the motor for speed, 407.
Splints, 288; chained, pegged, simple, spindle-shaped, 289.
Square horse, 391.
Standard, 809.
Station (attitude of the horse), 438; forced, camped, gathered up, 440.
Steeple-chaser, 827.
Step, 475; length, 476; periods, 476.
Stifle. Situation, limits, anatomical base, 244; neatness of outline, direction, diseases, blemishes, 245; fold, 244.
Strain, of the coxo-femoral articulation, 141; of the loins, 585; of the shoulder, 214; of the tendons, 288.
Striking, 587.
String-halt, 272, 579, 592; in front, behind, 580.
Strong-limbed, 243.
Stud-book, 818.
Stumble, 230, 577.
Supernumerary digits, 281.
Support, base of, 10.
Supra-orbit. Situation, limits, anatomical base, beauties, fraudulent practices upon, 47.
Surfeit, 110.
Suspension, of the body, 478.
Sway-backed, 117.
Swine-ear, 43.
Switching of the tail, 173.
Symmetry, beautiful, 343.
Synovia (viscid fluid lubricating the articulators).
Synovial dilatations, of the hock, 271, 272; of the knee, 236; of the stifle, 245.

T.

Tail. Situation, limits, anatomical base, divisions, attachment, carriage, 168; state of stump and hairs, 170; forms, 171; dressing, 172; movements, 173; diseases, blemishes, 174; frauds, 173; entire, with shortened hairs, 170; short, full, banged, 171; bushy, club-tail, rat-tail, 172; docked, 169; washed, mixed, 797; examination of the nodes, 646.
Teeth. Definition, number, distribution, 594; incisors, 597; canines, 619; molars, 621; eruption, 637; examination, 646; characters furnished by the teeth, 648; irregularities, 722; of number, 722; of form, 726; of fusion, 726; form of central enamel, 727; depth of infundibulum and its external dental cavity, 729; defect of length or excess of width of one of the jaws, 736; excessive or insufficient wear, 738; cribbing, 752; fraudulent means, 762.
Teeth, fœtal, milk, deciduous, 597; virgin, 603; wolf, 622.
Temple. Situation, limits, anatomical base, distinctness, freedom from blemishes, diseases, blemishes, 46; gray temples, 47.
Tendon, 283; well detached, 283; strains, 288; horse which has snapped a tendon, 288; weak tendons, 285.
Testicles. Situation, limits, anatomical base, 176; examination, 177; beauties, 178; diseases, blemishes, 180.
Thigh. Situation, limits, anatomical base, form, 237; movements, 238; direction, 239; length, 242; width, thickness, peculiar

markings, 243; diseases, blemishes, 244; flat of the thigh, 238; flat, lean, froggy, sharp, 243.
Throat. Situation, limits, anatomical base, beauties, defects, examination, diseases, blemishes, 85.
Thrombus, 109.
Thrush, 337.
Time, 474.
Timid horses, 876.
Toe (of the wall), 317.
Tongue. Situation, limits, anatomical base, examination, 76; beauties, defects, blemishes, 78; horses which loll the tongue, double it up, or protrude it from the mouth, 859.
Trachea (windpipe), 99.
Tracheotomy, 108.
Track (succession of footprints), 475.
Trail. (*See* Track.)
Trichiasis, 56.
Troop horses, 846.
Trot. Trails, varieties, 571; play of the members, 513; rhythm of the beats, time, projection, tracing, and notation, 574; displacements of the centre of gravity, reactions, 517; length of the stride, velocity, 579; beauties and defects, 521; horse which trots in the stable, 863; broken trot, flying trot, racking, 522.
Trotter, in harness, 829; under the saddle, 832.
Trunk, inferior line of, 396; superior line of, 396.
Tuft of the chin, 68.

U.

Under himself (horse), in front, 448; behind, 458.
Urethra, 183; fissure of, 814.
Urethrotomy (incision of the urethra to remove stone (calculi) from the bladder), 175.
Uvea, 49.

V.

Vaginal sheath, of the testicle, 177.
Varicocele, 181.
Variola equina, 186.
Velvety tissue, 316.
Vices of character, 857.
Vices properly so called, 869; general causes of, 882.
Vicious habits, enumeration of, 858.
Vicious horses, 857.
Vitreous humor, 50.
Vulva. Situation, limits, anatomical base, external characters, 185; diseases, blemishes, 186; rupture, 186.

W.

Walk. Definition, play of the members, 530; order of beats, tracing, and notation, 532; varieties of the rhythm, 536; trails of the walk and their varieties, 537; length of the step, speed, 540; displacements of the centre of gravity, reactions, confirmation, 541; running, 529.
Wall of the hoof, 316.
Wall-eye, 55, 796.
Wanting in form and symmetry, 343.
Warts, of the eyelids, of the sheath, of the vulva, 186.
Washed, 793.
Wavy (water) (reflection of coat), 787.
Well rumped, of horse, 243.
Whip, 808.
White-feet, 798.
White markings, of the coat, 789.
Width of body, 395.
Winded, 165.
Windgalls, 296.
Wind-sucker, 753.
Wine-colored, 791.
Withers. Situation, limits, anatomical base, beauties, defects, form, 111; height and extent, 112; thick, low, sharp, 112; prominent, 113; muscular, effaced, 114; mode of suspension, 114; diseases and blemishes, 116.

X.

Xiphoid region. Situation, limits, anatomical base, diseases, blemishes, 148.

Z.

Zebra marks, 799.

THE END.

WELLCOME LIBRARY INSTITUTE